Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 213

Mark A. Geyer
Gerhard Gross *Editors*

# Novel Antischizophrenia Treatments

Springer

# Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology

Volume 213



For further volumes:
http://www.springer.com/series/164

Mark A. Geyer • Gerhard Gross
Editors

# Novel Antischizophrenia Treatments

Springer

*Editors*
Mark A. Geyer
University of California San Diego
Department of Psychiatry
La Jolla
California
USA

Gerhard Gross
Abbott, Neuroscience Research, GPRD
Ludwigshafen, Germany
Institut für Pharmakologie
Universität Duisburg-Essen
Universitätsklinikum Essen
Essen
Germany

ISSN 0171-2004 ISSN 1865-0325 (electronic)
ISBN 978-3-642-25757-5 ISBN 978-3-642-25758-2 (eBook)
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-25758-2
Springer Heidelberg New York Dordrecht London

Library of Congress Control Number: 2012947033



Springer is part of Springer Science+Business Media (www.springer.com)

# Preface

Six decades after the serendipitous discovery of chlorpromazine as an antipsychotic and four decades after the launch of clozapine, the first atypical or second-generation antipsychotic, psychopharmacology has arrived at an important crossroad. Revealing the different modes of action of available antipsychotics on biochemical, electrophysiologic, neuroanatomic, and behavioral grounds has not only helped to develop new medications with improved tolerability but also contributed to our understanding of mechanisms relevant for psychosis in general and schizophrenia and bipolar disorder in particular. It is remarkable in this context the extent to which such research has moved towards using imaging techniques and more empirical clinical assessments. Although research targeted at specific receptors and pathways of antipsychotic drug action has extended our knowledge considerably, it remains true that all currently approved antipsychotic drugs share one common mechanism, i.e., dopamine $D_2$ receptor antagonism. There is still uncertainty as to whether first- and second-generation antipsychotics can really be separated and if the assumed progress exemplified by newer compounds is sufficient to survive the challenges of evidence-based medicine. Although the use of antipsychotics has become safer, adverse metabolic and cardiac effects remain as major issues in the clinic and in the development of new agents. It became clear that all clinically used antipsychotic medications are effective in treating positive symptoms, but certainly not for negative symptoms and also not for the core cognitive deficits that have been widely neglected in research in the time between Kraepelin and the Measurement and Treatment Research to Improve Cognition in Schizophrenia (MATRICS) initiative.

The efforts to develop antipsychotics based on $D_2$ receptor antagonism in combination with effects on other receptors (with or without intention) have remained the focus of the last two decades. It is clear that pharmacological research and pharmaceutical development must now focus on complementary or even alternative mechanisms of action to address unmet medical needs, i.e., poorly treated domains of schizophrenia, improved acceptance by patients, better adherence to medication, safety in psychoses in demented patients, and avoiding cardiac and metabolic adverse effects. The first completely novel mechanisms evolving

from our insights into the pathophysiology of psychotic disorders, especially the role of glutamatergic mechanisms in schizophrenia, are now under development, and further principles are on the horizon. This situation, in many respects similar to that when the initial second-generation antipsychotics became available, can be rewarding for all. Preclinical and clinical researchers now have the opportunity to confirm their hypotheses and the pharmaceutical industry may be able to develop really novel classes of therapeutics.

When we were approached by the publishers of the Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology to prepare a new volume on antipsychotics, our intention was to capture both the accumulated preclinical and clinical knowledge about current antipsychotics as well as prospects for new and potentially more specific antischizophrenia principles. These efforts should be based on the pathophysiology of the diseases and the affected neurotransmitter systems. Since preclinical research on antipsychotic compounds is only reliable when intimately linked through translational aspects to clinical results, we decided to include clinical science as well. It turned out that that this endeavor could not be covered by a single volume. We thank the editorial board and the publishers for supporting our decision to prepare two volumes: Current Antipsychotics and Novel Antischizophrenia Treatments. These topics cannot really be separated from one another and should be seen as a composite entity despite the somewhat arbitrary separation of contributions into two volumes. The continuing challenges of developing improved and safer antipsychotic medications remain of concern and are discussed in the first volume. The new opportunities for the field to develop and license adjunctive treatments for the negative symptoms and cognitive deficits that are treated inadequately by existing compounds have been incentivized recently and provide the focus for the second volume. We hope these collective contributions will facilitate the development of improved treatments for the full range of symptomatology seen in the group of schizophrenias and other major psychotic disorders.

Ludwigshafen, Germany — Gerhard Gross
La Jolla, CA — Mark A. Geyer

# Contents

# Contents of Volume 212

# Clinical Instruments to Evaluate and Guide Treatment in Schizophrenia

**Stephen R. Marder**

## Contents



**Abstract** Treatment research in schizophrenia is focused on the development of pharmacological agents that are effective for improving community functioning and decreasing disability. As a result of this recent focus, there has been substantial activity for developing instruments that can measure functioning as well as the psychopathological domains that are related to functioning. Issues in selecting measures of real-world functioning include ensuring that the instrument measures the full range of possible outcomes and differentiating symptoms from functioning. For many treatment studies it is unrealistic to expect a change in actual functioning. Most treatment trials are too brief to permit subjects to change their level of vocational or social functioning. In addition, real-world functioning is influenced by factors such as an individual's financial status or the availability of community services. This has led to the use of functional capacity measures which monitor an individual's ability to perform functionally meaningful tasks even if they do not complete these tasks. Attention has also focused on interview-based measures of cognition and negative symptoms. Both of these psychopathological domains are related to functioning and both are the focus of drug development.

S.R. Marder (✉)
Veterans Affairs Desert Pacific Mental Illness Research, Education, and Clinical Center (MIRECC), the Veterans Affairs Greater Los Angeles Healthcare Center and the Semel Institute for Neuroscience at UCLA, Los Angeles, CA, USA
e-mail: marder@ucla.edu

M.A. Geyer and G. Gross (eds.), *Novel Antischizophrenia Treatments*,
Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 213,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-25758-2_1, 

Recent drug development has focused on the development of agents that target domains of psychopathology that may lead to improved functioning. This focus contrasts with the development of first and second-generation antipsychotics; these drugs were considered effective when they treated psychotic symptoms such as auditory hallucinations, suspiciousness, delusions, and disorganized behaviors. Treating these symptoms was important for reducing suffering and for allowing many patients to live in their communities. On the other hand, these agents had relatively modest effects on the ability of patients to function in their communities. This new focus on functioning has led to the development of new instruments for measuring functioning as well as the psychopathological domains that appear to be related to impaired functioning. This review will discuss the challenges that instrument developers have faced in designing these new instruments as well as the current state of the field. The measurement of typical psychopathology—particularly psychosis will not be discussed. The measurement of cognition and social cognition is discussed in the review by Keefe and Harvey (2012) Cognitive deficits in schizophrenia. In: Geyer MA, Gross G, Eds. In: Novel antischizophrenia treatments. Handbook of experimental pharmacology. Springer, Heidelberg.

**Keywords** Schizophrenia • Functional outcome • Disability • Cognition • Negative symptoms

## 1 Functioning as an Outcome in Clinical Trials

Schizophrenia is associated with substantial disability in a number of important areas. A survey in Australia found that 77.5% of people with schizophrenia were unemployed (which included not having a job, being a student, or carrying out home duties) (Castle and Morgan 2008). The same survey found that 35.5% of patients had dysfunctions in their abilities for self-care, 50% were impaired in their participation in household activities, and 61.2% were impaired in their ability to socialize. It is important to note that there is not a typical person with schizophrenia. Although a high proportion of patients have some disability, a substantial number function at a very high level with professional work accomplishments and successful family lives. Moreover, when patients receive adequate treatment and rehabilitation, they are frequently able to show substantial improvement. Therefore, it is important that measures of functioning in schizophrenia clinical trials monitor the full range of possible outcomes in areas such as work and social relationships. As noted below, some instruments may have good sensitivity to change at lower levels of functioning and can measure changes in basic activities like dressing or bathing. However, these measures may not be sensitive to changes in functioning at work or school.

Since functioning is a complex construct, it is also important to note that it is related to multiple factors including many that are not related to the illness. Communities or families can provide resources that affect social and educational accomplishments. A recent study found that different psychopathological domains can affect different

functional domains (Leifker et al. 2009). Social outcomes were related to affective blunting and passive-apathetic social withdrawal; residential outcomes were related to everyday living skills, psychotic symptoms, and lack of spontaneity. This observation suggests that the best functional target in an intervention study may be a particular domain rather than a global measure of functioning.

A number of instruments have been proposed over the years to measure functioning in schizophrenia. The *Global Assessment of Functioning (GAF)* (American Psychiatric Association 1994) is commonly used in both clinical and research settings. The instrument gives a single global score from 1 to 100 (where 100 is the best functioning) for a patient's symptomatic, social, and functional state. Since raters often give weight to symptoms over social and work functioning, there is uncertainty as to what is being measured. This uncertainty has led to attempts to divide the rating into meaningful components. For example, the GAF used by the Veteran's Administration Mental Illness Research, Education, and Clinical Center (MIRECC) (Niv et al. 2007) measures occupational functioning, social functioning, and symptom severity on three subscales. Each has a 100-point scale with anchors. Each of the three scales has been shown to have good predictive and concurrent validity.

The *Quality of Life Scale (QLS)* (Heinrichs et al. 1984) or Heinrichs-Carpenter Scale is among the most commonly used functional measures in schizophrenia research. Using a 21-item structured interview, functioning is assessed in four domains: intrapsychic functioning, interpersonal relations, instrumental roles, and common objects and activities.

The *Independent Living Skills Survey (ILSS)* (Wallace et al. 2000) measures skills in appearance, clothing, personal hygiene, care of possessions, food preparation, health preparation, money management, transportation, leisure and community, and job skills. The scale is very useful for patients with severe impairments since most of the items measure very basic functions. The *Birchwood Social Functioning Scale* (Schneider and Struening 1983) *(SFS)* assesses a wider range of functioning than the ILSS. It assesses domains including social engagement, interpersonal communication, pro-social activities, recreation, independence-competence, independence-performance, and employment. The *Specific Levels of Functioning Scale* (Schneider and Struening 1983) *(SLOF)* is a survey that is administered to a caseworker or a caregiver of a schizophrenia patient. It assesses six domains: physical functioning, personal care skills, interpersonal relationships, social acceptability, activities of community living, and work skills. A recent study (Bowie et al. 2007) compared self-ratings with ratings by case managers and found that the case manager's ratings were more associated with performance on functional capacity measures. The Social Behavior Schedule (Wykes and Sturt 1986) (SBS) is used to assess social functioning in individuals with psychiatric illnesses who depend on psychiatric services. The scale is administered to an informant. The Life Skills Profile (Rosen et al. 1989) (LSP) assesses self-care, nonturbulence, social contact, communication, and responsibility by interviewing available informants.

Since the measurement of functioning is fraught with complications and assumptions, it has been problematic for the field to reach a consensus as to the most effective methods for measuring this construct in clinical trials. A recent NIMH process named VALERO for Validation of Every Day Real-World Outcomes used

the RAND Appropriateness Method to evaluate these and other instruments according to predetermined criteria (Leifker et al. 2011). These criteria included reliability; convergence with neuropsychological tests and functional capacity measures; sensitivity to change; practicality and tolerability; usefulness for multiple informants; relationship with symptom measures; and comprehensiveness of assessment. Scales were evaluated in the categories—everyday living, social functioning, and hybrids. The QLS, the SLOF, the SBS, the SFS, the ILSS, and the LSP were selected for a validation study that was recently completed (Harvey et al. 2011). The findings indicated that the SLOF was the best functional measure for clinical trials in schizophrenia.

## 2 Functional Capacity

Clinical trials of schizophrenia treatments are seldom long enough to affect functional domains such as work, education, and social functioning. Moreover, success in these domains is often affected by financial opportunities and other factors that cannot be controlled in a clinical trial. This limitation has led researchers to develop functional capacity measures that monitor whether people are able to carry out functionally meaningful activities even if they do not perform these activities in their everyday lives. Functional capacity has been defined as the ability to perform critical, everyday living skills in controlled, observational settings (Harvey and Velligan 2011). Measuring functional capacity usually requires that subjects actually perform tasks in a laboratory setting. Tasks can range from basic self-care to managing social situations.

The importance of functional capacity was demonstrated in the NIMH Measurement and Treatment Research to Improve Cognition in Schizophrenia (MATRICS) process which focused on facilitating the development of drugs for improving cognition in schizophrenia. During the MATRICS process, a representative from the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) informed the field that improved performance on a neuropsychological test would not be sufficient to approve a drug. Improvement would need to be demonstrated on measures that were more clearly linked to improved functioning (Buchanan et al. 2005). Discussions with FDA representatives indicated that functional capacities could fill this role.

Although the original MATRICS process did not carry out a systematic review of available functional capacity measures, the group did include measures in the initial validation study (Green et al. 2008). A small group recommended two functional capacity measures: the *University of California at San Diego Performance-Based Skills Assessment (UPSA)* and the *Maryland Assessment of Social Competence* (MASC). The UPSA (Patterson et al. 2001) uses standardized role-play situations to evaluate five domains: Household Chores; Communication; Finance; Transportation; and Planning Recreational Activities. For example, finance skills are evaluated by having patients pay bills and transportation skills are evaluated by having the person plan a trip to a zoo using public transportation.

A brief version of the UPSA measures finance and communication. The MASC (Bellack et al. 2006) evaluates a subject's performance in simulated social interactions. The individual's performance is recorded and scored at a later time.

Both tests were administered to schizophrenia subjects at baseline ($n = 176$) and 4 weeks later ($n = 167$) along with interview-based measures of cognition (described below) and a battery of cognitive tests (Green et al. 2008). All of the measures showed good test–retest reliability. The two functional capacity measures—UPSA and MASC were more strongly related to the cognition battery than the interview-based measures. Since the main function of the measure is to provide a more face-valid test of cognition, this relationship to the battery is probably the most important criteria. All four instruments showed modest relations to functioning. The UPSA showed some ceiling effects that resulted from the inclusion of a medication management component. Overall, this study did support the use of functional capacity measures as co-primary measures for studies of cognition enhancers.

A more recent process named MATRICS–CT (for co-primary and translation) used the RAND Appropriateness Method to evaluate both functional capacity measures and interview-based measures of cognition. As with the original MATRICS process, measures were nominated and a database was developed that compared each instrument to pre-established selection criteria. A diverse panel of experts used the database to select the measures that would be included in a validation study. The selected instruments for a validation study (which was termed the Validation of Intermediate Measures or VIN study) included the UPSA as well as the following two measures:

*The Independent Living Scales (ILS)* (Loeb 1996) evaluates memory/orientation, managing money, managing home and transportation, health and safety, and social adjustment. It requires subjects to solve problems, show knowledge, or carry out a task.

*The Test of Adaptive Behavior in Schizophrenia (TABS)* (Velligan et al. 2007) evaluates daily function in the following areas: medication management, supplying an empty bathroom, shopping skills, organizing a clothes closet, and work and productivity. Social skills are observed and scored.

The VIM study found that both the UPSA and the ILS had test–retest reliabilities above 0.70 indicating that they were acceptable (Green et al. 2011). The TABS and the UPSA had reasonable correlations of $r = 0.61$ and 0.67 respectively with cognition scores (using the MATRICS Consensus Cognitive Battery or MCCB). Shorter versions of the measures also had acceptable test–retest reliability as well as similar (but mostly lower) correlations with the MCCB. The Committee that administered the trial considered the UPSA to be the leading measure. For shorter forms, the TABS and UPSA instruments appeared to have advantages.

The MATRICS CT process is also addressing the challenges of international trials. In using functional capacity measures there is a concern that the tasks that are used in these measures will fail to translate into different cultures. For example, the UPSA's evaluation of skills in using public transportation may not translate in rural India or China where public transportation is sparse. This issue of cultural adaptability was evaluated in a recent study that surveyed clinical researchers at 31 sites in 8 countries (Velligan et al. 2010). The study found substantial challenges in

India, China, and Mexico. In addition, there were problems across countries when studies occurred in rural areas. Approaches to these translation problems are being addressed in a recently initiated validation study in India.

Taken together, these processes indicate important advances in tools for evaluating the abilities of people to function in their community life. At this time, researchers who are planning trials of innovative, pharmacological, and psychosocial interventions have a selection of instruments that have been carefully evaluated in validation studies. It is unlikely that there will be a single functional capacity scale that will be used for all studies in schizophrenia. Rather, the level of impairment of the study population, the domains of functioning that are being addressed, and the time and resources available will determine the favored instrument.

## 3 Interview-Based Measures of Cognition

The MATRICS process also explored interview-based (in contrast to performance-based) measures of cognition as potential co-primary outcome measures for trials of cognition-enhancing interventions. Interviews can be carried out with patients who describe their own perception of their cognition and how it affects their daily lives as well as informants who can be relatives or caretakers. The informants provide information based on their observations of the patient. There are some concerns regarding an individual's ability to assess his or her own cognitive abilities and how they compare to those of others, as well as an informant's ability to determine whether impairments in functioning are related to impairments in cognition or other symptom domains. In addition, studies suggest that clinical assessment of cognition with rating scales may provide poor estimates of actual cognitive impairment when measured with neuropsychological tests (Harvey et al. 2001). However, there may be additional value in assessing cognition using these other perspectives. If new interventions improve cognition, it will be important to understand how patients experience this improvement since it may help clinicians to assess if the treatment is effective. Moreover, as mentioned above, the interview-based assessments could be a co-primary outcome measure for registration trials.

As noted above, a number of interview-based measures have been evaluated recently. The *Schizophrenia Cognition Rating Scale (ScoRS)* is an 18-item instrument that assesses attention, memory, reasoning and problem solving, working memory, language production, and motor skills (Keefe et al. 2006). Ratings are obtained from a patient, an informant familiar with the patient, and an interviewer who carried out the ratings. The strongest relationships with neuropsychological performance test and functional outcome were with the ratings from the interviewer followed by the informant. This finding suggests that interview-based ratings are more likely to be useful when an informant is available. In the MATRICS validation study (Green et al. 2008), the SCORS showed good test–retest reliability. However, the relation to cognitive performance was not as strong as the relation of the functional capacity measures.

*The Clinical Global Impression of Cognition in Schizophrenia (CGI- CogS)* (Ventura et al. 2010) is a 38-item scale that evaluates each of the seven MATRICS domains—Working Memory, Attention/Vigilance, Verbal Learning and Memory, Visual Learning and Memory, Reasoning and Problem Solving, Speed of Processing, and Social Cognition. Each item is evaluated from three sources: the patient, a caregiver, and all available sources. It also includes a global cognition item—GAF-CogS—which uses a 100-point scale and parallels the GAF. The instrument shows moderate correlations with functioning and cognition (Subotnik et al. 2006). The scores for patients, caregivers, and the composite were moderately correlated with cognition. However, the correlations were not as high as the UPSA.

*The Cognitive Assessment Interview (CAI)* used Classical Test Theory (CTT) and Item Response Theory (IRT) to derive an instrument using data from studies of the CGI-CogS and the SCoRS (Ventura et al. 2010). The result is a scale with ten items that assess all of the MATRICS domains with the exception of visual learning. A trained rater uses information obtained from both the patient and an informant. The CAI was among the instruments included in the VIM study (Kee et al. 2009). It showed lower correlations with cognitive performance as measured by the MCCB when compared with the performance-based measures.

## 4 Negative Symptoms

According to an NIMH consensus meeting, the domains of negative symptoms include blunted affect, alogia, asociality, anhedonia, and avolition (Kirkpatrick et al. 2006). A number of instruments are available for clinical trials, with some instruments failing to measure all of the domains and other instruments including items that are probably not a component of the negative symptoms construct.

*The Schedule for the Assessment of Negative Symptoms (SANS)* (Andreasen 1983) is a widely used interview-based-scale that measures all five negative symptoms domains. It also includes inappropriate affect, attentional impairment, and poverty of content of speech which probably should not be included in negative symptom instruments. In addition, some of the apathy items measure an individual's social encounters rather than their interest in social encounters. The actual amount of social activity may be determined by factors that are not related to negative symptoms. Nevertheless, the instrument has shown itself to be a scale with excellent reliability and validity.

*The Positive and Negative Syndrome Scale (PANSS)* (Kay et al. 1987) was developed as an instrument for assessing multiple symptom domains in schizophrenia, with a particular emphasis on positive and negative symptoms. Using a semi-structured interview and well-described anchors, it has been widely used in clinical trials. The original negative symptom domain included seven symptoms: passive withdrawal, emotional withdrawal, blunted affect, lack of spontaneity, poor rapport, difficulty in abstraction, and stereotyped thinking. These factors are able to measure the expressive components of negative symptoms including blunted affect and alogia, but provide very limited coverage of asociality, anhedonia, and avolition.

A number of investigators (Lindenmayer et al. 1994; Marder et al. 1997) have studied the structure of the PANSS and have proposed a negative symptom factor that also include passive social withdrawal, active/apathetic social withdrawal, and motor retardation. These models did not include items such as difficulty in abstract thinking and stereotyped thinking. These revisions of the PANSS have clear advantages as tools for measuring negative symptoms in clinical trials.

*The Negative Symptom Assessment Scale* (Axelrod et al. 1994) was developed to assess multiple domains of negative symptoms. Although originally developed as a 25-item scale, a briefer 16-item instrument, the NSA-16, retains its psychometric properties (Axelrod et al. 1993) and is the version that is most commonly used in clinical trials. An important advantage of the NSA-16 is that for the asociality-avolition component it more carefully differentiates between the actual negative symptom and the person's behavior. For example, it measures reduced sense of purpose and reduced social drive which determine a person's behavior. A recent study (Velligan et al. 2009) found that changes in the NSA-16 were related to changes in functioning in schizophrenia patients.

Two other instruments are currently under development. Both include all of the domains from the NIMH consensus meeting. An NIMH multisite group known as the Collaboration to Advance Negative Symptom Assessment in Schizophrenia (CANSAS) is developing the Clinical Assessment Interview for Negative Symptoms (CAINS) using a data-driven process (Blanchard et al. 2010). The second instrument, the Brief Negative Symptom Scale is similar, but will likely be briefer than the CAINS. A recent report (Kirkpatrick et al. 2010) indicates that it has very good psychometric properties.

## 5 Summary

This chapter has focused on clinical instruments that will support a new era of therapeutics research. The overall goal is to improve the quality of life and functioning of individuals with schizophrenia. The instruments can measure either functioning itself or symptom domains—negative symptoms and cognitive impairment—that are related to functioning. Readers should also consult the chapter on cognition which focuses on basic cognition and social cognition as clinical endpoints.

**Acknowledgements** This work was supported by the Desert Pacific MIRECC.

## References

American Psychiatric Association (1994) Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders, 4th edn. American Psychiatric Association Press, Arlington, VA

Andreasen NC (1983) Scale for the assessment of negative symptoms (SANS). Br J Psychiatr 154:672–676

Axelrod BN, Goldman RS, Alphs LD (1993) Validation of the 16-item negative symptom assessment. J Psychiatr Res 7:253–258

Axelrod BN, Goldman RS, Woodard JL, Alphs LD (1994) Factor structure of the negative symptom assessment. Psychiatr Res 52:173–9

Bellack AS, Brown CH, Thomas-Lohrman S (2006) Psychometric characteristics of role-play assessments of social skill in schizophrenia. Behav Ther 37:339–52

Blanchard JJ, Kring AM, Horan WP, Gur R (2010) Toward the Next Generation of Negative Symptom Assessments: The Collaboration to Advance Negative Symptom Assessment in Schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull

Bowie CR, Twamley EW, Anderson H, Halpern B, Patterson TL, Harvey PD (2007) Self-assessment of functional status in schizophrenia. J Psychiatr Res 41:1012–8

Buchanan RW, Davis M, Goff D, Green MF, Keefe RS, Leon AC, Nuechterlein KH, Laughren T, Levin R, Stover E, Fenton W, Marder SR (2005) A summary of the FDA-NIMH-MATRICS workshop on clinical trial design for neurocognitive drugs for schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 31:5–19

Castle DJ, Morgan V (2008) Epidemiology. In: Mueser KT, Jeste DV (eds) Clinical handbook of schizophrenia. Guilford, New York, pp 14–24

Green MF, Nuechterlein KH, Kern RS, Baade LE, Fenton WS, Gold JM, Keefe RS, Mesholam-Gately R, Seidman LJ, Stover E, Marder SR (2008) Functional co-primary measures for clinical trials in schizophrenia: results from the MATRICS Psychometric and Standardization Study. Am J Psychiatry 165:221–8

Green MF, Schooler NR, Kern RS, Frese FJ, Granberry W, Harvey PD, Karson CN, Peters N, Stewart M, Seidman LJ, Sonnenberg J, Stone WS, Walling D, Stover E, Marder SR (2011) Evaluation of functionally meaningful measures for clinical trials of cognition enhancement in schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 168(4):400–7

Harvey PD, Velligan DI (2011) International assessment of functional skills in people with schizophrenia. Innov Clin Neurosci 8:15–8

Harvey PD, Serper MR, White L, Parrella MJ, McGurk SR, Moriarty PJ, Bowie C, Vadhan N, Friedman J, Davis KL (2001) The convergence of neuropsychological testing and clinical ratings of cognitive impairment in patients with schizophrenia. Compr Psychiatry 42:306–13

Harvey PD, Raykov T, Twamley EW, Vella L, Heaton RK, Patterson TL (2011) Validating the measurement of real-world functional outcomes: phase I results of the VALERO study. Am J Psychiatry 168:1195–201

Heinrichs DW, Hanlon TE, Carpenter WT Jr (1984) The quality of life scale: an instrument for rating the schizophrenic deficit syndrome. Schizophr Bull 10:388–98

Kay SR, Fiszbein A, Opler LA (1987) The positive and negative syndrome scale (PANSS) for schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 13:261–76

Kee KS, Horan WP, Salovey P, Kern RS, Sergi MJ, Fiske AP, Lee J, Subotnik KL, Nuechterlein K, Sugar CA, Green MF (2009) Emotional intelligence in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 107:61–8

Keefe RS, Poe M, Walker TM, Kang JW, Harvey PD (2006) The Schizophrenia Cognition Rating Scale: an interview-based assessment and its relationship to cognition, real-world functioning, and functional capacity. Am J Psychiatry 163:426–32

Kirkpatrick B, Fenton WS, Carpenter WT Jr, Marder SR (2006) The NIMH-MATRICS consensus statement on negative symptoms. Schizophr Bull 32:214–9

Kirkpatrick B, Strauss GP, Nguyen L, Fischer BA, Daniel DG, Cienfuegos A, Marder SR (2010) The brief negative symptom scale: psychometric properties. Schizophr Bull 37(2):300–5

Leifker FR, Bowie CR, Harvey PD (2009) Determinants of everyday outcomes in schizophrenia: the influences of cognitive impairment, functional capacity, and symptoms. Schizophr Res 115:82–7

Leifker FR, Patterson TL, Heaton RK, Harvey PD (2011) Validating measures of real-world outcome: the results of the VALERO expert survey and RAND panel. Schizophr Bull 37:334–43

Lindenmayer JP, Bernstein-Hyman R, Grochowski S (1994) A new five factor model of schizophrenia. Psychiatr Q 65:299–322

Loeb P (1996) Independent living scales manual. Psychological Corporation, New York
Marder SR, Davis JM, Chouinard G (1997) The effects of risperidone on the five dimensions of schizophrenia derived by factor analysis: combined results of the North American trials. J Clin Psychiatry 58:538–46
Niv N, Cohen AN, Sullivan G, Young AS (2007) The MIRECC version of the Global Assessment of Functioning scale: reliability and validity. Psychiatr Serv 58:529–35
Patterson TL, Goldman S, McKibbin CL, Hughs T, Jeste DV (2001) UCSD performance-based skills assessment: development of a new measure of everyday functioning for severely mentally ill adults. Schizophr Bull 27:235–45
Rosen A, Hadzi-Pavlovic D, Parker G (1989) The life skills profile: a measure assessing function and disability in schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 15:325–37
Schneider LC, Struening EL (1983) SLOF: a behavioral rating scale for assessing the mentally ill. Soc Work Res Abstr 19:9–21
Subotnik KL, Nuechterlein KH, Green MF, Horan WP, Nienow TM, Ventura J, Nguyen AT (2006) Neurocognitive and social cognitive correlates of formal thought disorder in schizophrenia patients. Schizophr Res 85:84–95
Velligan DI, Diamond P, Glahn DC, Ritch J, Maples N, Castillo D, Miller AL (2007) The reliability and validity of the Test of Adaptive Behavior in Schizophrenia (TABS). Psychiatry Res 151:55–66
Velligan DI, Alphs L, Lancaster S, Morlock R, Mintz J (2009) Association between changes on the Negative Symptom Assessment scale (NSA-16) and measures of functional outcome in schizophrenia. Psychiatry Res 169:97–100
Velligan DI, Rubin M, Fredrick MM, Mintz J, Nuechterlein KH, Schooler NR, Jaeger J, Peters NM, Buller R, Marder SR, Dube S (2010) The cultural adaptability of intermediate measures of functional outcome in schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 38(3):630–41
Ventura J, Reise SP, Keefe RS, Baade LE, Gold JM, Green MF, Kern RS, Mesholam-Gately R, Nuechterlein KH, Seidman LJ, Bilder RM (2010) The Cognitive Assessment Interview (CAI): development and validation of an empirically derived, brief interview-based measure of cognition. Schizophr Res 121:24–31
Wallace CJ, Liberman RP, Tauber R, Wallace J (2000) The independent living skills survey: a comprehensive measure of the community functioning of severely and persistently mentally ill individuals. Schizophr Bull 26:631–58
Wykes T, Sturt E (1986) The measurement of social behaviour in psychiatric patients: an assessment of the reliability and validity of the SBS schedule. Br J Psychiatry 148:1–11

# Cognitive Impairment in Schizophrenia

**Richard S.E. Keefe and Philip D. Harvey**

## Contents



**Abstract** Cognitive functioning is moderately to severely impaired in patients with schizophrenia. This impairment is the prime driver of the significant disabilities in occupational, social, and economic functioning in patients with schizophrenia and an important treatment target. The profile of deficits in schizophrenia includes many of the most important aspects of human cognition: attention, memory, reasoning,

R.S.E. Keefe (✉)
Duke University Medical Center, Durham, NC 27710, USA
e-mail: richard.keefe@duke.edu

P.D. Harvey
University of Miami Miller School of Medicine, Miami, FL 33136, USA
e-mail: philipdharvey1@cs.com

M.A. Geyer and G. Gross (eds.), *Novel Antischizophrenia Treatments*,
Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 213,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-25758-2_2, 

and processing speed. While various efforts are under way to identify specific aspects of neurocognition that may lie closest to the neurobiological etiology and pathophysiology of the illness, and may provide relevant convergence with animal models of cognition, standard neuropsychological measures continue to demonstrate the greatest sensitivity to functionally relevant cognitive impairment.

The effects of antipsychotic medications on cognition in schizophrenia and first-episode psychosis appear to be minimal. Important work on the effects of add-on pharmacologic treatments is ongoing. Very few of the studies completed to date have had sufficient statistical power to generate firm conclusions; recent studies examining novel add-on treatments have produced some encouraging findings. Cognitive remediation programs have generated considerable interest as these methods are far less costly than pharmacologic treatment and are likely to be safer. A growing consensus suggests that these interventions produce modest gains for patients with schizophrenia, but the efficacy of the various methods used has not been empirically investigated.

**Keywords** Cognition • Neurocognition • Neuropsychology • Cognitive neuroscience • Memory • Attention • Processing speed • Executive functioning • Social cognition • Cognitive remediation • Enhancement

# 1 Cognitive Impairment in Schizophrenia and Its Clinical Relevance

## *1.1 Cognition in the Diagnosis of Schizophrenia*

Cognitive impairment associated with schizophrenia is now viewed as a potential psychopharmacological target for treatment (Hyman and Fenton 2003). Although cognition is not a formal part of the current diagnostic criteria for schizophrenia, the fourth edition of the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders DSM-IV-TR (American Psychiatric Association 2000) includes seven references to cognitive dysfunction in the description of the disorder. Diagnostic and scientific experts increasingly have expressed the idea that neurocognitive impairment is a core feature of the illness and not simply the result of the symptoms or the current treatments of schizophrenia. It is likely that the fifth edition of DSM will include cognition as a domain that will need to be evaluated by clinicians in the course of a diagnostic assessment (Keefe and Fenton 2007; Barch and Keefe 2010).

## *1.2 Cognitive Deficits Are Found in Almost All Patients with Schizophrenia*

Severely impaired performance on cognitive tests is the strongest evidence for the importance of cognitive deficits in schizophrenia. In several cognitive domains,

the average cognitive impairment in schizophrenia can reach two standard deviations below the healthy control mean (Harvey and Keefe 1997; Heinrichs and Zakzanis 1998; Saykin et al. 1991; Keefe et al. 2011a). Although approximately 27% of patients with schizophrenia (and 85% of the general population) are not rated as "impaired" by clinical neuropsychological assessment (Palmer et al. 1997), these patients tend to have the highest levels of premorbid functioning (Kremen et al. 2000) and demonstrate cognitive functioning that is considerably below what would be expected of them based on their premorbid levels and the education level of their parents. Up to 98% of patients with schizophrenia perform more poorly on cognitive tests than would be predicted by their parents' education level (Keefe et al. 2005). In addition, comparisons of monozygotic twins discordant for schizophrenia suggest that almost all affected twins perform worse than their unaffected twin on cognitive tests (Goldberg et al. 1990). Therefore, it is likely that almost all patients with schizophrenia are functioning below the level that would be expected in the absence of the illness.

## *1.3 Cognitive Impairment Is Not Caused by Psychotic Symptoms*

Neurocognitive ability is not strongly correlated with severity of psychotic symptoms in patients with schizophrenia (Addington et al. 1991; Keefe and Harvey 2008; Bilder et al. 1985). Although some exceptions exist, such as isolated reports of significant correlations of positive symptoms with working memory (Strauss 1993; Bressi et al. 1996; Carter et al. 1996), source monitoring (Keefe et al. 2002), and auditory distractibility (Walker and Lewine 1988), the overall trend is for general neurocognitive impairment not to be correlated with positive symptoms. This low correlation across various patient samples, including first-episode (Mohamed et al. 1999), chronic (Addington et al. 1991), and elderly (Tamlyn et al. 1992; Davidson et al. 1995) patients, and confirmed in 1,331 patients assessed at entrance into the CATIE schizophrenia trial (Keefe et al. 2006a), suggests that positive symptoms are clearly not the sole cause of the cognitive impairment found in patients with schizophrenia. However, there are some reasonable caveats to these data. First, patients who are too psychotic to be tested are of course never included in empirical studies assessing the relationship between cognition and psychosis severity. Second, it is possible that patients with more preserved cognitive performance may be more articulate about their psychotic symptoms, causing higher scores on symptom rating scales, and thus reducing the detection of any true relationship between cognitive impairment and psychosis. Finally, most of the studies that have assessed cognition have focused on standardized measures of neuropsychological function. As described later, the identification of the true relation between cognitive impairment and psychosis may require more specific assessments of the processes that lead to these symptoms (Keefe et al. 2011b; Kraus et al. 2009; Krishnan et al. 2011a, 2011b).

## *1.4 Cognitive Impairment Is an Important Cause of Functional Disability and Related Outcomes in Schizophrenia*

Cognition has been firmly established as a predictor of real-world community functioning (Green 1996) as well as the ability to perform everyday living skills in assessment settings (Evans et al. 2003; Patterson et al. 2001). All of the key neurocognitive constructs have demonstrated significant relationships to elements of functional outcome and to manifest effect sizes in the medium range in cross-sectional (Green et al. 2000; Nuechterlein et al. 2004) and longitudinal follow-up studies (Malla et al. 2002).

### 1.4.1 Employment

Ratings of work behavior/performance are related to baseline scores on cognitive tests in schizophrenia. For example, improvement in patient work performance in a 6-month work rehabilitation program was predicted by baseline performance on various cognitive tests (Bell and Bryson 2001). Patients enrolled in school full-time or holding competitive employment show superior performance across measures of working memory, sustained attention, problem solving, and episodic memory when compared with unemployed patients (Lysaker and Bell 1995; McGurk and Meltzer 2000); neurocognitive performance plays a more important role than clinical symptoms in the ability of patients with schizophrenia to work (McGurk et al. 2003).

### 1.4.2 Independence in Residential Functioning

Cognitive impairments and associated deficits in the ability to perform everyday living skills (referred to as functional capacity) are highly related to the ability to live independently. Residential independence can be predicted with considerable accuracy by performance-based measures (Mausbach et al. 2008). The aspect of functioning that differed most substantially between samples of schizophrenia patients that performed near the mean of healthy controls and those who were more impaired was independent residential status (Leung et al. 2008). These data suggest that perhaps the most significant impact of neurocognitive impairment is a patient's ability to find and maintain adequate independent living.

### 1.4.3 Quality of Life

Reductions in quality of life are strongly associated with cognitive impairment. The relationship between subjective experience and social functioning has been shown to be mediated by executive functioning (Brekke et al. 2001). The long-term effects

of impaired neurocognition on quality of life in patients with schizophrenia are quite substantial. While cognitive impairment is a key component of reduced quality of life in schizophrenia, it is not the entire story as the severity of positive and negative symptoms is also a significant contributor (Mohamed et al. 2008).

### 1.4.4 Relapse Prevention

Cognitive functions have been shown to be associated with medication adherence and are the strongest predictors of patients' ability to manage medications (Jeste et al. 2003; Fenton et al. 1997). Cognitive deficits contribute to patterns of medication mismanagement that are associated with poor adherence and risk of relapse (Jarboe and Schwartz 1999). In one study, memory impairment was the best predictor of partial compliance (Donohoe et al. 2001). Patients performing poorly in medication management tests also had poor global scores on a dementia inventory (Patterson et al. 2002).

### 1.4.5 Medical Comorbidity

Neurocognitive impairment is also related to medical comorbidities in schizophrenia. Deficits in executive functions such as planning directly affect patients' ability to seek treatment for medical problems. In elderly patients with schizophrenia, cognitive and functional impairments predicted the later incidence of new-onset medical problems, whereas medical problems did not predict the subsequent worsening of cognitive and self-care deficits (Friedman 2002). Inability of patients with schizophrenia to reduce damaging habits such as smoking has been correlated with deficits in memory and attention (Buchanan et al. 1994; George et al. 2000) and is a likely determinant of the substantial increase in cardiac morbidity and mortality in this population. Cognitive impairments may thus directly effect new-onset medical problems in people with schizophrenia.

### 1.4.6 Costs

Cognitive impairment is also a major factor in the costs (direct and indirect) associated with schizophrenia (Sevy and Davidson 1995). Factors leading to the increased cost include loss of ability for self-care, level of inpatient and outpatient care needed, and loss of productivity for patients as well as caregivers.

## *1.5 The Profile of Cognitive Impairment in Schizophrenia*

Neurocognitive tests often assess more than one domain of functioning, and many tests do not fit neatly into a single domain. Thus, descriptions of the profile of cognitive deficits in schizophrenia have varied across literature reviews. The opinion

of a group of experts who served on the Neurocognition Subcommittee for the Measurement and Treatment Research to Improve Cognition in Schizophrenia (MATRICS) project (http://www.matrics.ucla.edu) is that the most important domains of cognitive deficit in schizophrenia are working memory, attention/vigilance, verbal learning and memory, visual learning and memory, reasoning and problem solving, speed of processing, and social cognition (Green et al. 2004). As described later, the outcome measure derived by this group has been approved by the Psychiatry Division of the Food and Drug Administration as the gold standard for registration trials targeting cognition in schizophrenia (Buchanan et al. 2005; Buchanan et al. 2011a). Since this organization of the domains of cognition is particularly relevant for treatment studies emphasized in this volume, these domains are described later. Alternative views have also been considered (Reichenberg et al. 2009). In addition, recent data have supported the hypothesis that perception may not only be impaired in schizophrenia, but may mediate some of the higher level cognitive deficits, such as working memory performance. However, any serious review of this literature suggests that the profile of cognitive deficits and level of performance in patients with schizophrenia include almost no aspect of cognition that is similar to those in healthy control subjects (Dias et al. 2011). This profile contrasts with the cognitive performance of patients with other psychotic disorders such as bipolar disorder, which suggests near-normal performance in the reasoning and problem solving or social cognition domains of the MATRICS battery (Burdick et al. 2011).

### 1.5.1 Vigilance and Attention

Vigilance refers to the ability to maintain attention over time. Impairments in vigilance can result in difficulty following social conversations and an inability to follow important instructions; simple activities such as reading or watching television become labored or impossible. Vigilance deficits in patients with schizophrenia are related to various aspects of outcome, including social deficits, community functioning, and skills acquisition (Green 1996; Green et al. 2000).

### 1.5.2 Verbal Learning and Memory

The abilities involved in memory functioning include learning new information, retaining newly learned information over time, and recognizing previously presented material. In general, patients show larger deficits in learning than in retention. The tests used to measure learning typically involve the ability to learn lists of words or written passages. Much empirical evidence points to severe verbal memory impairments in schizophrenia (Aleman et al. 1999). There is a clear connection between verbal memory impairments and social deficits in patients with schizophrenia, including both real-world functioning (Green 1996) and performance on social competence tests (McClure et al. 2007).

### 1.5.3 Visual Learning and Memory

Because visual information is not as easily expressed as verbal information, fewer tests sensitive to the deficits of schizophrenia have been developed, and this area of cognitive function has generally been found not to be as impaired as verbal memory (Heinrichs and Zakzanis 1998). Visual memory has been found to correlate modestly with employment status (Gold et al. 2003), job tenure (Gold et al. 2002), psychosocial rehabilitation success (Mueser et al. 1991), social functioning (Dickerson et al. 1999), quality of life ratings (Buchanan et al. 1994), and strongly with functional capacity (Twamley et al. 2003). Other studies have reported no significant correlations (Addington and Addington 1998, 2000; Ertuğrul and Uluğ 2002; Velligan et al. 2000).

### 1.5.4 Reasoning and Problem Solving

Although there are many tests of reasoning and problem solving, the most well known and most frequently used in schizophrenia research is the Wisconsin Card Sorting Test (WCST). The very poor performance of patients with schizophrenia on the WCST and the reduced activity of the dorsolateral prefrontal cortex during performance of this test (Goldberg et al. 1987; Weinberger 1987) led to widespread pursuit of the hypothesis of frontal hypoactivation in schizophrenia. It is important to note, however, that performance on the WCST reflects a variety of cognitive functions and is not a pure measure of executive functions (Keefe 1995). The rules of society and the workplace change regularly, and success in these arenas is often measured by one's ability to adapt to changes. Patients with schizophrenia who are impaired on measures of executive functions have difficulty adapting to the rapidly changing world around them.

### 1.5.5 Speed of Processing

Many neurocognitive tests require subjects to process information rapidly and can be compromised by impairments in processing speed. Standard examples of this type of task are the coding tasks, which have been found to demonstrate the most severe deficits in schizophrenia (Dickinson et al. 2007). This aspect of cognitive impairment is relatively nonspecific and has been found to correlate with a variety of clinically important features of schizophrenia, such as daily life activities (Evans et al. 2003), job tenure (Gold et al. 2002), and independent living status (Brekke et al. 1997). Reduced processing speed can impair the ability to keep in step with the task-oriented jobs that are frequently held by patients with schizophrenia. Increased response latency in social settings may hamper social relationships.

### 1.5.6 Working Memory

Working memory has been described by various authors as a core component of the cognitive impairment in schizophrenia (Brekke et al. 1997; Goldman-Rakic 1994; Keefe 2000) and is related to functional outcomes such as employment status (Lysaker and Bell 1995) and job tenure (Gold et al. 2003). Much of the clinical relevance of working memory deficits in schizophrenia comes from strong correlations that working memory measures have with a variety of other cognitive domains impaired in schizophrenia, such as attention, planning, memory (Silver et al. 2003), and intelligence (Keefe 2000), as well as the advanced understanding of the neuroanatomy of working memory functions in human and nonhuman primates. This neuroanatomical work has suggested that neural circuitry that includes prefrontal cortical regions mediates aspects of working memory functions (Baddeley 1992; Callicott et al. 1999) and that this circuitry may be impaired in schizophrenia (Baddeley 1992; Goldman-Rakic 1987).

### 1.5.7 Social Cognition

Theory-of-mind skills and social and emotion perception and recognition have been the general focus of the literature on social cognition in schizophrenia. Theory of mind is the ability to infer another's intentions and/or to represent the mental states of others. Individuals with schizophrenia perform poorly on measures of theory-of-mind abilities (Tan et al. 2005; Corcoran et al. 1995; Drury et al. 1998). Facial affect recognition and social cue perception are the two general areas into which studies of social perception in schizophrenia can be broken down. Reviews of the literature on facial affect recognition (Sarfati et al. 1997; Morrison et al. 1988; Penn et al. 1997) suggest that individuals with schizophrenia have stable deficits on tests of facial affect perception and that perception of negative emotions and fear may be particularly impaired (Addington and Addington 2000; Penn et al. 1997; Pinkham et al. 2011; Edwards et al. 2001). Tests of social cue perception use more dynamic stimuli that require multiple sensory modalities, such as watching people interacting. Patients with schizophrenia show consistent impairments on these tasks (Gaebel and Wölwer 1992; Bell et al. 1997). Social cognition is related to social impairments in schizophrenia, even after controlling for performance on neurocognitive tasks (Corrigan et al. 1990; Trumbetta and Mueser 2001). Path models have suggested that the relations between social cognition and functional outcomes are complex, but that social cognition may explain more of the direct variance in social functioning than other aspect of cognitive performance (Penn et al. 1996).

## *1.6 Cognitive Impairment Precedes the Onset of Psychosis*

Various methods for assessing the relationship between premorbid cognitive impairment and later psychotic disorders have suggested that young people destined

to develop schizophrenia are modestly impaired on cognitive measures. However, these deficits tend to be quite mild (Brekke et al. 2007) and their ability to help predict psychotic disorders is under question. In a special circumstance, the longitudinal follow-up of individuals who manifest prodromal symptoms (Reichenberg et al. 2010), deficits on standard neuropsychological tests that are present at the time of the development of the prodrome discriminate cases who go on to develop psychosis from those who do not. However, impairment on these measures was not able to contribute to the prediction of psychosis beyond clinical measures implemented in the study.

Early work completed in the U.K. (Seidman et al. 2010) and Sweden (Jones et al. 1994) suggested that children who went on to develop schizophrenia as adults differed significantly from the general population in a wide range of cognitive and behavioral domains. Similar findings were generated from a population-based study that investigated the risk of schizophrenia in the United States. Scores from grades 4, 8, and 11 on the Iowa Tests for 70 children who later developed schizophrenia suggested that those children who later developed schizophrenia, test scores dropped significantly between grades 8 and 11, corresponding with the onset of puberty (David et al. 1997).

In Israel, a study of all adolescents between the ages of 16 and 17 years suggested that cognitive functions are significantly impaired in those adolescents who are later hospitalized for schizophrenia. These deficits thus precede the onset of psychosis in young people destined to develop schizophrenia, and, along with social isolation and organizational ability, cognitive deficits are a significant predictor of which young people will eventually develop a psychotic disorder (Fuller et al. 2002). However, the mean level of performance of this group, at about the 35th percentile of the overall population, does not allow for a very strong predictive signal on a case-by-case basis. In the young people who later experienced a first episode of schizophrenia, their cognitive results in the prodrome suggested that most of the cognitive impairment of schizophrenia occurs prior to the first psychotic episode (Davidson et al. 1999).

Recent work from the Dunedin study in New Zealand, which tracked the cognitive and mental health of a large group of individuals in a single geographical location, suggests that a subtle pattern of cognitive changes over early childhood may predict schizophrenia compared to depression and no illness (Brekke et al. 2007). In this study, children aged 7–13 who developed adult schizophrenia exhibited cognitive impairments that emerged early and remain stable on tests of verbal and visual knowledge acquisition, reasoning, and conceptualization. They also demonstrated developmental cognitive growth that was slower relative to healthy comparison subjects on tests indexing processing speed, attention, visual–spatial problem solving ability, and working memory. These two premorbid cognitive patterns were not observed in children who later developed recurrent depression. The authors concluded that the origins of schizophrenia include two interrelated developmental processes evident from childhood to early adolescence. Children who will grow up to develop adult schizophrenia enter primary school

struggling with verbal reasoning and lag further behind their peers in working memory, attention, and processing speed as they get older.

Prospective studies have suggested that cognitive impairment is manifest in individuals who are identified as being at "ultra-high" risk (Caspi et al. 2003) for schizophrenia by virtue of their family history of schizophrenia and/or the manifestation of mild signs and symptoms consistent with the prodromal symptoms of schizophrenia (Yung and McGorry 1996; Brewer et al. 2003). Some aspects of cognitive and perceptual performance in ultra-high risk individuals have been found to predict which individuals will develop psychotic symptoms such as olfactory impairment (Yung and McGorry 1996), verbal memory impairment (Hawkins et al. 2004), and attentional impairment (Brewer et al. 2005). Data combined from the seven sites of the North American Prodromal Longitudinal Study (NAPLS) consortium indicate that poorer scores on an overall composite score of several tests provided the most sensitive measure that differentiated those high-risk children who would develop psychosis from those who would not, and worse verbal memory scores predicted a briefer time to psychosis in those who developed schizophrenia (Reichenberg et al. 2010). However, when regression models were used, a clinical cluster of genetic risk for schizophrenia with recent deterioration in functioning, higher levels of unusual thought content, higher levels of suspicion/paranoia, greater social impairment, and a history of substance abuse predicted psychosis best (Keefe et al. 2006b) and cognitive measures did not contribute additionally beyond the clinical measures.

One of the important limitations of the work completed to date has been a reliance upon the assessment of cognition in schizophrenia and at-risk states with measures designed to measure intelligence or brain damage that may not be sensitive to the specific neural circuitry impairments underlying schizophrenia. Methodologies investigating the specific cognitive and neurobiological processes that may underlie and possibly precede the conversion to psychosis are likely to yield greater risk prediction specificity. Human perception, thought, and action—the basic elements of maintaining reality—are based upon a hierarchical process that conjoins memory and external stimuli, which has been referred to as learning-dependent predictive perception (Cannon et al. 2008; Keefe et al. 2011b). It has been hypothesized that perturbations of the circuitry underlying learning-dependent predictive perception may contribute to risk for developing schizophrenia and thus early detection of risk may be more successful with tasks specifically designed to test memory-prediction function (Krishnan et al. 2011a; Keefe et al. 2011c; Kraus et al. 2009).

## *1.7 Assessment of Cognition in Schizophrenia Treatment Studies*

As listed in Table 3, multisite trials present a large number of challenges that need to be met for cognitive data to be collected reliably and efficiently (Keefe and Kraus 2009). Sites and testers must be trained and certified on the test battery and related

**Table 1** MATRICS consensus cognitive battery (MCCB)

| Domain | Tests |
|---|---|
| Speed of processing | • Category fluency<br>• BACS symbol coding<br>• Trail making A |
| Attention/vigilance | • Continuous performance test (identical pairs version) |
| Working memory | • Letter–number span<br>• WMS-III spatial span |
| Verbal learning | • Hopkins verbal learning test-R |
| Visual learning | • Brief visuospatial memory test-R |
| Reasoning and problem solving | • NAB mazes |
| Social cognition | • MSCEIT managing emotions |

procedures. Data review processes must be established, followed, and maintained throughout the course of the study. Plans must be in place for adding replacement testers or new sites during the study. Test selection must address the scientific hypotheses of the investigators yet be efficient to implement without excessive missing data. Finally, the data analytic plan should focus on a single or small number of outcome measures to reduce statistical errors and avoid reduced statistical power.

### 1.7.1 Registration (Phase III) Trials

The primary product of the MATRICS project was a battery of tests that could be used across treatment studies. This battery, the MATRICS Consensus Cognitive Battery (MCCB), was vetted by a panel of experts in schizophrenia, cognition and clinical trials, validated (Nuechterlein et al. 2008), and normed for ease of use (Kern et al. 2008). This battery of tests was chosen on the basis that these tests were in the key domains of cognition in schizophrenia, had excellent psychometric properties, relations to functional outcomes, were practical for use in clinical trials, and were not burdensome for patients (Nuechterlein et al. 2008). The battery includes ten tests of cognition in seven domains (see Table 1). It was accepted by the US Food and Drug Agency (FDA) as the primary endpoint for registration trials of cognition in schizophrenia (Sevy and Davidson 1995; Buchanan et al. 2005). In multisite government and industry clinical trials, the MCCB has demonstrated sensitivity to cognitive deficits in all domains, excellent test–retest reliability, small practice effects, and is strongly correlated with measures of functional capacity (Buchanan et al. 2011a, b; Keefe et al. 2011a). See Fig. 1. To date, translations have been made available in over 15 languages.

## *1.8 Early Phase Trials*

While the MCCB has been established as the gold standard for schizophrenia registration trials, it is possible that earlier phase work may benefit from the use

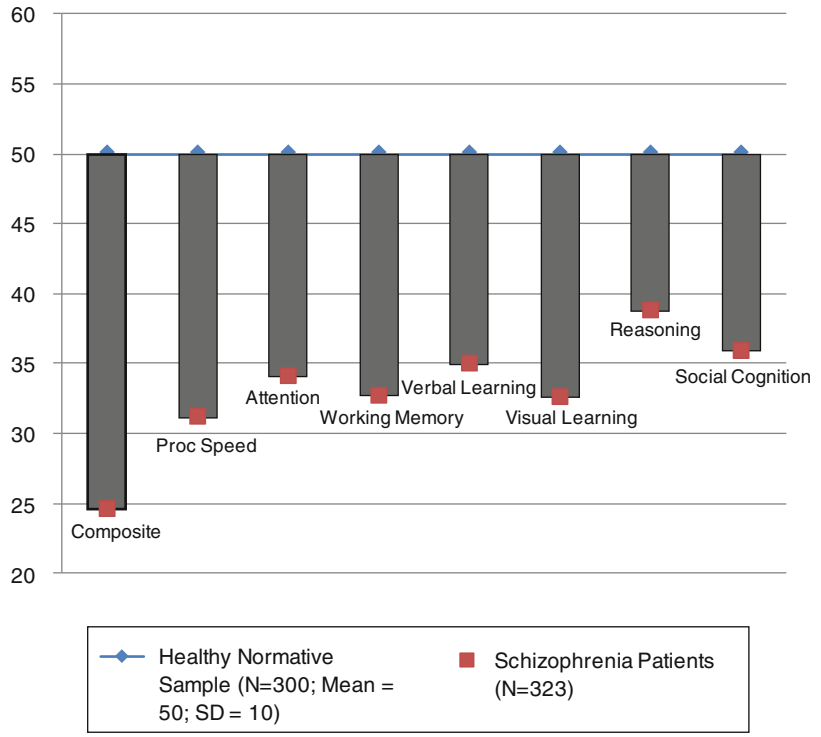



**Fig. 1** Severity and profile of cognitive impairment in schizophrenia using the MATRICS consensus cognitive battery (Keefe et al. 2011a). Reprinted with permission

of measures that assess cognition in a manner that is closer to the actual neurobiological circuits that mediate cognitive function. To meet the need for more precise assessment instruments for measuring changes in specific cognitive functions in treatment studies, cognitive neuroscience methods with known linkages to specific brain systems, and to some extent their biochemistry, provide a logical alternative assessment strategy for identifying specific cognitive impairments to be targeted in schizophrenia treatment trials. These methods can potentially distinguish specific cognitive deficits from generalized deficits that are well assessed by neuropsychological testing. For instance, while list-learning tests may assess memory in a manner that is clinically relevant and correlated with important functional skills, the development of a treatment for memory impairment may need a more sensitive task that better reflects the biological processes involved in the acquisition and storage of representations (Table 2).

A large variety of such tests are available in the cognitive neuroscience literature, many of which have been utilized in schizophrenia research (Carter and Barch 2007; Carter et al. 2008). In order to expedite the use of these tests for early phase drug development, the National Institute of Mental Health sponsored a series of meetings and funding sources called the Cognitive Neuroscience Treatment

**Table 2** Concerns for schizophrenia cognitive enhancement clinical trials using standard neuropsychological tests[a]

| |
|---|
| Rater training and certification is essential |
| • Are testers qualified? |
| ◦ Excluding unqualified testers |
| ◦ Educating testers prior to certification |
| • Are the necessary procedures supported by sponsors? |
| • Is the importance of these procedures acknowledged by site investigators? |
| Data review processes |
| • When cognition is the primary outcome measure, all data reviewed centrally |
| • Less intensive data review is risky and must include random checks throughout trial |
| Intervention during a trial |
| • Prior to study initiation, procedures must be in place for adding testers and sites |
| Task considerations for clinical trials |
| • Increased task complexity can increase missing data rate |
| • Simplify instructions for testers and patients |
| Additional concerns with computerized tests |
| • Automatized procedures can hide problems indigenous to schizophrenia clinical trials |

[a]Modified from Keefe and Harvey (2008)

**Table 3** Criteria for selecting which cognitive constructs and mechanisms should be used for cognition treatment studies in schizophrenia

| | |
|---|---|
| (a) | Construct validity and link to cognitive mechanisms |
| (b) | Link to neural circuit |
| (c) | Link to neural systems through pharmacology |
| (d) | Availability of animal model |
| (e) | Amenable for use in human neuroimaging |
| (f) | Evidence of impairment in schizophrenia |
| (g) | Linked to functional outcome in schizophrenia |
| (h) | Good psychometric characteristics |
| (i) | Multisite implementation potential |

Research to Improve Cognition in Schizophrenia (CTNRICS). One hundred and forty one academic and industry experts in basic cognitive neuroscience, cognitive research in schizophrenia, and treatment of schizophrenia were surveyed to determine the most important criteria for selecting which cognitive constructs and mechanisms should be used for cognition treatment studies in schizophrenia. The most highly rated criteria are listed in Table 3. A subset of the tests that met these criteria has been further developed for early phase trials including the following tests assessing four cognitive constructs:

- Goal maintenance: The Dot Probe Expectancy Task (DPX), a variation on the Expectancy AX-CPT
- Relational encoding and retrieval: The Relational and Item Specific Encoding Task (RISE)
- Gain control: The Contrast–Contrast Effect Task (CCE)
- Visual Integration: The Jitter Orientation Visual Integration Task (JOVI)

These tests are available for download by researchers and clinical trialists at (http://cntrics.ucdavis.edu/).

One of the critical issues associated with sophisticated cognitive neuroscience tests is whether these tests will manifest the substantial and consistent correlations seen between standard neuropsychological tests and indices of everyday functioning. One of the reasons that these standard tests may be so strongly correlated with everyday functioning is because that they are so global and nonspecific. It should be noted that individuals with highly localized lesions in focal brain regions often manifest levels of everyday disability that are less than those seen in schizophrenia. It is entirely possible that these sophisticated tests will be highly sensitive to focal brain functioning and only modestly sensitive to disability. If this is found, then their use for early stage research would have to be carefully considered. As described later, the goal of treatment of cognition, as currently conceptualized, is to reduce disability. If task performance is uncorrelated with disability, then it seems implausible to think that improving performance would reduce disability.

## *1.9 Functional Capacity*

A new development in the last decade of study of cognition and functioning in schizophrenia is that of direct measurement of the abilities that are required to succeed in critical functional domains. Based on the idea that what one can do (i.e., competence or capacity) constrains what one will do (everyday functional performance), these assessments have been developed to measure the skills that underlie functioning. This area of research has led to findings suggesting that functional capacity measures are highly correlated with cognitive test performance and may be more proximal than cognitive abilities to everyday outcomes. This relationship seems logical. If one is interested in whether someone can pay their bills, should the predictive assessment require the patient to manage money, write checks, and make bank deposits, or should they be asked to connect 25 dots as fast as they can?

### 1.9.1 Domains of Functional Capacity Assessment

Functional capacity assessments have been developed to measure everyday living skills, social skills, vocational skills, and medication management. While a review of these instruments could fill this entire chapter, some highlights are presented and more details are available in Harvey et al. (2007). These measures are inherently performance based. As a result, their psychometric characteristics can be measured (e.g., test–retest reliability, floor and ceiling effects). At the same time, as a performance-based assessment, practice effects can occur and other factors that affect the validity of performance-based assessment, such as motivation and environmental settings, can also require consideration.

The original focus of functional capacity measures in schizophrenia was on social skills; these assessments are still routinely performed. Recently, everyday living skills have been a particular focus of research and several of these assessments have been developed and validated. The UCSD Performance-based Skills Assessment

(UPSA) (Patterson et al. 2001) is the most widely used. This assessment has 5 or 6 subtests depending on the version and measures finances, comprehension and planning, communication, transportation, and household management. In the second edition of the UPSA, the UPSA-II, medication management was added. A short two-subtest version has also been developed. The UPSA has been shown to be quite consistently and substantially correlated with cognitive performance; across 11 published studies to date the correlation is consistently about $r = 0.63$. The test–retest reliability and practice effects of the UPSA seem similar to those seen in standard neuropsychological tests. UPSA scores predict residential independence quite effectively. In a comparative study of several different short and long forms of different functional capacity measures (Green et al. 2011), the UPSA was most highly convergent with performance on the MCCB and also the most user friendly in terms of complexity, duration, and ease of administration.

There are some issues in the interpretation of functional capacity assessments as compared to neuropsychological tests and these issues arise when both types of measures are used as treatment outcomes as described later. Neuropsychological tests are designed to measure the entire range of human cognitive functioning and are not designed to be specifically targeted at the prediction of any particularly functional skills. As a result, there is a wide range of scores on these tests and, because of the way that they are designed, only about 0.1% or less of the healthy population attain perfect scores and hence show ceiling effects. In contrast, functional capacity measures are intrinsically aimed at disability. Because the successful performance of everyday living skills is very common in the healthy adult population, a valid functional capacity test would have a large proportion of healthy people passing with 100% correct. As people with schizophrenia show an extraordinary prevalence of disability in domains where the healthy population typically achieves success without a problem, the distribution of scores across the two populations would not be expected to be equivalently normal. The uncommon nondisabled individual with schizophrenia would also be expected to perform extremely well on these tests. Thus, relatively higher scores on functional capacity measures may occur in people with schizophrenia. This issue does not arise as often with tests from the neuropsychology tradition. Similar to the discussion earlier, disability is not a treatment target in individuals who are not disabled. Thus, someone who is living independently, paying his/her own expenses, and otherwise managing their everyday functioning would be expected to get a high score on a disability-related skills measure and not to be a candidate for a treatment aimed at disability reduction.

## 2 Treatments for Cognitive Impairment in Schizophrenia

As of this writing, there are no pharmacologic or behavioral treatments that have received regulatory approval. Other chapters in this volume address the many important advances that hold promise for the eventual development of a treatment

for cognition in schizophrenia. In this chapter, we will review the literature on the effects of antipsychotics on cognition and discuss methodology for cognitive enhancement studies.

## 2.1 Antipsychotic Effects on Cognition

The effects of antipsychotic medications on cognition remain controversial. Several early studies and meta-analyses (Swartz et al. 2003; Davis et al. 2003; Rosenheck et al. 2003) suggested that second-generation antipsychotic treatment may provide greater neurocognitive benefit to schizophrenia patients than first-generation, "typical" antipsychotics. These effects extended even to first-episode patients who had not had previous antipsychotic treatment (Keefe et al. 2004; Harvey et al. 2005). However, many of these studies had substantial methodological limitations or flaws, such as small sample sizes, short duration of treatment, no comparator or a comparator of relatively high doses of first-generation antipsychotic treatment, and inattention to important clinical factors such as the relationship of cognitive improvement with symptom change, anticholinergic treatment, and change in extrapyramidal symptoms (Swartz et al. 2003; Davis et al. 2003; Rosenheck et al. 2003; Stroup et al. 2006). The CATIE study enabled an examination of these issues in a large sample of patients (Keefe et al. 2007a). Despite unprecedented statistical power in 817 patients randomized to a single first-generation antipsychotic, perphenazine, and the four second-generation antipsychotics available at the time (olanzapine, quetiapine, risperidone, and ziprasidone), there were no significant differences in the treatments after 2 months of treatment, which was the primary analysis endpoint. All groups showed a small benefit over time, but the magnitude of the benefit was viewed as consistent with the small practice and/or placebo effects found with the test battery utilized (Keefe et al. 2007b). Surprisingly, in exploratory analyses, the first-generation antipsychotic perphenazine demonstrated greater improvement than two of the second-generation antipsychotics in the 303 (37% of those assessed in the 2-month analyses) patients who continued on the same treatment for 18 months.

These results were unexpected and controversial (Kraemer and Frank 2010). In comparison to previous studies, at least 60% of patients in the CATIE trial reported being on atypical antipsychotic treatment prior to randomization, which was substantially higher than in many of the earlier studies completed when treatment with second-generation antipsychotics was less common. However, more recent studies on patients with first-episode psychosis and minimal or no previous antipsychotic treatment confirm these results. A comparison of olanzapine, quetiapine, and risperidone in first-episode patients using the identical neurocognitive test battery the CATIE trial produced very similar results, with all treatments having a very modest effect on cognition (Van Putten et al. 1991). Perhaps the most relevant study in this area was the European Union First Episode Schizophrenia Trial (EUFEST), a comparison of

open-label haloperidol (1–4 mg/day), amisulpride (200–800 mg/day), olanzapine (5–20 mg/day), quetiapine (200–750 mg/day), or ziprasidone (40–160 mg/day). This trial produced similar results with no differences between treatments, even in antipsychotic-naïve patients (Sweet et al. 2000). However, all groups showed a modest improvement. These improvements were only slightly stronger than practice effects, and demonstrated a relation to clinical symptom change, suggesting that first-episode patients may demonstrate some overall cognitive benefit related to overall clinical improvement. However, recent studies of completely antipsychotic-naïve patients suggest that while standard neuropsychological measures may demonstrate little change with treatment, other more specific measures of cognitive neuroscience processes such as speeded saccadic latencies to visual targets are normalized by risperidone but not haloperidol treatment (Reilly et al. 2006). Follow-up studies utilizing cognitive neuroscience tasks across specific cognitive domains may yield useful insights as was observed with the CATIE trials.

Overall, these data suggest that in current treatment settings, the impact of antipsychotic medications on neurocognition varies little on average, with minimal benefit for most treatments. The nature of these trials cannot exclude the possibility that some individual patients experience benefits while others worsen, possibly differentially across medications, but do suggest that there is no specific medication to which a switch would ensure benefit.

## *2.2 Pharmacological Augmentation as a Cognitive Enhancement Strategy*

Pharmacological augmentation as a treatment strategy is consistent with best practices for the treatment of other illnesses. For instance, the treatment of hypertension and heart disease typically involves multiple medications with different targets, such as diuretics, ACE inhibitors, and calcium channel blockers. In schizophrenia, the analogous treatment might include atypical antipsychotic medications, treatments for negative symptoms, and treatments for cognitive deficits. Based on the history of FDA evaluation of treatments for cognitive and functional deficits in dementia, a model strategy for the development of cognitive enhancing treatments for schizophrenia has been advanced and endorsed. As a result of the MATRICS initiative, a unique collaboration between the FDA, the National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH), academia, and the pharmaceutical industry and a consensus regarding the acceptable methods for conducting a registration trial were developed (Sevy and Davidson 1995) and modified (Buchanan et al. 2005). There are several critical features of this design.

### 2.2.1 Clinical Stability

The FDA has long been concerned that new treatments that improve cognition do so directly, rather than by reducing the severity of other features of the illness. Thus, a

treatment that improves cognition must do so in the absence of improvements in other illness features, such as psychosis. Since FDA has thus far taken the position that simultaneous changes in illness features (cognition and psychosis) that are not statistically correlated may be related, only patients who are clinically stable can participate. This screening criterion was initially defined as a moderate or less (<4) severity rating on selected PANSS positive scale items at both screening and baseline (Sevy and Davidson 1995), but has recently been revised to allow patients who receive a score of 5 on the PANSS positive items (Buchanan et al. 2005). Also, there can be no hospitalization for psychiatric illness for at least 8 weeks prior to screening.

### 2.2.2 Treatment Stability

This is defined by no major change in antipsychotic medications for at least 6 weeks prior to screening.

### 2.2.3 No Medications That Can Influence Cognitive Functioning

This is defined by no treatment with anticholinergics, amphetamines, or L-DOPA.

### 2.2.4 Treatment Duration

At least some of the pivotal trials must have a 6-month treatment duration. This requirement is based on the idea that treatment effects must be durable and is influenced by concerns that the benefit of certain treatments may not persist over time. However some evidence indicates that cognitive enhancing treatments in people with schizophrenia can have benefits that occur within minutes to hours (Carter and Barch 2007).

### 2.2.5 Co-primary Measure

The FDA required a "co-primary" in cognitive enhancement studies in dementia. This requirement was designed to ensure that changes in cognition on a performance-based test led to a clinically meaningful change in everyday functioning. In the context of, for instance, cholinesterase inhibitor treatment of dementia, this requirement makes sense because none of the treatments approved by the FDA actually led to immediate improvements in functioning, but rather treatments were deemed successful for suspending the otherwise inexorable decline seen in Alzheimer's disease.

Similarly, a co-primary measure has been required for schizophrenia cognitive enhancement trials. However, there is little evidence that any of the currently

available co-primary measures have the potential to be sensitive to treatment-related changes in performance. The existence of this FDA requirement led to a comprehensive collaborative study, funded by grants from the pharmaceutical industry to the Foundation for the National Institute of Mental Health (F-NIMH), which was recently completed, presented to the public, and is now published. The results of that study (Green et al. 2011) indicated that performance-based measures of functional capacity were clearly superior to interview-based assessments of cognitive functioning in terms of their convergence with the MCCB. It needs to be stressed that this was a cross-sectional validation study and not a treatment outcomes study.

## 2.3 Results of Cognitive Enhancement Efforts to Date

Several cognitive enhancement treatment research programs with a wide variety of treatment mechanisms are under way. Very recent data from Phase II trials suggest that some compounds may have promise for improving cognition in schizophrenia, but none of these compounds have been approved for actual use in patients. Some of these studies have been completed with negative results (Keefe et al. 2011c). While a full discussion of the reasons for the negative results would be speculative and premature, one of the major issues that may be important is that of possible interfering effects of antipsychotic medications. A single abnormal neurotransmitter system is unlikely to lead to the widespread impairments seen, but it is quite likely that single-transmitter interventions could be interfered with by the blockading effects of antipsychotic medications. Most importantly, however, many of the studies completed to date have been seriously underpowered to detect true treatment effects. A recent review of all studies completed as of June 1, 2011 (Keefe et al. 2011c) suggested that none of the studies above had sufficient power to detect a medium ($d = 0.5$) effect size, which would require 71 subjects per group assuming the primary outcome measure has excellent test–retest reliability (ICC $= -0.90$) as with the MCCB composite score (Keefe et al. 2011a). Several studies had sufficient power to detect a large ($d = 0.8$) effect.

## 2.4 Cognitive Remediation as a Platform for Pharmacologic Studies

While broad-ranging initiatives are ongoing to refine our understanding of the mechanisms of cognitive improvement in schizophrenia, an additional area of consideration is the relatively impoverished cognitive lives of patients who enroll in pharmacologic enhancement studies. It is possible that many of these experimental pharmacologic interventions will be of only minimal benefit when patients are evaluated in the context of their habitual low level of cognitive stimulation.

Part of the explanation for why clinical trials testing the efficacy of cognitive-enhancing medications have so far been largely unsuccessful may be that patients in these trials are not provided with substantive opportunity to utilize the cognitive benefit that they may have acquired during the drug treatment study. Thus, analogous to the need for physical exercise in an individual who takes steroids to increase muscle mass, schizophrenia patients in pharmacological intervention trials may require systematic cognitive training to "exercise" any newfound cognitive potential that they may have acquired from drug treatment (Keefe et al. 2011d).

Cognitive remediation may provide an excellent platform for enriching the cognitive environment of patients engaged in pharmacologic trials to improve cognition. Several studies and meta-analysis suggest that cognitive remediation produces medium effect size improvements in cognitive performance and, when combined with psychiatric rehabilitation, also improves functional outcomes (McGurk et al. 2007a, b). Additionally, patients find these programs to be enjoyable and engaging, and they have been linked with increases in participant self-esteem (Wykes et al. 1999). Ongoing treatment with cognitive remediation may thus provide schizophrenia patients with the necessary cognitive enrichment and motivation to demonstrate the true potential of effective cognitive enhancement with pharmacologic intervention. Recent work suggests that these methods are feasible in clinical trials even at sites without cognitive remediation experience (Keefe et al. 2012).

## 3 Conclusions

Cognitive functioning is moderately to severely impaired in patients with schizophrenia. This impairment is the prime driver of the significant disabilities in occupational, social, and economic functioning in patients with schizophrenia. The profile of deficits in schizophrenia includes many of the most important aspects of human cognition: attention, memory, reasoning, and processing speed. While various efforts are under way to identify specific aspects of neurocognition that may lie closest to the neurobiological etiology and pathophysiology of the illness, and may provide relevant convergence with animal models of cognition, standard neuropsychological measures continue to demonstrate the greatest sensitivity to functionally relevant cognitive impairment. These measures have been the primary outcome measures in treatment studies, as exemplified by the MCCB.

There have been several prominent negative treatment trials, including large-scale studies examining the effects of antipsychotic medications on cognition in schizophrenia and first-episode psychosis. There have also been a number of prominent negative studies of add-on treatments, although very few of these studies have had sufficient statistical power to generate firm conclusions. In addition, a few recent studies examining novel add-on treatments have produced some encouraging findings. Ongoing work aims to produce more specific cognitive neuroscience measures that may be more sensitive targets for pharmacologic intervention.

Cognitive remediation programs have generated considerable interest as these methods are far less costly than pharmacologic treatment and are likely to be safer. A growing consensus suggests that these interventions produce modest gains for patients with schizophrenia, but the efficacy of the various methods used has not been empirically investigated. An additional consideration for cognitive remediation methods is that they may serve as an excellent platform of cognitive enrichment in trials of pharmacologic treatment to generate the cognitive activity that may be necessary to register pharmacologic benefit.

## References

Addington J, Addington D (1998) Facial affect recognition and information processing in schizophrenia and bipolar disorder. Schizophr Res 32:171–181

Addington J, Addington D (2000) Neurocognitive and social functioning in schizophrenia: a 2.5 year follow-up study. Schizophr Res 44:47–56

Addington J, Addington D, Maticka-Tyndale E (1991) Cognitive functioning and positive and negative symptoms in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 5:123–134

Aleman A, Hijman R, de Haan EH, Kahn RS (1999) Memory impairment in schizophrenia: a meta-analysis. Am J Psychiatry 156:1358–1366

American Psychiatric Association (2000) Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders DSM-IV-TR, Text Revision 4th edn. American Psychiatric Association, Washington, DC, ISBN 0-89042-024-6

Baddeley A (1992) Working memory. Science 255:556–559, Review

Barch DM, Keefe RSE (2010) Anticipating DSM-V: Opportunities and challenges for cognition and psychosis. Schizophr Bull 36:43–47

Bell MD, Bryson G (2001) Work rehabilitation in schizophrenia: does cognitive impairment limit improvement? Schizophr Bull 27:269–279

Bell MD, Greig TC, Kaplan E, Bryson G (1997) Wisconsin Card Sorting Test dimensions in schizophrenia: factorial, predictive, and divergent validity. J Clin Exp Neuropsychol 19:933–941

Bilder RM, Mukherjee S, Rieder RO, Pandurangi AK (1985) Symptomatic and neuropsychological components of defect states. Schizophr Bull 11:409–419

Brekke JS, Long JD, Nesbitt N, Sobel E (1997) The impact of service characteristics on functional outcomes from community support programs for persons with schizophrenia: a growth curve analysis. J Consult Clin Psychol 65:464–475

Brekke JS, Kohrt B, Green MF (2001) Neuropsychological functioning as a moderator of the relationship between psychosocial functioning and the subjective experience of self and life in schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 27:697–708

Brekke JS, Hoe M, Long J, Green MF (2007) How neurocognition and social cognition influence functional change during community-based psychosocial rehabilitation for individuals with schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 33:1247–1256

Bressi S, Miele L, Bressi C et al (1996) Deficit of central executive component of working memory in schizophrenia. New Trends Exp Clin Psychiatry 12:243–252

Brewer WJ, Wood SJ, McGorry PD, Francey SM, Phillips LJ, Yung AR, Anderson V, Copolov DL, Singh B, Velakoulis D, Pantelis C (2003) Impairment of olfactory identification ability in individuals at ultra-high risk for psychosis who later develop schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 160:1790–1794

Brewer WJ, Francey SM, Wood SJ, Jackson HJ, Pantelis C, Phillips LJ, Yung AR, Anderson VA, McGorry PD (2005) Memory impairments identified in people at ultra-high risk for psychosis who later develop first episode psychosis. Am J Psychiatry 162:71–78

Buchanan RW, Holstein C, Breier A (1994) The comparative efficacy and long-term effect of clozapine treatment on neuropsychological test performance. Biol Psychiatry 36:717–725

Buchanan RW, Davis M, Goff D, Green MF, Keefe RS, Leon AC, Nuechterlein KH, Laughren T, Levine R, Stover E, Fenton W, Marder SR (2005) A summary of the FDA-NIMH-MATRICS workshop on clinical trial design for neurocognitive drugs for schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 31:5–19

Buchanan RW, Keefe RS, Umbricht D, Green MF, Laughren T, Marder SR (2011a) The FDA-NIMH-MATRICS guidelines for clinical trial design of cognitive-enhancing drugs: What do we know 5 years later? Schizophr Bull 37:1209–1017

Buchanan RW, Keefe RS, Lieberman JA, Barch DM, Csernansky JG, Goff DC, Gold JM, Green MF, Jarskog LF, Javitt DC, Kimhy D, Kraus MS, McEvoy JP, Mesholam-Gately RI, Seidman LJ, Ball MP, McMahon RP, Kern RS, Robinson J, Marder SR (2011b) A randomized clinical trial of MK-0777 for the treatment of cognitive impairments in people with schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 69:442–449

Burdick KE, Goldberg TE, Cornblatt BA, Keefe RS, Gopin CB, Derosse P, Braga RJ, Malhotra AK (2011) The MATRICS consensus cognitive battery in patients with bipolar I disorder. Neuropsychopharmacology 36:1587–1592

Callicott JH, Mattay VS, Bertolino A, Finn K, Coppola R, Frank JA, Goldberg TE, Weinberger DR (1999) Physiological characteristics of capacity constraints in working memory as revealed by functional MRI. Cereb Cortex 9:20–26

Cannon TD, Cadenhead K, Cornblatt B, Woods SW, Addington J, Walker E, Seidman LJ, Perkins D, Tsuang M, McGlashan T, Heinssen R (2008) Prediction of psychosis in youth at high clinical risk: a multisite longitudinal study in North America. Arch Gen Psychiatry 65:28–37

Carter CS, Barch DM (2007) Cognitive neuroscience-based approaches to measuring and improving treatment effects on cognition in schizophrenia: the CNTRICS initiative. Schizophr Bull 33:1131–1137

Carter C, Robertson L, Nordahl T, Chaderjian M, Kraft L, O'Shora-Celaya L (1996) Spatial working memory deficits and their relationship to negative symptoms in unmedicated schizophrenia patients. Biol Psychiatry 40:930–932

Carter CS, Barch DM, Buchanan RW, Bullmore E, Krystal JH, Cohen J, Geyer M, Green M, Nuechterlein KH, Robbins T, Silverstein S, Smith EE, Strauss M, Wykes T, Heinssen R (2008) Identifying cognitive mechanisms targeted for treatment development in schizophrenia: An overview of the first meeting of the Cognitive Neuroscience Treatment Research to Improve Cognition in Schizophrenia Initiative. Biol Psychiatry 64:4–10

Caspi A, Reichenberg A, Weiser M, Rabinowitz J, Kaplan Z, Knobler H, Davidson-Sagi N, Davidson M (2003) Cognitive performance in schizophrenia patients assessed before and following the first psychotic episode. Schizophr Res 65:87–94

Corcoran R, Mercer G, Frith CD (1995) Schizophrenia, symptomatology and social inference: investigating "theory of mind" in people with schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 17:5–13

Corrigan PW, Liberman RP, Engel JD (1990) From noncompliance to collaboration in the treatment of schizophrenia. Hosp Commun Psychiatry 41:1203–1211

David AS, Malmberg A, Brandt L, Allebeck P, Lewis G (1997) IQ and risk for schizophrenia: A population-based cohort study. Psychol Med 27:1311–1323

Davidson M, Harvey PD, Powchik P, Parrella M, White L, Knobler HY, Losonczy MF, Keefe RS, Frecska E (1995) Severity of symptoms in chronically institutionalized geriatric schizophrenic patients. Am J Psychiatry 152:197–207

Davidson M, Reichenberg A, Rabinowitz J, Weiser M, Kaplan Z, Mark M (1999) Behavioral and intellectual markers for schizophrenia in apparently healthy male adolescents. Am J Psychiatry 156:1328–1335

Davis SM, Koch GG, Davis CE, LaVange LM (2003) Statistical approaches to effectiveness measurement and outcome-driven re-randomizations in the Clinical Antipsychotic Trials of Intervention Effectiveness (CATIE) studies. Schizophr Bull 29:73–80

Dias EC, Butler PD, Hoptman MJ, Javitt DC (2011) Early sensory contributions to contextual encoding deficits in schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 68:654–664
Dickerson F, Boronow JJ, Ringel N, Parente F (1999) Social functioning and neurocognitive deficits in outpatients with schizophrenia: A 2-year follow-up. Schizophr Res 37:13–20
Dickinson D, Ramsey ME, Gold JM (2007) Overlooking the obvious: A meta-analytic comparison of digit symbol coding tasks and other cognitive measures in schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 64:532–542
Donohoe G, Owens N, O'Donnell C, Burke T, Moore L, Tobin A, O'Callaghan E (2001) Predictors of compliance with neuroleptic medication among inpatients with schizophrenia: A discriminant function analysis. Eur Psychiatry 16:293–298
Drury VM, Robinson EJ, Birchwood M (1998) Theory of mind skills during an acute episode of psychosis and following recovery. Psychol Med 28:1101–1112
Edwards J, Pattison PE, Jackson HJ, Wales RJ (2001) Facial affect and affective prosody recognition in first-episode schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 48:235–253
Ertuğrul A, Uluğ B (2002) The influence of neurocognitive deficits and symptoms on disability in schizophrenia. Acta Psychiatr Scand 105:196–201
Evans JD, Heaton RK, Paulsen JS, Palmer BW, Patterson T, Jeste DV (2003) The relationship of neuropsychological abilities to specific domains of functional capacity in older schizophrenic patients. Biol Psychiatry 53:422–430
Fenton WS, Blyler CR, Heinssen RK (1997) Determinants of medication compliance in schizophrenia: empirical and clinical findings. Schizophr Bull 23:637–651
Friedman L (2002) Psychoanalysis: practice and technique. J Am Psychoanal Assoc 50:727–732
Fuller R, Nopoulos P, Arndt S, O'Leary D, Ho BC, Andreasen NC (2002) Longitudinal assessment of premorbid cognitive functioning in patients with schizophrenia through examination of standardized scholastic test performance. Am J Psychiatry 159:1183–1189
Gaebel W, Wölwer W (1992) Facial expression and emotional face recognition in schizophrenia and depression. Eur Arch Psychiatry Clin Neurosci 242:46–52
George TP, Ziedonis DM, Feingold A, Pepper WT, Satterburg CA, Winkel J, Rounsaville BJ, Kosten TR (2000) Nicotine transdermal patch and atypical antipsychotic medications for smoking cessation in schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 157:1835–1842
Gold JM, Goldberg RW, McNary SW, Dixon LB, Lehman AF (2002) Cognitive correlates of job tenure among patients with severe mental illness. Am J Psychiatry 159:1395–1402
Gold JM, Wilk CM, McMahon RP, Buchanan RW, Luck SJ (2003) Working memory for visual features and conjunctions in schizophrenia. J Abnorm Psychol 112:61–71
Goldberg TE, Weinberger DR, Berman KF, Pliskin NH, Podd MH (1987) Further evidence for dementia of the prefrontal type in schizophrenia? A controlled study of teaching the Wisconsin Card Sorting Test. Arch Gen Psychiatry 44:1008–1014
Goldberg TE, Ragland JD, Torrey EF, Gold JM, Bigelow LB, Weinberger DR (1990) Neuropsychological assessment of monozygotic twins discordant for schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 47:1066–1072
Goldman-Rakic PS (1987) Circuitry of the frontal association cortex and its relevance to dementia. Arch Gerontol Geriatr 6:299–309
Goldman-Rakic PS (1994) Working memory dysfunction in schizophrenia. J Neuropsychiatry Clin Neurosci 6:348–357
Green MF (1996) What are the functional consequences of neurocognitive deficits in schizophrenia? Am J Psychiatry 153:321–330
Green MF, Kern RS, Braff DL, Mintz J (2000) Neurocognitive deficits and functional outcome in schizophrenia: are we measuring the "right stuff"? Schizophr Bull 26:119–136, Review
Green MF, Nuechterlein KH, Gold JM, Barch DM, Cohen J, Essock S, Fenton WS, Frese F, Goldberg TE, Heaton RK, Keefe RSE, Kern RS, Kraemer H, Stover E, Weinberger DR, Zalcman S, Marder SR (2004) Approaching a consensus cognitive battery for clinical trials in schizophrenia: The NIMH-MATRICS conference to select cognitive domains and test criteria. Biol Psychiatry 56:301–307
Green MF, Schooler NR, Kern RS, Frese FJ, Granberry W, Harvey PD, Karson CN, Peters N, Stewart M, Seidman LJ, Sonnenberg J, Stone WS, Walling D, Stover E, Marder SR (2011)

Evaluation of functionally meaningful measures for clinical trials of cognition enhancement in schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 168:400–407
Harvey PD, Keefe RSE (1997) Cognitive impairment in schizophrenia and implications of atypical neuroleptic treatment. CNS Spectrums 2:1–11
Harvey PD, Rabinowitz J, Eerdekens M, Davidson M (2005) Treatment of cognitive impairment in early psychosis: a comparison of risperidone and haloperidol in a large long-term trial. Am J Psychiatry 162:1888–1895
Harvey PD, Velligan DI, Bellack AS (2007) Performance-based measures of functional skills: usefulness in clinical treatment studies. Schizophr Bull 33:1138–1148
Hawkins KA, Addington J, Keefe RS, Christensen B, Perkins DO, Zipursky R, Woods SW, Miller TJ, Marquez E, Breier A, McGlashan TH (2004) Neuropsychological status of subjects at high risk for a first episode of psychosis. Schizophr Res 67:115–122
Heaton RK, Pendleton MG (1981) Use of Neuropsychological tests to predict adult patients' everyday functioning. J Consult Clin Psychol 49:807–821
Heinrichs RW, Zakzanis KK (1998) Neurocognitive deficit in schizophrenia: a quantitative review of the evidence. Neuropsychology 12:426–445
Hyman SE, Fenton WS (2003) Medicine. What are the right targets for psychopharmacology? Science 299:350–351
Jarboe KS, Schwartz SK (1999) The relationship between medication noncompliance and cognitive function in patients with schizophrenia. J Am Psychiatr Nurses Assoc 5:S2–S8
Jeste SD, Patterson TL, Palmer BW, Dolder CR, Goldman S, Jeste DV (2003) Cognitive predictors of medication adherence among middle-aged and older outpatients with schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 63:49–58
Jones P, Rodgers B, Murray R, Marmot M (1994) Child development risk factors for adult schizophrenia in the British 1946 birth cohort. Lancet 344:1398–1402
Keefe RSE (1995) The contribution of neuropsychology to psychiatry. Am J Psychiatry 152:6–15
Keefe RSE (2000) Working memory dysfunction and its relevance in schizophrenia. In: Sharma T, Harvey PD (eds) Cognition in schizophrenia: characteristics, correlates, and treatment. Oxford University Press, Oxford, pp 16–49
Keefe RSE, Fenton WS (2007) How should DSM-V criteria for schizophrenia include cognitive impairment? Schizophr Bull 33:912–920
Keefe RSE, Harvey PD (2008) Implementation considerations for multi-site clinical trials with cognitive neuroscience tasks. Schizophr Bull 34:656–663
Keefe RSE, Kraus MS (2009) Measuring memory-prediction errors and their consequences in youth at risk for schizophrenia. Ann Acad Med Sing 38:414–416
Keefe RSE, Arnold MC, Bayen UJ, McEvoy JP, Wilson WH (2002) Source monitoring deficits for self-generated stimuli in schizophrenia: Multinomial modeling of data from three sources. Schizophr Res 57:51–67
Keefe RSE, Seidman LJ, Christensen BK, Hamer RM, Sharma T, Sitskoorn MM, Lewine RR, Yurgelun-Todd DA, Gur RC, Tohen M, Tollefson GD, Sanger TM, Lieberman JA (2004) Comparative effect of atypical and conventional antipsychotic drugs on neurocognition in first-episode psychosis: A randomized double-blind trial of olanzapine versus low-doses of haloperidol. Am J Psychiatry 161:985–99
Keefe RSE, Eesley CE, Poe M (2005) Defining a cognitive function decrement in schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 57:688–691
Keefe RSE, Bilder RM, Harvey PD, Sm D, Palmer BW, Gold JM, Meltzer HY, Green MF, Miller DD, Canive JM, Adler LW, Manschreck TC, Swartz M, Rosenheck R, Perkins DO, Walker TM, Stroup TS, McEvoy JP, Lieberman JA (2006a) Baseline neurocognitive deficits in the CATIE schizophrenia trial. Neuropsychopharmacology 31:2033–2046
Keefe RSE, Perkins DO, Gu H, Zipursky RB, Christensen BK, Lieberman JA (2006b) A longitudinal study of neurocognitive function in individuals at-risk for psychosis. Schizophr Res 88:26–35
Keefe RSE, Bilder RM, Davis SM, Harvey PD, Palmer BW, Gold JM, Meltzer HY, Green MF, Capuano G, Stroup TS, McEvoy JP, Swartz MS, Rosenheck RA, Perkins DO, Davis CE, Hasiao JK, Lieberman JA, CATIE Investigators, Neurocognitive Working Group (2007a)

Neurocognitive effects of antipsychotic medications in patients with chronic schizophrenia in the CATIE trial. Arch Gen Psychiatry 64:633–647

Keefe RSE, Malhotra AK, Meltzer H, Kane JM, Buchanan RW, Murthy A, Sovel M, Li C, Goldman R (2007b) Efficacy and safety of donepezil in patients with schizophrenia or schizoaffective disorder: Significant placebo/practice effects in a 12-week, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Neuropsychopharmacology 33:1217–1228

Keefe RSE, Fox KH, Harvey PD, Cucchiaro J, Siu C, Loebel A (2011a) Characteristics of the MATRICS consensus cognitive battery in a 29 site antipsychotic schizophrenia clinical trial. Schizophr Res 125:161–168

Keefe RSE, Kraus MS, Krishnan RR (2011b) Failures in learning-dependent predictive perception as the key cognitive vulnerability to psychosis in schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 36:367–380

Keefe R, Buchanan R, Marder S et al (2011c) Clinical trials of potential cognitive-enhancing drugs in schizophrenia: What have we learned so far? Annual Meeting of NCDEU, Boca Raton, FL

Keefe RSE, Vinogradov S, Medalia A, Silverstein SM, Bell MD, Dickinson D, Ventura J, Marder SR, Stroup TS (2011d) Report from the Working Group Conference on multi-site trial design for cognitive remediation in schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 37:1057–1065

Keefe RSE, Vinogradov S, Medalia A, Buckley PF, Caroff SN, d'Souza DC, Harvey PD, Graham KA, Hamer RM, Marder SM, Miller DD, Olson SJ, Patel JK, Velligan D, Walker TM, Haim AJ, Stroup TS (2012) Feasibility and pilot efficacy results from the multi-site Cognitive Remediation in the Schizophrenia Trials Network (CRSTN) study. J Clin Psychiatry 73: 1016–1022

Kern RS, Nuechterlein KH, Green MF, Baade LE, Fenton WS, Gold JM, Keefe RS, Mesholam-Gately R, Mintz J, Seidman LJ, Stover E, Marder SR (2008) The MATRICS consensus cognitive battery: Part 2. Co-norming and standardization. Am J Psychiatry 165:214–220

Kraemer HC, Frank E (2010) Evaluation of comparative treatment trials: assessing clinical benefits and risks for patients, rather than statistical effects on measures. J Am Med Assoc 304:683–684

Kraus MS, Keefe RSE, Krishnan RK (2009) Memory-prediction errors and their consequences in schizophrenia. Neuropsychol Rev 19:336–352

Kremen WS, Seidman LJ, Faraone SV, Toomey R, Tsuang MT (2000) The paradox of normal neuropsychological function in schizophrenia. J Abnorm Psychol 109:743–752

Krishnan RR, Fivaz M, Kraus M, Keefe RSE (2011a) Hierarchical temporal processing deficit model of reality distortion and psychoses. Mol Psychiatry 16:129–144

Krishnan RR, Kraus MS, Keefe RSE (2011b) Comprehensive model of how reality distortion and symptoms occur in schizophrenia. Could impairment in learning-dependent predictive perception account for the manifestations of schizophrenia? Psychiatry Clin Neurosci 65:305–317

Leung WW, Bowi CR, Harvey PD (2008) Functional implications of neuropsychological normality and symptom remission in older outpatients diagnosed with schizophrenia: A cross-sectional study. J Int Neuropsychol Soc 14:479–488

Lysaker P, Bell M (1995) Work rehabilitation and improvements in insight in schizophrenia. J Nerv Ment Dis 183:103–106

Malla AK, Norman RM, Manchanda R, Townsend L (2002) Symptoms, cognition, treatment adherence and functional outcome in first-episode psychosis. Psychol Med 32:1109–1119

Mausbach BT, Bowie CR, Harvey PD, Twamley EW, Goldman SR, Jeste DV, Patterson TL (2008) Usefulness of the UCSD performance-based skills assessment (UPSA) for predicting residential independence in patients with chronic schizophrenia. J Psychiatr Res 42:320–327

McClure MM, Bowie CR, Patterson TL, Heaton RK, Weaver C, Anderson H, Harvey PD (2007) Correlations of functional capacity and neuropsychological performance in older patients with schizophrenia: evidence for specificity of relationships? Schizophr Res 89:330–338

McGurk SR, Meltzer HY (2000) The role of cognition in vocational functioning in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 45:175–184

McGurk SR, Mueser KT, Harvey PD, LaPuglia R, Marder J (2003) Cognitive and symptom predictors of work outcomes for clients with schizophrenia in supported employment. Psychiatr Serv 54:1129–1135

McGurk SR, Mueser KT, Feldman K, Wolfe R, Pascaris A (2007a) Cognitive training for supported employment: 2–3 year outcomes of a randomized controlled trial. Am J Psychiatry 164:437–441

McGurk SR, Twamley EW, Sitzer DI, McHugo GJ, Mueser KT (2007b) A meta-analysis of cognitive remediation in schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 164:1791–1802

Mohamed S, Paulsen JS, O'Leary D, Arndt S, Andreasen N (1999) Generalized cognitive deficits in schizophrenia: A study of first-episode patients. Arch Gen Psychiatry 56:749–754

Mohamed S, Rosenheck R, Swartz M, Stroup S, Lieberman JA, Keefe RS (2008) Relationship of cognition and psychopathology to functional impairment in schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 165:978–987

Morrison RL, Bellack AS, Mueser KT (1988) Deficits in facial-affect recognition and schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 14:67–83, Review

Mueser KT, Bellack AS, Douglas MS, Wade JH (1991) Prediction of social skill acquisition in schizophrenic and major affective disorder patients from memory and symptomatology. Psychiatry Res 37:281–296

Nuechterlein KH, Barch DM, Gold JM, Goldberg TE, Green MF, Heaton RK (2004) Identification of separable cognitive factors in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 72:29–39, Review

Nuechterlein KH, Green MF, Kern RS, Baade LE, Barch DM, Cohen JD, Essock S, Fenton WS, Frese FJ III, Gold JM, Goldberg T, Heaton RK, Keefe RS, Kraemer H, Mesholam-Gately R, Seidman LJ, Stover E, Weinberger DR, Young AS, Zalcman S, Marder SR (2008) The MATRICS Consensus Cognitive Battery, part 1: test selection, reliability, and validity. Am J Psychiatry 165:203–213

Palmer BW, Heaton RK, Paulsen JS, Kuck J, Braff D, Harris MJ, Zisook S, Jeste DV (1997) Is it possible to be schizophrenic yet neuropsychologically normal? Neuropsychology 11:437–446

Patterson TL, Goldman S, McKibbin CL, Hughs T, Jeste DV (2001) UCSD Performance-Based Skills Assessment: development of a new measure of everyday functioning for severely mentally ill adults. Schizophr Bull 27:235–245

Patterson TL, Lacro J, McKibbin CL, Moscona S, Hughs T, Jeste DV (2002) Medication management ability assessment: results from a performance-based measure in older outpatients with schizophrenia. J Clin Psychopharmacol 22:11–19

Penn DL, Spaulding W, Reed D, Sullivan M (1996) The relationship of social cognition to ward behavior in chronic schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 20:327–335

Penn DL, Corrigan PW, Bentall RP, Racenstein JM, Newman L (1997) Social cognition in schizophrenia. Psychol Bull 121:114–132

Pinkham AE, Loughead J, Ruparel K, Overton E, Gur RE, Gur RC (2011) Abnormal modulation of amygdala activity in schizophrenia in response to direct- and averted-gaze threat-related facial expressions. Am J Psychiatry 168:293–301

Reichenberg A, Harvey PD, Bowie CR, Mojtabai R, Rabinowitz J, Heaton RK, Bromet E (2009) Neuropsychological function and dysfunction in schizophrenia and psychotic affective disorders. Schizophr Bull 35:1022–1029

Reichenberg A, Caspi A, Harrington H, Houts R, Keefe RS, Murray RM, Poulton R, Moffitt TE (2010) Static and dynamic cognitive deficits in childhood preceding adult schizophrenia: A 30-year study. Am J Psychiatry 167:160–169

Reilly JL, Harris MSH, Keshavan MS, Sweeney JA (2006) Adverse effects of risperidone on spatial working memory in first-episode schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 63:1189–1197

Rosenheck R, Doyle J, Leslie D, Fontana A (2003) Changing environments and alternative perspectives in evaluating the cost-effectiveness of new antipsychotic drugs. Schizophr Bull 29:81–93

Sarfati Y, Hardy-Bayle MC, Nadel J et al (1997) Attribution of mental states to others by schizophrenic patients. Cogn Neuropsychiatr 2:1–17

Saykin AJ, Gur RC, Gur RE, Mozley PD, Mozley LH, Resnick SM, Kester DB, Stafiniak P (1991) Neuropsychological function in schizophrenia. Selective impairment in memory and learning. Arch Gen Psychiatry 48:618–624

Seidman LJ, Giuliano AJ, Meyer EC, Addington J, Cadenhead KS, Cannon TD, McGlashan TH, Perkins DO, Tsuang MT, Walker EF, Woods SW, Bearden CE, Christensen BK, Hawkins K, Heaton R, Keefe RS, Heinssen R, Cornblatt BA, North American Prodrome Longitudinal Study (NAPLS) Group (2010) Neuropsychology of the prodrome to psychosis in the NAPLS consortium: relationship to family history and conversion to psychosis. Arch Gen Psychiatry 67:578–588

Sevy S, Davidson M (1995) The cost of cognitive impairment in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 17:1–3

Silver H, Feldman P, Bilker W, Gur RC (2003) Working memory deficit as a core neuropsychological dysfunction in schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 160:1809–1816

Strauss ME (1993) Relations of symptoms to cognitive deficits in schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 19:215–231, Review

Stroup TS, Lieberman JA, McEvoy JP, Swartz MS, Davis SM, Rosenheck RA, Perkins DO, Keefe RS, Davis CE, Severe J, Hsiao JK, Investigators CATIE (2006) Effectiveness of olanzapine, quetiapine, risperidone, and ziprasidone in patients with chronic schizophrenia after discontinuing a previous atypical antipsychotic. Am J Psychiatry 13:611–622

Swartz MS, Perkins DO, Stroup TS, McEvoy JP, Nieri JM, Haak DC (2003) Assessing clinical and functional outcomes in the Clinical Antipsychotic Trials of Intervention Effectiveness (CATIE) schizophrenia trial. Schizophr Bull 29:33–43

Sweet RA, Pollock BG, Mulsant BH, Rosen J, Sorisio D, Kirshner M, Henteleff R, DeMichele MA (2000) Pharmacologic Profile of Perphenazine's Metabolites. J Clin Psychopharmacol 20:181–187

Tamlyn D, McKenna PJ, Mortimer AM, Lund CE, Hammond S, Baddeley AD (1992) Memory impairment in schizophrenia: Its extent, affiliations and neuropsychological character. Psychol Med 22:101–115

Tan HY, Choo WC, Fones CS, Chee MW (2005) fMRI study of maintenance and manipulation processes within working memory in first-episode schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 162:1849–1858

Trumbetta SL, Mueser KT (2001) Social functioning and its relationship to cognitive deficits over the course of schizophrenia. In: Keefe RSE, McEvoy JP (eds) Negative Symptom and Cognitive Deficit Treatment Response in Schizophrenia. American Psychiatric Association, Washington, DC, pp 33–67

Twamley EW, Doshi RR, Nayak GV, Palmer BW, Golshan S, Heaton RK, Patterson TL, Jeste DV (2003) Generalized cognitive impairments, ability to perform everyday tasks, and level of independence in community living situations of older patients with psychosis. Am J Psychiatry 159:2013–2020

Van Putten T, Marder SR, Wirshing WC, Aravagiri M, Chabert N (1991) Neuroleptic plasma levels. Schizophr Bull 17:197–216

Velligan DI, Bow-Thomas CC, Mahurin RK, Miller AL, Halgunseth LC (2000) Do specific neurocognitive deficits predict specific domains of community function in schizophrenia? J Nerv Ment Dis 188:518–524

Walker E, Lewine RJ (1988) The positive/negative symptom distinction in schizophrenia. Validity and etiological relevance. Schizophr Res 1:315–328

Weinberger DR (1987) Implications of normal brain development for the pathogenesis of schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 44:660–669

Wykes T, Reeder C, Corner J, Williams C, Everitt B (1999) The effects of neurocognitive remediation on executive processing in patients with schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 25:291–307

Yung AR, McGorry PD (1996) The prodromal phase of first-episode psychosis: past and current conceptualizations. Schizophr Bull 22:353–370

# Behavioral Animal Models to Assess Pro-cognitive Treatments for Schizophrenia

**Jared W. Young, Nurith Amitai, and Mark A. Geyer**

## Contents



J.W. Young (✉) • M.A. Geyer
Department of Psychiatry, University of California San Diego, 9500 Gilman Drive MC 0804, La Jolla, CA 92093-0804, USA

Research Service, VA San Diego Healthcare System, 3350 La Jolla Village Drive, La Jolla, CA 92093, USA
e-mail: jaredyoung@ucsd.edu; mgeyer@ucsd.edu

N. Amitai
Department of Psychiatry, University of California San Diego, 9500 Gilman Drive MC 0804, La Jolla, CA 92093-0804, USA

M.A. Geyer and G. Gross (eds.), *Novel Antischizophrenia Treatments*, Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 213,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-25758-2_3, 

**Abstract** Cognitive dysfunction is a core aspect of schizophrenia that constitutes a major obstacle toward reintegration of patients into society. Although multiple cognitive deficits are evident in schizophrenia patients, no medication is currently approved for their amelioration. Although consensus clinical test batteries have been developed for the assessment of putative cognition enhancers in patients with schizophrenia, parallel animal tests remain to be validated. Having no approved treatment for cognitive symptoms means no positive control can be used to examine pharmacological predictive validity of animal models. Thus, focus has been placed on animal paradigms that have demonstrable construct validity for the cognitive domain being assessed.

This review describes the growing arsenal of animal paradigms under development that have putative construct validity to cognitive domains affected in schizophrenia. We discuss (1) the construct validity of the paradigms; (2) compounds developed to investigate putative treatment targets; and (3) manipulations used to first impair task performance. Focus is placed on the paradigm design, including how the use of multivariate assessments can provide evidence that main effects of treatment are not confounded by extraneous effects.

**Keywords** Animal models • Attention • CNTRICS • Cognition • Cognitive remediation • MATRICS • Mice • Rats • Schizophrenia • Validity

## 1 Introduction

The common understanding of schizophrenia over the past 50 years has been of a disease characterized by positive and negative symptoms. Positive symptoms are behaviors that are not normally present in healthy subjects, such as hallucinations. Positive symptoms have been treated since the 1950s with antipsychotics such as chlorpromazine and haloperidol, which are both still in use today. Negative symptoms, on the other hand, are behaviors or functions that are normally present but are diminished due to the disease process, such as amotivation. Although the original description of the disease by Kraepelin focused on the generally slow decline in cognitive functioning as the core problem in dementia praecox (Kraepelin 1893), DSM-IV grouped cognitive dysfunction in patients with schizophrenia under the negative symptoms experienced by these patients. The prevailing view supported by current research has revived the original Kraepelinian view that cognitive dysfunction is a core feature of the disorder, that it begins before clinical diagnosis (Cornblatt et al. 1997, 1998; Erlenmeyer-Kimling 2000), and that it is orthogonal to positive and negative symptoms (Goldberg and Weinberger 1995; Nieuwenstein et al. 2001). More importantly, it is now recognized that cognitive performance of patients most closely correlates with functional outcome (Green 1996, 2006). Thus, there has been a major drive toward understanding and developing treatments for the cognitive symptoms experienced by schizophrenia

patients. Because current treatments approved for ameliorating positive symptoms do not improve cognition in patients, novel treatments require development.

Schizophrenia is currently treated using antipsychotics. Antipsychotics were discovered serendipitously, and despite their success in treating positive symptoms in patients, none have been approved for treating cognitive dysfunction. First-generation antipsychotics (FGA; which share a selective dopamine $D_2$ receptor antagonist mechanism) were traditionally thought to impair cognition in patients with schizophrenia [for review, see (Cassens et al. 1990)], which may have contributed to studies suggesting the superiority of second-generation antipsychotics [SGA; which have diverse actions on dopamine $D_2$, 5-$HT_{2A}$, 5-$HT_6$, α-adrenergic, and other receptors (Richelson and Souder 2000)]. Numerous studies report no effects of either FGA or SGA on cognition (Kunitachi et al. 2009; Nagai et al. 2009; Thomsen et al. 2009; Wang et al. 2007), while other trials (Harvey et al. 2003, 2004; Kern et al. 1998, 1999; Purdon et al. 2001; Velligan et al. 2002, 2003) and meta-analyses (Harvey and Keefe 2001; Keefe et al. 1999) report superiority of SGA over FGA for treating cognitive symptoms in schizophrenia. The effects reported in some studies may have been influenced by methodological weaknesses, such as the use of anticholinergic medication to counter the extra-pyramidal side effects of FGA or smoking status (Harvey and Keefe 2001). Several large-scale studies have reported equal efficacy of FGA and SGA for improving cognitive disruption in schizophrenia (Jones et al. 2006; Keefe et al. 2007; Lewis et al. 2006). The difference between statistically and meaningfully improving cognition in patients has been highlighted, however (Heinrichs 2007); for example, improving a patient's ability to recall a 12-word list by only a tenth of a word (Keefe et al. 2007) is unlikely to result in real-world gain of function.

Thus, pro-cognitive treatments that improve functional outcome have yet to be developed. Given that no drugs have been approved for treating cognitive dysfunction, no positive control exists for developing novel treatments (Floresco et al. 2005; Geyer 2010). Hence, in this case it is not possible to simply utilize the drug development technique of pharmacological isomorphism (Matthysse 1986), where new treatments are created based on mimicry of current therapies, e.g., developing SGA that share a primary 5-$HT_{2A}$ and $D_2$ receptor antagonist properties, or an antidepressant that is a monoamine reuptake inhibitor. Pro-cognitive treatments will need to be developed based on our knowledge of the neurobiological substrates regulating relevant cognitive functions in healthy subjects and/or the abnormalities that underlie cognitive disruption in schizophrenia. This basic mechanism approach will also require that such novel treatments be assessed in animal cognitive paradigms that share common neural mechanisms to the tests used in man. Thus, despite not being able to assess the pharmacological predictive validity of an animal model of cognitive disruption in schizophrenia due to a lack of positive controls, novel compounds can still be assessed using tasks with cross-species translational relevance to those used in the clinic (Floresco et al. 2005). In response to the lack of effective cognitive treatments, the National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH) sponsored the Measurement and Treatment Research to Improve Cognition in Schizophrenia (MATRICS) initiative [http://www.matrics.ucla.edu; (Marder and

Fenton 2004)] in order to bring together academic, industrial, and governmental bodies to address this great "unmet therapeutic need" (Floresco et al. 2005). Experts from the Neurocognition Subcommittee of MATRICS agreed that the most important cognitive domains deficient in schizophrenia are working memory, attention/vigilance, verbal learning and memory, visual learning and memory, reasoning and problem solving, speed of processing, and social cognition. From this initiative, the MATRICS Consensus Cognitive Battery (MCCB) was created to assess cognitive functioning in patients with schizophrenia in pro-cognitive treatment trials, positive results from which could lead to approval of a given treatment by the Food and Drug Administration. Thus, there are specific human cognitive paradigms from which animal cognitive paradigms can be developed in order to measure the same cognitive construct. The Treatment Units for Research on Neurocognition and Schizophrenia (TURNS) was then devised to test putative therapeutics in patients using the MATRICS test battery (Buchanan et al. 2007b). This group also had a preclinical subcommittee, which began to identify tasks that may map onto this test battery (Young et al. 2007b), elaborating on previous suggestions (Hagan and Jones 2005). The MCCB largely consists of paper and pen tests from clinical psychology, where the specificity of the chosen task to these cognitive domains may be limited and difficult to assess in animals (Young et al. 2009b). The Cognitive Neuroscience Treatment Research to Improve Cognition in Schizophrenia (CNTRICS) is another NIH-funded initiative formed to develop cross-species translational cognitive paradigms from a cognitive neuroscience perspective (Carter and Barch 2007). Thus, CNTRICS focused on identifying and developing appropriate paradigms in humans and animals that are related to quite specific cognitive constructs that are impacted in schizophrenia (Carter and Barch 2007). Cambridge Neuropsychological Test Automated Battery (CANTAB) is a private enterprise from the late 1980s designed as a touch-screen cognitive test battery for humans and nonhuman primates (NHPs). Although not designed specifically for schizophrenia, there have been numerous studies conducted on the performance of schizophrenia patients in the CANTAB (Jazbec et al. 2007; Mathes et al. 2005; Pantelis et al. 1997). Also, although not originally developed for rodents, attempts are now being made to produce similar touch-screen tasks for rats and mice (Brigman et al. 2005; Bussey et al. 2011). Such efforts would enhance the utility of the CANTAB given that rodents are more often used to screen a broad range of putative therapeutics, while NHP may be more appropriate for use in specific situations such as dose determination studies prior to human trials.

Herein we review animal paradigms with putative validity for assessing the cognitive domains and constructs identified by MATRICS and CNTRICS (Table 1), and discuss overlap when applicable to CANTAB. Suitable tasks, their cross-species translational and construct validity, and the effects of experimental manipulations as models of schizophrenia have been discussed previously in relation to the MCCB (Young et al. 2009b). Here, a brief summary of tasks will be provided, along with descriptions of other tasks from CNTRICS that may yield evidence for pro-cognitive effects of drugs that may translate into the clinic. These paradigms may prove useful for developing a battery of preclinical tasks by which putative pro-cognitive compounds can be tested prior to examination in clinical trials.

**Table 1** *5-CSRTT* five-choice serial reaction-time task, *5C-CPT* five-choice continuous performance task, *SAT* sustained attention task, *dSAT* sustained attention task + distractor condition, *ASST* attentional set-shifting task, *NORT* novel object recognition task, *TIP* transitive inference paradigm, *SSRT* stop-signal reaction-time task

| Behavioral paradigm | Translatability | Assessment of putative pro-cognitive compounds to date | Ease/speed of use | Other cognitive domains assessed |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Attention/vigilance | | | | |
| 5-CSRTT | Some limitations | Extensive | Moderate/low | Motor impulsivity, speed of processing, reward motivation, positive reinforcement learning |
| 5C-CPT | Very good potential | Limited | Low | Vigilance, inhibitory control, motor impulsivity, speed of processing, reward motivation, positive reinforcement learning |
| SAT/dSAT | Good | Somewhat limited | Moderate | Vigilance, speed of processing, positive reinforcement learning |
| Reasoning and problem solving/executive functioning | | | | |
| ASST | Excellent | Moderate | Low | Reversal learning, perseveration, positive reinforcement learning |
| Reversal learning task | Limited | Limited | High | Perseveration, positive reinforcement learning |
| Working memory span capacity | | | | |
| Radial arm maze (spatial) | Limited<br>Improved by task modifications | Moderate<br>Limited by modification | Moderate/high | Positive reinforcement learning, strategy |
| Odor span task (nonspatial) | Good | Limited | Moderate/low | Positive reinforcement learning |
| Short-/long-term recognition memory | | | | |
| NORT | Limited<br>Somewhat improved by recent task modifications | Extensive (but limited by false positives); limited for improved version | High | |
| Long-term memory and learning | | | | |
| Morris water maze | Limited | Limited | Moderate | Reversal learning (if challenge is utilized) |
| Long-term relational memory | | | | |
| TIP | Putatively good | None so far | Low | Positive reinforcement learning |
| Speed of processing | | | | |
| Olfactory discrimination | Putatively good | None so far | High | Positive reinforcement learning, putatively short-term memory and attention |
| SSRT | Good | Limited | High | Inhibition, positive reinforcement learning |

## 2 Attention/Vigilance

Impaired attention is a robustly observed symptom in schizophrenia patients (Buchanan et al. 2005; Cornblatt and Keilp 1994; Cornblatt and Malhotra 2001; Laurent et al. 1999) and may represent a core feature of the disorder (Chudasama and Robbins 2004). The presence and severity of attentional disruption is correlated positively with the severity of negative and disorganized symptoms of schizophrenia (Chen and Faraone 2000). In addition, attentional deficits are both developmentally stable and independent of the clinical state of the individual; schizophrenia patients in remission between psychotic episodes still exhibit these impairments (Cornblatt and Malhotra 2001). Moreover, attentional dysfunction precedes the onset of psychotic symptoms in schizophrenia patients and can predict future schizophrenia spectrum disorders in at-risk individuals (Cornblatt and Malhotra 2001). Finally, nonschizophrenic relatives of schizophrenia patients exhibit intermediate impairments in attentional performance (Chen and Faraone 2000; Laurent et al. 1999). Attentional impairment may therefore constitute a promising endophenotype and vulnerability marker for schizophrenia.

Attention is defined as the ability to allocate and sustain the focus of cognitive resources on specific stimuli or information while ignoring or filtering other information. However, a consensus has emerged that "attention" does not describe a single cognitive process; rather, several different aspects of attention can be identified. The three most commonly recognized subdomains of attention are selective attention (the choice of particular environmental stimuli for allocation of processing resources), sustained attention or vigilance (the prolonged sustaining of attentional focus onto a particular stimulus over time), and divided attention or attentional control (attentional focus on multiple tasks or stimuli, or sustaining of attention despite distracters) (Parasuraman 1998). The inability to properly allocate attention to relevant stimuli may further disrupt other cognitive functions such as learning, memory encoding, or perception of changing contingencies. Other cognitive deficits present in schizophrenia such as impaired learning, memory, and cognitive flexibility may therefore emerge secondary to, or at least be exacerbated by, disruptions in attention.

Attentional deficits in schizophrenia patients have been documented most extensively using the continuous performance test (CPT), in which subjects must attend to repeated stimulus presentations and respond to target stimuli while inhibiting responding to nontarget stimuli (Cornblatt and Keilp 1994; Cornblatt and Malhotra 2001; Riccio et al. 2002; Rosvold et al. 1956). The CPT primarily measures vigilance, although most versions also involve some degree of sustained attention. A version of the CPT, the CPT-identical pairs version, was chosen by MATRICS as the best task to assess attention in schizophrenia patients as part of the MCCB.

A number of tasks have been developed to assess attention in animals. We will discuss three of these paradigms here: the five-choice serial reaction time task (5-CSRTT), the five-choice continuous performance test (5C-CPT), and the sustained attention task (SAT).

## *2.1 Five-Choice Serial Reaction-Time Task*

The 5-CSRTT was developed initially in Cambridge (Carli et al. 1983) and was designed as analogous to Leonard's 5-choice reaction-time paradigm for humans (Leonard 1959). While originally intended to assess rat models of attention deficit hyperactivity disorder, the task has since been used extensively worldwide to investigate neuroanatomical mechanisms of attention more generally (Carli et al. 2006; Chudasama et al. 2003; Muir et al. 1996; Passetti et al. 2002) as well as for schizophrenia research in particular (Chudasama and Robbins 2004). The construct validity of the 5-CSRTT as a test of attention has been supported by several studies as reviewed in (Young et al. 2009a, b, c; Robbins 2002). In addition to the original rat version of the task, a mouse version of the 5-CSRTT has existed for some time, permitting the examination of genetically modified animals in this task (Humby et al. 1999).

The 5-CSRTT requires rodents to attend to an array of five equidistant apertures, one of which will be briefly illuminated following a pseudorandom pattern. The animal must nosepoke in the aperture that has been illuminated within a certain time window in order to receive a food reward. Incorrect responses (i.e., nosepokes into apertures other than the ones where the light stimulus was presented) or omissions (i.e., failure to nosepoke in response to the light stimulus) are punished with a time-out and no delivery of food reward. Manipulations of the 5-CSRTT enable the researcher to specifically probe different aspects of attention. For example, extending the session duration and evaluating performance in the earlier vs. later part of the session can be used to examine sustained attention more thoroughly. Similarly, the addition of noise or visual distracters can increase the role of divided attention in this task. Reducing the salience of the visual stimulus by decreasing the duration or brightness of the light flash can be used to increase the attentional load.

The accuracy with which the animal performs the task, defined as the total number of correct responses divided by the sum of correct and incorrect responses, is considered the main measure of attentional performance in the 5-CSRTT. Given that accuracy is independent of the number of omissions committed by the animal, this measure is less likely to be confounded by sedation, locomotor impairment, or motivational deficits. Examination of other 5-CSRTT measures, such as response latencies, latency to collect the food reward, number of head entries into the food magazine, and total trials completed, can help rule out confounding factors such as sedation, locomotor impairment, or motivational changes that may also drive increases in omissions (Robbins 2002). This example demonstrates one of the major advantages of the multivariate assessment used in the 5-CSRTT, namely the ability to identify nonattentional effects on performance, thus enabling researchers to detect or rule out a wide range of potential confounds. Furthermore, these additional measures can also be used to assess other cognitive domains in tandem with attention. For example, premature responses (nosepokes performed

before the presentation of the light stimulus) reflect motor impulsivity, while response latencies provide insight into the speed of processing in the 5-CSRTT (see below). This ability to assess multiple aspects of cognition simultaneously adds to the potential value of the 5-CSRTT as a tool for investigating cognitive deficits with relevance to schizophrenia (Chudasama and Robbins 2004).

As reported earlier, SGA medications have not been shown consistently to improve cognition meaningfully in schizophrenia. However, a few studies have reported at least partial amelioration of cognitive symptoms with SGA treatment, including improvement of attention (assessed using various tests, including versions of the CPT and human serial reaction time tasks) (Meltzer and McGurk 1999; Sharma and Mockler 1998). Matching these findings, chronic treatment with the SGA clozapine has been found to partially attenuate disruptions in 5-CSRTT accuracy induced by repeated injections of the NMDA antagonist and putative psychotomimetic phencyclidine (PCP) (Amitai et al. 2007). Acute clozapine also attenuated deficits in 5-CSRTT accuracy induced by another NMDA antagonist, MK-801, while the FGA haloperidol had no ameliorative effect (Paine et al. 2009), mirroring the superior effectiveness of SGA over FGA on cognitive symptoms of schizophrenia reported by some (Harvey et al. 2003, 2004; Kern et al. 1998, 1999; Purdon et al. 2001; Velligan et al. 2002, 2003), albeit not all studies (Jones et al. 2006; Keefe et al. 2007; Kunitachi et al. 2009; Lewis et al. 2006; Nagai et al. 2009; Thomsen et al. 2009; Wang et al. 2007).

Nicotine and other nicotinic acetylcholine receptor (nAChR) agonists have been proposed as potential pro-cognitive treatments in schizophrenia (Levin 2002; Levin et al. 1996; Martin et al. 2004), based on the finding that nicotine treatment can improve attention in schizophrenia patients (Newhouse et al. 2004; Rusted and Warburton 1992; Smith et al. 2006; Warburton et al. 1992; Wesnes and Warburton 1984). Nicotine has also been observed to enhance attentional performance in healthy human subjects (Levin and Simon 1998; Newhouse et al. 2004). In this context, it is notable that nicotine administration has also been shown to improve attentional performance in the 5-CSRTT both in rats (Amitai and Markou 2009; Grottick et al. 2000, 2001, 2003; Grottick and Higgins 2002; Jones and Higgins 1995; Muir et al. 1995, 1999) and in mice (Pattij et al. 2007; Young et al. 2004). These enhancements in attention were found in intact, normal-performing rats (Amitai and Markou 2009) and mice (Young et al. 2004), as well as in poorly performing rats (Grottick et al. 2000), aged rats (Grottick et al. 2003; Grottick and Higgins 2002; Jones and Higgins 1995; Muir et al. 1999), and rats with basal forebrain lesions (Muir et al. 1995). Subtype-selective nAChR ligands, which may avoid some of the unfavorable effects of nicotine, have also exhibited the capacity to improve attentional performance in the 5-CSRTT.

Acetylcholinesterase inhibitors (AChEIs) such as tacrine, donepezil, physostigmine, and galantamine are currently used to treat cognitive deterioration in Alzheimer's disease (Johannsen 2004), but some open-label studies have indicated

that these compounds may also ameliorate cognitive dysfunction, including attentional impairment, in schizophrenia (Buchanan et al. 2007a; Chouinard et al. 2007; Sharma et al. 2006), although double-blind studies have not proven AChEIs to be efficacious (Kohler et al. 2007; Stip et al. 2007). No performance enhancement in the 5-CSRTT due to AChEIs has been found in normal animals; however, tacrine, donepezil, and physostigmine have been found to attenuate attentional deficits induced in the 5-CSRTT by the muscarinic acetylcholine receptor antagonist scopolamine (Kirkby et al. 1996; Lindner et al. 2006) or by lesions of the nucleus basalis (Balducci et al. 2003).

Acute amphetamine administration improved 5-CSRTT performance in aged rats (Grottick and Higgins 2002). Although amphetamine, particularly when given chronically, can produce psychosis-like symptoms and has been used as a model of several aspects of schizophrenia and mania (Lyon 1991; Martinez and Sarter 2008; Sarter et al. 2009; Young et al. 2011a), this finding is consistent with the observation that amphetamine can improve measures of attention in healthy humans (Koelega 1993) as well as in schizophrenia patients (Pietrzak et al. 2010). Enhanced attentional performance in the 5-CSRTT has been observed after treatment with other psychostimulants also, including caffeine (Grottick and Higgins 2002) and the dopamine/norepinephrine reuptake inhibitor methylphenidate (Navarra et al. 2008). Furthermore, the selective norepinephrine reuptake inhibitor atomoxetine, a nonstimulant medication that improves cognition in attention deficit hyperactivity disorder, improved 5-CSRTT performance (Navarra et al. 2008).

Other compounds, such as the serotonin 5-$HT_{2A}$ antagonist M100,907 (Calcagno et al. 2009; Carli et al. 2006), the 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor agonist RO60-0175 (Calcagno et al. 2009), and the 5-$HT_{1A}$ agonist 8-OH-DPAT (Carli et al. 2006), have been reported to ameliorate attentional deficits in the 5-CSRTT induced by NMDA antagonists, and intra-mPFC infusions of the dopamine $D_1$ partial agonist SKF 38393 attenuated the 5-CSRTT impairment in rats treated with repeated amphetamine (Fletcher et al. 2007). However, given that no studies provide clear evidence of the effectiveness of these compounds on cognitive symptoms of schizophrenia, the significance of these findings is uncertain. Moreover, when patients with schizophrenia are assessed in the human 5-CSRTT as part of the CANTAB, the only evidence of impairment is of slower reaction times (Barnett et al. 2010; Fagerlund et al. 2004; Prouteau et al. 2004), which have also been described as visual motor and movement skill deficits (Ritsner and Blumenkrantz 2007). Hence, it is unclear how changes in accuracy, premature responses, or omission levels in rodent studies might reflect patient data.

In summary, the 5-CSRTT constitutes a paradigm that assesses aspects of attention with construct validity and detects attention-enhancing effects of compounds that may ameliorate attentional deficits in schizophrenia. It therefore represents an important tool for investigations of novel treatments for attentional impairment in schizophrenia.

## 2.2 Five-Choice Continuous Performance Test

Although the 5-CSRTT exhibits some analogies to the human CPT, a major difference between the two paradigms is the fact that no nontarget stimuli are present in the 5-CSRTT and thus at no point are animals required to withhold from responding to such stimuli. This characteristic contrasts with all CPTs used in the clinic, which contain nontarget trials in which the human subjects must refrain from responding thereby exerting cognitive control over responding. This nontarget disparity between the 5-CSRTT and human CPTs may underlie the lack of need for the parietal cortex in the former (Muir et al. 1996), while it is integral to attention assessed in the latter (Parasuraman 1998; Salgado-Pineda et al. 2003). To address this disparity, a modified version of the 5-CSRTT, named the five-choice continuous performance test (5C-CPT), was developed (Young et al. 2009a). This task resembles the 5-CSRTT, but adds an additional trial type interspersed with the trials described for the 5-CSRTT earlier. In these trials, all apertures are simultaneously illuminated, and the animal has to refrain from responding in any aperture to receive the reward. Originally developed in mice, the 5C-CPT has been used successfully in rats also (Barnes et al. 2011a, b). Because it enables the assessment of false alarm responding (i.e., responding to absent or irrelevant stimuli as if they were target stimuli), the 5C-CPT has greater cross-species translational validity for the human CPT. It also provides a greater demonstration of stimulus control and enables the assessment of inhibitory control (see below) in tandem with attentional performance. Such inhibitory control is dissociable from premature responding, the other form of impulsivity commonly measured in the 5-CSRTT. For example, reduced dopamine $D_4$ receptor expression impaired inhibitory control in the 5C-CPT while not affecting premature responding, while administration of the 5-$HT_{2C}$ antagonist SB242084 increased premature responding without affecting inhibitory control (Young et al. 2011d), thus highlighting the benefits of measuring inhibitory control as a part of an attentional task as in human studies (Riccio et al. 2002). Moreover, the stimulus control over responding demonstrated by rodents in the 5C-CPT also avoids the putative confound of rodents using a temporal mediating strategy and/or over-entrainment to light.

Since the 5C-CPT provides measures of hit rate (reflecting the proportion of correct detections of target stimuli), correct rejections (proportion of correct withholding of responding in response to nontarget stimuli), false alarm rate (proportion of incorrect responses to nontarget stimuli), and misses (proportion of incorrect withholding of responding in response to target stimuli), the performance of this task can be analyzed using signal detection theory (Marston 1996; Steckler and Muir 1996). This procedure includes calculation of the sensitivity index (measuring the subject's sensitivity in detecting the signal stimuli amid noise), the response bias (assessing the subject's tendency to respond, indicating a more or less conservative response strategy), and the perceptual bias (reflecting the amount of signal required to generate a response). Because these parameters can also be

calculated for the human CPT, the 5C-CPT permits direct comparison of drug effects on these measures.

Because the 5C-CPT is a very recently developed task, few studies investigating the neural mechanisms underlying performance or effects of potential pro-cognitive compounds have been completed for this paradigm. For example, evidence that the 5C-CPT requires a functioning parietal cortex would increase the likelihood that this task measures attention similarly to human CPTs. With regards to assessing potential pro-cognitive agents, a recent study found that the dopamine $D_1$ partial agonist SKF 38393 impaired 5C-CPT performance under baseline conditions, but improved target detection and signal discrimination when animals were challenged during testing by lengthening the period between stimulus presentations (Barnes et al. 2011a). As with some of the studies discussed for the 5-CSRTT, this finding is subject to a number of concerns—the use of a test day challenge raises the possibility that effects on learning may influence the results, and little is known about the effectiveness of SKF 38393 on cognitive symptoms of schizophrenia. Nevertheless, the fact that pharmacologically induced enhancements in attentional performance can be detected in the 5C-CPT encourages the future investigation of additional potentially pro-cognitive compounds in this paradigm, and suggests that the 5C-CPT represents a valuable addition to the arsenal of tests used to investigate compounds that may ameliorate attentional dysfunction in schizophrenia.

## *2.3 Sustained Attention Task*

The sustained attention task (SAT) was developed by Bushnell et al. (1994). In the SAT, the animal to identify whether a light signal was presented or not. Immediately after the light signal is (or is not) presented, two levers are extended into the operant box. The animal needs to respond within a certain time window on one lever if it perceived the light stimulus, or on the other lever if it perceived that no stimulus was presented. Correct detections and correct rejections result in delivery of a food reward. The intensity or duration, and hence the saliency, of the light signal can be varied. Signal trials with different signal saliency and non-signal trials are presented in pseudorandom order. A variation of the SAT, termed the dSAT, adds a distracter condition to challenge top-down attentional control. For the dSAT, animals are initially trained on the standard SAT. During testing, the first block of the session uses standard SAT conditions, followed by a second block that adds a distracter (most commonly a flashing house light) that the animal needs to ignore while continuing to perform the SAT. A final block at the end of the session returns to standard SAT conditions to assess performance recovery.

Like the 5C-CPT, the SAT contains both target and nontarget trials, and can therefore be analyzed using signal detection theory, including calculation of the vigilance index (omitted trials are not included), response bias, and perceptual bias. Changes in responding can be distinguished from changes in task accuracy. Unlike the 5C-CPT, however, the SAT does not contain a condition that requires

the animal to withhold responding; instead, nontarget trials require responding on a different lever. The SAT may therefore be less suitable than the 5C-CPT to assess inhibitory control along with attentional performance. While some have doubted the construct validity of the SAT as a test of attention (Bushnell 1998; Echevarria et al. 2005), strong support for this construct validity has been provided by Sarter and McGaughy (1998), and growing evidence supports the use of the SAT as a rodent test of attention (Burk 2004; McGaughy and Sarter 1995). A human version of the task has been developed, in which human volunteers have to detect whether a light stimulus is presented on a computer screen in order to receive a small monetary reward. The distracter condition is achieved by adding a flickering background to the screen (Demeter et al. 2008).

Performance in the SAT was impaired after acute administration of amphetamine to rats via an increase in false alarms (Deller and Sarter 1998; McGaughy and Sarter 1995). This finding contrasts with the improved performance observed after amphetamine administration to healthy humans performing sustained attention tasks (Koelega 1993), schizophrenia patients suffering from impaired attention (Pietrzak et al. 2010), or rats performing the 5-CSRTT (Grottick and Higgins 2002). On the other hand, chronic low doses of the FGA haloperidol and the SGA clozapine attenuated attentional deficits in the SAT induced by low-dose amphetamine challenges after chronic amphetamine exposure (Martinez and Sarter 2008). Given that chronic amphetamine treatment is a widely used model of schizophrenia (Lyon 1991), these results may mirror the modest attentional improvements observed in schizophrenia patients treated with low (50% $D_2$ receptor occupancy) doses of antipsychotics (Green et al. 2002; Keefe et al. 2006; Rollnik et al. 2002). Notably, clozapine produced a more robust attenuation of amphetamine-induced deficits than haloperidol, consistent with some (Harvey et al. 2003, 2004; Kern et al. 1998, 1999; Purdon et al. 2001; Velligan et al. 2002, 2003) but not all (Jones et al. 2006; Keefe et al. 2007; Lewis et al. 2006) clinical studies.

While some studies did not observe beneficial effects of nicotine on SAT performance (Howe et al. 2010; Turchi et al. 1995), other studies found at least partial improvements in SAT performance after acute nicotine administration (Bushnell et al. 1997; Rezvani et al. 2005), with more consistent increases of both correct detections and correct rejections following chronic nicotine treatment (Rezvani et al. 2005). Another study reported enhanced signal detection during the postdistracter recovery block in the dSAT when rats were administered the selective α4β2 nAChR agonist S38232, or nicotine in combination with the α7 nAChR antagonist methyllycaconitine (Howe et al. 2010). Nicotine also partially reversed attentional deficits in the SAT induced by MK-801 (Rezvani and Levin 2003). While the beneficial effects of nicotinic receptor stimulation on SAT performance appear less striking than in the 5-CSRTT, they do parallel the pro-cognitive effects of nicotine in humans, including schizophrenia patients.

While the evidence of pharmacological enhancement of SAT performance remains somewhat limited at this point, this paradigm has shown itself to be highly valuable in assessing attention and stimulus detection. Indeed, the dSAT version of this task was chosen by CNTRICS to assess attentional control (Nuechterlein et al. 2009).

## 3 Reasoning and Problem Solving/Executive Functioning

The reasoning and problem-solving domain encompasses the cognitive processes by which the individual solves problems he or she encounters through abstract reasoning and effective reactions to environmental contingencies that may change over time. This cognitive domain is sometimes also referred to as executive functioning. However, it should not be confused with the executive control (central executive) involved in working memory (Baddeley 1986, 2001), which constitutes a control process that coordinates subsystems for working memory. Impairments in the ability to alter behavior in response to situational demands constitute a characteristic deficit in schizophrenia, often termed cognitive inflexibility (Goldberg et al. 1987; Leeson et al. 2009; Murray et al. 2008). Perseveration in outdated behavioral strategies that are no longer rewarded is a distinguishing symptom of cognitive inflexibility in schizophrenia and can be detected through a variety of cognitive tasks.

The Wisconsin Card Sorting Task (WCST) is a traditional cognitive test that was integral to the decision of identifying the cognitive domain of reasoning and problem solving in the MATRICS list of cognitive domains deficient in schizophrenia (Nuechterlein et al. 2004). First described by Berg (1948), the task requires the subject to match a series of cards to a set of "stimulus cards." Cards may be matched regarding different dimensions (number, color, or shape) of the designs displayed on them; the rule guiding which dimension should be used for matching changes several times throughout the test. The rules and rule changes are not made explicit to the test subject, who only receives feedback after making a matching choice as to whether the choice was correct or incorrect. A more formalized version of the task was developed by Owen et al. (1991), coined the intradimensional/extradimensional (ID/ED) task, as part of the CANTAB. The ID/ED task, which can also be tested in monkeys, retains key aspects of the WCST, but enables greater analysis of the pattern of performance. The features of the ID/ED task will be detailed further in the section later describing its animal equivalent, the attentional set-shifting task. Schizophrenia patients initially show evidence of selective deficits in ED shifting, but gradually also exhibit poorer reversal learning compared to control subjects (Pantelis et al. 1999). The ID/ED task was also chosen by CNTRICS to assay executive function (Barch et al. 2009).

Several paradigms have been developed to assess reasoning and problem-solving performance in animals. These tasks typically require the animal to acquire a new strategy while inhibiting a previously rewarded strategy. Two of these paradigms will be described here: the attentional set-shifting task (ASST) and the reversal learning task.

### *3.1 Attentional Set-Shifting Task*

The ASST was developed as a rodent version of the CANTAB ID/ED task by Birrell and Brown (Birrell and Brown 2000). This task requires rodents to utilize

stimuli from at least two dimensions, typically odor, digging medium, or bowl texture, to repeatedly solve the location of a buried food reward, with no training given prior to testing. Animals must first learn a simple discrimination (SD), in which one sensory stimulus in one dimension is associated with the reward (e.g., odor A rewarded, odor B unrewarded, only one digging medium available). This stage is followed by a compound discrimination (CD), in which the stimulus–reward association in the original dimension remains unchanged, while different stimuli are introduced in the other dimension but remain irrelevant for the location of the food reward (e.g., odor A rewarded, odor B unrewarded, digging media X and Y available but irrelevant). Next, in the CD reversal (CDR), the previously unrewarded stimulus in the relevant dimension now becomes rewarded (e.g., odor B rewarded, odor A unrewarded, digging medium irrelevant). For the intradimensional shift (ID), the same dimension remains relevant, but two novel stimuli in this dimension are introduced, one of which is rewarded (e.g., odor C rewarded, odor D unrewarded, digging medium irrelevant), followed by ID reversal (IDR; e.g., odor D rewarded, odor C unrewarded, digging medium irrelevant). Finally, in the extradimensional shift (ED), the animal must learn to associate the reward with one of the stimuli in the previously irrelevant dimension and ignore the previously relevant dimension (e.g., digging medium X rewarded, digging medium Y unrewarded, odors C and D available but irrelevant), followed by ED reversal (EDR; e.g., digging medium Y rewarded, digging medium X unrewarded, odor irrelevant). In each stage, the animal must reach a criterion level of correct responses before moving onto the next stage. Both rat (Barense et al. 2002; Birrell and Brown 2000) and mouse (Bissonette et al. 2008; Young et al. 2011b) versions of the task have been developed successfully.

The rodent ASST task is extremely similar in structure to the human ID/ED task, differing only in the dimensions utilized (odor, digging medium, and bowl texture in the ASST vs. number, color, and shape in the ID/ED task) and the way responses are performed (digging in a bowl vs. tapping a touch screen). These differences serve to optimize the task for rodents: digging for food resembles natural rodent foraging behavior, and rodents attend preferentially to olfactory as opposed to visual cues (Jennings and Keefer 1969). It is likely that these adaptations underlie the rapid task acquisition that has been observed in the ASST. Rodents learn this version of the task far quicker than one in which they are required to respond to visual stimuli on a touch screen, and their number of trials to criterion in the odor/digging version of the task are similar to those exhibited by primates using visual cues (Birrell and Brown 2000; Markham et al. 1996; Robbins 1998). The considerable consistencies between the rodent ASST and human ID/ED task are accompanied by substantial homology for the neural systems supporting performance at each stage of this task (Young et al. 2009b). Importantly, analogous to human performance in the ID/ED task, rodents performing the ASST form an attentional set, reflected by the number of trials to criterion in the ED stage being significantly greater than the number required to reach criterion in the ID stage (Birrell and Brown 2000). Both humans and rodents therefore take longer to acquire a rule that necessitates a shift from one perceptual dimension to another compared with one that only requires shifting within a dimension.

A potential methodological limitation of the ASST is its length of testing and resultant low throughput. While the task requires no training, running a single rodent can take 3–5 h, allowing the testing of no more than two animals per day in most cases. Furthermore, the test length is variable, determined by the time it takes the animal to reach criterion performance in each stage. Depending on the pharmacokinetic profile of the drugs used in a study, this characteristic may introduce problematic confounds when interpreting the data. Finally, ASST findings should always be examined for the presence of a significant difference in ID vs. ED acquisition. Absence of such an ID/ED difference may indicate that animals did not form an attentional set, which calls into question any potential performance improvement observed in these animals.

Although the ASST is a relatively recently developed paradigm, several studies have been published at this point that describe drug enhancement of performance in the task either in normal animals or after performance disruption relevant to schizophrenia. The SGA sertindole, risperidone, and clozapine have been found to ameliorate PCP-induced ED shifting deficits in rats (Goetghebeur and Dias 2009; McLean et al. 2008). Interestingly, the FGA haloperidol did not affect the PCP-induced ASST impairment in these studies, again possibly reflecting a superior effectiveness of SGA over FGA in treating cognitive dysfunction in schizophrenia (Harvey et al. 2003, 2004; Kern et al. 1998, 1999; Purdon et al. 2001; Velligan et al. 2002, 2003). Moreover, while some studies report cognitive improvements with antipsychotic treatment, no amelioration of ID/ED task deficits has been reported in schizophrenia patients in response to antipsychotics. The findings in the above studies could therefore be considered false positives. Finally, whereas the Goetghebeur and Dias (2009) study detected an ID/ED difference, indicating that the PCP-induced ED shift deficit was due to impaired shifting of an attentional set, such an ID/ED difference was not seen in the McLean et al. (2008) study, suggesting that these results should be interpreted with caution.

ED shift deficits in the ID/ED task in schizophrenia patients are ameliorated by the non-amphetamine psychostimulant modafinil (Turner et al. 2004b). Similarly, modafinil improved the ED shift deficit induced by subchronic PCP in rats performing the ASST (Goetghebeur and Dias 2009). Both the control group and PCP-treated group in this study exhibited an ID/ED difference, suggesting that the rats formed an attentional set and that PCP and modafinil affected executive functioning.

A genetic polymorphism resulting in reduced activity of the dopamine-catabolizing enzyme catechol-*O*-methyl transferase (COMT) has been linked to better WCST performance in humans (Egan et al. 2001). In light of this finding, it is notable that rats administered tolcapone, a COMT inhibitor, exhibited significantly improved performance in the ED phase of the ASST (Tunbridge et al. 2004). The tolcapone-induced improvement was specific to the ED phase of the task alone, suggesting that it may be worthwhile to explore the potential of COMT inhibitors as complementary pro-cognitive treatments added to antipsychotic therapy in schizophrenia.

Many SGA act as antagonists at the serotonin 5-$HT_6$ receptor (Roth et al. 2004). The selective 5-HT6 antagonists SB-271046-A and SB-399885-T were found to significantly improve ASST performance in rats, including moderate to significant enhancement of ED shifting (Hatcher et al. 2005). However, pro-cognitive effects of selective 5-$HT_6$ antagonists have not yet been demonstrated in schizophrenia patients, so the relevance of these findings is unclear.

Manipulations of the adrenergic system have been investigated as potential pro-cognitive treatments in schizophrenia (Arnsten 2004). The $\alpha_2$-adrenoreceptor agonist clonidine improved performance in a test of executive function, the Trails B task, in schizophrenic patients (Fields et al. 1988). Cognitive enhancement in schizophrenia patients taking SGA was also reported after treatment with the $\alpha_{2A}$-adrenoreceptor agonist guanfacine (Friedman et al. 2001), although working memory rather than executive function was affected. In contrast, clonidine did not alter ASST performance in rats, while the $\alpha_2$-adrenoreceptor antagonist atipamezole significantly improved ED shifting (Lapiz and Morilak 2006). Actions at presynaptic vs. postsynaptic $\alpha_2$ adrenoreceptors at different doses of clonidine, as well as interactions of atipamezole with the $\alpha_1$-adrenoreceptor, may explain these discrepant results.

Finally, similar to the effects seen in the 5-CSRTT (Fletcher et al. 2007), intra-mPFC infusions of the dopamine $D_1$ receptor partial agonist SKF 38393 attenuated deficits in ED shifting induced by amphetamine treatment of rats performing the ASST (Fletcher et al. 2005). Again, however, the fact that cognitive enhancement with this compound in schizophrenia has not been demonstrated so far makes it difficult to estimate the significance of these findings.

In summary, despite its relatively recent development, there exist a promising and growing number of studies reporting drug enhancement of ED shifting in the ASST, a behavior with plausible relevance for executive function in the reasoning and problem-solving domain. Given its considerable analogy to the human ID/ED task, the ASST is likely to offer an extremely useful tool for investigating treatments that may improve executive function in schizophrenia.

## 4 Reversal Learning Task

A number of tasks have been developed that focus on one specific component of reasoning and problem solving, namely reversal learning. In these tasks, the animal must learn that a given reward contingency has been switched to its exact opposite, i.e., that the response previously associated with reward is now associated with non-reward and vice versa. Two general categories of these tasks have been developed: spatial reversal learning [SRL; (Widholm et al. 2001)] and visual reversal learning [VRL; (Widholm et al. 2003)]. Both versions of the task allow the animal to respond on two levers. In the SRL task, the active lever is identified by its spatial location, with responding on one lever (e.g., the one on the right) resulting in delivery of a food reward and no reinforcement of responding

on the other lever. After the animal's preference for the rewarded lever has reached a criterion level, the reversal learning phase is initiated and responding on the previously unrewarded lever (in this example, the one on the left) now yields reward, while the previously rewarded lever no longer has any effect, so that the animal needs to reverse the learned response from one location to the other. In the original version of the task, four additional reversals of the rule follow, during which pharmacological manipulations can be introduced to alter task performance.

The format of the VRL task is similar, but here the active lever is identified by the illumination, or lack thereof, of a cue light located above each lever (i.e., the animal needs to respond on the lever whose cue light is illuminated in the initial phase, and on the lever whose cue light is not illuminated in the reversal phase, or vice versa). Which of the cue lights is illuminated in a given trial varies pseudorandomly between trials, so that the actual lever on which the animal is required to respond varies throughout each of the two task phases, even if the response contingency remains unchanged.

While the reversal learning task is less comprehensive in its assessment of different aspects of reasoning and problem solving than the ASST, a major advantage of this task is the fact that it uses automated operant techniques. This automation allows for numerous animals to be tested simultaneously, which significantly increases throughput, permitting the assessment of executive function in situations where use of the ASST would be prohibitive. So far, both forms of the reversal learning task have only been used with rats. Because mice do not respond well in tasks that require lever pressing (Caine et al. 1999), this task may not be well suited for use with mice, limiting its utility for investigating the effects of genetic manipulations, unless nosepoke versions are developed.

Few examples of cognitive enhancement in the reversal learning task have been documented at this point in time. Some evidence for antipsychotic effectiveness in ameliorating reversal learning deficits has come from a further, cued version of the task, in which the switch from one rewarded lever (identified both by spatial location and the presence or absence of a light above the lever) to the other is cued by a time-out period (Abdul-Monim et al. 2003). PCP-induced impairments in this task were fully attenuated by the SGA ziprasidone, clozapine, and olanzapine (Abdul-Monim et al. 2003, 2006; Idris et al. 2005). The FGA haloperidol partially reversed PCP-induced reversal learning impairments, while another FGA, chlorpromazine, was without effect (Abdul-Monim et al. 2003). In contrast, haloperidol, but not clozapine, strongly attenuated deficits in the task induced by amphetamine administration (Idris et al. 2005). It should be noted that neither FGA nor SGA fully reverse cognitive dysfunction in schizophrenia, including deficits in executive function. Complete attenuation of performance disruption in the reversal learning test with antipsychotics could therefore be considered a false positive, and these findings should be interpreted with caution. Further studies of the effects of putative pro-cognitive compounds on reversal learning, including the SRL and VRL versions of the task, are needed to further validate the usefulness of this task for investigating cognition-enhancing treatments for schizophrenia.

## 5 Working Memory

Deficient working memory has been observed across numerous neuropsychiatric disorders, including schizophrenia. Considering that working memory performance correlates well with general intelligence (Jarrold and Towse 2006; Kane and Engle 2002), improving working memory may improve general intelligence. One of the primary difficulties in using animals to assist in developing a treatment for improving working memory in man is the different ways it has been conceptualized and operationalized in humans vs. nonhumans (Dudchenko 2004).

The dominant theory on the conceptualization and measurement of working memory in humans is that of Baddeley (1986, 2001). Through a series of experimental studies, Baddeley and colleagues have described working memory as consisting of three limited capacity information stores and a central executive that allocates attentional resources, coordinating between the three stores. These stores include a visual–spatial sketchpad (visual information), a phonological loop [for auditory information (Baddeley 1986)], and an episodic buffer [interacts with longer term stored memories bringing them to conscious awareness; (Baddeley 2001)]. Certainly, Baddeley's theories have contributed to tasks that are currently used to measure working memory in psychiatric patients, which include remembering multiple items of information for a short period (measuring capacity) or manipulating information held online (measuring the central executive control over capacity).

In nonhumans, however, working memory is often synonymous with short-term spatial memory (Dudchenko 2004). Many tasks that are referred to as measuring working memory require animals to retain, over a delay interval, memory for a stimulus that is no longer present (Dunnett 1985; Friedman and Goldman-Rakic 1988). These delay-dependent tasks often require the animal to retain a memory for the immediately preceding stimulus on a given trial while ignoring representations of stimuli from preceding trials. Difficulty in ignoring stimuli from preceding trials is referred to as proactive interference. In birds and rodents, these tasks are normally performed in operant chambers using levers, with the animal having to remember the sample lever that was pressed so that—after a variable delay—the same (match) or opposite (non-match) lever can be pressed during the choice phase (referred to as delayed match/non-match to position tasks). In primates, the procedure is the same, but multiple objects are used so that no object is repeated between trials, so as to reduce proactive interference effects (referred to as delayed response tasks).

The difference between the human and animal definitions and measurements of working memory may appear superficial, but the delay-dependent tasks in animals (Carrozzo et al. 2005; Cave and Squire 1992; Friedman and Goldman-Rakic 1988) and humans (Rausch and Babb 1993; Sass et al. 1990) require an intact hippocampus, while working memory tasks in humans do not (Bor et al. 2001; Bor and Owen 2006; Curtis 2006; Jeneson et al. 2010; Reeves et al. 2005). Moreover, drugs that improve span capacity in humans, such as the dopamine $D_2$ family agonist

bromocriptine (Gibbs and D'Esposito 2005; Mehta et al. 2001), impair delay-dependent memory (Muller et al. 1998). Thus, drugs that are developed to improve human working memory using delay-dependent tasks are not any more likely to translate across species than other cognitive tasks in rodents. Moreover, in a meta-analysis of 124 studies on working memory and schizophrenia, Lee and Park (2005) determined that working memory impairments in patients were not delay dependent (i.e., did not get any worse with delays longer than 1 s). This conclusion was supported through empirical experimentation by Gold et al. (2010), who determined that the span capacity of patients with schizophrenia was reduced irrespective of the length of delay imposed between stimuli presentation and recall. Thus, tasks that examine the span capacity of animals may be more likely to provide cross-species translatability when developing a pro-cognitive agent for working memory for patients with schizophrenia. Several tasks exist which may measure the span capacity of rodents, including the radial arm maze (RAM) and odor span task (OST), which will be described later.

## *5.1 Working Memory Span Capacity*

### 5.1.1 Radial Arm Maze

The 8-arm radial arm maze (RAM) was developed by Olton and Samuelson (1976) to measure the number of locations a rodent could remember. This measurement of span capacity was accomplished by requiring the rodent to enter arms of the maze to retrieve food at the end of each arm, adopting a win-shift strategy so as not to reenter previously visited arms (which are not re-baited during the session). This task has numerous limitations, however. For example, numerous studies have attempted to distinguish working memory from "reference memory" within the task by never rewarding specific arms (Olton and Werz 1978). With only seven arm locations to be remembered, ceiling effects are common in the standard task, but by reducing those arms by never baiting some arms, ceiling effects are even more prominent. Moreover, during training, all doors are often left open, so the animal will readily adopt a simple "turn left" strategy, exiting and immediately entering the next arm so that there is little need to hold a memory of spatial locations online (Young et al. 2009b). Such a strategy can be circumvented if the doors are closed briefly (1 s) before the animal makes its next selection (Tarantino et al. 2011; Wenk 2004). Moreover, the quantification of such a strategy has been problematic in the past, with measurements such as the number of turns of a given angle or distance of arms visited (Ammassari-Teule et al. 1998; Hodges and Green 1986; Kobayashi et al. 1988). Recently, Tarantino et al. (2011) described a specific measure (StrategyCV) that calculates a value for the consistency of turn types taken by the animal and can be used in future studies to determine whether treatments affect online memory storage vs. strategy.

The difficulty in interpreting data wherein animals may be using a spatial strategy makes identifying drugs that act specifically on working memory span problematic. For example, the histamine 3 receptor ($H_3$) antagonist clobenpropit reversed MK-801-induced RAM deficits in rats (Huang et al. 2004), but doors remained open throughout testing, with no discussion of the effects of treatment on strategy usage. Moreover, given that the dopamine $D_2$ receptor family antagonist raclopride also partially reversed these MK-801-induced deficits in RAM performance, and that such treatment does not reverse working memory deficits in patients with schizophrenia, the use of this model and these results may be limited. Numerous studies by Levin and colleagues (Addy et al. 2003; Bancroft and Levin 2000; Bettany and Levin 2001; Levin et al. 2002; Rezvani and Levin 2001) have described nicotine-induced improvement in RAM performance in rats that was likely mediated via the α7 nAChR. These data are again largely comprised of studies with doors remaining open, with little discussion of the effects of the treatment on strategies, however. When doors were closed and strategy use measured, Tarantino et al. (2011) demonstrated that bromocriptine (a dopamine $D_2$-receptor family agonist) improved working memory span in normal mice without affecting strategy. Given that bromocriptine improves working memory span of healthy human subjects (Gibbs and D'Esposito 2005; Mehta et al. 2001), this finding provides some pharmacological predictive validity that this protocol may be useful for future studies investigating treatments to improve working memory span in patients with schizophrenia.

### 5.1.2 Odor Span Task

The odor span task (OST) was originally developed for use in rats (Dudchenko et al. 2000; Turchi and Sarter 2000) and was later adapted for use in mice (Young et al. 2007a, c, 2009c). While originally devised to demonstrate that the hippocampus was not required for nonspatial memory span (Dudchenko et al. 2000), it has been recognized that the OST assesses nonspatial working memory span capacity (Young et al. 2009a, b, c). In the OST, rodents are presented with an increasing number of odor-filled bowls, requiring them to remember the list of odors in order to dig only in bowls containing novel odors. Thus, the memory capacity of the rodent can be measured by increasing the list of odors, with 24 (Dudchenko et al. 2000), 18 (Turchi and Sarter 2000), and 21 odors having been used (Young et al. 2007c, 2009c). Performance can be assessed in the OST by (a) the number of spans prior to an error (memory capacity), (b) number of errors (surrogate marker of memory), (c) spans completed (number of trials completed), (d) latency to dig (approximation of speed of processing), and (e) latency to dig in the first bowl [approximation of motivation to gain a reward given that there is no choice to be made (Young et al. 2009b)].

The OST is of importance because nonspatial working memory is rarely assessed in rodents, although it is commonly measured in humans (e.g., digit span task). Moreover, consistent with human working memory tasks, the hippocampus is not required for performance of the OST (Dudchenko et al. 2000). Turchi and Sarter

(2000) determined that lesions of the basal forebrain cholinergic neurons did impair OST performance, reducing the span of odors the rats could remember. This lesion may have had a direct impact on the nonspatial span capacity of the rats, but may have also indirectly reduced the capacity to remember by interfering with the rats' ability to attend to the task, because such lesions also impair attention (McGaughy et al. 1996; Muir et al. 1992). Mice with a null mutation of the alpha 7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptor also exhibit impaired performance in the OST, observed as a reduced span capacity, but also a reduced number of spans completed (Young et al. 2007a). The lack of difference in initial dig latency suggests that this reduced span was not attributable to reduced motivation, supported by a normal progressive ratio breakpoint in these mice (Young et al. 2011b). This OST deficit may have been mediated by poor attention, because α7 KO mice exhibit impaired attention as measured by the 5-CSRTT (Hoyle et al. 2006; Young et al. 2004, 2007a). Further support for a cholinergic contribution to the OST comes from observations that various nicotinic acetylcholine receptor agonists improve performance while antagonists impair it (Rushforth et al. 2010; Young et al. 2007c). These data are consistent with nicotine-induced improvements in working memory in healthy human subjects (Min et al. 2001). Thus, the OST can be used to assess compounds that improve working memory span capacity. The pharmacological predictive validity of the OST could be further assessed by examining whether the $D_2$ family agonist bromocriptine would improve performance in poorly performing animals consistent with the baseline-dependent effects in healthy subjects (Gibbs and D'Esposito 2005; Mehta et al. 2001).

## 6 Short/Long-Term Recognition Memory

### *6.1 Novel Object Recognition Task*

The novel object recognition task (NORT) is a paradigm that is commonly used in research to investigate memory performance. This task utilizes the innate preference of animals (also observed in humans) for investigating novel objects. The rodent is presented with two identical novel objects and given time to explore these objects (sample phase). The animal is then removed for a predetermined period of time (delay period—studies range from 3 s to 24 h), after which they are presented with two objects, one identical to the previously presented objects, and one novel (choice phase). The preference of the animal for exploring the novel over the familiar object is taken as reflecting the memory capacity of that animal for the given delay period.

The use of NORT to assess putative compounds as pro-cognitive agents has increased rapidly over the past decade. This rise in utilization of NORT is in part because of its rapidity of use. There are numerous potential confounds that can limit the cross-species interpretability of studies, however. For example, in addition to NORT assessing short- (Mori et al. 2011; Niimi et al. 2008) or long-term memory

(Hashimoto et al. 2007; Kunitachi et al. 2009; Nagai et al. 2009; Wang et al. 2007), depending upon the delay utilized, the lack of goal-directed behavior of the animal has led researchers to speculate that NORT also measures attention (Chuhan and Taukulis 2006; Dere et al. 2008; Silvers et al. 2007), working memory (Benice and Raber 2009; Yamada et al. 2011), episodic memory (Idris et al. 2010; McLean et al. 2010), and learning (Mori et al. 2011; Yamada et al. 2011). Although object (shape) recognition tasks, which require the recognition of shapes as being novel or familiar, exist in human procedures—and patients with schizophrenia exhibit deficits in these tests (Bozikas et al. 2006)—these human tasks have explicit instructions, and thus the subjects are explicitly motivated to recognize novel shapes. Recognition of novel objects in the rodent version of the task is inferred by the animal spontaneously engaging with the novel object, but there is no verifiable motivation for the animal to do so. The behavior is viewed as innate, thus changes to this behavior could indeed reflect changes in memory, or instead changes to that innate preference. Hence, pharmacological manipulations may in fact alter this spontaneous novelty preference of the animal as much as its memory for familiar objects, possibly confounding the interpretation of the data (Young et al. 2009b). Moreover, human NORT paradigms were not identified by the MATRICS or CNTRICS groups as being appropriate for assaying cognition in patients with schizophrenia. Hence, the utility of NORT as a preclinical screen for pro-cognitive compounds to go forward in these initiatives has yet to be demonstrated. Some of these concerns can be addressed by including multiple delays, during which animals demonstrate intact novelty preference at the shorter delays while changes (poorer performance or compound-induced enhancement) are observed at the longer delays. With the inclusion of several delays, data can be interpreted more confidently as being due to the delay and indicative of altered delay-dependent memory (King et al. 2004; Wietrzych et al. 2005). Few studies incorporate such a parametric manipulation to assess the delay dependency of the effect, however. Future NORT studies would benefit from incorporating multiple measurements across different delay intervals. Many compounds that act on novel targets improve NORT performance [described in Young et al. (2009b, 2011c)], but the number of false positives from NORT—e.g., FGA and SGA as well as AChEI-induced improvements in NORT performance—has limited the predictive validity of the NORT for identifying novel treatments that will prove efficacious in a clinical setting.

## 7 Long-Term Memory and Learning

### *7.1 Morris Water Maze*

The water maze was developed by Morris (1981) and utilizes the natural preference of rodents to escape a marine environment. A circular high-sided pool filled with

warm water is used to motivate the animal to escape to a submerged platform on which the animal can stand once it locates the platform. The water is opaque, so that the rodents must use extra-maze cues to locate the platform. Traditionally, rodents are trained to locate a stationary platform for several sessions a day over several days, with latencies and path lengths to locate the submerged platform taken as measures of learning and memory. There are numerous species considerations and experimental effects to take into account when testing rodents in the water maze (D'Hooge and De Deyn 2001). The primary use of the water maze has been to investigate memory encoding and specifically hippocampal function (D'Hooge and De Deyn 2001; Micheau et al. 2004). Increasing emphasis has been placed on assessing learning and memory in animal models of Alzheimer's disease (Bromley-Brits et al. 2011) and schizophrenia (Didriksen et al. 2006; Drew et al. 2011; Mutlu et al. 2011). The cross-species translational relevance of the Morris Water Maze has been limited so far, however (Young et al. 2009b), and perhaps the most useful advantage in the use of the water maze has been its reverse translation for use in humans. While a pool and opaque water are not used, subjects wear a virtual reality mask and are required to navigate an environment utilizing spatial cues to locate certain objects (Antonova et al. 2010; Folley et al. 2010). Initial research assessing the performance of schizophrenia patients suggests profound learning and memory deficits, which theoretically can then be back-translated for further development of animal models of schizophrenia.

## *7.2 Long-Term Relational Memory*

The CNTRICS initiative found that patients with schizophrenia exhibit long-term memory deficits, especially for the construct of relational encoding and retrieval. Relational encoding and retrieval was defined as "the processes involved in memory for stimuli/elements and how they were associated with coincident context, stimuli, or events" (Ragland et al. 2009). Specifically, it was concluded that patients with schizophrenia exhibit specific deficits in remembering the relational aspect of various stimuli, an important ability allowing the generative use of stored knowledge to address new environmental challenges.

### 7.2.1 Transitive Inference Paradigm

An example of such a relational memory task is the transitive inference paradigm (TIP), which can be performed by humans using visual symbols (Titone et al. 2004) and by mice using odors (DeVito et al. 2009, 2010). During the TIP, subjects are presented with a series of pairs of stimuli, and they must identify which is the target with no prior knowledge of the pairings. When A is paired with B, A $>$ B, but when B is paired with C, B $>$ C, C $>$ D, and D $>$ E. Thus, when A appears, it is always the target. When E appears, it is never the target. B, C, and D are the target 50% of

the time they appear, however. Healthy subjects (humans and mice), when presented with the choice of B and D, will preferentially select B given that B > C, while C > D. The TIP therefore cannot be performed without having a relational memory for the presented paired values. Patients with schizophrenia exhibit poor relational memory for the stimuli when presented with B and D, but exhibit normal performance for A and E (Titone et al. 2004). Knowledge of the relationship of B and D is reliant on the prefrontal cortex and hippocampus (DeVito et al. 2009, 2010). Given that the focus of the CNTRICS initiative has been to identify novel paradigms for developing cognitive enhancers for schizophrenia, rather than initiating investigations of specific compounds in these paradigms, currently there have been no pharmacological studies published on this task. The TIP may prove useful in future studies, however.

## 8 Speed of Processing

Processing speed in humans is normally measured by the speed at which information is collated and used. Improving this domain is important for patients given that they are often slow to understand information presented to them. Processing speed contrasts with simple reaction-time (RT) tasks in which subjects simply respond to a target stimulus. The use of RT tasks that require a decision-making process regarding stimuli presented before a response is required may provide greater information on the cross-species effects of putative treatments on processing speed compared to simple RT tasks (Blokland 1998). This section will focus on two such tasks, olfactory discrimination and the stop-signal reaction-time (SSR) task.

### *8.1 Olfactory Discrimination*

The primary sensory modality for rodents is olfaction. Thus, the assessment of choice RTs using olfactory cues may provide an ethologically relevant method for studying processing speed in rodents. An olfactometer apparatus has been developed by Slotnick and colleagues to measure rodent responses to olfactory cues (Bodyak and Slotnick 1999; Slotnick 2001; Slotnick and Risser 1990). Rodents can be trained to nosepoke in an aperture for a fixed period (1.5 s), during which time an odor is presented. Licking at the water tube (within 2 s) or not after a presented odor signals the rodent acknowledging the presented odor and, if appropriate, leads to reinforcement. Bodyak and Slotnick (1999) demonstrated that discriminatory accuracy levels were near perfect even when comparing no odor vs. 0.0001% concentration of ethyl acetate vapor. Drop in performance levels only occurs when odor similarities are increased (Abraham et al. 2004; Rinberg et al. 2006; Uchida and Mainen 2003). The change in performance from increasing odor

similarities reveals behavioral differences between the way rats and mice perform this task. While the accuracy levels of rats decrease, their RT remains unchanged when the similarity between odors is increased (Uchida and Mainen 2003). In contrast, the RT of mice is slowed while their accuracy levels are maintained in similar circumstances (Abraham et al. 2004; Rinberg et al. 2006). Remarkably, if rats are forced to increase their sampling time when similar stimuli are presented, their RT slows down and accuracy increases (Slotnick and Risser 1990). Thus, rats appear naturally to adopt a strategy whereby they react rapidly, but when forced to slow their sampling time they will utilize the extra information gathered to improve accuracy (Slotnick and Risser 1990). This strategy contrasts with mice whose strategy was to be primed to withhold from responding; thus they naturally make use of more information to maintain accuracy (Bodyak and Slotnick 1999). These findings could explain the differences observed between rat and mouse odor discriminatory performance when odor similarity is increased. Because increased RTs are observed in humans when task difficulty is increased (Parasuraman 1998), perhaps it would prove more fruitful to utilize mice when investigating treatments that might improve speed of processing for patients with schizophrenia. Pharmacological studies conducted on rodents performing olfactory discrimination studies in this operant chamber would be advisable to validate this model for examining speed of processing in rodents.

## *8.2 Stop-Signal Reaction-Time Task*

The stop-signal reaction-time (SSR) task measures the ability of the subject to inhibit an ongoing action (Logan et al. 1984). Rats are trained to consecutively and rapidly press two levers (go-trial, 80% of trials), but must inhibit responding on the second lever if a tone occurs (stop-signal, 20% of trials). The temporal distance of the occurrence of the stop signal from the second response can be varied to alter the difficulty level. Thus, a SSR is measured as the longest temporal distance between pressing the first of the go levers, a stop-signal being emitted, and the rat successfully inhibiting responding on the second lever. Because the SSR task measures the speed at which the subject can stop responding while it is already enroute to performing the action (stop latency), the measure is thought to reflect the speed at which information is processed. The primary measure of the SSR task is the stop-latency, although go-latencies are also collected to examine nonspecific effects.

Numerous lesion studies have contributed to the understanding of a network contributing to SSR that integrates general responses with inhibitory control (Eagle and Baunez 2010). For example, both orbitofrontal lesions and dorsomedial striatum lesions slow the SSR, but only the former does so in the absence of nonspecific slowed go-reaction-times (Eagle et al. 2008; Eagle and Robbins 2003). Lesions of the subthalamic nucleus, on the other hand, completely impair the rats' ability to inhibit responding (Eagle et al. 2008). Such findings are largely consistent with

human studies detailing the network subserving inhibitory responding in this task (Aron and Poldrack 2005).

The wake-promoting agent modafinil can improve SST performance in normal volunteers and ADHD patients, but not that of patients with schizophrenia (Turner et al. 2003, 2004a, b). Modafinil lowered rat SSR in poor performers without affecting go-reaction-time (Eagle et al. 2007), although modafinil sped up go-reaction-time in other studies (Young and Geyer 2010). The ADHD treatment atomoxetine also sped no-go-reaction-time without affecting go-reaction-time (Robinson et al. 2008). Given that atomoxetine also reduced false alarm responding and premature responding (Robinson et al. 2008), this mechanism (norepinephrine transporter inhibition) likely utilizes nonspecific inhibitory processes as opposed to improving speed of processing.

To date, all studies in the SSR task have been conducted in rats, humans, and nonhuman primates. No studies have been published on the availability of this task for use in mice. Thus, detecting pharmacological influences on genetically modified animals has not yet been possible. For future studies to include such investigations in the search for pro-cognitive therapeutics for schizophrenia, the task will require development in mice.

## 9 Assessing Learning for Developing Augmentation for Cognitive Remediation

As described elsewhere, numerous studies have observed enhanced cognition in patients with schizophrenia when cognitive remediation (CR) is utilized (Twamley et al. 2011). In CR, patients are provided with a structured learning environment where they are taught to improve their cognitive capabilities. Although several techniques exist, the majority utilize positive reinforcement to encourage patients to master simple tasks that can be utilized in everyday life. It is possible that augmenting CR with a pro-cognitive compound could result in even greater improvements in cognition, resulting in improved functional outcome (Swerdlow 2011). Identifying compounds that improve positive reinforcement learning would be a valuable first step prior to testing in the clinic. The Morris water maze and avoidance learning utilize negative reinforcement and stressful environments and thus may not be the most useful tasks when identifying treatments that utilize the same cognitive construct used in CR, i.e., positive reinforcement. There are numerous other paradigms that assay positive reinforcement learning in animals. Many of the paradigms described earlier have learning components that are often only used to train the animal to perform a certain task, after which stability is preferred and a limited influence of learning on results is desired. For example, in the 5-CSRTT, animals are normally trained to a set criterion, after which compounds are tested in a challenge to performance—if that challenge incorporates a learning component; however, the results can be confounded by altered learning or attention (Young

et al. 2009b). The primary purpose of the ASST is to assess executive functioning by examining reversal learning and set-shifting. The ASST also has various stages where simple learning is examined, however; thus, evidence for drug or genetic effects on simple learning can also be generated using this task (Birrell and Brown 2000). Using the ASST, we have identified that mice lacking the α7 nAChR exhibit impoverished reinforcement learning for an abstract rule, but these mice can readily apply that rule once learned (Young et al. 2011b). Given that these mice exhibit impaired learning of abstract rules in other paradigms utilizing other materials and senses, the α7 nAChR might be an important target for pharmacological augmentation of CR. Further studies aimed at developing augmentation strategies may prove profitable in the future.

## 10 Conclusions

Current treatments for patients with schizophrenia do not treat cognitive dysfunction. Given the link between cognitive dysfunction and poor functional outcome in these patients, there has been increasing focus on developing pro-cognitive treatments. Because of this focus, the growing arsenal of behavioral paradigms that are being developed may aid this drug discovery process. The main obstacle in the validation of these paradigms remains the lack of a true positive control, since no treatment that robustly and significantly improves cognitive performance in schizophrenia patients has yet been identified. Nevertheless, by utilizing increasing insights into the basic neurobiological mechanisms that underlie cognitive processes in healthy individuals and specific cognitive deficits in schizophrenia, researchers have endeavored to develop behavioral paradigms that can replicate as closely as possible the neurobiological abnormalities present in schizophrenia.

This approach requires that the cognitive paradigms used to test animals engage the same neural mechanisms as the clinical tests that detect cognitive deficits in human patients. As a result, attention has focused on paradigms with demonstrable cross-species translational relevance, as for example in the shift from assessing working memory in animals using short-term spatial memory tasks to paradigms measuring the span capacity of working memory. Such tasks, including the OST, are more likely to engage the same mechanisms that also underlie working memory performance as studied in humans. In another example, the 5-CSRTT, which has limited translational validity for human tests of vigilance in schizophrenia, has been refined into the 5C-CPT, which may have greater construct validity for such clinical tests.

In several other cases, tasks whose original versions have limited utility for the development of pro-cognitive schizophrenia treatments have been rendered more useful by judicious methodological adjustments. Examples include the closing of doors to all arms between trials in the RAM (to avoid confounds due to exploration strategies) and the use of multiple delay periods in the NORT (to distinguish between effects on memory and effects on innate novelty preference). These

paradigms may yield more and better insights into possible targets for cognitive enhancements in schizophrenia in the future.

Several promising new paradigms have been developed recently that may further accelerate the development of pro-cognitive treatments for schizophrenia. These newer tasks, such as the 5C-CPT, dSAT, ASST, OST, and TIP, have not yet been investigated in detail using pharmacological or genetic manipulations, so their predictive validity for clinical tests in humans has not yet been robustly established. However, these tasks exhibit considerable construct validity, and it can be reasonably hoped that they will, in the near future, contribute significantly to the search for cognitive enhancers for schizophrenia patients.

Due to the complexity of the behaviors assessed by these cognitive paradigms, it is crucial that the tests developed for these studies assess multiple behavioral aspects simultaneously. This multivariate approach is necessary to rule out putative experimental manipulation confounds such as locomotor disruption, sedation, or motivation, and to distinguish between effects on different cognitive modalities (e.g., attention vs. memory). For example, the 5C-CPT not only assesses attention, but also includes measures of inhibitory control, motor impulsivity, speed of responding, and motivation for the reward.

The availability of a variety of paradigms that differ in their ease and speed of use vs. thoroughness of behavioral assessment provides various avenues of research into cognition in schizophrenia with differing logistical constraints. For example, the ASST offers a very comprehensive assessment of different aspects of the reasoning and problem-solving domain. Simpler reversal learning tasks, however, despite being more limited in scope, enable the evaluation of pharmacological treatments using a high-throughput approach. Such tasks permit the assessment of this domain in settings in which the use of the time-consuming ASST would be prohibitive.

Finally, it is recognized that we are trying to develop treatments for a uniquely human disease. Most attempts to develop pro-cognitive therapeutics from rodent studies predominantly utilize normal animals that are challenged or perturbed in some way. The incomplete understanding of the etiology of the disease makes the relationship of such perturbations to schizophrenia tenuous. Although many theories exist regarding the etiologies of the group of schizophrenia disorders—with perturbations available based on these theories—none are definitive. One potential strategy is to develop pro-cognitive therapeutics that improves cognition in poorly performing animals. This strategy enables the targeting of patients with specific deficits in the cognitive domain assessed in the animals, with the caveat that the mechanism underlying the drug effect would need to remain intact in the patient. Until more is known of the etiologies of schizophrenias, developing treatments that are disease specific will prove challenging.

The study of pro-cognitive treatments for schizophrenia using behavioral animal models has expanded impressively in the recent past, thanks to the development of promising new paradigms and the refinement of existing tasks. Future studies that further evaluate these new and improved tasks using pharmacological and genetic manipulations will strengthen the usefulness of these paradigms. Manipulations

that more closely mimic what is known of the etiologies contributing to the disorder will likely increase the chances of disease-specific treatments. These strategies combined will hopefully accelerate the development of effective treatments for cognitive dysfunction in schizophrenia.

**Acknowledgments** This work was supported by the National Institute of Mental Health (MH042228, MH071916, MH091571) and the U.S. Veterans Administration, Veterans Integrated Service Network (VISN) 22 Mental Illness Research, Education, and Clinical Center.

## References

Abdul-Monim Z, Reynolds GP, Neill JC (2003) The atypical antipsychotic ziprasidone, but not haloperidol, improves phencyclidine-induced cognitive deficits in a reversal learning task in the rat. J Psychopharmacol 17:57–65

Abdul-Monim Z, Reynolds GP, Neill JC (2006) The effect of atypical and classical antipsychotics on sub-chronic PCP-induced cognitive deficits in a reversal-learning paradigm. Behav Brain Res 169:263–273

Abraham NM, Spors H, Carleton A, Margrie TW, Kuner T, Schaefer AT (2004) Maintaining accuracy at the expense of speed: stimulus similarity defines odor discrimination time in mice. Neuron 44:865–876

Addy NA, Nakijama A, Levin ED (2003) Nicotinic mechanisms of memory: effects of acute local DHbetaE and MLA infusions in the basolateral amygdala. Brain Res Cogn Brain Res 16:51–57

Amitai N, Markou A (2009) Chronic nicotine improves cognitive performance in a test of attention but does not attenuate cognitive disruption induced by repeated phencyclidine administration. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 202:275–286

Amitai N, Semenova S, Markou A (2007) Cognitive-disruptive effects of the psychotomimetic phencyclidine and attenuation by atypical antipsychotic medications in rats. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 193:521–537

Ammassari-Teule M, Save E, de Marsanich B, Thinus-Blanc C (1998) Posterior parietal cortex lesions severely disrupt spatial learning in DBA mice characterized by a genetic hippocampal dysfunction. Behav Brain Res 95:85–90

Antonova E, Parslow D, Brammer M, Simmons A, Williams S, Dawson GR, Morris RG (2010) Scopolamine disrupts hippocampal activity during allocentric spatial memory in humans: an fMRI study using a virtual reality analogue of the Morris Water Maze. J Psychopharmacol 25(9):1256–65

Arnsten AF (2004) Adrenergic targets for the treatment of cognitive deficits in schizophrenia. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 174:25–31

Aron AR, Poldrack RA (2005) The cognitive neuroscience of response inhibition: relevance for genetic research in attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder. Biol Psychiatry 57:1285–1292

Baddeley A (2001) The concept of episodic memory. Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci 356:1345–1350

Baddeley AD (1986) Working memory. Oxford University Press, Oxford

Balducci C, Nurra M, Pietropoli A, Samanin R, Carli M (2003) Reversal of visual attention dysfunction after AMPA lesions of the nucleus basalis magnocellularis (NBM) by the cholinesterase inhibitor donepezil and by a 5-HT1A receptor antagonist WAY 100635. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 167:28–36

Bancroft A, Levin ED (2000) Ventral hippocampal alpha4beta2 nicotinic receptors and chronic nicotine effects on memory. Neuropharmacology 39:2770–2778

Barch DM, Carter CS, Arnsten A, Buchanan RW, Cohen JD, Geyer M, Green MF, Krystal JH, Nuechterlein K, Robbins T, Silverstein S, Smith EE, Strauss M, Wykes T, Heinssen R (2009) Selecting paradigms from cognitive neuroscience for translation into use in clinical trials: proceedings of the third CNTRICS meeting. Schizophr Bull 35:109–114

Barense MD, Fox MT, Baxter MG (2002) Aged rats are impaired on an attentional set-shifting task sensitive to medial frontal cortex damage in young rats. Learn Mem 9:191–201

Barnes SA, Young JW, Neill JC (2011a) D(1) receptor activation improves vigilance in rats as measured by the 5-choice continuous performance test. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 220(1):129–41

Barnes SA, Young JW, Neill JC (2011b) Rats tested after a washout period from sub-chronic PCP administration exhibited impaired performance in the 5-Choice Continuous Performance Test (5C-CPT) when the attentional load was increased. Neuropharmacology 62(3):1432–41

Barnett JH, Robbins TW, Leeson VC, Sahakian BJ, Joyce EM, Blackwell AD (2010) Assessing cognitive function in clinical trials of schizophrenia. Neurosci Biobehav Rev 34:1161–1177

Benice TS, Raber J (2009) Dihydrotestosterone modulates spatial working-memory performance in male mice. J Neurochem 110:902–911

Berg EA (1948) A simple objective technique for measuring flexibility in thinking. J Gen Psychol 39:15–22

Bettany JH, Levin ED (2001) Ventral hippocampal alpha 7 nicotinic receptor blockade and chronic nicotine effects on memory performance in the radial-arm maze. Pharmacol Biochem Behav 70:467–474

Birrell JM, Brown VJ (2000) Medial frontal cortex mediates perceptual attentional set shifting in the rat. J Neurosci 20:4320–4324

Bissonette GB, Martins GJ, Franz TM, Harper ES, Schoenbaum G, Powell EM (2008) Double dissociation of the effects of medial and orbital prefrontal cortical lesions on attentional and affective shifts in mice. J Neurosci 28:11124–11130

Blokland A (1998) Reaction time responding in rats. Neurosci Biobehav Rev 22:847–864

Bodyak N, Slotnick B (1999) Performance of mice in an automated olfactometer: odor detection, discrimination and odor memory. Chem Senses 24:637–645

Bor D, Duncan J, Owen AM (2001) The role of spatial configuration in tests of working memory explored with functional neuroimaging. Scand J Psychol 42:217–224

Bor D, Owen AM (2006) Working memory: linking capacity with selectivity. Curr Biol 16: R136–R138

Bozikas VP, Kosmidis MH, Kiosseoglou G, Karavatos A (2006) Neuropsychological profile of cognitively impaired patients with schizophrenia. Compr Psychiatry 47:136–143

Brigman JL, Bussey TJ, Saksida LM, Rothblat LA (2005) Discrimination of multidimensional visual stimuli by mice: intra- and extradimensional shifts. Behav Neurosci 119:839–842

Bromley-Brits K, Deng Y, Song W (2011) Morris water maze test for learning and memory deficits in Alzheimer's disease model mice. J Vis Exp 53. pii: 2920. doi: 10.3791/2920

Buchanan RW, Conley RR, Dickinson D, Ball MP, Feldman S, Gold JM, McMahon RP (2007a) Galantamine for the Treatment of Cognitive Impairments in People With Schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 165(1):82–9

Buchanan RW, Davis M, Goff D, Green MF, Keefe RS, Leon AC, Nuechterlein KH, Laughren T, Levin R, Stover E, Fenton W, Marder SR (2005) A summary of the FDA-NIMH-MATRICS workshop on clinical trial design for neurocognitive drugs for schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 31:5–19

Buchanan RW, Freedman R, Javitt DC, Abi-Dargham A, Lieberman JA (2007b) Recent advances in the development of novel pharmacological agents for the treatment of cognitive impairments in schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 33:1120–1130

Burk JA (2004) Introduction of a retention interval in a sustained attention task in rats: effects of a visual distracter and increasing the inter-trial interval. Behav Processes 67:521–531

Bushnell PJ (1998) Behavioral approaches to the assessment of attention in animals. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 138:231–259

Bushnell PJ, Kelly KL, Crofton KM (1994) Effects of toluene inhalation on detection of auditory signals in rats. Neurotoxicol Teratol 16:149–160

Bushnell PJ, Oshiro WM, Padnos BK (1997) Detection of visual signals by rats: effects of chlordiazepoxide and cholinergic and adrenergic drugs on sustained attention. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 134:230–241

Bussey TJ, Holmes A, Lyon L, Mar AC, McAllister KA, Nithianantharajah J, Oomen CA, Saksida LM (2011) New translational assays for preclinical modelling of cognition in schizophrenia: The touchscreen testing method for mice and rats. Neuropharmacology 62 (3):1191–203

Caine SB, Negus SS, Mello NK (1999) Method for training operant responding and evaluating cocaine self-administration behavior in mutant mice. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 147:22–24

Calcagno E, Carli M, Baviera M, Invernizzi RW (2009) Endogenous serotonin and serotonin2C receptors are involved in the ability of M100907 to suppress cortical glutamate release induced by NMDA receptor blockade. J Neurochem 108:521–532

Carli M, Baviera M, Invernizzi RW, Balducci C (2006) Dissociable contribution of 5-HT1A and 5-HT2A receptors in the medial prefrontal cortex to different aspects of executive control such as impulsivity and compulsive perseveration in rats. Neuropsychopharmacology 31:757–767

Carli M, Robbins TW, Evenden JL, Everitt BJ (1983) Effects of lesions to ascending noradrenergic neurones on performance of a 5-choice serial reaction task in rats; implications for theories of dorsal noradrenergic bundle function based on selective attention and arousal. Behav Brain Res 9:361–380

Carrozzo M, Koch G, Turriziani P, Caltagirone C, Carlesimo GA, Lacquaniti F (2005) Integration of cognitive allocentric information in visuospatial short-term memory through the hippocampus. Hippocampus 15:1072–1084

Carter CS, Barch DM (2007) Cognitive neuroscience-based approaches to measuring and improving treatment effects on cognition in schizophrenia: the CNTRICS initiative. Schizophr Bull 33:1131–1137

Cassens G, Inglis AK, Appelbaum PS, Gutheil TG (1990) Neuroleptics: effects on neuropsychological function in chronic schizophrenic patients. Schizophr Bull 16:477–499

Cave CB, Squire LR (1992) Intact verbal and nonverbal short-term memory following damage to the human hippocampus. Hippocampus 2:151–163

Chen WJ, Faraone SV (2000) Sustained attention deficits as markers of genetic susceptibility to schizophrenia. Am J Med Genet 97:52–57

Chouinard S, Sepehry AA, Stip E (2007) Oral cholinesterase inhibitor add-on therapy for cognitive enhancement in schizophrenia: a quantitative systematic review, Part I. Clin Neuropharmacol 30:169–182

Chudasama Y, Passetti F, Rhodes SE, Lopian D, Desai A, Robbins TW (2003) Dissociable aspects of performance on the 5-choice serial reaction time task following lesions of the dorsal anterior cingulate, infralimbic and orbitofrontal cortex in the rat: differential effects on selectivity, impulsivity and compulsivity. Behav Brain Res 146(1–2):105–119

Chudasama Y, Robbins TW (2004) Psychopharmacological approaches to modulating attention in the five-choice serial reaction time task: implications for schizophrenia. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 174:86–98

Chuhan YS, Taukulis HK (2006) Impairment of single-trial memory formation by oral methylphenidate in the rat. Neurobiol Learn Mem 85:125–131

Cornblatt B, Obuchowski M, Schnur D, O'Brien JD (1998) Hillside study of risk and early detection in schizophrenia. Br J Psychiatry Suppl 172:26–32

Cornblatt B, Obuchowski M, Schnur DB, O'Brien JD (1997) Attention and clinical symptoms in schizophrenia. Psychiatr Q 68:343–359

Cornblatt BA, Keilp JG (1994) Impaired attention, genetics, and the pathophysiology of schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 20:31–46

Cornblatt BA, Malhotra AK (2001) Impaired attention as an endophenotype for molecular genetic studies of schizophrenia. Am J Med Genet 105:11–15

Curtis CE (2006) Prefrontal and parietal contributions to spatial working memory. Neuroscience 139:173–180

D'Hooge R, De Deyn PP (2001) Applications of the Morris water maze in the study of learning and memory. Brain Res Brain Res Rev 36:60–90

Deller T, Sarter M (1998) Effects of repeated administration of amphetamine on behavioral vigilance: evidence for "sensitized" attentional impairments. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 137:410–414

Demeter E, Sarter M, Lustig C (2008) Rats and humans paying attention: cross-species task development for translational research. Neuropsychology 22:787–799

Dere E, Zheng-Fischhofer Q, Viggiano D, Gironi Carnevale UA, Ruocco LA, Zlomuzica A, Schnichels M, Willecke K, Huston JP, Sadile AG (2008) Connexin31.1 deficiency in the mouse impairs object memory and modulates open-field exploration, acetylcholine esterase levels in the striatum, and cAMP response element-binding protein levels in the striatum and piriform cortex. Neuroscience 153:396–405

DeVito LM, Konigsberg R, Lykken C, Sauvage M, Young WS 3rd, Eichenbaum H (2009) Vasopressin 1b receptor knock-out impairs memory for temporal order. J Neurosci 29:2676–2683

DeVito LM, Lykken C, Kanter BR, Eichenbaum H (2010) Prefrontal cortex: role in acquisition of overlapping associations and transitive inference. Learn Mem 17:161–167

Didriksen M, Kreilgaard M, Arnt J (2006) Sertindole, in contrast to clozapine and olanzapine, does not disrupt water maze performance after acute or chronic treatment. Eur J Pharmacol 542:108–115

Drew LJ, Stark KL, Fenelon K, Karayiorgou M, Macdermott AB, Gogos JA (2011) Evidence for altered hippocampal function in a mouse model of the human 22q11.2 microdeletion. Mol Cell Neurosci 47:293–305

Dudchenko PA (2004) An overview of the tasks used to test working memory in rodents. Neurosci Biobehav Rev 28:699–709

Dudchenko PA, Wood ER, Eichenbaum H (2000) Neurotoxic hippocampal lesions have no effect on odor span and little effect on odor recognition memory but produce significant impairments on spatial span, recognition, and alternation. J Neurosci 20:2964–2977

Dunnett SB (1985) Comparative effects of cholinergic drugs and lesions of nucleus basalis or fimbria-fornix on delayed matching in rats. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 87:357–363

Eagle DM, Baunez C (2010) Is there an inhibitory-response-control system in the rat? Evidence from anatomical and pharmacological studies of behavioral inhibition. Neurosci Biobehav Rev 34:50–72

Eagle DM, Baunez C, Hutcheson DM, Lehmann O, Shah AP, Robbins TW (2008) Stop-signal reaction-time task performance: role of prefrontal cortex and subthalamic nucleus. Cereb Cortex 18:178–188

Eagle DM, Robbins TW (2003) Lesions of the medial prefrontal cortex or nucleus accumbens core do not impair inhibitory control in rats performing a stop-signal reaction time task. Behav Brain Res 146:131–144

Eagle DM, Tufft MR, Goodchild HL, Robbins TW (2007) Differential effects of modafinil and methylphenidate on stop-signal reaction time task performance in the rat, and interactions with the dopamine receptor antagonist cis-flupenthixol. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 192:193–206

Echevarria DJ, Brewer A, Burk JA, Brown SN, Manuzon H, Robinson JK (2005) Construct validity of an operant signal detection task for rats. Behav Brain Res 157:283–290

Egan MF, Goldberg TE, Kolachana BS, Callicott JH, Mazzanti CM, Straub RE, Goldman D, Weinberger DR (2001) Effect of COMT Val108/158 Met genotype on frontal lobe function and risk for schizophrenia. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 98:6917–6922

Erlenmeyer-Kimling L (2000) Neurobehavioral deficits in offspring of schizophrenic parents: liability indicators and predictors of illness. Am J Med Genet 97:65–71

Fagerlund B, Mackeprang T, Gade A, Glenthoj BY (2004) Effects of low-dose risperidone and low-dose zuclopenthixol on cognitive functions in first-episode drug-naive schizophrenic patients. CNS Spectr 9:364–374

Fields RB, Van Kammen DP, Peters JL, Rosen J, Van Kammen WB, Nugent A, Stipetic M, Linnoila M (1988) Clonidine improves memory function in schizophrenia independently from change in psychosis. Preliminary findings. Schizophr Res 1:417–423

Fletcher PJ, Tampakeras M, Sinyard J, Higgins GA (2007) Opposing effects of 5-HT(2A) and 5-HT(2 C) receptor antagonists in the rat and mouse on premature responding in the five-choice serial reaction time test. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 195:223–234

Fletcher PJ, Tenn CC, Rizos Z, Lovic V, Kapur S (2005) Sensitization to amphetamine, but not PCP, impairs attentional set shifting: reversal by a D1 receptor agonist injected into the medial prefrontal cortex. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 183:190–200

Floresco SB, Geyer MA, Gold LH, Grace AA (2005) Developing predictive animal models and establishing a preclinical trials network for assessing treatment effects on cognition in schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 31:888–894

Folley BS, Astur R, Jagannathan K, Calhoun VD, Pearlson GD (2010) Anomalous neural circuit function in schizophrenia during a virtual Morris water task. Neuroimage 49:3373–3384

Friedman HR, Goldman-Rakic PS (1988) Activation of the hippocampus and dentate gyrus by working-memory: a 2-deoxyglucose study of behaving rhesus monkeys. J Neurosci 8:4693–4706

Friedman JI, Adler DN, Temporini HD, Kemether E, Harvey PD, White L, Parrella M, Davis KL (2001) Guanfacine treatment of cognitive impairment in schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 25:402–409

Geyer MA (2010) New opportunities in the treatment of cognitive impairments associated with schizophrenia. Curr Direct Psychol Sci 19:264–269

Gibbs SE, D'Esposito M (2005) A functional MRI study of the effects of bromocriptine, a dopamine receptor agonist, on component processes of working memory. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 180:644–653

Goetghebeur P, Dias R (2009) Comparison of haloperidol, risperidone, sertindole, and modafinil to reverse an attentional set-shifting impairment following subchronic PCP administration in the rat-a back translational study. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 202:287–293

Gold JM, Hahn B, Zhang WW, Robinson BM, Kappenman ES, Beck VM, Luck SJ (2010) Reduced capacity but spared precision and maintenance of working memory representations in schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 67:570–577

Goldberg TE, Weinberger DR (1995) Thought disorder, working memory and attention: interrelationships and the effects of neuroleptic medications. Int Clin Psychopharmacol 10(Suppl 3): 99–104

Goldberg TE, Weinberger DR, Berman KF, Pliskin NH, Podd MH (1987) Further evidence for dementia of the prefrontal type in schizophrenia? A controlled study of teaching the Wisconsin Card Sorting Test. Arch Gen Psychiatry 44:1008–1014

Green MF (1996) What are the functional consequences of neurocognitive deficits in schizophrenia? Am J Psychiatry 153:321–330

Green MF (2006) Cognitive impairment and functional outcome in schizophrenia and bipolar disorder. J Clin Psychiatry 67:e12

Green MF, Marder SR, Glynn SM, McGurk SR, Wirshing WC, Wirshing DA, Liberman RP, Mintz J (2002) The neurocognitive effects of low-dose haloperidol: a two-year comparison with risperidone. Biol Psychiatry 51:972–978

Grottick AJ, Haman M, Wyler R, Higgins GA (2003) Reversal of a vigilance decrement in the aged rat by subtype-selective nicotinic ligands. Neuropsychopharmacology 28:880–887

Grottick AJ, Higgins GA (2002) Assessing a vigilance decrement in aged rats: effects of prefeeding, task manipulation, and psychostimulants. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 164:33–41

Grottick AJ, Trube G, Corrigall WA, Huwyler J, Malherbe P, Wyler R, Higgins GA (2000) Evidence that nicotinic alpha(7) receptors are not involved in the hyperlocomotor and rewarding effects of nicotine. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 294:1112–1119

Grottick AJ, Wyler R, Higgins GA (2001) A study of the nicotinic agonist SIB-1553A on locomotion and attention as measured by the five-choice serial reaction time task. Pharmacol Biochem Behav 70:505–513

Hagan JJ, Jones DN (2005) Predicting drug efficacy for cognitive deficits in schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 31:830–853

Harvey PD, Green MF, McGurk SR, Meltzer HY (2003) Changes in cognitive functioning with risperidone and olanzapine treatment: a large-scale, double-blind, randomized study. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 169:404–411

Harvey PD, Keefe RS (2001) Studies of cognitive change in patients with schizophrenia following novel antipsychotic treatment. Am J Psychiatry 158:176–184

Harvey PD, Meltzer H, Simpson GM, Potkin SG, Loebel A, Siu C, Romano SJ (2004) Improvement in cognitive function following a switch to ziprasidone from conventional antipsychotics, olanzapine, or risperidone in outpatients with schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 66:101–113

Hashimoto K, Fujita Y, Iyo M (2007) Phencyclidine-induced cognitive deficits in mice are improved by subsequent subchronic administration of fluvoxamine: role of sigma-1 receptors. Neuropsychopharmacology 32:514–521

Hatcher PD, Brown VJ, Tait DS, Bate S, Overend P, Hagan JJ, Jones DN (2005) 5-HT6 receptor antagonists improve performance in an attentional set shifting task in rats. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 181:253–259

Heinrichs RW (2007) Cognitive improvement in response to antipsychotic drugs: neurocognitive effects of antipsychotic medications in patients with chronic schizophrenia in the CATIE Trial. Arch Gen Psychiatry 64:631–632

Hodges H, Green S (1986) Effects of chlordiazepoxide on cued radial maze performance in rats. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 88:460–466

Howe WM, Ji J, Parikh V, Williams S, Mocaer E, Trocme-Thibierge C, Sarter M (2010) Enhancement of attentional performance by selective stimulation of alpha4beta2(*) nAChRs: underlying cholinergic mechanisms. Neuropsychopharmacology 35:1391–1401

Hoyle E, Genn RF, Fernandes C, Stolerman IP (2006) Impaired performance of alpha7 nicotinic receptor knockout mice in the five-choice serial reaction time task. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 189:211–223

Huang YW, Hu WW, Chen Z, Zhang LS, Shen HQ, Timmerman H, Leurs R, Yanai K (2004) Effect of the histamine H3-antagonist clobenpropit on spatial memory deficits induced by MK-801 as evaluated by radial maze in Sprague-Dawley rats. Behav Brain Res 151:287–293

Humby T, Laird FM, Davies W, Wilkinson LS (1999) Visuospatial attentional functioning in mice: interactions between cholinergic manipulations and genotype. Eur J Neurosci 11:2813–2823

Idris N, Neill J, Grayson B, Bang-Andersen B, Witten LM, Brennum LT, Arnt J (2010) Sertindole improves sub-chronic PCP-induced reversal learning and episodic memory deficits in rodents: involvement of 5-HT(6) and 5-HT (2A) receptor mechanisms. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 208:23–36

Idris NF, Repeto P, Neill JC, Large CH (2005) Investigation of the effects of lamotrigine and clozapine in improving reversal-learning impairments induced by acute phencyclidine and D-amphetamine in the rat. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 179:336–348

Jarrold C, Towse JN (2006) Individual differences in working memory. Neuroscience 139:39–50

Jazbec S, Pantelis C, Robbins T, Weickert T, Weinberger DR, Goldberg TE (2007) Intra-dimensional/extra-dimensional set-shifting performance in schizophrenia: impact of distractors. Schizophr Res 89:339–349

Jeneson A, Mauldin KN, Squire LR (2010) Intact working memory for relational information after medial temporal lobe damage. J Neurosci 30:13624–13629

Jennings JW, Keefer LH (1969) Olfactory learning set in two varieties of domestic rat. Psychol Rep 24:3–15

Johannsen P (2004) Long-term cholinesterase inhibitor treatment of Alzheimer's disease. CNS Drugs 18:757–768

Jones DN, Higgins GA (1995) Effect of scopolamine on visual attention in rats. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 120:142–149

Jones PB, Barnes TR, Davies L, Dunn G, Lloyd H, Hayhurst KP, Murray RM, Markwick A, Lewis SW (2006) Randomized controlled trial of the effect on Quality of Life of second- vs first-generation antipsychotic drugs in schizophrenia: Cost Utility of the Latest Antipsychotic Drugs in Schizophrenia Study (CUtLASS 1). Arch Gen Psychiatry 63:1079–1087

Kane MJ, Engle RW (2002) The role of prefrontal cortex in working-memory capacity, executive attention, and general fluid intelligence: an individual-differences perspective. Psychon Bull Rev 9:637–671

Keefe RS, Bilder RM, Davis SM, Harvey PD, Palmer BW, Gold JM, Meltzer HY, Green MF, Capuano G, Stroup TS, McEvoy JP, Swartz MS, Rosenheck RA, Perkins DO, Davis CE, Hsiao JK, Lieberman JA (2007) Neurocognitive effects of antipsychotic medications in patients with chronic schizophrenia in the CATIE Trial. Arch Gen Psychiatry 64:633–647

Keefe RS, Seidman LJ, Christensen BK, Hamer RM, Sharma T, Sitskoorn MM, Rock SL, Woolson S, Tohen M, Tollefson GD, Sanger TM, Lieberman JA (2006) Long-term neurocognitive effects of olanzapine or low-dose haloperidol in first-episode psychosis. Biol Psychiatry 59:97–105

Keefe RS, Silva SG, Perkins DO, Lieberman JA (1999) The effects of atypical antipsychotic drugs on neurocognitive impairment in schizophrenia: a review and meta-analysis. Schizophr Bull 25:201–222

Kern RS, Green MF, Marshall BD Jr, Wirshing WC, Wirshing D, McGurk S, Marder SR, Mintz J (1998) Risperidone vs. haloperidol on reaction time, manual dexterity, and motor learning in treatment-resistant schizophrenia patients. Biol Psychiatry 44:726–732

Kern RS, Green MF, Marshall BD Jr, Wirshing WC, Wirshing D, McGurk SR, Marder SR, Mintz J (1999) Risperidone versus haloperidol on secondary memory: can newer medications aid learning? Schizophr Bull 25:223–232

King MV, Sleight AJ, Woolley ML, Topham IA, Marsden CA, Fone KC (2004) 5-HT6 receptor antagonists reverse delay-dependent deficits in novel object discrimination by enhancing consolidation—an effect sensitive to NMDA receptor antagonism. Neuropharmacology 47:195–204

Kirkby DL, Jones DN, Barnes JC, Higgins GA (1996) Effects of anticholinesterase drugs tacrine and E2020, the 5-HT(3) antagonist ondansetron, and the H(3) antagonist thioperamide, in models of cognition and cholinergic function. Behav Pharmacol 7:513–525

Kobayashi S, Kametani H, Ugawa Y, Osanai M (1988) Age difference of response strategy in radial maze performance of Fischer-344 rats. Physiol Behav 42:277–280

Koelega HS (1993) Stimulant drugs and vigilance performance: a review. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 111:1–16

Kohler CG, Martin EA, Kujawski E, Bilker W, Gur RE, Gur RC (2007) No effect of donepezil on neurocognition and social cognition in young persons with stable schizophrenia. Cognit Neuropsychiatry 12:412–421

Kraepelin E (1893) Ein kurzes Lahrbruch fur Studirende und Aerzte Leipzig Verlag von Ambr. Abel 4e Auflage, Heidelberg, pp 435–445

Kunitachi S, Fujita Y, Ishima T, Kohno M, Horio M, Tanibuchi Y, Shirayama Y, Iyo M, Hashimoto K (2009) Phencyclidine-induced cognitive deficits in mice are ameliorated by subsequent subchronic administration of donepezil: role of sigma-1 receptors. Brain Res 1279:189–196

Lapiz MD, Morilak DA (2006) Noradrenergic modulation of cognitive function in rat medial prefrontal cortex as measured by attentional set shifting capability. Neuroscience 137:1039–1049

Laurent A, Saoud M, Bougerol T, d'Amato T, Anchisi AM, Biloa-Tang M, Dalery J, Rochet T (1999) Attentional deficits in patients with schizophrenia and in their non-psychotic first-degree relatives. Psychiatry Res 89:147–59

Lee J, Park S (2005) Working memory impairments in schizophrenia: a meta-analysis. J Abnorm Psychol 114:599–611

Leeson VC, Robbins TW, Matheson E, Hutton SB, Ron MA, Barnes TR, Joyce EM (2009) Discrimination learning, reversal, and set-shifting in first-episode schizophrenia: stability over six years and specific associations with medication type and disorganization syndrome. Biol Psychiatry 66:586–593

Leonard J (1959) Five-choice serial reaction apparatus. Medical Research Council Applied Psychology Reports, Cambridge

Levin ED (2002) Nicotinic receptor subtypes and cognitive function. J Neurobiol 53:633–640

Levin ED, Bradley A, Addy N, Sigurani N (2002) Hippocampal alpha 7 and alpha 4 beta 2 nicotinic receptors and working memory. Neuroscience 109:757–765

Levin ED, Kim P, Meray R (1996) Chronic nicotine working and reference memory effects in the 16-arm radial maze: interactions with D1 agonist and antagonist drugs. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 127:25–30

Levin ED, Simon BB (1998) Nicotinic acetylcholine involvement in cognitive function in animals. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 138:217–230

Lewis SW, Barnes TR, Davies L, Murray RM, Dunn G, Hayhurst KP, Markwick A, Lloyd H, Jones PB (2006) Randomized controlled trial of effect of prescription of clozapine versus other second-generation antipsychotic drugs in resistant schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 32:715–723

Lindner MD, Hogan JB, Hodges DB Jr, Orie AF, Chen P, Corsa JA, Leet JE, Gillman KW, Rose GM, Jones KM, Gribkoff VK (2006) Donepezil primarily attenuates scopolamine-induced deficits in psychomotor function, with moderate effects on simple conditioning and attention, and small effects on working memory and spatial mapping. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 188:629–640

Logan GD, Cowan WB, Davis KA (1984) On the ability to inhibit simple and choice reaction time responses: a model and a method. J Exp Psychol Hum Percept Perform 10:276–291

Lyon M (1991) Animal models of mania and schizophrenia. In: Willner P (ed) Behavioural models in psychopharmacology: Theoretical. Cambridge University, Cambridge, Industrial and clinical perspectives, pp 253–310

Marder SR, Fenton W (2004) Measurement and Treatment Research to Improve Cognition in Schizophrenia: NIMH MATRICS initiative to support the development of agents for improving cognition in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 72:5–9

Markham MR, Butt AE, Dougher MJ (1996) A computer touch-screen apparatus for training visual discriminations in rats. J Exp Anal Behav 65:173–182

Marston HM (1996) Analysis of cognitive function in animals, the value of SDT. Brain Res Cogn Brain Res 3:269–277

Martin LF, Kem WR, Freedman R (2004) Alpha-7 nicotinic receptor agonists: potential new candidates for the treatment of schizophrenia. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 174:54–64

Martinez V, Sarter M (2008) Detection of the moderately beneficial cognitive effects of low-dose treatment with haloperidol or clozapine in an animal model of the attentional impairments of schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 33:2635–2647

Matthysse S (1986) Animal models in psychiatric research. Prog Brain Res 65:259–270

Mathes B, Wood SJ, Proffitt TM, Stuart GW, Buchanan JA, Velakoulis D, Brewer WJ, McGorry PD, Pantelis C (2005) Early processing deficits in object working memory in first-episode schizophreniform psychosis and established schizophrenia. Psychol Med 35:1053–1062

McGaughy J, Kaiser T, Sarter M (1996) Behavioral vigilance following infusions of 192 IgG-saporin into the basal forebrain: selectivity of the behavioral impairment and relation to cortical AChE-positive fiber density. Behav Neurosci 110:247–265

McGaughy J, Sarter M (1995) Behavioral vigilance in rats: task validation and effects of age, amphetamine, and benzodiazepine receptor ligands. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 117:340–357

McLean SL, Beck JP, Woolley ML, Neill JC (2008) A preliminary investigation into the effects of antipsychotics on sub-chronic phencyclidine-induced deficits in attentional set-shifting in female rats. Behav Brain Res 189:152–158

McLean SL, Grayson B, Harris M, Protheroe C, Bate S, Woolley ML, Neill JC (2010) Isolation rearing impairs novel object recognition and attentional set shifting performance in female rats. J Psychopharmacol 24:57–63

Mehta MA, Swainson R, Ogilvie AD, Sahakian J, Robbins TW (2001) Improved short-term spatial memory but impaired reversal learning following the dopamine D(2) agonist bromocriptine in human volunteers. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 159:10–20

Meltzer HY, McGurk SR (1999) The effects of clozapine, risperidone, and olanzapine on cognitive function in schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 25:233–255

Micheau J, Riedel G, Roloff EL, Inglis J, Morris RG (2004) Reversible hippocampal inactivation partially dissociates how and where to search in the water maze. Behav Neurosci 118:1022–1032

Min SK, Moon IW, Ko RW, Shin HS (2001) Effects of transdermal nicotine on attention and memory in healthy elderly non-smokers. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 159:83–88

Mori K, Obara Y, Moriya T, Inatomi S, Nakahata N (2011) Effects of Hericium erinaceus on amyloid beta(25-35) peptide-induced learning and memory deficits in mice. Biomed Res 32:67–72

Morris RGM (1981) Spatial localization does not require the presence of local cues. Learning Motivation 12:239

Muir JL, Dunnett SB, Robbins TW, Everitt BJ (1992) Attentional functions of the forebrain cholinergic systems: effects of intraventricular hemicholinium, physostigmine, basal forebrain lesions and intracortical grafts on a multiple-choice serial reaction time task. Exp Brain Res 89:611–622

Muir JL, Everitt BJ, Robbins TW (1995) Reversal of visual attentional dysfunction following lesions of the cholinergic basal forebrain by physostigmine and nicotine but not by the 5-HT3 receptor antagonist, ondansetron. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 118:82–92

Muir JL, Everitt BJ, Robbins TW (1996) The cerebral cortex of the rat and visual attentional function: dissociable effects of mediofrontal, cingulate, anterior dorsolateral, and parietal cortex lesions on a five-choice serial reaction time task. Cereb Cortex 6:470–481

Muir JL, Fischer W, Bjorklund A (1999) Decline in visual attention and spatial memory in aged rats. Neurobiol Aging 20:605–615

Muller U, von Cramon DY, Pollmann S (1998) D1- versus D2-receptor modulation of visuospatial working memory in humans. J Neurosci 18:2720–2728

Murray GK, Cheng F, Clark L, Barnett JH, Blackwell AD, Fletcher PC, Robbins TW, Bullmore ET, Jones PB (2008) Reinforcement and reversal learning in first-episode psychosis. Schizophr Bull 34:848–855

Mutlu O, Ulak G, Celikyurt IK, Akar FY, Erden F (2011) Effects of olanzapine, sertindole and clozapine on learning and memory in the Morris water maze test in naive and MK-801-treated mice. Pharmacol Biochem Behav 98:398–404

Nagai T, Murai R, Matsui K, Kamei H, Noda Y, Furukawa H, Nabeshima T (2009) Aripiprazole ameliorates phencyclidine-induced impairment of recognition memory through dopamine D1 and serotonin 5-HT1A receptors. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 202:315–328

Navarra R, Graf R, Huang Y, Logue S, Comery T, Hughes Z, Day M (2008) Effects of atomoxetine and methylphenidate on attention and impulsivity in the 5-choice serial reaction time test. Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry 32:34–41

Newhouse P, Singh A, Potter A (2004) Nicotine and nicotinic receptor involvement in neuropsychiatric disorders. Curr Top Med Chem 4:267–282

Nieuwenstein MR, Aleman A, de Haan EH (2001) Relationship between symptom dimensions and neurocognitive functioning in schizophrenia: a meta-analysis of WCST and CPT studies. Wisconsin Card Sorting Test. Continuous Performance Test. J Psychiatr Res 35:119–125

Niimi K, Takahashi E, Itakura C (2008) Improved short-term memory and increased expression of NR2B observed in senescence-accelerated mouse (SAM) P6. Exp Gerontol 43:847–852

Nuechterlein KH, Barch DM, Gold JM, Goldberg TE, Green MF, Heaton RK (2004) Identification of separable cognitive factors in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 72:29–39

Nuechterlein KH, Luck SJ, Lustig C, Sarter M (2009) CNTRICS final task selection: control of attention. Schizophr Bull 35:182–196

Olton DS, Samuelson RJ (1976) Remembrance of places passed: Spatial memory in rats. J Exp Psychol Anim Behav Proc 2:97–116

Olton DS, Werz MA (1978) Hippocampal function and behavior: spatial discrimination and response inhibition. Physiol Behav 20:597–605

Owen AM, Roberts AC, Polkey CE, Sahakian BJ, Robbins TW (1991) Extra-dimensional versus intra-dimensional set shifting performance following frontal lobe excisions, temporal lobe excisions or amygdalo-hippocampectomy in man. Neuropsychologia 29:993–1006

Paine TA, Neve RL, Carlezon WA Jr (2009) Attention deficits and hyperactivity following inhibition of cAMP-dependent protein kinase within the medial prefrontal cortex of rats. Neuropsychopharmacology 34:2143–2155

Pantelis C, Barber FZ, Barnes TR, Nelson HE, Owen AM, Robbins TW (1999) Comparison of set-shifting ability in patients with chronic schizophrenia and frontal lobe damage. Schizophr Res 37:251–270

Pantelis C, Barnes TR, Nelson HE, Tanner S, Weatherley L, Owen AM, Robbins TW (1997) Frontal-striatal cognitive deficits in patients with chronic schizophrenia. Brain 120(Pt 10): 1823–1843

Parasuraman R (1998) The attentive brain. MIT Press, MA, USA

Passetti F, Chudasama Y, Robbins TW (2002) The frontal cortex of the rat and visual attentional performance: dissociable functions of distinct medial prefrontal subregions. Cereb Cortex 12(12):1254–1268

Pattij T, Janssen MC, Loos M, Smit AB, Schoffelmeer AN, van Gaalen MM (2007) Strain specificity and cholinergic modulation of visuospatial attention in three inbred mouse strains. Genes Brain Behav 6:579–587

Pietrzak RH, Snyder PJ, Maruff P (2010) Amphetamine-related improvement in executive function in patients with chronic schizophrenia is modulated by practice effects. Schizophr Res 124:176–182

Prouteau A, Verdoux H, Briand C, Lesage A, Lalonde P, Nicole L, Reinharz D, Stip E (2004) The crucial role of sustained attention in community functioning in outpatients with schizophrenia. Psychiatry Res 129:171–177

Purdon SE, Malla A, Labelle A, Lit W (2001) Neuropsychological change in patients with schizophrenia after treatment with quetiapine or haloperidol. J Psychiatry Neurosci 26:137–149

Ragland JD, Cools R, Frank M, Pizzagalli DA, Preston A, Ranganath C, Wagner AD (2009) CNTRICS final task selection: long-term memory. Schizophr Bull 35:197–212

Rausch R, Babb TL (1993) Hippocampal neuron loss and memory scores before and after temporal lobe surgery for epilepsy. Arch Neurol 50:812–817

Reeves SJ, Grasby PM, Howard RJ, Bantick RA, Asselin MC, Mehta MA (2005) A positron emission tomography (PET) investigation of the role of striatal dopamine (D2) receptor availability in spatial cognition. Neuroimage 28:216–226

Rezvani AH, Caldwell DP, Levin ED (2005) Nicotinic-serotonergic drug interactions and attentional performance in rats. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 179:521–528

Rezvani AH, Levin ED (2001) Cognitive effects of nicotine. Biol Psychiatry 49:258–267

Rezvani AH, Levin ED (2003) Nicotinic-glutamatergic interactions and attentional performance on an operant visual signal detection task in female rats. Eur J Pharmacol 465:83–90

Riccio CA, Reynolds CR, Lowe P, Moore JJ (2002) The continuous performance test: a window on the neural substrates for attention? Arch Clin Neuropsychol 17:235–272

Richelson E, Souder T (2000) Binding of antipsychotic drugs to human brain receptors focus on newer generation compounds. Life Sci 68:29–39

Rinberg D, Koulakov A, Gelperin A (2006) Speed-accuracy tradeoff in olfaction. Neuron 51:351–358

Ritsner MS, Blumenkrantz H (2007) Predicting domain-specific insight of schizophrenia patients from symptomatology, multiple neurocognitive functions, and personality related traits. Psychiatry Res 149:59–69

Robbins TW (1998) Arousal and attention: psychopharmacological and neuropsychophysical studies in experimental animals. In: Parasuraman R (ed) The attentive brain. MIT Press, Cambridge

Robbins TW (2002) The 5-choice serial reaction time task: behavioural pharmacology and functional neurochemistry. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 163:362–380

Robinson ES, Eagle DM, Mar AC, Bari A, Banerjee G, Jiang X, Dalley JW, Robbins TW (2008) Similar effects of the selective noradrenaline reuptake inhibitor atomoxetine on three distinct forms of impulsivity in the rat. Neuropsychopharmacology 33:1028–1037

Rollnik JD, Borsutzky M, Huber TJ, Mogk H, Seifert J, Emrich HM, Schneider U (2002) Short-term cognitive improvement in schizophrenics treated with typical and atypical neuroleptics. Neuropsychobiology 45:74–80

Rosvold H, Sarason AM, Bransome ADJ, Beck LH (1956) A continuous performance test of brain damage. J Consult Psychol 20:343–350

Roth BL, Hanizavareh SM, Blum AE (2004) Serotonin receptors represent highly favorable molecular targets for cognitive enhancement in schizophrenia and other disorders. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 174:17–24

Rushforth SL, Allison C, Wonnacott S, Shoaib M (2010) Subtype-selective nicotinic agonists enhance olfactory working memory in normal rats: a novel use of the odour span task. Neurosci Lett 471:114–118

Rusted JM, Warburton DM (1992) Facilitation of memory by post-trial administration of nicotine: evidence for an attentional explanation. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 108:452–455

Salgado-Pineda P, Baeza I, Perez-Gomez M, Vendrell P, Junque C, Bargallo N, Bernardo M (2003) Sustained attention impairment correlates to gray matter decreases in first episode neuroleptic-naive schizophrenic patients. Neuroimage 19:365–375

Sarter M, Martinez V, Kozak R (2009) A neurocognitive animal model dissociating between acute illness and remission periods of schizophrenia. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 202:237–258

Sarter M, McGaughy J (1998) Assessment of sustained and divided attention in rats: aspects of validity; comment. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 138:260–2, discussion 263-5

Sass KJ, Spencer DD, Kim JH, Westerveld M, Novelly RA, Lencz T (1990) Verbal memory impairment correlates with hippocampal pyramidal cell density. Neurology 40:1694–1697

Sharma T, Mockler D (1998) The cognitive efficacy of atypical antipsychotics in schizophrenia. J Clin Psychopharmacol 18:12S–19S

Sharma T, Reed C, Aasen I, Kumari V (2006) Cognitive effects of adjunctive 24-weeks Rivastigmine treatment to antipsychotics in schizophrenia: a randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind investigation. Schizophr Res 85:73–83

Silvers JM, Harrod SB, Mactutus CF, Booze RM (2007) Automation of the novel object recognition task for use in adolescent rats. J Neurosci Methods 166:99–103

Slotnick B (2001) Animal cognition and the rat olfactory system. Trends Cogn Sci 5:216–222

Slotnick BM, Risser JM (1990) Odor memory and odor learning in rats with lesions of the lateral olfactory tract and mediodorsal thalamic nucleus. Brain Res 529:23–29

Smith RC, Warner-Cohen J, Matute M, Butler E, Kelly E, Vaidhyanathaswamy S, Khan A (2006) Effects of nicotine nasal spray on cognitive function in schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 31:637–643

Steckler T, Muir JL (1996) Measurement of cognitive function: relating rodent performance with human minds. Brain Res Cogn Brain Res 3:299–308

Stip E, Sepehry AA, Chouinard S (2007) Add-on therapy with acetylcholinesterase inhibitors for memory dysfunction in schizophrenia: a systematic quantitative review, part 2. Clin Neuropharmacol 30:218–229

Swerdlow NR (2011) Are we studying and treating schizophrenia correctly? Schizophr Res 130:1–10

Tarantino IS, Sharp RF, Geyer MA, Meves JM, Young JW (2011) Working memory span capacity improved by a D2 but not D1 receptor family agonist. Behav Brain Res 219:181–188

Thomsen MS, Christensen DZ, Hansen HH, Redrobe JP, Mikkelsen JD (2009) Alpha(7) Nicotinic acetylcholine receptor activation prevents behavioral and molecular changes induced by repeated phencyclidine treatment. Neuropharmacology 56:1001–1009

Titone D, Ditman T, Holzman PS, Eichenbaum H, Levy DL (2004) Transitive inference in schizophrenia: impairments in relational memory organization. Schizophr Res 68:235–247

Tunbridge EM, Bannerman DM, Sharp T, Harrison PJ (2004) Catechol-o-methyltransferase inhibition improves set-shifting performance and elevates stimulated dopamine release in the rat prefrontal cortex. J Neurosci 24:5331–5335

Turchi J, Holley LA, Sarter M (1995) Effects of nicotinic acetylcholine receptor ligands on behavioral vigilance in rats. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 118:195–205

Turchi J, Sarter M (2000) Cortical cholinergic inputs mediate processing capacity: effects of 192 IgG-saporin-induced lesions on olfactory span performance. Eur J Neurosci 12:4505–4514

Turner DC, Clark L, Dowson J, Robbins TW, Sahakian BJ (2004a) Modafinil improves cognition and response inhibition in adult attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder. Biol Psychiatry 55:1031–1040

Turner DC, Clark L, Pomarol-Clotet E, McKenna P, Robbins TW, Sahakian BJ (2004b) Modafinil improves cognition and attentional set shifting in patients with chronic schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 29:1363–1373

Turner DC, Robbins TW, Clark L, Aron AR, Dowson J, Sahakian BJ (2003) Cognitive enhancing effects of modafinil in healthy volunteers. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 165:260–269

Twamley EW, Burton CZ, Vella L (2011) Compensatory cognitive training for psychosis: who benefits? Who stays in treatment? Schizophr Bull 37(Suppl 2):S55–S62

Uchida N, Mainen ZF (2003) Speed and accuracy of olfactory discrimination in the rat. Nat Neurosci 6:1224–1229

Velligan DI, Newcomer J, Pultz J, Csernansky J, Hoff AL, Mahurin R, Miller AL (2002) Does cognitive function improve with quetiapine in comparison to haloperidol? Schizophr Res 53:239–248

Velligan DI, Prihoda TJ, Sui D, Ritch JL, Maples N, Miller AL (2003) The effectiveness of quetiapine versus conventional antipsychotics in improving cognitive and functional outcomes in standard treatment settings. J Clin Psychiatry 64:524–531

Wang D, Noda Y, Zhou Y, Nitta A, Furukawa H, Nabeshima T (2007) Synergistic effect of galantamine with risperidone on impairment of social interaction in phencyclidine-treated mice as a schizophrenic animal model. Neuropharmacology 52:1179–1187

Warburton DM, Rusted JM, Fowler J (1992) A comparison of the attentional and consolidation hypotheses for the facilitation of memory by nicotine. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 108:443–447

Wenk GL (2004) Assessment of spatial memory using the radial arm maze and Morris water maze. Curr Protoc Neurosci Chapter 8: Unit 8 5A

Wesnes K, Warburton DM (1984) Effects of scopolamine and nicotine on human rapid information processing performance. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 82:147–150

Widholm JJ, Clarkson GB, Strupp BJ, Crofton KM, Seegal RF, Schantz SL (2001) Spatial reversal learning in Aroclor 1254-exposed rats: sex-specific deficits in associative ability and inhibitory control. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 174:188–198

Widholm JJ, Seo BW, Strupp BJ, Seegal RF, Schantz SL (2003) Effects of perinatal exposure to 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin on spatial and visual reversal learning in rats. Neurotoxicol Teratol 25:459–471

Wietrzych M, Meziane H, Sutter A, Ghyselinck N, Chapman PF, Chambon P, Krezel W (2005) Working memory deficits in retinoid X receptor gamma-deficient mice. Learn Mem 12:318–326

Yamada M, Hayashida M, Zhao Q, Shibahara N, Tanaka K, Miyata T, Matsumoto K (2011) Ameliorative effects of yokukansan on learning and memory deficits in olfactory bulbectomized mice. J Ethnopharmacol 135(3):737–46

Young JW, Crawford N, Kelly JS, Kerr LE, Marston HM, Spratt C, Finlayson K, Sharkey J (2007a) Impaired attention is central to the cognitive deficits observed in alpha 7 deficient mice. Eur Neuropsychopharmacol 17:145–155

Young JW, Finlayson K, Spratt C, Marston HM, Crawford N, Kelly JS, Sharkey J (2004) Nicotine improves sustained attention in mice: evidence for involvement of the alpha7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptor. Neuropsychopharmacology 29:891–900

Young JW, Geyer MA (2010) Action of modafinil-increased motivation via the dopamine transporter inhibition and D1 receptors? Biol Psychiatry 67:784–787

Young JW, Geyer MA, subcommittee p (2007b) Report on putative preclinical models of the MATRICS battery. http://www.turns.ucla.edu/preclinical-TURNS-report-2006b.pdf

Young JW, Henry BL, Geyer MA (2011a) Predictive animal models of mania: hits, misses and future directions. Br J Pharmacol 164:1263–1284

Young JW, Kerr LE, Kelly JS, Marston HM, Spratt C, Finlayson K, Sharkey J (2007c) The odour span task: a novel paradigm for assessing working memory in mice. Neuropharmacology 52:634–645

Young JW, Light GA, Marston HM, Sharp R, Geyer MA (2009a) The 5-choice continuous performance test: evidence for a translational test of vigilance for mice. PLoS One 4:e4227

Young JW, Meves JM, Tarantino IS, Caldwell S, Geyer MA (2011b) Delayed procedural learning in alpha7-nicotinic acetylcholine receptor knockout mice. Genes Brain Behav 10:720–733

Young JW, Powell SB, Geyer MA (2011c) Mouse pharmacological models of cognitive disruption relevant to schizophrenia. Neuropharmacology 62(3):1381–90

Young JW, Powell SB, Risbrough V, Marston HM, Geyer MA (2009b) Using the MATRICS to guide development of a preclinical cognitive test battery for research in schizophrenia. Pharmacol Ther 122:150–202

Young JW, Powell SB, Scott CN, Zhou X, Geyer MA (2011d) The effect of reduced dopamine D4 receptor expression in the 5-choice continuous performance task: Separating response inhibition from premature responding. Behav Brain Res 222:183–192

Young JW, Sharkey J, Finlayson K (2009c) Progressive impairment in olfactory working memory in a mouse model of mild cognitive impairment. Neurobiol Aging 30:1430–1443

# Towards Medication-Enhancement of Cognitive Interventions in Schizophrenia

**Hsun-Hua Chou, Elizabeth Twamley, and Neal R. Swerdlow**

## Contents



**Abstract** Current antipsychotic medications do little to improve real-life function in most schizophrenia patients. A dispassionate view of the dispersed and variable neuropathology of schizophrenia strongly suggests that it is not currently, and may never be, correctable with drugs. In contrast, several forms of cognitive therapy have been demonstrated to have modest but lasting positive effects on cognition, symptoms, and functional outcomes in schizophrenia patients. To date, attempts to improve clinical outcomes in schizophrenia by adding pro-cognitive drugs to antipsychotic regimens have had limited success, but we propose that a more

H.-H. Chou • E. Twamley • N.R. Swerdlow (✉)
Department of Psychiatry, School of Medicine, University of California, San Diego, 9500 Gilman Dr., La Jolla, CA 92093-0804, USA
e-mail: nswerdlow@ucsd.edu

M.A. Geyer and G. Gross (eds.), *Novel Antischizophrenia Treatments*, Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 213,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-25758-2_4, 

promising strategy would be to pair drugs that enhance specific neurocognitive functions with cognitive therapies that challenge and reinforce those functions. By using medications that engage spared neural resources in the service of cognitive interventions, it might be possible to significantly enhance the efficacy of cognitive therapies. We review and suggest several laboratory measures that might detect potential pro-neurocognitive effects of drugs in individual patients, using a "test dose" design, aided by specific biomarkers predicting an individual's drug sensitivity. Lastly, we argue that drug classes viewed as "counter-intuitive" based on existing models for the pathophysiology of schizophrenia—including pro-catecholaminergic and NMDA-antagonistic drugs—might be important candidate "pro-cognitive therapy" drugs.

**Keywords** Antipsychotics • Cognitive training • Cognitive therapy • Cognitive remediation • Neurocognition • Schizophrenia

## 1 Introduction

Schizophrenia (SZ) is a severe brain disorder affecting 1% of the world population. Its cost to society in terms of health care demands and lost productivity is well documented (Rice 2009), as are the personal stories of lifelong anguish and suffering among SZ patients and their families. While both genetic and epigenetic factors are associated with a risk for developing this disorder (Dick et al. 2010), the etiology and pathophysiology of SZ remain incompletely understood. More than 50 years after the introduction of drugs that target its symptoms, the standard medications for SZ are at best modestly effective.

Pharmacotherapy of SZ is dominated by drugs that functionally reduce dopamine (DA) neurotransmission, and primarily target "positive" symptoms of this disorder (hallucinations and delusions). Although antipsychotics can blunt the most severe psychotic symptoms, they do not have a meaningful impact on the course of SZ or on real-life function (Leucht et al. 2009; Lieberman et al. 2005). It is clear that cognitive deficits are major factors in the functional disability of SZ patients (Keefe and Harvey 2012). At a time when treatments based on old paradigms have resulted in only modest gains in the function and wellbeing of SZ patients, we must look for new approaches to make substantial improvements in patients' lives.

In contrast to antipsychotic drugs—which are primarily developed to overcome pathologically elevated levels of dopaminergic neurotransmission in SZ—several forms of cognitive therapies (CTs; broadly including cognitive-behavioral and cognitive remediation or training) may both reduce symptoms and improve function in schizophrenia *by engaging healthy neural systems to learn adaptive cognitive and behavioral strategies* (Demily and Franck 2008; Klingberg et al. 2009; McGurk et al. 2007a; Medalia and Choi 2009; Tai and Turkington 2009). A number of meta-analyses document clear safety, feasibility, acceptance, and efficacy of cognitive interventions in SZ, with sustained benefits in many cases

lasting years (Eack et al. 2009; Granholm et al. 2007; McGurk et al. 2009; Sellwood et al. 2007). Response predictors are being identified (Brabban et al. 2009; Kumari et al. 2009; Kurtz et al. 2009); treatments that target specific functional outcomes measures [e.g., vocation (McGurk et al. 2007a)] and specific symptoms [e.g., hallucinations (Penn et al. 2009)] are also being developed. Despite findings from several meta-analyses (e.g., Wykes et al. 2011), some individual studies have failed to detect significant benefits of CTs in SZ patients (e.g., Lynch et al. 2010), suggesting that important determinants of study outcome (e.g., patient characteristics, study design, forms of CT being used) may not yet be fully understood.

Although the neurobiological basis for therapeutic effects of CTs in SZ is not fully known, the biology underlying learning-based neuroplasticity has been elaborated at levels extending from molecules to systems, and studies are now identifying neural changes accompanying clinical benefits of these specialized "learning therapies." Conceivably, these neural changes and their corresponding therapeutic impact might be augmented via medications resulting in an additive effect. Such a use of medications would depart substantially from the traditional approach to pharmacotherapy for SZ. However, This does not discount the importance of controlling psychosis: most psychotherapeutic interventions are complicated by severe psychiatric symptoms, and it is clear that controlling psychosis should benefit ongoing cognitive interventions in SZ. Compared to antipsychotic medications, drugs with pro-cognitive effects might more directly, and perhaps synergistically, enhance the clinical benefits of specific "learning therapies." For example, drugs that enhance specific components of neurocognition, e.g., attention, might be predicted to yield clinical benefits in SZ when paired with interventions that access those components by placing demands on enhanced attention.

## 2 Distributed Neuropathology of SZ and Failures of the Simple "Medication Model"

Some prevailing models for the pharmacotherapy of SZ have been based on the misconception that this disorder reflects pathology that is restricted in scope, both in terms of the neurotransmitters that are dysregulated (e.g., dopamine, glutamate) and the brain region(s)—and neuronal element(s) within those regions—that are abnormal. It is now clear—as briefly reviewed below—that the neuropathology of schizophrenia is substantial in scope and complexity. In patients, structural abnormalities in about 20 brain regions span wide swaths of cortical and subcortical tissue, reflecting processes presumably well-advanced at birth. Roughly half as many regions are abnormal in unaffected relatives (cf. Swerdlow 2011). Within any region, laminar synaptic and cellular arrangements may be perturbed, replacing "intended" spatial and chemical connections with dysfunctional alternatives. The likelihood that medications will functionally untangle these dispersed aberrant connections in schizophrenia seems unlikely.

Evidence for distributed neural dysfunction in SZ is compelling, even when considering only the areas where structural abnormalities are reported (and not, for example, areas activated abnormally under experimental or symptomatic conditions [cf. Brown and Thompson 2010; Dolan et al. 1995; Heckers et al. 1998; Heckers and Konradi 2010; Kumari et al. 2003; Silbersweig et al. 1995; Volz et al. 1999)]. Findings document significant volumetric and/or morphometric abnormalities in over 20 brain regions in SZ patients (cf. Levitt et al. 2010; Swerdlow 2011). These abnormalities reflect perturbations in the number, size or shape of cells, fibers, or extra-parenchymal elements. *Medline* lists numerous papers reporting laminar- and subregion-specific reductions and other abnormalities in the number of neurons, length of their dendrites, density of their dendritic spines and varicosities, and levels of cellular proteins and mRNA in prefrontal, mesial temporal, and auditory cortex, striatum and thalamus, and even the cerebellum and midbrain DA nuclei, among other regions. Studies also document abnormalities in the number or distribution of neurotransmitter receptors in these and other brain regions, which may reflect a primary loss of cells that support them, a secondary response to abnormalities of the fibers that innervate them or the chemicals they deliver, or combinations thereof (cf. Abi-Dargham et al. 1998; Akil et al. 1999; Aparacio-Legarza et al. 1997; Cruz et al. 2009; Dean et al. 2009; Gur et al. 2007; Howes et al. 2009; Kessler et al. 2001, 2009; Laruelle 1998; Lee and Seeman 1980; Lewis et al. 2008; Roberts et al. 2009; Urban and Abi-Dargham 2010; Volk and Lewis 2010; Wong et al. 1986).

For several reasons, we can be confident that the neural disturbances in many SZ patients impact brain circuitry extending well beyond the neural disturbances listed in published reports from large samples of patients. First, studies of the neural circuit disturbances in SZ have been circumscribed in their targets, but findings of cortical abnormalities that extend well beyond the prefrontal and mesial temporal regions (Sweet et al. 2007, 2009) suggest more generalized neurodevelopmental disturbances. Second, disturbances in neuronal number, size, shape, and connectivity perturb neurotransmission, cellular metabolism, signal transduction molecules, gene expression, and other levels of the machinery required for normal neural function (cf. Benes 2010; Kvajo et al. 2010). Such a "cascade" of disturbances will inevitably intersect in time and space with a wide range of neurobiological processes. Third, identifiable disturbances in one neuronal element translate into widely distributed dysfunction within "intact" brain circuits efferent from, or projecting to, the "damaged" element. For example, pathology that impairs normal "γ-band" synchronization of discharges from large populations of cortical neurons can disrupt information processing among those "normal" cells and the circuits that they form (cf. Uhlhaas and Singer 2006). Thus, disturbances in one cell type can have multiplier effects downstream, even among circuits that—in postmortem analyses or resting state imaging—have normal structural and morphological properties. Fourth, variance across and within studies for each abnormality is substantial. In two individuals with SZ, the same brain region may be relatively normal in one and grossly abnormal in another. Furthermore, among the list of regions that are statistically different in cohorts of patients versus controls, any given patient might exhibit some but not all of the regional abnormalities. And with

any given cortico-striato-pallido-thalamic locus, reduced volumes in two different patients might reflect disturbances in different cell populations, resulting in different patterns of abnormal efferent projections and innervation.

Perhaps most important, as it relates to therapeutic approaches to this disorder, is the fact that neuropathology in SZ evolves across early life, and likely reflects failures of early cell development and migration. These early developmental failures disrupt the tightly choreographed processes that lead to the proper population of forebrain nuclei, and formation of the synaptic connectivity both within [e.g., prefrontal laminar connectivity (Volk and Lewis 2010)] and between [e.g., hippocampal-frontal synchronization (Heckers and Konradi 2010)] these regions. By the time that SZ symptoms emerge, treatment that merely antagonizes or augments receptors at the molecular level cannot reasonably be expected to normalize function within the proper connections that did not form, nor the improper ones that did, across 20 different brain regions and their substantially larger "fall-out field."

## 3 Cognitive Therapies for Schizophrenia

While it is not classically viewed as a "biological" intervention, it is now clear that psychotherapy (particularly cognitive and behavioral therapy) changes the brain (Baxter et al. 1992; Saxena et al. 2009; Schwartz et al. 1996). *How* psychotherapy changes the brain, and the extent to which these changes reflect processes from gene expression up to the organization of circuits and systems, are questions of ongoing investigation (de Lange et al. 2008; Fox 2009; Keller and Just 2009; Korosi and Baram 2009; Porto et al. 2009; Saxena et al. 2009).

While some forms of psychotherapy are considered to be suboptimal, and even potentially harmful for patients with psychotic disorders—e.g., psychoanalytic or other "regressive" forms of psychotherapy—a variety of therapies based on cognitive constructs and behavioral theories have been found to be helpful for SZ patients. Most frequently studied and commonly cited is Cognitive Behavioral Therapy (CBT), a manualized therapy in which maladaptive thoughts and beliefs (cognitions) that affect the patient's function are identified and explored with the patient to examine how they affect the patient's interpretations of their experiences and the resulting behaviors; behavioral techniques are then applied to help modify maladaptive patterns. Other evidence-based psychosocial treatments for SZ patients include social skills training (SST) and supported employment (SE), which target the psychosocial deficits and occupational impairments commonly found in patients in order to help them reach their functional goals. SST teaches skills to help patients communicate with others and understand both verbal and nonverbal cues; these classes provide a setting for patients to discuss challenges they encounter and to practice their newly learned skills. SE interventions take an individualized approach to teaching the skills a client needs to get and keep competitive work in the community. While the types of cognitive processes and

"learning" engaged varies widely across these different forms of therapy, they each have both primary and secondary consequences on brain function, i.e., the neurobiological changes produced by the therapy-specific learning, and those resulting from the positive social and functional consequences that are based on the learned adaptive behaviors.

As cognitive deficits in SZ patients have been found to reduce response to psychosocial rehabilitation (McGurk and Mueser 2004; Mueser et al. 1991; Wykes et al. 1990), and to impact functional outcome far more than the more prominent positive symptoms of hallucinations and delusions (Green et al. 2000), the development of strategies and programs to improve cognitive functioning has been a focus in SZ therapies. Cognitive interventions use repeated drills, compensatory strategies, or a blend of both approaches, to help patients with basic neurocognitive processes such as attention, information processing, problem solving, decision-making, and memory. Cognitive training differs from CBT interventions in both focus and methodology. While CBT targets the form and content of thought, such as attributional style and core beliefs, cognitive training targets the neurocognitive processes that underlie thought. Notably, although many studies have shown effectiveness of CBT in schizophrenia, some studies have shown that, when compared to some other control interventions, CBT was not necessarily better at reducing symptoms or preventing relapse (e.g., Lynch et al. 2010). Given that 70–80% of SZ patients are 1–2 standard deviations below normal populations in relevant neurocognitive measures (Heinrichs and Zakzanis 1998; Reichenberg and Harvey 2007) and that cognitive deficits correlate highly with life functioning and ability to meet functional goals (Green et al. 2004), the premise of cognitive training is that when cognitive function improves, these gains will generalize to functioning in the community. Indeed, substantial evidence indicates that cognitive training reduces symptoms and improves functioning in SZ patients (Klingberg et al. 2009; Kurtz et al. 2001; McGurk et al. 2007b; Medalia and Choi 2009; Wykes et al. 2011) with sustained benefits often lasting years (Eack et al. 2009; Granholm et al. 2007; McGurk et al. 2007a; Sellwood et al. 2007).

Also referred to as cognitive remediation or cognitive rehabilitation, cognitive training derives much of its background from the rehabilitation of brain injury patients (Twamley et al. 2008b). While the approach can be classified into three strategies—compensatory (strategies to work around deficits) versus restorative (correcting the deficits) versus environmental (modifying environment to accommodate deficits)—most cognitive training programs integrate the three approaches into various programs. In fact, which of the three approaches is most beneficial depends on each individual circumstance, and hence, there is significant range in cognitive training approaches. Some programs utilize a primarily restorative approach, which attempts to "repair" impairments by drill and practice exercises. These can be executed using paper–pencil worksheets, computer programs, or therapist-based interactions. Other programs use a compensatory approach that attempts to circumvent deficits by relying on other skills or environmental modifications. These programs tend to use a strategies-teaching approach, conveyed either by individual didactics or group discussions, followed by practice of

strategies and planning for implementation in the community (McGurk et al. 2007a; Twamley et al. 2008b).

Even within a specific modality, such as the use of computer programs for restorative training, there is variation in the particular skills developed (e.g., memory vs. attention vs. other cognitive skills), the number of skills targeted simultaneously, the methods of developing the skill, how contextualized the exercises are (e.g., a dot in the center of the screen vs. a dot representing an oncoming train), the degree of engagement, interest and motivation incorporated in the practicing, the level of difficulty, and immediacy of feedback, as well as the type of feedback (Medalia and Choi 2009). Programs can be provided one-on-one or in groups; some regimens are manualized and allow more measured learning, while others utilize personalized and tailored curricula that allow for more flexibility. Some programs are centralized: patients come to the institution for training; others offer separate or integrated psychosocial programs to help transfer and generalize the acquired skills to real-life functioning, and still others use "coaches," who help organize living and work environments, and help patients apply the newly acquired skills to particular situations. The duration of programs can range from several weeks to 2 years (most last about 3–6 months), with most requiring from 1 to 4 hr sessions per week (Medalia and Choi 2009).

Despite early studies suggesting no clear evidence for the effect of social skills training and cognitive remediation (Pilling et al. 2002), recent studies show the effectiveness of cognitive training for both measures of cognitive test performance and real life functioning. Six meta-analytic studies showed effect sizes (d) ranging from 0.2 to 1.2, with greatest improvement in neuropsychological measures, followed by psychosocial functioning, and lastly symptom reduction (Medalia and Choi 2009). A meta-analysis of 40 randomized, controlled trials of 2,104 patients (Wykes et al. 2011) showed a medium effect size (0.5) for cognitive performance as measured by standardized cognitive tasks and a medium effect size (0.42) for psychosocial functioning as measured by the ability to obtain and work competitive jobs, quality of and satisfaction with interpersonal relationships, and ability to solve interpersonal problems. Effect sizes for cognition and functioning were maintained at follow-up. Notably, the effects on the more generalized psychosocial functioning were stronger in studies that provided adjunctive psychosocial rehabilitation as part of the program and when compensatory strategy training was provided in the context of psychosocial rehabilitation. For symptoms, a small effect size (0.18) was found, perhaps reflecting, in part, the positive training experiences that improved self-esteem, thereby improving mood. Notably, in all studies, there is variability in effectiveness in various domains, and the difficulty of knowing which therapeutic approach will work for which patient likely reflects the heterogeneity of the disorder.

Given the potential for cognitive training to improve real life functioning, efforts are underway to identify response predictors. While factors such as instructional technique, patient's motivation, and the control of psychiatric symptoms including psychosis and mood changes are key to effective cognitive training, neurocognitive abilities also significantly impact outcome. The type and extent of neurocognitive

impairment has been found to consistently affect the therapeutic impact of cognitive training (Fiszdon et al. 2006). Delayed verbal memory impairs training (Medalia and Richardson 2005), while sustained attention, working memory, and verbal learning are also important determinants of outcome, even in the context of crystallized verbal intelligence (Fiszdon et al. 2005; Kurtz et al. 2008, 2009). However, Twamley et al. (2011) found that in a compensatory cognitive training intervention, lower baseline cognitive and functional abilities predicted greater improvement, possibly because lower functioning participants had more room to improve or because those with higher abilities had a narrower scope of dysfunction and the intervention did not match their needs. For example, improvement in attention (forward digit span) at post-treatment was associated with lower baseline attention ($r = -0.73, p < 0.001, n = 20$), and improvement in functional capacity (UPSA) at follow-up was associated with lower functional capacity scores at baseline ($r = -0.56, p = 0.007, n = 22$). It is thus rational to consider whether medications that enhance these basic neurocognitive functions in patients with SZ might increase the therapeutic impact of cognitive training or other cognitive therapies. By bolstering a patient's abilities to engage spared neural substrates for memory, attention, learning, etc., these medications would maximize their ability to meet the demands of a variety of cognitive interventions.

## 4 Pro-Cognitive Agents in the Treatment of SZ: The Bad News and the Good News

The concerted effort by our field to develop and apply pro-cognitive agents in SZ, however, has not been based on their potential ability to enhance the therapeutic impact of cognitive interventions. Thus far, most of these efforts have used a "stand-alone" drug strategy similar to that used to justify standard antipsychotic therapy: if we can make a pill that normalizes a neurochemical abnormality in an adult SZ patient, it should help normalize their neurocognitive function, and this should automatically translate into improved life function. For example, based on emerging models for NMDA receptor hypofunction in SZ, a number of putative pro-cognitive agents have been tested that directly or indirectly enhance forebrain glutamate neurotransmission. To date, however, trials of potential pro-cognitive glutamatergic agents in SZ have largely yielded negative results (Barch 2010; Buchanan et al. 2007; Goff et al. 1996, 1999, 2007, 2008; Green 2007). A large, multicenter study of the glycine-site agonist, D-cycloserine (DCS) showed no benefit on negative symptoms or cognition in SZ (Buchanan et al. 2007). A small study reported in 2007 with the mGluR2/3 agonist, LY2140023, suggested some modest clinical benefit (Patil et al. 2007) that has yet to be reproduced in larger samples. Studies are in progress with a number of compounds, including glycine transport inhibitors and nicotinic agonists, but preliminary findings reported

as Conference Proceedings suggest minimal, if any benefit from these agents (e.g., Marder and Buchanan 2009).

In fact, in their comprehensive review of clinical trials of putative pro-cognitive agents in SZ, Barch (2010) concluded that well-controlled, double-blind studies have, to date, failed to yield any particularly encouraging results; and Keefe noted that the majority of completed trials thus far were underpowered and short in duration, but that ongoing trials have larger samples sizes and longer durations, and may provide insight into the subject characteristics that have greatest potential for cognition enhancing drugs (Keefe et al. 2011a). Clearly, the use of cognition enhancing medications in SZ requires further studies with validated measures to illuminate how these medications can be used to improve function in SZ patients. Interestingly, some single-dose studies with nicotine and amphetamine have demonstrated enhanced performance on specific neurocognitive measures in SZ patients, but it is not known whether these changes are "of a clinically significant magnitude." It is important to recognize, however, that of the many (>100) trials of potential pro-cognitive agents in SZ—almost all yielding negative or inconclusive results—until very recently, none were conducted within the context of systematic cognitive interventions (Barch 2010; Buchanan et al. 2007; Goff et al. 1996, 1999, 2007, 2008; cf. Green 2007). In fact, given the prevailing state of outpatient care for SZ patients, it is likely that—absent specific experimental designs to do otherwise—*most SZ patients in trials of putative pro-cognitive agents took these medications within an environment relatively void of constructive cognitive challenges*. It is not surprising that little benefit was gleaned from pro-cognitive agents among patients whose daily activities are often dominated by social isolation, and at best passive cognitive engagement by television and sedentary "board and care" surroundings: *drugs designed to enhance specific components of neurocognition might not be beneficial unless paired with interventions that access, utilize, and place demands on those components*. Without a structure for acquiring reparative or compensatory thoughts or behaviors, any gains in neurocognitive capacity would be wasted. Analogous reasoning underlies the use of anabolic steroids to promote exercise-increased muscle mass, and perhaps more importantly (as discussed below), the use of pro-extinction drugs to enhance therapeutic benefits of CBT for anxiety disorders (Ressler et al. 2004). By adding pro-cognitive drugs that engage spared neural resources and enhance specific neurocognitive functions to CT regimens, it might be possible to significantly enhance the efficacy of the CTs.

Had these studies been designed differently, how might pro-cognitive medications have enhanced the therapeutic impact of an ongoing cognitive intervention in SZ? Let's pick a specific form of cognitive training to provide a concrete example. As reviewed earlier, compensatory cognitive training is a cognitive intervention that encourages patients to develop compensatory strategies—both internal (e.g., acronyms or visual imagery) and external (e.g., writing information down to remember it later)—for learning and remembering information. In so doing, it specifically activates prefrontal regions subserving working memory and attention (Haut et al. 2010). One form of cognitive training includes four modules (Twamley et al. 2008a, b), addressing: (1) prospective memory (i.e., remembering to do things

in the future); (2) conversational and task vigilance; (3) learning and memory; and (4) cognitive flexibility and problem-solving (i.e., executive functioning). Drugs that enhance working memory, attention and vigilance, cognitive flexibility, and problem-solving will enhance a SZ patient's ability to develop and utilize new strategies for learning and remembering; this should then translate to improved function in addressing the demands of daily life.

In truth, most studies of CT effects in SZ patients have been conducted using CT as an "add-on" to "standard" medication therapy; as a result, the beneficial effects of CTs reported in many studies (e.g., Grant et al. 2012) may have reflected, indirectly or directly, the positive impact of antipsychotics on CT. Though the pseudospecificity of the results is difficult to tease out, as in the case of Grant et al. (2012), the antipsychotic class or dose has not been determined to significantly impact the benefits of CT. It seems highly likely that the control of overt psychotic symptoms with antipsychotic medication will, for the foreseeable future, be a prerequisite for any effective cognitive intervention; this issue is orthogonal to the question of whether pro-neurocognitive agents can directly enhance the benefits of CTs.

One recent report did pair a putative pro-cognitive agent with a cognitive intervention—in this case, CBT for delusions—to examine their potential synergistic effects in SZ patients. In this case (Gottlieb et al. 2011), D-cycloserine (DCS) was selected both based on its potential ability to compensate for a proposed NMDA receptor hypofunction in SZ, and because DCS has been reported to facilitate extinction (Davis et al. 2006), and to enhance memory consolidation in SZ patients after a single dose (Goff et al. 2008). DCS also has complexities related to its propensity to produce rapid tolerance (Parnas et al. 2005; Quartermain et al. 1994), though once-weekly dosing for 8 weeks has been reported to reduce negative symptoms in SZ patients (Goff et al. 2008). In their study, Gottlieb et al. examined the effects of DCS (placebo or 50 mg) on the ability of two CBT sessions to reduce the intensity of delusions in 20 SZ patients; in this design, the active drug (DCS 50 mg) was administered prior to only one training session. The findings of this small study were complex—there was no overall effect of DCS on the beneficial effects of CBT for delusions, but a potential order effect with some DCS benefits among subjects receiving DCS before placebo (Gottlieb et al. 2011). Conceivably, a larger study, or one designed differently, might have detected more robust effects of DCS. One might also question whether the choice of DCS based on its neurochemical properties (to compensate for NMDA hypofunction) or primary neurocognitive effects (enhancing fear extinction) makes sense, in the search for a drug to enhance CBT effects in SZ. Conceivably, pro-extinction agents might be useful for reducing the perceived "threat" posed by a specific paranoid object, but it is not clear that such extinction would impact an underlying frontal dysfunction that is manifested more generally in a propensity for developing fixed, irrational beliefs.

## 5 Medication-Enhancement of Therapeutic Learning and Neurocognition: "Proof of Concept"

Cognitive deficits predict poor outcomes in a number of cognitive and vocationally oriented therapies (Becker et al. 1998; Green 1996; McGurk and Meltzer 2000; McGurk and Mueser 2004), and it thus seems parsimonious to suggest that patients will benefit the most if they are able to meet the cognitive demands of CTs. It would then follow that interventions that enhance a patient's cognitive abilities should enable them to glean the most clinical benefit from CT. While there is ample experience from everyday clinical practice to support the notion that psychotherapeutic agents that reduce cognitively impairing symptoms—e.g., severe depression, anxiety, or psychosis—can enhance the benefits of psychotherapies, there has not yet been a robust "test" of whether drugs that specifically enhance neurocognition can enhance the benefits of CT in SZ patients.

Perhaps the closest "proof of concept" comes again from the use of DCS for its pro-extinction properties, but in this example, it was not used to help "extinguish" psychotic thinking, but rather to facilitate extinction of a specific phobia (Ressler et al. 2004). In this study, acrophobic subjects were treated with two brief virtual reality-based exposure sessions, separated by 1–2 weeks. Prior to each session, subjects took one pill of either placebo ($n = 10$), 50 mg DCS ($n = 8$), or 500 mg DCS ($n = 9$). When tested 1–2 weeks or 3 months later, height-related distress—both experimental and "real-world"—was significantly reduced in both active dose groups compared to the placebo group. Importantly, the ability of DCS to enhance the effects of CT on acrophobia was not thought to reflect a hypoglutamatergic basis of acrophobia, or even an "extinction deficit" in acrophobia. Rather, they were attributed to the ability of DCS to enhance the function of intact, healthy "extinction circuitry" in acrophobics, which is specifically "exercised" by a symptom-directed cognitive intervention. *By combining a drug that enhances a specific cognitive process with a therapy that demands that process, patients were able to benefit more from that therapy*. Certainly, we cannot assume that SZ patients will benefit from a therapeutic algorithm that reduced agoraphobia, or even that the type of "learning" enhanced by DCS in reducing height-related distress is relevant to the type of "learning" engaged during CT in SZ patients. Nonetheless, the findings of Ressler et al. (2004) support the concept that *drugs that enhance a specific neurocognitive process can enhance the benefits of a psychotherapeutic intervention that places demands on that process*.

## 6 Predicting Medication Effects on Neurocognitive Function in Individual Patients

It is apparent that many different forms of cognitive interventions might be useful in treating individuals with SZ, and that each of these different forms of therapy likely places "demands" on different neurocognitive and psychological processes.

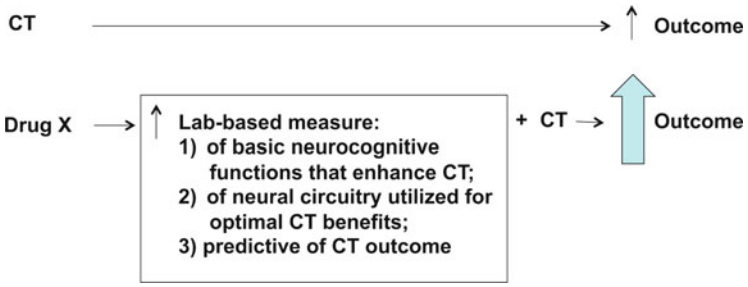



**Fig. 1** Schematic of theoretical and empirical rationale for predictive value of laboratory measures in identifying potential "pro-CT" drugs

Furthermore, we can anticipate that the mechanisms of action will differ substantially across many different putative "pro-CT" agents. Because of the time and resources required to complete a full program of CT, it will be particularly valuable to be able to predict which patients will benefit most from which therapy, and which pro-CT medication. It is thus worth considering how one might make such predictions.

At a neurobiological level, the model for the efficacy of cognitive interventions in SZ comes primarily from its use in treating stroke syndromes: these interventions engage the normal physiological and anatomical properties of healthy brain circuits (e.g., in neighboring regions or parallel circuits) to restore or subsume the function of damaged circuit elements (cf. Taub et al. 2002). In fact, schizophrenia patients with the largest "reserve" of cortical function—particularly temporal lobe—are most likely to benefit from CT (Keshavan et al. 2011). An implication of the variability in neuroimaging and neuropathological findings in schizophrenia is that in many patients, portions of the cortico-striato-pallido-thalamic circuitry may remain relatively intact. The model proposed herein suggests that medications that enhance specific cognitive functions (e.g., attention, memory, reasoning, or processing speed) by acting on remaining healthy brain circuits (not on areas of neural dysfunction per se) might reasonably be expected to amplify the clinical benefits of cognitive interventions, even if these medications are clinically ineffective when administered without the demands of cognitive interventions (Fig. 1).

One key step in predicting whether a patient might benefit from a particular "pro-CT" agent would be to identify evidence for medication-responsive, healthy or "spared" brain circuitry within any individual or biomarker-identified subgroup of SZ patients. Towards this end, specific neurophysiological, psychophysiological, or neurocognitive changes in response to a drug challenge may provide indication that "spared" healthy neural circuitry exists and can be a target for medication-enhanced CT. There is both a theoretical and an empirical basis for making such a prediction. Theoretically, if specific laboratory measures are regulated by elements of the cortico-striato-pallido-thalamic circuitry that also regulates neurocognitive functions important for CT, then drug-induced enhancement of laboratory-based performance would be expected to translate into a real-world enhancement of CT. In fact, independent of their specific neural substrates, if laboratory measures index

basic psychological functions of value to CT—e.g., attention, vigilance, sensorimotor gating, etc.—one might expect that drug-enhanced laboratory performance might predict pro-CT effects of these drugs. As with any predictive model, this strategy would have limits of sensitivity and specificity, and drugs yielding "positive" findings might be clinically irrelevant based on many factors, including the propensity for tolerance, a potential negative impact on other cognitive processes (e.g., impulsivity), symptoms, or other forms of toxicity.

There is also empirical support that greater performance on specific laboratory-based measures should predict enhanced CT effects. For example, higher levels of mismatch negativity (MMN; discussed below) are associated with a positive therapeutic response to 12 weeks of social skills/cognitive rehabilitative therapy in SZ (Kawakubo et al. 2007). In many [but not all (e.g., Hasenkamp et al. 2011)] studies, higher levels of prepulse inhibition of startle (PPI; discussed below) are associated with higher performance on measures of executive functioning (Bitsios et al. 2006; Giakoumaki et al. 2006; Greenwood et al. 2012; Light et al. 2007a; van der Linden et al. 2006), which in turn predict greater benefit from some forms of CTs (Becker et al. 1998; Green 1996; McGurk and Meltzer 2000; McGurk and Mueser 2004). In fact, a recent study determined that pre-therapy levels of PPI were strongly correlated with symptomatic improvement after CBT in schizophrenia patients (Kumari et al. 2012). Thus, empirical evidence suggests an association between performance on specific laboratory measures, basic psychological processes of relevance to CTs, and clinical improvement resulting from CT in schizophrenia. There remains a conceptual gap, though we submit one well worth exploring: whether medications that increase an individual's performance on these laboratory measures or in the basic neurocognitive processes of relevance to CTs, will improve that individual's ability to benefit clinically from CTs. Certainly, given the complex neural regulation of even simple laboratory measures, neurocognition, CTs and SZ, one would anticipate that studies not specifically designed to test these relationships would identify both false positive and negative outcomes. For example, PPI appears to be enhanced in SZ patients by atypical APs (e.g., Swerdlow et al. 2006a), which may—or may not—directly enhance the therapeutic effects of CTs (discussed above).

## 7 Biomarkers?

As with any therapeutic intervention in complex disorders, it will be very important to identify biomarkers that predict an increased sensitivity to the ability of a drug to enhance CT. This biomarker profile might inform both the choice of drug and the predictive measure. For example, high levels of dopamine $D_3$ receptor expression are associated with working memory-enhancing effects of the $D_3$ agonist, pramipexole (Ersche et al. 2011), while individuals carrying the Val/Val alleles of the Val158Met COMT polymorphism exhibit greater sensitivity to the ability of tolcapone (Roussos et al. 2009) to enhance sensorimotor gating, and individuals with low basal levels of PPI are most sensitive to the PPI-enhancing effects of

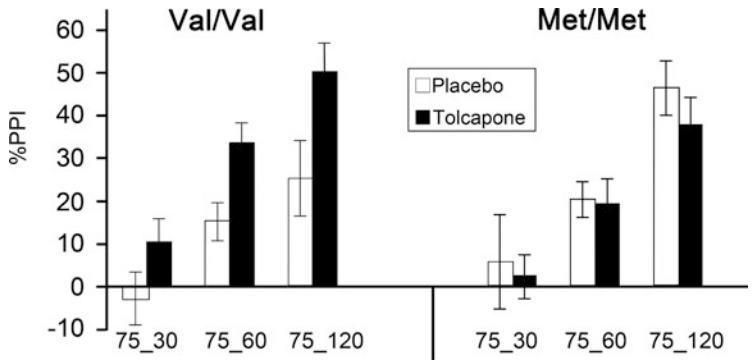



**Fig. 2** Biomarker predicting drug-enhanced PPI in normal subjects (figure modified from Roussos et al. 2009). %PPI is shown on *Y*-Axis; trial type (intensity in dB and prepulse interval in ms) is shown on *X*-axis. As in SZ patients, clinically healthy subjects carrying the Val allele of the Val158Met COMT polymorphism exhibit lower basal levels of PPI; in this important report, the authors demonstrated that the COMT inhibitor, tolcapone, increases PPI selectively among Val/Val individuals

memantine (Swerdlow et al. 2009b). A patient carrying one or more of these predictive biomarkers could then be tested in a within-subject "challenge dose" design (placebo vs. active dose), and findings of drug-enhanced performance in one or more predictive measure would suggest that the requisite neural circuitry for such a drug effect is "spared," and could be drug-activated in the service of CT. The patient might then be entered in a structured CT program with daily drug augmentation. While one might imagine reasons for continuing such "pro-CT" drugs beyond the course of the cognitive intervention, it is also conceivable that their therapeutic value would be maximized by administration concurrent with CT, and *thus the value of limited* versus *long-term dosing of such medications would need to be assessed empirically* (Fig. 2).

Conceivably, some forms of CT might benefit most from enhanced performance in specific neurocognitive or neurophysiological processes, and might be matched according to such drug effects identified in any given patient. Parallel translational research activities might identify the neural mechanisms for drug effects on specific neurophysiological processes; prospective trials would identify the strongest biomarker- and laboratory measure-predictors of positive drug effects on specific forms of CT.

An overview of several "candidate" laboratory measures for identifying potential "pro-CT" drugs is provided below. This overview is not meant to be comprehensive, and it is clear that many other measures might have predictive value for such drugs.

## *7.1 PPI*

Prepulse inhibition of startle (PPI) might be a good neurophysiological "biomarker" for predicting positive drug effects on neurophysiological processes and the therapeutic impact of CT. PPI is regulated by the cortico-striato-pallido-thalamic

circuitry (cf. Swerdlow et al. 2008), reduced in schizophrenia patients (Braff et al. 1978; Swerdlow et al. 2006a), correlated with CT-relevant executive functions including working memory, attention, strategy formation, execution times, and degree of mental fatigue (Bitsios et al. 2006; Giakoumaki et al. 2006; Light et al. 2007a; van der Linden et al. 2006) and sensitive to acute drug effects in a manner that might be useful for predicting individualized drug sensitivities in patients (e.g., Swerdlow et al. 2006b, 2009a, b; Talledo et al. 2009; Vollenweider et al. 2006). Also, as noted above, PPI levels prior to CBT correlate significantly with symptomatic improvement in SZ patients (Kumari et al. 2012); this finding suggests that it is rational to speculate that drugs that increase basal PPI levels might enhance CBT outcome in SZ.

In PPI, a weak lead stimulus (prepulse) inhibits the magnitude of a startle response to an intense, abrupt stimulus occurring 30–120 ms later. On average, the amount of reflex inhibition generated by the prepulse is diminished in SZ patients, as reported by more than a dozen independent research groups on 4 continents (cf. Braff et al. 1978; Grillon et al. 1992; Kumari et al. 1999; Kunugi et al. 2007; Quednow et al. 2010; Swerdlow et al. 2006a; Weike et al. 2000). This PPI deficit appears to be particularly marked among patients carrying the Val158Met polymorphism (homozygous Val/Val) conferring high activity of the enzyme, catechol-*O*-methyl transferase (COMT) (Quednow et al. 2010), suggesting that a Val/Val COMT genotype might be a useful biomarker predicting pro-CT effects for PPI-enhancing agents.

With only 10–120 ms separating the prepulse and startling stimulus in the "uninstructed" PPI paradigm, PPI is generally viewed as a measure of automatic, preattentional inhibition (Swerdlow 1996). Surprisingly, in several [but not all (e.g., Hasenkamp et al. 2011)] studies, the amount of this "automatic" inhibition correlates significantly with higher cognitive measures, including measures of working memory (Fig. 1) and strategy formation, as well as measures of cognitive efficiency (Bitsios et al. 2006; Giakoumaki et al. 2006; Light et al. 2007a; van der Linden et al. 2006). The PPI-enhancing effects of tolcapone among Val/Val healthy control subjects are accompanied by significant increases in n-back and letter–number sequencing performance (Giakoumaki et al. 2008). Perhaps most surprising is the finding that higher levels of PPI among SZ outpatients significantly predict higher global functioning (Swerdlow et al. 2006a), though we view this relationship as correlative and not causal (i.e., greater neural dysfunction is associated both with more global functional impairment, and with reduced PPI) (Fig. 3).

PPI is regulated in both laboratory animals and humans by neural circuits connecting portions of the prefrontal cortex and mesial temporal lobes, with subcortical systems extending from the basal ganglia to the primary startle circuit in the pons (cf. Swerdlow et al. 2001). Drugs acting at prominent nodes in this circuitry, particularly via changes in DA, 5-HT, and NMDA neurotransmission, have very potent effects on PPI that have been studied extensively in rodents, and more recently in humans (cf. Swerdlow et al. 2008).

In healthy individuals under specific conditions, some drugs increase PPI; of these, clozapine (Vollenweider et al. 2006) and quetiapine (Swerdlow et al. 2006b) are atypical antipsychotics, which also increase PPI in SZ patients (Swerdlow et al.

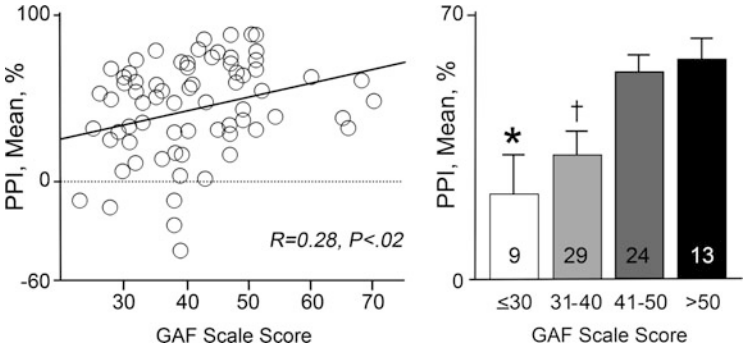



**Fig. 3** Relationship between levels of sensorimotor gating, as measured by %PPI, and global functioning, as measured by GAF in male schizophrenia outpatients (from Swerdlow et al. 2006a). "*N*" indicated by numbers inside bars; *P<.004 vs "41–50" and vs ">50." †P<.01 vs "41–50" and vs ">50" by Fisher protected least-significant difference. Clearly, the causal pathway from higher PPI to higher GAF is indirect, but these findings suggest that the ability of a drug to enhance PPI in schizophrenia patients might be one rational "signal" for selecting compounds with the potential for enhancing the functional impact of cognitive interventions

2006a). Other PPI-increasing drugs come from drug classes not intuitively associated with SZ therapeutics: NMDA antagonists and catecholamine agonists. In this regard, it is important to not categorically reject candidate drug classes based on hypotheses for the pathogenesis of SZ. For example, amantadine has both DA agonist and NMDA antagonist properties, and has been safely used in SZ patients for over four decades (Kelly and Abuzzahab 1971), despite prevailing hypotheses linking SZ to excessive DA activity and deficient NMDA activity. The inverse is also true: as noted above, atypical antipsychotics increase PPI in healthy subjects and SZ patients, yet it is not known whether these drugs contribute to the benefits of CTs, and if so, whether they do so via a specific effect on neurocognition versus a secondary result of reduced psychosis.

## *7.2 Electro-Encephalographic Measures*

Two electro-encephalographic (EEG)-based neurophysiological phenotypes—mismatch negativity (MMN) and gamma band synchronization (GBS)—may also serve as "biomarkers" to predict sensitivity to pro-cognitive and therapeutic drug effects, and/or therapeutic response to CT in SZ patients.

MMN is an auditory ERP component elicited 50–150 ms after a sequence of repetitive standard sounds is interrupted infrequently by deviant, "oddball" stimuli. MMN is the first measurable brain response component that differentiates between frequent and deviant auditory stimuli and reflects the properties of an automatic, memory-based comparison process (cf. Turetsky et al. 2007). It is rapidly assessed, impaired in SZ and highly stable; MMN deficits in SZ patients are of large effect size ($d > 1.0$), and after 1 year, MMN reliability coefficients (ICC's) in patients are

~0.90 (Light and Braff 2005a). While MMN is predominantly automatic and "preattentional," MMN is strongly associated with neurocognition and psychosocial functioning in healthy subjects (Light et al. 2007b) and SZ patients (Kawakubo et al. 2007; Kawakubo and Kasai 2006; Light and Braff 2005a, b; Wynn et al. 2010). MMN is regulated by forebrain circuitry, and may be particularly sensitive to NMDA activity: MMN is disrupted in nonhuman primates by phencyclidine, and in healthy subjects by ketamine, but existing evidence suggests that *MEM is associated with increased MMN* in healthy subjects (Korostenskaja et al. 2007). In turn, increased MMN is associated with a positive therapeutic response to 12 weeks of social skills/cognitive rehabilitative therapy in SZ (Kawakubo et al. 2007).

Synchronous neural oscillations (GBS) in the 30–80 Hz range (centered near 40 Hz) appear to reflect a fundamental brain resonance frequency that is critical for cortico-cortical communication and the large-scale integration of distributed neural functions (Uhlhaas and Singer 2006). EEG evidence demonstrates that the automatic entrainment ("synchronization") of gamma band oscillations to 40 Hz auditory stimuli is deficient and correlates with working memory in SZ patients (Light et al. 2006). Relatively little is known regarding the neural regulation of GBS; gamma frequency oscillations appear to be enhanced by ketamine in both mice (Lazarewicz et al. 2010) and healthy humans (Hong et al. 2010).

MMN and GBS are EEG-based measures of processes underlying automatic, preattentive information processing that are impaired in SZ, and associated with neurocognition in HCS (MMN) and SZ patients (MMN and GBS). There is evidence that NMDA regulates both MMN and GBS, that memantine increases MMN, and that greater MMN predicts a positive therapeutic response to cognitive rehabilitation in SZ.

## *7.3 MATRICS Consensus Cognitive Battery (MCCB)*

With the recognition of cognitive deficits as a core feature of SZ and its major impact on function, an NIMH initiative brought together a group of experts from the Neurocognition Subcommittee for the Measurement and Treatment Research to Improve Cognition in Schizophrenia (MATRICS) to identify the most important domains of cognitive deficits in SZ. Their consensus opinion was that working memory, attention/vigilance, verbal learning and memory, visual learning and memory, reasoning and problem solving, speed of processing, and social cognition comprised the primary domains of cognitive deficits in SZ (Green et al. 2000).

The MATRICS Consensus Cognitive Battery was developed to evaluate these key cognitive domains relevant to SZ (Kern et al. 2008; Nuechterlein et al. 2008). It was designed as an outcome measure for clinical trials of cognition-enhancing drugs for SZ, an outcome measure for studies of cognitive remediation, a measure of cognitive change in repeated testing applications, and a cognitive reference point for nonintervention studies of SZ and related disorders, and is accepted by the

FDA as a primary endpoint measure for clinical trials targeting cognition in schizophrenia.

The MCCB includes ten tests that assess seven cognitive domains: speed of processing, attention/vigilance, working memory (verbal and nonverbal), verbal learning, visual learning, reasoning and problem solving, and social cognition. In a variety of multi-site clinical trials, it has demonstrated sensitivity to cognitive deficits in all domains, excellent test–retest reliability and inter-site reliability, and is highly correlated with measures of functional capacity (Buchanan et al. 2011; Keefe et al. 2011b). The use of the MCCB as a validated measure for studies evaluating cognition-enhancing drugs is well underway and the use of this standardized measure will be critical for the comparison of results between studies evaluating the ability of a drug to enhance the therapeutic effects of CT.

## 8 Examples of Candidate "Pro-CT" Drugs

A variety of candidate pro-cognitive agents might warrant assessment for their ability to enhance the functional impact of cognitive interventions in SZ. Two classes of drugs will be discussed here as examples. Importantly, many other classes of compounds might certainly warrant investigation, but as reviewed by Barch (2010), compelling support for one drug class over another at this point is lacking.

### *8.1 Direct and Indirect Catecholaminergic Agents*

Several direct and indirect catecholaminergic agonists enhance neurocognitive performance in clinically normal subjects. For example, methylphenidate (Clark et al. 1986; Elliott et al. 1997; Mehta et al. 2000), amphetamine (Mattay et al. 2000, 2003), bromocriptine (Kimberg et al. 1997; Luciana et al. 1992, 1998; Luciana and Collins 1997), and pergolide (Kimberg and D'Esposito 2003; Müller et al. 1998) enhance working memory in healthy subjects. Perhaps the most-studied of the catecholaminergic drugs is the indirect DA agonist, amphetamine; it has been reported to enhance performance on several neurocognitive measures both in medicated SZ patients (e.g., Barch and Carter 2005) and in unmedicated individuals with schizotypal personality disorder (Kirrane et al. 2000; Siegel et al. 1996; Wonodi et al. 2006). Amphetamine and other DA agonists may be particularly effective in enhancing neurocognitive performance in individuals with low basal performance levels (Kimberg et al. 1997; Kimberg and D'Esposito 2003; Mattay et al. 2000, 2003; Mehta et al. 2001; Swerdlow et al. 2011) and in individuals carrying certain genetic biomarkers or related phenotypes (Ersche et al. 2011; Fleming et al. 1995; Giakoumaki et al. 2008; Mattay et al. 2003; Roussos et al. 2009).

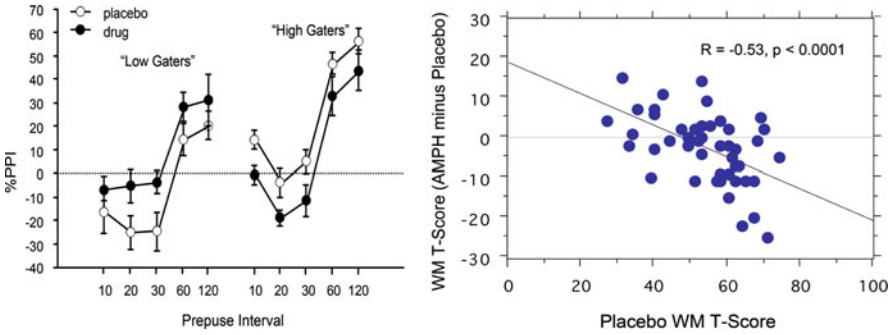



**Fig. 4** "Rate-dependent" effects of AMPH (20 mg po) on measures of %PPI (*left*; Talledo et al. 2009) and working memory (MCCB domain T-scores; Swerdlow et al. 2011) in clinically normal adults. AMPH-enhanced PPI was detected in specific subgroups of healthy women with PPI- or personality-based phenotypes associated with the COMT Val/Val allele. Working memory-enhancing effects of AMPH were detected among a subgroup of 50 healthy men and women characterized by low-basal working memory performance. Schizophrenia patients as a group have reduced PPI and impaired working memory; thus, based solely on the rate-dependent effects detected in normal adults, schizophrenia patients would be predicted to show PPI- and working memory-enhancing effects of acute AMPH treatment. The latter finding was already reported by Barch and Carter (2005)

Among other laboratory measures, PPI is sensitive to the positive effects of pro-catecholamine agents, in a manner that might predict CT-enhancing effects of these drugs. Catecholaminergic drugs that increase PPI in healthy subjects include amphetamine (Talledo et al. 2009); the COMT inhibitor, tolcapone (Giakoumaki et al. 2008; Roussos et al. 2009) and the $D_3$ agonist, pramipexole (Swerdlow et al. 2009a). Similar to what is observed with several neurocognitive measures, the PPI-enhancing effects of catecholaminergic drugs can be either subgroup—or biomarker-sensitive—e.g., in individuals carrying the Val/Val alleles of the Val158Met COMT polymorphism (Giakoumaki et al. 2008; Roussos et al. 2009) or its associated phenotypes (Talledo et al. 2009)—or most marked among individuals with low basal performance levels (Fig. 4). Theoretically, this might suggest that amphetamine would be most effective in increasing PPI (and its associated neurocognitive functions) in SZ patients, who as a group exhibit low basal PPI, particularly among those patients carrying a Val allele in the COMT polymorphism (Quednow et al. 2010).

Certainly, there are rational arguments against the indiscriminate use of pro-catecholaminergic drugs in SZ, and some drugs [e.g., tolcapone (cf. Haasio 2010)] carry other medical contraindications. However, DA agonists have been used safely in schizophrenia for many years (e.g., Benkert et al. 1995; Kasper et al. 1997), and—as suggested by Barch (2010) and others—their use in concert with antipsychotics might prevent potentially deleterious effects of subcortical $D_2$ activation, while permitting potentially beneficial activation of cortical $D_1$ receptors. Whether there is a role for some of these agents in biomarker-identified

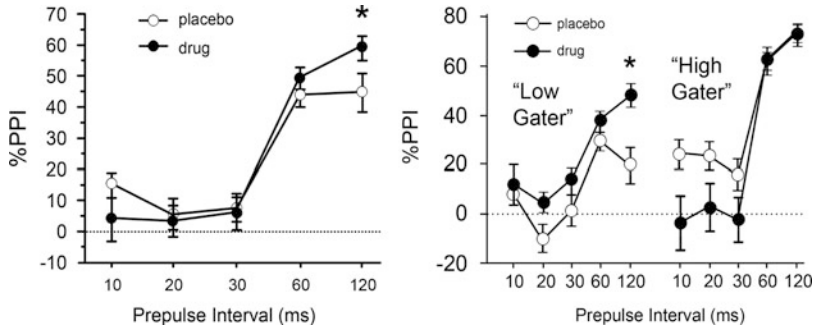



**Fig. 5** In healthy men, PPI was significantly increased by 20 mg memantine at 120 ms prepulse intervals (*left*). When subjects were divided into those in the upper or lower 50% of baseline PPI values (right, "high" and "low", respectively), ANOVA revealed PPI-enhancing effects of memantine only among the "low gaters" (Swerdlow et al. 2009b)

subpopulations, in time-limited combinations with CT and antipsychotic agents, remains an empirical question.

## *8.2 Low-Potency NMDA Antagonists*

NMDA antagonists increase PPI in humans. While the potent competitive NMDA antagonist phencyclidine (PCP) disrupts PPI in both rodents and nonhuman primates (Linn and Javitt 2001; Mansbach and Geyer 1989), low-potency NMDA antagonists that increase PPI in healthy human subjects include amantadine (Swerdlow et al. 2002) and memantine (Swerdlow et al. 2009b) (Fig. 5). Amantadine's PPI-enhancing effects were detected only under conditions where subjects were instructed to rate the intensity of the startling stimulus (Swerdlow et al. 2002), suggesting that the mechanisms engaged by amantadine were attentionally dependent. Consistent with this, when studied in a sample of 19 healthy men, memantine enhanced PPI only at relatively long prepulse intervals (120 ms), which are known to be attentionally sensitive, compared with intervals below 60 ms (Swerdlow et al. 2009b).

Interestingly, memantine's PPI-enhancing effects appear to be most potent among individuals with phenotypes linked to the Val/Val alleles of the Val158Met COMT polymorphism (Giakoumaki et al. 2008; Golimbet et al. 2007; Roussos et al. 2009), suggesting a potential biomarker for identifying an enriched treatment cohort. In addition to PPI, memantine challenge in healthy subjects enhances other markers of cortico-striato-pallido-thalamic and functional deficits in schizophrenia, including MMN (Korostenskaja et al. 2007; Light and Braff 2005a, b), and in preliminary studies appears to increase working memory performance in some individuals (Swerdlow et al. 2010). Consistent with the model presented herein, the ability of a memantine "challenge" to enhance PPI or other specific

neurophysiological measures in a patient could provide evidence for residual, healthy circuitry that could be recruited to enhance the effectiveness of CT.

As with other putative "pro-cognitive" agents, memantine does not appear to have dramatic positive effects on symptoms or function in SZ patients, without the concomitant use of cognitive interventions. A recent double-blind study did report large reductions in positive and negative symptoms ($d = 1.38–3.33$) and improved Mini-Mental State Exam scores after 12 weeks of memantine (20 mg/d; $n = 10$) versus placebo (PBO; $n = 11$) added to clozapine (de Lucena et al. 2009). However, an earlier 8-week double-blind, study of memantine (20 mg/d; $n = 70$) vs. PBO ($n = 68$) added to atypical antipsychotics detected no change in positive or negative symptoms or Brief Assessment of Cognition in Schizophrenia scores (Lieberman et al. 2009), but found that memantine was associated with more adverse events (adverse events memantine vs. PBO = 8.7% vs. 6.0%) and treatment discontinuation due to AEs (11.6% vs. 3.0%). A smaller, 6-week, open label study of memantine (5–20 mg/d) in symptomatic SZ inpatients reported a significant improvement in positive and negative symptoms but not cognitive performance, with no adverse events (Krivoy et al. 2008). Three case reports (cf. Zdanys and Tampi 2008) described beneficial effects of memantine (5–10 mg/d) in SZ patients, with reductions in negative symptoms and functional impairment and no adverse events; in two reports, symptoms returned on memantine discontinuation and resolved again after restarting memantine.

As with catecholaminergic agents, the utility of an NMDA *antagonist* in SZ patients would seem counterintuitive, based on prevailing models for NMDA hypofunction in SZ. In truth, we can only speculate about the neural mechanisms that might underlie such utility. Memantine enhances cortical metabolic efficiency (Willenborg et al. 2011) and protects cerebral function under conditions of hypoglycemic challenge in healthy adults, and increased frontal and parietal cortical glucose utilization after memantine correlates with increased Mini-Mental State performance among individuals with traumatic brain injury (Kim et al. 2010). Conceivably, such properties might represent a basis for bolstering frontal cortical function—and thereby the neurocognitive resources necessary to successfully engage in CTs—particularly among patients whose frontal cortical efficiency is already taxed by risk factors related to COMT status or schizophrenia-related pathological changes. While it is always wise to consider whether drugs with NMDA antagonist properties might have deleterious consequences in SZ patients, there is evidence that, in fact, memantine is neuroprotective (Kornhuber et al. 1994; Lipton 2006; Rogawski and Wenk 2003), well-tolerated by SZ patients (de Lucena et al. 2009; Krivoy et al. 2008; Lieberman et al. 2009; Zdanys and Tampi 2008) and has been safely used in many millions of patients, including elderly, frail clinical populations (cf. Jones 2010). Conceivably, in addition to memantine, "next generation" low-affinity NMDA antagonists would warrant investigation in studies of neurophysiological and neurocognitive measures of relevance to cortico-striato-pallido-thalamic function and SZ, to assess their potential as pro-CT candidates.

## 9 Summary

Current pharmacotherapy for SZ primarily targets positive symptoms but does not significantly impact either the substantial neurocognitive or life functional impairments associated with this disorder. It is not surprising that current medications yield limited symptomatic relief, in a disorder caused by disturbances in early brain development producing pervasive, widely distributed and variable patterns of neuropathology. In contrast, controlled studies of a variety of cognitive interventions in SZ patients have demonstrated modest yet significant neurocognitive and functional gains. In the absence of such CTs, drugs with putative "pro-cognitive" properties have failed to benefit patients with SZ. We propose here that a rational strategy for future therapeutic development in SZ is to identify drugs that can enhance the therapeutic impact of CTs in SZ; such "pro-CT effects" would result from the ability of these drugs to engage spared, healthy brain circuits in SZ patients, in the service of basic neurocognitive demands of particular forms of CT. We propose an experimental approach for identifying such drugs via the use of single drug challenges in concert with laboratory-based neurophysiological and neurocognitive measures, in patients with particular biomarkers predicting drug sensitivity. Among the candidate "pro-CT" drugs are ones with properties—e.g., pro-catecholaminergic or NMDA-antagonistic—that, on the surface, would seem counter-productive in the treatment of SZ. A rationale is discussed—supported by convergent empirical findings—that suggests that evolving strategies for new SZ therapeutics should not be based on imprecise models for the widespread and variable brain dysfunction that occurs because of this disorder, but should be based instead on models that identify and engage spared, healthy brain functions that persists despite it.

**Acknowledgments** The authors acknowledge the valuable assistance of Ms. Maria Bongiovanni and Ms. Jo Talledo in the preparation of this manuscript. NRS was supported by MH093453, MH059803; MH042228 and a PALA Award from the VISN-22 MIRECC; HHC was supported by 5T32MH018399 – 25 and MH093453; ET was supported by MH080150.

## References

Abi-Dargham A, Gil R, Krystal J, Baldwin RM, Seibyl JP, Bowers M, van Dyck CH, Charney DS, Innis RB, Laruelle M (1998) Increased striatal dopamine transmission in schizophrenia: confirmation in a second cohort. Am J Psychiatry 155:761–767

Akil M, Pierri JN, Whitehead RE, Edger CL, Mohila C, Sampson AR, Lewis DA (1999) Lamina-specific alterations in the dopamine innervation of the prefrontal cortex in schizophrenic subjects. Am J Psychiatry 156:1580–1589

Aparacio-Legarza MI, Cutts AJ, Davis B, Reynolds GP (1997) Deficits in [3H]D-aspartate binding to glutamate uptake sites in striatal and accumbens tissue in patients with schizophrenia. Neurosci Lett 232:13–16

Barch DM (2010) Pharmacological strategies for enhancing cognition in schizophrenia. In: Swerdlow N (ed) Behavioral neurobiology of schizophrenia and its treatment. Current topics in behavioral neuroscience, vol 4. Springer, Heidelberg, pp 43–96

Barch DM, Carter CS (2005) Amphetamine improves cognitive function in medicated individuals with schizophrenia and in healthy volunteers. Schizophr Res 77:43–58

Baxter LR, Schwartz JM, Bergman KS, Szuba MP, Guze BH, Mazziotta JC, Alazraki A, Selin CE, Ferng HK, Munford P, Phelps ME (1992) Caudate glucose metabolic rate changes with both drug and behavior therapy for obsessive-compulsive disorder. Arch Gen Psychiatry 49:681–689

Becker DR, Drake RE, Bond GR, Xie H, Dain BJ, Harrison K (1998) Job terminations among persons with severe mental illness participating in supported employment. Commun Ment Health J 34:71–82

Benes FM (2010) Amygdalocortical circuitry in schizophrenia: from circuits to molecules. Neuropsychopharmacology 35:239–257

Benkert O, Müller-Siecheneder F, Wetzel H (1995) Dopamine agonists in schizophrenia: a review. Eur Neuropsychopharmacol 5(Suppl):43–53

Bitsios P, Giakoumaki SG, Theou K, Frangou S (2006) Increased prepulse inhibition of the acoustic startle response is associated with better strategy formation and execution times in healthy males. Neuropsychologia 44:2494–2499

Brabban A, Tai S, Turkington D (2009) Predictors of outcome in brief cognitive behavior therapy for schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 35:859–864

Braff D, Stone C, Callaway E, Geyer M, Glick I, Bali L (1978) Prestimulus effects on human startle reflex in normals and schizophrenics. Psychophysiology 15:339–343

Brown GG, Thompson WK (2010) Functional brain imaging in schizophrenia: Selected results and methods. In: Swerdlow NR (ed) Behavioral neurobiology of schizophrenia and its treatment. Current topics in behavioral neuroscience. Springer, Heidelberg, pp 181–214

Buchanan RW, Javitt DC, Marder SR, Schooler NR, Gold JM, McMahon RP, Heresco-Levy U, Carpenter WT (2007) The cognitive and negative symptoms in schizophrenia trial (CONSIST): the efficacy of glutamatergic agents for negative symptoms and cognitive impairments. Am J Psychiatry 164:1593–1602

Buchanan RW, Keefe RS, Umbricht D, Green MF, Laughren T, Marder SR (2011) The FDA-NIMH-MATRICS guidelines for clinical trial design of cognitive-enhancing drugs: What do we know 5 years later? Schizophr Bull 37:1209–1017

Clark CR, Geffen GM, Geffen LB (1986) Role of monoamine pathways in the control of attention: effects of droperidol and methylphenidate on normal adult humans. Psychopharmacology 90:28–34

Cruz DA, Weaver CL, Lovallo EM, Melchitzky DS, Lewis DA (2009) Selective alterations in postsynaptic markers of chandelier cell inputs to cortical pyramidal neurons in subjects with schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 34:2112–2124

Davis M, Ressler K, Rothbaum BO, Richardson R (2006) Effects of D-cycloserine on extinction: translation from preclinical to clinical work. Biol Psychiatry 60:369–375

de Lange FP, Koers A, Kalkman JS, Bleijenberg G, Hagoort P, van der Meer JW, Toni I (2008) Increase in prefrontal cortical volume following cognitive behavioural therapy in patients with chronic fatigue syndrome. Brain 131:2172–2180. doi:10.1093/brain/awn140

de Lucena D, Fernandes BS, Berk M, Dodd S, Medeiros DW, Pedrini M, Kunz M, Gomes FA, Giglio LF, Lobato MI, Belmonte-de-Abreu PS, Gama CS (2009) Improvement of negative and positive symptoms in treatment-refractory schizophrenia: a double-blind, randomized, placebo-controlled trial with memantine as add-on therapy to clozapine. J Clin Psychiatry 70:1416–1423

Dean B, Boer S, Gibbons A, Money T, Scarr E (2009) Recent advances in postmortem pathology and neurochemistry in schizophrenia. Curr Opin Psychiatry 22:154–160

Demily C, Franck N (2008) Cognitive remediation: a promising tool for the treatment of schizophrenia. Expert Rev Neurother 8:1029–1036

Dick DM, Riley B, Kendler KS (2010) Nature and nurture in neuropsychiatric genetics: where do we stand? Dialogues Clin Neurosci 12:7–23

Dolan RJ, Fletcher P, Frith CD, Friston KJ, Frackowiak RS, Grasby PM (1995) Dopaminergic modulation of impaired cognitive activation in the anterior cingulate cortex in schizophrenia. Nature 378:180–182

Eack SM, Greenwald DP, Hogarty SS, Cooley SJ, DiBarry AL, Montrose DM, Keshavan MS (2009) Cognitive enhancement therapy for early-course schizophrenia: effects of a two-year randomized controlled trial. Psychiatr Serv 60:1468–1476

Elliott R, Sahakian BJ, Matthews K, Bannerjea A, Rimmer J, Robbins TW (1997) Effects of methylphenidate on spatial working memory and planning in healthy young adults. Psychopharmacology 131:196–206

Ersche KD, Roiser JP, Lucas M, Domenici E, Robbins TW, Bullmore ET (2011) Peripheral biomarkers of cognitive response to dopamine receptor agonist treatment. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 214:779–789

Fiszdon JM, Cardenas AS, Bryson GJ, Bell MD (2005) Predictors of remediation success on a trained memory task. J Nerv Ment Dis 193:602–608. doi:10.1097/01.nmd.0000177790.23311.ba

Fiszdon JM, Choi J, Bryson GJ, Bell MD (2006) Impact of intellectual status on response to cognitive task training in patients with schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 87:261–269. doi:10.1016/j.schres.2006.04.011

Fleming K, Bigelow LB, Weinberger DR, Goldberg TE (1995) Neuropsychological effects of amphetamine may correlate with personality characteristics. Psychopharmacol Bull 31:357–362

Fox K (2009) Experience-dependent plasticity mechanisms for neural rehabilitation in somatosensory cortex. Philos Trans R Soc Lond Series B Biol Sci 364:369–381. doi:10.1098/rstb.2008.0252

Giakoumaki SG, Bitsios P, Frangou S (2006) The level of prepulse inhibition in healthy individuals may index cortical modulation of early information processing. Brain Res 1078:168–170

Giakoumaki SG, Roussos P, Bitsios P (2008) Improvement of prepulse inhibition and executive function by the COMT inhibitor tolcapone depends on COMT Val158Met polymorphism. Neuropsychopharmacology 33:3058–3068

Goff DC, Tsai G, Manoach DS, Flood J, Darby DG, Coyle JT (1996) D-cycloserine added to clozapine for patients with schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 153:1628–1630

Goff DC, Tsai G, Levitt J, Amico E, Manoach D, Schoenfeld DA, Hayden DL, McCarley R, Coyle JT (1999) A placebo-controlled trial of D-cycloserine added to conventional neuroleptics in patients with schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 56:21–27

Goff DC, Keefe R, Citrome L, Davy K, Krystal JH, Large C, Thompson TR, Volavka J, Webster EL (2007) Lamotrigine as add-on therapy in schizophrenia: results of 2 placebo-controlled trials. J Clin Psychopharmacol 27:582–589

Goff DC, Cather C, Gottlieb JD, Evins AE, Walsh J, Raeke L, Otto MW, Schoenfeld D, Green MF (2008) Once-weekly D-cycloserine effects on negative symptoms and cognition in schizophrenia: an exploratory study. Schizophr Res 106:320–327

Golimbet VE, Alfimova MV, Gritsenko IK, Ebstein RP (2007) Relationship between dopamine system genes and extraversion and novelty seeking. Neurosci Behav Physiol 37:601–606

Gottlieb JD, Cather C, Shanahan M, Creedon T, Macklin EA, Goff DC (2011) D-cycloserine facilitation of cognitive behavioral therapy for delusions in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 131:69–74

Granholm E, McQuaid JR, McClure FS, Link PC, Perivoliotis D, Gottlieb JD, Patterson TL, Jeste DV (2007) Randomized controlled trial of cognitive behavioral social skills training for older people with schizophrenia: 12-month follow-up. J Clin Psychiatry 68:730–737

Grant PM, Huh GA, Perivoliotis D, Stolar NM, Beck AT (2012) Randomized trial to evaluate the efficacy of cognitive therapy for low-functioning patients with schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 69:121–127

Green MF (1996) What are the functional consequences of neurocognitive deficits in schizophrenia? Am J Psychiatry 153:321–330

Green MF (2007) Cognition, drug treatment, and functional outcome in schizophrenia: A tale of two transitions. Am J Psychiatry 164:992–994
Green MF, Kern RS, Braff DL, Mintz J (2000) Neurocognitive deficits and functional outcome in schizophrenia: are we measuring the "right stuff"? Schizophr Bull 26:119–136
Green MF, Kern RS, Heaton RK (2004) Longitudinal studies of cognition and functional outcome in schizophrenia: implications for MATRICS. Schizophr Res 72:41–51. doi:10.1016/j.schres.2004.09.009
Greenwood TA, Light GA, Swerdlow NR, Radant AD, Braff DL (2012) Association analysis of 94 candidate genes and schizophrenia-related endophenotypes. PLoS One 7(1):e29630
Grillon C, Ameli R, Charney DS, Krystal J, Braff D (1992) Startle gating deficits occur across prepulse intensities in schizophrenic patients. Biol Psychiatry 32:939–943
Gur RE, Keshavan MS, Lawrie SM (2007) Deconstructing psychosis with human brain imaging. Schizophr Bull 33:921–931
Hasenkamp W, Kelley M, Egan G, Green A, Wilcox L, Boshoven W, Lewison B, Duncan E (2011) Lack of relationship between acoustic startle and cognitive variables in schizophrenia and control subjects. Psychiatry Res 187:324–328
Haasio K (2010) Toxicology and safety of COMT inhibitors. Int Rev Neurobiol 95:163–189
Haut KM, Lim KO, MacDonald A (2010) Prefrontal cortical changes following cognitive training in patients with chronic schizophrenia: effects of practice, generalization and specificity. Neuropsychopharmacology 35:1850–1859
Heckers S, Konradi C (2010) Hippocampal pathology in schizophrenia. In: Swerdlow NR (ed) Behavioral neurobiology of schizophrenia and its treatment. Current topics in behavioral neuroscience. Springer, Heidelberg, pp 529–553
Heckers S, Rauch SL, Goff D, Savage CR, Schacter DL, Fischman AJ, Alpert NM (1998) Impaired recruitment of the hippocampus during conscious recollection in schizophrenia. Nat Neurosci 1:318–323
Heinrichs RW, Zakzanis KK (1998) Neurocognitive deficit in schizophrenia: a quantitative review of the evidence. Neuropsychology 12:426–445
Hong LE, Summerfelt A, Buchanan RW, O'Donnell P, Thaker GK, Weiler MA, Lahti AC (2010) Gamma and delta neural oscillations and association with clinical symptoms under subanesthetic ketamine. Neuropsychopharmacology 35:632–640
Howes OD, Egerton A, Allan V, McGuire P, Stokes P, Kapur S (2009) Mechanisms underlying psychosis and antipsychotic treatment response in schizophrenia: insights from PET and SPECT imaging. Curr Pharm Des 15:2550–2559
Jones RW (2010) A review comparing the safety and tolerability of memantine with the acetylcholinesterase inhibitors. Int J Geriatr Psychiatry 25:547–553
Kasper S, Barnas C, Heiden A, Volz HP, Laakmann G, Zeit H, Pfolz H (1997) Pramipexole as adjunct to haloperidol in schizophrenia. Safety and efficacy. Eur Neuropsychopharmacol 7:65–70
Kawakubo Y, Kasai K (2006) Support for an association between mismatch negativity and social functioning in schizophrenia. Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry 30:1367–1368
Kawakubo Y, Kamio S, Nose T, Iwanami A, Nakagome K, Fukuda M, Kato N, Rogers MA, Kasai K (2007) Phonetic mismatch negativity predicts social skills acquisition in schizophrenia. Psychiatry Res 152:261–265
Keefe RSE and Harvey PD (2012) Cognitive impairment in schizophrenia. In: Geyer MA and Gross G (ed), Novel anti-schizophrenia treatments. Handbook of experimental pharmacology
Keefe RSE, Buchanan RW, Marder SR, Schooler NR, Dugar A, Zivkov M, Stewart M (2011a) Clinical trials of potential cognitive-enhancing drugs in schizophrenia: what have we learned so far? Schizophr Bull. doi:10.1093/schbul/sbr153
Keefe RSE, Fox KH, Harvey PD, Cucchiaro J, Siu C, Loebel A (2011b) Characteristics of the MATRICS consensus cognitive battery in a 29-site antipsychotic schizophrenia clinical trial. Schizophr Res 125:161–168
Keller TA, Just MA (2009) Altering cortical connectivity: remediation-induced changes in the white matter of poor readers. Neuron 64:624–631. doi:10.1016/j.neuron.2009.10.018

Kelly JT, Abuzzahab FS Sr (1971) The antiparkinson properties of amantadine in drug-induced parkinsonism. J Clin Pharmacol New Drugs 11:211–214
Kern RS, Nuechterlein KH, Green MF, Baade LE, Fenton WS, Gold JM, Keefe RS, Mesholam-Gately R, Mintz J, Seidman LJ, Stover E, Marder SR (2008) The MATRICS consensus cognitive battery: part 2. Co-norming and standardization. Am J Psychiatry 165:214–220
Keshavan MS, Eack SM, Wojtalik JA, Prasad KM, Francis AN, Bhojraj TS, Greenwald DP, Hogarty SS (2011) A broad cortical reserve accelerates response to cognitive enhancement therapy in early course schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 130:123–129
Kessler LP, Walker E, Vega EM (2001) Dopamine receptors in the brains of schizophrenia patients: a meta-analysis of the findings. Behav Pharmacol 12:355–371
Kessler RM, Woodward ND, Riccardi P, Li R, Ansari MS, Anderson S, Dawant B, Zald D, Meltzer HY (2009) Dopamine D2 receptor levels in striatum, thalamus, substantia nigra, limbic regions, and cortex in schizophrenic subjects. Biol Psychiatry 65:1024–1031
Kim YW, Shin JC, An YS (2010) Changes in cerebral glucose metabolism in patients with posttraumatic cognitive impairment after memantine therapy: a preliminary study. Ann Nuclei Med 24:363–369
Kimberg DY, D'Esposito M (2003) Cognitive effects of the dopamine receptor agonist pergolide. Neuropsychologia 41:1020–1027
Kimberg DY, D'Esposito M, Farah MJ (1997) Effects of bromocriptine on human subjects depend on working memory capacity. NeuroReport 8:381–385
Kirrane RM, Mitropoulou V, Nunn M, New AS, Harvey PD, Schopick F, Silverman J, Siever LJ (2000) Effects of amphetamine on visuospatial working memory performance in schizophrenia spectrum personality disorder. Neuropsychopharmacology 22:14–18
Klingberg S, Wittorf A, Herrlich J, Wiedemann G, Meisner C, Buchkremer G, Frommann N, Wölwer W (2009) Cognitive behavioural treatment of negative symptoms in schizophrenia patients: study design of the TONES study, feasibility and safety of treatment. Eur Arch Psychiatry Clin Neurosci 259:S149–S154
Kornhuber J, Weller M, Schoppmeyer K, Riederer P (1994) Amantadine and memantine are NMDA receptor antagonists with neuroprotective properties. J Neural Transm Suppl 43:91–104
Korosi A, Baram TZ (2009) The pathways from mother's love to baby's future. Front Behav Neurosci 3:27. doi:10.3389/neuro.08.027.2009
Korostenskaja M, Nikulin VV, Kicić D, Nikulina AV, Kähkönen S (2007) Effects of NMDA receptor antagonist memantine on mismatch negativity. Brain Res Bull 72:275–283
Krivoy A, Weizman A, Laor L, Hellinger N, Zemishlany Z, Fischel T (2008) Addition of memantine to antipsychotic treatment in schizophrenia inpatients with residual symptoms: A preliminary study. Eur Neuropsychopharmacol 18:117–121
Kumari V, Soni W, Sharma T (1999) Normalization of information processing deficits in schizophrenia with clozapine. Am J Psychiatry 156:1046–1051
Kumari V, Gray JA, Geyer MA, ffytche D, Soni W, Mitterschiffthaler MT, Vythelingum GN, Simmons A, Williams SC, Sharma T (2003) Neural correlates of tactile prepulse inhibition: a functional MRI study in normal and schizophrenic subjects. Psychiatry Res 122:99–113
Kumari V, Peters ER, Fannon D, Antonova E, Premkumar P, Anilkumar AP, Williams SC, Kuipers E (2009) Dorsolateral prefrontal cortex activity predicts responsiveness to cognitive-behavioral therapy in schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 66:594–602
Kumari V, Premkumar P, Fannon D, Aasen I, Raghuvanshi S, Anilkumar AP, Antonova E, Peters ER, Kuipers E (2012) Sensorimotor gating and clinical outcome following cognitive behaviour therapy for psychosis. Schizophr Res 134:232–238
Kunugi H, Tanaka M, Hori H, Hashimoto R, Saitoh O, Hironaka N (2007) Prepulse inhibition of acoustic startle in Japanese patients with chronic schizophrenia. Neurosci Res 59:23–28
Kurtz MM, Moberg PJ, Gur RC, Gur RE (2001) Approaches to cognitive remediation of neuropsychological deficits in schizophrenia: a review and meta-analysis. Neuropsychol Rev 11:197–210

Kurtz MM, Wexler BE, Fujimoto M, Shagan DS, Seltzer JC (2008) Symptoms versus neurocognition as predictors of change in life skills in schizophrenia after outpatient rehabilitation. Schizophr Res 102:303–311. doi:10.1016/j.schres.2008.03.023

Kurtz MM, Seltzer JC, Fujimoto M, Shagan DS, Wexler BE (2009) Predictors of change in life skills in schizophrenia after cognitive remediation. Schizophr Res 107:267–274

Kvajo M, McKellar H, Joseph A, Gogos JA (2010) Molecules, signaling and schizophrenia. In: Swerdlow NR (ed) Behavioral neurobiology of schizophrenia and its treatment. Current topics in behavioral neuroscience. Springer, Heidelberg, pp 629–656

Laruelle M (1998) Imaging dopamine transmission in schizophrenia. A review and meta-analysis. Q J Nucl Med 42:211–221

Lazarewicz MT, Ehrlichman RS, Maxwell CR, Gandal MJ, Finkel LH, Siegel SJ (2010) Ketamine modulates theta and gamma oscillations. J Cogn Neurosci 22:1452–1464

Lee T, Seeman P (1980) Elevation of brain neuroleptic/dopamine receptors in schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 137:191–197

Leucht S, Arbter D, Engel RR, Kissling W, Davis JM (2009) How effective are second-generation antipsychotic drugs? A meta-analysis of placebo-controlled trials. Mol Psychiatry 14:429–447

Levitt JJ, Bobrow L, Lucia D, Srinivasan P (2010) A selective review of volumetric and morphometric imaging in schizophrenia. In: Swerdlow NR (ed) Behavioral neurobiology of schizophrenia and its treatment. Current topics in behavioral neuroscience. Springer, Heidelberg, pp 243–282

Lewis DA, Hashimoto T, Morris HM (2008) Cell and receptor type-specific alterations in markers of GABA neurotransmission in the prefrontal cortex of subjects with schizophrenia. Neurotox Res 14:237–248

Lieberman JA, Stroup TS, McEvoy JP, Swartz MS, Rosenheck RA, Perkins DO, Keefe RS, Davis SM, Davis CE, Lebowitz BD, Severe J, Hsiao JK (2005) Effectiveness of antipsychotic drugs in patients with chronic schizophrenia. N Engl J Med 353:1209–1223

Lieberman JA, Papadakis K, Csernansky J, Litman R, Volavka J, Jia XD, Gage A, MEM-MD-29 Study Group (2009) A randomized, placebo-controlled study of memantine as adjunctive treatment in patients with schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 34:1322–1329

Light GA, Braff DL (2005a) Stability of mismatch negativity deficits and their relationship to functional impairments in chronic schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 162:1741–1743

Light GA, Braff DL (2005b) Mismatch negativity deficits are associated with poor functioning in schizophrenia patients. Arch Gen Psychiatry 62:127–136

Light GA, Hsu JL, Hsieh MH, Meyer-Gomes K, Sprock J, Swerdlow NR, Braff DL (2006) Gamma band oscillations reveal neural network cortical coherence dysfunction in schizophrenia patients. Biol Psychiatry 60:1231–1240

Light GA, Braff DL, Sprock J, Cadenhead KS, Swerdlow NR (2007a) Prepulse inhibition of startle is positively associated with higher order cognition in women. Abstr Soc Neuroscience 806:17

Light GA, Swerdlow NR, Braff DL (2007b) Preattentive sensory processing is associated with cognitive and psychosocial functioning in healthy adults. J Cog Neurosci 19:1624–1632

Linn GS, Javitt DC (2001) Phencyclidine (PCP)-induced deficits of prepulse inhibition in monkeys. Neuroreport 12:117–120

Lipton SA (2006) Paradigm shift in neuroprotection by NMDA receptor blockade: memantine and beyond. Nat Rev Drug Discov 5:160–170

Luciana M, Collins PF (1997) Dopamine modulates working memory for spatial but not object cues in normal humans. J Cogn Neurosci 4:58–68

Luciana M, Depue RA, Arbisi P, Leon A (1992) Facilitation of working memory in humans by a D2 dopamine receptor agonist. J Cogn Neurosci 4:58–68

Luciana M, Collins PF, Depue RA (1998) Opposing roles for dopamine and serotonin in the modulation of human spatial working memory functions. Cereb Cortex 8:218–226

Lynch D, Laws KR, McKenna PJ (2010) Cognitive behavioural therapy for major psychiatric disorder: does it really work? A meta-analytical review of well-controlled trials. Psychol Med 40:9–24

Mansbach RS, Geyer MA (1989) Effects of phencyclidine and phencyclidine biologs on sensorimotor gating in the rat. Neuropsychopharmacology 2:229–308
Marder SR, Buchanan RW (2009) Pharmacological strategies to improve cognition in schizophrenia: results from TURNS and MATRICS-CT. American College of Neuropsychopharmacology (ACNP), Hollywood, FL
Mattay VS, Callicott JH, Bertolino A, Heaton I, Frank JA, Coppola R, Berman KF, Goldberg TE, Weinberger DR (2000) Effects of dextroamphetamine on cognitive performance and cortical activation. Neuroimage 12:268–275
Mattay VS, Goldberg TE, Fera F, Hariri AR, Tessitore A, Egan MF, Kolachana B, Callicott JH, Weinberger DR (2003) Catechol O-methyltransferase val158-met genotype and individual variation in the brain response to amphetamine. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 100:6186–6191
McGurk SR, Meltzer HY (2000) The role of cognition in vocational functioning in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 45:175–184
McGurk SR, Mueser KT (2004) Cognitive functioning, symptoms, and work in supported employment: a review and heuristic model. Schizophr Res 70:147–173
McGurk SR, Mueser KT, Feldman K, Wolfe R, Pascaris A (2007a) Cognitive training for supported employment: 2–3 year outcomes of a randomized controlled trial. Am J Psychiatry 164:437–441. doi:10.1176/appi.ajp. 164.3.437
McGurk SR, Twamley EW, Sitzer DI, McHugo GJ, Mueser KT (2007b) A meta-analysis of cognitive remediation in schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 164:1791–1802
McGurk SR, Mueser KT, DeRosa TJ, Wolfe R (2009) Work, recovery, and comorbidity in schizophrenia: a randomized controlled trial of cognitive remediation. Schizophr Bull 35:319–335
Medalia A, Choi J (2009) Cognitive remediation in schizophrenia. Neuropsychol Rev 19:353–364
Medalia A, Richardson R (2005) What predicts a good response to cognitive remediation interventions? Schizophr Bull 31:942–953. doi:10.1093/schbul/sbi045
Mehta MA, Owen AM, Sahakian BJ, Mavaddat N, Pickard JD, Robbins TW (2000) Methylphenidate enhances working memory by modulating discrete frontal and parietal lobe regions in the human brain. J Neurosci 20:1–6
Mehta MA, Swainson R, Gogilvie AD, Sahakian BJ, Robbins TW (2001) Improved short-term spatial memory but impaired reversal learning following the dopamine D2 agonist bromocriptine in human volunteers. Psychopharmacology 159:10–20
Mueser KT, Bellack AS, Douglas MS, Wade JH (1991) Prediction of social skill acquisition in schizophrenic and major affective disorder patients from memory and symptomatology. Psychiatry Res 37:281–296
Müller U, von Cramon Y, Pollmann S (1998) D1- versus D2-receptor modulation of visuospatial working memory in humans. J Neurosci 18:2720–2728
Nuechterlein KH, Green MF, Kern RS, Baade LE, Barch DM, Cohen JD, Essock S, Fenton WS, Frese FJ 3rd, Gold JM, Goldberg T, Heaton RK, Keefe RS, Kraemer H, Mesholam-Gately R, Seidman LJ, Stover E, Weinberger DR, Young AS, Zalcman S, Marder SR (2008) The MATRICS consensus cognitive battery: part 1. Test selection, reliability, and validity. Am J Psychiatry 165:203–213
Parnas AS, Weber M, Richardson R (2005) Effects of multiple exposures to D-cycloserine on extinction of conditioned fear in rats. Neurobiol Learn Mem 83:224–231
Patil ST, Zhang L, Martenyi F, Lowe SL, Jackson KA, Andreev BV, Avedisova AS, Bardenstein LM, Gurovich IY, Morozova MA, Mosolov SN, Neznanov NG, Reznik AM, Smulevich AB, Tochilov VA, Johnson BG, Monn JA, Schoepp DD (2007) Activation of mGlu2/3 receptors as a new approach to treat schizophrenia: a randomized phase 2 clinical trial. Nat Med 13:1102–1107
Penn DL, Meyer PS, Evans E, Wirth RJ, Cai K, Burchinal M (2009) A randomized controlled trial of group cognitive-behavioral therapy vs. enhanced supportive therapy for auditory hallucinations. Schizophr Res 109:52–59
Pilling S, Bebbington P, Kuipers E, Garety P, Geddes J, Martindale B, Orbach G, Morgan C (2002) Psychological treatments in schizophrenia: II. Meta-analyses of randomized controlled trials of social skills training and cognitive remediation. Psychol Med 32:783–791

Porto PR, Oliveira L, Mari J, Volchan E, Figueira I, Ventura P (2009) Does cognitive behavioral therapy change the brain? A systematic review of neuroimaging in anxiety disorders. J Neuropsychiatry Clin Neurosci 21:114–125. doi:10.1176/appi.neuropsych.21.2.114

Quartermain D, Mower J, Rafferty MF, Herting RL, Lanthorn TH (1994) Acute but not chronic activation of the NMDA-coupled glycine receptor with D-cycloserine facilitates learning and retention. Eur J Pharmacol 257:7–12

Quednow BB, Wagner M, Mössner R, Maier W, Kühn KU (2010) Sensorimotor gating of schizophrenia patients depends on catechol O-Methyltransferase Val158Met polymorphism. Schizophr Bull 36:341–346

Reichenberg A, Harvey PD (2007) Neuropsychological impairments in schizophrenia: Integration of performance-based and brain imaging findings. Psychol Bull 133:833–858. doi:10.1037/0033-2909.133.5.833

Ressler KJ, Rothbaum BO, Tannenbaum L, Anderson P, Graap K, Zimand E, Hodges L, Davis M (2004) Cognitive enhancers as adjuncts to psychotherapy: use of D-cycloserine in phobic individuals to facilitate extinction of fear. Arch Gen Psychiatry 61:1136–1144

Rice DP (2009) The economic impact of schizophrenia. J Clin Psychiatry 60(Suppl 1):4–6, discussion 28–30

Roberts RC, Roche JK, Conley RR, Lahti AC (2009) Dopaminergic synapses in the caudate of subjects with schizophrenia: relationship to treatment response. Synapse 63:520–530

Rogawski MA, Wenk GL (2003) The neuropharmacological basis for the use of memantine in the treatment of Alzheimer's disease. CNS Drug Rev 9:275–308

Roussos P, Giakoumaki SG, Bitsios P (2009) Tolcapone effects on gating, working memory, and mood interact with the synonymous catechol-O-methyltransferase rs4818c/g polymorphism. Biol Psychiatry 66:997–1004

Saxena S, Gorbis E, O'Neill J, Baker SK, Mandelkern MA, Maidment KM, Chang S, Salamon N, Brody AL, Schwartz JM, London ED (2009) Rapid effects of brief intensive cognitive-behavioral therapy on brain glucose metabolism in obsessive-compulsive disorder. Mol Psychiatry 14:197–205. doi:10.1038/sj.mp. 4002134

Schwartz JM, Stoessel PW, Baxter LR, Martin KM, Phelps ME (1996) Systematic changes in cerebral glucose metabolic rate after successful behavior modification treatment of obsessive-compulsive disorder. Arch Gen Psychiatry 53:109–113

Sellwood W, Wittkowski A, Tarrier N, Barrowclough C (2007) Needs-based cognitive-behavioural family intervention for patients suffering from schizophrenia: 5-year follow-up of a randomized controlled effectiveness trial. Acta Psychiatr Scand 116:447–452

Siegel BV, Trestman RL, O'Faithbheartaigh S, Mitropoulou V, Amin F, Kirrane R, Silverman J, Schmeidler J, Keefe RS, Siever LJ (1996) D-Amphetamine challenge effects on Wisconsin Card Sort Test. Performance in schizotypal personality disorder. Schizophr Res 20:29–32

Silbersweig DA, Stern E, Frith C, Cahill C, Holmes A, Grootoonk S, Seaward J, McKenna P, Chua SE, Schnorr L, Jones T, Frackowiak RSJ (1995) A functional neuroanatomy of hallucinations in schizophrenia. Nature 378:176–179

Sweet RA, Bergen SE, Sun Z, Marcsisin MJ, Sampson AR, Lewis DA (2007) Anatomical evidence of impaired feedforward auditory processing in schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 61:854–864

Sweet RA, Henteleff RA, Zhang W, Sampson AR, Lewis DA (2009) Reduced dendritic spine density in auditory cortex of subjects with schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 34:374–389

Swerdlow NR (1996) Cortico-striatal substrates of cognitive, motor and sensory gating: Speculations and implications for psychological function and dysfunction. In: Panksepp J (ed) Advances in biological psychiatry, vol 2. JAI, Greenwich, CT, pp 179–208

Swerdlow NR (2011) Are we studying and treating schizophrenia correctly? Schizophr Res 130:1–10

Swerdlow NR, Geyer MA, Braff DL (2001) Neural circuit regulation of prepulse inhibition of startle in the rat: current knowledge and future challenges. Psychopharmacology 156:194–215

Swerdlow NR, Stephany N, Shoemaker JM, Ross L, Wasserman LC, Talledo J, Auerbach PP (2002) Effects of amantadine and bromocriptine on startle and sensorimotor gating: Parametric studies and cross-species comparisons. Psychopharmacology 164:82–92

Swerdlow NR, Light GA, Cadenhead KS, Sprock J, Hsieh MH, Braff DL (2006a) Startle gating deficits in a large cohort of patients with schizophrenia: Relationship to medications, symptoms, neurocognition, and level of function. Arch Gen Psychiatry 63:1325–1335

Swerdlow NR, Talledo J, Sutherland AN, Nagy D, Shoemaker JM (2006b) Antipsychotic effects on prepulse inhibition in normal 'low gating' humans and rats. Neuropsychopharmacology 31:2011–2021

Swerdlow NR, Weber M, Qu Y, Light GA, Braff DL (2008) Realistic expectations of prepulse inhibition in translational models for schizophrenia research. Psychopharmacology 199:331–388

Swerdlow NR, Lelham SA, Sutherland Owens AN, Chang WL, Sassen SDT, Talledo JA (2009a) Pramipexole effects on startle gating in rats and normal men. Psychopharmacology 205:689–698

Swerdlow NR, van Bergeijk DP, Bergsma F, Weber E, Talledo J (2009b) The effects of memantine on prepulse inhibition. Neuropsychopharmacology 34:1854–1864

Swerdlow NR, Light GA, Thanam S, Slater A, Talledo JA (2010) Memantine and amphetamine effects on neurocognition and sensorimotor gating in healthy subjects. Abstract, American College of Neuropsychopharmacology (ACNP), December 5–9

Swerdlow NR, Talledo JA, Kei J, Thanam S, Lamb SN, Light GA (2011) Amphetamine effects on MATRICS performance in healthy adults: Prelude to a genetic analysis. Abstract, American College of Neuropsychopharmacology (ACNP), December 4–8

Tai S, Turkington D (2009) The evolution of cognitive behavior therapy for schizophrenia: current practice and recent developments. Schizophr Bull 35:865–873

Talledo JA, Sutherland Owens AN, Schortinghuis T, Swerdlow NR (2009) Amphetamine effects on startle gating in normal women and female rats. Psychopharmacology 204:165–175

Taub E, Uswatte G, Elbert T (2002) New treatments in neurorehabilitation founded on basic research. Nat Rev Neurosci 3:228–236

Turetsky BI, Calkins ME, Light GA, Olincy A, Radant AD, Swerdlow NR (2007) Neurophysiological endophenotypes of schizophrenia: the viability of selected candidate measures. Schizophr Bull 33:69–94

Twamley EW, Narvaez JM, Becker DR, Bartels SJ, Jeste DV (2008a) Supported employment for middle-aged and older people with schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatr Rehabil 11:76–89

Twamley EW, Savla GN, Zurhellen CH, Heaton RK, Jeste DV (2008b) Development and pilot testing of a novel compensatory cognitive training intervention for people with psychosis. Am J Psychiatr Rehabil 11:144–163

Twamley EW, Burton CZ, Vella L (2011) Compensatory cognitive training for psychosis: who benefits? Who stays in treatment? Schizophr Bull 37(Suppl 2):S55–S62. doi:10.1093/schbul/sbr059

Uhlhaas PJ, Singer W (2006) Neural synchrony in brain disorders: relevance for cognitive dysfunctions and pathophysiology. Neuron 52:155–168

Urban N, Abi-Dargham A (2010) Neurochemical imaging in schizophrenia. In: Swerdlow NR (ed) Behavioral neurobiology of schizophrenia and its treatment. Current topics in behavioral neuroscience. Springer, Heidelberg, pp 215–242

van der Linden D, Massar SA, Schellekens AF, Ellenbroek BA, Verkes RJ (2006) Disrupted sensorimotor gating due to mental fatigue: preliminary evidence. Int J Psychophysiol 62:168–174

Volk DW, Lewis DA (2010) Prefrontal cortical circuits in schizophrenia. In: Swerdlow NR (ed) Behavioral neurobiology of schizophrenia and its treatment. Current topics in behavioral neuroscience. Springer, Heidelberg, pp 485–508

Vollenweider FX, Barro M, Csomor PA, Feldon J (2006) Clozapine enhances prepulse inhibition in healthy humans with low but not with high prepulse inhibition levels. Biol Psychiatry 60:597–603

Volz H, Gaser C, Hager F, Rzanny R, Ponisch J, Mentzel H, Kaiser WA, Sauer H (1999) Decreased frontal activation in schizophrenics during stimulation with the Continuous Performance Test—a functional magnetic resonance imaging study. Eur Psychiatry 14:17–24

Weike AI, Bauer U, Hamm AO (2000) Effective neuroleptic medication removes prepulse inhibition deficits in schizophrenia patients. Biol Psychiatry 47:61–70

Willenborg B, Schmoller A, Caspary J, Melchert UH, Scholand-Engler HG, Jauch-Chara K, Hohagen F, Schweiger U, Oltmanns KM (2011) Memantine prevents hypoglycemia-induced decrements of the cerebral energy status in healthy subjects. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 96: E384–E388

Wong D, Wagner H, Tune L, Dannals RF, Pearlson GD, Links JM, Tamminga CA, Broussolle EP, Ravert HT, Wilson AA, Toung JK, Malat J, Williams JA, O'Tuama LA, Snyder SH, Kuhar MJ, Gjedde A (1986) Positron emission tomography reveals elevated D2 dopamine receptors in drug-naive schizophrenics. Science 234:1558–1563

Wonodi I, Cassady SL, Adami H, Avila M, Thaker GK (2006) Effects of repeated amphetamine administration on antisaccade in schizophrenia spectrum personality. Psychiatry Res 141:237–245

Wykes T, Sturt E, Katz R (1990) The prediction of rehabilitative success after three years. The use of social, symptom and cognitive variables. Br J Psychiatry 157:865–870

Wykes T, Huddy V, Cellard C, McGurk SR, Czobor P (2011) A meta-analysis of cognitive remediation for schizophrenia: methodology and effect sizes. Am J Psychiatry 168:472–485. doi:10.1176/appi.ajp. 2010.10060855

Wynn JK, Sugar C, Horan WP, Kern R, Green MF (2010) Mismatch negativity, social cognition, and functioning in schizophrenia patients. Biol Psychiatry 67:940–947

Zdanys K, Tampi RR (2008) A systematic review of off-label uses of memantine for psychiatric disorders. Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry 32:1362–1374

# Mutant Mouse Models in Evaluating Novel Approaches to Antipsychotic Treatment

**Colm M.P. O'Tuathaigh, Lieve Desbonnet, and John L. Waddington**

## Contents



C.M.P. O'Tuathaigh (✉)
Molecular and Cellular Therapeutics, Royal College of Surgeons in Ireland, Dublin 2, Ireland

School of Medicine, University College Cork, Cork, Ireland
e-mail: c.otuathaigh@ucc.ie

L. Desbonnet • J.L. Waddington
Molecular and Cellular Therapeutics, Royal College of Surgeons in Ireland, Dublin 2, Ireland

M.A. Geyer and G. Gross (eds.), *Novel Antischizophrenia Treatments*,
Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 213,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-25758-2_5, 

**Abstract** In this review we consider the application of mutant mouse phenotypes to the study of psychotic illness in general and schizophrenia in particular, as they relate to behavioral, psychopharmacological, and cellular phenotypes of putative import for antipsychotic drug development. Mutant models appear to be heuristic at two main levels; firstly, by indicating the functional roles of neuronal components thought to be of relevance to the putative pathobiology of psychotic illness, they help resolve overt behavioral and underlying cellular processes regulated by those neuronal components; secondly, by indicating the functional roles of genes associated with risk for psychotic illness, they help resolve overt behavioral and underlying cellular processes regulated by those risk genes. We focus initially on models of dopaminergic and glutamatergic dysfunction. Then, we consider advances in the genetics of schizophrenia and mutant models relating to replicable risk genes. Lastly, we extend this discussion by exemplifying two new variant approaches in mutant mice that may serve as prototypes for advancing antipsychotic drug development. There is continuing need not only to address numerous technical challenges but also to develop more "real-world" paradigms that reflect the milieu of gene × environment and gene × gene interactions that characterize psychotic illness and its response to antipsychotic drugs.

**Keywords** Mutant mice • Gene disruption • Phenotypic evaluation • Psychosis • Schizophrenia • Antipsychotic drug discovery

## 1 Introduction

Over the past decade, mutant mice with deletion of a given gene (knockout, KO), reduced expression of a given gene (knockdown), insertion of a mutated mouse gene (knockin), or insertion of a gene from another organism (transgenics) have evolved to play an increasing role in the study of psychotic illness, primarily in relation to schizophrenia. They have done so at two main levels; firstly, by indicating the phenotypic roles of neuronal components thought to be of relevance to the putative pathobiology of psychotic illness, often in the absence of pharmacological or other tools with which they can be manipulated, they help resolve overt behavioral and underlying cellular processes regulated by those neuronal components; secondly, by indicating the phenotypic roles of genes associated with risk for psychotic illness, often in terms of the neuronal systems in which they are expressed, they help resolve overt

behavioral and underlying cellular processes regulated by those risk genes (Laporte et al. 2008; Desbonnet et al. 2009; Arguello and Gogos 2010; Kirby et al. 2010; van den Buuse 2010; O'Tuathaigh and Waddington 2010; O'Tuathaigh et al. 2012).

In mutant mice these constructions are most commonly *constitutive*, i.e., present and immutable from conception, but increasingly *conditional*, whereby the gene manipulation is to varying extent under the temporal and/or spatial control of the investigator. While mice remain the primary species for construction of mutants, including an increasing array of advanced *conditional* techniques, availability of mutant rats is increasing and transgenic nonhuman primates continue to emerge (Gama Sosa et al. 2010; Tanaka et al. 2010).

Though understanding of the pathobiology of psychotic illness continues to increase, it remains at a relatively superficial level and has yet to lead to major advances in the development of novel antipsychotics. This impasse reflects heightened uncertainty as to (1) current concepts of psychosis, for example, on a dimensional basis *vis-à-vis* categorical diagnoses such as schizophrenia and its psychopathological, genetic, and pathobiological overlap with bipolar disorder and other forms of psychotic illness (Insel 2010; Carpenter 2011; Waddington et al. 2012) and (2) current concepts of antipsychotic activity, for example, effectiveness against "all" the psychopathological dimensions of psychosis *vis-à-vis* directed against one or more specific domain(s) of psychopathology (Gründer et al. 2009; Waddington et al. 2011). These challenges are exacerbated by current theories that posit schizophrenia as a disorder not of a single neurotransmitter or brain region but, rather, of network disconnectivity, most likely of developmental origin (Meyer-Lindenberg 2010; Waddington et al. 2012; see Bespalov et al. 2012).

Over recent years, several new antipsychotic drugs have become available, but in essence they constitute variants of established dopaminergic–serotonergic mechanisms (see Meltzer 2012) or alternative biopharmaceutical formulations of existing agents (see Siegel and Rabin 2012) such that none justifies the commercial appellation of a "third-generation" antipsychotic (Waddington et al. 2011). For the one agent having a putative novel, glutamatergic mechanism, studies in mutant mice played a role in its development, as will be described further below (Fell et al. 2008; see Sect. 3.3). However, while initial studies indicated antipsychotic efficacy in schizophrenia in the relative absence of typical antipsychotic side effects (Patil et al. 2007), this agent has encountered difficulties in (1) replicating these initial findings in more extensive clinical trials (Kinon et al. 2011) and (2) clarifying interactions with dopamine (DA) receptors (Seeman and Guan 2009; Fell et al. 2009).

## *1.1 Modeling the Symptoms of Psychotic Illness in Mice*

Diagnostic symptoms of psychotic illness commonly emerge during adolescence or early adulthood; these include positive symptoms (i.e., hallucinations, delusions, and thought disorder), negative symptoms (e.g., avolition, anhedonia, blunted

affect, poverty of speech, and social withdrawal), and cognitive dysfunction (e.g., impairments in working memory, executive function, and attention). The disorder is characterized by variability in clinical presentation, age at onset of psychotic symptoms, course of illness, and functional outcome. Furthermore, its complex developmental trajectory, comprising early neurodevelopmental impairments, followed by a subtle pattern of functional deficits throughout childhood and adolescence, with the full-blown disorder emerging only in early adulthood (Insel 2010; Waddington et al. 2012), greatly exacerbates the challenge of modeling this disorder at a preclinical level.

Given that several positive symptoms, including hallucinations and delusions, as well as negative symptoms (notably poverty of speech and possibly avolition) are either uniquely human or, at least, inaccessible in animals, generating suitable behavioral models with putative construct validity is a considerable undertaking (Low and Hardy 2007; Young et al. 2009; Kirby et al. 2010; Papaleo et al. 2012; see Feldon 2012). Preclinical models of positive symptoms, reviewed in detail elsewhere (Van den Buuse et al. 2009; see Feldon 2012), have relied on indirect dopamine (DA)-linked measures, such as novelty- and psychostimulant-induced hyperactivity, or information processing paradigms such as prepulse inhibition (PPI) or latent inhibition (LI), measures of sensorimotor gating and learned inattention, respectively, processes that are disturbed in schizophrenia (Moser et al. 2000; Barak and Weiner 2011). The latter phenomena have been hypothesized to measure defective salience attribution processes, which may underlie the emergence of psychopathological features such as hallucinations and delusions (Heinz and Schlagenhauf 2010).

Phenotypic modeling of negative symptoms has focused primarily on a selected range of behaviors that apply to, and are accessible in, both humans and animals, i.e., social interaction deficits and, to a lesser extent, anhedonia (O'Tuathaigh and Waddington 2010).

Although the exact nature of the cognitive disturbance(s) present in schizophrenia is still an ongoing source of debate (Insel 2010), there is agreement that particular domains of cognitive dysfunction are found in the disorder. A consortium of academic institutions and private companies, with support from the National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH), established the Measurement and Treatment Research to Improve Cognition in Schizophrenia (MATRICS) program in order to create a consensus set of cognitive domains that are affected and may be targeted by putative treatments in patients with schizophrenia (Marder and Fenton 2004; see Keefe and Harvey 2012). MATRICS identified the following seven areas of impairment: attention/vigilance; working memory; reasoning and problem solving; processing speed; visual learning and memory; verbal learning and memory; and social cognition. Alongside subsequent working groups, Cognitive Neuroscience Treatment Research to Improve Cognition in Schizophrenia (CNTRICS) and Treatment Units for Research on Neurocognition in Schizophrenia (TURNS), these attempts to operationalize a small number of neurocognitive features have been accompanied by increasing recognition of the need to develop animal analogues of tasks assessing these core domains (Young et al. 2009). Several recent

comprehensive reviews have explored the relative merits or otherwise of the various domain measures currently employed in mouse studies of cognitive dysfunction relevant to psychosis (Kellendonk et al. 2009; Arguello and Gogos 2010; Papaleo et al. 2012; Young et al. 2012a, b).

## 1.2 Establishing the Validity of Preclinical Models of Antipsychotic Drug Action

Psychopharmacological validation of preclinical models of schizophrenia using existing antipsychotic drugs has been largely restricted to behaviors linked with positive symptoms, or behaviors predictive of antipsychotic effects on positive symptoms (e.g., conditioned avoidance responding).

This focus is due to the fact that negative and particularly cognitive symptoms have proven resistant to both first- and second-generation antipsychotic drugs (Waddington et al. 2011). This limiting factor to establishing predictive validity is particularly important in the case of cognition, given that severity of cognitive deficits has been linked to various functional outcomes, including forming relationships, gaining employment, treatment adherence, and psychotic relapse (see Keefe and Harvey 2012).

## 1.3 Mutant Mouse Models of Psychosis

The majority of studies considered in this review have been conducted using mutant mice with gene KO or, less commonly, knockin/transgenics. The strengths of this mutant approach lie in a degree of molecular specificity not usually achievable using pharmacological agents, as well as the ability to vary gene dosage, most commonly via heterozygous vs. homozygous mutants. The limitations associated with constitutive mutants are well documented, including potential induction of compensatory mechanisms, redundancy, and the fact that homozygous mutation of many neurodevelopmental genes associated with increased risk for mental illness results in embryonic or perinatal lethality (Desbonnet et al. 2009; Kirby et al. 2010). Conditional mutants, by providing greater control over the induction and region specificity of the mutation, is a powerful approach for modeling disorders that involve neurodevelopmental perturbation, such as schizophrenia. However, some authors have noted that the etiological validity of certain mutant models may be questioned on the basis that certain human genes (or splice variants) implicated in schizophrenia may not have murine homologues (Arguello and Gogos 2006; Low and Hardy 2007; Papaleo et al. 2012). Additionally, functional variants have not been identified for several genes associated with schizophrenia, precluding any attempt to generate a model with direct clinical relevance to the role of the gene in the disorder. Thus, many mutant studies constitute investigation of the functional roles of genes associated with risk for psychosis, rather than homologous or isomorphic models of psychotic illness itself.

In the present chapter, we consider the application of mutant phenotypes to the study of psychotic illness in general and schizophrenia in particular, as they relate to behavioral, psychopharmacological, and, to the extent known or presumed, cellular and molecular endophenotypes. Our initial focus is on models of dopaminergic (DAergic) and glutamatergic dysfunction; we then consider advances in the genetics of schizophrenia as they relate to mutant models and then extend this discussion to two new, variant approaches to antipsychotic drug action in mutant mice.

## 2 Mutant Models of Dopaminergic Neurotransmission: Relevance to Psychosis and Antipsychotic Activity

### *2.1 Dopamine Receptor Subtypes*

These studies are predicated on enduring evidence for DAergic hyperfunction as a substrate for psychosis and for DA receptor antagonism thereof as the only mechanism common to all clinically used antipsychotic drugs, with the $D_2$ receptor posited to have a primary role in these processes (Tost et al. 2010; Waddington et al. 2011; see Kuepper et al. 2012; Kapur and Ginovart 2012).

Constitutive KO approaches have been used to study the role of DA receptor subtypes in behaviors thought to be relevant to schizophrenia or to elucidate mechanisms underlying the actions of psychotomimetic and antipsychotic drugs (Waddington et al. 2005). The psychotomimetic amphetamine has been shown to disrupt sensorimotor gating in the PPI paradigm in $D_1$, $D_3$, and $D_4$ KO but not in $D_2$ KO, suggesting that the $D_2$ receptor is essential for amphetamine-induced PPI disruption (Ralph-Williams et al. 2002; Ralph et al. 1999). In contrast, the disruptive effect on PPI of direct dopamine agonists differs as apomorphine and the $D_1$ agonist SKF82958 disrupt PPI in $D_2$ but not $D_1$ KO (Ralph-Williams et al. 2002; Ralph et al. 1999). Antipsychotic drugs enhance low levels of LI, an effect that is reproduced by $D_2$ and $D_1$ KO in females and by $D_2$ KO only in males (Bay-Richter et al. 2009), suggesting that there may be sex differences in the relative contribution of $D_1$ and $D_2$ receptors to LI and suggesting one potential route by which antipsychotic drugs exert their behavioral effects.

The $D_2$ receptor has two isoforms, long ($D_{2L}$) and short ($D_{2S}$), derived from alternative splicing. While studies in isoform-selective KO suggest that the $D_{2L}$ isoform may be more important for antipsychotic drug action (Xu et al. 2002), systematic comparisons of effects in behavioral paradigms more specific to schizophrenia have yet to be reported.

Given the rich density of $D_1$ receptors in the prefrontal cortex (PFC), an area implicated in cognitive processes such as working memory and executive functions known to be disrupted in schizophrenia (see Keefe and Harvey 2012), it is not surprising that $D_1$ KO show deficits in spatial working memory and reversal learning (El-Ghundi et al. 1999, 2001; Holmes et al. 2004). The $D_2$ receptor may

also be important in set-shifting and reversal learning; $D_2$ KO show impairment in adjusting responding to previously reinforced stimuli when unexpected outcomes are encountered and both $D_2$ KO and antipsychotic drugs (e.g., haloperidol) have recently been shown to produce a similar reversal learning deficits in a set-shifting paradigm (Kruzich and Grandy 2004; DeSteno and Schmauss 2008). $D_2$ and $D_3$ KO also show deficits in spatial working memory (Glickstein et al. 2002; Karasinska et al. 2000).

## *2.2 DAergic Hyperfunction*

In terms of modeling DAergic hyperfunction, mice with KO of the DA transporter (DAT) show hyperactivity and deficits in PPI that are reversible by acute administration of both first- and second-generation antipsychotic drugs (Barr et al. 2004; Powell et al. 2008). In contrast, the glycine transporter-1 (GlyT1; see Sect. 3.1) antagonist SSR103800 failed to reverse spontaneous hyperactivity in DAT KO (Boulay et al. 2010), suggesting that the DAT KO may be useful for detecting the DA modifying effects of antipsychotic drugs. DAT KO show impairments in social interaction (Rodriguiz et al. 2004; Tillerson et al. 2006; Gainetdinov 2008). However, they fail to develop a more positive bias towards a hedonically positive tastant (Costa et al. 2007) and mutants with DAT knockdown [i.e., retaining >10% of the level in wild types (WT)] show no change in responsivity for sucrose reward in a sucrose consumption task (Cagniard et al. 2006). On this basis, the role of DAergic hyperfunction consequent to impairment DAT function in modeling the domain of negative symptoms remains unclear.

Alternative approaches to generate DAT-deficient mice have involved administration of local injections of small interfering RNA (siRNA) into the ventral tegmental/substantia nigra region of the brain, with consequent induction of a 40 % reduction in DAT expression. Although novelty-induced locomotor hyperactivity was largely unaffected in these mice, they also exhibited a blunted locomotor response to amphetamine (Salahpour et al. 2007). Among other new technological developments, the use of in vivo siRNA to develop mouse models with deficiency of target gene products may represent a complementary tool to conventional KO for the analysis of gene function in relation to psychosis and antipsychotic drug action.

Most recently, knockin mutants with conditional overexpression of subcortical $D_2$ receptors, to model DAergic hyperfunction, have been reported to show impairments in PFC function, including deficits in working memory, behavioral flexibility, and conditional associative learning, together with evidence suggestive of avolition in terms of reduced incentive motivation; interestingly, given that overexpression of $D_2$ receptors was accompanied by overexpression of 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptors, this putative motivational deficit was not influenced by the $D_2$ antagonist antipsychotic haloperidol but was ameliorated by the 5-$HT_{2C}$ antagonist SB24280 (Simpson et al. 2011). Such studies remain heuristic but indicate the potentiality of mutant studies to identify novel and tractable targets for antipsychotic drug discovery.

## 2.3 DA Signaling Components

The absence of strong supportive data linking genes regulating monoaminergic transmission with increased risk for schizophrenia may suggest that the therapeutic efficacy of existing antipsychotics, largely based on actions at DA and/or 5-HT receptors, is related to amelioration of dysfunctional cellular processes already initiated by genetic, epigenetic, and environmental factors in schizophrenia (Beaulieu 2012).

This hypothesis has led some studies to focus on intermediate cellular modulators. While this development has resulted in the identification of putative drug targets, it has yet to indicate a specific role in antipsychotic activity per se (Karam et al. 2010; Beaulieu 2012). AKT1 and its interacting signaling partner glycogen synthase kinase-3 (GSK-3) have been implicated in diverse neural functions; in addition to acting as key signaling molecules downstream of $D_2$ receptors, with involvement in the regulation of DA-dependent behaviors (Beaulieu et al. 2004, 2005; Lai et al. 2006), they are involved in NMDA receptor (NMDAR) signaling and dendritic development. Postmortem studies have shown a reduction in AKT1 and phosphorylated GSK-3β protein levels in the brains of patients with schizophrenia (Emamian et al. 2004).

Studies comparing male and female Akt1-deficient mice indicated disruption of PPI in female mutants, accompanied by morphological changes in apical and basal dendrites of pyramidal neurons in the auditory cortex (Chen and Lai 2011); this was evident in the absence of functional hearing deficit, as indicated by intact performance in an auditory trace conditioning task and intact acoustic startle response. Additionally, it was shown that this disruption of PPI could be partially reversed by GSK-3 inhibitors but not by the antipsychotic drugs raclopride and clozapine. The reported efficacy of these inhibitors supports the involvement of GSK-3 in schizophrenia and suggests a potential therapeutic effect of GSK-3 inhibitors. In contrast, male AKT1 KO did not show sensorimotor gating deficits or behavioral alterations related to anxiety/depression or cognition (Emamian et al. 2004; Lai et al. 2006; Chen and Lai 2011).

The catechol-*O*-methyltransferase (COMT) gene, located on chromosome 22q11, encodes the COMT enzyme that plays a key role in regulating DA availability in PFC (Seamans and Yang 2004; Tunbridge et al. 2006). The human COMT gene contains a common functional polymorphism [valine (Val) substitution for methionine (Met)] at the 158/108 locus, with two variants (Val and Met) corresponding to high and low COMT enzymatic activity, respectively. COMT Val108Met allelic variation has been associated with differential performance on tasks measuring PFC-mediated cognition; individuals homozygous for the Met allele display increased PFC DA levels and the highest performance in these tasks, Val/Met individuals are intermediate, and individuals homozygous for the Val allele display reduced PFC DA levels and the lowest performance (Tunbridge et al. 2006). Despite being located on chromosome 22q11, a region linked with psychosis, clinical genetic data have failed to demonstrate a robust and consistent

association between COMT gene variants and risk for schizophrenia (Craddock et al. 2006; Munafò et al. 2005), though contemporary analysis suggests that COMT genotype may be associated with a cognitive endophenotype (Tunbridge et al. 2006; Williams et al. 2007).

While no gross changes in locomotor activity have been observed (Gogos et al. 1998), COMT KO demonstrated a unique exploratory phenotype (Babovic et al. 2007) in the absence of disruption to sociability and social novelty preference (Babovic et al. 2008); however, heterozygous COMT mutants showed increased aggression in a resident intruder test (Gogos et al. 1998). COMT KO exhibit sex-specific improvement in spatial working memory (Babovic et al. 2008; Papaleo et al. 2008), while COMT transgenics with overexpression of a human COMT-Val polymorphism exhibit deficits in attentional behavior, working memory, and recognition memory; amphetamine disrupted recognition memory in WT but ameliorated recognition memory in COMT-Val transgenics, providing support for an inverted-U relationship between extent of PFC-mediated DAergic transmission and cognitive function (Seamans and Yang 2004; Tunbridge et al. 2006).

## 3 Mutant Models of Glutamatergic Neurotransmission: Relevance to Psychosis and Antipsychotic Activity

These studies in mutant mice are predicated on evidence for glutamatergic hypofunction as a substrate for psychosis and for glutamatergic agents as putative antipsychotic agents, with the NMDAR considered to have a primary but non-exclusive role in these processes (Inta et al. 2010; see Coyle et al. 2012, and Conn et al. this volume).

### *3.1 NMDA Receptors*

Several lines of evidence support the NMDAR dysfunction model. Firstly, NMDAR hypofunction via pharmacological challenge with NMDAR antagonists [e.g., MK-801, phencyclidine (PCP)] has been shown to mimic schizophrenia symptoms in normal individuals, as well as worsen symptoms in patients with schizophrenia. Secondly, there is some evidence to indicate changes in NMDAR binding and expression in the brains of patients with schizophrenia, although the strength of these data has been questioned (Nestler and Hyman 2010). Thirdly, functional characterization of the role of candidate risk genes (e.g., DISC1, dysbindin, NRG1; see Sect. 4) has indicated that they may converge upon NMDAR expression and/or activation, although a plausible mechanistic explanation of how these systems might interact has not yet been articulated. Similarly, early life exposure to phencyclidine has been shown to alter cortical, but not hippocampal, expression of the schizophrenia-associated protein NRG1/ErbB4 throughout development (du Bois et al. 2012).

Hypomorphic mutants with 90 % reduction in the NR1 subunit of the NMDAR display abnormalities across several schizophrenia-related domains (Mohn et al. 1999; Duncan et al. 2004). The mutant phenotype is characterized by decreased responsivity to PCP and MK-801, hyperactivity in a novel environment, and deficits in PPI and social interactions (Mohn et al. 1999; Fradley et al. 2005; Duncan et al. 2006); the NR1 hyperactivity phenotype was reversed by both haloperidol and clozapine, while only clozapine partially ameliorated social deficits (Mohn et al. 1999). It is, however, unclear whether PPI deficits observed in this line are reversible by antipsychotic treatment; in one study, clozapine and quetiapine enhanced PPI (Duncan et al. 2006), while another failed to show any difference following acute clozapine administration (Fradley et al. 2005).

Another NMDAR mutant line, involving deletion of the NR1-associated NR2A (GluR1) subunit, exhibited hyperactivity that was reversed by haloperidol and risperidone; this hyperactivity was accompanied by augmented DA metabolism in striatum and PFC, as well as deficits in spatial and latent learning (Miyamoto et al. 2001).

Glycine acts at an accessory site necessary for NMDAR function; thus, glycine and glycinergic agents facilitate NMDA-mediated transmission (see Javitt 2012). Two mutant lines carrying point mutations in the NMDAR glycine binding site, Grin1(D481N) and Grin1(K483Q), have been described, which exhibit 5- and 86-fold reductions in glycine receptor affinity, respectively (Ballard et al. 2002). Grin1(D481N) mutants display hyperactivity in a novel environment that is not reversible by antipsychotic administration (Ballard et al. 2002). These mutants also showed decreased sociability that was reversed by administration of D-serine, a selective agonist for the NR1 glycine site, or, to a lesser extent, clozapine, together with cognitive deficits, including abnormalities in spatial learning and memory and in spatial recognition (Labrie et al. 2008). Heterozygous Grin1 mice containing both the D481 and K483Q mutation displayed deficits in long-term potentiation in the hippocampus that was rescued by administration of D-serine (Ballard et al. 2002).

Mice deficient in serine racemase, an NMDAR modulator, show disruption of PPI, sociability, and spatial discrimination; each of these deficits was ameliorated by acute administration of clozapine (Labrie et al. 2009).

NMDAR signaling component dysfunction implicated in schizophrenia also includes the glial glutamate and aspartate transporter (GLAST), which has been shown to be differentially expressed in the dorsolateral PFC, anterior cingulate cortex, and thalamus in postmortem brains from patients with schizophrenia (Smith et al. 2001; Bauer et al. 2008). GLAST KO display hyperactivity in a novel environment that is attenuated by haloperidol, increased locomotor responsivity to MK-801, and impaired sociability (Karlsson et al. 2008, 2009).

Partial knockout of the NMDAR signaling molecule SynGAP in mice is associated with hyperactivity in the open field that is partially ameliorated by clozapine, as well as reduced sensitivity to the locomotor stimulatory effects of MK-801 (Guo et al. 2009); SynGAP mutants also evidence intact sociability but impaired response to social novelty, disrupted PPI with enhanced startle reactivity, and deficits in spatial working memory but not in recognition memory

(Guo et al. 2009; Muhia et al. 2010). Cognitive deficits in this mutant were accompanied by a reduction in calbindin-positive interneurons in the hippocampus and double cortin-positive neurons in the dentate gyrus; this suggests a hippocampal basis for the profile of impaired cognition in the SynGAP mutant (Muhia et al. 2010).

### *3.2 Vesicular Glutamate Transporters*

Vesicular glutamate transporters 1 and 2 (VGluT1 and VGluT2) are recognized markers of glutamatergic neurons that are responsible for vesicular packaging of glutamate in presynaptic axon terminals (Fremeau et al. 2001; Herzog et al. 2001). Altered VGluT1 expression has been documented in the striatum and hippocampus of patients with schizophrenia (Oni-Orisan et al. 2008) and both first-(haloperidol) and second-(clozapine, risperidone) generation antipsychotics have been shown to increase VGluT2 mRNA in thalamic nuclei (Moutsimilli et al. 2008). Heterozygous deletion of VGluT1 was associated with increased attenuation of sucrose consumption following exposure to a chronic mild stressor (Garcia-Garcia et al. 2009). Mutants with conditional, heterozygous deletion of VGluT2 in the cortex, hippocampus, and amygdala during the third postnatal week exhibited reduced social dominance in the tube test and increased sociability, as well as deficits in PPI that were partially ameliorated by the second-generation antipsychotic aripiprazole (Wallén-Mackenzie et al. 2009).

### *3.3 Non-NMDA Receptors*

Involvement of metabotropic glutamate receptors (mGluR) in the pathophysiology of schizophrenia has been considered in detail elsewhere (Krivoy et al. 2008). Mutants with AMPA $GluR_1$ KO receptor display hyperactivity in a novel environment that is reversed by haloperidol, with reduction in MK-801-induced hyperactivity and impaired PPI in association with reduced clearance of DA (Wiedholz et al. 2008). In contrast, mice lacking the GluA1 subunit demonstrated reduced social interactions in a novel environment, but other features reported were not related to schizophrenia, including increased social interactions in a familiar environment, improved operant learning, and increased impulsivity (Barkus et al. 2012).

GluR1 KO also exhibit increased novelty- or stress (injection, restraint, or forced stress)-induced hyperactivity, as well as reduced immobility in the forced swim test (Fitzgerald et al. 2010). These deficits, accompanied by reduced anxiety phenotype in the elevated plus maze, were ameliorated by chronic treatment with lithium. These authors suggest that this combination of schizophrenia-related phenotypes and affective/manic behavioral features in GluR1 KO, particularly under conditions of stress, may provide a novel model of schizoaffective disorder.

While treatment with the mGluR2/3 agonist LY2140023 was initially reported to improve both positive and negative symptoms in patients with schizophrenia (Patil et al. 2007), a recent double-blind trial failed to replicate this treatment effect (Kinon et al. 2011). In mice with simultaneous KO of mGluR2 and mGluR3, or mGluR2 alone, the ameliorative effects of the mGluR2/3 agonist LY404039 on phencyclidine and amphetamine-evoked hyperactivity were absent; the same profile was not present in mGluR3 KO, indicating that the activation of mGlu2 and not mGlu3 receptors may be responsible for the antipsychotic-like effects of LY404039 (Fell et al. 2008). In contrast, clozapine and risperidone inhibited PCP-evoked behaviors in both WT and mGluR2/3 KO. These data demonstrate that the antipsychotic-like effects of the mGluR2/3 agonist LY404039 in pharmacological models of psychosis are mechanistically distinct from those of second-generation antipsychotic drugs and may be dependent on functional mGlu2 but not mGlu3 receptors. There remains the challenge of selectivity, in terms of whether such mGlu2/3 receptor agonists do (Seeman and Guan 2008) or do not (Fell et al. 2008, 2009) also interact with $D_2$ receptors.

Examination of the behavioral phenotype of mGluR4 KO revealed impaired PPI and enhanced sensitivity to the locomotor stimulatory effects of MK-801; however, no differences were observed in relation to social behavior and spatial working memory (Sagata et al. 2010). mGluR5 KO show hyperactivity and impaired PPI that are ameliorated by clozapine in the absence of change in $D_2$ receptor binding (Brody et al. 2004; Gray et al. 2009); MK-801-induced hyperactivity was also increased in mGluR5 KO (Gray et al. 2009). In summary, the evidence from metabotropic glutamate receptor mutants would implicate this receptor family in PPI disruption.

## 4 Mutant Models Relating to Advances in the Genetics of Schizophrenia

### *4.1 Overview*

While recent genome-wide association studies (GWAS) in schizophrenia have identified a large number of candidate genes and specific risk alleles for schizophrenia, replicated findings explain only a very small fraction of heritability (Sullivan 2010; Ripke et al. 2011; Shi et al. 2011; Yue et al. 2011). Data from GWAS studies, with the failure to support several loci identified in candidate gene studies, have lead some authors to decry the absence of "one unequivocal insight" in the field (Kim et al. 2011). While acknowledging disease complexity, which is likely associated with clinical and etiological heterogeneity, the present data would suggest that schizophrenia may reflect the combined effects of a large number of common risk genes, each of small effect, together with rare variants [copy number variants (CNVs)] of large effect, neither of which confer diagnostic specificity

(Owen et al. 2011). Additional variation may reflect the contribution of epigenetic mechanisms and gene × gene (G × G), or gene × environment (G × E) interactions (see Sect. 5).

GWAS data have corroborated some existing targets (e.g., ErbB4; Shi et al. 2009) while identifying hitherto unknown targets (the MHC region, TCF4, neurogranin; MiR137; numerous rare copy number variations; see Gejman et al. (2011) for a comprehensive review of GWAS findings to date). The problem with candidate gene studies has been non-replication due to limited sample size. Similarly, clinical data have identified an overlap with bipolar disorder and, potentially, autism in terms of candidate genes. Pleiotropy has been demonstrated for a number of gene variants for common disorders, including for psychiatric disorders; for example, *ZNF804A* is associated with both schizophrenia and bipolar disorder (Hargreaves et al. 2012; Li et al. 2011; Williams et al. 2011).

Among the more replicably implicated common risk genes of small effect, both genetic and biological data indicate the following genes to be associated with increased risk for schizophrenia: *Disrupted-in-schizophrenia-1 (DISC1)*, *dysbindin* (*DTNBP1)*, and *neuregulin-1 (NRG1)*; the genetics, cell biology, and role in neurodevelopment for these genes, as they relate to mutant models for psychosis, are considered in detail elsewhere (Desbonnet et al. 2009; Kirby et al. 2010; O'Tuathaigh et al. 2011). Here, we first consider mice mutant for these three genes (Table 1), focusing on studies relating to antipsychotic activity, and then indicate additional perspectives.

## *4.2 DISC1*

Several mutant models of DISC1 gene function have been described in the literature, collectively displaying a diverse set of anatomical, behavioral, and pharmacological phenotypes relevant to several neuropsychiatric disorders, including schizophrenia and depression (Clapcote et al. 2007; Hikida et al. 2007; Li et al. 2007; Kvajo et al. 2008; Pletnikov et al. 2008; Shen et al. 2008; Mao et al. 2009).

In one of two DISC1 mutations (mutation Q31L) generated via ENU mutagenesis in exon 2 of DISC1, a depressive-like behavioral phenotype was observed, including increased immobility time in the forced swim test, decreased sucrose consumption (a putative index of anhedonia), and reduced social approach behaviors; increased immobility in the forced swim test in Q31L DISC1 mutants was reversed following treatment with the antidepressant bupropion. A second DISC1 mutation (mutation L100P) was associated with deficits in several behavioral models related to schizophrenia, including PPI, LI, and working memory, as well as displaying hyperactivity; while mild disruption of PPI and LI was also observed in Q31L DISC1 mutants, antipsychotic administration selectively reversed disruption of PPI and LI in L100P DISC1 mutants. Additionally, it has been shown that both the phosphodiesterase (PDE) 4 inhibitor rolipram and the GSK-3 inhibitor TDZD-8 synergized to reverse PPI deficits and hyperactivity in the L100P DISC1 mutant (Lipina et al. 2012).

**Table 1** Schizophrenia-related phenotypes and antipsychotic sensitivity for selected mutants

| | | | | Cognition | | Sociability | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Novelty-induced activity | Increased sensitivity to psychostimulants[a] | PPI | Working memory | Attention | Social interaction | Social novelty preference | Social aggression |
| DISC1 Q31 L | = | – | – | – | – | ↓ | – | – |
| DISC1 L100P | ↑ | – | ↓[b] | ↓ | ↓ | – | – | – |
| DISC1 Δ(2–3) | ↑(♀ only) | ↑(♀ only) | ↓ (♀ only) | – | – | ↑ | – | – |
| DISC1 (PFC) RNAi | – | ↑ | ↓[b] | ↓[b] | – | – | – | – |
| Dysbindin *sdy* | ↓/ = /↑ | – | ↓/ = /↑ | ↓ | – | ↓ | – | – |
| NRG1–TM Het | ↑[b] | ↑ | ↓ | = | – | = | ↓ | ↑ |
| NRG1 (I) OE | ↑ | – | ↓ | ↓ | – | – | – | – |
| NRG1 Ig Het | = | – | – | – | ↓[b] | – | – | – |
| ErbB4 Het | =/↑ | – | – | ↓ | – | – | – | – |
| ErbB4 PV | ↑ | – | ↓[b] | ↓ | – | – | – | – |
| STOP KO | ↑[b] | ↑ | ↓ | ↓[b] | – | ↓[b] | – | ↓ |
| Sema6A KO | ↑[b] | = | – | ↓ | – | ↑ | – | – |

↑ increased relative to wild type, ↓ decreased relative to wild type, = no difference, / separates different findings, – not reported, *PPI* prepulse inhibition, *DISC1* disrupted in schizophrenia 1, Δ(2–3) lacking exons 2 and 3 of the Disc1 gene, *DISC1 (PFC) RNAi* Prefrontal cortex-specific DISC1 deletion using RNA interference, *NRG1-TM* neuregulin 1 transmembrane domain, *Het* heterozygous mutants, *NRG1 (I) OE* neuregulin1 type I overexpressing mice, *NRG1 Ig* neuregulin1 immunoglobulin-like domain, *ErbB4 PV* mice with ablation of parvalbumin-positive ErbB4

[a]Includes dopamine-enhancing agents and NMDA receptor antagonists

[b]Attenuated by antipsychotic drugs

Mice lacking exon 2 and 3 via targeted mutation of the DISC1 gene displayed sex-specific hyperactivity in a novel environment, increased methamphetamine-induced hyperactivity, and disruption of PPI (females only) but no change in LI or cognition (Kuroda et al. 2011). They also displayed behavioral features unrelated to psychosis, including decreased anxiety in the elevated plus maze, increased social interactions, and decreased hippocampal long-term potentiation. The authors reported that clozapine reversed DISC1 mutant deficits in the elevated plus maze, although it is unclear how relevant this finding is for understanding the role of the gene in schizophrenia. In a recent study, transient knockdown of DISC1 in the PFC via in utero RNAi transfer was associated with the expression of several behavioral features related to psychosis; these features included decreased PPI and increased sensitivity to methamphetamine-induced hyperactivity, as well as recognition and working memory deficits (Niwa et al. 2010). Interestingly, each of these deficits was observed in adult but not in juvenile mice. In the same study, acute clozapine administration reversed both PPI and memory deficits in this DISC1 mutant.

These DISC1 mutant data illustrate how diverse mutations in the same gene can produce different phenotypic outcomes, depending upon the nature of the mutation or, in some cases, the involvement of putative environmental factors. The discrepancy across the various models may be therefore due to differences in genetic manipulation, extent and nature of DISC1 dysfunction, and/or functional diversity of this gene. Some additional DISC1 mutants generated to date exhibit cognitive deficits (Koike et al. 2006; Li et al. 2007) and may indicate a basis for examining the efficacy of putative cognition-enhancing candidates.

### *4.3 DTNBP1*

In the absence of a specifically constructed DTNBP1 KO, mutant studies have relied on the *sdy* mouse having a spontaneous mutation in the DBA/2J strain that involves a large in-frame deletion of two exons of the mouse DTNBP1 gene. *sdy* mice express no dysbindin protein and have been shown to manifest several schizophrenia-like phenotypes, although the evidence to date has been somewhat inconsistent (Talbot 2009); indeed, this mutant has been proposed to constitute a murine model of Hermansky–Pudlak syndrome (Li et al. 2003), a disorder characterized by albinism, bleeding tendency, and lung disease which are not fundamental features of schizophrenia.

Assessment of exploratory activity in *sdy* mutants has produced reports of unaltered (Feng et al. 2008; Bhardwaj et al. 2009), decreased (Takao et al. 2008; Hattori et al. 2008), or increased (Cox et al. 2009) spontaneous exploratory activity in the open field. Both increased dopamine turnover (Hattori et al. 2008) and decreased dopamine concentration (Murotani et al. 2007) have also been reported in brains of *sdy* mutants. While the DBA/2J strain does not show robust PPI, precluding assessment therein, backcrossing of the *sdy* mutation onto a C57BL6 line revealed no effect on PPI (Cox et al. 2009). In contrast, a more recent report involving *sdy* mutants backcrossed onto a C57BL6 line reported a moderate PPI

deficit (Carlson et al. 2011) that was accompanied by theta band electroencephalographic (EEG) abnormalities and reduced parvalbumin-positive interneuron activity, in a manner reported to occur in schizophrenia.

*Sdy* mutants also evidence reduction in social contacts and social contact time in a dyadic paradigm (Feng et al. 2008; Hattori et al. 2008), with impairments in both working and long-term memory (Takao et al. 2008). Similarly, *sdy* mutants show difficulty encoding or maintaining an item in spatial memory (Jentsch et al. 2009), impaired spatial reference memory, and object recognition memory (Feng et al. 2008); they also evidence morphological changes in excitatory asymmetrical synapses on hippocampal CA1 dendritic spines, larger but fewer presynaptic glutamatergic vesicles, narrower synaptic cleft, and broader postsynaptic density (Chen et al. 2008).

## *4.4 NRG1*

Mice with heterozygous deletion (KO being lethal) of the transmembrane (TM) region of the NRG1 gene (Stefansson et al. 2002) were initially reported to show deficits in PPI, although the size of this effect is likely to be modest (Van den Buuse et al. 2009). The same NRG1 mutant line was also associated with abnormalities of social behavior, including reduction in social novelty preference (O'Tuathaigh et al. 2007b) and increased aggression during a dyadic social encounter (O'Tuathaigh et al. 2008) but no changes across cognitive measures, including spatial learning and working memory (O'Tuathaigh et al. 2007b). Despite the documented role for NRG1 in hippocampal long-term potentiation and synaptic plasticity, mice with partial knockout of NRG1 do not show a prominent cognitive phenotype. Some studies have reported a sex- (males only) and task-specific deficit in recognition memory and contextual fear conditioning (Duffy et al. 2010); in contrast, female mutants exhibit disruption of contextual fear conditioning only (Chesworth et al. 2012). In contrast, mice with heterozygous deletion of NRG1 type III do not exhibit novelty-induced hyperactivity, but display robust deficits in PPI and spatial working memory (Chen et al. 2008).

A number of recent publications have also examined the effects of overexpression of NRG1 using transgenic mouse models. Transgenic mice with enhanced NRG1 type 1 isoform expression demonstrate deficits in acoustic startle and PPI, mild hyperactivity in a novel environment, and an age-dependent (observed at 11 but not 5 months) disruption of working and short-term memory, together with tremor (Deakin et al. 2009, 2012). While synaptic transmission and long-term potentiation were unaffected in these animals, altered hippocampal oscillations were reported (Deakin et al. 2012). While not excluding involvement of other regions, these data do suggest a role for NRG1 expression in the hippocampus in the emergence of these psychosis-related phenotypes.

It has been reported that some of the deficits observed in NRG1 mutants can be reversed by antipsychotic administration. Clozapine has been shown to reduce hyperactivity in TM domain (Stefansson et al. 2002) and immunoglobulin (Ig)-like domain NRG1 mutants (Rimer et al. 2005), as well as ErbB4-deficient

mice (Barros et al. 2009). Clozapine also ameliorated LI deficits in Ig-like domain NRG1 mutants (Rimer et al. 2005) and PPI disruption in ErbB4-deficient mutants (Barros et al. 2009). Interestingly, in a reciprocal fashion, preclinical data have shown that chronic antipsychotic treatment can alter brain expression levels of NRG1 or ErbB4 (Zhang and Su 2008; Pan et al. 2011).

## *4.5 Variant Approaches*

Regarding findings in DISC1, DTNBP1, and NRG1 mutants, there endures a debate as to whether their phenotypes are sufficiently distinct to relate to distinct aspects of psychotic illness, or overlap to such an extent that they indicate convergence, with downstream effects on DAergic and particularly on glutamatergic function being the most widely entertained commonalities (Karam et al. 2010; Papaleo and Weinberger 2011).

There are numerous other mutant lines that involve manipulation of genes whose association with risk for schizophrenia or other psychotic illness has proven less replicable [BACE-1, DAO, DAOA/G72, FEZ1, NOGO1 (RTN4R), PLCß1, PPP3CC, PRODH, RGS4, ZDHHC80] or alternatively involve processes of putative relevance to the pathobiology of psychosis and antipsychotic drug action (e.g., Cplx1, D-serine, FGFR1, LPA1, Nurr1, Reelin, and synapsin II), as reviewed in extenso elsewhere (Desbonnet et al. 2009; Kirby et al. 2010; O'Tuathaigh et al. 2011); these remain heuristic resources for such studies. However, as these studies evolve, there are variant approaches, some of which we consider below.

At the core of mutant studies is the goal of translational science that may be related directly to clinical disorders and their treatment (Kas et al. 2011). It is important to note that translation is a bidirectional process having at least two forms: (1) Forward ("bottom up") translation, where mutant studies are applied de novo to suggest new candidate risk genes and/or putative pathophysiological mechanisms, with a view to confirming clinical association with disease and identifying novel, tractable drug targets for clinical investigation; this is the most heuristic form of translation that is also the rarest and has so far provided the smallest yield. (2) Reverse ("top down") translation, where a gene identified in clinical investigations is mutated in animals that are then studied to resolve the (dys) functional role of that gene, with a view to identifying novel, tractable drug targets for clinical investigation (Desbonnet et al. 2009; Powell et al. 2009). We here consider examples of these translational approaches.

## *4.6 Stable Tubule-Only Polypeptide*

Stable tubule-only polypeptide (STOP) proteins are involved in the cold stability of microtubules, brain development, connectivity, synaptic plasticity, and neurotransmission. STOP KO show depleted synaptic vesicle pools and impaired synaptic

plasticity, together with abnormalities in synaptic protein mRNAs similar to those reported in postmortem brain tissue from patients with schizophrenia; these changes are accompanied neurochemically by limbic hyperdopaminergic and forebrain–midbrain hypoglutamatergic function. While STOP KO were reported initially to show severe behavioral disorders characterized by phases of intense activity, apparently random shifts in activities, heightened anxiety, disturbed interactions with the environment, and maternal deficits in nurturing, they were reported subsequently to show a more subtle phenotype. Locomotor hyperactivity and hyporesponsivity to MK-801 were not evident in juvenile STOP KO but emerged postpuberty, while both juvenile and post-pubertal mutants evidence similar hyperresponsivity to amphetamine. STOP KO show deficits in PPI, with impairments in spatial learning, recognition memory, and long-term memory (Andrieux et al. 2002; Desbonnet et al. 2009). Long-term administration of clozapine or risperidone to STOP KO ameliorates deficits in some negative symptom-related behaviors and partially ameliorates certain cognitive deficits (Delotterie et al. 2010; Table 1).

Provocatively, behavioral, synaptic vesicular, and electrophysiological abnormalities in STOP KO were ameliorated by long-term treatment with the taxol-related microtubule stabilizer epothilone D (Andrieux et al. 2006). More recently, hyperactivity and some cognitive deficits in heterozygous STOP mutants were ameliorated by intranasal administration of davunetide, an active fragment of active-dependent neuroprotective protein (Merenlender-Wagner et al. 2010). This finding is yet more provocative given a subsequent preliminary report that intranasal davunetide, while without effect on psychopathology or the MATRICS Consensus Cognitive battery, can ameliorate aspects of "functionally meaningful cognition" (Javitt et al. 2012). Though in their infancy, these findings may suggest novel approaches to antipsychotic therapy.

### *4.7 Semaphorin-6A*

The transmembrane semaphorin Semaphorin-6A (Sema6A) interacts with the transmembrane proteins Plexin-A2 and Plexin-A4; together with Sema-6B, these proteins coordinate axon guidance, laminar connectivity, neuronal migration, and dendritic development; mutation of Sema6A results in subtle but widespread derangements of cytoarchitecture and neuronal connectivity (see Rünker et al. 2011).

Recent studies indicate Sema6A KO to show deficits in limbic and cortical neuronal organization, lamination and connectivity, cortical EEG abnormalities in the $\alpha$ band, hyperactivity, disruption to social interaction, and cognitive dysfunction; hyperactivity and increased power in the $\alpha$ band on spectral EEG were each normalized by low doses of clozapine (Table 1) and, on this basis, initial clinical genetic studies suggested risk for schizophrenia to bear some association with variation in Sema6A, Sema6B, and PLXNA2 (Rünker et al. 2011). These findings indicate previously unrecognized cellular abnormalities in schizophrenia that may suggest novel approaches to antipsychotic therapy.

# 5 Mutant Models of Psychosis and Antipsychotic Drug Action: Much Done, Much Still to Do

## 5.1 The Challenge of G × E and G × G Interactions

A new generation of clinical studies now elaborate older "stress–vulnerability" models of psychosis by formalizing how intrauterine adversities, biological insults (e.g., infection, trauma, and cannabis exposure), and psychosocial stressors (e.g., urbanicity, minority group position, and social fragmentation) over infancy, childhood, and adolescence appear to interact with genetic factors to determine risk for psychotic illness (van Os et al. 2010; Waddington et al. 2012).

If we assume that the study of G × E interactions using mutant models represents an advance in the field, a caveat must be that studying the effect of an environmental factor should be guided by the clinical literature. While clinical studies quantifying such G × E interactions have been slow to emerge, some supportive evidence is now available (Caspi et al. 2005). On this background, studies have begun to examine interactions between mouse gene manipulations and epidemiologically relevant environmental adversities, administered at critical developmental periods, on the later emergence of schizophrenia-related endophenotypes in adulthood; these include the psychotomimetic effects of adolescent cannabis in COMT mutants (O'Tuathaigh et al. 2010, 2011), adolescent exposure to social defeat stress in NRG1 mutants (Desbonnet et al. 2012), and prenatal immune challenge in DISC1 mutants (Abazyan et al. 2010) and NRG1 mutants (O'Leary et al. 2010).

Yet more complex is increasing recognition of the need to clarify the interaction of genes not only with environmental factors but, perhaps even more importantly, with other genes (Andreasen et al. 2012; Greenwood et al. 2011). The study of epistatic G × G interactions in mutant models poses several technical and practical challenges that investigators are currently addressing.

## 5.2 The Challenge of Phenotyping Strategies

As noted previously by others, putative animal models for identifying novel antipsychotic drugs need to be evaluated with a broadest range of behavioral paradigms that derive from increasing understanding of psychotic illness (Nestler and Hyman 2010; Moore 2010). It is therefore chastening that, despite recognition of these challenges and the heuristic potential of mutant models, a recent review of behavioral approaches to antipsychotic drug discovery (Porsolt et al. 2010) makes no mention of such models. In relation to developing animal models of cognitive dysfunction, several authors have noted the problems generated by the multiplicity of tests applied to measure the same or different aspects of the same cognitive construct; such diversity between studies can seriously limit comparability of phenotypes (Papaleo et al. 2012).

Some groups have made progress in developing mouse analogues of rat paradigms for cognitive functions, making cross-species stimulus- or response-related adaptations where necessary. These developments include the development of a mouse version of the stop-signal reaction time task (Humby and Wilkinson 2011), as well as the use of touchscreen version of operant tasks and the 5-choice serial reaction time task (5CSRTT) (Bussey et al. 2012); in a recent report, muscarinic $M_1$ receptor KO displayed disrupted vigilance levels in a touchscreen version of the 5CSRTT (Bartko et al. 2011).

Other groups have sought to develop paradigms or procedure which are customized for the murine behavioral repertoire, in terms such as ethological relevance and cognitive complexity (e.g., Waddington et al. 2005). Indeed, it has been increasingly recognized that finer and more precise behavioral assessments in mutant models of neuropsychiatric disorders require species-appropriate profiling of activity patterns (Baker 2011; Keshavan et al. 2011; Young et al. 2009). In this context, characterization of the mouse behavioral repertoire precedes and complements, but does not replace, analysis of the clinical relevance of behavioral abnormalities found in experimental models.

## *5.3 The Challenge of Developing Appropriate Models*

This field proceeds most commonly by assessing and seeking the amelioration of phenotypes related to one or more aspect(s) of positive symptoms, negative symptoms, and cognitive dysfunction that characterize psychotic illness. Phenotypes commonly thought to relate to other nonpsychotic disorders, such as anxiety, may also be studied and interpreted as clarifying issues of "specificity" for psychosis and antipsychotic activity. A recent meta-analysis (Achim et al. 2011) indicates that anxiety disorders are highly prevalent in schizophrenia spectrum psychoses; thus, phenotypes related to anxiety may indicate not lack of specificity but, rather, a broader, more wholistic construct of psychotic illness. Future studies should also consider phenotypes that relate to mania, depression, and mood swings in the context of psychopathological, genetic, and pathobiological overlap between psychosis and bipolar disorder (Chen et al. 2010; see Sect. 1).

Despite considerable epidemiological evidence for sex differences in risk for, psychopathology of, and outcome in schizophrenia, the dearth of mutant studies that have systematically compared male and female murine phenotypes has been noted elsewhere (O'Tuathaigh and Waddington 2010; Chen and Lai 2011). In addition to a potential explanatory role for sexually dimorphic biology in relation to such differences, the sexes may differ also in the nature of and sensitivity to environmental adversities (Accortt et al. 2008; Burrows et al. 2011). Well-documented sexually dimorphic effects of susceptibility gene mutation on the expression of behaviors conceptually linked with psychosis, as reviewed in greater detail elsewhere (Desbonnet et al. 2009; Kirby et al. 2010; O'Tuathaigh et al. 2011), may implicate sex hormonal regulation of risk gene function in a manner that may contribute to the pathogenesis of psychotic illness.

Schizophrenia is characterized by subtle impairments over infancy, childhood, and adolescence, to include increasing recognition of early, nonclinical psychotic-like experiences, but the appearance of diagnostic psychotic symptoms most typically only during adolescence/early adulthood; this process is best captured by a lifetime trajectory model of psychotic illness (Waddington et al. 2012). Typically, mutant models of schizophrenia involve phenotypic assessment over a period approximating to young adulthood, for valid reasons such as desire to avoid multiple testing or the necessity for large subject numbers that challenge both funding and labor resources. Yet a more "real-world" paradigm would involve assessments over development and maturation that would resolve the sequential emergence of and interplay between phenotypic effects.

The value of adopting this approach in mutant models is illustrated by recent studies in rats that have sought to address the widely espoused clinical strategy of early intervention to ameliorate poor functional outcome in psychotic illness. Recent studies have reported administration of antipsychotics (and indeed of an antidepressant) during adolescence to prevent subsequent behavioral and morphological abnormalities otherwise induced by prenatal immune activation, though there may be adverse consequences of such treatment for normal behavioral development (Piontkewitz et al. 2009, 2012; Meyer et al. 2010). Extension of this approach to mutant models may be highly informative.

The etiological validity of any mouse model is challenged by the possibility that one or more human disease gene(s) might generate more isoforms than the mouse gene, making it human-specific; in a similar vein, as previously described in relation to NRG1, the majority of genetic mouse models have failed to take into account isoform-specific characteristics that might be crucial to undertanding the role of genes in the disorder (Papaleo et al. 2012). The importance of studying heterozygous mutations is also emphasized, since it may be more clinically relevant to look at partial or small, specific mutations rather than whole disruption of the gene.

## 6 Conclusions

Given the vagaries of CNS drug discovery, including longer development times and approval phases, together with lower approval rates (Muglia 2011), there has been recent disinvestment in neuroscience drug discovery. Thus, there is a heavy burden on human and preclinical genetic research to contribute to the development of new antipsychotic drugs (Karam et al. 2010). With that in mind, mutant mouse models of psychosis in general and schizophrenia in particular represent a viable and promising avenue, in terms of both understanding signaling processes underlying existing antipsychotic action and discovering novel drug targets. This optimistic outlook derives from advances in understanding etiological and pathobiological processes and in technical ability to manipulate, in an increasingly specific manner, genetic involvement in these processes.

**Acknowledgments** The authors' studies are supported by a Science Foundation Ireland Principal Investigator grant (07/IN.1/B960) and a Postdoctoral Fellowship from the Health Research Board of Ireland (PD/2007/20).

## References

Abazyan B, Nomura J, Kannan G, Ishizuka K, Tamashiro KL, Nucifora F, Pogorelov V, Ladenheim B, Yang C, Krasnova IN, Cadet JL, Pardo C, Mori S, Kamiya A, Vogel MW, Sawa A, Ross CA, Pletnikov MV (2010) Prenatal interaction of mutant DISC1 and immune activation produces adult psychopathology. Biol Psychiatry 68:1172–1181

Accortt EE, Freeman MP, Allen JJ (2008) Women and major depressive disorder: clinical perspectives on causal pathways. J Womens Health (Larchmt) 17:1583–1590

Achim AM, Maziade M, Raymond E, Olivier D, Mérette C, Roy MA (2011) How prevalent are anxiety disorders in schizophrenia? A meta-analysis and critical review on a significant association. Schizophr Bull 37:811–821

Andreasen NC, Wilcox MA, Ho BC, Epping E, Ziebell S, Zeien E, Weiss B, Wassink T (2012) Statistical epistasis and progressive brain change in schizophrenia: an approach for examining the relationships between multiple genes. Mol Psychiatry (in press)

Andrieux A, Salin PA, Vernet M, Kujala P, Baratier J, Gory-Fauré S, Bosc C, Pointu H, Proietto D, Schweitzer A, Denarier E, Klumperman J, Job D (2002) The suppression of brain cold-stable microtubules in mice induces synaptic defects associated with neuroleptic-sensitive behavioral disorders. Genes Dev 16:2350–2364

Andrieux A, Salin P, Schweitzer A, Bégou M, Pachoud B, Brun P, Gory-Fauré S, Kujala P, Suaud-Chagny MF, Höfle G, Job D (2006) Microtubule stabilizer ameliorates synaptic function and behavior in a mouse model for schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 60:1224–1230

Arguello PA, Gogos JA (2006) Modeling madness in mice: one piece at a time. Neuron 52:179–196

Arguello PA, Gogos JA (2010) Cognition in mouse models of schizophrenia susceptibility genes. Schizophr Bull 36:289–300

Babovic D, O'Tuathaigh CM, O'Sullivan GJ, Clifford JJ, Tighe O, Croke DT, Karayiorgou M, Gogos JA, Cotter D, Waddington JL (2007) Exploratory and habituation phenotype of heterozygous and homozygous COMT knockout mice. Behav Brain Res 183:236–239

Babovic D, O'Tuathaigh CM, O'Connor AM, O'Sullivan GJ, Tighe O, Croke DT, Karayiorgou M, Gogos JA, Cotter D, Waddington JL (2008) Phenotypic characterization of cognition and social behavior in mice with heterozygous versus homozygous deletion of catechol-O-methyltransferase. Neuroscience 155:1021–1029

Baker M (2011) Synthetic genomes: the next step for the synthetic genome. Nature 473:405–408

Ballard TM, Pauly-Evers M, Higgins GA, Ouagazzal AM, Mutel V, Borroni E, Kemp JA, Bluethmann H, Kew JN (2002) Severe impairment of NMDA receptor function in mice carrying targeted point mutations in the glycine binding site results in drug-resistant nonhabituating hyperactivity. J Neurosci 22:6713–6723

Barak S, Weiner I (2011) Putative cognitive enhancers in preclinical models related to schizophrenia: the search for an elusive target. Pharmacol Biochem Behav 99:164–189

Barkus C, Feyder M, Graybeal C, Wright T, Wiedholz L, Izquierdo A, Kiselycznyk C, Schmitt W, Sanderson DJ, Rawlins JN, Saksida LM, Bussey TJ, Sprengel R, Bannerman D, Holmes A (2012) Do GluA1 knockout mice exhibit behavioral abnormalities relevant to the negative or cognitive symptoms of schizophrenia and schizoaffective disorder? Neuropharmacology 62:1263–1272

Barr AM, Lehmann-Masten V, Paulus M, Gainetdinov RR, Caron MG, Geyer MA (2004) The selective serotonin-2A receptor antagonist M100907 reverses behavioral deficits in dopamine transporter knockout mice. Neuropsychopharmacology 29:221–228

Barros CS, Calabrese B, Chamero P, Roberts AJ, Korzus E, Lloyd K, Stowers L, Mayford M, Halpain S, Müller U (2009) Impaired maturation of dendritic spines without disorganization of cortical cell layers in mice lacking NRG1/ErbB signaling in the central nervous system. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 106:4507–4512

Bartko SJ, Romberg C, White B, Wess J, Bussey TJ, Saksida LM (2011) Intact attentional processing but abnormal responding in M1 muscarinic receptor-deficient mice using an automated touchscreen method. Neuropharmacology 61:1366–1378

Bauer D, Gupta D, Harotunian V, Meador-Woodruff JH, McCullumsmith RE (2008) Abnormal expression of glutamate transporter and transporter interacting molecules in prefrontal cortex in elderly patients with schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 104:108–120

Bay-Richter C, O'Tuathaigh CM, O'Sullivan G, Heery DM, Waddington JL, Moran PM (2009) Enhanced latent inhibition in dopamine receptor-deficient mice is sex-specific for the D1 but not D2 receptor subtype: implications for antipsychotic drug action. Int J Neuropsychopharmacol 12:403–414

Beaulieu JM (2012) A role for Akt and glycogen synthase kinase-3 as integrators of dopamine and serotonin neurotransmission in mental health. J Psychiatry Neurosci 37:7–16

Beaulieu JM, Sotnikova TD, Yao WD, Kockeritz L, Woodgett JR, Gainetdinov RR, Caron MG (2004) Lithium antagonizes dopamine-dependent behaviors mediated by an AKT/glycogen synthase kinase 3 signaling cascade. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 101:5099–5104

Beaulieu JM, Sotnikova TD, Marion S, Lefkowitz RJ, Gainetdinov RR, Caron MG (2005) An Akt/beta-arrestin 2/PP2A signaling complex mediates dopaminergic neurotransmission and behaviour. Cell 122:261–273

Bespalov A et al (2012) Development of disease-modifying treatment of schizophrenia. In: Geyer MA, Gross G (eds) Novel antischizophrenia treatments. Current Antipsychotics, vol 213, Handbook of experimental pharmacology. Springer, Heidelberg

Bhardwaj SK, Baharnoori M, Sharif-Askari B, Kamath A, Williams S, Srivastava LK (2009) Behavioral characterization of dysbindin-1 deficient sandy mice. Behav Brain Res 197:435–441

Boulay D, Bergis O, Avenet P, Griebel G (2010) The glycine transporter-1 inhibitor SSR103800 displays a selective and specific antipsychotic-like profile in normal and transgenic mice. Neuropsychopharmacology 35:416–427

Brody SA, Conquet F, Geyer MA (2004) Effect of antipsychotic treatment on the prepulse inhibition deficit of mGluR5 knockout mice. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 172:187–195

Burrows EL, McOmish CE, Hannan AJ (2011) Gene-environment interactions and construct validity in preclinical models of psychiatric disorders. Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry 35:1376–1382

Bussey TJ, Holmes A, Lyon L, Mar AC, McAllister KA, Nithianantharajah J, Oomen CA, Saksida LM (2012) New translational assays for preclinical modelling of cognition in schizophrenia: the touchscreen testing method for mice and rats. Neuropharmacology 62(3):1191–1203

Cagniard B, Balsam PD, Brunner D, Zhuang X (2006) Mice with chronically elevated dopamine exhibit enhanced motivation, but not learning, for a food reward. Neuropsychopharmacology 31:1362–1370

Carlson GC, Talbot K, Halene TB, Gandal MJ, Kazi HA, Schlosser L, Phung QH, Gur RE, Arnold SE, Siegel SJ (2011) Dysbindin-1 mutant mice implicate reduced fast-phasic inhibition as a final common disease mechanism in schizophrenia. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 108: E962–E970

Carpenter WT (2011) The facts of schizophrenia: a personal commentary. Schizophr Res 128:3–4

Caspi A, Moffitt TE, Cannon M, McClay J, Murray R, Harrington H, Taylor A, Arseneault L, Williams B, Braithwaite A, Poulton R, Craig IW (2005) Moderation of the effect of adolescent-onset cannabis use on adult psychosis by a functional polymorphism in the catechol-O-methyltransferase gene: longitudinal evidence of a gene X environment interaction. Biol Psychiatry 57:1117–1127

Chen YW, Lai WS (2011) Behavioral phenotyping of v-akt murine thymoma viral oncogene homolog 1-deficient mice reveals a sex-specific prepulse inhibition deficit in females that can be partially alleviated by glycogen synthase kinase-3 inhibitors but not by antipsychotics. Neuroscience 174:178–189

Chen XW, Feng YQ, Hao CJ, Guo XL, He X, Zhou ZY, Guo N, Huang HP, Xiong W, Zheng H, Zuo PL, Zhang CX, Li W, Zhou Z (2008) DTNBP1, a schizophrenia susceptibility gene, affects kinetics of transmitter release. J Cell Biol 181:791–801

Chen G, Henter ID, Manji HK (2010) Translational research in bipolar disorder: emerging insights from genetically based models. Mol Psychiatry 15:883–895

Chesworth R, Downey L, Logge W, Killcross S, Karl T (2012) Cognition in female transmembrane domain neuregulin 1 mutant mice. Behav Brain Res 226:218–223

Clapcote SJ, Lipina TV, Millar JK, Mackie S, Christie S, Ogawa F, Lerch JP, Trimble K, Uchiyama M, Sakuraba Y, Kaneda H, Shiroishi T, Houslay MD, Henkelman RM, Sled JG, Gondo Y, Porteous DJ, Roder JC (2007) Behavioral phenotypes of Disc1 missense mutations in mice. Neuron 54:387–402

Costa RM, Gutierrez R, de Araujo IE, Coelho MR, Kloth AD, Gainetdinov RR, Caron MG, Nicolelis MA, Simon SA (2007) Dopamine levels modulate the updating of tastant values. Genes Brain Behav 6:314–320

Cox MM, Tucker AM, Tang J, Talbot K, Richer DC, Yeh L, Arnold SE (2009) Neurobehavioral abnormalities in the dysbindin-1 mutant, sandy, on a C57BL/6J genetic background. Genes Brain Behav 8:390–397

Coyle JT et al (2012) Glutamatergic synaptic dysregulation in schizophrenia: therapeutic implications. In: Geyer MA, Gross G (eds) Novel antischizophrenia treatments. Current Antipsychotics, vol 213, Handbook of experimental pharmacology. Springer, Heidelberg

Craddock N, Owen MJ, O'Donovan MC (2006) The catechol-O-methyl transferase (COMT) gene as a candidate for psychiatric phenotypes: evidence and lessons. Mol Psychiatry 11:446–458

Deakin IH, Law AJ, Oliver PL, Schwab MH, Nave KA, Harrison PJ, Bannerman DM (2009) Behavioral characterization of neuregulin 1 type I overexpressing transgenic mice. Neuroreport 20:1523–1528

Deakin IH, Nissen W, Law AJ, Lane T, Kanso R, Schwab MH, Nave KA, Lamsa KP, Paulsen O, Bannerman DM, Harrison PJ (2012) Transgenic overexpression of the type I isoform of neuregulin 1 affects working memory and hippocampal oscillations but not long-term potentiation. Cereb Cortex 22:1520–9

Delotterie D, Ruiz G, Brocard J, Schweitzer A, Roucard C, Roche Y, Suaud-Chagny MF, Bressand K, Andrieux A (2010) Chronic administration of atypical antipsychotics improves behavioral and synaptic defects of STOP null mice. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 208:131–141

Desbonnet L, Waddington JL, O'Tuathaigh CM (2009) Mice mutant for genes associated with schizophrenia: common phenotype or distinct endophenotypes? Behav Brain Res 204:258–273

Desbonnet L, O'Tuathaigh C, Clarke G, O'Leary C, Petit E, Clarke N, Tighe O, Lai D, Harvey R, Cryan JF, Dinan TG, Waddington JL (2012) Phenotypic effects of repeated psychosocial stress during adolescence in mice mutant for the schizophrenia risk gene neuregulin-1: a putative model of gene × environment interaction. Brain Behav Immun 26(4):660–671

DeSteno DA, Schmauss C (2008) Induction of early growth response gene 2 expression in the forebrain of mice performing an attention-set-shifting task. Neuroscience 152:417–428

du Bois TM, Newell KA, Huang XF (2012) Perinatal phencyclidine treatment alters neuregulin 1/erbB4 expression and activation in later life. Eur Neuropsychopharmacol 22(5):356–363

Duffy L, Cappas E, Lai D, Boucher AA, Karl T (2010) Cognition in transmembrane domain neuregulin 1 mutant mice. Neuroscience 170:800–807

Duncan GE, Moy SS, Perez A, Eddy DM, Zinzow WM, Lieberman JA, Snouwaert JN, Koller BH (2004) Deficits in senosrimotor gating and tests of social behavior in a genetic model of reduced NMDA receptor function. Behav Brain Res 153:507–519

Duncan GE, Moy SS, Lieberman JA, Koller BH (2006) Effects of haloperidol, clozapine, and quetiapine on sensorimotor gating in a genetic model of reduced NMDA receptor function. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 184:190–200

El-Ghundi M, Fletcher PJ, Drago J, Sibley DR, O'Dowd BF, George SR (1999) Spatial learning deficit in dopamine D(1) receptor knockout mice. Eur J Pharmacol 383:95–106

El-Ghundi M, O'Dowd BF, George SR (2001) Prolonged fear responses in mice lacking dopamine D1 receptor. Brain Res 892:86–93

Emamian ES, Hall D, Birnbaum MJ, Karayiorgou M, Gogos JA (2004) Convergent evidence for impaired AKT1-GSK3beta signaling in schizophrenia. Nat Genet 36:131–137

Fell MJ, Svensson KA, Johnson BG, Schoepp DD (2008) Evidence for the role of metabotropic glutamate (mGlu)2 not mGlu3 receptors in the preclinical antipsychotic pharmacology of the mGlu2/3 receptor agonist (-)-(1R,4S,5S,6S)-4-amino-2-sulfonylbicyclo[3.1.0]hexane-4,6-dicarboxylic acid (LY404039). J Pharmacol Exp Ther 326:209–217

Fell MJ, Perry KW, Falcone JF, Johnson BG, Barth VN, Rash KS, Lucaites VL, Threlkeld PG, Monn JA, McKinzie DL, Marek GJ, Svensson KA, Nelson DL (2009) In vitro and in vivo evidence for a lack of interaction with dopamine D2 receptors by the metabotropic glutamate 2/3 receptor agonists 1S,2S,5R,6S-2-aminobicyclo[3.1.0]hexane-2,6-bicaroxylate monohydrate (LY354740) and (-)-2-oxa-4-aminobicyclo[3.1.0]hexane-4,6-dicarboxylic acid (LY379268). J Pharmacol Exp Ther 331:1126–1136

Feldon J (2012) Behavioral animal models of antipsychotic drug actions. In: Geyer MA, Gross G (eds) Current antipsychotics, vol 212, Handbook of experimental pharmacology. Springer, Heidelberg

Feng YQ, Zhou ZY, He X, Wang H, Guo XL, Hao CJ, Guo Y, Zhen XC, Li W (2008) Dysbindin deficiency in sandy mice causes reduction of snapin and displays behaviors related to schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 106:218–228

Fitzgerald PJ, Barkus C, Feyder M, Wiedholz LM, Chen YC, Karlsson RM, Machado-Vieira R, Graybeal C, Sharp T, Zarate C, Harvey-White J, Du J, Sprengel R, Gass P, Bannerman D, Holmes A (2010) Does gene deletion of AMPA GluA1 phenocopy features of schizoaffective disorder? Neurobiol Dis 40:608–621

Fradley RL, O'Meara GF, Newman RJ, Andrieux A, Job D, Reynolds DS (2005) STOP knockout and NMDA NR1 hypomorphic mice exhibit deficits in sensorimotor gating. Behav Brain Res 163:257–264

Fremeau RT Jr, Troyer MD, Pahner I, Nygaard GO, Tran CH, Reimer RJ, Bellocchio EE, Fortin D, Storm-Mathisen J, Edwards RH (2001) The expression of vesicular glutamate transporters defines two classes of excitatory synapse. Neuron 31:247–260

Gainetdinov RR (2008) Dopamine transporter mutant mice in experimental neuropharmacology. Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch Pharmacol 377:301–313

Gama Sosa MA, De Gasperi R, Elder GA (2010) Animal transgenesis: an overview. Brain Struct Funct 214:91–109

Garcia-Garcia AL, Elizalde N, Matrov D, Harro J, Wojcik SM, Venzala E, Ramírez MJ, Del Rio J, Tordera RM (2009) Increased vulnerability to depressive-like behaviour of mice with decreased expression of VGLUT1. Biol Psychiatry 66:275–282

Gejman PV, Sanders AR, Kendler KS (2011) Genetics of schizophrenia: new findings and challenges. Annu Rev Genomics Hum Genet 12:121–144

Glickstein SB, Hof PR, Schmauss C (2002) Mice lacking dopamine D2 and D3 receptors have spatial working memory deficits. J Neurosci 22:5619–5629

Gogos JA, Morgan M, Luine V, Santha M, Ogawa S, Pfaff D, Karayiorgou M (1998) Catechol-O-methyltransferase-deficient mice exhibit sexually dimorphic changes in catecholamine levels and behavior. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 95:9991–9996

Gray L, van den Buuse M, Scarr E, Dean B, Hannan AJ (2009) Clozapine reverses schizophrenia-related behaviours in the metabotropic glutamate receptor 5 knockout mouse: association with N-methyl-D-aspartic acid receptor up-regulation. Int J Neuropsychopharmacol 12:45–60

Greenwood TA, Lazzeroni LC, Murray SS, Cadenhead KS, Calkins ME, Dobie DJ, Green MF, Gur RE, Gur RC, Hardiman G, Kelsoe JR, Leonard S, Light GA, Nuechterlein KH, Olincy A, Radant AD, Schork NJ, Seidman LJ, Siever LJ, Silverman JM, Stone WS, Swerdlow NR, Tsuang DW, Tsuang MT, Turetsky BI, Freedman R, Braff DL (2011) Analysis of 94 candidate genes and 12 endophenotypes for schizophrenia from the Consortium on the Genetics of Schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 168:930–946

Gründer G, Hippius H, Carlsson A (2009) The 'atypicality' of antipsychotics: a concept re-examined and re-defined. Nat Rev Drug Discov 8:197–202

Guo X, Hamilton PJ, Reish NJ, Sweatt JD, Miller CA, Rumbaugh G (2009) Reduced expression of the NMDA receptor-interacting protein SynGAP causes behavioral abnormalities that model symptoms of schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 34:1658–1672

Hargreaves A, Morris DW, Rose E, Fahey C, Moore S, Cummings E, Tropea D, Gill M, Corvin A, Donohoe G (2012) ZNF804A and social cognition in patients with schizophrenia and healthy controls. Mol Psychiatry 17(2):118–119

Hattori S, Murotani T, Matsuzaki S, Ishizuka T, Kumamoto N, Takeda M, Tohyama M, Yamatodani A, Kunugi H, Hashimoto R (2008) Behavioral abnormalities and dopamine reductions in sdy mutant mice with a deletion in Dtnbp1, a susceptibility gene for schizophrenia. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 373:298–302

Heinz A, Schlagenhauf F (2010) Dopaminergic dysfunction in schizophrenia: salience attribution revisited. Schizophr Bull 36:472–485

Herzog E, Bellenchi GC, Gras C, Bernard V, Ravassard P, Bedet C, Gasnier B, Giros B, El Mestikawy S (2001) The existence of a second vesicular glutamate transporter specifies subpopulations of glutamatergic neurons. J Neurosci 21:RC181

Hikida T, Jaaro-Peled H, Seshadri S, Oishi K, Hookway C, Kong S, Wu D, Xue R, Andradé M, Tankou S, Mori S, Gallagher M, Ishizuka K, Pletnikov M, Kida S, Sawa A (2007) Dominant-negative DISC1 transgenic mice display schizophrenia-associated phenotypes detected by measures translatable to humans. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 104:14501–14506

Holmes A, Lachowicz JE, Sibley DR (2004) Phenotypic analysis of dopamine receptor knockout mice; recent insights into the functional specificity of dopamine receptor subtypes. Neuropharmacology 47:1117–1134

Humby T, Wilkinson LS (2011) Assaying dissociable elements of behavioral inhibition and impulsivity: translational utility of animal models. Curr Opin Pharmacol 11:534–539

Insel TR (2010) Rethinking schizophrenia. Nature 468:187–193

Inta D, Monyer H, Sprengel R, Meyer-Lindenberg A, Gass P (2010) Mice with genetically altered glutamate receptors as models of schizophrenia: a comprehensive review. Neurosci Biobehav Rev 34:285–294

Javitt DC, Buchanan RW, Keefe RS, Kern R, McMahon RP, Green MF, Lieberman J, Goff DC, Csernansky JG, McEvoy JP, Jarskog F, Seidman LJ, Gold JM, Kimhy D, Nolan KS, Barch DS, Ball MP, Robinson J, Marder SR (2012) Effect of the neuroprotective peptide davunetide (AL-108) on cognition and functional capacity in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 136 (1–3):25–31

Javitt DC (2012) Glycine transport inhibitors in the treatment of schizophrenia. In: Geyer MA, Gross G (eds) Novel antischizophrenia treatments. Current Antispychotics, vol 213, Handbook of experimental pharmacology. Springer, Heidelberg

Jentsch JD, Trantham-Davidson H, Jairl C, Tinsley M, Cannon TD, Lavin A (2009) Dysbindin modulates prefrontal cortical glutamatergic circuits and working memory function in mice. Neuropsychopharmacology 34:2601–2608

Kapur S, Ginovart N (2012) Role of Dopamine D2 Receptors for Antipsychotic Activity. In: Geyer MA, Gross G (eds) Current Antipsychotics, vol 212, Handbook of experimental pharmacology. Springer, Heidelberg

Karam CS, Ballon JS, Bivens NM, Freyberg Z, Girgis RR, Lizardi-Ortiz JE, Markx S, Lieberman JA, Javitch JA (2010) Signaling pathways in schizophrenia: emerging targets and therapeutic strategies. Trends Pharmacol Sci 31:381–390

Karasinska JM, George SR, El-Ghundi M, Fletcher PJ, O'Dowd BF (2000) Modification of dopamine D(1) receptor knockout phenotype in mice lacking both dopamine D1 and D3 receptors. Eur J Pharmacol 399:171–181

Karlsson RM, Tanaka K, Heilig M, Holmes A (2008) Loss of glial glutamate and aspartate transporter (excitatory amino acid transporter 1) causes locomotor hyperactivity and exaggerated responses to psychotomimetics: rescue by haloperidol and metabotropic glutamate 2/3 agonist. Biol Psychiatry 64:810–814

Karlsson RM, Tanaka K, Saksida LM, Bussey TJ, Heilig M, Holmes A (2009) Assessment of glutamate transporter GLAST (EAAT1)-deficient mice for phenotypes relevant to the negative and executive/cognitive symptoms of schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 34:1578–1589

Kas MJ, Kahn RS, Collier DA, Waddington JL, Ekelund J, Porteous DJ, Schughart K, Hovatta I (2011) Translational neuroscience of Schizophrenia: seeking a meeting of minds between mouse and man. Sci Transl Med 3:102mr3

Kellendonk C, Simpson EH, Kandel ER (2009) Modeling cognitive endophenotypes of schizophrenia in mice. Trends Neurosci 32:347–358

Keshavan MS, Nasrallah HA, Tandon R (2011) Schizophrenia, "Just the Facts" 6. Moving ahead with the schizophrenia concept: from the elephant to the mouse. Schizophr Res 127:3–13

Keefe RSE, Harvey PD (2012) Cognitive Impairment in Schizophrenia. In: Geyer MA, Gross G (eds) Novel antischizophrenia treatments. Current Antispychotics, vol 213, Handbook of experimental pharmacology. Springer, Heidelberg

Kim Y, Zerwas S, Trace SE, Sullivan PF (2011) Schizophrenia genetics: where next? Schizophr Bull 37:456–463

Kinon BJ, Zhang L, Millen BA, Osuntokun OO, Williams JE, Kollack-Walker S, Jackson K, Kryzhanovskaya L, Jarkova N, HBBI Study Group (2011) A multicenter, inpatient, phase 2, double-blind, placebo-controlled dose-ranging study of LY2140023 monohydrate in patients with DSM-IV schizophrenia. J Clin Psychopharmacol 31:349–355

Kirby B, Waddington JL, O'Tuathaigh CMP (2010) Advancing a functional genomics for schizophrenia: psychopathological and cognitive phenotypes in mutants with gene disruption. Brain Res Bull 83:162–176

Koike H, Arguello PA, Kvajo M, Karayiorgou M, Gogos JA (2006) Disc1 is mutated in the 129S6/SvEv strain and modulates working memory in mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 103:3693–3697

Krivoy A, Fischel T, Weizman A (2008) The possible involvement of metabotropic glutamate receptors in schizophrenia. Eur Neuropsychopharmacol 18:395–405

Kruzich PJ, Grandy DK (2004) Dopamine D2 receptors mediate two-odor discrimination and reversal learning in C57BL/6 mice. BMC Neurosci 5:12

Kuepper R, Skinbjerg M, Abi-Dargham A (2012) The dopamine dysfunction in schizophrenia revisited: New insights into topography and course. In: Geyer MA, Gross G (eds) Current antipsychotics, vol 212, Handbook of experimental pharmacology. Springer, Heidelberg

Kuroda K, Yamada S, Tanaka M, Iizuka M, Yano H, Mori D, Tsuboi D, Nishioka T, Namba T, Iizuka Y, Kubota S, Nagai T, Ibi D, Wang R, Enomoto A, Isotani-Sakakibara M, Asai N, Kimura K, Kiyonari H, Abe T, Mizoguchi A, Sokabe M, Takahashi M, Yamada K, Kaibuchi K (2011) Behavioral alterations associated with targeted disruption of exons 2 and 3 of the Disc1 gene in the mouse. Hum Mol Genet 20:4666–4683

Kvajo M, McKellar H, Arguello PA, Drew LJ, Moore H, MacDermott AB, Karayiorgou M, Gogos JA (2008) A mutation in mouse Disc 1 that models a schizophrenia risk allele leads to specific alterations in neuronal architecture and cognition. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 105:7076–7081

Labrie V, Lipina T, Roder JC (2008) Mice with reduced NMDA receptor glycine affinity model some of the negative and cognitive symptoms of schizophrenia. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 200:217–230

Labrie V, Fukumura R, Rastogi A, Fick LJ, Wang W, Boutros PC, Kennedy JL, Semeralul MO, Lee FH, Baker GB, Belsham DD, Barger SW, Gondo Y, Wong AH, Roder JC (2009) Serine

racemase is associated with schizophrenia susceptibility in humans and in a mouse model. Hum Mol Genet 18:3227–3243

Lai WS, Xu B, Westphal KG, Paterlini M, Olivier B, Pavlidis P, Karayiorgou M, Gogos JA (2006) Akt1 deficiency affects neuronal morphology and predisposes to abnormalities in prefrontal cortex functioning. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 103:16906–16911

Laporte JL, Ren-Patterson RF, Murphy DL, Kalueff AV (2008) Refining psychiatric genetics: from 'mouse psychiatry' to understanding complex human disorders. Behav Pharmacol 19:377–384

Li W, Zhang Q, Oiso N, Novak EK, Gautam R, O'Brien EP, Tinsley CL, Blake DJ, Spritz RA, Copeland NG, Jenkins NA, Amato D, Roe BA, Starcevic M, Dell'Angelica EC, Elliott RW, Mishra V, Kingsmore SF, Paylor RE, Swank RT (2003) Hermansky-Pudlak syndrome type 7 (HPS-7) results from mutant dysbindin, a member of the biogenesis of lysosome-related organelles complex 1 (BLOC-1). Nat Genet 35:84–89

Li W, Zhou Y, Jentsch JD, Brown RA, Tian X, Ehninger D, Hennah W, Peltonen L, Lönnqvist J, Huttunen MO, Kaprio J, Trachtenberg JT, Silva AJ, Cannon TD (2007) Specific developmental disruption of disrupted-in-schizophrenia-1 function results in schizophrenia-related phenotypes in mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 104:18280–18285

Li M, Luo XJ, Xiao X, Shi L, Liu XY, Yin LD, Diao HB, Su B (2011) Allelic differences between Han Chinese and Europeans for functional variants in ZNF804A and their association with schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 168(12):1318–1325

Lipina TV, Wang M, Liu F, Roder JC (2012) Synergistic interactions between PDE4B and GSK-3: DISC1 mutant mice. Neuropharmacology 62(3):1252–1262

Low NC, Hardy J (2007) What is a schizophrenic mouse? Neuron 54:348–349

Mao Y, Ge X, Frank CL, Madison JM, Koehler AN, Doud MK, Tassa C, Berry EM, Soda T, Singh KK, Biechele T, Petryshen TL, Moon RT, Haggarty SJ, Tsai LH (2009) Disrupted in schizophrenia 1 regulates neuronal progenitor proliferation via modulation of GSK3beta/beta-catenin signaling. Cell 136:1017–1031

Marder SR, Fenton W (2004) Measurement and Treatment Research to Improve Cognition in Schizophrenia: NIMH MATRICS initiative to support the development of agents for improving cognition in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 72:5–9

Meltzer H (2012) Serotonergic mechanisms as targets for existing and novel antipsychotics. In: Geyer MA, Gross G (eds). Current Antipsychotics, vol 213, Handbook of experimental pharmacology. Springer, Heidelberg

Merenlender-Wagner A, Pikman R, Giladi E, Andrieux A, Gozes I (2010) NAP (davunetide) enhances cognitive behavior in the STOP heterozygous mouse–a microtubule-deficient model of schizophrenia. Peptides 31:1368–1373

Meyer U, Knuesel I, Nyffeler M, Feldon J (2010) Chronic clozapine treatment improves prenatal infection-induced working memory deficits without influencing adult hippocampal neurogenesis. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 208:531–543

Meyer-Lindenberg A (2010) From maps to mechanisms through neuroimaging of schizophrenia. Nature 468:194–202

Miyamoto Y, Yamada K, Noda Y, Mori H, Mishina M, Nabeshima T (2001) Hyperfunction of dopaminergic and serotonergic neuronal systems in mice lacking the NMDA receptor epsilon1 subunit. J Neurosci 21:750–757

Mohn AR, Gainetdinov RR, Caron MG, Koller BH (1999) Mice with reduced NMDA receptor expression display behaviors related to schizophrenia. Cell 98:427–436

Moore H (2010) The role of rodent models in the discovery of new treatments for schizophrenia: updating our strategy. Schizophr Bull 36:1066–1072

Moser PC, Hitchcock JM, Lister S, Moran PM (2000) The pharmacology of latent inhibition as an animal model of schizophrenia. Brain Res Brain Res Rev 33:275–307

Moutsimilli L, Farley S, El Khoury MA, Chamot C, Sibarita JB, Racine V, El Mestikawy S, Mathieu F, Dumas S, Giros B, Tzavara ET (2008) Antipsychotics increase vesicular glutamate

transporter 2 (VGLUT2) expression in thalamolimbic pathways. Neuropharmacology 54:497–508
Muglia P (2011) From genes to therapeutic targets for psychiatric disorders—what to expect? Curr Opin Pharmacol 11:563–571
Murotani T, Ishizuka T, Hattori S, Hashimoto R, Matsuzaki S, Yamatodani A (2007) High dopamine turnover in the brains of Sandy mice. Neurosci Lett 421(1):47–51
Muhia M, Yee BK, Feldon J, Markopoulos F, Knuesel I (2010) Disruption of hippocampus-regulated behavioral and cognitive processes by heterozygous constitutive deletion of SynGAP. Eur J Neurosci 31:529–543
Munafò MR, Bowes L, Clark TG, Flint J (2005) Lack of association of the COMT (Val158/108 Met) gene and schizophrenia: a meta-analysis of case-control studies. Mol Psychiatry 10:765–770
Nestler EJ, Hyman SE (2010) Animal models of neuropsychiatric disorders. Nat Neurosci 13:1161–1169
Niwa M, Kamiya A, Murai R, Kubo K, Gruber AJ, Tomita K, Lu L, Tomisato S, Jaaro-Peled H, Seshadri S, Hiyama H, Huang B, Kohda K, Noda Y, O'Donnell P, Nakajima K, Sawa A, Nabeshima T (2010) Knockdown of DISC1 by in utero gene transfer disturbs postnatal dopaminergic maturation in the frontal cortex and leads to adult behavioral deficits. Neuron 65:480–489
O'Leary C, Desbonnet L, O'Tuathaigh CM, Petit E, Clarke N, Tighe O, Lai D, Harvey R, Waddington JL (2010) Prenatal immune activation in mice with heterozygous deletion of the schizophrenia risk gene neuregulin-1: modelling gene x environment interaction in schizophrenia. Ir J Med Sci 180:60
O'Tuathaigh CMP, Waddington JL (2010) Mutant mouse models: phenotypic relationships to domains of psychopathology and pathobiology in schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 36:243–245
O'Tuathaigh CMP, Babovic D, O'Meara G, Clifford JJ, Croke DT, Waddington JL (2007a) Susceptibility genes for schizophrenia: phenotypic characterisation of mutant models. Neurosci Biobehav Rev 31:60–78
O'Tuathaigh CM, Babovic D, O'Sullivan GJ, Clifford JJ, Tighe O, Croke DT, Harvey R, Waddington JL (2007b) Phenotypic characterization of spatial cognition and social behavior in mice with 'knockout' of the schizophrenia risk gene neuregulin 1. Neuroscience 147:18–27
O'Tuathaigh CM, O'Connor AM, O'Sullivan G, Lai D, Harvey R, Croke DT, Waddington JL (2008) Disruption to social dyadic interactions but not emotional/anxiety-related behaviour in mice with heterozygous 'knockout' of the schizophrenia risk gene neuregulin-1. Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry 32:462–466
O'Tuathaigh CM, Hryniewiecka M, Behan A, Tighe O, Coughlan C, Desbonnet L, Cannon M, Karayiorgou M, Gogos JA, Cotter DR, Waddington JL (2010) Chronic adolescent exposure to Δ-9-tetrahydrocannabinol in COMT mutant mice: impact on psychosis-related and other phenotypes. Neuropsychopharmacology 35:2262–2273
O'Tuathaigh CM, Desbonnet L, Moran PM, Kirby BP, Waddington JL (2011) Molecular genetic models related to schizophrenia and psychotic illness: heuristics and challenges. Curr Top Behav Neurosci 7:87–119
O'Tuathaigh CM, Clarke G, Walsh J, Desbonnet L, Petit E, O'Leary C, Tighe O, Clarke N, Karayiorgou M, Gogos JA, Dinan TG, Cryan JF, Waddington JL (2012) Genetic vs. pharmacological inactivation of COMT influences cannabinoid-induced expression of schizophrenia related phenotypes. Int J Neuropsychopharmacol 11:1–12
Oni-Orisan A, Kristiansen LV, Haroutunian V, Meador-Woodruff JH, McCullumsmith RE (2008) Altered vesicular glutamate transporter expression in the anterior cingulate cortex in schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 63:766–775
Owen MJ, O'Donovan MC, Thapar A, Craddock N (2011) Neurodevelopmental hypothesis of schizophrenia. Br J Psychiatry 198:173–175
Pan B, Huang XF, Deng C (2011) Antipsychotic treatment and neuregulin 1-ErbB4 signalling in schizophrenia. Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry 35:924–930

Papaleo F, Weinberger DR (2011) Dysbindin and Schizophrenia: it's dopamine and glutamate all over again. Biol Psychiatry 69:2–4

Papaleo F, Crawley JN, Song J, Lipska BK, Pickel J, Weinberger DR, Chen J (2008) Genetic dissection of the role of catechol-O-methyltransferase in cognition and stress reactivity in mice. J Neurosci 28:8709–8723

Papaleo F, Lipska BK, Weinberger DR (2012) Mouse models of genetic effects on cognition: relevance to schizophrenia. Neuropharmacology 62(3):1204–1220

Patil ST, Zhang L, Martenyi F, Lowe SL, Jackson KA, Andreev BV, Avedisova AS, Bardenstein LM, Gurovich IY, Morozova MA, Mosolov SN, Neznanov NG, Reznik AM, Smulevich AB, Tochilov VA, Johnson BG, Monn JA, Schoepp DD (2007) Activation of mGlu2/3 receptors as a new approach to treat schizophrenia: a randomized Phase 2 clinical trial. Nat Med 13:1102–1107

Piontkewitz Y, Assaf Y, Weiner I (2009) Clozapine administration in adolescence prevents postpubertal emergence of brain structural pathology in an animal model of schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 66:1038–1046

Piontkewitz Y, Arad M, Weiner I (2012) Tracing the development of psychosis and its prevention: what can be learned from animal models. Neuropharmacology 62:1273–1289

Pletnikov MV, Ayhan Y, Nikolskaia O, Xu Y, Ovanesov MV, Huang H, Mori S, Moran TH, Ross CA (2008) Inducible expression of mutant human DISC1 in mice is associated with brain and behavioral abnormalities reminiscent of schizophrenia. Mol Psychiatry 13:173–186

Porsolt RD, Moser PC, Castagné V (2010) Behavioral indices in antipsychotic drug discovery. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 333:632–638

Powell SB, Young JW, Ong JC, Caron MG, Geyer MA (2008) Atypical antipsychotics clozapine and quetiapine attenuate prepulse inhibition deficits in dopamine transporter knockout mice. Behav Pharmacol 19:562–565

Powell SB, Zhou X, Geyer MA (2009) Prepulse inhibition and genetic mouse models of schizophrenia. Behav Brain Res 204:282–294

Ralph RJ, Varty GB, Kelly MA, Wang YM, Caron MG, Rubinstein M, Grandy DK, Low MJ, Geyer MA (1999) The dopamine D2, but not D3 or D4, receptor subtype is essential for the disruption of prepulse inhibition produced by amphetamine in mice. J Neurosci 19:4627–4633

Ralph-Williams RJ, Lehmann-Masten V, Otero-Corchon V, Low MJ, Geyer MA (2002) Differential effects of direct and indirect dopamine agonists on prepulse inhibition: a study in D1 and D2 receptor knock-out mice. J Neurosci 22:9604–9611

Rimer M, Barrett DW, Maldonado MA, Vock VM et al (2005) Neuregulin-1 immunoglobulin-like domain mutant mice: clozapine sensitivity and impaired latent inhibition. Neuroreport 16:271–275

Ripke S, Sanders AR, Kendler KS, Levinson DF, Sklar P, Holmans PA, Lin DY, Duan J, Ophoff RA, Andreassen OA, Scolnick E, Cichon S, St Clair D, Corvin A, Gurling H, Werge T, Rujescu D, Blackwood DH, Pato CN, Malhotra AK, Purcell S, Dudbridge F, Neale BM, Rossin L, Visscher PM, Posthuma D, Ruderfer DM, Fanous A, Stefansson H, Steinberg S, Mowry BJ, Golimbet V, De Hert M, Jönsson EG, Bitter I, Pietiläinen OP, Collier DA, Tosato S, Agartz I, Albus M, Alexander M, Amdur RL, Amin F, Bass N, Bergen SE, Black DW, Børglum AD, Brown MA, Bruggeman R, Buccola NG, Byerley WF, Cahn W, Cantor RM, Carr VJ, Catts SV, Choudhury K, Cloninger CR, Cormican P, Craddock N, Danoy PA, Datta S, de Haan L, Demontis D, Dikeos D, Djurovic S, Donnelly P, Donohoe G, Duong L, Dwyer S, Fink-Jensen A, Freedman R, Freimer NB, Friedl M, Georgieva L, Giegling I, Gill M, Glenthøj B, Godard S, Hamshere M, Hansen M, Hansen T, Hartmann AM, Henskens FA, Hougaard DM, Hultman CM, Ingason A, Jablensky AV, Jakobsen KD, Jay M, Jürgens G, Kahn RS, Keller MC, Kenis G, Kenny E, Kim Y, Kirov GK, Konnerth H, Konte B, Krabbendam L, Krasucki R, Lasseter VK, Laurent C, Lawrence J, Lencz T, Lerer FB, Liang KY, Lichtenstein P, Lieberman JA, Linszen DH, Lönnqvist J, Loughland CM, Maclean AW, Maher BS, Maier W, Mallet J, Malloy P, Mattheisen M, Mattingsdal M, McGhee KA, McGrath JJ, McIntosh A, McLean DE,

McQuillin A, Melle I, Michie PT, Milanova V, Morris DW, Mors O, Mortensen PB, Moskvina V, Muglia P, Myin-Germeys I, Nertney DA, Nestadt G, Nielsen J, Nikolov I, Nordentoft M, Norton N, Nöthen MM, O'Dushlaine CT, Olincy A, Olsen L, O'Neill FA, Orntoft TF, Owen MJ, Pantelis C, Papadimitriou G, Pato MT, Peltonen L, Petursson H, Pickard B, Pimm J, Pulver AE, Puri V, Quested D, Quinn EM, Rasmussen HB, Réthelyi JM, Ribble R, Rietschel M, Riley BP, Ruggeri M, Schall U, Schulze TG, Schwab SG, Scott RJ, Shi J, Sigurdsson E, Silverman JM, Spencer CC, Stefansson K, Strange A, Strengman E, Stroup TS, Suvisaari J, Terenius L, Thirumalai S, Thygesen JH, Timm S, Toncheva D, van den Oord E, van Os J, van Winkel R, Veldink J, Walsh D, Wang AG, Wiersma D, Wildenauer DB, Williams HJ, Williams NM, Wormley B, Zammit S, Sullivan PF, O'Donovan MC, Daly MJ, Gejman PV, Schizophrenia Psychiatric Genome-Wide Association Study (GWAS) Consortium (2011) Genome-wide association study identifies five new schizophrenia loci. Nat Genet 43:969–976

Rodriguiz RM, Chu R, Caron MG, Wetsel WC (2004) Aberrant responses in social interaction of dopamine transporter knockout mice. Behav Brain Res 148:185–198

Rünker AE, O'Tuathaigh C, Dunleavy M, Morris DW, Little GE, Corvin AP, Gill M, Henshall DC, Waddington JL, Mitchell KJ (2011) Mutation of Semaphorin-6A disrupts limbic and cortical connectivity and models neurodevelopmental psychopathology. PLoS One 6: e26488

Sagata N, Iwaki A, Aramaki T, Takao K, Kura S, Tsuzuki T, Kawakami R, Ito I, Kitamura T, Sugiyama H, Miyakawa T, Fukumaki Y (2010) Comprehensive behavioral study of GluR4 knockout mice: implication in cognitive function. Genes Brain Behav 9:899–909

Salahpour A, Medvedev IO, Beaulieu JM, Gainetdinov RR, Caron MG (2007) Local knockdown of genes in the brain using small interfering RNA: a phenotypic comparison with knockout animals. Biol Psychiatry 61:65–69

Seamans JK, Yang CR (2004) The principal features and mechanisms of dopamine modulation in the prefrontal cortex. Prog Neurobiol 74:1–58

Seeman P, Guan HC (2008) Phencyclidine and glutamate agonist LY379268 stimulate dopamine D2High receptors: D2 basis for schizophrenia. Synapse 62:819–828

Seeman P, Guan HC (2009) Glutamate agonists for treating schizophrenia have affinity for dopamine D2high and D3 receptors. Synapse 63:705–709

Shen S, Lang B, Nakamoto C, Zhang F, Pu J, Kuan SL, Chatzi C, He S, Mackie I, Brandon NJ, Marquis KL, Day M, Hurko O, McCaig CD, Riedel G, St Clair D (2008) Schizophrenia-related neural and behavioral phenotypes in transgenic mice expressing truncated DISC1. J Neurosci 28:10893–10904

Shi J, Levinson DF, Duan J, Sanders AR, Zheng Y, Pe'er I, Dudbridge F, Holmans PA, Whittemore AS, Mowry BJ, Olincy A, Amin F, Cloninger CR, Silverman JM, Buccola NG, Byerley WF, Black DW, Crowe RR, Oksenberg JR, Mirel DB, Kendler KS, Freedman R, Gejman PV (2009) Common variants on chromosome 6p22.1 are associated with schizophrenia. Nature 460:753–757

Shi Y, Li Z, Xu Q, Wang T, Li T, Shen J, Wang T, Li T, Shen J, Zhang F, Chen J, Zhou G, Ji W, Li B, Xu Y, Liu D, Wang P, Yang P, Liu B, Sun W, Wan C, Qin S, He G, Steinberg S, Cichon S, Werge T, Sigurdsson E, Tosato S, Palotie A, Nöthen MM, Rietschel M, Ophoff RA, Collier DA, Rujescu D, Clair DS, Stefansson H, Stefansson K, Ji J, Wang Q, Li W, Zheng L, Zhang H, Feng G, He L (2011) Common variants on 8p12 and 1q24.2 confer risk of schizophrenia. Nat Genet 43:1224–1227

Siegel S, Rabin C (2012) Delivery systems and dosing for antipsychotics. In: Geyer MA, Gross G (eds) Current antipsychotics, vol 212, Handbook of experimental pharmacology. Springer, Heidelberg

Simpson EH, Kellendonk C, Ward RD, Richards V, Lipatova O, Fairhurst S, Kandel ER, Balsam PD (2011) Pharmacologic rescue of motivational deficit in an animal model of the negative symptoms of schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 69:928–935

Smith RE, Haroutunian V, Davis KL, Meador-Woodruff JH (2001) Expression of excitatory amino acid transporter transcripts in the thalamus of subjects with schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 158:1393–1399

Stefansson H, Sigurdsson E, Steinthorsdottir V, Bjornsdottir S, Sigmundsson T, Ghosh S, Brynjolfsson J, Gunnarsdottir S, Ivarsson O, Chou TT, Hjaltason O, Birgisdottir B, Jonsson H, Gudnadottir VG, Gudmundsdottir E, Bjornsson A, Ingvarsson B, Ingason A, Sigfusson S, Hardardottir H, Harvey RP, Lai D, Zhou M, Brunner D, Mutel V, Gonzalo A, Lemke G, Sainz J, Johannesson G, Andresson T, Gudbjartsson D, Manolescu A, Frigge ML, Gurney ME, Kong A, Gulcher JR, Petursson H, Stefansson K (2002) Neuregulin 1 and susceptibility to schizophrenia. Am J Hum Genet 71:877–892

Sullivan PF (2010) The psychiatric GWAS consortium: big science comes to psychiatry. Neuron 68:182–186

Takao K, Toyama K, Nakanishi K, Hattori S, Takamura H, Takeda M, Miyakawa T, Hashimoto R (2008) Impaired long-term memory retention and working memory in sdy mutant mice with a deletion in Dtnbp1, a susceptibility gene for schizophrenia. Mol Brain 1:11

Talbot K (2009) The sandy (sdy) mouse: a dysbindin-1 mutant relevant to schizophrenia research. Prog Brain Res 179:87–94

Tanaka KF, Ahmari SE, Leonardo ED, Richardson-Jones JW, Budreck EC, Scheiffele P, Sugio S, Inamura N, Ikenaka K, Hen R (2010) Flexible Accelerated STOP Tetracycline Operator-knockin (FAST): a versatile and efficient new gene modulating system. Biol Psychiatry 67:770–773

Tillerson JL, Caudle WM, Parent JM, Gong C, Schallert T, Miller GW (2006) Olfactory discrimination deficits in mice lacking the dopamine transporter or the D2 dopamine receptor. Behav Brain Res 172:97–105

Tost H, Braus DF, Hakimi S, Ruf M, Vollmert C, Hohn F, Meyer-Lindenberg A (2010) Acute D2 receptor blockade induces rapid, reversible remodeling in human cortical-striatal circuits. Nat Neurosci 13:920–922

Tunbridge EM, Harrison PJ, Weinberger DR (2006) Catechol-o-methyltransferase, cognition, and psychosis: Val158Met and beyond. Biol Psychiatry 60:141–151

van den Buuse M (2010) Modelling the positive symptoms of schizophrenia in genetically-modified mice: pharmacology and methodology aspects. Schizophr Bull 36:246–270

van den Buuse M, Wischhof L, Lee RX, Martin S, Karl T (2009) Neuregulin 1 hypomorphic mutant mice: enhanced baseline locomotor activity but normal psychotropic drug-induced hyperlocomotion and prepulse inhibition regulation. Int J Neuropsychopharmacol 12:1383–1393

van Os J, Kenis G, Rutten BP (2010) The environment and schizophrenia. Nature 468:203–212

Waddington JL, O'Tuathaigh C, O'Sullivan G, Tomiyama K, Koshikawa N, Croke DT (2005) Phenotypic studies on dopamine receptor subtype and associated signal transduction mutants: insights and challenges from 10 years at the psychopharmacology-molecular biology interface. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 181:611–638

Waddington JL, O'Sullivan GJ, Tomiyama K (2011) Regulation of orofacial movement: dopamine receptor mechanisms and mutant models. Int Rev Neurobiol 97:39–60

Waddington JL, Hennessy RJ, O'Tuathaigh CMP, Owoeye O, Russell V (2012) Schizophrenia and the lifetime trajectory of psychotic illness: developmental neuroscience and pathobiology, *redux*. In: Brown AS, Patterson PH (eds) The Origins of Schizophrenia. Columbia University Press, New York, NY, pp 3–21

Wallén-Mackenzie A, Nordenankar K, Fejgin K, Lagerström MC, Emilsson L, Fredriksson R, Wass C, Andersson D, Egecioglu E, Andersson M, Strandberg J, Lindhe O, Schiöth HB, Chergui K, Hanse E, Långström B, Fredriksson A, Svensson L, Roman E, Kullander K (2009) Restricted cortical and amygdaloid removal of vesicular glutamate transporter 2 in preadolescent mice impacts dopaminergic activity and neuronal circuitry of higher brain function. J Neurosci 29:2238–2251

Wiedholz LM, Owens WA, Horton RE, Feyder M, Karlsson RM, Hefner K, Sprengel R, Celikel T, Daws LC, Holmes A (2008) Mice lacking the AMPA GluR1 receptor exhibit striatal hyperdopaminergia and 'schizophrenia-related' behaviors. Mol Psychiatry 13:631–640

Williams HJ, Owen MJ, O'Donovan MC (2007) Is COMT a susceptibility gene for schizophrenia? Schizophr Bull 33:635–641

Williams HJ, Norton N, Dwyer S, Moskvina V, Nikolov I, Carroll L, Georgieva L, Williams NM, Morris DW, Quinn EM, Giegling I, Ikeda M, Wood J, Lencz T, Hultman C, Lichtenstein P, Thiselton D, Maher BS, Malhotra AK, Riley B, Kendler KS, Gill M, Sullivan P, Sklar P, Purcell S, Nimgaonkar VL, Kirov G, Holmans P, Corvin A, Rujescu D, Craddock N, Owen MJ, O'Donovan MC, Molecular Genetics of Schizophrenia Collaboration (MGS) International Schizophrenia Consortium (ISC), SGENE-plus, GROUP (2011) Fine mapping of ZNF804A and genome-wide significant evidence for its involvement in schizophrenia and bipolar disorder. Mol Psychiatry 16:429–441

Xu R, Hranilovic D, Fetsko LA, Bucan M, Wang Y (2002) Dopamine D2S and D2L receptors may differentially contribute to the actions of antipsychotic and psychotic agents in mice. Mol Psychiatry 7:1075–1082

Young JW, Powell SB, Risbrough V, Marston HM, Geyer MA (2009) Using the MATRICS to guide development of a preclinical cognitive test battery for research in schizophrenia. Pharmacol Ther 122:150–202

Young JW, Powell SB, Geyer MA (2012a) Mouse pharmacological models of cognitive disruption relevant to schizophrenia. Neuropharmacology 62:1381–1390

Young JW et al (2012b) Behavioral animal models to assess pro-cognitive treatments for schizophrenia. In: Geyer MA, Gross G (eds) Novel antischizophrenia treatments, vol 213, Handbook of experimental pharmacology. Springer, Heidelberg

Yue WH, Wang HF, Sun LD, Tang FL, Liu ZH, Zhang HX, Li WQ, Zhang YL, Zhang Y, Ma CC, Du B, Wang LF, Ren YQ, Yang YF, Hu XF, Wang Y, Deng W, Tan LW, Tan YL, Chen Q, Xu GM, Yang GG, Zuo XB, Yan H, Ruan YY, Lu TL, Han X, Ma XH, Wang Y, Cai LW, Jin C, Zhang HY, Yan J, Mi WF, Yin XY, Ma WB, Liu Q, Kang L, Sun W, Pan CY, Shuang M, Yang FD, Wang CY, Yang JL, Li KQ, Ma X, Li LJ, Yu X, Li QZ, Huang X, Lv LX, Li T, Zhao GP, Huang W, Zhang XJ, Zhang D (2011) Genome-wide association study identifies a susceptibility locus for schizophrenia in Han Chinese at 11p11.2. Nat Genet 43:1228–1231

Zhang R, Su B (2008) MicroRNA regulation and the variability of human cortical gene expression. Nucleic Acids Res 36:4621–4628

# 5-$HT_{2C}$ Agonists as Therapeutics for the Treatment of Schizophrenia

**Sharon Rosenzweig-Lipson, Thomas A. Comery, Karen L. Marquis, Jonathan Gross, and John Dunlop**

## Contents



S. Rosenzweig-Lipson (✉)
Neuroscience, Pfizer Worldwide Research and Development, Groton, CT, USA

IVS Pharma Consulting, LLC, 8 Stage Coach Run, East Brunswick, NJ 08816, USA
e-mail: srlipson@gmail.com

T.A. Comery • K.L. Marquis • J. Gross
Neuroscience, Pfizer Worldwide Research and Development, Groton, CT, USA

J. Dunlop
Neuroscience, Pfizer Worldwide Research and Development, Groton, CT, USA

Neuroscience iMed, Astra Zeneca, Cambridge, MA 02142

M.A. Geyer and G. Gross (eds.), *Novel Antischizophrenia Treatments*,
Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 213,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-25758-2_6, 

**Abstract** The 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor is a highly complex, highly regulated receptor which is widely distributed throughout the brain. The 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor couples to multiple signal transduction pathways leading to engagement of a number of intracellular signaling molecules. Moreover, there are multiple allelic variants of the 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor and the receptor is subject to RNA editing in the coding regions. The complexity of this receptor is further emphasized by the studies suggesting the utility of either agonists or antagonists in the treatment of schizophrenia. While several 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists have demonstrated clinical efficacy in obesity (lorcaserin, PRX-000933), the focus of this review is on the therapeutic potential of 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists in schizophrenia. To this end, the preclinical profile of 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists from a neurochemical, electrophysiological, and a behavioral perspective is indicative of antipsychotic-like efficacy without extrapyramidal symptoms or weight gain. Recently, the selective 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonist vabicaserin demonstrated clinical efficacy in a Phase II trial in schizophrenia patients without weight gain and with low EPS liability. These data are highly encouraging and suggest that 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists are potential therapeutics for the treatment of psychiatric disorders.

**Keywords** 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists • Vabicaserin • RNA-editing • Schizophrenia • Weight gain • Extrapyramidal symptoms

## 1 Introduction

Schizophrenia is a complex disorder with multiple domains including positive, negative, cognitive, and depressive symptoms. While existing agents treat positive symptoms of schizophrenia relatively well, it comes at a price with respect to side effects related to extrapyramidal side effects (EPS) and weight gain/diabetogenesis. Over the last several decades, predominant interest in serotonergic targets with respect to schizophrenia has centered around 5-$HT_{2A}$ antagonism/inverse agonism and indeed second-generation antipsychotics (SGAs) which combine 5-$HT_{2A}$ antagonism with $D_2$ antagonism reduce the EPS liability associated with first-generation antipsychotics (FGAs). More recently, interest has emerged in the therapeutic potential of compounds with agonist activities at 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptors to address unmet medical needs across the symptom domains of schizophrenia. Indeed, 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists have been suggested as treatments for multiple symptom domains of schizophrenia including positive, negative, cognitive, and depressive symptoms without the adverse events or tolerability issues associated with existing agents.

## 2 5-$HT_{2C}$ Receptor

### *2.1 5-$HT_{2C}$ Receptor Localization*

The 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor is a member of the seven transmembrane-spanning G-protein coupled receptor (GPCR) superfamily and is classified within the 5-$HT_2$ sub-family

of 14 serotonin receptor subtypes based on sequence homology to the 5-$HT_{2A}$ and 5-$HT_{2B}$ receptors, and their common signal transduction pathway, via activation of the G-proteins $G_q$ and $G_{12/13}$. Receptor localization studies have revealed predominant central nervous system localization with widespread expression of the 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor subtype throughout the brain, suggestive of an important role in CNS function. More specifically, localization of this receptor to the limbic system, frontal cortex, and hippocampus (Abramowski et al. 1995; Hoffman and Mezey 1989; Marazziti et al. 1999) are of particular relevance to the understanding of the potential involvement of this receptor subtype in schizophrenia.

## 2.2 *Multiple Signaling Pathways and Agonist Trafficking*

Like many GPCRs, the 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor is coupled to multiple signal transduction pathways leading to engagement of a number of intracellular signaling molecules. This coupling is particularly diverse for the 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor including signal transduction via activation of $G_{q/11}$, $G_{12/13}$, and $G_i$ G-proteins, activation of phospholipases A, C, and D, and signaling via inositol second messengers, arachidonic acid, and elevations in intracellular calcium levels (Miller 2005). In addition, the capacity for 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor agonists to differentially activate distinct signal transduction pathways coupled to receptor activation has been demonstrated (Berg et al. 1998). For example, 3-trifluoromethylphenylpiperazine has been shown to preferentially activate phospholipase C-mediated phosphoinositide hydrolysis while lysergic acid diethylamide favored the phospholipase $A_2$ ($PLA_2$)-coupled release of arachidonic acid (AA). This property of so-called agonist-directed trafficking of receptor stimulus (Kenakin 1995) has been proposed as a means of accounting for the ability of an agonist to selectively stimulate a subset of signal pathways coupled to a single receptor subtype. While this receptor property has been clearly demonstrated in vitro, the extent to which preferential activation of one signal transduction pathway over another might impact drug activity in vivo is not understood.

## 2.3 *RNA Editing*

A further degree of complexity of 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor functional activity is governed by RNA editing in the coding region of the receptor resulting in a possible 32 mRNA variants and 24 protein isoforms (Niswender et al. 1998). The resultant receptor isoforms differ in many aspects of receptor signaling including constitutive activation, magnitude and potency of responses to receptor agonists, and receptor desensitization. Basal activity or constitutive receptor activation is the most pronounced in the unedited INI variant, is intermediate in partially edited receptor isoforms, and is lowest in the fully edited isoform VGV (Herrick-Davis et al. 1999; Niswender et al. 1999). The existence of RNA-edited 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor isoforms also presents a different window of drug-induced activation of the receptor depending on the

particular isoform expressed. Moreover, a number of antipsychotic drugs have been shown to exhibit inverse agonist activity at the constitutively active INI isoform resulting in diminished basal activity (Herrick-Davis et al. 2000; Niswender et al. 1999; Rauser et al. 2001). Indeed, the in vitro functional profile of antipsychotic drugs such as olanzapine and aripiprazole at the cloned 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor expressed in cell lines appears to be highly dependent on the isoform expressed (Zhang et al. 2006). In addition, the ability of agonists to differentially activate different signal transduction pathways as described above is influenced by the editing state of the receptor (Berg et al. 2008). Although the in vivo consequences of RNA editing of the 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor are poorly understood, the generation of knock-in mouse models expressing the unedited INI and fully edited VGV isoforms provides tools that should be of value in elucidating the biological relevance of editing in vivo (Kawahara et al. 2008). Consistent with a role for the 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor in psychiatric disorders, and possible role of RNA editing in influencing, recent behavioral studies in 5-$HT_{2C}$ -INI and 5-$HT_{2C}$ -VGV knock-in mice have revealed altered anxiety and depression-related phenotypes in the elevated plus-maze and forced swim/tail suspension models, respectively (Mombereau et al. 2010).

## 2.4 RNA Editing and Schizophrenia

Of the possible 24 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor isoforms, the fully edited (VSV, VGV isoforms), unedited (INI), and partially edited (VNI, VSI, VNV) are highly represented in rat and human brain. With respect to RNA editing of the 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor and schizophrenia, a limited number of studies have been documented and have not provided strong evidence in favor of altered editing in the disease state. In two independent studies, no changes in the relative distribution of the INI, VNV, and VSV isoforms of the receptor were observed between controls and schizophrenia patients (Dracheva et al. 2003; Niswender et al. 2001). In contrast, in a small study of five patients and controls an increase in the expression of the INI isoform in the frontal cortex of schizophrenia patients was reported (Sodhi et al. 2001), although the small sample size precludes a definitive conclusion from this study. Clearly, additional studies are required to resolve this important question since, as discussed above, there are functional consequences associated with different isoform expression, e.g., an increase in the expression of the INI isoform would be associated with increased basal receptor activity, increased sensitivity to serotonin, and a potential for inverse agonist activity of antipsychotic drugs.

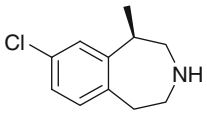
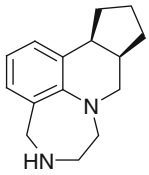
## 2.5 5-$HT_{2C}$ Genetic Polymorphisms and Schizophrenia

In addition to RNA-edited variants of the 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor, a number of genetic polymorphisms in the promoter and coding region of the 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor gene have

been identified. These include a single nucleotide polymorphism (SNP) in the coding region (68 G/C; cys/ser substitution) and three SNPs in the promoter region close to the transcription initiation site (Reynolds et al. 2005). Unlike the RNA edited isoforms, there are no definitive functional consequences of these SNPs, although two of the SNPs in the promoter region have been shown to result in decreased promoter activity (Hill and Reynolds 2007), possibly leading to decreased receptor expression. These SNPs have been studied extensively in the context of antipsychotic drug-induced side effect liability in particular weight gain (Müller and Kennedy 2006), extrapyramidal side effects (EPS), and tardive dyskinesia (Gunes et al. 2008; Reynolds et al. 2005; Zhang et al. 2002). The former is particularly relevant in pharmacogenetics since 5-HT$_{2C}$ receptor antagonism has been implicated in antipsychotic drug-induced weight gain, and 5-HT$_{2C}$ receptor agonists reduce food intake and weight gain (Clifton et al. 2000; Dunlop et al. 2005; Rosenzweig-Lipson et al. 2006). An important role for the 5-HT$_{2C}$ receptor subtype in appetite regulation and obesity is further supported by the phenotype of 5-HT$_{2C}$ receptor knock-out mice; these animals are insensitive to the hypophagic activity of the 5-HT$_{2C}$ receptor agonist mCPP, are obese and hyperphagic, and have elevated insulin and leptin levels and impaired glucose utilization (Heisler et al. 1998; Nonogaki et al. 1998; Tecott et al. 1995). Association studies of 5-HT$_{2C}$ receptor polymorphisms and antipsychotic drug-induced weight gain have provided mixed results (Müller and Kennedy 2006), although more than one study has now suggested a significant association with the 759 C/T promoter polymorphism, with the presence of the T allele being associated with less antipsychotic drug-induced weight gain (Ellingrod et al. 2005; Miller 2005; Reynolds et al. 2002; Templeman et al. 2005). However, just as many studies have failed to provide any evidence for a significant association between 5-HT$_{2C}$ receptor polymorphisms and antipsychotic drug-induced weight gain (Kuzman et al. 2008; Park et al. 2008; Yevtushenko et al. 2008). A recent review has speculated that the inconsistent results in these genetic association studies might be attributed, in part, to the complex repertoire of receptor isoforms generated by RNA editing and an incomplete and inconsistent coverage of these variants across studies (Drago and Serretti 2009).

Genetic association studies with clozapine (Masellis et al. 1998; Rietschel et al. 1997) and olanzapine (Ellingrod et al. 2002) have not revealed an association with the 5-HT$_{2C}$ receptor polymorphisms and their antipsychotic drug efficacy. Since both these agents exhibit 5-HT$_{2C}$ receptor antagonist activity, this latter observation is of particular relevance in the context of the antipsychotic-like activity of selective 5-HT$_{2C}$ receptor agonists, discussed in the next section. Lastly, recent evidence supports an association between the presence of the 23Ser variant and a higher incidence of EPS and tardive dyskinesia, findings that appear quite robust and replicated in a number of independent cohort studies (Gunes et al. 2007, 2008; Segman et al. 2000) [plus (Al-Janabi et al. 2009; Gunes et al. 2008)]. As discussed below, 5-HT$_{2C}$ receptor antagonist activity, although not predicted preclinically to offer antipsychotic-like activity, might be beneficial in the context of these antipsychotic drug-induced side effects.

**Table 1** 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists in the clinic

| Drug | Structure | Company | Dev status | Indication(s) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Lorcaserin |  | Arena | NDA submitted | Obesity |
| Vabicaserin |  | Pfizer | Phase II | Schizophrenia |
| PRX00933 | | Proximagen | Phase II | Obesity |

## 3 Medicinal Chemistry of Selected 5-$HT_{2C}$ Modulators

Efforts in the design and synthesis of 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor modulators trace their etiology back to utilization of the 5-HT core. There are several current, thorough, and extensive reviews pertaining to efforts in the discovery of 5-$HT_{2C}$ (Lacivita and Leopoldo 2006) modulators, together with summaries of primary target affinities and potencies, as well as relevant in vitro and in vivo characterization data. The sheer volume of available material pertaining to 5-$HT_{2C}$ is a strong indicator of continued interest from medicinal chemists (Table 1).

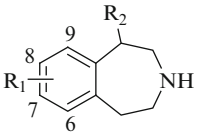
### *3.1 Serotonin 5-$HT_{2C}$ Receptor Agonists*

#### 3.1.1 Lorcaserin

The ability of 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor agonists to reduce food intake provides an opportunity to target additional therapeutic indications including obesity. Lorcaserin, from Arena Pharmaceuticals, has been submitted in an NDA for obesity that was recently backed by an FDA panel. Lorcaserin incorporates a benzazepine core/moiety, extensively studied as a 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor preferred scaffold.

An initial exploration of benzene ring substitution provided a set of compounds demonstrating the importance of substitution at the 8-position (Table 2, **1a–e**). The presence of a 7-methoxy group is due solely to facilitate compound preparation. Subsequent removal of the 7-methoxy group maintains 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor potency for the 8-chloro compound (**1f**) with an accompanying decrease in potency at both the 5-$HT_{2A}$ and 5-$HT_{2B}$ receptor. However, most other 8-substituents demonstrate a

**Table 2** Structures and effects of selected benzazepine derivatives on 5-$HT_{2C}$, 5-$HT_{2A}$, and 5-$HT_{2B}$ function in PI turnover assay




2

| | | | $EC_{50}$ (% $E_{max}$) | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Compound | $R_1$ | $R_2$ | 5-$HT_{2C}$ | 5-$HT_{2A}$ | 5-$HT_{2B}$ |
| **1a** | H | Me | 2,000 | >10,000 | Not active |
| **1b** | 7-OMe, 8-Br | Me | 5 | 80 | 100 |
| **1c** | 7-OMe, 8-Cl | Me | 11 | 80 | 140 |
| **1d** | 7-OMe, 8-$CF_3$ | Me | 4 | 42 | 130 |
| **1e** | 7-OMe, 8-Et | Me | 28 | 11 | 180 |
| **1f** | 8-Cl | Me | 11 | 260 | 1,100 |
| **1g** | 8-OMe | Me | 420 | 940 | 780 |
| **1h** | 6,8-diCl | Me | 20 | 170 | 840 |
| **1i** | 7,8-diCl | Me | 4 | 16 | 78 |
| **1j** | 8,9-diCl | Me | 6 | 220 | 1,800 |
| **1k** | 8-Cl | H | 12 (85) | 90 (100) | 1,000 (100) |
| **1l** | 8-Cl | (*R*)-Me | 11 (100) | 190 (70) | 1,000 (100) |
| **1m** | 8-Cl | (*S*)-Me | 16 (100) | 265 (70) | 1,400 (100) |
| **1n** | 8,9-diCl | (*R*)-Me | 230 (85) | 2,400 (100) | >10,000 |
| **1o** | 8,9-diCl | (*S*)-Me | 3 (90) | 135 (35) | (25 @ 10 μM) |

decrease in 5-$HT_{2C}$ potency (**1g**). The reintroduction of substitution along with an 8-chloro substituent affords compounds with at best a similar in vitro profile or reduced selectivity (**1i, j**). The presence of alkyl substitution at $R_2$, presumably to address issues of novelty, demonstrates optimal 5-$HT_{2C}$ potency with $R_2$ = hydrogen or methyl (**1k**). In general, these compounds exhibit minimal (~10 to 100-fold) selectivity for 5-$HT_{2C}$ versus 5-$HT_{2A}$ with only a slight improvement in 5-$HT_{2B}$ selectivity. A small effect is observed with respect to the stereochemical configuration of the $R_2$ methyl group (**1l, m**), with the (*R*)-enantiomer serving as the eutomer with respect to 5-$HT_{2C}$ potency. Additionally, the functional selectivity appears to track with the eutomer. The presence of 9-substitution further magnifies the observed ratio between eutomer and distomer (**1n, o**), however, the eutomer appears to switch to the (*S*)-enantiomer.

### 3.1.2 Vabicaserin

Vabicaserin, which has completed a Phase II trial in schizophrenia, resulted from an effort evaluating a series of cycloalkyl diazepinoindoles demonstrating modest 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor affinity with the observation that increasing ring size improves

**Table 3** Structures and effects of selected cycloalkyldiazepinoindole, indoline, and quinoline derivatives on binding and function (PI turnover) at 5-$HT_{2C}$, 5-$HT_{2A}$ and 5-$HT_{2B}$ receptors

| | | Ki (nM) | | | $EC_{50}$ nM (% $E_{max}$) | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Compound | *n* | 5-$HT_{2C}$ | 5-$HT_{2A}$ | 5-$HT_{2B}$ | 5-$HT_{2C}$ | 5-$HT_{2A}$ | 5-$HT_{2B}$ |
| **2a** | 1 | 97 | 922 | | (90) | (9) | |
| **2b** | 2 | 56 | 2,530 | | 426 (90) | 260,000 (60) | |
| **2c** | 3 | 38 | 199 | | (73) | | |
| **2d** | 4 | 13 | 36 | >5,000 | (102) | >64,000 (80) | |
| **2e** | 1 | 7 | 136 | 2,450 | 55 (80) | Inactive | 440 (35) |
| **3a** | 1 | 25 | 554 | 60 | 18 (100) | >10,000 (13) | |
| **3b** | 2 | 24 | 465 | 318 | 65 (60) | Inactive | Inactive |
| **3c** | 3 | 13 | 595 | 16 % | 261 (70) | Inactive | 2,267 (30) |
| Vabicaserin | | 3 | 152 | 14 | 32 (100) | 41,000 (20) | Inactive |

target receptor affinity (Table 3, **2a–d**) (Sabb et al. 2004). However, it should be noted that while an increase in ring size from the 6-membered ring (**2b**) to the 8-membered ring (**2d**) also leads to an increase in 5-$HT_{2A}$ receptor affinity, these compounds demonstrate little 5-$HT_{2A}$ functional potency. Subsequently, it was disclosed at a 2006 national meeting of the American Chemical Society (Ramamoorthy et al. 2006) that reduction of the 2,3-indole double bond of **2a** led to a significant improvement in 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor binding (**2e**). While **2e** demonstrates high affinity for the 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor and is inactive in a 5-$HT_{2A}$ functional screen, the compound only demonstrates marginal 5-$HT_{2B}$ potency selectivity, though only exhibiting partial agonism. Expansion of the central ring as in **3** and evaluation of a series of angular diazapinoquinolines (**3a–c**) afforded compounds, that while possessing poor selectivity vs. 5-$HT_{2A/B}$ affinity, demonstrate no activity in a 5-$HT_{2A}$ or 5-$HT_{2B}$ receptor functional assay. Further investigation of benzene ring substitution afforded compounds with little or no improvement in 5-$HT_{2C}$ affinity. Ultimately, resolution of the enantiomers of **3a** provided vabicaserin, a potent 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonist that functions as an antagonist at 5-$HT_{2A}$ and 5-$HT_{2B}$ receptors.

## 4 5-$HT_{2C}$ Antagonism Versus Agonism

### *4.1 Current Antipsychotics: 5-$HT_{2C}$ Inverse Agonists/Antagonists*

All clinically effective antipsychotics share in common the ability to antagonize dopamine (DA) $D_2$ receptors. Most of the SGAs, those agents with reduced potential to induce EPS, also produce 5-$HT_{2A}$ receptor antagonism (Miyamoto et al. 2005). In addition, many SGAs, including the gold standard clozapine, show antagonist effects at 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptors both in vitro and in vivo (Wood et al. 2006). Over the last few years both 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists and antagonists have been suggested as treatments for schizophrenia, leading to much confusion regarding how to target this receptor.

In order to fully evaluate the potential utility of 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists versus antagonists for the treatment of schizophrenia, it is important to review the neurochemical, electrophysiological, and behavioral data.

## *4.2 5-$HT_{2C}$ Antagonists: Neurochemistry and Electrophysiology*

5-$HT_{2C}$ antagonism is reported to enhance DA neurotransmission in prefrontal cortex (Gobert et al. 2000), suggesting that this mechanism might contribute to improvements in negative symptoms and possibly cognition. In preclinical studies, a similar enhancement in DA neurotransmission has also been observed in the nucleus accumbens following treatment with some, but not all 5-$HT_{2C}$ antagonists. In this regard, SB-206553 (Di Matteo et al. 1998), but not SB-243213 (Shilliam and Dawson 2005), elevates nucleus accumbens DA, a region putatively associated with the positive symptoms of schizophrenia. While the increase in frontal cortex DA produced by a 5-$HT_{2C}$ antagonist may be valuable, increases in nucleus accumbens DA may be a liability for a 5-$HT_{2C}$ antagonist. Although this profile is similar to that of SGAs, the blockade of DA $D_2$ receptors postsynaptically by antipsychotics mitigates against this increase in DA in the nucleus accumbens. However, a selective 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor antagonist may exacerbate positive symptoms of schizophrenia by elevating subcortical DA neurotransmission. In contrast, electrophysiological studies have shown that chronic administration of both SB-200646A and SB-243213 decrease the number of spontaneously active DA neurons in the ventral tegmental area (VTA) but not in the substantia nigra (SN), indicative of an atypical antipsychotic-like profile (Blackburn et al. 2002, 2006). Interestingly, SB-243213, but not SB-200646A, shows an acute decrease in the number of spontaneously active DA neurons in the VTA; however, these effects are not dose-dependent (Blackburn et al. 2002) and are not accompanied by decreases in nucleus accumbens DA (Shilliam and Dawson 2005).

## *4.3 5-$HT_{2C}$ Antagonists: Behavior*

Despite these neurochemical and electrophysiological findings, selective 5-$HT_{2C}$ antagonists fail to demonstrate antipsychotic-like efficacy in preclinical models (Di Giovanni et al. 1999; Marquis et al. 2007). However, 5-$HT_{2C}$ antagonism may have beneficial effects in offsetting the extrapyramidal side effects of antipsychotics. To this end, the 5-$HT_{2C}$ antagonist SB-228357 attenuates haloperidol-induced catalepsy in rats (Reavill et al. 1999). Additionally, it has been suggested that in models of tardive dyskinesia, 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptors become hypersensitive (Ikram et al. 2007) and that 5-$HT_{2C}$ antagonists may be effective in reducing the vacuous movements in a tardive dyskinesia model (Ikram et al. 2007). These results, coupled with the association of the 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor polymorphisms with EPS and TD (Gunes et al.

2007, 2008; Zhang et al. 2002) suggest that 5-$HT_{2C}$ antagonists may be valuable treatments for EPS and TD.

## 4.4 5-$HT_{2C}$ Agonists: Neurochemistry and Electrophysiology

The electrophysiological and neurochemical evidence for reported selective 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor agonists is more consistent and supports the idea that these compounds produce antipsychotic-like properties with low potential for EPS side effects. Along these lines, acute or chronic administration of 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists such as RO 60-00175, WAY-163909, and vabicaserin significantly diminish the number of spontaneously active DA neurons of the VTA without significantly affecting the number of spontaneously active DA neurons in the SN (Di Giovanni et al. 2000; Di Matteo et al. 1999; Marquis et al. 2006, 2007). Similarly, acute or chronic administration of these 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists selectively reduces dopamine levels in the nucleus accumbens relative to striatum (Di Giovanni et al. 2000; Di Matteo et al. 1999; Dunlop et al. 2005; Marquis et al. 2006, 2007). The decrease in VTA DA cell firing relative to SN DA cell firing coupled with a decrease in nucleus accumbens DA are similar to the effects of clozapine following chronic but not acute administration (Marquis et al. 2007; Shilliam and Dawson 2005). That these compounds produce these effects both acutely and chronically may reflect a more rapid onset of activity. The selective effects of 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor agonists on the mesolimbic DA pathway suggests that 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor agonists should have antipsychotic efficacy without the EPS side effects associated with typical antipsychotics.

## 4.5 5-$HT_{2C}$ Agonists: Behavior

The behavioral profile of 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists provides even more compelling data supporting the use of 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists in the treatment of schizophrenia. In this regard, CP-809,101, WAY-163909, and vabicaserin inhibit conditioned avoidance responding in rats, block apomorphine-induced climbing but not apomorphine-induced stereotypy in mice, and reverse PCP and amphetamine-induced locomotor activity, suggesting antipsychotic potential (Di Giovanni et al. 2000; Di Matteo et al. 1999; Marquis et al. 2006, 2007; Siuciak et al. 2007). Moreover, many of these effects are antagonized by pretreatment with 5-$HT_{2C}$ antagonists. Despite the potential for 5-$HT_{2C}$ antagonists to offset or reverse EPS or TD effects of antipsychotics (Ikram et al. 2007; Kostrzewa et al. 2007), 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists do not induce catalepsy, suggesting low potential for extrapyramidal motor symptom side effects (Di Giovanni et al. 2000; Di Matteo et al. 1999; Marquis et al. 2006, 2007; Siuciak et al. 2007). These antipsychotic-like effects in the absence of catalepsy are consistent with the mesolimbic selectivity observed neurochemically and electrophysiologically. In contrast with the effects of 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists in animal models predictive of antipsychotic-like

activity, selective 5-$HT_{2C}$ antagonists fail to demonstrate antipsychotic-like efficacy in these models (Di Giovanni et al. 1999; Marquis et al. 2007).

Interestingly, 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists also affect prepulse inhibition of acoustic startle. CP-809,101 is reported to attenuate an apomorphine-induced deficit, while WAY-163909 and vabicaserin and other novel 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists affect deficits induced by MK-801, PCP, or DOI and enhance prepulse inhibition in DBA2N mice (Kozikowski et al. 2010; Marquis et al. 2006, 2007; Rosenzweig-Lipson et al. 2007a; Siuciak et al. 2007). Thus, stimulation of 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptors can affect processes involved in sensorimotor gating, a pre-attentive process which is abnormal in schizophrenia (Rosenzweig-Lipson et al. 2007a; Siuciak et al. 2007). These data suggest the potential for 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists to influence cognition-related processes. Additionally, both WAY-163909 and vabicaserin elevate levels of medial prefrontal cortex acetylcholine that is consistent with potential procognitive activity (Ellenbroek 2004). Indeed, both CP-801,101 and vabicaserin improve performance in a novel object recognition test (Marquis et al. 2007; Rosenzweig-Lipson et al. 2007a). Similar effects have not been demonstrated for 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor antagonists.

Recent studies have also suggested that 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists may be effective in treating impulsivity. In this regard, both Ro 60-0175 and WAY-163909 decrease premature responses in a long intertrial interval variation of the 5-choice serial reaction time task (Rosenzweig-Lipson et al. 2007a; Siuciak et al. 2007). Conversely, the 5-$HT_{2C}$ antagonist SB-242084 enhanced premature responding, suggestive of increased impulsivity (Fletcher et al. 2007; Navarra et al. 2008), effects likely mediated via the nucleus accumbens (Fletcher et al. 2007; Winstanley et al. 2004).

The role 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor activity plays in either the efficacy or the side-effect liabilities of the current antipsychotics is not fully known. Recently, the 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor has been implicated in the weight gain liability associated with several antipsychotic medications (Robinson et al. 2007), while 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonism induces reduction in feeding behavior and decreases weight gain (Chagnon 2006). Taken together with the antipsychotic-like effects of 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists, these studies suggest that 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists may produce antipsychotic activity in the absence of the weight gain and diabetogenesis associated with atypical antipsychotics that are also 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor antagonists.

These studies suggest the potential for selective 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor agonists to address positive and cognitive symptoms of schizophrenia. Additional evidence suggests the potential to treat mood disorder symptoms as 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists are effective in multiple animal models of depression (forced swim test, olfactory bulbectomy, resident-intruder) without evidence of sexual dysfunction (Rosenzweig-Lipson et al. 2007b). These effects, coupled with the reduced risk for extrapyramidal side effects and weight gain, suggest that selective 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor agonists represent a potential treatment approach for schizophrenia.

## 5 Translational Approaches

Biomarkers for 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor activation include demonstration of sufficient drug exposure at the target site of action, binding to the 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor at a sufficient level to drive measures of pharmacological activity. Evaluating each of these, and developing an understanding of the exposure–response relationship for selective 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists both preclinically and clinically can significantly enhance the ability to evaluate potential therapeutic efficacy and increase confidence to move forward with larger, more complex clinical development plans in schizophrenia patients.

The first two translatable biomarker approaches, exposure and binding at target, are limited for 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists. Demonstration of drug exposure within the target tissue cannot be readily obtained clinically, however, with sufficient characterization of chemical properties and a robust preclinical pharmacokinetic evaluation an understanding of the relationship between unbound compound level in the CSF and target tissue concentration can be established. The development of a clear model of drug exposure to pharmacological efficacy in a predictive preclinical assay is essential for dose selection for clinical biomarker and efficacy studies. Binding to target in vivo for 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists is currently limited by the lack of a robust radioligand suitable for PET receptor occupancy studies. The lack of robust methods to determine receptor occupancy and guide dose selection for clinical trials presents a significant challenge for development of selective 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists and increases the importance of identifying a robust biomarker of pharmacological activity.

Multiple approaches have been considered to monitor pharmacological activity at the 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptor including measurement of plasma or CSF biomarkers, neurophysiological activity (qEEG and/or sleep), and indirect assessment of extracellular dopaminergic tone. A number of publications (Anderson et al. 2002; Bagdy and Makara 1995; Damjanoska et al. 2003; Meltzer and Maes 1995; Sargent et al. 1997) have reported changes in plasma levels of adrenocorticotrophic hormone, oxytocin, or prolactin following treatment with 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists. The agents used in these studies (DOI, m-CPP, Ro 60-0175) are not selective and many of the observed effects are not blocked by 5-$HT_{2C}$ antagonists and often, at least partially, blocked following treatment with non-5-$HT_{2C}$ antagonists making interpretation of these activities as 5-$HT_{2C}$-related complicated. Although the lack of specificity of the observed peripheral effects limit their utility it may be possible, depending upon the receptor affinity profile of the compound of interest to use one of these plasma biomarkers as a surrogate measurement of central activity. Significant caution must be exercised in the interpretation of these results but if a clear understanding of the relationship between effects of 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonism and off-target effects is developed, they still may provide evidence of penetration of the compound into the brain as well as guidance on drug exposure.

Polysomnography (PSG) is an additional approach that has been suggested to monitor 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonist effects. Modulation of serotoninergic activity shows a

clear association with the sleep–wake cycle, with enhanced 5-HT neurotransmission promoting wakefulness and decreases in both slow-wave and REM sleep. Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) have been shown to depress REM sleep in animals, including rats and in healthy humans as well as in patients with MDD. Impact of SSRIs on sleep architecture include delayed onset of REM, reduced amount of REM, decreased amount of slow wave sleep, and increased nocturnal arousals (Mayers and Baldwin 2005; Tsuno et al. 2005). 5-HT$_{2C}$ receptors may play a role in mediating the effects of antidepressants on sleep architecture, as 5-HT$_{2C}$ receptor KO mice show sleep abnormalities, including more wakefulness and fewer transitions between nonREM and REM during sleep (Frank et al. 2002). Treatment with 5-HT$_{2C}$ agonists also increases quiet waking time and decrease time spent in REM in rats (Martin et al. 1998) whereas blockade of 5-HT$_{2C}$ receptors results in increased slow wave sleep in healthy volunteers (Sharpley et al. 1990, 2000). Although there is strong evidence to suggest that PSG may be a useful biomarker of 5-HT$_{2C}$ agonism for antidepressant activity, the relationship between 5-HT$_{2C}$ effects on sleep and potential antipsychotic effects is unclear. The degree of 5-HT$_{2C}$ activation and receptor occupancy to drive the two different effects may be quite different and therefore a pharmacodynamic biomarker of 5-HT$_{2C}$ activation more tightly coupled to its potential antipsychotic efficacy is desired.

5-HT$_{2C}$ receptors are present in areas of the basal ganglia associated with schizophrenia and activation of this receptor leads to a selective reduction of DA levels in mesolimbic areas without impacting DA tone in the nigrostriatal pathway (Di Giovanni et al. 2000; Di Matteo et al. 2002; Marquis et al. 2007). This selective decrease in VTA-nucleus accumbens dopaminergic activity is believed to play a key role in current antipsychotic treatment. Measurement of the activity or dopaminergic tone in the mesolimbic pathway may provide an ideal biomarker of 5-HT$_{2C}$ agonism. Stark et al. (2008) have demonstrated that treatment with the nonselective 5-HT$_{2C/1B}$ agonist compound m-CPP produces robust decreases in cerebral blood flow (BOLD-fMRI) in the rat VTA, an effect which is blocked by a 5-HT$_{2C}$, but not 5-HT$_{1B}$, selective antagonist (Stark et al. 2008). Similar studies with m-CPP have been performed in human subjects (Anderson et al. 2002); however, the effect of treatment on the mesolimbic pathway was not evaluated. Although definitive preclinical or clinical studies with a selective 5-HT$_{2C}$ ligand have not been reported, the use of functional imaging holds promise as a noninvasive method for demonstrating mesolimbic selective effects.

An alternative method that may prove useful for demonstrating the selective effect of 5-HT$_{2C}$ agonism involves utilizing dopaminergic radiotracers to measure extracellular DA level. Changes in extracellular dopaminergic tone following drug treatment or dopamine depletion can be monitored using selective DA receptor PET ligands (Morris et al. 2005, 2008). Predicted changes in extracellular DA level, following treatment with methamphetamine, based up on [$^{11}$C]-raclopride PET have been demonstrated to correlate with extracellular DA level obtained with microdialysis (Morris et al. 2008). Furthermore, decreased striatal

[$^{11}$C]-raclopride binding, consistent with increased dopaminergic tone, has been observed in rats following treatment with 5-$HT_{2C}$ antagonists (Egerton et al. 2008). The results published to date utilizing these methods have focused on relatively large changes in extracellular neurotransmitter levels and the sensitivity of the method to detect smaller changes is unknown. Demonstration of the effect of 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonist treatment on DA level measured utilizing PET has not been published and it is unclear whether the 40–60 % decreases in DA tone in the nucleus accumbens associated with doses of 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists that demonstrate activity in the preclinical predictive antipsychotic assays (e.g., CAR) are within the sensitivity limits of the technology.

## 6 Clinical Effects of Vabicaserin in Schizophrenia

The results of a 6 week Phase II trial in schizophrenia patients with vabicaserin was recently reported at the 2011 meeting of the American College of Neuropsychopharmacology (Shen et al. 2011). In this study, vabicaserin was well tolerated with no significant safety signals detected. Olanzapine treatment resulted in significant weight gain while vabicaserin treatments were weight neutral. Vabicaserin treatment demonstrated efficacy against the positive symptoms of schizophrenia in a double-blind placebo controlled trial for the 200 mg dose with a significant improvement from placebo on the primary endpoint (PANSS positive), and on secondary endpoints PANSS-total, CGI-S, and CGI-I scales ($p < 0.05$ on all scales). Unexpectedly, the higher treatment dose (400 mg) did not demonstrate significant effects on these measures. As expected, the positive control olanzapine demonstrated a significant improvement across all of these scales. These results observed following treatment with 200 mg of vabicaserin are consistent with the preclinical work suggesting potential antipsychotic efficacy with low EPS liability and low weight gain for 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists. Further study with vabicaserin is warranted to confirm the efficacy and define the efficacious dose/doses.

## 7 Summary

Despite decades of research, effective treatments for the multiple symptom domains of schizophrenia remain elusive. It is critical that novel therapeutics address the cognitive, negative, and depressive symptoms in order to have true benefit to patients with schizophrenia. Recent advances in understanding the potential of therapeutics targeting 5-$HT_{2C}$ receptors provide compelling preclinical support that these mechanisms have the potential to address these critical unmet needs either as stand-alone therapies or as adjuncts to SGAs. 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists have the potential to have a broad spectrum of activity (positive, negative, cognitive,

depressive) without the tolerability issues associated with FGAs or SGAs. 5-$HT_{2C}$ antagonists have the potential to mitigate against some of the adverse events of antipsychotics. The therapeutic potential of compounds that act as 5-$HT_{2C}$ agonists or antagonists across the spectrum of unmet needs in schizophrenia is quite high. Early clinical trials are promising with positive Phase II results demonstrating antipsychotic efficacy of vabicaserin.

## References

Abramowski D, Rigo M, Duc D, Hoyer D, Staufenbiel M (1995) Localization of the 5-hydroxytryptamine $_{2c}$ receptor protein in human and rat brain using specific antisera. Neuropharmacology 24:1635–1645

Al-Janabi I, Arranz M, Blakemore A, Saiz P, Susce M, Glaser P, Clark D, de Leon J (2009) Association study of serotonergic gene variants with antipsychotic-induced adverse reactions. Psychiatr Genet 19:305–311

Anderson I, Clark L, Elliott R, Kulkarni B, Williams S, Deakin J (2002) 5-HT(2C) receptor activation by m-chlorophenylpiperazine detected in humans with fMRI. Neuroreport 13:1547–1551

Bagdy G, Makara G (1995) Paraventricular nucleus controls 5-HT2C receptor-mediated corticosterone and prolactin but not oxytocin and penile erection responses. Eur J Pharmacol 275:301–305

Berg KA, Dunlop J, Sanchez T, Silva M, Clarke WP (2008) A conservative, single-amino acid substitution in the second cytoplasmic domain of the human Serotonin2C receptor alters both ligand-dependent and -independent receptor signaling. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 324:1084–1092

Berg KA, Maayani S, Goldfarb J, Scaramellini C, Leff P, Clarke WP (1998) Effector pathway-dependent relative efficacy at serotonin type 2A and 2C receptors: evidence for agonist-directed trafficking of receptor stimulus. Mol Pharmacol 54:94–104

Blackburn TP, Minabe Y, Middlemiss DN, Shirayama Y, Hashimoto K, Ashby CR Jr (2002) Effect of acute and chronic administration of the selective 5-HT2C receptor antagonist SB-243213 on midbrain dopamine neurons in the rat: An in vivo extracellular single cell study. Synapse 46:129–139

Blackburn TP, Suzuki K, Ashby CR Jr (2006) The acute and chronic administration of the 5-HT (2B/2C) receptor antagonist SB-200646A significantly alters the activity of spontaneously active midbrain dopamine neurons in the rat: an in vivo extracellular single cell study. Synapse 59:502–512

Chagnon YC (2006) Susceptibility genes for the side effect of antipsychotics on body weight and obesity. Curr Drug Targets 7:1681–1695

Clifton P, Lee M, Dourish C (2000) Similarities in the action of Ro 60-0175, a 5-$HT_{2c}$ receptor agonist and *d*-fenfluramine on feeding patterns in the rat. Psychopharmacology 152:256–267

Damjanoska K, Muma N, Zhang Y, D'Souza D, Garcia F, Carrasco G, Kindel G, Haskins K, Shankaran M, Petersen B, Van De Kar L (2003) Neuroendocrine evidence that (S)-2-(chloro-5-fluoro-indol- l-yl)-1-methylethylamine fumarate (Ro 60-0175) is not a selective 5-hydroxytryptamine(2C) receptor agonist. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 304:1209–1216

Di Giovanni G, De Deurwaerdere P, Di Mascio M, Di Matteo V, Esposito E, Spampinato U (1999) Selective blockade of serotonin-2C/2B receptors enhances mesolimbic and mesostriatal dopaminergic function: a combined in vivo electrophysiological and microdialysis study. Neuroscience 91:587–597

Di Giovanni G, Di Matteo V, Di Mascio M, Esposito E (2000) Preferential modulation of mesolimbic vs. nigrostriatal dopaminergic function by serotonin(2C/2B) receptor agonists: a combined in vivo electrophysiological and microdialysis study. Synapse 35:53–61

Di Matteo V, Cacchio M, Di Giulio C, Esposito E (2002) Role of serotonin(2C) receptors in the control of brain dopaminergic function. Pharmacol Biochem Behav 71:727–734

Di Matteo V, Di Giovanni G, Di Mascio M, Esposito E (1998) Selective blockade of serotonin2C/2B receptors enhances dopamine release in the rat nucleus accumbens. Neuropharmacology 37:265–272

Di Matteo V, Di Giovanni G, Di Mascio M, Esposito E (1999) SB 242084, a selective serotonin2C receptor antagonist, increases dopaminergic transmission in the mesolimbic system. Neuropharmacology 38:1195–1205

Dracheva S, Elhakem SL, Marcus SM, Siever LJ, McGurk SR, Haroutunian V (2003) RNA editing and alternative splicing of human serotonin 2C receptor in schizophrenia. J Neurochem 87:1402–1412

Drago A, Serretti A (2009) Focus on HTR2C: a possible suggestion for genetic studies of complex disorders. Am J Med Genet 150B:601–637

Dunlop J, Sabb AL, Mazandarani H, Zhang J, Kalgaonker S, Shukhina E, Sukoff S, Vogel RL, Stack G, Schechter L, Harrison BL, Rosenzweig-Lipson S (2005) WAY-163909 [(7bR, 10aR)-1,2,3,4,8,9,10,10a-octahydro-7bH-cyclopenta-[b][1,4]diazepino[6,7,1hi]indole], a novel 5-hydroxytryptamine 2C receptor-selective agonist with anorectic activity. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 313:862–869

Egerton A, Ahmad R, Hirani E, Grasby P (2008) Modulation of striatal dopamine release by 5-HT2A and 5-HT2C receptor antagonists: [11C]raclopride PET studies in the rat. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 200:487–496

Ellenbroek BA (2004) Pre-attentive processing and schizophrenia: animal studies. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 174:65–74

Ellingrod V, Perry P, Lund B, Bever-Stille K, Fleming F, Holman T, Miller D (2002) 5HT2A and 5HT2C receptor polymorphisms and predicting clinical response to olanzapine in schizophrenia. J Clin Psychopharmacol 22:622–624

Ellingrod V, Perry P, Ringold J (2005) Weight gain associated with the -759C/T polymorphism of the *5HT2C* receptor and olanzapine. Am J Med Genet B Neuropsychiatr Genet 134:76–78

Fletcher P, Tampakeras M, Sinyard J, Higgins G (2007) Opposing effects of 5-HT2A and 5-HT2C receptor antagonists in the rat and mouse on premature responding in the five-choice serial reaction time test. Psychopharmacology 195:223–234

Frank M, Stryker M, Tecott L (2002) Sleep and sleep homeostasis in mice lacking the 5-HT2c receptor. Neuropsychopharmacology 27:869–873

Gobert A, Rivet JM, Lejeune F, Newman-Tancredi A, Adhumeau-Auclair A, Nicolas JP, Cistarelli L, Melon C, Millan MJ (2000) Serotonin(2C) receptors tonically suppress the activity of mesocortical dopaminergic and adrenergic, but not serotonergic, pathways: a combined dialysis and electrophysiological analysis in the rat. Synapse 36:205–221

Gunes A, Dahl M-L, Spina E, Scordo MG (2008) Further evidence for the association between 5-HT2C receptor gene polymorphisms and extrapyramidal side effects in male schizophrenic patients. Eur J Clin Pharmacol 64:477–482

Gunes A, Scordo M, Jaanson P (2007) Serotonin and dopamine receptor gene polymorphisms and the risk of extrapyramidal side effects in perphenazine-treated schizophrenic patients. Psychopharmacology 190:479–484

Heisler LK, Chu HM, Tecott LH (1998) Epilepsy and obesity in serotonin 5-HT2C receptor mutant mice. Ann N Y Acad Sci 861:74–78

Herrick-Davis K, Grinde E, Niswender CM (1999) Serotonin 5-HT2C receptor RNA editing alters receptor basal activity: implications for serotonergic signal transduction. J Neurochem 73:1711–1717

Herrick-Davis K, Grinde E, Teitler M (2000) Inverse agonist activity of atypical antipsychotic drugs at human 5-hydroxytryptamine2C receptors. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 295:226–232

Hill MJ, Reynolds GP (2007) 5-HT2C receptor gene polymorphisms associated with antipsychotic drug action alter promoter activity. Brain Res 1149:14–17

Hoffman B, Mezey E (1989) Distribution of serotonin 5-HT1C receptor mRNA in adult rat brain. FEBS Lett 247:453–462

Ikram H, Samad N, Haleem DJ (2007) Neurochemical and behavioral effects of m-CPP in a rat model of tardive dyskinesia. Pak J Pharm Sci 20:188–195

Kawahara Y, Grimberg A, Teegarden S, Mombereau C, Liu S, Bale T, Blendy J, Nishikura K (2008) Dysregulated editing of serotonin 2C receptor mRNAs results in energy dissipation and loss of fat mass. J Neurosci 28:12834–12844

Kenakin T (1995) Agonist-receptor efficacy II: agonist trafficking of receptor signals. Trends Pharmacol Sci 16:232–238

Kostrzewa RM, Huang N-Y, Kostrzewa JP, Nowak P, Brus R (2007) Modeling tardive dyskinesia: predictive 5-HT2C receptor antagonist treatment. Neurotox Res 11:41–50

Kozikowski AP, Cho SJ, Jensen NH, Allen JA, Svennebring AM, Roth BL (2010) HTS and rational drug design [RDD] to generate a class of 5-HT$_{2C}$-selective ligands for possible use in schizophrenia. ChemMedChem 5:1221–1225

Kuzman M, Medved V, Bozina N, Hotujac L, Sain I, Bilusic H (2008) The influence of 5-HT(2C) and MDR1 genetic polymorphisms on antipsychotic-induced weight gain in female schizophrenic patients. Psychiatry Res 160:308–315

Lacivita E, Leopoldo M (2006) Selective agents for serotonin2C (5-HT2C) receptor. Curr Top Med Chem 6:1927–1970

Marazziti D, Rossi A, Giannaccini G, Zavaglia KM, Dell'Osso L, Lucacchini A, Cassano GB (1999) Distribution and characterization of [3H]mesulergine binding in human brain postmortem. Eur Neuropsychopharmacol 10:21–26

Marquis KL, Dunlop J, Ramamoorthy S, Beyer CE, Lin Q, Brennan J, Piesla MJ, Ashby C, Harrison B, Magolda R, Pangalos MN, Stack G, Rosenzweig-Lipson S (2006) SCA-136: a novel 5-HT$_{2C}$ receptor agonist possessing atypical antipsychotic-like effects in preclinical models. Program No 934, Neuroscience Meeting Planner Atlanta, GA: Society for Neuroscience

Marquis KL, Sabb AL, Logue SF, Brennan JA, Piesla MJ, Comery TA, Grauer SM, Ashby CR Jr, Nguyen HQ, Dawson LA, Barrett JE, Stack G, Meltzer HY, Harrison BL, Rosenzweig-Lipson S (2007) WAY-163909 [(7bR,10aR)-1,2,3,4,8,9,10,10a-octahydro-7bH-cyclopenta-[b][1,4] diazepino[6,7,1hi]indole]: a novel 5-hydroxytryptamine 2C receptor-selective agonist with preclinical antipsychotic-like activity. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 320:486–496

Martin JR, Bos M, Jenck F, Moreau J, Mutel V, Sleight AJ, Wichmann J, Andrews JS, Berendsen HH, Broekkamp CL, Ruigt GS, Kohler C, Delft AM (1998) 5-HT2C receptor agonists: pharmacological characteristics and therapeutic potential. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 286:913–924

Masellis M, Basile V, Meltzer H, Lieberman J, Sevy S, Macciardi F, Cola P, Howard A, Badri F, Nothen M, Kalow W, Kennedy JL (1998) Serotonin subtype 2 receptor genes and clinical response to clozapine in schizophrenia patients. Neuropsychopharmacology 19:123–132

Mayers A, Baldwin D (2005) Antidepressants and their effect on sleep. Hum Psychopharmacol Clin Exp 20:533–559

Meltzer H, Maes M (1995) Effect of pindolol pretreatment on MK-212-induced plasma cortisol and prolactin responses in normal men. Biol Psychiatry 385:310–318

Miller KJ (2005) Serotonin 5-HT2C receptor agonists: potential for the treatment of obesity. Mol Interv 5:282–291

Miyamoto S, Duncan GE, Marx CE, Lieberman JA (2005) Treatments for schizophrenia: a critical review of pharmacology and mechanisms of action of antipsychotic drugs. Mol Psychiatry 10:79–104

Mombereau C, Kawahara Y, Gundersen B, Nishikura K, Blendy J (2010) Functional relevance of serotonin 2C receptor mRNA editing in antidepressant- and anxiety-like behaviors. Neuropharmacology 59:468–473

Morris E, Normandin M, Schiffer W (2008) Initial comparison of ntPET with microdialysis measurements of methamphetamine-induced dopamine release in rats: support for estimation of dopamine curves from PET data. Mol Imaging Biol 10:67–73

Morris E, Yoder K, Wang C, Normandin M, Zheng Q, Mock B, Muzic RJ, Froehlich J (2005) ntPET: a new application of PET imaging for characterizing the kinetics of endogenous neurotransmitter release. Mol Imaging 4:473–489

Müller D, Kennedy JL (2006) Genetics of antipsychotic treatment emergent weight gain in schizophrenia. Pharmacogenomics 7:863–887

Navarra R, Comery TA, Graf R, Rosenzweig-Lipson S, Day M (2008) The 5-HT2C receptor agonist WAY-163909 decreases impulsivity in the 5-choice serial reaction time test. Behav Brain Res 188:412–415

Niswender CM, Copeland SC, Herrick-Davis K, Emeson RB, Sanders-Bush E (1999) RNA editing of the human serotonin 5-hydroxytryptamine 2C receptor silences constitutive activity. J Biol Chem 274:9472–9478

Niswender CM, Herrick-Davis K, Dilley GE, Meltzer HY, Overholser JC, Stockmeier CA, Emeson RB, Sanders-Bush E (2001) RNA editing of the human serotonin 5-HT2C receptor. alterations in suicide and implications for serotonergic pharmacotherapy. Neuropsychopharmacology 24:478–491

Niswender CM, Sanders-Bush E, Emeson RB (1998) Identification and characterization of RNA editing events within the 5-HT2C receptor. Ann N Y Acad Sci 861:38–48

Nonogaki K, Strack A, Dallman M, Tecott L (1998) Leptin-independent hyperphagia and type 2 diabetes in mice with a mutated serotonin 5-HT2C receptor gene. Nat Med 4:1152–1156

Park Y, Cho J, Kang S, Choi J, Lee S, Kim L, Lee H (2008) Lack of association between the -759C/T polymorphism of the 5-HT2C receptor gene and olanzapine-induced weight gain among Korean schizophrenic patients. J Clin Pharm Ther 33:55–60

Ramamoorthy P, Beyer C, Brennan J, Dunlop J, Gove S, Grauer S, Harrison BL, Lin Q, Malberg J, Marquis K, Mazandarani H, Piesla M, Pulicicchio C, Rosenzweig-Lipson S, Sabb A-M, Schechter L, Stack G, J Z (2006) Discovery of SCA-136, a novel 5-HT2C agonist, for the treatment of schizophrenia. 231st American Chemical Society National Meeting: MEDI-021

Rauser L, Savage JE, Meltzer HY, Roth BL (2001) Inverse agonist actions of typical and atypical antipsychotic drugs at the human 5-hydroxytryptamine(2C) receptor. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 299:83–89

Reavill C, Kettle A, Holland V, Riley G, Blackburn TP (1999) Attenuation of haloperidol-induced catalepsy by a 5-HT2C receptor antagonist. Br J Pharmacol 126:572–574

Reynolds G, Zhang Z, Zhang X (2002) Association of antipsychotic drug-induced weight gain with a *5-HT2C* receptor gene polymorphism. Lancet 359:2086–2087

Reynolds GP, Templeman LA, Zhang ZJ (2005) The role of 5-HT2C receptor polymorphisms in the pharmacogenetics of antipsychotic drug treatment. Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry 29:1021–1028

Rietschel M, Naber D, Finmmers R, Moller H, Propping P, Nothen M (1997) Efficacy and side-effects of clozapine not associated with variation in the 5-HT2C receptor. Neuroreport 8:1999–2003

Robinson ESJ, Dalley JW, Theobald DEH, Glennon JC, Pezze MA, Murphy ER, Robbins TW (2007) Opposing roles for 5-HT2A and 5-HT2C receptors in the nucleus accumbens on inhibitory response control in the 5-choice serial reaction time task. Neuropsychopharmacology 33:2398–2406

Rosenzweig-Lipson S, Beyer C, Hughes Z, Lin Q, Zhang M-Y, Grauer S, Comery T, Aschmies S, Stack G, Marquis K (2007a) Vabicaserin: Effects of a novel 5-HT2C agonist on prefrontal cortical neurotransmission, cognition and sensorimotor gating. European Neuropsychopharmacology The Journal of the European College of Neuropsychopharmacology 17(Supl.4):S484

Rosenzweig-Lipson S, Sabb A, Stack G, Mitchell P, Lucki I, Malberg JE, Grauer S, Brennan J, Cryan JF, Sukoff Rizzo SJ, Dunlop J, Barrett JE, Marquis KL (2007b) Antidepressant-like effects of the novel, selective, 5-HT(2C) receptor agonist WAY-163909 in rodents. Psychopharmacology 192:159–170

Rosenzweig-Lipson S, Zhang J, Mazandarani H, Harrison BL, Sabb A, Sabalski J, Stack G, Welmaker G, Barrett JE, Dunlop J (2006) Antiobesity-like effects of the 5-HT2C receptor agonist WAY-161503. Brain Res 1073–1074:240–251

Sabb AL, Vogel RL, Welmaker GS, Sabalski JE, Coupet J, Dunlop J, Rosenzweig-Lipson S, Harrison B (2004) Cycloalkyl[b][1,4]benzodiazepinoindoles are agonists at the human 5-HT2C receptor. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 14:2603–2607

Sargent P, Sharpley A, Williams C, Goodall E, Cowen P (1997) 5-HT2C receptor activation decreases appetite and body weight in obese subjects. Psychopharmacology 133:309–312

Segman R, Heresco-Levy U, Finkel B (2000) Association between the serotonin 2C receptor gene and tardive dyskinesia in chronic schizophrenia: additive contribution of 5-HT2Cser and DRD3gly alleles to susceptibility. Psychopharmacology 152:408–413

Sharpley A, Soloman R, Fernando A, da Roza DJ, Cowen P (1990) Dose-related effects of selective 5-HT2 receptor antagonists on slow wave sleep in humans. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 101(4):568–569

Sharpley A, Vassaollo C, Cowen P (2000) Olanzapine increases slow-eave sleep; evidence for blockade of central 5-HT2c receptors in vivo. Biol Psychiatry 47:468–470

Shen et al. (2011) Neuropsychopharmacology 36:S75–S197. doi:10.1038/npp.2011.291

Shilliam CS, Dawson LA (2005) The effect of clozapine on extracellular dopamine levels in the shell subregion of the rat nucleus accumbens is reversed following chronic administration: comparison with a selective 5-HT2C receptor antagonist. Neuropsychopharmacology 30:372–380

Siuciak JA, Chapin DS, McCarthy SA, Guanowsky V, Brown J, Chiang P, Marala R, Patterson T, Seymour PA, Swick A, Iredale PA (2007) CP-809,101, a selective 5-HT(2C) agonist, shows activity in animal models of antipsychotic activity. Neuropharmacology 52:279–290

Sodhi MS, Burnet PW, Makoff AJ, Kerwin RW, Harrison PJ (2001) RNA editing of the 5-HT(2C) receptor is reduced in schizophrenia. Mol Psychiatry 6:373–379

Stark J, McKie S, Davies K, Williams S, Luckman S (2008) 5-HT(2C) antagonism blocks blood oxygen level-dependent pharmacological-challenge magnetic resonance imaging signal in rat brain areas related to feeding. Eur J Neurosci 27:457–465

Tecott L, Sun L, Akana S, Strack A, Lowenstein D, Dallman M, Julius D (1995) Eating disorder and epilepsy in mice lacking 5-HT$_{2c}$ serotonin receptors. Nature 374:542–546

Templeman L, Reynolds G, Arranz B, San L (2005) Polymorphisms of the 5HT2C receptor and leptin genes are associated with antipsychotic drug-induced weight gain in Caucasian subjects with a first-episode psychosis. Pharmacogenet Genomics 15:195–200

Tsuno N, Besset A, Ritchie K (2005) Sleep and depression. J Clin Psychiatry 66:1254–1269

Winstanley CA, Theobald DEH, Dalley JW, Glennon JC, Robbins TW (2004) 5-HT 2A and 5-HT 2C receptor antagonists have opposing effects on a measure of impulsivity: interactions with global 5-HT depletion. Psychopharmacology 176:376–385

Wood MD, Scott C, Clarke K, Cato KJ, Patel N, Heath J, Worby A, Gordon L, Campbell L, Riley G, Davies CH, Gribble A, Jones DN (2006) Pharmacological profile of antipsychotics at monoamine receptors: atypicality beyond 5-HT2A receptor blockade. CNS Neurol Disord Drug Targets 5:445–452

Yevtushenko O, Cooper S, O'Neill R, Doherty J, Woodside J, Reynolds G (2008) Influence of 5-HT2C receptor and leptin gene polymorphisms, smoking and drug treatment on metabolic disturbances in patients with schizophrenia. Br J Psychiatry 192:424–428

Zhang JY, Kowal DM, Nawoschik SP, Lou Z, Dunlop J (2006) Distinct functional profiles of aripiprazole and olanzapine at RNA edited human 5-HT2C receptor isoforms. Biochem Pharmacol 71:521–529

Zhang Z, Zhang X, Sha W (2002) Association of a polymorphism in the promoter region of the serotonin 5-HT2C receptor gene with tardive dyskinesia in patients with schizophrenia. Mol Psychiatry 7:670–671

# The Role of Dopamine $D_3$ Receptors in Antipsychotic Activity and Cognitive Functions

**Gerhard Gross and Karla Drescher**

## Contents




G. Gross (✉)
Abbott, Neuroscience Research, GPRD, 67061 Ludwigshafen, Germany

Institut für Pharmakologie, Universität Duisburg-Essen, Universitätsklinikum Essen, Hufelandstr. 55, 45122 Essen, Germany
e-mail: gerhard.j.gross@gmx.de

K. Drescher
Abbott, Neuroscience Research, GPRD, 67061 Ludwigshafen, Germany
e-mail: karla.drescher@abbott.com


M.A. Geyer and G. Gross (eds.), *Novel Antischizophrenia Treatments*,
Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 213,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-25758-2_7, 

**Abstract** Dopamine $D_3$ receptors have a pre- and postsynaptic localization in brain stem nuclei, limbic parts of the striatum, and cortex. Their widespread influence on dopamine release, on dopaminergic function, and on several other neurotransmitters makes them attractive targets for therapeutic intervention. The signaling pathways of $D_3$ receptors are distinct from those of other members of the $D_2$-like receptor family. There is increasing evidence that $D_3$ receptors can form heteromers with dopamine $D_1$, $D_2$, and probably other G-protein-coupled receptors. The functional consequences remain to be characterized in more detail but might open new interesting pharmacological insight and opportunities. In terms of behavioral function, $D_3$ receptors are involved in cognitive, social, and motor functions, as well as in filtering and sensitization processes. Although the role of $D_3$ receptor blockade for alleviating positive symptoms is still unsettled, selective $D_3$ receptor antagonism has therapeutic features for schizophrenia and beyond as demonstrated by several animal models: improved cognitive function, emotional processing, executive function, flexibility, and social behavior. $D_3$ receptor antagonism seems to contribute to atypicality of clinically used antipsychotics by reducing extrapyramidal motor symptoms; has no direct influence on prolactin release; and does not cause anhedonia, weight gain, or metabolic dysfunctions. Unfortunately, clinical data with new, selective $D_3$ antagonists are still incomplete; their cognitive effects have only been communicated in part. In vitro, virtually all clinically used antipsychotics are not $D_2$-selective but also have affinity for $D_3$ receptors. The exact $D_3$ receptor occupancies achieved in patients, particularly in cortical areas, are largely unknown, mainly because only nonselective or agonist PET tracers are currently available. It is unlikely that a degree of $D_3$ receptor antagonism optimal for antipsychotic and cognitive function can be achieved with existing antipsychotics. Therefore, selective $D_3$ antagonism represents a promising mechanism still to be fully exploited for the treatment of schizophrenia, cognitive deficits in schizophrenia, and comorbid conditions such as substance abuse.

**Keywords** Dopamine $D_3$ receptor • G-protein-coupled receptor • Selective $D_3$ receptor antagonists • Receptor dimerization • Antipsychotics • Cognitive behavior • Cognitive deficit in schizophrenia • Motor behavior • Social behavior • Sensitization • $D_3$ receptor imaging

## 1 Introduction

With cloning and first description of its properties, the dopamine $D_3$ receptor became immediately associated with antipsychotic function of existing and potential future therapies (Sokoloff et al. 1990). This interest was due to (I) the very high affinity of dopamine, the neurotransmitter primarily linked to schizophrenia and other psychoses, for this receptor; (II) the considerable affinity of first- and second-generation antipsychotics for this receptor subtype; (III) its localization in limbic areas of the brain; and (IV) its assumed role as an autoreceptor suggested by the

high expression in regions such as the ventral tegmental area and substantia nigra. Shortly thereafter, a Ser9Gly polymorphism of the highly conserved $D_3$ receptor gene was described, and homozygosity for this variant in the N-terminal extracellular domain was associated with schizophrenia (Crocq et al. 1992). The functional relevance of this polymorphism with respect to binding of dopamine and signaling remains controversial (Lundstrom and Turpin 1996; Hellstrand et al. 2004; Jeanneteau et al. 2006; Tadori et al. 2011). A plethora of subsequent genetic studies could never unequivocally confirm the association with schizophrenia (Ma et al. 2008), and the results for other associations such as bipolar disorder, tardive dyskinesia, akathisia, habit learning, and substance abuse were inconsistent, either negative or needing confirmation in larger populations. Such results, however, do not contradict the strong rationale for $D_3$ receptor ligands, agonists as well as antagonists, as therapeutic agents for neuropsychiatric disorders. The recent success in crystallizing the $D_3$ receptor (Chien et al. 2010) may help to synthesize improved new ligands for the $D_3$ receptor (Carlsson et al. 2011; Kufareva et al. 2011; Obiol-Pardo et al. 2011), but its conformation in different coupling states still needs to be studied. Besides its importance to understand and treat psychotic disorders, the $D_3$ receptor is a valuable target to treat Parkinson's disease (Joyce 2001) and offers a novel intriguing therapeutic approach for addiction (Heidbreder et al. 2005). In the following chapters, however, we will focus entirely on pathophysiological, pharmacological, and therapeutic aspects of psychoses.

## 2 Localization of the Dopamine $D_3$ Receptor

Expression and distribution of dopamine $D_3$ receptors in the central nervous system (CNS) and in peripheral tissues have been investigated mainly by in situ hybridization, radioligand binding, and receptor autoradiographic techniques, whereas immunohistochemical techniques have been limited by the quality of available antibodies for G-protein-coupled receptors (Bodei et al. 2009). Although the radioligands used, including the agonists [$^3$H]7-OH-DPAT, [$^3$H]PD 128907, and [$^{125}$I]7-OH-PIPAT and the antagonist [$^{124}$I]iodosulpride, have only a limited $D_3/D_2$ selectivity (Table 1; Joyce 2001; Choi et al. 2010), appropriate radioligand concentration, ionic conditions, inclusion of GTP analogues, or $D_2$-preferring antagonists to block $D_2$ binding allow one to reliably determine the local distribution of $D_3$ receptors in the brain. In rat and mouse, the rodent species mostly used to study dopaminergic function and antipsychotic mechanisms, as well as in nonhuman primates and humans, $D_3$ receptors are expressed mainly in the CNS. Evidence regarding $D_3$ receptors and their functions in vessels are limited by the specificity of used antibodies and the poor selectivity of used agonists (Amenta et al. 2000). The only peripheral organ, where $D_3$ receptors are expressed and $D_3$ receptor-mediated function has been characterized in some detail, is the kidney (Luippold et al. 2006; Gross et al. 2006).

**Table 1** Representative dopamine $D_3$ receptor-preferring and selective $D_3$ receptor ligands

| Compound | $K_i$ $hD_2$ (nmol/l) | $K_i$ $hD_3$ (nmol/l) | Selectivity |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Agonists* | | | |
| Dopamine (high and low affinity sites) | 10.1<br>2319.5 | 1.4<br>83.6 | 7.2<br>27.7 |
| Quinpirole (4a*R-trans*)-4,4a,5,6,7,8,8a,9-Octahydro-5-propyl-1*H*-pyrazolo[3,4-*g*]quinoline | 1,134 | 34.2 | 50.7 |
| Quinelorane (5aR,9aR)-5,5a,6,7,8,9,9a,10-Octahydro-6-propylpyrido[2,3-*g*]quinazolin-2-amine | 341 | 3.6 | 95 |
| 7-OH-DPAT (+/−)7-hydroxy-2(*N*,*N*-di-*n*-propylamino) tetralin | 96 | 2.51 | 38.2 |
| Pramipexole [2-amono-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-6-propylamino-benzthiazole-dihydrochloride] | 766 | 4.93 | 155 |
| PD 128907 [R-(+)-*trans*-3,4,4a,10b-tetrahydro-4-propyl-2*H*,5*H*-[1]benzopyrano[4,3-b]-1,4-oxazin-9-ol] | 389 | 3.14 | 124 |
| PHNO (+)4-Propyl-3,4,4a,5,6,10b-hexahydro-2*H*-naphtho [1,2-b][1,4]oxazin-9-ol] | 8.5 | 0.16 | 53 |
| *Partial agonist* | | | |
| BP 897 [1-(4-(2-naphthoylamino)butyl)-4-(2-methoxyphenyl)-1apiperazine)] | 61 | 1.16 | 52.5 |
| *Antagonists* | | | |
| (+)-UH-232 [*cis*-(+)-1S,2R-5-methoxy-1-methyl-2-(di-*n*-propylamino)tetralin] | 24.8 | 7.95 | 3.1 |
| (+)-AJ-76 [(1)-(*cis*-(+)-5-methoxy-1-methyl-2-(*n*-propylamino)tetralin] | 28 | 7 | 4 |
| U 99194[a] [5,6-dimethoxy-indan-2-yl) dipropylamine] | 223 | 2,281 | 10 |
| Nafadotride[b] *N*[(*n*-butyl-2-pyrrolidinyl)methyl]-1-methoxy-4-cyano naphtalene-2-carboxamide | 4.5 | 0.81 | 6.17 |
| S14297 (+)-[7-(*N*,*N*-dipropylamino)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-naphtho(2,3b)dihydro,2,3-furane] | 297 | 18.9 | 16 |
| S33084 (3aR,9bS)-*N*-[4-(8-cyano-1,3a,4,9b-tetrahydro-3*H*-benzopyrano[3,4-c]pyrrole-2-yl)-butyl]-(4-phenyl) benzamide | 42.1 | 0.42 | 100 |
| S33138 (N-[4-[2-[(3aS,9bR)-8-cyano-1,3a,4,9b-tetrahydro [1]benzopyrano[3,4-c]pyrrol-2(3H)-yl)-ethyl] phenylacetamide) | 74.1 | 2.09 | 35.5 |
| SB-277011 [*trans*-*N*-[4-[2-(6-cyano-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinolin-2-yl)ethyl]cyclohexyl]-4-quinolininecarboxamide] | 1,047 | 11.2 | 93 |
| FAUC 365[c] (*N*-[4-[4-(2,3-dichlorophenyl)piperazin-1-yl] butyl]benzo[b]-thiophene-2-carboxamide) | 3,600 | 0.5 | 7,200 |
| NGB 2904[d] *N*-(4-(4-(2,3-dichlorophenyl)piperazin-1-yl) butyl)-9*H*-fluorene-2-carboxamide | 405 | 2.35 | 172 |
| ABT-925 (A-437203, LU 201640, BSF 201640)[e] 2-{3-[4-(2-tert-butyl-6-trifluoromethyl-pyrimidin-4-yl)-piperazin-1-yl]-propyl-sulfanyl}-3*H*-pyrimidin-4-one fumarate | 351 | 2.9 | 100 |
| ABT-127 (A-706127)[f] 2-tert-butyl-4-{4-[3-(4-methyl-5-methyl-4*H*-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-piperazin-1-yl}-6-tert-butyl-pyrimidine | 145 | 0.98 | 145 |

$K_i$ values as reported by the National Institutes of Mental Health (NIMH) Psychoactive Drug Screening Program (PDSP; http://pdsp.cwru.edu/pdsp.asp) in May 2011

[a]Audinot et al. (1998)

[b]Audinot et al. (1998)

[c]Bettinetti et al. (2002)

[d]Yuan et al. (1998)

[e]Unger et al. (2002)

[f]Unger et al. (2005)

In the CNS, the local expression of $D_3$ receptors is qualitatively similar across species, but there are quantitative differences. In mice, for instance, almost no $D_3$ receptor binding is found in the cortex, which may limit the experimental value for investigating $D_3$ receptor-mediated behaviors in this species (Levant 1998).

In general, $D_3$ receptors show lower and more restricted expression in telencephalic areas compared to the $D_2$ receptor. The highest expression in rat brain is found in phylogenetically old subcortical areas with the highest concentration in the islands of Calleja, substantia nigra (A9 cell group), and ventral (limbic) parts of the striatal complex mostly receiving dopaminergic input from the ventral tegmental area A10 cell group, for example, shell and anterior part of the nucleus accumbens, ventral pallidum, olfactory tubercles, hippocampus, mammillary nuclei, the bed nucleus of the stria terminalis, the striatal complex, and lobules 9 and 10 of the cerebellum (archicerebellum; Bouthenet et al. 1991; Levesque et al. 1992; Diaz et al. 2000; Stanwood et al. 2000). Expression on dopaminergic nerve terminals as well as postsynaptic localization could be demonstrated by lesions with 6-hydroxydopamine and quinolinic acid, respectively (Stanwood et al. 2000). Accordingly, 1-methyl-4-phenyl-1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridine (MPTP) treatment of squirrel monkeys, which destroys dopaminergic neurons and terminals, resulted in a significant decline in $D_3$ receptors in the caudate, but not in putamen, globus pallidus, substantia nigra, or other dopaminergic regions (Quik et al. 2000).

In human brain, even more than in rodents, $D_3$ receptor mRNA and expression are widely distributed (Hall et al. 1996; Suzuki et al. 1998). The highest density is again found in the islands of Calleja, followed by areas corresponding to the nucleus accumbens, that is, ventral caudate nucleus, and in putamen, globus pallidus, substantia nigra, mamillary nuclei, thalamic nuclei, and hypothalamus (Gurevich and Joyce 1999; Hall et al. 1996; Suzuki et al. 1998). In contrast to the more homogeneous $D_2$ dopamine receptor distribution, Hall et al. (1996) described a patch-matrix like distribution of $D_3$ receptors in the basal ganglia. Compared to basal ganglia, the $D_3$ receptor density in neocortical areas is low, with the highest mRNA expression in layers II and IV (Suzuki et al. 1998). Autoradiographic binding in human cortex has been demonstrated with [$^3$H]7-OH-DPAT, but not always reproducibly with [$^3$H]PD 128907 (Hall et al. 1996).

It has been shown by the co-expression of two mRNAs in the same cells and patch clamp experiments that dopamine receptor subtypes co-localize in the same neurons in rat. $D_1$ and $D_3$ mRNAs are found in the islands of Calleja, in neurons of the nucleus accumbens shell, and in the striatum (Ridray et al. 1998; Schwartz et al. 1998a; Surmeier et al. 1992, 1998; Le Moine and Bloch 1996). The $D_2$ and $D_3$ receptor distribution is overlapping as well—in striatal areas of the human brain more than in rat brain. $D_2$ and $D_3$ receptors coexist in the substantia nigra, and in many areas, cells seem to co-express $D_2$ and $D_3$ mRNAs (Gurevich and Joyce 1999). These anatomical results are in line with findings of interaction of $D_3$ receptors with $D_1$ and $D_2$ receptors at the biochemical, electrophysiological, and behavioral level, either through converging intracellular signaling or through heteromers of respective receptors.

The existence of $D_3$ receptors in the ventral tegmental area and substantia nigra of the mesencephalon, where they may function as autoreceptors and affect dopaminergic projections to basal ganglia, amygdala, hippocampus, and frontal cortical areas, points towards a widespread influence on dopaminergic function and potentially on theta oscillations that seem to be important in coordinating communication between these brain areas (Fujisawa and Buzsáki 2011). On the other hand, the preferred localization in the ventral striatal complex rather than the dorsal parts of the basal ganglia suggests a role in limbic rather than motor function. Although this simple separation of functions is being increasingly challenged and refined, especially for the human brain (Humphries and Prescott 2010; Voorn et al. 2004), this localization predisposes the $D_3$ receptor for a role in reward and reward prediction, motivational and appetitive behaviors, habit learning, and cognitive functions including cognitive flexibility (Schultz 2007; Ashby et al. 2010; Humphries and Prescott 2010).

## 3 Signaling

As a member of the $D_2$-like receptor family, the $D_3$ receptor has similarities with the $D_2$ and the $D_4$ receptors: all are negatively coupled to adenylyl cyclase. However, there are several properties and signaling pathways that seem to be specific for the $D_3$ receptor, and some uncertainty remains if all of these play a role in vivo under physiological conditions.

The receptor displays high affinity for dopamine and other agonists even in the G-protein-uncoupled state, and the decrease in affinity caused by GTP is minimal (Chio et al. 1994; Vanhauwe et al. 1999). The pertussis toxin sensitivity of adenylyl cyclase inhibition suggests coupling to members of the "$G_i$" protein family. Different effects have been demonstrated to be mediated by different G-proteins in vitro, for example, $G\alpha_q/\alpha_{11}$ and $G_{i/o}$ (Ahlgren-Beckendorf and Levant 2004; Lane et al. 2008; Newman-Tancredi et al. 1999). By using both, receptor-G protein fusion proteins and stable cell lines, in which pertussis toxin-resistant mutants of individual $G\alpha_i$-family G-proteins could be induced, Lane et al. (2008) demonstrated highly selective coupling of the $D_3$ receptor to $G\alpha_{o1}$, but it remains to be confirmed if this reflects a physiological response in vivo.

In contrast to the closely related dopamine $D_2$ and $D_4$ receptors, the $D_3$ receptor seems to predominantly inhibit adenylyl cyclase V in various cell types and to inhibit forskolin-induced increase in cAMP, a response sensitive to pertussis toxin (Robinson and Caron 1997). $D_3$ receptors have also been reported to activate phospholipase D in cellular systems in a pertussis toxin-insensitive but Rho-kinase A-dependent manner (Everett and Senogles 2004, 2010). This $D_3$ receptor-induced activation of phospholipase D may be mediated by a G-protein-independent but β-arrestin-dependent pathway (Cho et al. 2010; DeWire et al. 2007). $D_2$-like receptors can form a signaling complex of β-arrestin 2, phosphatase-2A, and Akt (Beaulieu et al. 2005, 2007, Beaulieu and Gainetdinov 2011), and stimulation of $D_2$-like receptors can result in dephosphorylation of Akt at Thr-308, thus enhancing

the activity of GSK-3β. In vivo, $D_3$ receptors seem to enhance this $D_2$ response (Beaulieu et al. 2007). In contrast, the group of Millan (Mannoury la Cour et al. 2011) reported recently that short-term incubation with dopamine resulted in phosphorylation of Akt and GSK-3β in a cellular system with human $D_{2L}$ and $D_3$ receptors, which was blocked by selective $D_2$ and $D_3$ antagonists, respectively. In vivo, the $D_2/D_3$ receptor agonist quinelorane produced a similar response with enhanced concentration of p-Akt and p-GSK-3β in rat nucleus accumbens, but the involvement of $D_3$ receptors was not ultimately proven. Obviously, further studies are needed to fully characterize the role of $D_3$ receptors in Akt signaling, the time course, the interaction of $D_2$ and $D_3$ receptors, and the relevance for physiological responses in vivo.

In a neuroblastoma–glioma hybrid cell line (NG 108-15), $D_3$ receptor activation mediates induction of c-fos and increases mitogenesis measured by [$^3$H]thymidine incorporation (Griffon et al. 1997; Pilon et al. 1994). This pertussin toxin-sensitive cellular effect was the first to distinguish partial from full $D_3$ agonism. Activation of extracellular signal-regulated kinase (ERK) is responsible for the expression of Fos genes, like c-fos, fosB, and Fra2. $D_3$ receptors can activate this pathway in a manner distinct from $D_2$ receptors in cellular systems (Beom et al. 2004). Such an activation can be elicited in the caudate/putamen by administration of cocaine. This response is mediated by combined $D_1$ and $D_2$ receptor activation and opposed by $D_3$ receptors (Zhang et al. 2004). In this case, $D_1$ and $D_3$ receptors exert opposite roles on ERK activation (Beom et al. 2004; Zhang et al. 2012). Indirect activation of ERK and Akt pathways by cocaine has recently been shown to increase dendritic arborization in mesencephalic neurons in vitro, an effect that is no longer observable in the presence of a $D_3$ antagonist or when the $D_3$ receptor is deleted (Collo et al. 2012). In vivo, however, structural remodeling of dendrites and spines induced by cocaine in nucleus accumbens and caudate putamen is inhibited by activation of $D_3$ receptors, and a $D_3$ antagonist enhances cocaine-induced structural remodeling (Zhang et al. 2012). Further studies are clearly needed to distinguish different pre- and postsynaptic $D_3$-mediated effects in mesencephalic nuclei and in dopaminergic projection areas.

Other cellular effects mediated by $D_3$ receptor stimulation in vitro are extracellular acidification (Vanhauwe et al. 1999), inhibition of P/Q calcium channels (Kuzhikandathil and Oxford 1999), inhibition of CART mRNA in the nucleus accumbens (Hunter et al. 2006), and an increase in dopamine transporter function in cells co-expressing $D_3$ receptors and the respective transporter protein (Zapata et al. 2007). The reported activation of G-protein-coupled inward rectifier potassium channels in AtT-20 neuroendocrine cell line (Kuzhikandathil and Oxford 2000; Kuzhikandathil et al. 1998) could not be confirmed in acutely dissociated substantia nigra neurons of $D_2^{-/-}$ mice (Davila et al. 2003).

Dopamine $D_2$ receptors desensitize upon agonist interaction by receptor phosphorylation, β-arrestin translocation to the plasma membrane, and subsequent internalization. This process does not occur, at least not to the same extent, with $D_3$ receptors, indicating different desensitization and trafficking properties (Kim et al. 2001; Lan et al. 2009). PKC-dependent phosphorylation rather than

β-arrestin-dependent phosphorylation of the $D_3$ receptor seems to be the main pathway responsible for its sequestration and desensitization. Activation of $Ca^{2+}$/calmodulin-dependent protein kinase II (CaMKII) has recently been shown to result in $D_3$ receptor phosphorylation, thereby transiently inhibiting $D_3$ receptor-mediated effects and dopamine signaling (Liu et al. 2009). Such diverging desensitization properties, in combination with its high affinity for dopamine, potential coupling to the dopamine transporter (Zapata et al. 2007), and coupling to P/Q channels (Kuzhikandathil and Oxford 1999), that are known to influence neurotransmitter release, all point to a role for $D_3$ receptors distinct from other $D_2$-like receptors and may in part be due to its autoreceptor function. In line with this, $D_3$ stimulation could be demonstrated to inhibit $K^+$-induced dopamine release in a PC-12/h$D_3$ cell line (Chen et al. 2009).

Given the fact that the Ser9Gly single nucleotide polymorphism of the dopamine $D_3$ receptor gene has been associated with schizophrenia, it is remarkable that the functional relevance of this polymorphism in in vitro systems is still controversial. It had been reported that dopamine binding is enhanced in Ser-9-transfected cells (Lundstrom and Turpin 1996) and that there is a shift in intracellular signaling in the Gly-9 compared to the Ser-9 variant. Dopamine inhibited forskolin-stimulated cAMP formation in CHO cells transfected with Ser-9 more than in cells transfected with the Gly-9 variant, whereas it inhibited PGE2 production only after transfection with the Gly-9 variant, suggesting a variant-induced shift in the transduction pathway (Hellstrand et al. 2004). In contrast, Jeanneteau and coworkers (2006) reported a larger inhibition of forskolin-stimulated cAMP for the Gly-9 variant combined with a prolonged mitogen-associated protein kinase (MAPK) signal. Tadori et al. (2011) found no differences in dopamine binding and dopamine-induced inhibition of forskolin-stimulated cAMP accumulation between both variants. It is obvious that this state of results needs clarification.

## 4 Receptor Di-/Oligomerization

The fact that $D_1$, $D_2$, and $D_3$ receptors are not only found in the same brain regions but also coexist in the same cells, for example in nucleus accumbens, striatonigral neurons, and the islands of Calleja, indicates potential synergistic effects of these receptor subtypes at the level of single neurons (Surmeier et al. 1992). Moreover, homo- and heterodimerization have been described for many GPCRs—not only in cellular systems but also in native tissues. In this context, the existence of a truncated $D_3$-like protein, named $D_{3nf}$, which can dimerize with the nontruncated receptor, and the vast overlap of expression of $D_3$ receptors with other dopamine receptors, especially $D_1$ and $D_2$, raise the question if this has functional, physiological, or pharmacological consequences.

$D_{3nf}$ is produced by alternative splicing, does not bind dopaminergic ligands, is incapable of intracellular signaling and coexists with $D_3$ receptors (Liu et al. 1994; Nimchinsky et al. 1997). $D_{3nf}$ seems to translocate $D_3$ receptors by heterodimerization: the $D_3$/$D_{3nf}$ complex is predominantly found in the cytosol rather

than in cell membranes. This localization may ultimately result in the attenuation of genuine $D_3$ signaling (Elmhurst et al. 2000; Karpa et al. 2000). Interestingly, a lower $D_3/D_{3nf}$ mRNA ratio was found in substantia nigra, ventral tegmentum, and prefrontal cortex of rats showing high motor response to novel environment as compared to low responders (Pritchard et al. 2006). This difference can be interpreted as a reduction of functional $D_3$ receptors, reduced autoreceptor function, and hence increased locomotor activity in animals highly responding to novel environment (Pritchard et al. 2006). Enhanced $D_{3nf}$-specific splicing, potentially leading to impaired $D_3$ receptor-mediated function, has been hypothesized to occur in chronic schizophrenia (Schmauss 1996), a finding that clearly needs to be replicated to allow ultimate conclusions for the pathophysiology of schizophrenia.

Co-expression of recombinant human $D_{2L}$ and $D_3$ receptors results in the formation of functional heterodimers in cellular systems (Pou et al. 2012). Under these conditions, the affinity of $D_3$-preferring agonists with high intrinsic activity, like ropinirole, pramipexole, and S32504, is enhanced in binding experiments, and adenylyl cyclase V/VI is inhibited more potently (Maggio et al. 2003). In contrast, partial agonists, like aripiprazole, lose their efficacy upon co-expression of $D_3$ with $D_2$ receptors (Maggio and Millan 2010; Novi et al. 2007). A receptor interaction through heterodimerization has recently also been demonstrated for the $D_1$ and $D_3$ receptor subtypes. $D_1/D_3$ dimers can be produced by co-transfection but are also found in native striatal membranes and specifically in medium spiny neurons of the ventral striatum. Stimulation of $D_3$ receptors seems to increase $D_1$ receptor affinity for agonists, coupling efficiency, and $D_1$ receptor-mediated behaviors (Fiorentini et al. 2008, 2010; Marcellino et al. 2008; Schwartz et al. 1998b). On the level of locomotor activity, $D_3$ receptor stimulation potentiates $D_1$-mediated effects, which is no longer observed after $D_3$ receptor blockade or in $D_3$-deficient mice (Marcellino et al. 2008; Missale et al. 2010). $D_3$ interactions with nondopamine receptors, like the adenosine $A_2$ receptor, are less well characterized (Torvinen et al. 2005).

Taken together, heterodimerization of the $D_3$ receptor is likely to occur under physiological and pathophysiological conditions but is not ultimately proven in all cases. Heterodimerization with $D_1$ and $D_2$ receptors has been shown to alter agonist binding, intrinsic activity, coupling efficiency, trafficking, and behavioral function. Such consequences of receptor dimerization widen the scope of conventional receptor pharmacology and may explain otherwise unexplained findings from preclinical pharmacology to clinical imaging studies.

## 5 In Vivo Pharmacology of Dopamine $D_3$ Receptors

There are hardly any selective agonists for either the $D_2$ or the $D_3$ receptor. Relatively high $D_3$ selectivity, reported for some agonists like 7-OH-DPAT, (+) PD 128907, and PHNO (Table 1), is observed only under certain conditions in vitro and tends to disappear in experiments in vivo. In contrast, $D_3$ receptor antagonists with high selectivity, not only in binding studies but also in functional experiments, usually maintain their selectivity in vivo and can be used to characterize

$D_3$-mediated effects. For $D_2$ receptors, a relatively selective substance has been described as tool: L-741,626 (3-[4-(4-chloro)phenyl-4-hydroxypiperidinomethyl] indole) (Bowery et al. 1996).

Although first-generation tool compounds to study $D_3$ receptors (e.g., UH-232, AJ-76) were far from ideal, they have been used to demonstrate the functional relevance of $D_3$ receptors in vivo. The availability of transgenic mice and highly selective dopamine receptor antagonists resulted in a more comprehensive understanding of the function of the dopamine $D_3$ receptor, eventually distinguishing $D_3$ from $D_2$ receptor-mediated effects (Millan 2005; Sokoloff and Leriche 2007).

## *5.1 Modulation of Neurotransmitter Release and Synthesis*

Synthesis and release of dopamine are regulated by electrical activity of neurons and by autoreceptors on cell bodies and nerve terminals, which belong to the $D_2$ type. Agonists at these receptors, such as apomorphine, quinpirole, 7-OH-DPAT, quinelorane, and PD 128907 (Table 1), decrease extracellular concentrations in dopaminergically innervated brain areas measured by microdialysis in anesthetized (Pugsley et al. 1995) and freely moving rats (Bristow et al. 1996; Pugsley et al. 1995; Rivet et al. 1994). γ-Butyrolactone (GBL), which blocks the impulse flow in dopaminergic neurons, has been used to distinguish changes mediated by altered impulse flow from terminal autoreceptor-mediated presynaptic effects. The $D_3$-preferring agonist PD 128907 decreases dopamine synthesis in normal and GBL-treated rats in mesolimbic more than in dorsal striatal areas (Pugsley et al. 1995), suggesting the involvement of presynaptic autoreceptors. Another $D_3$-preferring agonist, 7-OH-DPAT, reduces dopamine synthesis dose dependently with a higher potency in the olfactory tubercle compared to striatum or nucleus accumbens (Aretha and Galloway 1996). Using antisense oligonucleotide for the $D_3$ receptor by intracerebroventricular infusion results in increased DOPA accumulation, indicating enhanced dopamine turnover in the nucleus accumbens (Nissbrandt et al. 1995). Together, these data suggest that principally dopamine $D_3$ receptors can modulate both, release as well as synthesis of dopamine, in addition to the well-known $D_2$-mediated effects.

Studies of autoreceptor function in spontaneous neuronal electrical activity, dopamine release, and dopamine synthesis (Koeltzow et al. 1998) in $D_3$ receptor knockout mice (Xu et al. 1999) initially suggested that the effects of PD 128907 are mediated by dopamine $D_2$ rather than $D_3$ receptors. In contrast to these results, recent data in $D_3$ knockout mice confirm the involvement of $D_3$ receptors in the modulation of dopamine release. The $IC_{25}$ for the $D_3$-preferring agonist PD 128907 to inhibit DA release was 0.05 mg/kg in wild type, but tenfold higher in $D_3$-deficient mice. Thus, at low doses, the effect of PD 128907 on DA release seems to be due to $D_3$ receptor stimulation (Zapata et al. 2001), whereas effects of higher doses are mediated by $D_2$ and $D_3$ receptors.

**Table 2** Pharmacological effects of dopamine $D_3$ receptor antagonism in vivo

| | Compound | References |
|---|---|---|
| Decrease in spontaneous electrical activity of dopaminergic cell in ventral tegmental area after (sub)chronic administration | ABT-925<br>SB-277011<br>ABT-127<br>S33138 | Gross et al. (1998),<br>Ashby et al. (2000),<br>Drescher et al. (2005),<br>Millan et al. (2008b) |
| Increase in extracellular dopamine | SB-277011<br>ABT-127 | Lacroix et al. (2003),<br>Drescher et al. (2005) |
| Increase in extracellular acetylcholine | ABT-925<br>SB-277011<br>ABT-127<br>S33084 | Drescher et al. (2002, 2005),<br>Lacroix et al. (2003, 2006),<br>Millan et al. (2007) |
| Sensitization | Nafadotride<br>ABT-925 | Bordet et al. (1997, 2000),<br>Richtand et al. (2000),<br>Schuetz et al. (2004) |
| Influence on social behaviors | U 99194<br>ABT-925<br>SB-277011<br>ABT-127 | Rodriguez-Arias et al. (1999), Drescher et al. (2002), Jongen-Rêlo et al. (2004a), Gross et al. (2005) |
| Attenuation of catalepsy | (+)S14297<br>SB-277011<br>S33084<br>RG-15<br>ABT-925 | Millan et al. (1997),<br>Gyertyan and Saghy (2007),<br>Gyertyan et al. (2008),<br>Gross et al. (1997) |

Selective $D_3$ receptor antagonists like SB-277011, S14297, S33138, and ABT-925 (Tables 1 and 2) further helped to understand the functional role of $D_3$ receptors in modulating dopamine release. S14297 antagonized the inhibitory effect of (+)-7-OH-DPAT on dopamine release in the nucleus accumbens and the effect of PD 128907 in the frontal cortex without influencing dopamine levels on its own. The diastereomer S17777 was ineffective (Rivet et al. 1994; Gobert et al. 1996). SB-277011 attenuates the quinelorane-induced reduction of dopamine efflux in the nucleus accumbens but not in the striatum, a regional selectivity consistent with the anatomical distribution of $D_3$ receptors (Reavill et al. 2000; Stemp et al. 2000; Gobert et al. 1995). S33138 at doses without effect on dopamine release, when given alone, attenuated the PD 128907-induced decrease in frontal cortex, nucleus accumbens, and striatum with equal potency (Millan et al. 2008b). Interestingly, S33138 elevated mRNA, encoding c-fos, dose dependently in the $D_3$ receptor-rich islands of Calleja and nucleus accumbens with higher potency than in the $D_2$-rich striatum.

Dopaminergic hypofunction in the prefrontal cortex has been implicated in the pathogenesis of negative symptoms (Davis et al. 1991) and cognitive dysfunctions of schizophrenia (Sawaguchi 2000). It has been suggested that the ability of drugs to selectively increase dopaminergic neurotransmission in cortical regions, as compared to basal ganglia, predicts their efficacy against negative and cognitive symptoms of schizophrenia. The selective $D_3$ receptor antagonist ABT-925 (Table 1; Unger et al. 2002) antagonized the reduction of extracellular dopamine,

3,4-dihydroxyphenylacetic acid, and homovanillic acid concentrations in the medial prefrontal cortex caused by the agonists PD 128907 or quinpirole. It completely antagonized the quinpirole-induced decrease in microdialysate dopamine in the mPFC, but only partly in the striatum (Drescher et al. 2002). Another selective $D_3$ antagonist, ABT-127, (Banasikowski et al. 2010; Unger et al. 2005) also attenuated quinpirole-induced decrease in extracellular dopamine concentrations in the medial prefrontal cortex. However, in the striatum, the quinpirole-induced decrease in DOPA accumulation in GBL-treated rats was attenuated only at higher doses already occupying $D_2$ receptors (Banasikowski et al. 2010; Drescher et al. 2005).

Cognitive functions are known to be also linked to acetylcholine. Selective dopamine $D_3$ receptor antagonists, like atypical antipsychotic drugs, are able to increase not only extracellular dopamine concentrations in the frontal cortex but also acetylcholine (Kuroki et al. 1999). This has been demonstrated for SB-277011 (Lacroix et al. 2003) and ABT-127 (Drescher et al. 2005). Together, these findings suggest that dopamine $D_3$ receptor antagonism might have beneficial effects on functions of the frontal cortex, such as the negative symptoms and cognitive deficits associated with schizophrenia.

## *5.2 Spontaneous Electrical Activity of Mesolimbic/Mesocortical and Nigrostriatal Dopaminergic Neurons*

Although studies using $D_3$ receptor knockout mice have suggested that the spontaneous electrical activity of dopaminergic neurons in the ventral tegmental area and the substantia nigra is controlled by dopamine $D_2$ but not by dopamine $D_3$ receptors (Koeltzow et al. 1998), there is cumulating evidence that in addition to dopamine $D_2$ receptors, inhibitory $D_3$ receptors presumably localized dendritically control the electrical activity of dopaminergic neurons in the brainstem. Notably in the substantia nigra pars compacta, the inhibitory potency of dopamine agonists correlates significantly to their in vitro binding affinities for $D_3$, but not for $D_2$ receptors (Kreiss et al. 1995). The $D_3$ receptor-preferring agonists pramipexole and quinpirole completely silence firing in the substantia nigra when administered in slowly accumulating doses (Piercey et al. 1996). These findings are in line with published data, demonstrating that the dopamine $D_3$-preferring partial agonist 7-OH-DPAT and the full agonists PD 128907 and quinpirole, given cumulatively i.v., lead to a significant decrease in firing of dopaminergic neurons in the substantia nigra. The quinpirole-induced decrease was antagonized by BP 897 (Table 1; Wicke and Garcia-Ladona 2001).

In dopaminergic neurons of the ventral tegmental area, PD 128907 dose dependently and potently ($ED_{50} = 0.001$ mg/kg, i.v.) reduces the firing rate. The $D_3$ receptor-preferring antagonist S14297, but not its inactive diastereomer S17777, and the selective $D_3$ receptor antagonist S33084 are able to reverse this inhibition of

electrical activity without influencing the firing rate on their own (Gobert et al. 1996; Millan et al. 2000b, 2008b). In conclusion, these data provide the first direct evidence that somatodendritic $D_3$ autoreceptors modulate the release of dopamine in terminal regions (Gobert et al. 1996).

Chronic administration of antipsychotics results in a decrease in electrical activity of dopaminergic neurons in the brainstem; the number of spontaneously firing neurons is reduced through a depolarization block (Table 2). This phenomenon is thought to be highly predictive of antipsychotic activity (Grace et al. 1997). The "cells per track" model is able to differentiate such changes in the ventral tegmental area and the substantia nigra. All clinically used and putative antipsychotics tested so far suppress spontaneous electrical activity in the ventral tegmental area at clinically relevant plasma exposures even when their primary mechanism is nondopaminergic. In addition, typical antipsychotics suppress spontaneous firing in the substantia nigra, which is thought to be more closely related to the liability to develop extrapyramidal motor adverse effects. Chronic treatment with selective dopamine $D_3$ receptor antagonists, including ABT-925, ABT-127 (Drescher et al. 2002, 2005; Gross et al. 1998, 2008), SB-277011 (Ashby et al. 2000), and S33138 (Millan et al. 2008b) at doses blocking $D_3$ receptors, has consistently shown to reduce the number of spontaneously active dopaminergic neurons in the ventral tegmental area, indicative of potential antipsychotic activity. At these doses, spontaneous activity in the substantia nigra is not affected by $D_3$ receptor antagonists.

## 6 Functional Role of $D_3$ Receptors in Behavior

### *6.1 Locomotor Activity*

The role of dopamine $D_3$ receptors for locomotor activity has been broadly investigated, but some results remain controversial. A number of studies in mice deficient for the $D_3$ receptor, but not all, reveal hyperactivity, especially in novel environments (Accili et al. 1996; Chourbaji et al. 2008; Karasinska et al. 2005; Xu et al. 1997). In wild-types, low, $D_3$-selective doses of agonists such as 7-OH-DPAT and PD 128907 reduce locomotion in a novel environment but no longer after habituation (Ukai et al. 1997). This inhibitory effect is lost in $D_3$ knockout mice (Pritchard et al. 2003, 2007), and the resulting hyperlocomotion seems to be due to a habituation deficit, which may have a neurobiological mechanism in common with deficits in habituation, perseverative behaviors, and behavioral inflexibility in schizophrenia (Cools et al. 2000; Crider 1997; Ludewig et al. 2003; Ridley 1994). Another observation is that the habituation deficit induced by $mGlu_{2/3}$ receptor blockade can be reversed not only by established antipsychotics but also by the selective $D_3$ antagonist SB-277011 (Bespalov et al. 2007).

In nontransgenic rodents, $D_3$ receptor-preferring agonists like 7-OH-DPAT or PD 128907 cause inhibition of locomotor activity at low doses and stimulation at higher doses (Ahlenius and Salmi 1994; Daly and Waddington 1993; Depoortere

et al. 1996; McElroy 1994; Millan et al. 2004b; Pugsley et al. 1995). Inhibitory effects are suggested to be mediated by $D_3$, stimulatory effects by $D_2$ receptors (Shafer and Levant 1998). This assumption is supported by a lack of significant $D_2$ receptor occupancy in the striatum at low, inhibitory doses of 7-OH-DPAT (Levant 1995). These results, however, are challenged by findings that $D_3$ receptor-preferring agonists such as quinelorane, PD 128907, and 7-OH-DPAT induced hypolocomotor activity not only in wild-type $D_3^{+/+}$ but also in $D_3^{-/-}$, $D_3^{+/-}$ mice (Boulay et al. 1999; Xu et al. 1999). In line with this finding, not entirely selective, but $D_3$ receptor-preferring antagonists, nafadotride and U 99194, induced almost identical hyperlocomotor effects in $D_3$ receptor-deficient and wild-type mice. These controversial findings could suggest (I) that the effects of those agonists are not mediated by $D_3$ receptors, (II) that the in vitro selectivities of $D_3$-preferring compounds are not translated in vivo, or (III) that studies obtained with $D_3$ receptor transgenic mice have to be interpreted with caution since different $D_3$ receptor knockout mice display increased locomotor activity and rearing behavior (see above). In a recent study using pre-habituated rats (Millan et al. 2004a, b), PD 128907 induced hypolocomotion at low, $D_3$ receptor-preferring doses (0.01–0.63 mg/kg) and hyperlocomotion at high doses (2.5–10 mg/kg). $D_3$-preferring antagonists, S14297 and U 99194, attenuate this reduction in locomotor activity and potentiate the stimulatory effects, whereas $D_2$-preferring antagonists, L-741,626 and S23199, enhance the PD 128907 reduction and blocked the stimulatory effects.

The most plausible explanation of all these results is that $D_3$ receptor agonism at postsynaptic sites in basal ganglia can reduce locomotor activity, especially in nonhabituated animals. The use of nonselective agonists and antagonists complicates the situation through involving pre- and/or postsynaptic $D_2$ receptors, particularly at higher doses that do not discriminate between $D_3$ and $D_2$ receptors. Selective $D_3$ receptor antagonists, like ABT-925 (own observation), SB-277011, S33084, GR 218,231, are neutral in locomotor activity even at high doses not affecting spontaneous or stimulated locomotor activity. They inhibit apomorphine-induced climbing in mice only weakly, have little or no effect on the locomotor responses to amphetamine or cocaine, have no effect on conditioned avoidance behavior, and do not cause locomotor inhibition common for $D_2$ antagonism (Reavill et al. 2000).

In this context, it should be mentioned that $D_3$ receptors are expressed not only in striatal and cortical areas but also in lobuli 9 and 10 of rat and human cerebellum (Diaz et al. 1995). They may have a role for motor function, for example, mediating locomotor hypoactivity, but pharmacological studies are difficult to interpret, because the local and pharmacological selectivity of tool substances applied locally may be questioned (Barik and de Beaurepaire 2005; Kolasiewicz et al. 2008).

## 6.2 *Dopamine $D_3$ Receptors in Dopaminergic Sensitization*

Behavioral sensitization is a progressive and long-lasting augmentation of various behaviors induced by repetitive administration of stimulant drugs. A variety of compounds directly or indirectly stimulating dopamine receptors, like $D_2$-like

agonists, L-DOPA, cocaine, amphetamine, and nicotine, can elicit this phenomenon. Addiction, but also psychotic symptoms, has been associated with dopaminergic sensitization (Beninger and Banasikowski 2008; Collip et al. 2008; Schmidt and Beninger 2006; Vezina and Leyton 2009). In experimental animals, the increased locomotor activity is usually used as a readout. In this context, we focus on a potential role of dopamine $D_3$ receptors.

The $D_2$-like agonist 7-OH-DPAT, which is $D_3$ selective only in low doses, decreases locomotor activity when given acutely, probably through stimulating presynaptic dopamine autoreceptors. Given subchronically for 10 days, 1 mg/kg/day s.c. progressively causes a greater locomotor response (Mattingly et al. 1996). The fact that in contrast to other $D_2$ agonists, for example, bromocriptine and quinpirole, no clear cross-sensitization to apomorphine and cocaine and no context dependency were observed led to the assumption that $D_3$ receptors might be involved (Mattingly et al. 2000). It is unlikely, however, that the used dose is $D_3$ selective.

$D_3$ receptor antagonists like ABT-925 (A-437203; Geneste et al. 2006) are more selective than available agonists and therefore better suitable to investigate the role of $D_3$ receptors for sensitization. The sensitization to the motor response to the mixed $D_2/D_3$ agonist quinpirole (0.25 mg/kg s.c., eight injections every second day) could be inhibited by $D_3$-selective dosing of ABT-925 (1–30 mg/kg), either as a co-treatment during development of sensitization or as a single dose after established sensitization (Schuetz et al. 2004). These results suggest that $D_3$ antagonism is able to prevent both, the development and the expression of sensitization (Jongen-Rêlo et al. 2004b). In line with these results, amphetamine sensitization could be inhibited by a less selective but still $D_3$-preferring antagonist, nafadotride (Richtand et al. 2000). The authors hypothesize that downregulation of $D_3$ receptor function through stimulation with the endogenous agonist dopamine results in removal of the $D_3$-mediated inhibitory motor effect ("endogenous brake") and enables $D_2$ stimulation to become overt. This mechanism is thought to finally contribute to the sensitization phenomenon (Richtand et al. 2001). In agreement with this assumption, the motor inhibitory effect of very low, $D_3$-selective doses of 7-OH-DPAT (10 μg/kg) or PD 128907 (10 μg/kg) is no longer detectable after repeated amphetamine administration to rats (Richtand et al. 2003). Alternative splicing of the $D_3$ receptor with increased formation of $D_{3nf}$ variant and removal of $D_3/D_{3nf}$ dimers from the cell surface may cause the downregulation of $D_3$ function and thereby contribute to desensitization (Richtand 2006; Richtand et al. 2010).

In a different model with locomotor sensitization to repeated L-DOPA administration in rats with unilateral lesions of the nigrostriatal path, the group of Sokoloff found enhanced expression of $D_3$ receptor mRNA mainly in dynorphin/substance P-expressing neurons in the dorsal striatum. The $D_3$ receptor expression was triggered by BDNF (Guillin et al. 2001), and the sensitized motor effect was inhibited by nafadotride as $D_3$-preferring antagonist (Bordet et al. 1997, 2000). A similar sensitization process with enhanced $D_3$ receptor mRNA and binding seems to occur in response to nicotine (Le Foll et al. 2003).

These experimental results are congruent in supporting a role of the $D_3$ receptor in a variety of dopaminergic sensitization processes. Such processes have been claimed to occur not only after stimulant drugs of abuse but also in extrapyramidal motor disorders, like parkinsonism and dyskinesias, and in psychoses, in particular in their incipient stage (Guillin et al. 2001; Richtand et al. 2001). It remains to be explored, however, if there are mechanisms of sensitization to dopaminergic drugs that are independent of the $D_3$ receptor and why $D_3$-deficient mice develop a sensitization response to ethanol but not to amphetamine (Harrison and Nobrega 2009).

## *6.3 A Role of Dopamine $D_3$ Receptors in Cognitive Function*

There is increasing recognition of the role of dopamine in cognition beyond attention, motivation and reward (Humphries and Prescott 2010; Nitsche et al. 2010; Bromberg-Martin et al. 2010), and considerable progress (Millan et al. 2012), and consensus has been achieved in recent years to better define the cognitive impairment in schizophrenia, for example, through the MATRICS (Measurement and Treatment Research to Improve Cognition in Schizophrenia) [Nuechterlein et al. 2004] and CNTRICS [Cognitive Neuroscience Treatment Research to Improve Cognition in Schizophrenia (Carter and Barch 2007)] initiatives. The following cognitive domains are affected in schizophrenia and relevant for the prognosis of the disease: attention/vigilance, working memory, visual learning and memory, verbal learning and memory, reasoning and problem solving, and speed of processing. Several behavioral methods have been identified to measure functions in these domains, which ideally should be applicable to patients as well as experimental animals (Young et al. 2009). Despite some progress in treating cognitive deficits in schizophrenia with second-generation antipsychotics, dopamine $D_2$ antagonism hardly contributes to alleviating related symptoms and there remains a substantial medical need (Carpenter and Koenig 2008). The distinct role of $D_3$ receptors, on the other hand, is only beginning to emerge. Their specific localization in ventral areas of the basal ganglia and their occurrence in the frontal cortex suggest a potential role in learning of flexible behaviors and behavioral strategies through dopaminergic modulation (Humphries and Prescott 2010).

Initial studies in transgenic mice gave only limited insight into the role of $D_3$ receptors for cognitive functions, and $D_3$ receptor deficiency has not been systematically investigated in all cognitive domains. $D_3$- and $D_2$-deficient mice were described to have an impaired spatial working memory with increasing delay in an alternation task in a T-maze (Glickstein et al. 2002). Spatial learning in the Morris water maze, however, seems not to be impaired in $D_3$ mutants (Xing et al. 2010a) but even improved with increasing age (Xing et al. 2010b). $D_3$-deficient mice have also been reported to perform better in a passive avoidance task (Micale et al. 2010), potentially indicating improved emotional long-term memory. Enhanced reversal learning in $D_3$ knockouts may indicate improved cognitive flexibility and problem solving (Glickstein et al. 2005). In a two-choice perceptual

discrimination test using different odors and digging materials combined with an attentional set-shifting task, $D_2$ and $D_3$ knockouts differed from the wild-type in different test phases: $D_2$, but not $D_3$, mutants showed a deficit in the initial acquisition of task-related rules, whereas $D_3$ mutants performed significantly better in the set-shifting phase that required reversal learning (Glickstein et al. 2005). This task needs sustained attention and is dependent on optimal functioning of the prefrontal cortex. The better performance of $D_3$ mutants was accompanied by higher expression of c-fos in the anterior cingulate and pre-/infra-limbic cortices compared to wild-type and $D_3$ mutants. Interestingly, $D_3$-deficient mice also display enhanced social novelty discrimination when investigating novel or familiar juveniles as recently reported by Watson et al. (2012). This task relies on olfactory cues and includes an obvious social component.

Pharmacological tools have recently contributed to better understand the role of $D_3$ receptors in cognitive function, but only few studies used agonists to assess $D_3$-mediated effects in behavioral paradigms. The $D_3$ receptor-preferring agonist 7-OH-DPAT caused amnesic effects in a passive avoidance task in mice (Ukai et al. 1997) and significantly shortened step-down latencies after 24 h when administered immediately before training, after training, or before retention. 7-OH-DPAT has also been reported to significantly impair performance of marmosets in a reversal task of a two-choice visual object discrimination test without affecting the initial acquisition of the task (Smith et al. 1999). $D_3$ agonists, 7-OH-DPAT and PD 128907, also cause immediate dose-dependent impairment of social memory as measured by the social investigation of a juvenile by an adult rat. The effect size was comparable to that of the muscarinic antagonist scopolamine or the $D_2$ receptor antagonist L-741,626 (Millan et al. 2007). All three studies used low, probably $D_3$-selective, doses of $D_3$ agonists.

A variety of $D_3$-preferring (S33138 and U 99194) or $D_3$-selective (SB-277011, S33084, and RGH-1756) antagonists have been investigated for their effects on different cognitive functions (Table 3). The $D_3$-preferring antagonist S33138 with its 25- to 30-fold $D_3/D_2$ selectivity inhibits conditioned avoidance, apomorphine-induced climbing, and hyperlocomotion caused by amphetamine, dizocilpine (MK-801), and phencyclidine similar to first- and second-generation antagonists like haloperidol, risperidone, olanzapine, and clozapine. In contrast to these antipsychotics, however, S33138 does not disturb but rather improves cognitive functions in a variety of tests in rodents and nonhuman primates (Millan et al. 2008a, 2010; Millan and Brocco 2008): in rats, no disruption in a five-choice serial reaction test and no negative effect on passive avoidance were detectable. S33138 counteracted the disturbances of passive avoidance and social novelty discrimination by scopolamine, and it significantly improved the impairment of social novelty discrimination and novel object recognition observed after time delays of 30 min and 4 h, respectively. It also enhanced the performance in an extradimensional attention-shift task. In rhesus monkeys with cognitive impairment induced by low-dose MPTP, S33138 seems to improve attention or working memory measured by computer-based variable delayed response at a short delay of 5 s. More convincingly, it significantly restored cognitive flexibility in an extradimensional

**Table 3** Behavioral effects of dopamine $D_3$ receptor antagonists

| | | | Compound | References |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Habituation deficit induced by $mGlu_{2/3}$ receptor blockade | ↓ | Rat | SB-277011 | Bespalov et al. (2007) |
| Social recognition, impairment by scopolamine | ↑ | Rat | S33084<br>SB-277011 | Millan et al. (2007) |
| Social recognition, impairment by delay | ↑ | Rat | S33084<br>S33138<br>SB-277011 | Loiseau and Millan (2009),<br>Millan et al. (2008a),<br>Millan and Brocco (2008) |
| Water labyrinth, impairment by scopolamine or benzodiazepine | ↑ | Rat | SB-277011<br>RGH-1756<br>U 99194A<br>RG-15 | Laszy et al. (2005),<br>Gyertyan et al. (2008) |
| Novel object recognition | ↑ | Rat | S33138 | Millan et al. (2008a, 2008b, 2010) |
| Social recognition, social novelty discrimination | ↑ | Rat | S33138<br>S33084 | Millan et al. (2008a, b, 2010),<br>Watson et al. (2012) |
| Hyperactivity and deficit in novel object discrimination due to postweaning social isolation | ↓ | Rat | S33084<br>S33138 | Watson et al. (2011) |
| Attentional set-shifting task, impairment by low-dose MPTP | ↑ | Rhesus monkey | S33138 | Millan et al. (2010) |

attentional set-shifting task based on the Wisconsin Card Sorting Test and the Cambridge Neuropsychological Test Automated Battery (CANTAB). In separate experiments in aged rhesus monkeys, S33138 improved task accuracies in a delayed matching to sample model. Overall, S33138 causes a benefit in attention, working memory, executive function, visual declarative memory, cognitive flexibility, and no negative effect on speed of processing. This profile is certainly not explainable by the $D_2$ receptor component of the compound, since the preferential $D_2$ antagonist L741,626 rather impairs social novelty discrimination and novel object recognition (Watson et al. 2012). Accordingly, similar results were achieved with the highly selective $D_3$ receptor antagonists, S33084 and SB-277011, in rats (Millan et al. 2007; Watson et al. 2012). Both counteracted the effect of a 2-h intersession interval on social novelty discrimination and the negative cognitive effect of scopolamine in the same model. This effect of $D_3$ antagonists on social recognition, which seems similar to that of a $D_1$ agonist, apparently occurs in the frontal cortex, since systemic and local administration into the frontal cortex, but not into the nucleus accumbens or into the striatum, elicits the same response. It may represent an indirect effect: it is accompanied by increased extracellular

acetylcholine and histamine in frontal cortex, but not other monoamine and amino acid neurotransmitters (Loiseau and Millan 2009).

Experiments with SB-277011, RGH-1756, RG-15, and U 99194 indicate that $D_3$ antagonists can also counteract scopolamine impairment in a water labyrinth task which is expected to depend on hippocampal function. Interestingly, the same $D_3$ antagonists also reversed respective impairments induced by benzodiazepine receptor ligands like the beta-carboline FG-7142 (Laszy et al. 2005) or diazepam (Gyertyan et al. 2008). It remains to be demonstrated, however, if these effects are also mediated via enhanced release of acetylcholine or not.

Overall, these cognitive results are promising: they have been found in rodents and primates and cover different cognitive domains that are relevant for schizophrenia. However, so far there is only one publication with dopamine $D_3$ antagonists that has a closer relationship to schizophrenia. Postweaning social isolation in rats is discussed as a model for the developmental aspects of schizophrenia. This intervention has been anatomically linked to the perirhinal and entorhinal cortex and the globus pallidus (Winters et al. 2008) and causes hyperlocomotion and a deficit in novel object discrimination. Both the preferential $D_3$ receptor antagonist S33138 and the $D_3$-selective antagonists S33084 restored hyperlocomotion and the cognitive deficit, in contrast to the $D_2$ receptor-preferring antagonist L-741,626, which also reduced hyperlocomotion, but impaired novel object discrimination (Watson et al. 2011).

All these results suggest a therapeutic potential of $D_3$ receptor antagonists for improving cognitive performance in CNS disorders, especially in schizophrenia, but also in Parkinson's disease and in age-related cognitive decline. It is remarkable that in tests requiring cognitive flexibility, the performance is impaired by $D_3$-preferring agonists but enhanced in $D_3$ mutant mice and by different $D_3$ receptor antagonists. These properties obviously need confirmation by clinical studies. It can be expected that $D_3$ receptor antagonists are devoid of negative cognitive (Watson et al. 2011) and anhedonic effects of antipsychotic $D_2$ antagonists (Ballard et al. 2007).

## *6.4 Prepulse Inhibition*

Prepulse inhibition (PPI) is a model of sensory gating, a function that can be disrupted by pharmacological intervention including dopaminergic stimulation and is disturbed in schizophrenia patients (Geyer 2006; Geyer et al. 2001). Nonselective dopamine agonists such as apomorphine, and mixed $D_2/D_3$ agonists, such as quinpirole and quinelorane, reliably disrupt PPI in rats (Peng et al. 1990; Zhang et al. 2007). The $D_3$-preferring agonist PD 128907 disrupts PPI as well. This effect can be reversed by the selective $D_3$ antagonists SB-277011 and A-691990, by the atypical antipsychotics risperidone and clozapine, but not by raclopride or haloperidol. In contrast, the apomorphine-induced PPI deficit is reversible by risperidone, clozapine, and haloperidol, but not by A-691990 and SB-277011 (Zhang et al. 2007). The latter results are in line with previously published data on SB-277011,

showing no effect on quinpirole- or apomorphine-induced PPI disruption (Reavill et al. 2000).

A nonpharmacological deficit in PPI can be induced by isolation rearing in rats, and a genetic PPI deficit is found DBA/2J mice. $D_3$ antagonism has an influence on both: SB-277011 reverses the deficit after isolation rearing (Reavill et al. 2000), and the partial agonist BP 897 and the selective $D_3$ antagonists SB-277011 and ABT-925 enhance PPI in DBA/2J mice (Zhang et al. 2006). Such pre-attentional effects may contribute to improve cognitive function and be beneficial under pathological conditions, such as schizophrenia.

### *6.5 Social Behavior*

Rodents and monkeys, which experienced periods of isolation, develop heightened emotional reactivity to mild social stimulation: aggression, social avoidance, and multiple defensive behaviors. The $D_3$-preferring agonists 7-OH-DPAT and PD 128907 and the $D_2$ receptor-preferring agonist PNU 91356A increase defensive behavior accompanied by a decrease in social investigation (Gendreau et al. 1997, 2000). In isolation-induced aggression in male mice U 99194 enhances social behavior.

In habituated rats, the $D_3$ receptor-preferring agonists 7-OH-DPAT and PD 128907 inhibit the naturally occurring huddling behavior (Kagaya et al. 1996). The selective dopamine $D_3$ receptor antagonists ABT-925, SB-277011, and several other $D_3$ antagonists antagonize this PD 128907-induced deficit (Jongen-Rêlo et al. 2004a), suggesting that dopamine $D_3$ receptors have a role in this social behavior in rats.

## 7 Extrapyramidal Motor Function

Classical neuroleptics, but also second-generation antipsychotics, can produce extrapyramidal motor side effects in patients, including dystonia, drug-induced parkinsonism, tardive dyskinesia, and akathisia. The liability to induce dystonia and parkinsonism-like symptoms corresponds to the propensity of $D_2$-like but also $D_1$-like antagonists to acutely induce catalepsy in rodents. Catalepsy is anatomically attributable to striatal areas in the brain, particularly their dorsal sensorimotor parts. Occurrence of $D_3$ receptors in all parts of the striatum together with the fact that several dopamine agonists used in Parkinson's disease have similar affinities for $D_2$ and $D_3$ receptors or even show some preference for $D_3$ over $D_2$ receptors, like pramipexole (Joyce 2001; Bennett and Piercey 1999; Varga et al. 2009), raises the question, if $D_3$ antagonism might contribute to extrapyramidal motor symptoms.

Mice deficient for the $D_3$ receptor ($D_3^{-/-}$) present no obvious extrapyramidal motor dysfunction, but the same is true for $D_2^{-/-}$. The latter, however, are unresponsive to the cataleptogenic effect of haloperidol, an effect which seems to be dependent on gene dose, whereas $D_3^{-/-}$ did not deviate from controls in their cataleptic response to either the $D_2$ antagonist haloperidol or the $D_1$ antagonist SCH 23390 (Boulay et al. 2000). Selective $D_3$ antagonists like S33084, ABT-925 (Gross et al. 1997), (+)S14297, S33084, and SB-277011 (Gyertyan and Saghy 2007; Millan et al. 1997) are even able to counteract the cataleptogenic effects of haloperidol.

Thus, it is not surprising that these selective $D_3$ antagonists are devoid of cataleptogenic effects in rodents, when given alone (Millan et al. 1995, 2000a; Reavill et al. 2000; Gyertyan et al. 2008). In humans this is confirmed by a lack of extrapyramidal motor effects in phase 1 studies in volunteers (unpublished results) and phase 2 in schizophrenia patients (Redden et al. 2011). Among second-generation antipsychotics, amisulpride is considered as an atypical antipsychotic with few parkinsonism-like adverse effects, despite the fact that it binds exclusively to $D_2$-like receptors and not to any of the other GPCRs which have been discussed to mitigate such symptoms, like the 5-$HT_{1A}$ or the 5-$HT_{2A}$ receptor (see below).

The Ser9Gly polymorphism of the $D_3$ receptor has been examined for possible association with tardive dyskinesia, and the Gly variant was found to be associated with increased risk of tardive dyskinesia in several but not all studies (Bakker et al. 2006; Zai et al. 2009). The fact that part of the risk for tardive dyskinesia is thought to be associated with schizophrenia itself (Tenback et al. 2009; van Os et al. 1997), that the Ser9Gly polymorphism has also been linked to the disease (Crocq et al. 1992; Ma et al. 2008) and to the treatment outcome (Arranz et al. 2011), illustrates the complexity of the situation. The experience that the occurrence of early dystonia, mostly induced by antipsychotics with high potency at the $D_2$ receptor, is linked to tardive dyskinesia (Pierre 2005) and the fact that $D_3$ antagonists counteract rather than elicit extrapyrimidal symptoms make it unlikely that $D_3$ antagonism is a factor contributing to tardive dyskinesia.

## 8 Prolactin

Dopamine $D_2$-like receptors are known to regulate prolactin synthesis and release. Lactotrophs in the anterior lobe of the pituitary are under the control of the tuberoinfundibular dopamine pathway: dopamine $D_2$ agonists are able to inhibit prolactin release and are used for this purpose in the treatment of pituitary adenomas (Ben-Jonathan and Hnasko 2001). Hyperprolactinemia due to blockade of $D_2$-type receptors is a frequent side effect of antipsychotic medications not limited to first-generation antipsychotics (Turrone et al. 2002). Especially those antipsychotics that penetrate the blood–brain barrier relatively poorly and achieve high plasma concentrations at therapeutic dosage, like the benzamides sulpiride and amisulpride, cause a distinct increase in prolactin (Wetzel et al. 1994; Gründer et al. 1999; Schlosser et al. 2002; Bushe and Shaw 2007). As a consequence, the absence

of hyperprolactinemia is no longer seen as a criterion to define atypicality of antipsychotics (Gründer and Benkert 2002).

There is little doubt that hyperprolactinemia is caused by blockade of the $D_2$ subtype, since all antipsychotics have this effect in common, in rodents, primates, and humans (Kapur et al. 2000), whereas several $D_3$-selective compounds have been reported not to increase prolactin in rodents, for example, ABT-925 (Drescher et al. 2002), S33084 (Millan et al. 2000a), and SB-277011 (Reavill et al. 2000), in contrast to the less selective RG-15 (Kiss et al. 2008). The $D_3$-preferring antagonist S33138 did not produce any relevant hyperprolactinemia in patients at a dose that already occupied 65% of striatal $D_2$ receptors in PET (Thomasson-Perret et al. 2008). Overall, there is a better correlation between affinities for $D_2$ than for $D_3$ receptors and effects on plasma prolactin (Gobert et al. 1995). The $D_3$ agonist PD 128907, in contrast to less selective $D_3$-preferring or nonselective agonists, does not decrease prolactin (Durham et al. 1997). In agreement with these functional results, $D_{2S}$ and $D_{2L}$, but not $D_3$ receptor mRNAs are found in the rat and human pituitary (Landwehrmeyer et al. 1993; Valerio et al. 1994).

All these results are in favor of the $D_2$ subtype mediating the effect of dopamine on pituitary lactotrophs in experimental animals as well as in humans. It is unlikely that $D_3$ receptors play a direct role in regulating synthesis or release of prolactin in the anterior pituitary lobe.

## 9 $D_3$ Receptor Antagonism—A Role for First- and Second-Generation Antipsychotics?

There is strong evidence that all antipsychotics currently in clinical use, first- and second-generation compounds as well as partial dopamine agonists, exert their therapeutic value mainly through antagonism at dopamine $D_2$ receptors (Kapur and Mamo 2003; Seeman 2006). This is true not only for positive symptoms but also for extrapyramidal and endocrine adverse effects that have been attributed to $D_2$ receptor blockade. There is agreement that 70–80% occupancy of central $D_2$ receptors as determined by PET is needed for most antipsychotics to achieve a sufficient therapeutic response, whereas higher occupancies can elicit dystonia and parkinsonian symptoms. The situation may be different for clozapine and eventually quetiapine; the reason for this discrepancy is still a matter of debate. Interaction of antipsychotics with other receptors, like 5-$HT_{1A}$, 5-$HT_2$, 5-$HT_6$ receptors, $\alpha_1$-adrenoceptors, is likely to contribute or modify the overall clinical response.

In this context, it is striking that all clinically used antipsychotics do bind not only to $D_2$ receptors but also to $D_3$ receptors—without any known exception, which is not astonishing when considering the relatively high homology between these two receptors. Values in Table 4 demonstrate that most antipsychotics have $D_3$ affinities comparable to those for the $D_2$ receptor. When comparing $D_2/D_3$ selectivity of antipsychotics, it has to be considered that affinities may differ between the

**Table 4** Affinities of first- and second-generation antipsychotics for cloned human dopamine receptors

| | Human dopamine receptors | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | $K_i$ nmol/l ($-\log K_i$) | | | | |
| | $D_1$ | $D_2$ | $D_3$ | $D_4$ | $D_5$ |
| First-generation antipsychotics | | | | | |
| Chlorpromazine | 71.1 (7.15) | 2.60 (8.59) | 2.42 (8.62) | 8.31 (8.08) | 133 (6.88) |
| α-Flupenthixol | 3.36 (8.46) | 0.63 (9.2) | 15.8 (8.8) | – | 10 (8.0) |
| Fluphenazine | 15.2 (7.82) | 0.69 (9.16) | 0.42 (9.38) | 24.5 (7.61) | 12.5 (7.90) |
| Fluspirilene | – | 0.2 (8.7) | 1.89 (8.72) | 8.8 (8.06) | – |
| Haloperidol | 82.1 (7.09) | 1.16 (8.94) | 3.92 (8.41) | 2.45 (8.61) | 108 (6.97) |
| Perphenazine | – | 0.48 (9.32) | 0.37 (9.43) | 29.7 (7.52) | – |
| Pimozide | >10,000 <5.00 | 0.94 (9.03) | 1.31 (8.88) | 1.8 (8.74) | – |
| (-)Sulpiride | >10,000 <5.00 | 14 (7.85) | 12.6 (7.90) | 75.6 (7.12) | >10,000 <5.00 |
| Thioridazine | 94.3 (7.03) | 5.62 (8.25) | 2.84 (8.55) | 11 (7.96) | 255 (6.59) |
| Second-generation antipsychotics | | | | | |
| Amisulpride[a] | >1,000 (<6.00) | 2.8 (8.55) | 3.2 (8.49) | >1,000 (<6) | >1,000 (<6) |
| Aripiprazole | 871 (6.06) | 1.74 (8.76) | 3.11 (8.51) | 717 | 2,080 (5.68) |
| Asenapine[b] | 1.26 (8.9) | 1.26 (8.9) | 0.40 (9.4) | 1.00 (9.0) | – |
| Cariprazine (RGH-188)[b] | – | 0.49 (9.31) | 0.09 (10.07) | – | – |
| Clozapine | 230 (6.64) | 120 (6.92) | 243 (6.62) | 18.1 (7.74) | 255 (6.59) |
| Melperone | – | 89.8 (7.05) | 35.7 (7.45) | 502 (6.30) | – |
| Olanzapine | 62.1 (7.21) | 23.1 (7.64) | 33 (7.48) | 12.6 (7.90) | 81.6 (7.09) |
| Quetiapine | 954 (6.02) | 199 (6.70) | 247 (6.61) | 1,650 (5.78) | 1,620 (5.79) |
| Risperidone | 167 (6.78) | 2.70 (8.57) | 5.61 (8.25) | 16.3 (7.79) | 94.9 (7.02) |
| Sertindole | – | 3.15 (8.50) | 3.92 (8.41) | 3.82 (8.42) | – |
| Ziprasidone | 30 (7.52) | 4.68 (8.33) | 4.31 (8.37) | 43.8 (7.36) | 152 (6.82) |
| Zotepine | 71 (7.15) | 25 (7.6) | 6.4 (8.19) | 18 (7.74) | 248 (6.61) |

$K_i$ values as reported by the National Institutes of Mental Health (NIMH) Psychoactive Drug Screening Program (PDSP; http://pdsp.cwru.edu/pdsp.asp) in May 2011 from different publications and with different radioligands, unless otherwise indicated. The mean of respective p$K_i$ values was calculated and transformed back to $K_i$.

[a]Schoemaker et al. (1997)

[b]Shahid et al. (2009)

[c]Kiss et al. (2010)

$D_{2S}$ and $D_{2L}$ isoforms and depend on the incubation conditions in vitro: sodium usually decreases binding of benzamides and clozapine to $D_2$ but not to $D_3$ receptors about threefold (Sokoloff et al. 1992). Nevertheless, the high $D_3$ affinity of antipsychotics might still translate into relevant receptor occupancy in the absence of other ligands. There is, however, one important aspect that has to be taken into account: among all dopamine receptor subtypes, the $D_3$ receptor is the one with the highest affinity for dopamine as its endogenous agonist. In binding studies in vitro, preincubation or pretreatment of the animals with reserpine or tetrabenazine is often required to obtain radioligand binding in areas with high dopaminergic innervation, like the islands of Calleja or the nucleus accumbens, in contrast to sparsely dopamine-innervated areas with $D_3$ receptors, like the cerebellar lobules 9 and 10. Such an "occlusion" of the $D_3$ receptor by endogenous dopamine has been postulated to result in only a minor $D_3$ occupancy by antipsychotics in dopamine rich areas, despite their relatively high $D_3$ affinity (Schotte et al. 1992, 1996). In vivo, blockade of presynaptic $D_2$ autoreceptors by antipsychotics can enhance dopamine release (Feuerstein 2008; Jackisch et al. 1980; Mayer et al. 1988; Starke et al. 1983), thereby making $D_3$ receptors less accessible for antipsychotics than $D_2$ receptors and contributing to this "occlusion" of $D_3$ receptors.

The ultimate contribution of $D_3$ receptors to the efficacy profile of current antipsychotics can obviously only be resolved through imaging $D_3$ receptor occupancy at therapeutically relevant drug exposures. Such studies should preferably be preformed not only in volunteers but also in schizophrenia patients because they may have higher or lower dopamine concentrations in areas relevant to the therapeutic response in positive or negative and cognitive symptoms. So far, there are only two studies addressing this question using [$^{11}$C](+)PHNO and [$^{11}$C]raclopride as PET tracers to label $D_3$ and $D_2$ receptors, respectively (Graff-Guerrero et al. 2009b). In schizophrenia patients treated with risperidone, olanzapine, or clozapine, there was a 47–78% occupancy observed for [$^{11}$C]raclopride in caudate, putamen, ventral striatum, and globus pallidus; a 40–55% occupancy for [$^{11}$C](+)PHNO in caudate, putamen, but lower occupancy in ventral striatum and no occupancy in the $D_3$-rich globus pallidus. Recently, [$^{11}$C](+)PHNO PET in first episode schizophrenia patients treated with risperidone or olanzapine showed the expected receptor occupancies in $D_2$-rich areas, however no occupancy but rather an increase in binding potential or upregulation in the purported $D_3$-rich areas substantia nigra and globus pallidus (Mizrahi et al. 2011).

The lack of occupancy in $D_3$-rich areas was considered as proof that these atypical antipsychotics do not occupy $D_3$ receptors, at least not in areas assumed to be rich in $D_3$ receptors. These studies may be taken as a hint that these antipsychotics do not achieve receptor occupancies optimal for $D_3$-mediated effects, but the conclusion still suffers from the facts that (+)PHNO is an agonist and does not sufficiently discriminate between high-affinity $D_2$ and the $D_3$ binding sites and that even the internal part of the globus pallidus contains about 25% $D_2$ receptors (Gurevich and Joyce 1999). Interestingly, [$^3$H](+)PHNO labels relatively less $D_3$ receptors compared to $D_2$ in rat brain and systemically administered olanzapine, risperidone, and haloperidol seem to bind exclusively $D_2$ sites despite their

undoubted $D_3$ affinities (McCormick et al. 2010). Conflicting results, for example, a reduced binding potential of [$^{11}$C](+)PHNO after haloperidol or clozapine in baboons, although only marginal in SN/VTA (Girgis et al. 2011), remain to be explained. However, these results depend on assumptions discussed below. For unequivocal conclusions, a highly selective $D_3$ antagonist PET tracer is still needed.

## 10 $D_3$ Receptor Imaging

For clinically used antipsychotics, the availability of PET and SPECT tracers to study the occupancy of $D_2$-like receptors and 5-$HT_{2A}$ receptors in the CNS has contributed significantly to understand pharmacokinetic/pharmacodynamic relationships. Although PET tracers like [$^{11}$C]raclopride and [$^{18}$F]fallypride do not discriminate between $D_2$ and $D_3$ receptors, inhibition of their binding by antipsychotics is assumed to represent mainly $D_2$ binding, due to the fact that $D_2$ receptors prevail over $D_3$ receptors in virtually all brain areas (Suzuki et al. 1998; Gurevich and Joyce 1999). In recent studies, imaging methods have been refined to assess binding not only in basal ganglia but also in areas such as the substantia nigra/ventral tegmental area, thalamus, amygdala, and cortical areas (Gallezot et al. 2012; Gründer et al. 2006; Kessler et al. 2005; Woodward et al. 2009). Usually, antagonists are preferred as tracers—they bind to a single site, in contrast to agonists which typically show high- and low-affinity binding in vitro. Despite the fact that several selective $D_3$ antagonists are known, none of these became available as radiotracer. Instead, the agonist (+)PHNO (Table 1) was developed to label $D_3$ receptors. In native canine striatal preparations, [$^3$H](+)PHNO labels $D_2$ receptors with subnanomolar $K_d$ values, with and without NaCl, and its binding is inhibited by agonists and antagonists in agreement with their known affinities for the $D_2$ receptor (Seeman et al. 1993). The marked inhibition of (+)PHNO binding by guanilylimidodiphosphate in quantitative autoradiography confirms that binding occurs to $D_2$ rather than $D_3$ receptors. As expected, only binding in the islands of Calleja, a $D_3$ rich area, did not respond to the GTP analogue (Nobrega and Seeman 1994). When used as a radioligand in rats ex vivo, [$^{11}$C](+)PHNO and [$^3$H]raclopride were indistinguishably inhibited by various $D_2$-like agonists and by antipsychotics like haloperidol, clozapine, and aripiprazole (Mccormick et al. 2009). The same group found that [$^3$H](+)PHNO labels relatively more $D_3$ receptors in slices of rat brain ex vivo compared to in vitro receptor autoradiography. Systemically administered olanzapine, risperidone, and haloperidol displaced [$^3$H](+)PHNO in vitro considerably more than when given i.v. (McCormick et al. 2010). There is no obvious explanation for this discrepancy, but the author's quantitative evaluation led them to conclude that olanzapine, risperidone, and haloperidol are $D_2$-selective at clinically relevant doses.

In healthy human volunteers and schizophrenia patients, [$^{11}$C](+)PHNO and [$^3$H]raclopride show a similar pattern of labeling (Graff-Guerrero et al. 2008, 2009a); this binding is inhibited by treatment with antipsychotics like risperidone,

olanzapine, and clozapine in most areas. Therefore, there is no doubt that [$^{11}$C](+)PHNO labels mainly $D_2$ receptors. In areas like the globus pallidus and the ventral striatum, however, binding of [$^{11}$C](+)PHNO is not inhibited by these antipsychotics, but by pramipexole, an agonist with slight $D_3/D_2$ selectivity (Table 1; Graff-Guerrero et al. 2009a). This inhibition by an agonist, but not by antagonists, has been interpreted as a preference of [$^{11}$C](+)PHNO for either the high affinity state of $D_2$-like receptors (Willeit et al. 2006) or for $D_3$ receptors in these areas (Searle et al. 2010). Consequently, [$^{11}$C](+)PHNO binding was used to determine $D_3$ receptor occupancy by new $D_3$ selective compounds like ABT-925 and GSK 598809 (Graff-Guerrero et al. 2010; Searle et al. 2010). However, several confounding factors have to be taken into consideration: (I) PHNO is nonselective and $D_2$ and $D_3$ receptors coexist—also in those areas that are used to identify $D_3$ receptor occupancy (substantia nigra/ventral tegmental area, globus pallidus). Indeed, [$^{3}$H](+)PHNO displacement by the highly $D_3$-selective compound FAUC 365 showed that only 33% of the binding sites in human globus pallidus are $D_3$ receptors (Seeman et al. 2006), whereas the majority belongs to the $D_2$ subtype. Likewise, in most parts of the human substantia nigra/ventral tegmental area, $D_2$ receptors prevail over $D_3$, with the exception of the rostral pars reticulata (Gurevich and Joyce 1999). (II) The fact that dopamine has a considerably higher affinity for $D_3$ receptors compared to all other dopamine receptor subtypes makes access of tracers to $D_3$ receptors dependent on the concentration of the endogenous agonist. High concentrations of dopamine may thus occlude the $D_3$ receptor, for antagonists more so than for agonists. Concentration of dopamine and accessibility for an agonist tracer may be different at dopaminergic target areas and autoreceptors in substantia nigra/ventral tegmental area. (III) Last but not least $D_2$ and $D_3$ receptors are expressed in the same neurons in many areas, and it remains unknown if $D_2/D_3$ heterodimers exist in vivo, how their binding properties are, and how they contribute to [$^{11}$C](+)PHNO-binding capacity.

Taken together, non-selective agonist tracers have limited value to unequivocally assess receptor occupancies of $D_3$ receptors in comparison to $D_2$ receptors. Highly selective antagonist tracers are desirable for such a distinction, and only they will give information on $D_3$ receptor occupancy by antipsychotics currently in clinical use or on $D_3$ receptor occupancy of new $D_3$-selective compounds.

## 11 Clinical Results with Compounds with High Affinity for Dopamine $D_3$ Receptors

Amisulpride, which is in clinical use in Europe, but not in the USA, differs from virtually all other antipsychotics by its very clean receptor profile: it is a pure $D_2$ and $D_3$ receptor antagonist with $K_i$ values of 3 nM at both human receptor subtypes. It does not bind to other receptors, which have been linked to atypicality, like 5-$HT_{2A}$ or 5-$HT_{1A}$ (Schoemaker et al. 1997). Despite this unique receptor profile,

amisulpride is considered as an atypical antipsychotic, based on preclinical results, such as lack of fully expressed catalepsy even at 90% $D_2$ receptor occupancy, its limbic selectivity in Fos expression (Natesan et al. 2008), and its clinical profile. It has an effect on negative symptoms comparable to olanzapine and does not cause sedation (Leucht et al. 2002; Leucht 2004; Mortimer 2009). In contrast to haloperidol, amisulpride did not impair cognitive function but rather improve certain cognitive parameters in schizophrenia patients and healthy elderly (Legangneux et al. 2000). It enhanced neurocognitive performance (attention, executive function, working memory, and verbal learning and memory) in schizophrenia patients at least as well as olanzapine, which might indicate that a serotonergic mechanism is not necessary for atypical antipsychotics to improve cognitive function (Wagner et al. 2005; Mortimer et al. 2007). Tyson et al. (2006) even found a better performance of schizophrenia patients on antipsychotics with low or missing 5-$HT_{2A}$ affinity (quetiapine and amisulpride) in tasks of selective attention and adjustment to living as compared to the high-affinity 5-$HT_{2A}$ antipsychotics, risperidone, olanzapine, and clozapine. Remarkably, patients resistant to quetiapine, olanzapine, or clozapine seem to respond when amisulpride is added to their treatment regimen (Zink et al. 2004a, b; Munro et al. 2004; Englisch et al. 2010). An anti-dysthymic effect similar to sulpiride, not usually reported for other second-generation antipsychotics, has recently been ascribed to 5-$HT_7$ antagonistic properties ($K_i$ 12 nM) (Abbas et al. 2009; Hedlund 2009). These features might contribute to the favorable outcome including the quality of life (Nuss and Tessier 2010; Meltzer 2012).

Amisulpride's atypical properties have been attributed to preferred binding to presynaptic $D_2$-type receptors and to limbic selectivity (Natesan et al. 2008; Schoemaker et al. 1997; Scatton et al. 1997). Alternative explanations are its relatively rapid dissociation from $D_2$ receptors (Seeman 2002) or its relatively high potency at $D_3$ receptors. Over the therapeutic dose range of amisulpride, $D_{2/3}$ receptor occupancies of 40- to >90% have been determined for striatal regions with [$^{18}$F]desmethoxyfallypride as PET tracer (Vernaleken et al. 2004). A relatively higher occupancy in nonstriatal versus striatal areas is seen at low plasma concentrations but is lost at higher concentrations. To our knowledge, no data have been published for the occupancy of $D_3$ receptors. Considering the 7- to 28-fold higher affinity of endogenous dopamine for the high-affinity state of $D_3$ versus $D_2$ receptors, the $D_3$ occupancy by amisulpride should be lower, but potentially still in a range causing pharmacologic effects. Such $D_3$- rather than $D_2$ receptor-mediated effects might confer atypicality to amisulpride: positive effects on cognitive function, better efficacy against negative symptoms, and reduction of $D_2$-mediated extrapyramidal motor effects. Effects on prolactin, on the other hand, are not a feature of atypicality (Gründer and Benkert 2002). Instead, they reflect high $D_2$ receptor occupancy at pituitary lactotrophs outside the blood–brain barrier. All considerations of $D_3$-mediated atypicality need confirmation by demonstrating relevant $D_3$ receptor occupancy in patients at therapeutic doses. Among other second-generation antipsychotics, amisulpride is among those which cause only minor weight gain and metabolic disturbance (Komossa et al. 2010; Leucht et al. 2004)—this observation may indicate that $D_3$ receptors are not involved in metabolic disturbances caused by other antipsychotics.

Cariprazine (RGH-188) is a newly developed antipsychotic with very high affinity for the dopamine $D_3$ receptor in the 0.1-nM range and 6-, 8-, 7-, and 31-fold selectivity against human $D_{2S}$, $D_{2L}$, 5-$HT_{2B}$, and 5-$HT_{1A}$ receptors, respectively. Depending on the assay system used, cariprazine behaves as a partial agonist at $D_3$ and $D_2$ receptors with intrinsic activities in the 70% range, for example, inhibiting cAMP accumulation. Several tests in vivo show the characteristics of a $D_2$ antagonist or partial agonist rather than a $D_3$ antagonist: increased dopamine turnover in mouse striatum, limbic brain, and frontal cortex, although to a lower extent than expected for $D_2$ antagonism. In rat, cariprazine attenuates amphetamine-induced hyperactivity and conditioned avoidance response and inhibits the apomorphine-induced deficit in PPI. Serotonin turnover was moderately reduced at high doses of cariprazine, indicating a partial 5-$HT_{1A}$ agonistic effect (Kiss et al. 2010). Data from placebo-controlled phase II trials suggest that cariprazine has significant antipsychotic activity compared to placebo as shown by a moderate decrease in PANSS total score. Doses used to treat schizophrenia patients have been reported to occupy up to >90% of $D_2/D_3$ receptors in a [$^{18}$F]fallypride PET study (Potkin et al. 2009). It is likely that $D_3$ receptors are also occupied to a relatively high degree. The fact that reported adverse effects are mild, including insomnia, extrapyramidal motor side effects, akathisia, sedation, and nausea, must be attributed to $D_3$ receptor occupancy and its partial $D_2/D_3$ agonist characteristics (Gründer 2010). The high $D_2$ receptor occupancy and partial agonist properties of cariprazine at both $D_2$-like receptor subtypes preclude conclusions on the efficacy of pure $D_3$ antagonism, especially on negative and cognitive symptoms.

ABT-925 is the compound with the highest $D_3$ selectivity over $D_2$ that has been studied for efficacy in schizophrenia. In a double-blind, randomized, placebo-controlled, parallel-group study in 150 patients with acute exacerbation of schizophrenia or schizoaffective disorder, ABT-925 given at doses of 50 or 150 mg once daily for 6 weeks was very well tolerated without sedation or any other CNS-mediated adverse effects and without hyperprolactinemia. However, the compound seemed to fail to exert antipsychotic efficacy as evaluated by PANSS, CDSS, and CGI (but with a positive trend in NSA) (Redden et al. 2011). A concurrent PET study in healthy volunteers with [$^{11}$C](+)PHNO, with all restrictions mentioned above, indicated that the receptor occupancy was probably too low (≤40%) to ultimately test the hypothesis that $D_3$ receptor antagonism alone is a valid antipsychotic principle (Graff-Guerrero et al. 2010). Proving antipsychotic efficacy through $D_3$ antagonism would have required $D_3$ receptor occupancy of about 80% and projected daily doses of 450–600 mg. Intriguingly, however, the analysis of the Ser9Gly polymorphism revealed a significantly improved PANSS score in the SG plus GG group, in contrast to the GG genotype (Bhathena et al. 2011). Positive effects on cognitive function in this study, for instance on verbal recognition memory, emotional recognition, and executive function have only been communicated in part (SIRS 2012).

Taken together, all currently published clinical data with compounds of high affinity for the $D_3$ receptor and different degrees of selectivity over $D_2$ receptors

give only limited insight into the entire therapeutic potential of selective $D_3$ antagonism. The interpretations are hampered by the unknown role of partial agonism in the case of cariprazine, and uncertain information on $D_3$ receptor occupancies with a nonselective agonist radiotracer and a lack of a selective antagonist radiotracer. Pure antagonists with high $D_3$ selectivity over $D_2$ have the promise to treat positive and negative symptoms, potentially dependent on the genotype, but especially to significantly influence cognitive deficits.

## 12 Conclusion

The preclinical profile of dopamine $D_3$ receptor antagonism is clearly distinct from $D_2$ antagonism and indicates positive effects on cognitive and social behavior without anhedonic and metabolic side effects. Despite the fact that virtually all current antipsychotics have considerable affinity for $D_3$ receptors, sufficient occupancy of central $D_3$ receptors to display the whole spectrum of therapeutic effects is either not achieved in the clinical situation or masked by $D_2$ receptor blockade or partial agonist properties. In the case of amisulpride and cariprazine, $D_3$ receptor antagonism seems to confer atypicality and reduced extrapyramidal adverse effect liability to their profile. For selective $D_3$ receptor antagonists, positive effects, especially in cognitive domains affected in schizophrenia, can be expected based on experimental data in rodents and nonhuman primates, but confirmatory clinical data still need to be communicated in detail. The pharmacology of heterodimerization of the $D_3$ receptor with $D_1$ and $D_2$ receptors is poorly understood but may offer new therapeutic approaches for schizophrenia, cognitive disorders, and addiction.

## References

Abbas AI, Hedlund PB, Huang XP, Tran TB, Meltzer HY, Roth BL (2009) Amisulpride is a potent 5-HT7 antagonist: relevance for antidepressant actions in vivo. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 205:119–128

Accili D, Fishburn CS, Drago J, Steiner H, Lachowicz JE, Park BH, Gauda EB, Lee EJ, Cool MH, Sibley DR, Gerfen CR, Westphal H, Fuchs S (1996) A targeted mutation of the D3 dopamine receptor gene is associated with hyperactivity in mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 93:1945–1949

Ahlenius S, Salmi P (1994) Behavioral and biochemical effects of the dopamine D3 receptor-selective ligand, 7-OH-DPAT, in the normal and the reserpine-treated rat. Eur J Pharmacol 260:177–181

Ahlgren-Beckendorf JA, Levant B (2004) Signaling mechanisms of the D3 dopamine receptor. J Recept Signal Transduct Res 24:117–130

Amenta F, Barili P, Bronzetti E, Felici L, Mignini F, Ricci A (2000) Localization of dopamine receptor subtypes in systemic arteries. Clin Exp Hypertens 22:277–288

Aretha CW, Galloway MP (1996) Dopamine autoreceptor reserve in vitro: possible role of dopamine D3 receptors. Eur J Pharmacol 305:119–122

Arranz MJ, Rivera M, Munro JC (2011) Pharmacogenetics of response to antipsychotics in patients with schizophrenia. CNS Drugs 25:933–969

Ashby CR, Minabe Y, Stemp G, Hagan JJ, Middlemiss DN (2000) Acute and chronic administration of the selective D3 receptor antagonist SB-277011-A alters activity of midbrain dopamine neurons in rats: an in vivo electrophysiological study. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 294:1166–1174

Ashby FG, Turner BO, Horvitz JC (2010) Cortical and basal ganglia contributions to habit learning and automaticity. Trends Cogn Sci 14:208–215

Audinot V, Newman-Tancredi A, Gobert A, Rivet JM, Brocco M, Lejeune F, Gluck L, Desposte I, Bervoets K, Dekeyne A, Millan MJ (1998) A comparative in vitro and in vivo pharmacological characterization of the novel dopamine D3 receptor antagonists (+)-S 14297, nafadotride, GR 103,691 and U 99194. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 287:187–197

Bakker PR, van Harten PN, van Os J (2006) Antipsychotic-induced tardive dyskinesia and the Ser9Gly polymorphism in the DRD3 gene: a meta analysis. Schizophr Res 83:185–192

Ballard ME, Basso AM, Gallagher KB, Browman KE, Fox GB, Drescher KU, Gross G, Decker MW, Rueter LE, Zhang M (2007) The drug-induced helplessness test: an animal assay for assessing behavioral despair in response to neuroleptic treatment. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 190:1–11

Banasikowski TJ, Bespalov A, Drescher K, Behl B, Unger L, Haupt A, Schoemaker H, Sullivan JP, Gross G, Beninger RJ (2010) Double dissociation of the effects of haloperidol and the dopamine D3 receptor antagonist ABT-127 on acquisition vs. expression of cocaine-conditioned activity in rats. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 335:506–515

Barik S, de Beaurepaire R (2005) Dopamine D3 modulation of locomotor activity and sleep in the nucleus accumbens and in lobules 9 and 10 of the cerebellum in the rat. Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry 29:718–726

Beaulieu JM, Gainetdinov RR (2011) The physiology, signaling, and pharmacology of dopamine receptors. Pharmacol Rev 63:182–217

Beaulieu JM, Sotnikova TD, Marion S, Lefkowitz RJ, Gainetdinov RR, Caron MG (2005) An Akt/beta-arrestin 2/PP2A signaling complex mediates dopaminergic neurotransmission and behavior. Cell 122:261–273

Beaulieu JM, Tirotta E, Sotnikova TD, Masri B, Salahpour A, Gainetdinov RR, Borrelli E, Caron MG (2007) Regulation of Akt signaling by D2 and D3 dopamine receptors in vivo. J Neurosci 27:881–885

Beninger RJ, Banasikowski TJ (2008) Dopaminergic mechanism of reward-related incentive learning: focus on the dopamine D3 receptor. Neurotox Res 14:57–70

Ben-Jonathan N, Hnasko R (2001) Dopamine as a prolactin (PRL) inhibitor. Endocr Rev 22:724–763

Bennett JP Jr, Piercey MF (1999) Pramipexole—a new dopamine agonist for the treatment of Parkinson's disease. J Neurol Sci 163:25–31

Beom S, Cheong D, Torres G, Caron MG, Kim KM (2004) Comparative studies of molecular mechanisms of dopamine D2 and D3 receptors for the activation of extracellular signal-regulated kinase. J Biol Chem 279:28304–28314

Bespalov A, Jongen-Rêlo AL, van Gaalen M, Harich S, Schoemaker H, Gross G (2007) Habituation deficits induced by metabotropic glutamate receptors 2/3 receptor blockade in mice: reversal by antipsychotic drugs. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 320:944–950

Bettinetti L, Schlotter K, Hubner H, Gmeiner P (2002) Interactive SAR studies: rational discovery of super-potent and highly selective dopamine D3 receptor antagonists and partial agonists. J Med Chem 45:4594–4597

Bhathena A, Wang Y, Kraft JB, Idler KB, Abel SJ, Holley-Shanks RB, Robieson WZ, Spear BB, Redden L, Katz D (2011) Association between dopamine D3 receptor genotype and response to dopamine D3 receptor antagonist in schizophrenic subjects. Clin Pharmacol Ther 89(Supplement 1):S76

Bodei S, Arrighi N, Spano P, Sigala S (2009) Should we be cautious on the use of commercially available antibodies to dopamine receptors? Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch Pharmacol 379:413–415

Bordet R, Ridray S, Carboni S, Diaz J, Sokoloff P, Schwartz JC (1997) Induction of dopamine D3 receptor expression as a mechanism of behavioral sensitization to levodopa. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 94:3363–3367

Bordet R, Ridray S, Schwartz JC, Sokoloff P (2000) Involvement of the direct striatonigral pathway in levodopa-induced sensitization in 6-hydroxydopamine-lesioned rats. Eur J Neurosci 12:2117–2123

Boulay D, Depoortere R, Perrault G, Borrelli E, Sanger DJ (1999) Dopamine D2 receptor knock-out mice are insensitive to the hypolocomotor and hypothermic effects of dopamine D2/D3 receptor agonists. Neuropharmacology 38:1389–1396

Boulay D, Depoortere R, Oblin A, Sanger DJ, Schoemaker H, Perrault G (2000) Haloperidol-induced catalepsy is absent in dopamine D(2), but maintained in dopamine D(3) receptor knock-out mice. Eur J Pharmacol 391:63–73

Bouthenet ML, Souil E, Martres MP, Sokoloff P, Giros B, Schwartz JC (1991) Localization of dopamine D3 receptor mRNA in the rat brain using in situ hybridization histochemistry: comparison with dopamine D2 receptor mRNA. Brain Res 564:203–219

Bowery BJ, Razzaque Z, Emms F, Patel S, Freedman S, Bristow L, Kulagowski J, Seabrook GR (1996) Antagonism of the effects of (+)-PD 128907 on midbrain dopamine neurones in rat brain slices by a selective D2 receptor antagonist L-741,626. Br J Pharmacol 119:1491–1497

Bristow LJ, Cook GP, Gay JC, Kulagowski JJ, Landon L, Murray F, Saywell KL, Young L, Hutson PH (1996) The behavioural and neurochemical profile of the putative dopamine D3 receptor agonist, (+)-PD 128907, in the rat. Neuropharmacology 35:285–294

Bromberg-Martin ES, Matsumoto M, Hikosaka O (2010) Dopamine in motivational control: rewarding, aversive, and alerting. Neuron 68:815–834

Bushe C, Shaw M (2007) Prevalence of hyperprolactinaemia in a naturalistic cohort of schizophrenia and bipolar outpatients during treatment with typical and atypical antipsychotics. J Psychopharmacol 21:768–773

Carlsson J, Coleman RG, Setola V, Irwin JJ, Fan H, Schlessinger A, Sali A, Roth BL, Shoichet BK (2011) Ligand discovery from a dopamine D3 receptor homology model and crystal structure. Nat Chem Biol 7:769–778

Carpenter WT, Koenig JI (2008) The evolution of drug development in schizophrenia: past issues and future opportunities. Neuropsychopharmacology 33:2061–2079

Carter CS, Barch CDM (2007) Cognitive neuroscience-based approaches to measuring and improving treatment on cognition in schizophrenia: the CNTRICS initiative. Schizophr Bull 33:1131–1137

Chen PC, Lao CL, Chen JC (2009) The D(3) dopamine receptor inhibits dopamine release in PC-12/hD3 cells by autoreceptor signaling via PP-2B, CK1, and Cdk-5. J Neurochem 110:1180–1190

Chien EY, Liu W, Zhao Q, Katritch V, Han GW, Hanson MA, Shi L, Newman AH, Javitch JA, Cherezov V, Stevens RC (2010) Structure of the human dopamine D3 receptor in complex with a D2/D3 selective antagonist. Science 330:1091–1095

Chio CL, Lajiness ME, Huff RM (1994) Activation of heterologously expressed D3 dopamine receptors: comparison with D2 dopamine receptors. Mol Pharmacol 45:51–60

Cho DI, Zheng M, Kim KM (2010) Current perspectives on the selective regulation of dopamine D2 and D3 receptors. Arch Pharm Res 33:1521–1538

Choi JK, Mandeville JB, Chen YI, Grundt P, Sarkar SK, Newman AH, Jenkins BG (2010) Imaging brain regional and cortical laminar effects of selective D3 agonists and antagonists. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 212:59–72

Chourbaji S, Brandwein C, Vogt MA, Dormann C, Mueller R, Drescher KU, Gross G, Gass P (2008) Dopamine receptor 3 (D3) knockout mice show regular emotional behaviour. Pharmacol Res 58:302–307

Collip D, Myin-Germeys I, van Os J (2008) Does the concept of "sensitization" provide a plausible mechanism for the putative link between the environment and schizophrenia? Schizophr Bull 34:220–225

Collo G, Bono F, Cavalleri L, Plebani L, Merlo PE, Millan MJ, Spano PF, Missale C (2012) Presynaptic dopamine D(3) receptor mediates cocaine-induced structural plasticity in mesencephalic dopaminergic neurons via ERK and Akt pathways. J Neurochem 120:765–778

Cools R, Brouwer WH, de Jong R, Slooff C (2000) Flexibility, inhibition, and planning: frontal dysfunctioning in schizophrenia. Brain Cogn 43:108–112

Crider A (1997) Perseveration in schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 23:63–74

Crocq M, Mant R, Asherson P, Williams J, Hode Y, Mayerova A, Collier D, Lannfelt L, Sokoloff P, Schwartz JC (1992) Association between schizophrenia and homozygosity at the dopamine D3 receptor gene. J Med Genet 29:858–860

Daly SA, Waddington JL (1993) Behavioural effects of the putative D3 dopamine receptor agonist 7-OH-DPAT in relation to other "D-2-like" agonists. Neuropharmacology 32:509–510

Davila V, Yan Z, Craciun LC, Logothetis D, Sulzer D (2003) D3 dopamine autoreceptors do not activate G-protein-gated inwardly rectifying potassium channel currents in substantia nigra dopamine neurons. J Neurosci 23:5693–5697

Davis KL, Kahn RS, Ko G, Davidson M (1991) Dopamine in schizophrenia: a review and reconceptualization. Am J Psychiatry 148:1474–1486

Depoortere R, Perrault G, Sanger DJ (1996) Behavioural effects in the rat of the putative dopamine D3 receptor agonist 7-OH-DPAT: comparison with quinpirole and apomorphine. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 124:231–240

DeWire SM, Ahn S, Lefkowitz RJ, Shenoy SK (2007) Beta-arrestins and cell signaling. Annu Rev Physiol 69:483–510

Diaz J, Levesque D, Lammers CH, Griffon N, Martres MP, Schwartz JC, Sokoloff P (1995) Phenotypical characterization of neurons expressing the dopamine D3 receptor in the rat brain. Neuroscience 65:731–745

Diaz J, Pilon C, Le FB, Gros C, Triller A, Schwartz JC, Sokoloff P (2000) Dopamine D3 receptors expressed by all mesencephalic dopamine neurons. J Neurosci 20:8677–8684

Drescher KU, Garcia-Ladona FJ, Teschendorf HJ, Traut M, Unger L, Wicke K, Weddige FK, Freeman AS, Gross G (2002) In vivo effects of the selective dopamine D3 receptor antagonist A-437203. Soc Neurosci, Abstr 894.6. Online

Drescher KU, Behl B, Freeman AS, Hamilton ME, Wicke KM, Unger LV, Haupt A, Gross G, Schoemaker H, Sullivan JP (2005) ABT-127, a new selective dopamine D3 receptor antagonist: Neurochemical and electrophysiological studies in vivo. Soc Neurosci, Abstr 913.19. Online

Durham RA, Eaton MJ, Moore KE, Lookingland KJ (1997) Effects of selective activation of dopamine D2 and D3 receptors on prolactin secretion and the activity of tuberoinfundibular dopamine neurons. Eur J Pharmacol 335:37–42

Elmhurst JL, Xie Z, O'Dowd BF, George SR (2000) The splice variant D3nf reduces ligand binding to the D3 dopamine receptor: evidence for heterooligomerization. Brain Res Mol Brain Res 80:63–74

Englisch S, Enning F, Grosshans M, Marquardt L, Waltereit R, Zink M (2010) Quetiapine combined with amisulpride in schizophrenic patients with insufficient responses to quetiapine monotherapy. Clin Neuropharmacol 33:227–229

Everett PB, Senogles SE (2004) D3 dopamine receptor activates phospholipase D through a pertussis toxin-insensitive pathway. Neurosci Lett 371:34–39

Everett PB, Senogles SE (2010) D3 dopamine receptor signals to activation of phospholipase D through a complex with Rho. J Neurochem 112:963–971

Feuerstein TJ (2008) Presynaptic receptors for dopamine, histamine, and serotonin. In: Südhof TC, Starke K (eds.), Pharmacology of Neurotransmitter Release. Handbook of Experimental Pharamacology. Springer, Heidelberg 184:289–338

Fiorentini C, Busi C, Gorruso E, Gotti C, Spano P, Missale C (2008) Reciprocal regulation of dopamine D1 and D3 receptor function and trafficking by heterodimerization. Mol Pharmacol 74:59–69

Fiorentini C, Busi C, Spano P, Missale C (2010) Dimerization of dopamine D1 and D3 receptors in the regulation of striatal function. Curr Opin Pharmacol 10:87–92

Fujisawa S, Buzsáki G (2011) A 4 Hz oscillation adaptively synchronizes prefrontal, VTA, and hippocampal activities. Neuron 72:153–165

Gallezot JD, Beaver JD, Gunn RN, Nabulsi N, Weinzimmer D, Singhal T, Slifstein M, Fowles K, Ding YS, Huang Y, Laruelle M, Carson RE, Rabiner EA (2012) Affinity and selectivity of [11C]-(+)-PHNO for the D3 and D2receptors in the rhesus monkey brain in vivo. Synapse 66(6):489–500

Gendreau PL, Petitto JM, Schnauss R, Frantz KJ, Van HC, Gariepy JL, Lewis MH (1997) Effects of the putative dopamine D3 receptor antagonist PNU 99194A on motor behavior and emotional reactivity in C57BL/6 J mice. Eur J Pharmacol 337:147–155

Gendreau PL, Petitto JM, Petrova A, Gariepy J, Lewis MH (2000) D3 and D2 dopamine receptor agonists differentially modulate isolation-induced social-emotional reactivity in mice. Behav Brain Res 114:107–117

Geneste H, Amberg W, Backfisch G, Beyerbach A, Braje WM, Delzer J, Haupt A, Hutchins CW, King LL, Sauer DR, Unger L, Wernet W (2006) Synthesis and SAR of highly potent and selective dopamine D3 receptor antagonists: variations on the 1H-pyrimidin-2-one theme. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 16:1934–1937

Geyer MA (2006) The family of sensorimotor gating disorders: comorbidities or diagnostic overlaps? Neurotox Res 10:211–220

Geyer MA, Krebs-Thomson K, Braff DL, Swerdlow NR (2001) Pharmacological studies of prepulse inhibition models of sensorimotor gating deficits in schizophrenia: a decade in review. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 156:117–154

Girgis RR, Xu X, Miyake N, Easwaramoorthy B, Gunn RN, Rabiner EA, Abi-Dargham A, Slifstein M (2011) In vivo binding of antipsychotics to D3 and D2 receptors: a PET study in baboons with [(11)C]-(+)-PHNO. Neuropsychopharmacology 36:887–895

Glickstein SB, Hof PR, Schmauss C (2002) Mice lacking dopamine D2 and D3 receptors have spatial working memory deficits. J Neurosci 22:5619–5629

Glickstein SB, Desteno DA, Hof PR, Schmauss C (2005) Mice lacking dopamine D2 and D3 receptors exhibit differential activation of prefrontal cortical neurons during tasks requiring attention. Cereb Cortex 15:1016–1024

Gobert A, Rivet JM, Audinot V, Cistarelli L, Spedding M, Vian J, Peglion JL, Millan MJ (1995) Functional correlates of dopamine D3 receptor activation in the rat in vivo and their modulation by the selective antagonist, (+)-S 14297: II. Both D2 and "silent" D3 autoreceptors control synthesis and release in mesolimbic, mesocortical and nigrostriatal pathways. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 275:899–913

Gobert A, Lejeune F, Rivet JM, Cistarelli L, Millan MJ (1996) Dopamine D3 (auto) receptors inhibit dopamine release in the frontal cortex of freely moving rats in vivo. J Neurochem 66:2209–2212

Grace AA, Bunney BS, Moore H, Todd CL (1997) Dopamine-cell depolarization block as a model for the therapeutic actions of antipsychotic drugs. Trends Neurosci 20:31–37

Graff-Guerrero A, Willeit M, Ginovart N, Mamo D, Mizrahi R, Rusjan P, Vitcu I, Seeman P, Wilson A, Kapur S (2008) Brain region binding of the D2/3 agonist [11C]-(+)-PHNO and the D2/3 antagonist [11 C]raclopride in healthy humans. Hum Brain Mapp 29:400–410

Graff-Guerrero A, Mamo D, Shammi CM, Mizrahi R, Marcon H, Barsoum P, Rusjan P, Houle S, Wilson AA, Kapur S (2009a) The effect of antipsychotics on the high-affinity state of D2 and D3 receptors: a positron emission tomography study with [11C]-(+)-PHNO. Arch Gen Psychiatry 66:606–615

Graff-Guerrero A, Mizrahi R, Agid O, Marcon H, Barsoum P, Rusjan P, Wilson AA, Zipursky R, Kapur S (2009b) The dopamine D2 receptors in high-affinity state and D3 receptors in schizophrenia: a clinical [11C]-(+)-PHNO PET study. Neuropsychopharmacology 34: 1078–1086

Graff-Guerrero A, Redden L, Abi-Saab W, Katz DA, Houle S, Barsoum P, Bhathena A, Palaparthy R, Saltarelli MD, Kapur S (2010) Blockade of [11 C](+)-PHNO binding in human subjects by the dopamine D3 receptor antagonist ABT-925. Int J Neuropsychopharmacol 13:273–287

Griffon N, Pilon C, Sautel F, Schwartz JC, Sokoloff P (1997) Two intracellular signaling pathways for the dopamine D3 receptor: opposite and synergistic interactions with cyclic AMP. J Neurochem 68:1–9

Gross G, Bialojan S, Drescher K, Freeman AS, Garcia-Ladona FJ, Höger T, Lansky A, Needham P, Teschendorf HJ, Traut M, Sokoloff P, Unger L, Wicke K (1997) Evaluation of D3 receptor antagonists. Eur Neuropsychopharmacol 7(Suppl 2):S120

Gross G, Bialojan S, Drescher K, Freeman AS, Garcia-Ladona FJ, Höger T, Needham P, Teschendorf HJ, Treiber HJ, Traut M, Sokoloff P, Starck D, Unger L, Wicke K (1998) Pharmacological characterisation of novel D3 receptor antagonists. Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch Pharmacol 358:R375

Gross G, Drescher KU, Haupt A, Teschendorf HJ, Jongen-Rêlo AL, Wicke KM, Zhang M, Browman KE, Ballard ME, Rueter LE, Decker MW, Schoemaker H, Sullivan JP (2005) ABT-127, a new selective dopamine D3 receptor antagonist: behavioral pharmacology studies. Soc Neurosci, Abstr 913.20. Online

Gross G, Drescher K, Bespalov A (2008) Dopamine D3 vs D2 receptor antagonism: from transgenic models to therapeutic options. Eur Neuropsychopharmacol 18:S186–S.27.03

Gross ML, Koch A, Mühlbauer B, Adamczak M, Ziebart H, Drescher K, Gross G, Berger I, Amann KU, Ritz E (2006) Renoprotective effect of a dopamine D3 receptor antagonist in experimental type II diabetes. Lab Invest 86:262–274

Gründer G (2010) Cariprazine, an orally active D2/D3 receptor antagonist, for the potential treatment of schizophrenia, bipolar mania and depression. Curr Opin Investig Drugs 11:823–832

Gründer G, Benkert O (2002) Prolactin secretion is not a core dimension of "atypicality". Psychopharmacology (Berl) 162:93

Gründer G, Wetzel H, Schlosser R, Anghelescu I, Hillert A, Lange K, Hiemke C, Benkert O (1999) Neuroendocrine response to antipsychotics: effects of drug type and gender. Biol Psychiatry 45:89–97

Gründer G, Landvogt C, Vernaleken I, Buchholz HG, Ondracek J, Siessmeier T, Hartter S, Schreckenberger M, Stoeter P, Hiemke C, Rosch F, Wong DF, Bartenstein P (2006) The striatal and extrastriatal D2/D3 receptor-binding profile of clozapine in patients with schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 31:1027–1035

Guillin O, Diaz J, Carroll P, Griffon N, Schwartz JC, Sokoloff P (2001) BDNF controls dopamine D3 receptor expression and triggers behavioural sensitization. Nature 411:86–89

Gurevich EV, Joyce JN (1999) Distribution of dopamine D3 receptor expressing neurons in the human forebrain: comparison with D2 receptor expressing neurons. Neuropsychopharmacology 20:60–80

Gyertyan I, Saghy K (2007) The selective dopamine D3 receptor antagonists, SB 277011-A and S 33084 block haloperidol-induced catalepsy in rats. Eur J Pharmacol 572:171–174

Gyertyan I, Saghy K, Laszy J, Elekes O, Kedves R, Gemesi LI, Pasztor G, Zajer-Balazs M, Kapas M, Agai CE, Domany G, Kiss B, Szombathelyi Z (2008) Subnanomolar dopamine D3 receptor antagonism coupled to moderate D2 affinity results in favourable antipsychotic-like activity in rodent models: II. behavioural characterisation of RG-15. Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch Pharmacol 378:529–539

Hall HÇ, Halldin C, Dijkstra D, Wikström HÇ, Wise LD, Pugsley TA, Sokoloff P, Pauli S, Farde L, Sedvall GÇ (1996) Autoradiographic localisation of D3-dopamine receptors in the human brain using the selective D3-dopamine receptor agonist (+)-[3 H]PD 128907. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 128:240–247

Harrison SJ, Nobrega JN (2009) A functional role for the dopamine D3 receptor in the induction and expression of behavioural sensitization to ethanol in mice. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 207:47–56

Hedlund PB (2009) The 5-HT7 receptor and disorders of the nervous system: an overview. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 206:345–354

Heidbreder CA, Gardner EL, Xi ZX, Thanos PK, Mugnaini M, Hagan JJ, Ashby CR Jr (2005) The role of central dopamine D3 receptors in drug addiction: a review of pharmacological evidence. Brain Res Brain Res Rev 49:77–105

Hellstrand M, Danielsen EA, Steen VM, Ekman A, Eriksson E, Nilsson CL (2004) The ser9gly SNP in the dopamine D3 receptor causes a shift from cAMP related to PGE2 related signal transduction mechanisms in transfected CHO cells. J Med Genet 41:867–871

Humphries MD, Prescott TJ (2010) The ventral basal ganglia, a selection mechanism at the crossroads of space, strategy, and reward. Prog Neurobiol 90:385–417

Hunter RG, Jones D, Vicentic A, Hue G, Rye D, Kuhar MJ (2006) Regulation of CART mRNA in the rat nucleus accumbens via D3 dopamine receptors. Neuropharmacology 50:858–864

Jackisch R, Zumstein A, Hertting G, Starke K (1980) Interneurones are probably not involved in the presynaptic dopaminergic control of dopamine release in rabbit caudate nucleus. Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch Pharmacol 314:129–133

Jeanneteau F, Funalot B, Jankovic J, Deng H, Lagarde JP, Lucotte G, Sokoloff P (2006) A functional variant of the dopamine D3 receptor is associated with risk and age-at-onset of essential tremor. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103:10753–10758

Jongen-Rêlo AL, Drescher KU, Teschendorf HJ, Rueter LE, Unger LV, Gross G, Schoemaker H (2004a) Effects of dopamine D3 receptor antagonists and antipsychotic drugs on the disruption of huddling behavior by dopamine agonists. Soc Neurosci, Abstr 350.1. Online

Jongen-Rêlo AL, Schuetz E, Drescher K, Rueter L, Browman K, Kohlhaas KL, Gross G, Schoemaker H (2004b) Pharmacological characterization of the behavioral sensitization to quinpirole in rats. Behav Pharmacol 15(5-6):A17–A18

Joyce JN (2001) Dopamine D3 receptor as a therapeutic target for antipsychotic and antiparkinsonian drugs. Pharmacol Ther 90:231–259

Kagaya T, Yonaga M, Furuya Y, Hashimoto T, Kuroki J, Nishizawa Y (1996) Dopamine D3 agonists disrupt social behavior in rats. Brain Res 721:229–232

Kapur S, Mamo D (2003) Half a century of antipsychotics and still a central role for dopamine D2 receptors. Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry 27:1081–1090

Kapur S, Zipursky R, Jones C, Remington G, Houle S (2000) Relationship between dopamine D2 occupancy, clinical response, and side effects: a double-blind PET study of first-episode schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 157:514–520

Karasinska JM, George SR, Cheng R, O'Dowd BF (2005) Deletion of dopamine D1 and D3 receptors differentially affects spontaneous behaviour and cocaine-induced locomotor activity, reward and CREB phosphorylation. Eur J Neurosci 22:1741–1750

Karpa KD, Lin R, Kabbani N, Levenson R (2000) The dopamine D3 receptor interacts with itself and the truncated D3 splice variant d3nf: D3-D3nf interaction causes mislocalization of D3 receptors. Mol Pharmacol 58:677–683

Kessler RM, Ansari MS, Riccardi P, Li R, Jayathilake K, Dawant B, Meltzer HY (2005) Occupancy of striatal and extrastriatal dopamine D2/D3 receptors by olanzapine and haloperidol. Neuropsychopharmacology 30:2283–2289

Kim KM, Valenzano KJ, Robinson SR, Yao WD, Barak LS, Caron MG (2001) Differential regulation of the dopamine D2 and D3 receptors by G protein-coupled receptor kinases and beta-arrestins. J Biol Chem 276:37409–37414

Kiss B, Laszlovszky I, Horvath A, Nemethy Z, Schmidt E, Bugovics G, Fazekas K, Gyertyan I, Gai-Csongor E, Domany G, Szombathelyi Z (2008) Subnanomolar dopamine D3 receptor antagonism coupled to moderate D2 affinity results in favourable antipsychotic-like activity in rodent models: I. neurochemical characterisation of RG-15. Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch Pharmacol 378:515–528

Kiss B, Horvath A, Nemethy Z, Schmidt E, Laszlovszky I, Bugovics G, Fazekas K, Hornok K, Orosz S, Gyertyan I, Gai-Csongor E, Domany G, Tihanyi K, Adham N, Szombathelyi Z (2010) Cariprazine (RGH-188), a dopamine D3 receptor-preferring, D3/D2 dopamine receptor antagonist-partial agonist antipsychotic candidate: in vitro and neurochemical profile. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 333:328–340

Koeltzow TE, Xu M, Cooper DC, Hu XT, Tonegawa S, Wolf ME, White FJ (1998) Alterations in dopamine release but not dopamine autoreceptor function in dopamine D3 receptor mutant mice. J Neurosci 18:2231–2238

Kolasiewicz W, Maj J, Ossowska K (2008) The involvement of cerebellar dopamine D3 receptors in locomotor activity of rats. J Neural Transm 115:677–681

Komossa K, Rummel-Kluge C, Hunger H, Schmid F, Schwarz S, Silveira da Mota Neto JI, Kissling W, Leucht S (2010) Amisulpride versus other atypical antipsychotics for schizophrenia. Cochrane Database Syst Rev, Issue 1. Art. No.: CD006624

Kreiss DS, Bergstrom DA, Gonzalez AM, Huang KX, Sibley DR, Walters JR (1995) Dopamine receptor agonist potencies for inhibition of cell firing correlate with dopamine D3 receptor binding affinities. Eur J Pharmacol 277:209–214

Kufareva I, Rueda M, Katritch V, Stevens RC, Abagyan R (2011) Status of GPCR modeling and docking as reflected by community-wide GPCR Dock 2010 assessment. Structure 19:1108–1126

Kuroki T, Meltzer HY, Ichikawa J (1999) Effects of antipsychotic drugs on extracellular dopamine levels in rat medial prefrontal cortex and nucleus accumbens. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 288:774–781

Kuzhikandathil EV, Oxford GS (1999) Activation of human D3 dopamine receptor inhibits P/Q-type calcium channels and secretory activity in AtT-20 cells. J Neurosci 19:1698–1707

Kuzhikandathil EV, Oxford GS (2000) Dominant-negative mutants identify a role for GIRK channels in D3 dopamine receptor-mediated regulation of spontaneous secretory activity. J Gen Physiol 115:697–706

Kuzhikandathil EV, Yu W, Oxford GS (1998) Human dopamine D3 and D2L receptors couple to inward rectifier potassium channels in mammalian cell lines. Mol Cell Neurosci 12:390–402

Lacroix LP, Hows ME, Shah AJ, Hagan JJ, Heidbreder CA (2003) Selective antagonism at dopamine D3 receptors enhances monoaminergic and cholinergic neurotransmission in the rat anterior cingulate cortex. Neuropsychopharmacology 28:839–849

Lacroix LP, Ceolin L, Zocchi A, Varnier G, Garzotti M, Curcuruto O, Heidbreder CA (2006) Selective dopamine D3 receptor antagonists enhance cortical acetylcholine levels measured with high-performance liquid chromatography/tandem mass spectrometry without anticholinesterases. J Neurosci Methods 157:25–31

Lan H, Teeter MM, Gurevich VV, Neve KA (2009) An intracellular loop 2 amino acid residue determines differential binding of arrestin to the dopamine D2 and D3 receptors. Mol Pharmacol 75:19–26

Landwehrmeyer B, Mengod G, Palacios JM (1993) Dopamine D3 receptor mRNA and binding sites in human brain. Brain Res Mol Brain Res 18:187–192

Lane JR, Powney B, Wise A, Rees S, Milligan G (2008) G protein coupling and ligand selectivity of the D2L and D3 dopamine receptors. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 325:319–330

Laszy J, Laszlovszky I, Gyertyan I (2005) Dopamine D3 receptor antagonists improve the learning performance in memory-impaired rats. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 179:567–575

Le Foll B, Diaz J, Sokoloff P (2003) Increased dopamine D3 receptor expression accompanying behavioral sensitization to nicotine in rats. Synapse 47:176–183

Le Moine C, Bloch B (1996) Expression of the D3 dopamine receptor in peptidergic neurons of the nucleus accumbens: comparison with the D1 and D2 dopamine receptors. Neuroscience 73:131–143

Legangneux E, McEwen J, Wesnes KA, Bergougnan L, Miget N, Canal M, L'Heritier C, Pinquier JL, Rosenzweig P (2000) The acute effects of amisulpride (50 mg and 200 mg) and haloperidol (2 mg) on cognitive function in healthy elderly volunteers. J Psychopharmacol 14:164–171

Leucht S (2004) Amisulpride a selective dopamine antagonist and atypical antipsychotic: results of a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Int J Neuropsychopharmacol 7(Suppl 1): S15–S20

Leucht S, Pitschel-Walz G, Engel RR, Kissling W (2002) Amisulpride, an unusual "atypical" antipsychotic: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Am J Psychiatry 159:180–190

Leucht S, Wagenpfeil S, Hamann J, Kissling W (2004) Amisulpride is an "atypical" antipsychotic associated with low weight gain. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 173:112–115

Levant B (1995) Differential sensitivity of [3 H]7-OH-DPAT-labeled binding sites in rat brain to inactivation by N-ethoxycarbonyl-2-ethoxy-1,2-dihydroquinoline. Brain Res 698:146–154

Levant B (1998) Differential distribution of D3 dopamine receptors in the brains of several mammalian species. Brain Res 800:269–274

Levesque D, Diaz J, Pilon C, Martres MP, Giros B, Souil E, Schott D, Morgat JL, Schwartz JC, Sokoloff P (1992) Identification, characterization, and localization of the dopamine D3 receptor in rat brain using 7-[3 H]hydroxy-N, N-di-n-propyl-2-aminotetralin. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 89:8155–8159

Liu K, Bergson C, Levenson R, Schmauss C (1994) On the origin of mRNA encoding the truncated dopamine D3-type receptor D3nf and detection of D3nf-like immunoreactivity in human brain. J Biol Chem 269:29220–29226

Liu XY, Mao LM, Zhang GC, Papasian CJ, Fibuch EE, Lan HX, Zhou HF, Xu M, Wang JQ (2009) Activity-dependent modulation of limbic dopamine D3 receptors by CaMKII. Neuron 61:425–438

Loiseau F, Millan MJ (2009) Blockade of dopamine D3 receptors in frontal cortex, but not in subcortical structures, enhances social recognition in rats: similar actions of D1 receptor agonists, but not of D2 antagonists. Eur Neuropsychopharmacol 19:23–33

Ludewig K, Geyer MA, Vollenweider FX (2003) Deficits in prepulse inhibition and habituation in never-medicated, first-episode schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 54:121–128

Luippold G, Pech B, Schneider S, Drescher K, Muller R, Gross G, Mühlbauer B (2006) Absence of amino acid-induced glomerular hyperfiltration in dopamine D3 receptor knockout mice. Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch Pharmacol 372:284–290

Lundstrom K, Turpin MP (1996) Proposed schizophrenia-related gene polymorphism: expression of the Ser9Gly mutant human dopamine D3 receptor with the Semliki Forest virus system. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 225:1068–1072

Ma G, He Z, Fang W, Tang W, Huang K, Li Z, He G, Xu Y, Feng G, Zheng T, Zhou J, He L, Shi Y (2008) The Ser9Gly polymorphism of the dopamine D3 receptor gene and risk of schizophrenia: an association study and a large meta-analysis. Schizophr Res 101:26–35

Maggio R, Millan MJ (2010) Dopamine D2-D3 receptor heteromers: pharmacological properties and therapeutic significance. Curr Opin Pharmacol 10:100–107

Maggio R, Scarselli M, Novi F, Millan MJ, Corsini GU (2003) Potent activation of dopamine D3/D2 heterodimers by the antiparkinsonian agents, S32504, pramipexole and ropinirole. J Neurochem 87:631–641

Mannoury la Cour C, Salles MJ, Pasteau V, Millan MJ (2011) Signaling pathways leading to phosphorylation of Akt and GSK-3beta by activation of cloned human and rat cerebral D2 and D3 receptors. Mol Pharmacol 79:91–105

Marcellino D, Ferre S, Casado V, Cortes A, Le FB, Mazzola C, Drago F, Saur O, Stark H, Soriano A, Barnes C, Goldberg SR, Lluis C, Fuxe K, Franco R (2008) Identification of dopamine D1-D3 receptor heteromers. Indications for a role of synergistic D1–D3 receptor interactions in the striatum. J Biol Chem 283:26016–26025

Mattingly BA, Fields SE, Langfels MS, Rowlett JK, Robinet PM, Bardo MT (1996) Repeated 7-OH-DPAT treatments: behavioral sensitization, dopamine synthesis and subsequent sensitivity to apomorphine and cocaine. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 125:33–42

Mattingly BA, Rice LL, Langfels M, Fields SE (2000) Repeated treatments with 7-OH-DPAT: context-independent behavioral sensitization and conditioned hyperactivity. Pharmacol Biochem Behav 65:241–246

Mayer A, Limberger N, Starke K (1988) Transmitter release patterns of noradrenergic, dopaminergic and cholinergic axons in rabbit brain slices during short pulse trains, and the operation of presynaptic autoreceptors. Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch Pharmacol 338:632–643

Mccormick PN, Kapur S, Reckless G, Wilson AA (2009) Ex vivo [11 C]—(1)-PHNO binding is unchanged in animal models displaying increased high-affinity states of the D 2 receptor in vitro. Synapse 1009:998–1009

McCormick PN, Kapur S, Graff-Guerrero A, Raymond R, Nobrega JN, Wilson AA (2010) The antipsychotics olanzapine, risperidone, clozapine, and haloperidol are D2-selective ex vivo but not in vitro. Neuropsychopharmacology 35:1826–1835

McElroy JF (1994) Discriminative stimulus properties of 7-OH-DPAT, a dopamine D3-selective receptor ligand. Pharmacol Biochem Behav 48:531–533

Meltzer HY (2012) Serotonergic Mechanisms as Targets for Existing and Novel Antipsychotics. In: Gross G, Geyer M (eds) Current Antipsychotics; Handbook of Experimental Pharamacology, vol. 212. Springer, Heidelberg

Micale V, Cristino L, Tamburella A, Petrosino S, Leggio GM, Di MV, Drago F (2010) Enhanced cognitive performance of dopamine D3 receptor "knock-out" mice in the step-through passive-avoidance test: assessing the role of the endocannabinoid/endovanilloid systems. Pharmacol Res 61:531–536

Millan MJ (2005) Dopamine D3 receptors as a novel target for improving the treatment of schizophrenia. Med Sci (Paris) 21:434–442

Millan MJ, Brocco M (2008) Cognitive impairment in schizophrenia: a review of developmental and genetic models, and pro-cognitive profile of the optimised D(3) > D(2) antagonist, S33138. Therapie 63:187–229

Millan MJ, Peglion JL, Vian J, Rivet JM, Brocco M, Gobert A, Newman-Tancredi A, Dacquet C, Bervoets K, Girardon S (1995) Functional correlates of dopamine D3 receptor activation in the rat in vivo and their modulation by the selective antagonist, (+)-S 14297: 1. Activation of postsynaptic D3 receptors mediates hypothermia, whereas blockade of D2 receptors elicits prolactin secretion and catalepsy. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 275:885–898

Millan MJ, Gressier H, Brocco M (1997) The dopamine D3 receptor antagonist, (+)-S 14297, blocks the cataleptic properties of haloperidol in rats. Eur J Pharmacol 321:R7–R9

Millan MJ, Dekeyne A, Rivet JM, Dubuffet T, Lavielle G, Brocco M (2000a) S33084, a novel, potent, selective, and competitive antagonist at dopamine D(3)-receptors: II. Functional and behavioral profile compared with GR218,231 and L741,626. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 293:1063–1073

Millan MJ, Gobert A, Newman-Tancredi A, Lejeune F, Cussac D, Rivet JM, Audinot V, Dubuffet T, Lavielle G (2000b) S33084, a novel, potent, selective, and competitive antagonist at dopamine D3-receptors: I. Receptorial, electrophysiological and neurochemical profile compared with GR218,231 and L741,626. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 293:1048–1062

Millan MJ, Brocco M, Papp M, Serres F, La Rochelle CD, Sharp T, Peglion JL, Dekeyne A (2004a) S32504, a novel naphtoxazine agonist at dopamine D3/D2 receptors: III. Actions in models of potential antidepressive and anxiolytic activity in comparison with ropinirole. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 309:936–950

Millan MJ, Seguin L, Gobert A, Cussac D, Brocco M (2004b) The role of dopamine D3 compared with D2 receptors in the control of locomotor activity: a combined behavioural and neurochemical analysis with novel, selective antagonists in rats. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 174:341–357

Millan MJ, Cara BD, Dekeyne A, Panayi F, Groote LD, Cistarelli L, Billiras R, Gobert A (2007) Selective blockade of dopamine D3 versus D2 receptors enhances frontocortical cholinergic transmission and social memory in rats: a parallel neurochemical and behavioural analysis. J Neurochem 100:1047–61

Millan MJ, Loiseau F, Dekeyne A, Gobert A, Flik G, Cremers TI, Rivet JM, Sicard D, Billiras R, Brocco M (2008a) S33138 (N-[4-[2-[(3aS,9bR)-8-cyano-1,3a,4,9b-tetrahydro[1] benzopyrano [3,4-c]pyrrol-2(3 H)-yl)-ethyl]phenyl-acetamide), a preferential dopamine D3 versus D2 receptor antagonist and potential antipsychotic agent: III. Actions in models of therapeutic activity and induction of side effects. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 324:1212–1226

Millan MJ, Svenningsson P, Ashby CR Jr, Hill M, Egeland M, Dekeyne A, Brocco M, Di CB, Lejeune F, Thomasson N, Munoz C, Mocaer E, Crossman A, Cistarelli L, Girardon S, Iob L, Veiga S, Gobert A (2008b) S33138 [N-[4-[2-[(3aS,9bR)-8-cyano-1,3a,4,9b-tetrahydro[1]-benzopyrano[3,4-c]pyrr ol-2(3 H)-yl)-ethyl]phenylacetamide], a preferential dopamine D3 versus D2 receptor antagonist and potential antipsychotic agent. II. A neurochemical, electrophysiological and behavioral characterization in vivo. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 324:600–611

Millan MJ, Buccafusco JJ, Loiseau F, Watson DJG, Decamp E, Fone KCF, Thomasson-perret N, Hill M, Mocaer E, Schneider JS (2010) The dopamine D3 receptor antagonist, S33138, counters cognitive impairment in a range of rodent and primate procedures. Int J Neuropsychopharmacol 13:1035–51

Millan MJ, Agid Y, Brune M, Bullmore ET, Carter CS, Clayton NS, Connor R, Davis S, Deakin B, Derubeis RJ, Dubois B, Geyer MA, Goodwin GM, Gorwood P, Jay TM, Joels M, Mansuy IM, Meyer-Lindenberg A, Murphy D, Rolls E, Saletu B, Spedding M, Sweeney J, Whittington M, Young LJ (2012) Cognitive dysfunction in psychiatric disorders: characteristics, causes and the quest for improved therapy. Nat Rev Drug Discov 11:141–168

Missale C, Fiorentini C, Collo G, Spano P (2010) The neurobiology of dopamine receptors: evolution from the dual concept to heterodimer complexes. J Recept Signal Transduct Res 30:347–354

Mizrahi R, Agid O, Borlido C, Suridjan I, Rusjan P, Houle S, Remington G, Wilson AA, Kapur S (2011) Effects of antipsychotics on D3 receptors: A clinical PET study in first episode antipsychotic naive patients with schizophrenia using [$^{11}$C]-(+)-PHNO. Schizophr Res 131:63–8

Mortimer AM (2009) Update on the management of symptoms in schizophrenia: focus on amisulpride. Neuropsychiatr Dis Treat 5:267–277

Mortimer AM, Joyce E, Balasubramaniam K, Choudhary PC, Saleem PT (2007) Treatment with amisulpride and olanzapine improve neuropsychological function in schizophrenia. Hum Psychopharmacol 22:445–454

Munro J, Matthiasson P, Osborne S, Travis M, Purcell S, Cobb AM, Launer M, Beer MD, Kerwin R (2004) Amisulpride augmentation of clozapine: an open non-randomized study in patients with schizophrenia partially responsive to clozapine. Acta Psychiatr Scand 110:292–298

Natesan S, Reckless GE, Barlow KB, Nobrega JN, Kapur S (2008) Amisulpride the 'atypical' atypical antipsychotic—comparison to haloperidol, risperidone and clozapine. Schizophr Res 105:224–235

Newman-Tancredi A, Cussac D, Audinot V, Pasteau V, Gavaudan S, Millan MJ (1999) G protein activation by human dopamine D3 receptors in high-expressing Chinese hamster ovary cells: A guanosine-5′-O-(3-[35 S]thio)-triphosphate binding and antibody study. Mol Pharmacol 55:564–574

Nimchinsky EA, Hof PR, Janssen WG, Morrison JH, Schmauss C (1997) Expression of dopamine D3 receptor dimers and tetramers in brain and in transfected cells. J Biol Chem 272: 29229–29237

Nissbrandt H, Ekman A, Eriksson E, Heilig M (1995) Dopamine D3 receptor antisense influences dopamine synthesis in rat brain. Neuroreport 6:573–576

Nitsche MA, Monte-Silva K, Kuo MF, Paulus W (2010) Dopaminergic impact on cortical excitability in humans. Rev Neurosci 21:289–298

Nobrega JN, Seeman P (1994) Dopamine D2 receptors mapped in rat brain with [3H](+)PHNO. Synapse 17:167–172

Novi F, Millan MJ, Corsini GU, Maggio R (2007) Partial agonist actions of aripiprazole and the candidate antipsychotics S33592, bifeprunox, N-desmethylclozapine and preclamol at dopamine D2L receptors are modified by co-transfection of D3 receptors: potential role of heterodimer formation. J Neurochem 102:1410–1424

Nuechterlein KH, Barch DM, Gold JM, Goldberg TE, Green MF, Heaton RK (2004) Identification of separable cognitive factors in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 72:29–39

Nuss P, Tessier C (2010) Antipsychotic medication, functional outcome and quality of life in schizophrenia: focus on amisulpride. Curr Med Res Opin 26:787–801

Obiol-Pardo C, Lopez L, Pastor M, Selent J (2011) Progress in the structural prediction of G protein-coupled receptors: D3 receptor in complex with eticlopride. Proteins 79:1695–1703

Peng RY, Mansbach RS, Braff DL, Geyer MA (1990) A D2 dopamine receptor agonist disrupts sensorimotor gating in rats. Implications for dopaminergic abnormalities in schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 3:211–218

Piercey MF, Hoffmann WE, Smith MW, Hyslop DK (1996) Inhibition of dopamine neuron firing by pramipexole, a dopamine D3 receptor-preferring agonist: comparison to other dopamine receptor agonists. Eur J Pharmacol 312:35–44

Pierre JM (2005) Extrapyramidal symptoms with atypical antipsychotics. Incidence, prevention and management. Drug Saf 28:191–208

Pilon C, Levesque D, Dimitriadou V, Griffon N, Martres MP, Schwartz JC, Sokoloff P (1994) Functional coupling of the human dopamine D3 receptor in a transfected NG 108-15 neuroblastoma-glioma hybrid cell line. Eur J Pharmacol 268:129–139

Potkin S, Keattor D, Mukherjee J, Preda A, Highum D, Gage A, Xie J, Ghahramani P, Laszlovszky I (2009) Dopamine D3 and D2 receptor occupancy of cariprazine in schizophrenic patients. Eur Neuropsychopharmacol 19(Suppl 3):S316

Pou C, Mannoury la Cour C, Stoddart LA, Millan MJ, Milligan G (2012) Functional homomers and heteromers of dopamine D2L and D3 receptors co-exist at the cell surface. J Biol Chem 287(12):8864–78

Pritchard LM, Logue AD, Hayes S, Welge JA, Xu M, Zhang J, Berger SP, Richtand NM (2003) 7-OH-DPAT and PD 128907 selectively activate the D3 dopamine receptor in a novel environment. Neuropsychopharmacology 28:100–107

Pritchard LM, Logue AD, Taylor BC, Ahlbrand R, Welge JA, Tang Y, Sharp FR, Richtand NM (2006) Relative expression of D3 dopamine receptor and alternative splice variant D3nf mRNA in high and low responders to novelty. Brain Res Bull 70:296–303

Pritchard LM, Newman AH, McNamara RK, Logue AD, Taylor B, Welge JA, Xu M, Zhang J, Richtand NM (2007) The dopamine D3 receptor antagonist NGB 2904 increases spontaneous and amphetamine-stimulated locomotion. Pharmacol Biochem Behav 86:718–726

Pugsley TA, Davis MD, Akunne HC, MacKenzie RG, Shih YH, Damsma G, Wikstrom H, Whetzel SZ, Georgic LM, Cooke LW (1995) Neurochemical and functional characterization of the preferentially selective dopamine D3 agonist PD 128907. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 275:1355–1366

Quik M, Police S, He L, Di Monte DA, Langston JW (2000) Expression of D(3) receptor messenger RNA and binding sites in monkey striatum and substantia nigra after nigrostriatal degeneration: effect of levodopa treatment. Neuroscience 98:263–273

Reavill C, Taylor SG, Wood MD, Ashmeade T, Austin NE, Avenell KY, Boyfield I, Branch CL, Cilia J, Coldwell MC, Hadley MS, Hunter AJ, Jeffrey P, Jewitt F, Johnson CN, Jones DN, Medhurst AD, Middlemiss DN, Nash DJ, Riley GJ, Routledge C, Stemp G, Thewlis KM, Trail B, Vong AK, Hagan JJ (2000) Pharmacological actions of a novel, high-affinity, and selective human dopamine D3 receptor antagonist, SB-277011-A. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 294:1154–1165

Redden L, Rendenbach-Mueller B, Abi-Saab WM, Katz DA, Goenjian A, Robieson WZ, Wang Y, Goss SL, Greco N, Saltarelli MD (2011) A double-blind, randomized, placebo-controlled study of the dopamine D3 receptor antagonist ABT-925 in patients with acute schizophrenia. J Clin Psychopharmacol 31:221–225

Richtand NM (2006) Behavioral sensitization, alternative splicing, and D3 dopamine receptor-mediated inhibitory function. Neuropsychopharmacology 31:2368–2375

Richtand NM, Logue AD, Welge JA, Perdiue J, Tubbs LJ, Spitzer RH, Sethuraman G, Geracioti TD (2000) The dopamine D3 receptor antagonist nafadotride inhibits development of locomotor sensitization to amphetamine. Brain Res 867:239–242

Richtand NM, Woods SC, Berger SP, Strakowski SM (2001) D3 dopamine receptor, behavioral sensitization, and psychosis. Neurosci Biobehav Rev 25:427–443

Richtand NM, Welge JA, Levant B, Logue AD, Hayes S, Pritchard LM, Geracioti TD, Coolen LM, Berger SP (2003) Altered behavioral response to dopamine D3 receptor agonists 7-OH-DPAT and PD 128907 following repetitive amphetamine administration. Neuropsychopharmacology 28:1422–1432

Richtand NM, Liu Y, Ahlbrand R, Sullivan JR, Newman AH, McNamara RK (2010) Dopaminergic regulation of dopamine D3 and D3nf receptor mRNA expression. Synapse 64:634–643

Ridley RM (1994) The psychology of perseverative and stereotyped behaviour. Prog Neurobiol 44:221–231

Ridray S, Griffon N, Mignon V, Souil E, Carboni S, Diaz J, Schwartz JC, Sokoloff P (1998) Coexpression of dopamine D1 and D3 receptors in islands of Calleja and shell of nucleus accumbens of the rat: opposite and synergistic functional interactions. Eur J Neurosci 10:1676–1686

Rivet JM, Audinot V, Gobert A, Peglion JL, Millan MJ (1994) Modulation of mesolimbic dopamine release by the selective dopamine D3 receptor antagonist, (+)-S 14297. Eur J Pharmacol 265:175–177

Robinson SW, Caron MG (1997) Selective inhibition of adenylyl cyclase type V by the dopamine D3 receptor. Mol Pharmacol 52:508–514

Rodriguez-Arias M, Felip CM, Broseta I, Minarro J (1999) The dopamine D3 antagonist U-99194A maleate increases social behaviors of isolation-induced aggressive male mice. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 144:90–94

Sawaguchi T (2000) The role of D1-dopamine receptors in working memory-guided movements mediated by frontal cortical areas. Parkinsonism Relat Disord 7:9–19

Scatton B, Claustre Y, Cudennec A, Oblin A, Perrault G, Sanger DJ, Schoemaker H (1997) Amisulpride: from animal pharmacology to therapeutic action. Int Clin Psychopharmacol 12(Suppl 2):S29–S36

Schlosser R, Gründer G, Anghelescu I, Hillert A, Ewald-Gründer S, Hiemke C, Benkert O (2002) Long-term effects of the substituted benzamide derivative amisulpride on baseline and stimulated prolactin levels. Neuropsychobiology 46:33–40

Schmauss C (1996) Enhanced cleavage of an atypical intron of dopamine D3-receptor pre-mRNA in chronic schizophrenia. J Neurosci 16:7902–7909

Schmidt WJ, Beninger RJ (2006) Behavioural sensitization in addiction, schizophrenia, Parkinson's disease and dyskinesia. Neurotox Res 10:161–166

Schoemaker H, Claustre Y, Fage D, Rouquier L, Chergui K, Curet O, Oblin A, Gonon F, Carter C, Benavides J, Scatton B (1997) Neurochemical characteristics of amisulpride, an atypical dopamine D2/D3 receptor antagonist with both presynaptic and limbic selectivity. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 280:83–97

Schotte A, Janssen PF, Gommeren W, Luyten WH, Leysen JE (1992) Autoradiographic evidence for the occlusion of rat brain dopamine D3 receptors in vivo. Eur J Pharmacol 218:373–375

Schotte A, Janssen PF, Bonaventure P, Leysen JE (1996) Endogenous dopamine limits the binding of antipsychotic drugs to D3 receptors in the rat brain: a quantitative autoradiographic study. Histochem J 28:791–799

Schuetz E, Jongen-Rêlo AL, Drescher KU, Gross G, Schoemaker H (2004) The effect of the dopamine D3 receptor antagonist A-437203 on the development and expression of locomotor sensitization to quinpirole in rats. Soc Neurosci, Abstr 350.1. Online

Schultz W (2007) Behavioral dopamine signals. Trends Neurosci 30:203–210

Schwartz JC, Diaz J, Bordet R, Griffon N, Perachon S, Pilon C, Ridray S, Sokoloff P (1998a) Functional implications of multiple dopamine receptor subtypes: the D1/D3 receptor coexistence. Brain Res Brain Res Rev 26:236–242

Schwartz JC, Ridray S, Bordet R, Diaz J, Sokoloff P (1998b) D1/D3 receptor relationships in brain coexpression, coactivation, and coregulation. Adv Pharmacol 42:408–411

Searle G, Beaver JD, Comley RA, Bani M, Tziortzi A, Slifstein M, Mugnaini M, Griffante C, Wilson AA, Merlo-Pich E, Houle S, Gunn R, Rabiner EA, Laruelle M (2010) Imaging dopamine

D3 receptors in the human brain with positron emission tomography, [11 C]PHNO, and a selective D3 receptor antagonist. Biol Psychiatry 68:392–399
Seeman P (2002) Atypical antipsychotics: mechanism of action. Can J Psychiatry 47:27–38
Seeman P (2006) Targeting the dopamine D2 receptor in schizophrenia. Expert Opin Ther Targets 10:515–531
Seeman P, Ulpian C, Larsen RD, Anderson PS (1993) Dopamine receptors labelled by PHNO. Synapse 14:254–62
Seeman P, Wilson A, Gmeiner P, Kapur S (2006) Dopamine D2 and D3 receptors in human putamen, caudate nucleus, and globus pallidus. Synapse 60:205–211
Shafer RA, Levant B (1998) The D3 dopamine receptor in cellular and organismal function. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 135:1–16
Shahid M, Walker GB, Zorn SH, Wong EH (2009) Asenapine: a novel psychopharmacologic agent with a unique human receptor signature. J Psychopharmacol 23:65–73
SIRS (2012) The 3rd Schizophrenia International Research Society Conference, 14–18 April 2012, Florence, Italy: Summaries of oral sessions. Schizophrenia Res (in press)
Smith AG, Neill JC, Costall B (1999) The dopamine D3/D2 receptor agonist 7-OH-DPAT induces cognitive impairment in the marmoset. Pharmacol Biochem Behav 63:201–211
Sokoloff P, Leriche L (2007) Drugs acting on D3 receptors in neuropsychiatric disorders: facts and prospects. Implication for schizophrenia and its treatment in the regulation of BDNF-dependence on D3 receptor expression. Encephale 33:870–872
Sokoloff P, Giros B, Martres MP, Bouthenet ML, Schwartz JC (1990) Molecular cloning and characterization of a novel dopamine receptor D3 as a target for neuroleptics. Nature 347:146–151
Sokoloff P, Martres MP, Giros B, Bouthenet ML, Schwartz JC (1992) The third dopamine receptor D3 as a novel target for antipsychotics. Biochem Pharmacol 43:659–666
Stanwood GD, Artymyshyn RP, Kung MP, Kung HF, Lucki I, McGonigle P (2000) Quantitative autoradiographic mapping of rat brain dopamine D3 binding with [(125)I]7-OH-PIPAT: evidence for the presence of D3 receptors on dopaminergic and nondopaminergic cell bodies and terminals. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 295:1223–1231
Starke K, Spath L, Lang JD, Adelung C (1983) Further functional in vitro comparison of pre- and postsynaptic dopamine receptors in the rabbit caudate nucleus. Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch Pharmacol 323:298–306
Stemp G, Ashmeade T, Branch CL, Hadley MS, Hunter AJ, Johnson CN, Nash DJ, Thewlis KM, Vong AK, Austin NE, Jeffrey P, Avenell KY, Boyfield I, Hagan JJ, Middlemiss DN, Reavill C, Riley GJ, Routledge C, Wood M (2000) Design and synthesis of trans-N-[4-[2-(6-cyano-1,2,3, 4-tetrahydroisoquinolin-2-yl)ethyl]cyclohexyl]-4-quinolinecarboxamide (SB-277011): A potent and selective dopamine D3 receptor antagonist with high oral bioavailability and CNS penetration in the rat. J Med Chem 43:1878–1885
Surmeier DJ, Eberwine J, Wilson CJ, Cao Y, Stefani A, Kitai ST (1992) Dopamine receptor subtypes colocalize in rat striatonigral neurons. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 89:10178–10182
Surmeier DJ, Yan Z, Song WJ (1998) Coordinated expression of dopamine receptors in neostriatal medium spiny neurons. Adv Pharmacol 42:1020–1023
Suzuki M, Hurd YL, Sokoloff P, Schwartz JC, Sedvall G (1998) D3 dopamine receptor mRNA is widely expressed in the human brain. Brain Res 779:58–74
Tadori Y, Forbes RA, McQuade RD, Kikuchi T (2011) Functional potencies of dopamine agonists and antagonists at human dopamine D2 and D3 receptors. Eur J Pharmacol 666:43–52
Tenback DE, van Harten PN, van Os J (2009) Non-therapeutic risk factors for onset of tardive dyskinesia in schizophrenia: a meta-analysis. Movement Disorders 24:2309–2315
Thomasson-Perret N, Penelaud PF, Theron D, Gouttefangeas S, Mocaer E (2008) Markers of D2 and D3 receptor activity in vivo: PET scan and prolactin. Therapie 63:237–242
Torvinen M, Marcellino D, Canals M, Agnati LF, Lluis C, Franco R, Fuxe K (2005) Adenosine A 2A Receptor and Dopamine D 3 Receptor Interactions: Evidence of Functional A 2A/D 3 Heteromeric Complexes. Mol Pharmacol 67:400–407

Turrone P, Kapur S, Seeman MV, Flint AJ (2002) Elevation of prolactin levels by atypical antipsychotics. Am J Psychiatry 159:133–135

Tyson PJ, Laws KR, Flowers KA, Tyson A, Mortimer AM (2006) Cognitive function and social abilities in patients with schizophrenia: relationship with atypical antipsychotics. Psychiatry Clin Neurosci 60:473–479

Ukai M, Tanaka T, Kameyama T (1997) Effects of the dopamine D3 receptor agonist, R(+)-7-hydroxy-N, N-di-n-propyl-2-aminotetralin, on memory processes in mice. Eur J Pharmacol 324:147–151

Unger L, Wernet W, Sokoloff P, Wicke K, Gross G (2002) In vitro characterization of the selective dopamine D3 receptor antagonist A-437203. Soc Neurosci, Abstr 894.5. Online

Unger L, Wernet W, Müller R, Jongen-Rêlo AL, Garcia-Ladona FJ, Moreland RB, Drescher KU, Haupt A, Hahn A, Schoemaker H, Sullivan JP (2005) ABT-127, a new selective dopamine D3 receptor antagonist: binding and functional properties in vitro. Abstr Soc Neurosci 913.18. Online

Valerio A, Belloni M, Gorno ML, Tinti C, Memo M, Spano P (1994) Dopamine D2, D3, and D4 receptor mRNA levels in rat brain and pituitary during aging. Neurobiol Aging 15:713–719

van Os J, Fahy T, Jones P, Harvey I, Toone B, Murray R (1997) Tardive dyskinesia: who is at risk? Acta Psychiatr Scand 96:206–16

Vanhauwe JF, Fraeyman N, Francken BJ, Luyten WH, Leysen JE (1999) Comparison of the ligand binding and signaling properties of human dopamine D2 and D3 receptors in Chinese hamster ovary cells. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 290:908–916

Varga LI, Ko-Agugua N, Colasante J, Hertweck L, Houser T, Smith J, Watty AA, Nagar S, Raffa RB (2009) Critical review of ropinirole and pramipexole—putative dopamine D3-receptor selective agonists—for the treatment of RLS. J Clin Pharm Ther 34:493–505

Vernaleken I, Siessmeier T, Buchholz HG, Hartter S, Hiemke C, Stoeter P, Rosch F, Bartenstein P, Gründer G (2004) High striatal occupancy of D2-like dopamine receptors by amisulpride in the brain of patients with schizophrenia. Int J Neuropsychopharmacol 7:421–430

Vezina P, Leyton M (2009) Conditioned cues and the expression of stimulant sensitization in animals and humans. Neuropharmacology 56(Suppl 1):160–168

Voorn P, Vanderschuren LJ, Groenewegen HJ, Robbins TW, Pennartz CM (2004) Putting a spin on the dorsal-ventral divide of the striatum. Trends Neurosci 27:468–474

Wagner M, Quednow BB, Westheide J, Schlaepfer TE, Maier W, Kuhn KU (2005) Cognitive improvement in schizophrenic patients does not require a serotonergic mechanism: randomized controlled trial of olanzapine vs amisulpride. Neuropsychopharmacology 30:381–390

Watson DJG, Marsden CA, Millan MJ, Fone KC (2011) Blockade of dopamine D3 but not D2 receptors reverses the novel object discrimination impairment produced by post-weaning social isolation: implications for schizophrenia and its treatment. Int J Neuropsychopharmacol 15:471–484

Watson DJ, Loiseau F, Ingallinesi M, Millan MJ, Marsden CA, Fone KC (2012) Selective blockade of dopamine D(3) receptors enhances while D(2) receptor antagonism impairs social novelty discrimination and novel object recognition in rats: a key role for the prefrontal cortex. Neuropsychopharmacology 37:770–786

Wetzel H, Wiesner J, Hiemke C, Benkert O (1994) Acute antagonism of dopamine D2-like receptors by amisulpride: effects on hormone secretion in healthy volunteers. J Psychiatr Res 28:461–473

Wicke K, Garcia-Ladona J (2001) The dopamine D3 receptor partial agonist, BP 897, is an antagonist at human dopamine D3 receptors and at rat somatodendritic dopamine D3 receptors. Eur J Pharmacol 424:85–90

Willeit M, Ginovart N, Kapur S, Houle S, Hussey D, Seeman P, Wilson AA (2006) High-affinity states of human brain dopamine D2/3 receptors imaged by the agonist [11C]-(+)-PHNO. Biol Psychiatry 59:389–394

Winters BD, Saksida LM, Bussey TJ (2008) Object recognition memory: neurobiological mechanisms of encoding, consolidation and retrieval. Neurosci Biobehav Rev 32:1055–1070

Woodward ND, Zald DH, Ding Z, Riccardi P, Ansari MS, Baldwin RM, Cowan RL, Li R, Kessler RM (2009) Cerebral morphology and dopamine D2/D3 receptor distribution in humans: a combined [18 F]fallypride and voxel-based morphometry study. Neuroimage 46:31–38

Xing B, Kong H, Meng X, Wei SG, Xu M, Li SB (2010a) Dopamine D1 but not D3 receptor is critical for spatial learning and related signaling in the hippocampus. Neuroscience 169:1511–1519

Xing B, Meng X, Wei S, Li S (2010b) Influence of dopamine D3 receptor knockout on age-related decline of spatial memory. Neurosci Lett 481:149–153

Xu M, Koeltzow TE, Santiago GT, Moratalla R, Cooper DC, Hu XT, White NM, Graybiel AM, White FJ, Tonegawa S (1997) Dopamine D3 receptor mutant mice exhibit increased behavioral sensitivity to concurrent stimulation of D1 and D2 receptors. Neuron 19:837–848

Xu M, Koeltzow TE, Cooper DC, Tonegawa S, White FJ (1999) Dopamine D3 receptor mutant and wild-type mice exhibit identical responses to putative D3 receptor-selective agonists and antagonists. Synapse 31:210–215

Young JW, Powell SB, Risbrough V, Marston HM, Geyer MA (2009) Using the MATRICS to guide development of a preclinical cognitive test battery for research in schizophrenia. Pharmacol Ther 122:150–202

Yuan J, Chen X, Brodbeck R, Primus R, Braun J, Wasley JW, Thurkauf A (1998) NGB 2904 and NGB 2849: two highly selective dopamine D3 receptor antagonists. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 8:2715–2718

Zai CC, Tiwari AK, De Luca V, Muller DJ, Bulgin N, Hwang R, Zai GC, King N, Voineskos AN, Meltzer HY, Lieberman JA, Potkin SG, Remington G, Kennedy JL (2009) Genetic study of BDNF, DRD3, and their interaction in tardive dyskinesia. Eur Neuropsychopharmacol 19:317–328

Zapata A, Witkin JM, Shippenberg TS (2001) Selective D3 receptor agonist effects of (+)-PD 128907 on dialysate dopamine at low doses. Neuropharmacology 41:351–359

Zapata A, Kivell B, Han Y, Javitch JA, Bolan EA, Kuraguntla D, Jaligam V, Oz M, Jayanthi LD, Samuvel DJ, Ramamoorthy S, Shippenberg TS (2007) Regulation of dopamine transporter function and cell surface expression by D3 dopamine receptors. J Biol Chem 282:35842–35854

Zhang L, Lou D, Jiao H, Zhang D, Wang X, Xia Y, Zhang J, Xu M (2004) Cocaine-induced intracellular signaling and gene expression are oppositely regulated by the dopamine D1 and D3 receptors. J Neurosci 24:3344–3354

Zhang M, Ballard ME, Kohlhaas KL, Browman KE, Jongen-Relo AL, Unger LV, Fox GB, Gross G, Decker MW, Drescher KU, Rueter LE (2006) Effect of dopamine D3 antagonists on PPI in DBA/2 J mice or PPI deficit induced by neonatal ventral hippocampal lesions in rats. Neuropsychopharmacology 31:1382–1392

Zhang M, Ballard ME, Unger LV, Haupt A, Gross G, Decker MW, Drescher KU, Rueter LE (2007) Effects of antipsychotics and selective D3 antagonists on PPI deficits induced by PD 128907 and apomorphine. Behav Brain Res 182:1–11

Zhang L, Li J, Liu N, Wang B, Gu J, Zhang M, Zhou Z, Jiang Y, Zhang L, Zhang L (2012) Signaling via dopamine D1 and D3 receptors oppositely regulates cocaine-induced structural remodeling of dendrites and spines. Neurosignals 20:15–34

Zink M, Henn FA, Thome J (2004a) Combination of amisulpride and olanzapine in treatment-resistant schizophrenic psychoses. Eur Psychiatry 19:56–58

Zink M, Knopf U, Henn FA, Thome J (2004b) Combination of clozapine and amisulpride in treatment-resistant schizophrenia–case reports and review of the literature. Pharmacopsychiatry 37:26–31

# Nicotinic Mechanisms in the Treatment of Psychotic Disorders: A Focus on the α7 Nicotinic Receptor

**Ann Olincy and Robert Freedman**

## Contents



**Abstract** Nicotine is heavily abused by persons with schizophrenia. Nicotine better enables people with schizophrenia to filter out extraneous auditory stimuli. Nicotine also improves prepulse inhibition when compared to placebo. Nicotine similarly increases the amplitude of patients' duration mismatch negativity. The 15q13-14 region of the genome coding for the α7 nicotinic receptor is linked to schizophrenia. Multiple single nucleotide polymorphisms have been identified in this 15q13-14 gene promoter region that are more frequently present in people with schizophrenia than in normal controls. Abnormalities in expression and regulation of central nicotinic cholinoceptors with decreased α7 binding in multiple brain regions are also present. Nicotine enhances cognition in schizophrenia. Alternative agents that activate the nicotinic receptor have been tested including 3-[2,4-dimethoxybenzylidene]anabaseine (DMXB-A). This compound improved attention, working memory, and negative symptoms in an add-on study in non-smoking patients with schizophrenia. There are multiple other nicotinic agents, including positive allosteric modulators, in the preclinical stages of development.

A. Olincy (✉) • R. Freedman
Department of Psychiatry, University of Colorado, Denver, 13001 East 17th Place, Mail Stop F546, Aurora, CO 80045, USA
e-mail: Ann.olincy@ucdenver.edu; Robert.freedman@ucdenver.edu

M.A. Geyer and G. Gross (eds.), *Novel Antischizophrenia Treatments*,
Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 213,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-25758-2_8, 

Finally, the effects of varenicline and clozapine and their relation to smoking cessation are discussed.

**Keywords** Nicotine • Prepulse Inhibition • P50-evoked potential • α7 nicotinic receptors • Cognition • CHRNA7 • CHRNA3 • Smoking

## 1 Smoking in Schizophrenia

Nicotine is heavily abused by persons with schizophrenia. About 90% of patients smoke compared to only 33% in the general population and 45–70% in patients with other psychiatric diagnoses (Hughes et al. 1986; Diwan et al. 1998; Lasser et al. 2000; De Leon et al. 1995). Schizophrenia patients also extract 1.3 times more nicotine from each cigarette than other smokers as evidenced by increased nicotine and cotinine levels, despite smoking a similar number of cigarettes per day, presumably by deeper inhalation (Olincy et al. 1997; Williams et al. 2005). After 12 h of abstinence, in samples matched on gender, smoking levels, and level of nicotine dependence, people with schizophrenia had significantly higher increases in blood nicotine in the first 4 min after smoking than controls; however, total time smoking over 120 min was no different (Williams et al. 2010) The high level of smoking in schizophrenia patients has been proposed as a form of self-medication to alleviate symptoms of their illness including depression, anxiety, anhedonia, or amotivation (Glassman 1993; Svensson et al. 1990; Tung et al. 1990; Nisell et al. 1995). Others have proposed that smoking alleviates symptoms of nicotine withdrawal or neuroleptic-induced side effects (Dalack and Meador-Woodruff 1996; Dalack et al. 1999; Decina et al. 1990; Goff et al. 1992).

Smoking may be also an attempt to improve sensory gating (Taiminen et al. 1998; Nomikos et al. 2000; Adler et al. 1993), an elementary deficit that has been observed clinically in people with schizophrenia as the inability to filter or gate their response to sensory stimuli (Venables 1967). This "flooding" has been modeled in the laboratory physiologically by measuring the amplitude of the evoked responses to identical paired auditory stimuli separated by 500 ms. The P50 auditory-evoked response occurs 40–75 ms after the presentation of a brief click. This auditory-evoked response is called the "conditioning" response. On the presentation of the second "test" stimulus, inhibitory mechanisms are normally activated so the brain can tune out repetitive nonessential noise. This gating process results in diminished amplitude of the P50 component of the evoked response to the second stimulus relative to the first. Persons with schizophrenia generally show less ability to inhibit or filter out these extraneous second stimuli, as demonstrated by a larger response to the second "test" stimulus, and a larger test wave when compared to the conditioning wave (Boutros et al. 1991; Judd et al. 1992; Ward et al. 1996; Clementz et al. 1997). This deficit is correlated with impairment in sustained attention as measured by diminished performance on the Digit Vigilance Test (Cullum et al. 1993).

## 2 The Mechanism of Effects of Nicotine in Schizophrenia

In animal models of this evoked potential response, cholinergic stimulation of α7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptors, which are found on presynaptic and postsynaptic sites on inhibitory interneurons of the hippocampus (Freedman et al. 1993), is essential for this inhibition (Luntz-Leybman et al. 1992; Frazier et al. 1998; Alkondon et al. 2000). A similar deficit in auditory gating has been found in inbred mice. The DBA/2 genetic strain exhibits a failure to suppress its response to the second stimulus in a paradigm identical to that used with humans, while the C3H genetic strain shows a pattern comparable to normal humans (Stevens et al. 1996). High doses of nicotine significantly improve P50 inhibition in patients (Adler et al. 1993). When people with schizophrenia who have been withdrawn from nicotine smoke cigarettes, they are able to temporarily filter stimuli. However within approximately 30 min, their inhibitory deficit returns. Higher nicotine levels are consistent with activity at α7 receptors, which are less sensitive to nicotine than α4β2 nicotinic receptors, the other common neuronal nicotinic receptor that is found on presynaptic terminals of many different neuronal types. Longer lasting effects are not seen with the transdermal patch, demonstrating that prolonged effects cannot be obtained with this method of administration because of tachyphylaxis (Griffith et al. 1998). P50 abnormalities are less pronounced among schizophrenia patients who are current cigarette smokers than those who are nonsmokers, suggesting a positive effect of chronic cigarette smoking on ameliorating this inhibitory deficit (Chen et al. 2011). Studies have shown that the auditory gating improves in the DBA/2 mouse with nicotine administration (Stevens et al. 1996), just as it does in schizophrenia patients. The mechanism of auditory gating has been clarified through the use of these animal models. The activation of the α7 cholinoreceptors releases GABA from GABAergic interneurons (Albuquerque et al. 1998; Frazier et al. 1998), which then act on $GABA_B$ receptors which decreases the release of glutamate, thus preventing hippocampal neurons from responding to the second stimulus in the P50 paradigm (Hershman et al. 1995). Nitric oxide acts as a second messenger to prolong the effect of the α7 nicotinic cholinoceptor stimulation. Abnormal auditory-evoked potentials are also present in first degree relatives of people with schizophrenia even without the confounds of the pathology of the disease or the consequences of medications or chronic smoking (Siegal et al. 1984; Waldo et al. 1991; Clementz et al. 1998; Ross et al. 1999). This finding suggests that the inhibitory deficits may be inherited.

Prepulse inhibition (PPI) is another gating deficit that is abnormal in schizophrenia. PPI refers to a reduction in response to a strong startling stimulus if preceded shortly by a stimulus of subthreshold intensity. The person is exposed to weak stimuli across a range of intensities consisting of 20–40 ms noise bursts that are typically 2–16 dB over a 70-dB noise background (prepulse), and one startling stimulus usually consisting of a 40-ms noise burst 45 dB over a 70-dB noise background. The eyeblink response to startle is measured. Deficient PPI was first reported in schizophrenia patients by Braff et al. (1978) and by several other groups subsequently (Braff et al. 2001). Nicotine administered subcutaneously or via

cigarette smoking enhances PPI in healthy human beings (Kumari et al. 1997). The influence of smoking on PPI of the acoustic startle response has been examined in patients with chronic schizophrenia using cigarette smoking after abstinence (George et al. 2006; Postma et al. 2006) and nicotine nasal spray (Hong et al. 2008). The results showed a significant main effect of the drug on PPI in that nicotine improved PPI compared to placebo with no drug by diagnosis interaction. Improvement in PPI in response to nicotine was robustly correlated with the baseline severity of clinical symptoms in patients.

The mechanism of the effect on PPI has been investigated further in animal models using both rats and mice (Geyer et al. 2001, 2002). For example, in a study of nicotine effects, investigators used startle stimuli of 120 dB and prepulse intensities of 3, 6, and 12 dB above a background of 70 dB in rats and two strains of mice. In Sprague–Dawley rats, nicotine disrupted PPI and this effect was mimicked by the potent nAChR agonist, epibatidine, and the potent, and relatively selective, α4/ß2 nAChR agonist A-85380 (Schreiber et al. 2002). The effects of epibatidine, A-85380, and, to a lesser extent, nicotine were blocked by the nonselective nAChR antagonist mecamylamine. The relatively selective α7 nAChR agonists, GTS-21 and AR-R-17779, did not affect PPI in a consistent manner, both in rats and in DBA/2 mice, a strain expressing a disrupted gating phenotype, presumably due to altered activity of hippocampal α7 nAChRs. In BALB/c mice, a strain expressing a normal gating phenotype, nicotine, epibatidine, and A-85380 predominantly augmented PPI and mecamylamine attenuated these effects (Schreiber et al. 2002). The results indicated that the effects of nAChR agonists on PPI are species dependent and suggest that stimulation of heteromeric nAChRs containing both α and β subunits, and possibly of the α4/ß2 type, affects sensorimotor gating. Relatively selective α7 agonists do not affect PPI in a consistent manner; thus it appears that a role for α7 nAChRs in the control of PPI of the acoustic startle response is unlikely (Schreiber et al. 2002).

A third preattentive auditory sensory processing deficit that is diminished in schizophrenia patients is mismatch negativity (MMN), a negative scalp potential produced by a deviant stimulus in a series of standard stimuli. The MMN in healthy controls and patients is increased by acute administration of nicotine (Dulude et al. 2010). Twelve smoking schizophrenia subjects and 12 smoking controls were abstinent of tobacco for 3 h and then MMN was recorded in two auditory oddball paradigms, one involving tone frequency changes (frequency MMN) and one involving tone duration changes (duration MMN). Controls were assessed once under nontreatment conditions, and patients were assessed twice under randomized double-blind treatment conditions involving placebo and nicotine (8 mg) gum. In addition to prolonging peak latency in duration MMN, nicotine, relative to placebo, increased the amplitude of the patients' duration MMN, but not their frequency MMN, to a level comparable with that seen in the controls (Dulude et al. 2010). This finding suggests that acute nicotine can normalize temporal aspects of sensory memory processing in patients with schizophrenia, an effect that may be mediated by activation of α7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptors, the function of which is diminished in schizophrenia.

## 3 Molecular Studies of Nicotinic Receptors in Schizophrenia

Additional independent evidence for involvement of the α7 receptor in the P50 auditory-evoked potential deficit is provided through genetic studies. Nine multiplex families with schizophrenia were studied in a genome-wide linkage analysis (Freedman et al. 1997). Maximal linkage to the P50 deficit was found at chromosome 15q14 at a polymorphic marker <120 kb from the α7 gene with a LOD score of 5.3, $\Theta = 0.039$. Linkage of this region to schizophrenia was further replicated in families from the NIMH Schizophrenia Genetics Initiative (Leonard et al. 1998) and in other studies (Riley et al. 2000; Tsuang et al. 2001; Liu et al. 2001; Xu et al. 2001), but there have also been some negative studies in this region (Neves-Pereira et al. 1998; Curtis et al. 1999). Multiple single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNP) have been identified in the 15q14 gene promoter region that are more frequently present in people with schizophrenia and their family members than normal controls (Leonard et al. 2002; Houy et al. 2004). Furthermore, the presence of a SNP in the 15q14 gene CHRNA7 5′ core promoter is significantly associated with P50 suppression deficits (Leonard et al. 2002). Association of CHRNA7 polymorphisms with P50 gating has been replicated, but the specific allelic associations differ, which suggests that responsible mutations have not yet been unambiguously identified (Leonard et al. 2002; Houy et al. 2004).

In addition to the deficits in P50-evoked potentials and the functional promoter polymorphisms in the CHRNA7 region, people with schizophrenia also have abnormalities in expression and regulation of central nicotinic cholinoceptors. Decreased α7 nicotinic cholinoceptor binding has been noted in the reticular nucleus of the thalamus, the hippocampus, the cingulate cortex, and the frontal lobe regions (Court et al. 1999; Freedman et al. 1995; Marutle et al. 2001; Guan et al. 1999). The structure of the receptor is intact in most patients with schizophrenia, but the number of receptors is diminished. These abnormalities in regulation and expression of the nicotinic cholinoreceptor may have effects on other electrophysiological and neuropsychological processes in schizophrenia.

PPI is another endophenotype that has been used to examine the involvement of the nicotinic receptor in schizophrenia. In two independent samples of 107 healthy British volunteers and 73 schizophrenia patients hailing from Germany, two common CHRNA3 polymorphisms (rs1051730/rs1317286) were examined for their effects in PPI, startle reactivity, and habituation. In both samples, PPI was influenced by both CHRNA3 polymorphisms, which were strongly linked. Moreover, CHRNA3 genotype was associated with chronicity, treatment, and negative symptoms in the schizophrenia sample (Petrovsky et al. 2010). Recent human genetic studies also imply that tobacco dependence is affected by polymorphisms in the α3/α5 subunits of the nAChR (CHRNA3/CHRNA5) gene cluster.

## 4 Neurocognitive Effects of Nicotine in Schizophrenia

Many of the neurophysiological abnormalities indicate preattentive or inhibitory abnormalities which implicate deficits in cognition. Withdrawal from nicotine in normal smokers has been shown to cause attention impairments (Hatsukami et al. 1989). Nicotine administration may just be relieving withdrawal and correcting those deficits. However, if low-dose nicotine is administered to normal nonsmokers, thereby avoiding the confound of withdrawal, there is enhanced performance on the continuous performance test (CPT) with decreased errors of omission (missed targets) without an increase in errors of commission (nontarget responses) (Levin et al. 1998). The effects of nicotine on neuropsychological measures in persons with schizophrenia, compared to the effects on the electrophysiological measures, are less conclusive. With the hypothesis that nicotine may be both counteracting some of the cognitive effects of schizophrenia and the side effects of haloperidol, patients in a double-blind study were randomly assigned low-, moderate-, and high-dose levels of haloperidol. The subjects, all smokers, came to the laboratory on four different mornings after overnight deprivation from cigarettes. In a double-blind fashion, they were administered placebo, low- (7 mg/day), medium- (14 mg/day), or high- (21 mg/day) dose nicotine skin patches. Three hours after administration of the skin patch, the subjects were given a computerized cognitive test battery including simple reaction time (RT), complex RT (spatial rotation), delayed matching to sample, the Sternberg memory test, and the Conners' CPT. With the placebo nicotine patch, there was a haloperidol dose-related impairment in delayed matching to sample choice accuracy and an increase in response time on the complex RT task. Nicotine caused a dose-related reversal of the haloperidol-induced impairments in memory performance and complex RT. In the CPT, nicotine reduced the variability in response that is associated with attentional deficit. These results demonstrate the effects of nicotine in reversing some of the adverse side effects of haloperidol and improving cognitive performance in schizophrenia (Levin et al. 1996). However, some may argue that nicotine is just relieving deficits that are observed in working memory that result from abstinence (George et al. 2002; Sacco et al. 2005). If nicotine is then reinitiated, working memory deficits are normalized (Sacco et al. 2005). AhnAllen et al. (2008) attempted to address this issue by studying three nicotine conditions: baseline, 8 h overnight withdrawal, and 3 h 21 mg nicotine patch while performing the Attention Network Test (ANT) in 38 male cigarette smokers (22 schizophrenia, 16 normal control) matched on nicotine dependence. The results indicated that the groups did not differ in performance on either of three ANT measures (alertness, orienting, and executive) across baseline, patch, and withdrawal conditions. However, in comparison to the controls, the participants with schizophrenia showed faster ANT RT for the nicotine patch in relation to the baseline condition. In comparison to controls, the participants with schizophrenia also showed reduced ANT accuracy at withdrawal but not at patch condition. These results suggest that overall processing speed and accuracy are affected differently by nicotine levels in

participants with schizophrenia, with evidence supporting greater impairment from withdrawal and greater improvement from nicotine administration. In another study, the nicotine patch also improved auditory working memory, attention, and complex RTs but not simple RTs (Sacco et al. 2005; Dépatie et al. 2002). Barr et al. (2008) found that a 14 mg patch significantly improved the performance on the CPT-identical pairs (IP) as measured by hit RT, hit RT variability, and random errors in both schizophrenia and control nonsmoker groups. In addition, nicotine reduced commission errors on the CPT-IP and improved the performance on a Card Stroop task to a greater extent in those with schizophrenia vs. controls and had more rapid and accurate recognition of novel items on a test of episodic memory (Jubelt et al. 2008).

Nicotine gum administration shows mixed effects depending on the psychological realm and whether the subjects are smokers or are nonsmokers. While nicotine gum improves attention in nonsmokers, it may diminish attention in smokers. In contrast, nicotine gum has no effect in either smokers or nonsmokers on working memory or visuospatial memory (Harris et al. 2004). Finally, nicotine nasal spray had variable effects on verbal (Kem et al. 1971, 1997) spatial working memory (Smith et al. 2002, 2006) and complex RTs but had no effect on simple RT attention or working memory (Levin et al. 1996; Sherr et al. 2002; Myers et al. 2004). Thus, chronic exposure to nicotine in smokers, the mode of experimental nicotine delivery, the nicotine dose given, the particular neuropsychological test, clinical diversity, and potentially other factors in these studies may account for the variability of these findings. Nicotine has several limitations as a therapeutic agent for schizophrenia. Nicotine induces tachyphylaxis and thus does not maintain sustained benefit because of receptor desensitization. Additionally, the long-term health risks of chronic nicotine use are unknown. Nicotine is also addictive and without sustained use, people can experience symptoms of withdrawal (Benowitz 1998). Thus, alternative nicotinic agonists that are less potentially toxic would be helpful in the treatment of schizophrenia.

One of the few nicotinic agents that has reached clinical trials is GTS-21 or 3-[2,4-dimethoxybenzylidene]anabaseine (DMXB-A). DMXB-A (Kem et al. 1971, 1997) is a derivative of the naturally occurring alkaloid anabaseine (Kem et al. 2004). It is a partial agonist at human α7 nicotinic receptors and at higher concentrations a weak antagonist at α4β2 receptors and serotonin 5-$HT_3$ receptors (Kem et al. 2004; De Fiebre et al. 1995; Briggs et al. 1995; Stokes et al. 2004). Approximately 40% of an oral dose is absorbed within 1 h of administration (Mahnir et al. 1998). Metabolites with hydroxyl substituents at positions 2 and 4 are more efficacious agonists when bound to the receptor, but to what extent they are produced in human brain is unknown (Stokes et al. 2004; Mahnir et al. 1998). DMXB-A improves memory in several animal models, and it normalizes inhibition of auditory responses in rodents, with significantly less tachyphylaxis than nicotine (Woodruff-Pak et al. 1994; Stevens et al. 1998). The first step in testing of this compound was to administer DMXB-A subcutaneously in DBA/2 mice. This compound produced a dose-dependent improvement in auditory gating that occurred through a selective reduction in the response to the second stimulus.

The improvement in auditory gating has been replicated in isolation-reared rats which show deficient auditory gating (O'Neill et al. 2003), in C3H mouse strains chronically treated with cocaine, which also show deficient auditory gating (Stevens et al. 1999), and after oral administration of DMXB-A in DBA/2 mice (Simosky et al. 2001). DMXB-A improves many of the neurophysiological abnormalities in schizophrenia models in animals that are corrected by nicotine. Administration of DMXB-A also improves deficient PPI (Schreiber et al. 2002).

DMXB-A improves monkey performance on a delayed matching to sample task, an effect that persists for 24 h after drug administration (Briggs et al. 1997). The administration of DMXB-A improves eyeblink classical conditioning acquisition in older rabbits who have lost cholinergic neurons (Woodruff-Pak et al. 1994). Mecamylamine, an α4ß2 antagonist, has a deleterious effect on conditioned learning in young rabbits. If young rabbits are given mecamylamine and DMXB-A, their eyeblink classical conditioning acquisition is improved (Woodruff-Pak 2003). DMXB-A improves one-way active avoidance, Lashley III maze testing, and 17-arm radial maze test performance in aged rats (Arendash et al. 1995). Passive avoidance deficits are normalized in rats (Meyer et al. 1994) and ischemia-induced hippocampal cell death and impaired passive avoidance performance in gerbils are prevented by treatment with DMXB-A (Nanri et al. 1998). DMXB-A also improves performance on the Morris water maze (Meyer et al. 1997).

Positive neurocognitive effects, particularly on attention, were observed in healthy volunteers when administered DMXB-A (Kitagawa et al. 2003). The first stage in human testing with DMXB-A was to initially administer this compound to normal male subjects ($n = 18$) to assess safety, tolerability, pharmacokinetics, and possible effects on cognition prior to its study as a cognitive enhancer in Alzheimer's disease (Kitagawa et al. 2003). Subjects were randomized to DMXB-A (25, 75, and 150 mg) or placebo administered three times daily for 5 days with a 10 day washout period between drug-taking periods. All subjects were evaluated for performance on a computerized test battery to measure the effect of treatment on cognitive functioning including changes in attention (simple RT, choice RT, digit vigilance), numeric and spatial working memory, secondary episodic recognition memory (word and picture recognition, immediate and delayed word recall), and visual tracking. Peak plasma levels were achieved at 1–1.4 h after the first dose and 1–1.2 h after 5 days of dosing. DMXB-A was well tolerated at doses of up to 450 mg daily with no significant safety findings. DMXB-A significantly improved performance on simple RT, choice RT, correct detection during digit vigilance, both word and picture recognition memory, and both immediate and delayed word recall. Additionally, DMXB-A improved subject performance speed on numeric and spatial working memory task. Improvement was generally seen with the 25 mg dose, with further improvement at the 75 mg dose and an equivalent effect at the 150 mg dose (Kitagawa et al. 2003).

## 5 Initial Trials of Nicotinic Agonists in Schizophrenia

In an initial trial in schizophrenia, DMXB-A was given in a 1 day administration to determine if the drug was safe and to obtain a proof-of-principle preliminary indication of efficacy by improving neurocognition and assessing its effects on P50 inhibition to see if its actions are consistent with activation of α7 nicotinic receptors (Olincy et al. 2006). Because the proposed effect is agonism at a ligand-gated ion channel, biological effects were expected immediately, consistent with the results from animal models. DMXB-A was administered orally (150 mg or 75 mg) followed 2 h later by a supplemental half dose (75 mg or 37.5 mg). The half dose, administered at the predicted half-life of the first dose, extended the period of therapeutic drug levels during the behavioral measurements. Twelve nonsmoking schizophrenia subjects received either the higher or lower dose or placebo in a double-blind, three-arm, random order crossover with the study drug or placebo added on to their current antipsychotic regimen.

The Repeatable Battery for Assessment of Neuropsychological Status (RBANS) was administered immediately following the second dose on each experimental day (Gold et al. 1999). The primary neurophysiological measure was P50 auditory-evoked potential suppression in response to repeated stimuli (Adler et al. 1993). This measure was chosen because it had previously demonstrated effects of nicotinic agonism in schizophrenia and effects of DMXB-A in animal models (Adler et al. 1993; Stevens et al. 1998). DMXB-A in plasma was quantitatively determined by a modification of previously reported HPLC methods (Mahnir et al. 1998). The plasma concentrations were consistent with the pharmacokinetic parameters established in the previous Phase 1 study in healthy controls.

P50 suppression was measured before drug administration on each day; these baseline values were not significantly different, consistent with the lack of repetition effects on this measure. The amplitude of the P50 response to the conditioning stimulus was not significantly different over the three treatment conditions. However, the amplitude of the second or test response and the P50 test/conditioning ratio were significantly decreased during low dose compared to placebo. The neurocognitive effect of drug treatment as measured by the RBANS Total Scale score at the 150 mg dose was significant for the effect of treatment.

Based on the results of the Phase 1 trial, the Phase 2 trial was approved by the FDA to assess whether cognitive effects would continue during longer term administration and whether clinical ratings would also change (Freedman et al. 2008). The doses were those used in the Phase 1 trial. The MATRICS Battery was chosen because of its recommended use for assessment of drug effects on cognition in schizophrenia (Nuechterlein et al. 2008; Kern et al. 2008). Standard clinical measures, the Scale for Assessment of Negative Symptoms (SANS) and the Brief Psychiatric Rating Scale (BPRS), were also assessed. As in the initial Phase 1 trial, clinically stable nonsmoking patients, almost all of whom were currently taking antipsychotic drugs, were studied.

Thirty-one subjects were enrolled at two sites. Subjects were assigned to 4 weeks of placebo bid, 75 mg bid DMXB-A, or 150 mg bid DMXB-A in a double-blind balanced crossover design.

Performance on the six domains of the MATRICS CCB did not differ between DMXB-A dosage and placebo, and effects of repetition of the tests were observed in several of the domains.

Therefore, a secondary analysis was performed using only the results of the first arm of the study, to minimize the effects of repetition of the tests. Two domains showed significant improvement over baseline with DMXB-A treatment in the first arm. The Attention Vigilance domain T score showed no significant change over baseline with placebo, but it showed significant change with 75 mg bid DMXB-A and with 150 mg bid DMXB-A. The Working Memory domain T score also showed no significant change over baseline with placebo, but it showed significant change with 75 mg bid DMXB-A and a trend with 150 mg bid DMXB-A (Freedman et al. 2008). Significant effects of DMXB-A treatment were observed for the SANS total score at 150 mg bid. Two of the subscales, Alogia and Anhedonia, showed significant effects of 150 mg bid DMXB-A, compared to placebo.

Additionally, subjects during each arm of treatment participated in a default mode fMRI task. Both 150 mg and 75 mg DMXB-A were associated with less default network activity in the posterior cingulate, inferior parietal cortex, and medial frontal gyrus when compared to placebo. The opposite response, greater default mode activity associated with drug, was observed in the precuneus. Decreases in posterior cingulate default network activity were positively correlated with decreases in total BPRS score. Increases in precuneus default network activity were significantly correlated with decreases in SANS total score (Tregellas et al. 2011).

Not only does DMXB-A apparently at both 75 and 150 mg appear to reduce default network activity, there also appears to be a pharmacogenomic effect related to the *CHRNA7* allelic variant. The *CHRNA7* allelic variant chosen for initial study of pharmacogenomic effects was rs3087454, located 1,831 bp 5′ of Exon 1 in the promoter region of the α7 nicotinic receptor gene on 15q13-14. SNP rs3087454 is associated with schizophrenia (Stephens et al. 2009). Its location is within the chromosome 15q13-14 region found to be deleted in rare cases of schizophrenia occurring after small de novo chromosomal deletions (Stone et al. 2008). The polymorphism occurs very frequently with a set of polymorphisms in the core promoter that decrease its function as assessed in vitro (Leonard et al. 2002). Thus, the polymorphism is associated with both the function of the *CHRNA7* gene to produce α7 nAChRs and the genetic risk for schizophrenia. Our initial pharmacogenomic study of this SNP was conducted in the Phase 1 study of DMXB-A in schizophrenia. The minor allele that is associated with schizophrenia significantly decreased the neuropsychological effect of DMXB-A. In the Phase 2 study of DMXB-A, significant genotypic effects were also observed with the minor allele being associated with decreased response to the agonist during a default network task (Tregellas et al. 2010). Liu et al. (2009) also reported similar significant genotypic effects of SNP rs3087454 on default network activity in schizophrenia. These results are consistent with the hypothesis that genetically

mediated decrease in α7 nAChRs results in decreased nicotinic cholinoreceptor activation of inhibitory interneurons, as predicted from animal models. The patients thus appear to have reduced response to their endogenous acetylcholine, as well as diminished response to DMXB-A.

DMXB-A needs to be tested further in longer trials to assess this drug's potential to sustain its effects on cognition. Additionally, as the testing was in a relatively uncommon population, people with schizophrenia that are nonsmokers, to avoid interactions of nicotinic agonists with already desensitized nicotinic cholinoceptors, a trial of these types of drugs in smokers is warranted. Furthermore, the half-life of DMXB-A is relatively short (1.5 h) with a peak effect at about 2 h, requiring frequent administration and making it impractical for use in a cognitively impaired, non-adherent population. Thus, other delivery systems or other nicotinic agonists with longer half-lives are currently in development.

Other potential α7 nicotinic agonists have been developed as potential candidates for the treatment of schizophrenia and Alzheimer's disease. Targacept, Inc. has an (E)-*N*-methyl-5 (3-pyridinyl)-4-penten-2-amine and TC-5619 *N*-[2-(pyridine-3ylmethyl)-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]oct-3-yl]-1-benzofuran-carboxamide which binds with high affinity to the α7 subtype and is a potent full agonist (Hauser et al. 2009). TC-5619 attenuated PPI and startle in transgenic th(tk-)/th(tk-) mice and these mice spent more time investigating novel objects. In a double-blind, placebo-controlled trial TC-5619 was administered for 12 weeks to 185 outpatients with schizophrenia (Hosford et al. 2011). All subjects were taking quetiapine or risperidone. The primary outcome was executive function tested at weeks 4, 8, and 12 as measured by Groton Maze Learning Task (GMLT) from the computerized Cogstate Schizophrenia battery (CSB). Secondary measures were the CSB composite score Scale of the Assessment of Negative Symptoms (SANS), CGI-Global Impression (CGI-I), CGI-Severity (CGI-S), and Subject Global Impression-Cognition (subject-rated scale assessing Speed of Thinking, Memory, and Attention). GMLT, SANS, CGI-I, and SGI-Cog results favored TC-5619. Somewhat surprisingly, the effect was primarily driven by tobacco users. There were no noteworthy safety findings.

Another potent and selective partial agonist of the α7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptor is (R)-7-chloro-*N*-(quinuclidin-3-yl)benzo(b)thiophene-2-carboxamide, EVP-6124, a compound developed by Envivo Pharmaceuticals. EVP-6124 significantly restored memory function in scopolamine-treated rats in an object recognition task (Prickaerts et al. 2012). This drug has been tested in 9 clinical studies with 403 subjects receiving EVP-6124 and 158 receiving placebo (Meltzer et al. 2011). In a Phase 2b study in participants with schizophrenia, on chronic atypical antipsychotic therapy, subjects were given one of two doses of EVP-6 (0.3 mg or 1 mg once daily) or placebo for 84 days. Efficacy was evaluated using the Overall Cognition Index (OCI) from the Cogstate testing battery and Trails 2 and 4 of the Neuropsychological Test Battery (NTB), the MATRICS Consensus Cognitive Battery (MCCB), the Schizophrenia Cognition Rating Scale (SCoRS), and the positive and negative syndrome scale (PANSS). The OCI plus Trails 2 and 4 suggested that 0.3 mg of EVP-6124, compared to placebo, was associated with improvement in general cognitive function and that this effect was mainly due to

beneficial effects on visual learning, visual attention, and social cognition. Significant effects in clinical function were also seen with EVP-6124 treatment as measured by the SCoRS Interviewer Rating of clinical function. Improvement was also seen in the negative symptoms of schizophrenia (derived from the PANSS) with mean decreases greater in the 1 mg of EVP-6124 compared to the placebo group. The drug was well tolerated with no significant changes in ECG's vital signs, hematology, serum chemistry, or suicidal ideation. The most commonly reported adverse events were headache (3.8%), nausea (3.2%), and nasopharyngitis (2.5%), and no serious adverse event was judged as related to the drug.

Notable differences between TC-5619, EVP-6124, and DMXB-A include the longer half-life of TC-5619 (24 h) and EVP-6214 (>60 h) compared to 1.5 h for DMXB-A (Hosford et al. 2011; Meltzer et al. 2011). This difference suggests that TC-5619 and perhaps other α7 nicotinic agonists will not show the tachyphylaxis that might have been expected with nicotinic receptor activation. TC-5619 was also more effective in smokers than in nonsmokers; DMXB-A has not been tested in smokers. This observation also suggests that tachyphylaxis might not be problematic with this approach to nicotinic receptor activation.

Other drugs currently in development include 4-(5methyloxazolo[4,5-b] pyrudub-2yl)-1,4-diazabicyclo[3.2.2]nonane (Compound 24). This is a potent and selective agonist with high oral bioavailability and in vivo efficacy in auditory sensory gating and novel object recognition (O'Donnell et al. 2010). Pfizer currently has two drugs in development. They include a 1,4-diazabicyclo[3.2.2] nonane-4-carboxylic acid 4-pyridin-2yl-phenyl ester and a *N*-[(3R)-1-azabicyclo [2.2.2]oct-3-yl]furo[2,3-c]pyridine-5-carboxamide (14 PHA-543,613). The second compound demonstrates reversal of amphetamine-induced N40 gating deficit in anesthetized rats and improves the ability to discriminate between familiar and novel objects (Wishka et al. 2006).

SSR180711 from Sanofi-Aventis enhances long-term memory in the object recognition task in mice and latent inhibition in rats pre-administered methyllycaconitine, an α7 nicotinic cholinoceptor antagonist. However, when administered to α7 knockout mice, there is no enhancement of long-term memory (Pichat et al. 2007; Barak et al. 2009). ABT-418 has some agonist properties at the α7 nicotinic cholinoceptors, but is a less potent agonist than nicotine with greater selectivity at α4β2 nAChRs (Briggs et al. 1995). ABT-418 restores deficient auditory gating in DBA/2 mice as well as rats with fimbria–fornix lesions (Stevens and Wear 1997). ABT-418 also improves sustained attention in poorly (McGaughy et al. 1999) but not well (Turchi et al. 1995) performing rat strains. JN403, a compound recently characterized to be a potent and selective partial α7 nAChR agonist, rapidly penetrates into the brain after i.v. and after p.o. administration in mice and rats. In the social recognition test in mice JN403 facilitates learning/memory performance over a broad dose range. Systemic administration of JN403 restores sensory gating in DBA/2 mice, both in anesthetized and awake animals (Feuerbach et al. 2009). AstraZeneca has AZD0328 ((2′R)-spiro-[1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3,2′ (3′H)-furo[2-3-b]pyridine]D-tartrate), a neuronal nicotinic partial agonist. Mice

treated with AZD0328 increased novel object interaction relative to vehicle and had successful acquisition of reinforced tasks (Sydserff et al. 2009). Roche/Memory R3487/MEM3454, an α7 receptor partial agonist with 5-$HT_3$ antagonist properties, has improved attention and working memory performance in cynomolgus macaques (Wallace et al. 2009).

Several positive allosteric modulators of the α7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptor have also been developed. Johnson & Johnson has JNJ-1930942 which enhances a choline-evoked rise in intracellular calcium but does not act on α4β2, α3β4, or 5-$HT_3$ channel. This agent improves the auditory gating deficit in DBA/2 mice (Lesage et al. 2009). Abbott has A-716096 which also improved sensory gating in DBA/2 mice (Donnelly-Roberts et al. 2009). 1-(5-chloro-2,4-dimethoxy-phenyl)-3-(5-methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-urea (PNU-120596) is another agent which acts as a powerful positive allosteric modulator of the α7 nAChR and was discovered in high-throughput screen. This compound produces no detectable change in currents mediated by α4ß2, α3ß4, and α9α10 nAChRs; however, it increases the channel mean open time of α7 nAChRs. When applied to acute hippocampal slices, PNU-120596 increased the frequency of ACh-evoked GABAergic postsynaptic currents measured in pyramidal neurons; this effect was suppressed by TTX, suggesting that PNU-120596 modulated the function of α7 nAChRs located on the somatodendritic membrane of hippocampal interneurons. Systemic administration of PNU-120596 to rats improved the auditory gating deficit caused by amphetamine, a model proposed to reflect a circuit level disturbance associated with schizophrenia (Hurst et al. 2005).

## 6 Other Therapeutic Approaches Targeting Nicotinic Receptors

There are compounds that have other current clinical uses which have direct or indirect effects on alpha 7 nicotinic receptors. Galantamine, an acetylcholinesterase inhibitor, an allosteric modulator of several nicotinic receptors including the α7 nicotinic receptor, improved several aspects of cognition in schizophrenia and also improved the SANS Alogia score (Buchanan et al. 2008). In contrast, rivastigmine, which does not have these allosteric properties, had no effect in schizophrenia (Sharma et al. 2006). Varenicline, possessing partial agonism at the α4β2 nicotinic receptor, full agonism at the α7 nicotinic receptor, and also weak activity at α3β4 and α6 receptors, has been tested in 14 schizophrenic smokers in an open-label with a pre-post design. Measures of cognitive function (RBANS, Virtual Water-Maze Task), cigarette smoking (cotinine levels, CO levels, self-reported smoking, and smoking urges), and psychopathology (PANSS) were evaluated prior to and during treatment with varenicline. Data on psychopathology changes among schizophrenic smokers in another drug study, in which patients were not receiving varenicline, were used for comparison. Twelve patients completed the study, and two patients

terminated in the first 2 weeks of active varenicline because of complaints of nausea or shaking. Varenicline produced significant improvements in some cognitive test scores, primarily associated with verbal learning and memory, but not in scores on visual–spatial learning or memory, or attention (Smith et al. 2009). A second double-blind, parallel, randomized, placebo-controlled trial of 69 smoking and nonsmoking patients with schizophrenia or schizoaffective disorder examined the effects of varenicline on PPI, sensory gating, antisaccade, spatial working memory, eye tracking, processing speed, and sustained attention at 2 and 8 weeks (Hong et al. 2011). A moderate dose (1 mg) of varenicline significantly reduced the P50 sensory gating deficit in nonsmokers after 8 weeks of treatment, reduced startle reactivity regardless of baseline smoking status, and improved executive function by reducing the antisaccadic error rate regardless of smoking status. A moderate dose of varenicline had no significant effect on spatial working memory, predictive and maintenance pursuit measures, processing speed, or sustained attention by Conners' CPT. Clinically, there was no evidence of exacerbation of psychiatric symptoms, psychosis, depression, or suicidality using a gradual titration (1-mg daily dose). Moderate-dose treatment with varenicline has a unique treatment profile on core schizophrenia-related biomarkers. Further development is warranted for specific nAChR compounds and dosing and duration strategies to target subgroups of schizophrenic patients with specific biological deficits.

Tropisetron, also a 5-$HT_3$ antagonist marketed outside the United States as an antinausea drug, also has efficacy as an α7 nicotinic cholinoceptor agonist (Macor et al. 2001; Papke et al. 2005). Low-dose single administration of tropisetron increased the inhibition of the P50 auditory-evoked potential differentially in nonsmokers with schizophrenia (Koike et al. 2005) with no effect seen on smokers with schizophrenia. Consistent with a previous finding of the effect in smokers (Harris et al. 2004), the authors proposed that the nicotinic cholinoceptors were chronically densensitized and that additional nicotinic agonism was blocked in smokers. The finding was recently replicated by Kosten et al. (2011). Kosten also found that tropisetron administered to patients with schizophrenia normalized their P50 gating deficit. The effects were diminished in patients who smoked.

The most important drug with indirect effects on α7 nicotinic receptor is clozapine. People with schizophrenia treated with clozapine exhibit normalization of their P50 ratio coincident with improvement in their clinical symptoms (Nagamoto et al. 1999; Becker et al. 2004). Clozapine, which releases acetylcholine in the hippocampus (Shirazi-Southall et al. 2002), may indirectly act on the nicotinic cholinoceptors to normalize the P50 ratio, as people with schizophrenia also decrease the amount of cigarettes they smoke while taking this medication (McEvoy et al. 1999; Becker et al. 2004). Animal model experiments also show that the neurobiological effects of clozapine include activation of α7 nicotinic receptors, presumably through the increased release of acetylcholine in the hippocampus. The gating deficit in the DBA/2 mouse normalized with clozapine (Simosky et al. 2003). The response to clozapine was blocked by α-bungarotoxin, a selective antagonist at the α7 nicotinic receptor, but not by dihydro-beta-erythroidine (DHbetaE), an α4β2

antagonist, thus indicating the involvement of the low-affinity nicotinic receptors (Simosky et al. 2003).

## 7 Conclusion

Both basic and clinical evidence points to the possibility that nicotinic receptors, particularly the α7 nicotinic receptor, are viable targets for drug development in schizophrenia. Several partial agonists have shown positive effects, which surpass those of nicotine. Development of other therapeutic approaches, including positive allosteric modulators, is under way. To what extent nicotinic receptor activation accounts for the unique therapeutic effects of clozapine is unknown, but it is striking that many patients stop smoking when they are successfully treated with clozapine. Unanswered questions include long-term toxicity and tachyphylaxis, both of which have been observed with nicotinic agonists, and the ability of these agents to be effective in the presence of nicotine from the patients' own smoking.

## References

Adler LE, Hoffer LD, Wiser A, Freedman R (1993) Normalization of auditory physiology by cigarette smoking in schizophrenic patients. Am J Psychiatry 150:1856–1861

AhnAllen CG, Nestor PG, Shenton ME, McCarley RW, Niznikiewicz MA (2008) Early nicotine withdrawal and transdermal nicotine effects on neurocognitive performance in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 100(1–3):261–269

Albuquerque EX, Pereira EFR, Braga MFM, Alkondon M (1998) Contribution of nicotinic receptors to the function of synapses in the central nervous system: the action of choline as a selective agonist of alpha-7 receptors. J Physiol (Paris) 92:309–316

Alkondon M, Pereira EF, Almeida LE, Randall WR, Albuquerque EX (2000) Nicotine at concentrations found in cigarette smokers activates and desensitizes nicotinic acetylcholine receptors in CA1 interneurons of rat hippocampus. Neuropharmacology 39(13):2726–2739.

Barak S, Arad M, De Levie A, Black MD, Griebel G, Weiner I (2009) Pro-cognitive and antipsychotic efficacy of the alpha 7 nicotinic partial agonist SSR180711 in pharmacological and neurodevelopmental latent inhibition models of schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 34:1753–1763

Barr RS, Culhane MA, Jubelt LE, Mufti RS, Dyer MA, Weiss AP, Deckersbach T, Kelly JF, Freudenreich O, Goff DC, Evins AE (2008) The effects of transdermal nicotine on cognition in nonsmokers with schizophrenia and nonpsychiatric controls. Neuropsychopharmacology 33:480–490

Becker J, Gomes I, Ghisolfi ES, Schush A, Ramos FL, Ehlers JA, Nora DB, Lara DR, da Costa JC (2004) Clozapine, but not typical antipsychotics, correct P50 suppression deficit in patients with schizophrenia. Clin Neurophysiol 115:396–401

Benowitz NL (1998) Summary: risks and benefits of nicotine. In: Benowitz NL (ed) Nicotine safety and toxicity. Oxford University Press, New York, pp 185–188

Braff DL, Stone C, Callaway E, Geyer MA, Glick ID, Bali L (1978) Prestimulus effects on human startle reflex in normals and schizophrenics. Psychophysiology 15:339–343

Braff DL, Geyer MA, Swerdlow NR (2001) Human studies of prepulse inhibition of startle: normal subjects, patient groups, and pharmacological studies. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 156:234–258

Boutros NN, Zouridakis G, Overall J (1991) Replication and extension of P50 findings in schizophrenia. Clin Electroencephalogr 22:40–45

Briggs CA, McKenna DG, Piattoni-Kaplan M (1995) Human alpha-7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptor responses to novel ligands. Neuropharmacology 34:583–590

Briggs CA, Anderson DJ, Brioni JD, Buccafusco JJ, Buckley MJ, Campbell JE (1997) Functional characterization of the novel neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor ligand GTS-21 in vitro and in vivo. Pharmacol Biochem Behav 57:231–241

Buchanan RW, Conley RR, Dickenson D, Ball MP, Feldman S, Gold JM, McMahon RP (2008) Galantamine for the treatment of cognitive impairments in people with schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 165:82–89

Chen XS, Li CB, Smith RC, Xiao ZP, Wang JJ (2011) Differential sensory gating functions between smokers and non-smokers among drug-naive first episode schizophrenic patients. Psychiatry Res 188:327–333

Clementz BA, Geyer MA, Braff DL (1997) P50 suppression among schizophrenia and normal comparison subjects: a methodological analysis. Biol Psychiatry 41:1035–1044

Clementz BA, Geyer MA, Braff DL (1998) Poor P50 suppression among schizophrenia patients and their first-degree biological relatives. Am J Psychiatry 155:1691–1694

Court J, Spurden D, Lloyd S, McKeith I, Ballard C, Cairns N (1993) Neuronal nicotinic receptors in dementia with Lewy bodies and schizophrenia: alpha-bungarotoxin and nicotine binding in thalamus. J Neurochem 73:1590–1597

Cullum CM, Harris JG, Waldo MC, Smernoff E, Madison A, Nagamoto HT, Griffith J, Adler LE, Freedman R (1993) Neurophysiological and neuropsychological evidence for attentional dysfunction in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 10:131–144

Curtis L, Blouin J-L, Radhakrishna U, Gehrig C, Lasseter VK, Wolyniec P (1999) No evidence for linkage between schizophrenia and markers at chromosome 15q13-14. Am J Med Genet 88:109–112

Dalack GW, Meador-Woodruff JH (1996) Smoking, smoking withdrawal and schizophrenia: case reports and a review of the literature. Schizophr Res 22:133–141

Dalack GW, Becks L, Hill E, Pomerleau OF, Meador-Woodruff JH (1999) Nicotine withdrawal and psychiatric symptoms in cigarette smokers with schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 21:195–202

Decina P, Caracci G, Sandik R, Berman W, Mukherjee S, Scapicchio P (1990) Cigarette smoking and neuroleptic-induced Parkinsonism. Biol Psychiatry 28:502–508

De Fiebre CM, Meyer EM, Henry JC, Muraskin SI, Kem WR, Papke RL (1995) Characterization of a series of anabaseine-derived compounds reveals that the 3-(4)-dimethylaminocinnamylidine derivative is a selective agonist at neuronal nicotinic alpha-7/125 I-alpha-bungarotoxin receptor subtypes. Mol Pharmacol 47:164–171

De Leon J, Dadvand M, Canuso C, Odom WA, Stanilla JK, Simpson GM (1995) Schizophrenia and smoking: an epidemiological survey in a Satate hospital. Am J Psychiatry 152:453–455

Dépatie L, O'Driscoll GA, Holahan AL, Atkinson V, Thavundayil JX, Kin NNY, Lal S (2002) Nicotine and behavioral markers of risk for schizophrenia: a double-blind, placebo-controlled, cross-over study. Neuropsychopharmacology 27:1056–1070

Diwan A, Castine M, Pomerleau CS, Meador-Woodruff JH, Dalack GW (1998) Differential prevalence of cigarette smoking in patients with schizophrenia vs mood disorders. Schizophr Res 33:113–118

Donnelly-Roberts D, Malysz J, Faghih R, Gronlien H, Haakerud M, Thorin-Hagne K, Ween H, Gopalakrishnan SM, Hu M, Li J, Anderson DJ, Kohlhaas K, Namovic M, Radek R, Robb H, Briggs CA, Bitner RS, Bunnelle WH, Gopalakrishnan M (2009) Profile of A-716096, a novel thiazolylidine positive allosteric modulator of the α7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptor. Biochem Pharmacol 78(2.11):899–925

Dulude L, Labelle A, Knott VJ (2010) Acute nicotine alteration of sensory memory impairment in smokers with schizophrenia. J Clin Psychopharmacol 30(5):541–548

Feuerbach D, Lingenhoehl K, Olpe HR, Vassout A, Gentsch C, Chaperon F (2009) The selective nicotinic acetylcholine receptor alpha7 agonist JN403 is active in animal models of cognition, sensory gating, epilepsy and pain. Neuropharmacology 56(1):254–263

Frazier CJ, Rollins YD, Breese CR, Leonard S, Freedman R, Dunwiddie TV (1998) Acetylcholine activates an alpha-bungarotoxin-sensitive nicotinic current in rat hippocampal interneurons, but not pyramidal cells. J Neurosci 18:1187–1195

Freedman R, Wetmore C, Stromberg I, Leonard S, Olson L (1993) Alpha-bungarotoxin binding to hippocampal interneurons: immunocytochemical characterization and effects on growth factor expression. J Neurosci 13:1965–1975

Freedman R, Hall M, Adler LE, Leonard S (1995) Evidence in postmortem brain tissue for decreased numbers of hippocampal nicotinic receptors in schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 38:22–33

Freedman R, Coon H, Myles-Worsley M, Orr-Urtreger A, Olincy A, Davis A, Polymeropoulos M, Holik J, Hopkins J, Hoff M, Rosenthal J, Waldo MC, Reimherr F, Wender P, Yaw J, Young DA, Breese CR, Adams C, Patterson D, Adler LE, Kruglyak L, Leonard S, Byerley W (1997) Linkage of a neurophysiological deficit in schizophrenia to a chromosome 15 locus. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 94:587–592

Freedman R, Olincy A, Buchanan RW, Harris JG, Gold JM, Johnson L, Allensworth D, Guzman A, Clement B, Ball P, Kutnick J, Pender V, Martin L, Stevens KE, Wagner B, Zerbe G, Soti KWF (2008) Initial phase 2 trial of a nicotinic agonist in schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 165 (8):1040–1047

Georgette ZDM, Feingold A, Peppe WT, Satterburg CA, Winkel J, Rounsaville BJ, Kosten TR (2002) Nicotine transdermal patch and atypical antipsychotic medications for smoking cessation in schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 57:1835–1842

George TP, Termine A, Sacco KA, Allen TM, Reutenauer E, Vessiccho JC (2006) A preliminary study of the effects of cigarette smoking on prepulse inhibition in schizophrenia: involvement of nicotinic receptor mechanisms. Schizophr Res 87:307–315

Geyer MA, Krebs-Thomson K, Braff DL, Swerdlow NR (2001) Pharmacological studies of prepulse inhibition models of sensorimotor gating deficits in schizophrenia: a decade in review. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 156:117–154

Geyer MA, McIlwain KL, Paylor R (2002) Mouse genetic models for prepulse inhibition: an early review. Mol Psychiatry 7:1039–1053

Glassman AH (1993) Cigarette smoking: implications for psychiatric illness. Am J Psychiatry 150:546–553

Goff DC, Henderson DC, Amico E (1992) Cigarette smoking in schizophrenia: relationship to psychopathology and medication side effects. Am J Psychiatry 149:1189–1194

Gold JM, Queern C, Iannone VN, Buchanan RW (1999) Repeatable battery for the assessment of neuropsychological status as a screening test in schizophrenia I: sensitivity, reliability, and validity. Am J Psychiatry 156:1944–1950

Griffith JM, O'Neill J, Petty F, Garver D, Young D, Freedman R (1998) Nicotinic receptor desensitization and sensory gating deficits in schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 44:98–106

Guan Z-Z, Zhang X, Blennow K, Nordberg A (1999) Decreased protein level of nicotinic receptor alpha-7 subunit in the frontal cortex from schizophrenic brain. Neuroreport 10:1779–1782

Harris JG, Kongs S, Allensworth D, Martin L, Tregellas J, Sullivan B (2004) Effects of nicotine on cognitive deficits in schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 29:1378–1385

Hatsukami D, Fletcher L, Morgan S, Keenan R, Ambie P (1989) The effects of varying cigarette deprivation duration on cognitive and performance tasks. J Subst Abuse 1:407–416

Hauser TA, Kucinski A, Jordan KG, Gatto GJ, Wersinger SR, Hesse RA, Stachowiak EK, Stachowiak MK, Papke RL, Lippiello PM, Bencherif M (2009) TC-5619: an alpha7 neuronal nicotinic receptor-selective agonist that demonstrates efficacy in animal models of the positive

and negative symptoms and cognitive dysfunction of schizophrenia. Biochem Pharmacol 78:803–812

Hershman KM, Freedman R, Bickford PC (1995) GABA-B antagonists diminish the inhibitory gating of auditory response in the rat hippocampus. Neurosci Lett 190:133–136

Hong LE, Thaker GK, McMahon RP, Summerfelt A, Rachbeisel J, Fuller RL, Wonodi I, Buchanan RW, Myers C, Heishman SJ, Yang J, Nye A (2011) Effects of moderate-dose treatment with varenicline on neurobiological and cognitive biomarkers in smokers and nonsmokers with schizophrenia or schizoaffective disorder. Arch Gen Psychiatry 68:1195–1206

Hong LE, Wonodi I, Lewis J, Thaker GK (2008) Nicotine effect on prepulse facilitation in schizophrenia patients. Neuropsychopharmacology 33:2167–2174

Hosford D, Dunbar G, Lieberman JA, Segreti A (2011) The α7 neuronal nicotinic receptor (NNR) agonist TC-5619 had beneficial effects and was generally well tolerated in a phase 2 trial in cognitive dysfunction in schizophrenia (CDS). 13th International Congress on Schizophrenia Research

Houy E, Raux G, Thibaut F, Belmont A, Demily C, Allio G (2004) The promoter -194°C polymorphism of the nicotinic alpha 7 receptor gene has a protective effect against the P50 sensory gating deficit. Mol Psychiatry 9:320–322

Hughes JR, Hatsukami DK, Mitchell JE, Dahlgren LA (1986) Prevalence of smoking among psychiatric outpatients. Am J Psychiatry 143:993–997

Hurst RS, Hajos M, Raggenbass M, Wall TM, Higdon NR, Lawson JA (2005) A novel positive allosteric modulator of the alpha7 neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor: in vitro and in vivo characterization. J Neurosci 25(17):4396–4405

Jubelt LE, Barr RS, Goff DC, Logvinenko T, Weiss AP, Evins AE (2008) Effects of transdermal nicotine on episodic memory in non-smokers with and without schizophrenia. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 199(1):89–98

Judd L, McAdams L, Budnick B, Braff DL (1992) Sensory gating deficits in schizophrenia: new results. Am J Psychiatry 149:488–493

Kem WR, Abbott BC, Coates RM (1971) Isolation and structure of a hoplonemertine toxin. Toxicon 9:15–22

Kem WR, Mahnir VM, Papke RL, Lingle CJ (1997) Anabaseine is a potent agonist on muscle and neuronal alpha-bungarotoxin-sensitive nicotinic receptors. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 283:979–992

Kem WR, Mahnir VM, Prokai L, Papke RL, Cao X, LeFrancois S, Wildeboer K, Prokai-Tatrai K, Porter-Papke J, Soti F (2004) Hydroxy metabolites of the Alzheimer's drug candidate 3-[(2,4-dimethoxy)benzylidene]-anabaseine dihydrochloride (GTS-21): their molecular properties, interactions with brain nicotinic receptors, and brain penetration. Mol Pharmacol 65:56–67

Kern RS, Nuechterlein KH, Green MF, Baade LE, Fenton WS, Gold JM, Keefe RSE, Mesholam-Gately R, Mintz J, Seidman LJ, Stover E, Marder SR (2008) The MATRICS consensus cognitive battery: part 2. Co-norming and standardization. Am J 165:214–220

Kitagawa H, Takenouchi T, Azuma R, Wesnes KA, Kramer WG, Clody DE (2003) Safety, pharmacokinetics, and effects on cognitive function of multiple doses of GTS-21 in healthy, male volunteers. Neuropsychopharmacology 28:542–551

Koike K, Hashimoto K, Takai N, Shimizu E, Komatsu N, Watanabe H (2005) Tropisetron improves deficits in auditory P50 suppression in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 76:67–72

Kosten TP, Zhang XY, Liu SW, Liu L, Hong H (2011) Short-term tropisetron treatments improve deficits in auditory P50 suppression in schizophrenia: dose-response relationship. 13th International Congress on Schizophrenia Research Abstracts

Kumari V, Cotter PA, Checkley SA, Gray JA (1997) Effect of acute subcutaneous nicotine on prepulse inhibition of the acoustic startle reflex in healthy male non-smokers. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 132(4):389–395

Lasser K, Boyd JW, Woolhandler S, Himmelstein DU, McCormick D, Bor DH (2000) Smoking and mental Illness: a population-based prevalence study. J Am Med Assoc 284:2606–2610

Leonard S, Gault J, Moore T, Hopkins J, Robinson M, Olincy A (1998) Further investigation of a chromosome 15 locus in schizophrenia: analysis of affected subpairs from the NIMH genetics initiative. Am J Med Genet 81:308–312

Leonard S, Gault J, Hopkins J, Logel J, Vianzon R, Short M (2002) Association of promoter variants in the alpha-7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptor subunit gene with an inhibitory deficit found in schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 59:1085–1096

Lesage A, Kinklo T, Thuring J-W, Grantham C, Peters L, Lavreysen H, Shaban H, Stevens KE, Zheng L (2009) Characterization of JNJ-1930942, a novel positive allosteric modulator of the α7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptor. Biochem Pharmacol 78(2.10):899–925

Levin E, Wilson WH, Rose JE, McEvoy JP (1996) Nicotine-haloperidol interaction and cognitive performance in schizophrenics. Neuropsychopharmacology 15:429–436

Levin ED, Conners CK, Silva D, Hinton SC, Meck WH, March J, Rose JE (1998) Transdermal nicotine effects on attention. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 140:135–141

Liu C-M, Hwu H-G, Lin M-W, Ou-Yang W-C, Lee SF-C, Fann CSJ (2001) Suggestive evidence for linkage of schizophrenia to markers at chromosome 15q13-14 in Taiwanese families. Am J Med Genet 105:658–661

Liu J, Pearlson G, Windemuth A, Ruano G, Perrone-Bizzozero N, Calhoun V (2009) Combining fMRI and SNP data to investigate connections between brain function and genetics using parallel CA. Hum Brain Mapp 30:241

Luntz-Leybman V, Bickford PC, Freedman R (1992) Cholinergic gating of response to auditory stimuli in rat hippocampus. Brain Res 587:130–136

Macor J, Gurley D, Lanthorn T, Loch J III, Mack RA, Mullen G (2001) The 5-HT3 antagonist tropisetron (ICS 205-930) is a potent selective alpha-7 nicotinic receptor partial agonist. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 11:319–321

Mahnir VM, Lin B, Prokai-Tatrai K, Kem WR (1998) Pharmacokinetics and urinary excretion of DMXBA (GTS-21), a compound enhancing cognition. Biopharm Drug Dispos 19:147–151

Marutle A, Zhang X, Court J, Piggot M, Johnson M, Perry R (2001) Laminar distribution of nicotinic receptor subtypes in cortical regions in schizophrenia. J Chem Neuroanat 22:115–126

McEvoy JP, Freudenreich O, Wilson W (1999) Smoking and therapeutic response to clozapine in patients with schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 46:125–129

McGaughy J, Decker MW, Sarter M (1999) Enhancement of sustained attention performance by the nicotinic acetylcholine receptor agonist ABT-418 in intact but not basal forebrain-lesioned rats. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 144:175–182

Meltzer HY, Gawryl M, Ward S, Dgetluck N, Bhuvaneswaran C, Koenig G, Palfreyman MG, Hilt DC (2011) EVP-6124, An alpha-7 nicotinic partial agonist, produces positive effects on cognition, clinical function, and negative symptoms in patients with chronic schizophrenia on stable antipsychotic therapy. 50th Annual Meeting American College of Neuropsychopharmacology

Meyer EM, De Fiebre CM, Hunter BE, Simpkins CE, Frauworth N, De Fiebre NEC (1994) Effects of anabaseine-related analogs on rat brain nicotinic receptor binding and on avoidance behaviors. Drug Dev Res 31:127–134

Meyer EM, Tay EE, Papke RL, Meyers C, Huang G, deFiebre CM (1997) 3-[2,4-Dimethoxybenzylidene]anabaseine (DMXB) selectively activates rats α7 receptors and improves memory-related behaviors in a mecamylamine-sensitive manner. Brain Res 768:49–56

Myers CS, Robles O, Kakoyannis AN, Sherr JD, Avila MT, Blaxton TA (2004) Nicotine improves delayed recognition in schizophrenic patients. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 174:334–340

Nagamoto HT, Adler LE, McRae KA, Huettl P, Cawthra E, Gerhardt G (1999) Auditory P50 in schizophrenics on clozapine: improved gating parallels clinical improvement and changes in plasma 3-methoxy-4-hydroxyphenylglycol. Neuropsychobiology 39:10–17

Nanri M, Yamamoto J, Miyake H, Watanabe H (1998) Protective effect of GTS-21, a novel nicotinic receptor agonist, on delayed neuronal death induced by ischemia in gerbils. Jpn J Pharmacol 76:23–29

Nuechterlein KH, Green MF, Kern RS, Baade LE, Barch DM, Cohen JD, Essock S, Fenton WS, Frese FJ, Gold JM, Goldberg T, Heaton RK, Keefe RSE, Kraemer H, Mesholam-Gately R,

Seidman LJ, Stover S, Weinberger D, Young AS, Zalcman S, Marder SR (2008) The MATRICS consensus cognitive battery: part 1. Test selection, reliability, and validity. Am J Psychiatry 165:208–213

Neves-Pereira M, Bassett AS, Honer WG, Lang D, King NA, Kennedy JL (1998) No evidence for linkage of the CHRNA7 gene region in Canadian schizophrenia families. Am J Med Genet 81:361–363

Nisell M, Nomikos GG, Svensson TH (1995) Nicotine dependence, midbrain dopamine systems and psychiatric disorders. Pharmacol Toxicol 76:157–162

Nomikos GG, Schilström B, Hildebrand BE, Panagis G, Grenhoff J, Svensson TH (2000) Role of alpha-7 nicotinic receptors in nicotine dependence and implications for psychiatric illness. Behav Brain Res 113:97–103

O'Donnell CJ, Rogers BN, Bronk BS, Bryce DK, Coe JW, Cook KK, Duplantier AJ, Evard E, Hoffman WE, Hurst RS, Makland N, Mather RJ, McLean S, Nedza FM, O'Neill BT, Peng L, Qian W, Rottas MM, Sands SB, Schmidt AW, Shrikhande AV, Spracklin DK, Wong DF, Zhang AL (2010) Discovery of 4-(5-methyloxazolo[4,5-b]pyridine-2-yl)1,4-diazabicyclo [3.2.2]nonane (CP-810,123), a novel alpha 7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptor agonist for the treatment of cognitive disorders in schizophrenia: synthesis, SAR development, and in vivo efficacy in cognition model. J Med Chem 53:1222–1237

Olincy A, Young DA, Freedman R (1997) Increased levels of the nicotine metabolite cotinine in schizophrenic smokers compared to other smokers. Biol Psychiatry 42:1–5

Olincy A, Harris JG, Johnson LL, Pender V, Kongs S, Allensworth D (2006) An α7-Nicotinic cholinergic agonist enhances cognitive function in schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 63:630–638

O'Neill HC, Reiger K, Kem WR, Stevens KE (2003) DMXB, an alpha7 nicotinic agonist, normalizes auditory gating in isolation-reared rats. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 163:332–339

Papke RL, Schiff HC, Jack BA, Horenstein NA (2005) Molecular dissection of tropisetron, an alpha-7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptor-selective partial agonist. Neurosci Lett 378:140–144

Petrovsky N, Quednow BB, Ettinger U, Schmechtig A, Collier DA, Maier W, Wagner M, Kumari V (2010) Sensimotor gating is associated with CHRNA3 polymorphisms in schizophrenia and healthy volunteers. Neurophsychopharmacology 35:1429–1439

Pichat P, Bergis OE, Terranova JP, Urani A, Duarte C, Santucci V (2007) SSR180711, a novel selective alpha7 nicotinic receptor partial agonist: (II) efficacy in experimental models predictive of activity against cognitive symptoms of schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 32:17–34

Postma P, Gray JA, Sharma T, Geyer M, Mehrotra R, Das M, Zachariah E, Hines M, Williams SC, Kumari V (2006) A behavioral and functional investigation into the effects of nicotine on sensoimotor gating in healthy subjects and persons with schizophrenia. Psychopharmacology 184:589–599

Prickaerts J, van Goethem NP, Chesworth R, Shapiro G, Boess FG, Methfessel C, Reneerkens OAH, Flood DG, Hilt D, Gawyl M, Bertrand D, Kònig G (2012) EVP-6124, a novel and selective α7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptor partial agonist, improves memory performance by potentiating the acetylcholine response of α7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptors. Neuropharmacology 62:1099–1110

Riley BP, Makoff A, Mogudi-Carter M, Jenkins T, Williamson R, Collier D (2000) Haplotype transmission disequilibrium and evidence for linkage of the CHRNA7 gene region to schizophrenia in southern African Bantu families. Am J Med Genet 96:196–201

Ross RG, Olincy A, Harris JG, Radant A, Hawkins M, Adler LE (1999) Evidence for bilineal inheritance of physiological indicators of risk in childhood-onset schizophrenia. Am J Med Genet 88:188–199

Sacco KA, Termine A, Seyal A, Dudas MM, Vessicchio JC, Krishnan-Sarin S (2005) Effects of cigarette smoking on spatial working memory and attentional deficits in schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 62:649–659

Schreiber R, Dalmus M, De Vry J (2002) Effects of alpha 4/beta 2- and alpha 7-nicotine acetylcholine receptor agonists on prepulse inhibition of the acoustic startle response in rats and mice. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 159:248–257

Sharma T, Reed C, Aasen I, Kumari V (2006) Cognitive effects of adjunctive 24-weeks Rivastigmine treatment to antipsychotics in schizophrenia: a randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind investigation. Schizophr Res 85:73–83

Sherr JD, Myers C, Avila MT, Elliot A, Blaxton TA, Thaker GK (2002) The effects of nicotine on specific eye tracking measures in schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 52:721–728

Shirazi-Southall S, Rodriguez DE, Nomikos GG (2002) Effects of typical and atypical antipsychotics and receptor selective compounds on acetylcholine efflux in the hippocampus of the rat. Neuropsychopharmacology 26:583–594

Siegal C, Waldo MC, Mizner G, Adler LE, Freedman R (1984) Deficits in sensory gating in schizophrenic patients and their relatives. Arch Gen Psychiatry 41:607–612

Simosky JK, Stevens KE, Kem WR, Freedman R. (2001) Intragastric DMXB-A, an alpha7 nicotinic agonist, improves deficient sensory inhibition in DBA/2 mice. Biological Psychiatry. 50(7):493–500

Simosky JK, Stevens KE, Adler LE, Freedman R (2003) Clozapine improves deficient inhibitory auditory processing in DBA/2 mice, via a nicotinic cholinergic mechanism. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 165:386–396

Smith RC, Singh A, Infante M, Khandat A, Kloos A (2002) Effects of cigarette smoking and nicotine nasal spray on psychiatric symptoms and cognition in schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 27:479–497

Smith RC, Warner-Cohen J, Matute M, Butler E, Kelly E, Vaidhyanathaswamy S (2006) Effects of nicotine nasal spray on cognitive function in schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 31(3):637–643

Smith RC, Lindenmayer JP, Davis JM, Cornwell J, Noth K, Gupta S, Sershen H, Lajtha A (2009) Cognitive and antismoking effects of vanenicline in patients with schizophrenia or schizoaffective disorder. Schizophr Res 110:145–155

Stephens SH, Logel J, Barton A, Franks A, Schultz J, Short M, Dickenson J, James B, Fingerlin TE, Wagner B, Hodgkinson C, Graw S, Ross RG, Freedman R, Leonard S. (2009) Association of the 5'-upstream regulatory region of the alpha7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptor subunit gene (CHRNA7) with schizophrenia. Schizophrenia Research. 109(1–3):102–12

Stevens KE, Freedman R, Collins AC, Hall M, Leonard S, Marks MJ (1996) Genetic correlation of inhibitory gating of hippocampal auditory evoked response and alpha-bungarotoxin-binding nicotinic cholinergic receptors in inbred mouse strains. Neuropsychopharmacology 15:152–162

Stevens KE, Wear KD (1997) Normalizing effects of nicotine and a novel nicotinic agonist on hippocampal auditory gating in two animal models. Pharmacol Biochem Behav 57:869–874

Stevens KE, Kem WR, Mahnir VM, Freedman R (1998) Selective alpha-7 nicotinic agonists normalize inhibition of auditory response in DBA mice. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 136:320–327

Stevens KE, Kem WR, Freedman R (1999) Selective alpha 7 nicotinic receptor stimulation normalizes chronic cocaine-induced loss of hippocampal sensory inhibition in C3H mice. Biol Psychiatry 46:1443–1450

Stokes C, Papke JK, Horenstein NA, Kem WR, McCormack TJ, Papke RL (2004) The structural basis for GTS-21 selectivity between human and rat nicotinic alpha7 receptors. Mol Pharmacol 66:14–24

Stone J, OíDonovan M, Gurling H, Kirov G, Blackwood D, Corvin A, Craddock N, Gill M, Hultman C, Lichtenstein P (2008) Rare chromosomal deletions and duplications increase risk of schizophrenia. Nature 455:237–241

Svensson TH, Grenhoff J, Engberg G (1990) Effect of nicotine on dynamic function of brain catecholamine neurons. Ciba Found Symp 152:169–180

Sydserff S, Sutton EJ, Song D, Quirk MC, Maciag C, Li C, Jonak G, Gurley D, Gordon JC, Christian EP, Doherty JJ, Hudzik T, Johnson E, Mrzljak L, Piser T, Smagin GN, Wang Y, Widzowski D, Smith JS (2009) Selective α7 nicotinic receptor activation by AZD0328

enhances cortical dopamine release and improves learning and attentional processes. Biochem Pharmacol 78:880–888

Taiminen TJ, Salokangas RKR, Saarijärvi S, Niemi H, Lehto H, Ahola V (1998) Smoking and cognitive deficits in schizophrenia: a pilot study. Addict Behav 23:263–266

Tregellas JR, Olincy A, Johnson L, Tanabe J, Shatti S, Martin LF, Singel D, Du YP, Soti F, Kem WR (2010) Functional magnetic resonance imaging of effects of a nicotinic agonist in schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 35:938–942

Tregellas JR, Tanabe J, Rojas DC, Shatti S, Olincy A, Johnson L, Martin LF, Soti F, Kem WR, Leonard S, Freedman R (2011) Effects of an alpha 7-nicotinic agonist on default network activity in schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 69(1):7–11

Tsuang DW, Skol AD, Faraone SV, Bingham S, Young KA, Prabhudesai S (2001) Examination of genetic linkage of chromosome 15 to schizophrenia in a large veterans affairs cooperative study sample. Am J Med Genet 105:662–668

Tung CS, Grenhoff J, Svensson TH (1990) Nicotine counteracts midbrain dopamine cell dysfunction induced by prefrontal cortex inactivation. Acta Physiol Scand 138:427–428

Turchi J, Holley LA, Sarter M (1995) Effects of nicotinic acetylcholine receptor ligands on behavioral vigilance in rats. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 118:195–205

Venables PH (1967) Input dysfunction in schizophrenia. In: Maher BA (ed) Progress in experimental personality research. Academic, Orlando, FL, pp 1–64

Waldo MC, Carey G, Myles-Worsley M, Cawthra E, Adler LE, Nagamoto HT (1991) Codistribution of a sensory gating deficit and schizophrenia in multi-affected families. Psychiatry Res 39:257–268

Wallace TL, Chiu H, Dao DA, Lowe DA, Porter R, Santarelli L (2009) R3487/MEM 3454, a novel nicotinic alpha 7 receptor partial agonist, improves attention and working memory performance in cynomolgus macaques. Biochem Pharmacol 78(2):899–925

Ward PB, Hoffer LD, Liebert B, Catts SV, O'Donnell M, Adler LE (1996) Replication of a P50 auditory sensory gating deficit in Australian patients with schizophrenia. Psychiatry Res 64:121–135

Williams JM, Ziedonis DM, Abanyie F, Steinberg ML, Foulds J, Benowitz NL (2005) Increased nicotine and cotinine levels in smokers with schizophrenia and schizoaffective disorder is not a metabolic effect. Schizophr Res 79(2–3):323–335

Williams JM, Gandhi KK, Lu SE, Kumar S, Shen J, Foulds J (2010) Higher nicotine levels in schizophrenia compared with controls after smoking a single cigarette. Nicotine Tob Res 12(8):855–859

Wishka DG, Walker DP, Yates KM, Reitz SC, Shaojuan J, Meyers JK (2006) Discovery of N-[(3R)-1-Azabicyclo[2.2.2]oct-3-yl]furo[2,3-c]pyridine-5-carboxamide, an agonist of the $\alpha$7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptor, for the potential treatment of cognitive deficits in schizophrenia: synthesis and structure-activity relationship. J Med Chem 49:4425–4436

Woodruff-Pak DS, Li YT, Kem WR (1994) A nicotinic agonist (GTS-21), eyeblink classical conditioning, and nicotinic receptor binding in rabbit brain. Brain Res 645:309–317

Woodruff-Pak DS (2003) Mecamylamine reversal by nicotine and by a partial alpha-7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptor agonist (GTS-21) in rabbits tested with delay eye blink classical conditioning. Behav Brain Res 143:159–167

Xu J, Pato MT, Dalla Torre C, Medeiros H, Carvalho C, Basile VS (2001) Evidence of linkage disequilibrium between the alpha 7-nicotinic receptor gene (CHRNA7) locus and schizophrenia in Azorean families. Am J Med Genet 105:669–674

# Muscarinic Mechanisms in Psychotic Disorders

**David L. McKinzie and Frank P. Bymaster**

## Contents



**Abstract** Schizophrenia is a devastating disease with several broad symptom clusters and the current monoamine-based treatments do not adequately treat the disease, especially negative and cognitive symptoms. A proposed alternative approach for treating schizophrenia is through the use of compounds that activate certain muscarinic receptor subtypes, the so-called muscarinic cholinergic hypothesis theory.

D.L. McKinzie (✉)
Lilly Research Laboratories, Eli Lilly and Co., Indianapolis, IN 46285, USA
e-mail: dmckinzie@lilly.com

F.P. Bymaster
Euthymics Bioscience Inc., 43 Thorndike Street Suite S1-3, Cambridge, MA 02141, USA
e-mail: fbymaster@euthymics.com

M.A. Geyer and G. Gross (eds.), *Novel Antischizophrenia Treatments*,
Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 213,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-25758-2_9, 

This theory has been revitalized with a number of recent and provocative findings including postmortem reports in schizophrenia patients showing decreased numbers of muscarinic $M_1$ and $M_4$ receptors in brain regions associated with schizophrenia as well as decreased muscarinic receptors in an in vivo imaging study. Studies with $M_4$ knockout mice have shown that there is a reciprocal relationship between $M_4$ and dopamine receptor function, and a number of muscarinic agonists have shown antidopaminergic activity in a variety of preclinical assays predictive of antipsychotic efficacy in the clinic. Furthermore, the $M_1/M_4$ preferring partial agonist xanomeline has been shown to have antipsychotic-like and pro-cognitive activity in preclinical models and in clinical trials to decrease psychotic-like behaviors in Alzheimer's patients and positive, negative, and cognitive symptoms in patients with schizophrenia. Therefore, we propose that an agonist with $M_1$ and $M_4$ interactions would effectively treat core symptom clusters associated with schizophrenia. Currently, research is focused on developing subtype-selective muscarinic agonists and positive allosteric modulators that have reduced propensity for parasympathetic side-effects, but retain the therapeutic benefit observed with their less selective predecessors.

**Keywords** Muscarinic receptor agonists • Schizophrenia • Knockout mice • Acetylcholine • Xanomeline • Allosteric modulators • CHRM1-5 • Antimuscarinic • M1–M5 • Cholinergic

## 1 Introduction

Schizophrenia is a severe, chronic, episodic, and highly debilitating disease that affects about 1 % of the population regardless of race, gender, or socioeconomic status. It has been ranked globally as the fifth and sixth leading cause of years lost to disability among men and women, respectively, by the World Health Organization (World Health Organization 2004). The onset of the first psychotic break generally occurs in late adolescence or early adulthood and impairs the patient's ability to recognize what is real, think clearly, make decisions, and interact socially. The symptoms have been subdivided into three distinct, but overlapping clusters which can manifest in patients with marked variability (Andreasen and Carpenter 1993; Conn et al. 2008). Positive symptoms include hallucinations, delusions, and thought disorder and this symptom set has been used to define the disorder. Negative symptoms are characterized by poor social interactions, anhedonia, poverty of thought, and blunted responses. Cognitive impairment is pronounced in schizophrenia with broadly generalized deficits in a number of domains including working memory, attention, and executive function. Cognitive impairment is estimated to occur in 55–84 % of patients with schizophrenia (Reichenberg et al. 2006, 2009), and often precedes the onset of other symptoms (Heinrichs 2005; Bowie and Harvey 2006). Improvement of cognitive function is now considered a critical component of reintegration of the patient back into society (Green 1996) and an

emphasis has been placed on drugs with pro-cognitive effects in schizophrenia patients (Gray and Roth 2007). There is also substantial comorbidity of mood and affect symptoms including some level of anxiety and depression in about 40–50 % of the schizophrenia patients (Achim et al. 2011; Dernovsek and Sprah 2009; Tollefson et al. 1998). Moreover, reports of up to 70–80 % of schizophrenia patients have a lifetime risk of substance use disorders (Westermeyer 2006).

The pathophysiology and etiology of schizophrenia are not well understood, but the prevailing hypothesis is that it involves hyperactivity of dopamine circuitry in mesolimbic pathways and hypoactivity in mesocortical pathways (Davis et al. 1991). In this regard, imaging studies have shown that schizophrenia patients have increased occupancy of striatal dopamine $D_2$ receptors by dopamine as well as greater release of dopamine in response to indirect dopamine agonists, indicating striatal hyperdopaminergia (Breier et al. 1997; Abi-Dargham et al. 1998). Consistent with these findings, dopamine $D_2$ antagonists have been used to treat schizophrenia for over 50 years, and they have good resolution of positive symptoms, but poor treatment response on negative symptoms and cognitive deficits associated with the disorder (Murphy et al. 2006; Kapur and Mamo 2003; Hill et al. 2010).

Several other neuronal systems have been hypothesized to be involved in schizophrenia including the cholinergic muscarinic system. The cholinergic hypothesis of schizophrenia was postulated a number of years ago (i.e., Neubauer et al. 1975) and was originally based on the observation of the behavioral effects of muscarinic antagonists which at high doses caused psychotic-like symptoms including delusions, hallucinations, and memory loss (Perry and Perry 1995). Conversely, cholinergic agonists were used to treat psychotic symptoms (Cohen et al. 1944; Pfeifer and Jenny 1957; Janowsky et al. 1973; Edelstein et al. 1981; Neubauer et al. 1975). During this period, however, the efficacy of dopamine antagonists in the pharmacotherapy of schizophrenia garnered attention and overshadowed research on other neuronal systems involved with this disease. For example, from 1960 to 1990 there were 1,299 papers cited on dopamine/schizophrenia in Entrez PubMed, whereas there were 81 papers cited on acetylcholine (ACh)/schizophrenia and 22 papers on muscarinic/schizophrenia. Between 2000 and 2010, there were 3,085 papers cited on dopamine/schizophrenia, and 430 and 243 on ACh/schizophrenia and muscarinic/schizophrenia, respectively, indicating a growing interest in the role of ACh and muscarinic receptors in schizophrenia. In part, this increasing focus on muscarinic receptors in schizophrenia was heightened by the results of preclinical research in the 1990s on muscarinic agonists by scientists at Lilly Research Laboratories in collaboration with researchers at Novo Nordisk. They were seeking to develop muscarinic agonists for the treatment of Alzheimer's disease and in the course of this research, to their surprise, they discovered a series of muscarinic partial agonists with antipsychotic-like properties leading them to propose a role for muscarinic agonists in schizophrenia (Sauerberg et al. 1998; Bymaster et al. 1998). These studies were given further impetus by their subsequent finding that the muscarinic agonist xanomeline was shown to ameliorate psychotic-like symptoms in patients with Alzheimer's disease and have antipsychotic activity and pro-cognitive effects in patients with schizophrenia (Bodick

et al. 1997; Shekhar et al. 2008). Recently, data from a number of sources such as knockout mice, genetics, in vivo imaging, postmortem analysis of tissue from brain of patients with schizophrenia, and clinical studies with muscarinic agonists have led to a revival of schizophrenia research on muscarinic receptors and the restatement of the cholinergic hypothesis of schizophrenia (Bymaster et al. 1999b; Dean et al. 2003; Raedler et al. 2007). Here we review these data supporting an important role of cholinergic muscarinic neurons in schizophrenia.

## 2 Acetylcholine and Cholinergic Receptors

ACh is present in organisms from single cell bacteria, fungi, plants, to higher species including mammals and primates. ACh was among the first neurotransmitters identified and was noted to be a mediator of cellular function by Hunt in 1907 and to mimic nerve stimulation by Dale in 1914 (from Taylor and Brown 1989). Subsequent research found that ACh interacted with two major subtypes of cholinergic receptors referred to as nicotinic receptors and muscarinic receptors based on their affinity for these naturally occurring alkaloids. In addition, there was a striking difference in affinity for these receptor subtypes by the natural-occurring antagonists of muscarinic and nicotinic receptors, atropine and D-turbocurarine, respectively. Cholinergic receptors are widely distributed throughout the body with nicotinic receptors subtypes in the neuromuscular junction, ganglia, and central nervous system. The nicotinic receptors are ligand-gated ion channel receptors that modify membrane potential and allow ion flux. This review will focus upon muscarinic receptors.

### *2.1 Muscarinic Receptors*

Muscarinic receptors are structurally distinctly different from nicotinic receptors and belong to the large family of G protein-coupled receptors. Muscarinic receptors are single subunit transmembrane proteins with a topology that weaves through the plasma membrane seven times resulting in an extracellular N-terminus, three extracellular and intracellular loops, seven hydrophobic transmembrane spanning domains, and an intracellular C-terminus. The physiological response to activation of muscarinic receptors is mediated through a relatively slow responding cascade of molecular interactions including GTP-binding proteins (G-proteins) which subsequently activate or inhibit enzymes or ion channels.

There are five muscarinic receptor subtypes and the $M_1$, $M_3$ and $M_5$ receptors are positively coupled to the G protein $G_{q/11}$ and subsequent activation of phospholipase $C_\beta$ and calcium mobilization (Felder 1995). The muscarinic $M_2$ and $M_4$ receptors inhibit adenylate cyclase and cAMP formation as well as interact with ion channels. However, both groupings of receptors can activate other effector

systems beyond their predominant transduction systems. The homology of the orthosteric binding site of these five receptor subtypes is quite high making discovery of receptor-selective ligands challenging (Felder et al. 2000). Generally, $M_1$, $M_3$, and $M_5$ receptors are located postsynaptically and are stimulatory, whereas $M_2$ and $M_4$ receptors are located presynaptically where they perform an inhibitory autoreceptor or heteroreceptor function, but they are also located postsynaptically.

## *2.2 Muscarinic Receptors in the Periphery*

In the periphery, muscarinic receptors comprise the receptor arm of the parasympathetic nervous system where their role is the so-called "rest and digest" function versus the opposing "fight or flight" role of the sympathetic nervous system. Muscarinic receptors are widely distributed peripherally in the autonomic nervous system including the eye, salivary and sweat glands, gastrointestinal tract, genitourinary tract, lungs, reproductive tract, and cardiovascular system (Table 1, Bymaster et al. 2003a; Wess et al. 2007; Wess 2012). The major receptors in the gastrointestinal tract are the $M_3$ receptors and to a lesser extent $M_2$ where they play a major role in promoting contractility (Eglen 1996; Stengel et al. 2000, 2002; Tanahashi et al. 2009). In isolated atria from $M_2$ knockout mice, the bradycardiac response to muscarinic agonists was completely attenuated indicating a dominant role for the $M_2$ receptor in the heart and cardiac function (Stengel et al. 2000; Fisher et al. 2004). Stimulation of the muscarinic receptors in the salivary gland produces a silagogic response and the major receptors involved are $M_3$ and to a lesser degree $M_1$ receptors (Bymaster et al. 2003a; Gautam et al. 2004). Administration of nonselective muscarinic agonists to rodents cause a tremor which is modulated exclusively by $M_2$ receptors and a pronounced hypothermia which is mediated by $M_2$ and to a lesser extent by $M_3$ receptors (Bymaster et al. 2003a). Muscarinic receptors of the $M_3$ subtype modulate pupil size in the eye of the mouse. The constriction of mouse airways by muscarinic agonists is mediated by $M_2$ and $M_3$ receptors, whereas $M_1$ receptors may mediate bronchorelaxation (Struckmann et al. 2003). Thus, the location and pronounced action of these muscarinic receptors are important to pharmacotherapy with muscarinic agents, particularly those of the $M_2$ and $M_3$ subtype, due to their troublesome parasympathomimetic or parasympatholytic side effects such as altered heart rate, gastrointestinal contractility, visual changes, and secretion by exocrine glands (for example, see Bodick et al. 1997).

Natural products that interact with muscarinic receptors have been known for centuries. Alkaloids with muscarinic antagonist properties are present in plants such *Atropa belladonna* and have been used for medicinal and ritualistic purposes for thousands of years. They have been used for purported anesthetic, analgesic, mydriatic, and hallucinogenic properties. High doses of atropine and other muscarinic antagonistic alkaloids produce classic parasympatholytic side effects of warm and dry skin, blurred vision, dry mouth, flushing, and confusion which has been described in the early literature as "hot as a hare, blind as a bat, dry as a bone, red as

**Table 1** Muscarinic receptor signal transduction, peripheral and central nervous receptor distribution, and functions

| | $M_1$ | $M_2$ | $M_3$ | $M_4$ | $M_5$ |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Signal transduction | $G_{q/11}$-PLC ↑ | $G_{i/o}$-inh. AC | $G_{q/11}$-PLC ↑ | $G_{i/o}$-inh. AC | $G_{q/11}$-PLC ↑ |
| Peripheral distribution | Sympathetic ganglia, salivary glands, lung | Heart, lung, smooth muscle | Smooth muscle, eye, pancreas, exocrine glands, lungs | Urinary bladder, vas deferens | – |
| Brain distribution | Cortex, hippocampus, striatum, thalamus | Brain stem, thalamus, cortex | Low levels throughout | Striatum, cortex, hippocampus | Substantia Nigra (A9), ventral tegmentum (A10) |
| CNS functions | Agonist-induced convulsions, learning and memory, NMDA activity, cleavage of APP | Analgesia. autoreceptor, hypothermia, tremor, corticosterone release | Food intake, vasodilation, cognition(?) | Autoreceptor, modulate DA function, locomotion, analgesia, prepulse inhibition | Central vasodilation, DA release |

*Abbreviations*: *PLC* phospholipase C, *inh* inhibition, *APP* amyloid precursor protein, *NMDA* N-methy-D-aspartic acid, *AC* adenylate cyclase, *DA* dopamine, *G* G protein, *CNS* central nervous system. References imbedded in text

? means unresolved situation

a beet, and mad as a hatter" (Holtzman 1998). In this regard, legend has it that Cleopatra used atropine-type alkaloids with muscarinic antagonistic properties to dilate her pupils for cosmetic reasons. In contrast, nonselective muscarinic agonists including natural agonists like muscarine and arecoline have been described as producing parasympathomimetic side effects abbreviated in the acronym SLUDGE (Salivation, Lacrimation, Urination, Diaphoresis, Gastrointestinal motility, Emesis).

## *2.3 Central Muscarinic Receptors*

There are two basic types of cholinergic neurons in the mammalian brain, projection neurons that connect to another structure(s) and interneurons that are contained within a single brain structure. The two major groupings of projection neurons are the basal forebrain cholinergic complex and the pontomesencephalotegmental cholinergic complex. The basal forebrain cholinergic complexes have several projection neuron groupings which innervate cortical and hippocampal regions, and are thought to be highly involved in learning and memory. The two nuclei in the pontomesencephalotegmental cholinergic complex are the pendunculopontine and laterodorsal tegmental nuclei that send projections to the thalamus, midbrain, and brainstem where they modulate vegetative functions. In the dopamine-rich caudate-putamen, nucleus accumbens, and olfactory tubercle there are numerous cholinergic interneurons. The relative distribution of muscarinic receptors is quite high in cortical regions, the hippocampus, and striatum and much lower in midbrain, cerebellum, and brain stem. Muscarinic $M_1$ and $M_4$ receptors have the highest expression in the rostral brain and much lower in the caudal brain (Levey 1993). In contrast, $M_2$ receptors have increased density in the brain stem, but they are also found in the forebrain. Muscarinic $M_3$ receptors are expressed in a low and even distribution pattern across rostral areas, whereas $M_5$ receptors have a focal distribution in the basal ganglia. Muscarinic $M_1$ and $M_2$ receptors are found on dendritic spines of asymmetric synapses in primate cerebral cortex which suggests cholinergic modulation of excitatory neurotransmission and overall modulation of cortical activity (Mrzljak et al. 1993).

Centrally, muscarinic receptors are involved in a number of physiological processes including learning and memory, sensory perception, acute pain, mood, motor, and temperature control. The convulsant effects of the nonselective muscarinic agonist pilocarpine were exclusively mediated by the $M_1$ receptor, consistent with modulation of excitatory pathways (Bymaster et al. 2003a). In addition, $M_1$ receptors mediate the stimulation of phosphoinositide hydrolysis in cortex and hippocampus (Bymaster et al. 2003a). Beginning with the report of pirenzepine-reversible facilitated long-term potentiation (LTP) induction by muscarine (Burgard and Sarvey 1990), a consistent literature has implicated $M_1$ receptor activation as a catalyst for LTP/LTD in the hippocampus and cortex (Auerbach and Segal 1996; Calabresi et al. 1999; McCutchen et al. 2006) and hippocampal LTP is blunted or abolished in $M_1$ knockout mice (Anagnostaras et al. 2003; Shinoe et al. 2005). In

accord with the extensive evidence that $M_1$ receptors mediate LTP and associated processes, stimulation of $M_1$ receptors can facilitate learning and memory (see McArthur et al. 2010), likely via the nucleus basalis and septohippocampal projection pathways (Sarter and Bruno 1996). Although $M_1$ is a key receptor target for cognition, it is not likely the sole muscarinic receptor involved in cognitive processes. For example, relatively modest cognitive deficits are observed in $M_1$ knockout mice and induced by selective $M_1$ antagonism (Miyakawa et al. 2001; Sheffler et al. 2009). Moreover, gene deletion or selective blockade of $M_2$, $M_4$, or $M_5$ receptors in mice produced notable deficits in hippocampal LTP formation (Araya et al. 2006; Sanchez et al. 2009; Seeger et al. 2004).

Muscarinic $M_4$ receptors are colocalized on dopamine-rich tracts and likely modulate the effects of dopamine on motor processes, mood, and sensory perception (Vilaró et al. 1991; Gomeza et al. 1999). In the hippocampus, $M_4$ and $M_1$ receptors serve a prominent role in the cholinergic modulation of pyramidal neurons (Dasari and Gulledg 2011). Muscarinic $M_5$ receptors are localized in the dopamine-rich substantia nigra and ventral tegmental area and modulate dopamine release in those areas (Vilaró et al. 1990; Zhang et al. 2002). They are also located on cerebral blood vessels and modulate vascular tone in those vessels (Yamada et al. 2001). Although low levels of $M_3$ receptors are found through the brain, the role of $M_3$ receptors in the central nervous system is less defined. Muscarinic $M_3$ knockout mice are hypophagic and lean, and recently it has been suggested that $M_3$ receptors may have a role in learning and memory (Yamada et al. 2001; Poulin et al. 2010). Table 1 summarizes the above overview.

## 3 Role of Muscarinic Receptors in Psychosis and Cognition

### *3.1 Dopamine and Muscarinic Receptor System Interactions in Pathways Involved in Schizophrenia*

A dysfunction of the cholinergic system in patients with schizophrenia is well-established (Friedman 2004; Dean et al. 2003; Hyde and Crook 2001; Raedler et al. 2007; Barak 2009). The neurobiology supporting a role of muscarinic receptors within the pathophysiology of schizophrenia has focused heavily upon the interrelationship of cholinergic muscarinic receptors with the striatal dopamine system. Both in vitro and in vivo studies find that ACh and dopamine mediate efflux of the other in a reciprocal manner (Marchi and Raiteri 1985; Perry et al. 2001). Mesopontine cholinergic neurons (Ch5 and Ch6) project onto dopamine substantia nigra (A9) and ventral tegmental area (A10) cell bodies; mRNA colocalization evidence suggests that the muscarinic $M_5$ receptor is the predominant receptor subtype at these sites (Bolam et al. 1991; Gould et al. 1989; Woolf 1991; Weiner et al. 1990). Local infusions of muscarinic agonists at A9 and A10 dopamine neurons modulate cell firing and microdialysis studies have determined that local

or systemic administrations of muscarinic agents alter dopamine efflux in the N. accumbens: both increases and decreases occur depending upon the composition of muscarinic and nicotinic receptor subtypes activated (Lehmann and Langer 1982; Zhang et al. 2002; Grilli et al. 2008; Gronier and Rasmussen 1998; De Klippel et al. 1993; Tzavara et al. 2004). The bidirectionality of muscarinic receptor activation upon striatal dopamine release is affected by such factors as dopamine tone and the muscarinic receptor population that is activated.

## *3.2 Preclinical Pharmacology: Muscarinic Effects in Animal Models of Psychosis and Cognition*

Preclinical models of psychosis have consistently predicted an antipsychotic-like pharmacological profile of muscarinic agonists. For instance, the muscarinic agonists xanomeline, BuTAC, and PTAC blocked hyperactivity in rodents produced by dopamine agonist treatment and exhibited an atypical antipsychotic-like effects in the conditioned avoidance response assay (Bymaster et al. 1998; Shannon et al. 2000). The antidopaminergic effect of xanomeline was also demonstrated in monkeys, in which amphetamine-induced stereotypy was attenuated (Andersen et al. 2003). In an assay thought to reflect sensorimotor gating dysregulation in schizophrenia, multiple muscarinic agonists with known low affinity for dopamine receptors (i.e., xanomeline, BuTAC, oxotremorine, RS86, pilocarpine, milameline, and sabcomeline) were shown to reverse disruption of prepulse inhibition in rats induced by the dopamine agonist apomorphine (Jones et al. 2005; see also Stanhope et al. 2001 for the first report of xanomeline reversal of apomorphine-induced prepulse inhibition deficits). The interdependence of dopamine and muscarinic cholinergic systems was further demonstrated in this study by the finding that scopolamine disrupted prepulse inhibition, which was reversed by both xanomeline and the dopamine $D_2$ antagonist haloperidol.

Besides behavioral models of psychosis, muscarinic agonists are effective in neurochemical and electrophysiological preclinical paradigms predictive of antipsychotic efficacy. For example, subchronic treatment of clinically used antipsychotic agents in rats result in reductions of spontaneous cell firing of dopamine neurons in the ventral tegmental area (A10 dopamine pathway) and substantia nigra (A9 dopamine pathway). The finding that atypical antipsychotics (e.g., clozapine, olanzapine) preferentially affect A10 activity—whereas so-called typical antipsychotics (e.g., haloperidol) dampen both A9 and A10 activity—has been offered as a model of predicting reduced extrapyramidal side-effect propensity in the clinic (Stockton and Rasmussen 1996). Xanomeline after both acute and subchronic treatment produced selective inhibition of A10 dopamine cell firing, suggestive of an atypical antipsychotic-like profile (Shannon et al. 2000). The finding that xanomeline reduced A10 neuronal activity after an acute administration is interesting and suggests

potential differentiation from atypical antipsychotic treatments in the time-course of treatment efficacy.

A pharmacological feature of atypical, but not typical, antipsychotic agents is an ability to increase concentrations of monoamines, particularly dopamine, in the prefrontal cortex—an effect postulated to favor atypical antipsychotic efficacy in the treatment of negative symptoms and cognitive deficits in schizophrenia (Gessa et al. 2000; Li et al. 1998; Moghaddam and Bunney 1990). Muscarinic agonists, particularly those with $M_1$-preferring activity (e.g., AC260584, sabcomeline, and xanomeline) also acutely stimulate dopamine efflux in the prefrontal cortex of rats (Li et al. 2007, 2008; Perry et al. 2001). In support of this hypothesis, $M_1$-preferring agonists improve cognitive performance in rodents and nonhuman primates (for an excellent review, see McArthur et al. 2010). Under a variety of assay paradigms (e.g., delayed-matching, spatial learning, passive avoidance) muscarinic agents such as cevimeline, milameline, sabcomeline, talsaclidine, xanomeline, WAY-132983, and alvameline improve cognitive measures in rodents; most of these compounds were also tested in nonhuman primates with reported efficacy. It needs to be noted that all of the putative orthosteric $M_1$ agonists have, at best, a limited selectivity for $M_1$ receptor agonism over that of the other muscarinic receptor subtypes. In all cases, the effective dose range for improving cognitive functioning was narrow, with the emergence of parasympathetic side-effects that interfere with performance occurring at slightly higher doses than those improving performance. This narrow therapeutic range is likely a predominant reason that so many muscarinic agonists have been discontinued in clinical development.

## *3.3 Preclinical Genetics: Phenotypes of Muscarinic Gene Deletion Mice*

Because of the high receptor homology among the muscarinic receptor subtypes, it has been difficult to use pharmacological means to dissect specific functions of each muscarinic receptor subtype. The generation of gene deletion mice for each of the five muscarinic receptors enabled researchers to define functional, peripheral, and central attributes controlled by each receptor subtype (see Table 1; for a review of muscarinic knockout (KO) findings, see Wess et al. 2007).

### 3.3.1 $M_1$ Receptor Knockout Mice

Because of its postsynaptic localization on cholinergic projections to the frontal cortex and colocalization with NMDA receptors in the hippocampus (Marino et al. 1998; Yamasaki et al. 2010), $M_1$ receptors have long been a drug target for treating cognitive deficits in Alzheimer's disease and schizophrenia. Correspondingly, mice lacking $M_1$ receptors no longer exhibit the ability to activate phosphoinositol

hydrolysis signaling, MAPK-signaling pathway in cortical cultures or CA1 hippocampal neurons following muscarinic agonist administration, and the ability of carbachol to induce LTP in the hippocampus is lost in $M_1$ KO mice (Hamilton and Nathanson 2001; Berkeley et al. 2001; Bymaster et al. 2003a, b; Shinoe et al. 2005). Furthermore, cholinergic input to the hippocampus plays an important role in learning, and consistent with this role, studies have shown that potentiation of NMDA-receptor currents in hippocampal CA1 pyramidal cells is mediated by the $M_1$ muscarinic receptor (Marino et al. 1998). However, a study by Rouse et al. (2000) found that carbachol-induced inhibition of potassium channels was not lost in $M_1$ KO mice, suggesting a contribution of other muscarinic receptor subtypes in modulating CA1 pyramidal cell excitability.

Recent studies with a potent and selective positive allosteric modulator (PAM), BQCA, provided some insight into the effects of $M_1$ receptor on the excitatory state of pyramidal cells of the medial prefrontal cortex (Shirey et al. 2009). Electrophysiological studies found that BQCA induced a robust inward current and increased spontaneous excitatory postsynaptic currents in medial prefrontal cortex pyramidal cell slices, an effect that was absent in slices from $M_1$ receptor KO mice. In addition, single-unit recordings from the medial prefrontal cortex of rats in vivo demonstrated that BQCA increased firing of medial prefrontal cortex pyramidal cells. BQCA was also evaluated in a transgenic mouse model of Alzheimer's disease where deficits exist in compound discrimination reversal learning, regarded as a prefrontal cortical-dependent form of learning. BQCA improved the performance of the mutant mice on the compound discrimination and the compound discrimination reversal task. Together, these studies provide evidence that $M_1$ receptor activation induces an excitation of PFC neurons and afferent circuitry, which can ameliorate impairments in cognitive function related to disorders such Alzheimer's disease and schizophrenia.

$M_1$ receptor KOs also exhibit higher basal levels of activity, which may be related to increases in striatal dopamine tone and enhanced response to amphetamine (Gerber et al. 2001). The findings by Gerber and colleagues suggest that besides its established prominence in frontal cortical and hippocampal circuitry essential for higher-order cognitive functioning, $M_1$ receptors functionally impact striatal output and associated processes. Mice with $M_1$ receptor deletions exhibited relatively spared attentional abilities in the five-choice serial reaction time test (5-CSRT), with only more premature and perseverative responses differentiating $M_1$ KO from wildtype (WT) mice (Bartko et al. 2011). The striatum is a key neural substrate for mediating impulsive behavior control (Cardinal et al. 2001; Dalley et al. 2008), and may underlie the neurobiological basis for the deficits by the $M_1$ KO mice in this task. Interestingly, cognitive deficits in $M_1$ KO mice were not observed in other behavioral tasks; for instance, across a battery of assays, cognitive deficits were found in only specific instances, but the locomotor activity phenotype was seen as a complicating factor in interpreting the results (Miyakawa et al. 2001). Similarly, Anagnostaras et al. (2003) reported normal, enhanced, or impaired cognition of $M_1$ KO mice depending on the task; the authors concluded that $M_1$ receptor integrity is particularly important for cortical-hippocampal integration of

information. Their data also indicated that cognitive deficits commonly induced by nonselective muscarinic antagonists (e.g., scopolamine or atropine) are not solely dependent on $M_1$ receptor blockade and support a role for involvement of other muscarinic receptor subtypes. To this point, in a study in which complex gender, gene KO, and pharmacology effects were observed, Thomsen et al. (2010) found that only female double $M_1/M_4$ KO mice displayed basal prepulse inhibition deficits and in pharmacological provocation studies with the individual $M_1$ and $M_4$ KO mice, the pattern of results indicated that $M_1$ receptor deletion was important for scopolamine-induced prepulse inhibition disruption, whereas loss of the $M_4$ receptor rendered xanomeline inactive in reversing the disruptive effects of scopolamine.

### 3.3.2 $M_2/M_3$ Receptor Knockout Mice

As mentioned above, $M_2$ and $M_3$ receptors are the dominant muscarinic subtype found in smooth muscle and cardiac tissue (Eglen 1996). Because of this peripheral localization, it is believed that $M_2$ and $M_3$ receptors mediate much of the parasympathetic side-effects of nonselective muscarinic agonists. In support of this view, the majority of cardiovascular and smooth muscle effects of oxotremorine or carbachol are lost in $M_2$ and $M_3$ KO mice (Kitazawa et al. 2008; Fisher et al. 2004; Gautam et al. 2006; Stengel et al. 2000; Tanahashi et al. 2009). The phenotypic finding of hypophagia and low fat mass in $M_3$ KO mice, along with low basal serum leptin and insulin levels, suggests that the $M_3$ receptor is a potential drug target for endocrine disorders such as diabetes as well as obesity (Gautam et al. 2008; Yamada et al. 2001).

In addition to its prominent role in heart tissue function, $M_2$ receptors are expressed in important brain regions implicated in learning and memory processes. For instance, $M_2$ receptors are found in both pre- and postsynaptic hippocampus localizations (Levey et al. 1995). $M_2$ receptor KO mice show spatial learning and working memory deficits, corresponding with deficits in short-term and long-term potentiation following theta-burst electrical stimulation in the hippocampus (Seeger et al. 2004). The authors hypothesized that the absence of presynaptic $M_2$ receptors resulted in reduced cholinergic-induced suppression of GABAergic inhibition of CA1 hippocampal neurons. In a microdialysis study of hippocampal ACh phasic and tonic release, a role of both $M_2$ and $M_4$ receptors were observed (Tzavara et al. 2003). For instance, basal ACh levels were most elevated and scopolamine-induced ACh release (via blockade of presynaptic autoreceptors) was abolished in $M_2/M_4$ double KO mice. Behavioral assessment in a passive avoidance paradigm revealed presumed cognitive deficits in $M_2$ and double $M_2/M_4$ KO mice.

Because of its prominent role in smooth muscle regulation in the periphery, $M_3$ receptors have received little attention as a central target for cognition and schizophrenia. However, $M_3$ receptors are highly expressed in cortex and limbic structures, showing a somewhat similar receptor expression profile to that of $M_1$ receptor distribution. In a study by Poulin et al. (2010), $M_3$ receptor KO mice

exhibited deficits in fear conditioning learning and memory; additional studies led the authors to conclude that $M_3$ receptor phosphorylation, and recruitment of arrestin signaling in the hippocampus was a necessary condition mediating fear conditioning learning.

### 3.3.3 $M_4$ Receptor Knockout Mice

There is a strong neuroanatomical link between dopamine and $M_4$ receptors since they are coexpressed in striatal neurons (Weiner et al. 1990; Volz et al. 2008; Grilli et al. 2008). One of the first reported phenotypes of $M_4$ receptor gene deletion was an enhanced basal locomotor activity and increased sensitivity to the stimulating effects of dopamine agonists (i.e., apomorphine and SKF38393; Gomeza et al. 1999). A direct role of the $M_4$ receptor in regulating dopaminergic tone was found in a study by Tzavara et al. (2004). Using microdialysis methodology with a probe in the N. accumbens, $M_4$ KO mice demonstrated higher basal dopamine levels and stimulant-induced (i.e., amphetamine and phencyclidine) dopamine efflux compared to $M_2$ KO and WT controls. $M_4$ KO mice also self-administered more cocaine and have higher breakpoints (a measure of reward drive) than WT mice; an effect which corresponded with greater cocaine-induced dopamine efflux within the N. accumbens of $M_4$ KO over WT mice (Schmidt et al. 2011). The recent generation of mutant mice selectively lacking $M_4$ receptors in $D_1$ dopamine receptor-expressing neurons has further demonstrated the intricate relationship between muscarinic $M_4$ and dopamine physiology; these mice exhibit enhanced basal locomotor activity and nucleus accumbens dopamine levels as well as exacerbated sensitivity to acute and subchronic amphetamine or cocaine treatment (Jeon et al. 2010). Furthermore, the induction of catalepsy by dopamine antagonists such as haloperidol was strikingly reduced in these mice, demonstrating the interrelationship of the dopaminergic and muscarinic systems. Interestingly, the ability of the muscarinic $M_1/M_4$-preferring agonist xanomeline to block dopamine agonist-induced behaviors was nearly abolished in these $D_1/M_4$ receptor KO mice, implicating the $M_4$ receptor (and its associated interactions with $D_1$ receptors) in the presumed antipsychotic activity of xanomeline (Dencker et al. 2011).

Given the strong preclinical atypical antipsychotic-like profile and intriguing efficacy of xanomeline in a small schizophrenia clinical trial (Shekhar et al. 2008), we have evaluated xanomeline effectiveness in $M_2$, $M_4$, and $M_5$ KO mice in the conditioned avoidance response assay. Results are shown in Fig. 1; the effects of xanomeline are right-shifted (i.e., decreased efficacy) in only $M_4$ KO mice suggesting an important contribution of muscarinic $M_4$, but not $M_2$ or $M_5$, receptor activity in the antipsychotic pharmacology of xanomeline. The observation that xanomeline efficacy was diminished, but not lost, suggests that additional pharmacology contributes to its activity in this assay. The most likely candidate is the $M_1$ receptor, which unfortunately was not assessed in these studies, but other receptor targets cannot be ruled out since xanomeline has been reported to also have weak serotonergic activity (Heinrich et al. 2009; Watson et al. 1998). However, much of

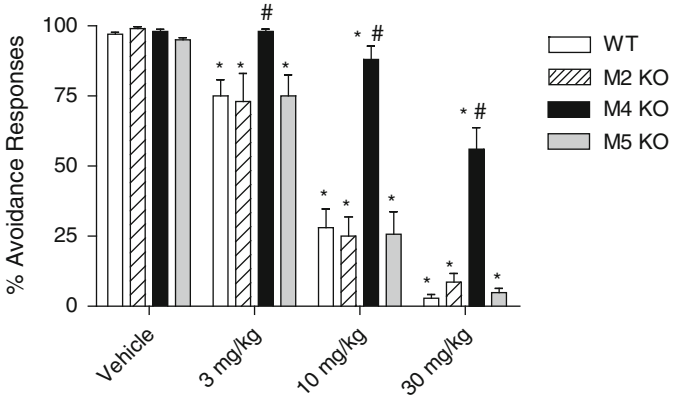



**Fig. 1** Effects of xanomeline on conditioned avoidance responding in muscarinic $M_2$, $M_4$, and $M_5$ knockout mice. Effects of Xanomeline on conditioned avoidance responding in $M_2$, $M_4$, and $M_5$ Muscarinic receptor knockouts and wildtype control mice. Xanomeline produced an antipsychotic-like response (i.e., reduction of avoidance responses) in all lines of mice; however, $M_4$ KO mice exhibited a reduced sensitivity to the pharmacological effects of xanomeline compared to other lines. These data suggest that the $M_4$ receptor plays a significant role in xanomeline's antipsychotic-like effects. *$p < 0.05$ versus Vehicle controls; #$p < 0.05$ versus WT, $M_2$, and $M_5$ KOs at the same dose

xanomeline's pharmacology can be blocked by muscarinic antagonists, suggesting primary muscarinic-dependent effects (Shannon et al. 2000).

### 3.3.4 M5 Receptor Knockout Mice

Compared to the relatively broad expression patterns of $M_1$–$M_4$ receptors throughout the brain, the $M_5$ receptor is localized discretely within dopamine cell body regions of the VTA and substantia nigra (Vilaró et al. 1990; Yasuda et al. 1993). Because of this intimate localization with dopamine cell bodies, it has been suggested that $M_5$ receptors are involved in cholinergic modulation of dopamine release within A9/A10 dopamine pathways. The other reported localization for $M_5$ receptors within the brain is upon cerebral blood vessels and $M_5$ receptors appear to regulate ACh-induced dilation of these vessels—an effect that is lost in $M_5$ KO mice (Yamada et al. 2001). Moreover, the loss of $M_5$ receptor tone led to a constitutive constriction of cerebral arteries that was associated with cortical and hippocampal atrophy and cognitive deficits in $M_5$ KO mice (Araya et al. 2006).

Early studies with the $M_5$ KO mice indicated a reduced responsivity to the dopamine-stimulating effects of morphine, cocaine, and amphetamine as evidenced by diminished locomotor activity, striatal dopamine efflux, self-administration, or conditioned place preference (Basile et al. 2002; Steidl and Yeomans 2009; Thomsen et al. 2005; Wang et al. 2004; Yamada et al. 2003). However, a recent study reported that acute and subchronic amphetamine treatment produced greater locomotor stimulation and accompanying dopamine release in the N. accumbens of

$M_5$ KO mice relative to WT controls (Schmidt et al. 2010). The discrepant findings are difficult to resolve, but it has been postulated to be a function of methodology and/or genetic background strain for which the $M_5$ gene deletion was carried. Similar divergent results of $M_5$ receptor gene deletion are reported for measures of cognition: Wang et al. (2004) reported improved latent inhibition—a measure of attention—in $M_5$ KO mice, whereas $M_5$ KO mice exhibited decreased prepulse inhibition—a measure of sensorimotor gating—compared to wildtype controls (Thomsen et al. 2007). Interestingly in the Thomsen et al. (2007) study, the $M_5$ KOs were also more sensitive to the activating effects of the $M_1$-preferring muscarinic antagonist trihexyphenidyl, but not cocaine, suggesting changes in $M_1$ receptor sensitivity as a function of $M_5$ receptor deletion. Taken together, the weight of evidence indicates an important functional role of $M_5$ receptors upon the striatal dopamine system, but further studies are needed to more clearly define these complex interactions.

# 4 Clinical

## *4.1 Genome-Wide Association Studies*

As mentioned above, all five muscarinic receptors (CHRM1-5) are found in the mammalian brain, differing in regional expression and density. To date, only a handful of gene-wide association studies have implicated muscarinic receptor genes as a susceptibility factor for schizophrenia. Liao et al. (2003) first identified a CHRM1 gene polymorphism in schizophrenia patients that was associated with measures of psychiatric and cognitive function. The CHRM4 gene was recently identified as one of the risk genes for schizophrenia in a large genome-wide association study. The CHRM5 gene when combined with the alpha7-nicotinic receptor (CHRNA7) gene achieved significance for conferring significant susceptibility to schizophrenia (De Luca et al. 2004).

## *4.2 Clinical: Postmortem and Functional Imaging Studies*

Early muscarinic receptor labeling conducted in postmortem schizophrenia patients used the nonselective muscarinic antagonist [$^3$H]quinuclidinyl benzilate (QNB). Results were mixed, finding either no change (Bennett et al. 1979) or increased muscarinic receptor binding (Watanabe et al. 1983; Toru et al. 1988) in frontal cortical regions. To better discern among the muscarinic receptor subtypes, more recent binding studies have used the $M_1/M_4$-preferring muscarinic antagonist [$^3$H] pirenzepine and the $M_2/M_4$-preferring agent [$^3$H]AF-DX384 (see Moriya et al. (1999) for muscarinic binding profiles in recombinant human cells). Although

these agents are only moderately selective across the five muscarinic receptor subtypes, more consistent findings results have been reported across laboratories. For instance, multiple studies have observed decreased cortical $M_1$ receptors, as evidenced by reduced [$^3$H]pirenzepine binding, in schizophrenia patients (Crook et al. 2000, 2001; Dean et al. 1996, 2002, 2004; Deng and Huang 2005; Mancama et al. 2003; Newell et al. 2007). The consistent finding of reduced [$^3$H] pirenzepine binding, which is presumed to largely reflect $M_1$ receptor expression, is contrasted by studies using [$^3$H]AF-DX384 showing no differences between schizophrenia patients and controls in binding in cortex (Deng and Huang 2005; Newell et al. 2007; Zavitsanou et al. 2005). The supposition that cortical muscarinic receptor density deficits in schizophrenia patients is predominantly $M_1$ receptor-related was further supported by mRNA and protein analyses, and via functional [$^{35}$S]GTPgammaS functional binding experiments, confirming that $M_2$ and $M_3$ receptor signatures were not altered in the schizophrenia cohort (Scarr et al. 2006). However, schizophrenia patients were reported to have reduced $M_2/M_4$ binding density in striatum (i.e., caudate-putamen; Crook et al. 1999) and reduced $M_4$ expression in the hippocampus (Scarr et al. 2007). Finally, the robust $M_1$ receptor deficits seen in postmortem cortex of schizophrenia patients were not found in patients diagnosed with major depressive disorder or bipolar disorder, suggesting some degree of muscarinic dysregulation specificity for schizophrenia (Zavitsanou et al. 2004).

While the results of the above studies reflect mean differences calculated across entire sample populations, recent findings indicate that muscarinic $M_1$ receptor deficits may be especially large in a particular subgroup of schizophrenia patients. For example, using [$^3$H]pirenzepine binding in cortical regions, Scarr et al. (2009) defined a subgroup of schizophrenia patients that comprised approximately 25 % of the larger schizophrenia sample population that had a dramatic (around 75%) reduction in mean cortical [$^3$H]pirenzepine binding relative to demographically matched controls. The term "muscarinic receptor deficient schizophrenia" (MRDS) has been coined to describe this patient subgroup and the dorsolateral prefrontal cortex, a brain region thought to be dysfunctional in schizophrenia, appears to be a key brain region where greatly reduced $M_1$ receptor expression is observed (Scarr et al. 2009). In another study, the functional consequences of reduced $M_1$ binding density was tested using a [$^{35}$S]GTPgammaS paradigm; experiments indicated compensatory increases in the coupling efficiency resulted in nearly unchanged $M_1$ function for the MRDS patients relative to controls (Salah-Uddin et al. 2009).

The only functional imaging study to date that has assessed muscarinic receptor availability in vivo in schizophrenia patients, was a SPECT imaging study using [$^{123}$I]IQNB as the binding ligand (Raedler et al. 2003). Twelve patients were removed from their antipsychotic and antimuscarinic medication for a mean of 18 days and were compared against age- and gender-matched healthy controls. Results indicated that compared to controls, schizophrenia patients exhibited a 20–35 % decrease in muscarinic receptor occupancy in both cortex and basal ganglia. Although the IQNB radioligand is nonselective across the muscarinic

**Table 2** Summarized evidence for a role of muscarinic receptors in the treatment of schizophrenia

| | Domain of study | Key points |
|---|---|---|
| Preclinical | Neuroanatomical | Muscarinic receptors are co-localized on dopamine-containing neurons |
| | Neurocircuitry | Reciprocal modulatory effects of muscarinic and dopaminergic receptor activation |
| | Pharmacological | Muscarinic agonists produce an atypical antipsychotic-like profile in animal neurochemical, electrophysiological, and behavioral models. |
| | Genetics | Muscarinic $M_1$ and $M_4$ receptor knockout mice exhibit enhanced sensitivity to dopaminergic agonists. Antipsychotic-like effects of the muscarinic agonist xanomeline are attenuated in $M_4$ knockout mice |
| Clinical | Genetics | Polymorphisms in the CHRM1 gene were associated with cognitive performance in schizophrenia patients; polymorphisms in CHRM4 were associated with increased schizophrenia incidence |
| | Post-mortem | Generally consistent findings of reduced $M_1$ binding in cortex and reduced $M_4$ receptor expression in hippocampus of schizophrenia patients |
| | Functional neuroimaging | Decreased muscarinic receptor availability in cortex and basal ganglia of schizophrenia patients |
| | Proof-of-concept pharmacotherapeutic treatment | The $M_1/M_4$-preferring muscarinic agonist xanomeline improved positive and negative symptoms, and measures of cognitive deficits, in a small double-blinded schizophrenia study |

References contained within text

receptor subtypes, these data are consistent with postmortem results indicating reduced cortical $M_1$ and subcortical $M_2/M_4$ receptor level.

The preclinical and clinical data, as a whole, implicate dysregulation of the muscarinic cholinergic system in the etiology of schizophrenia, impacting both hyperdopaminergic striatal states associated with psychosis and positive symptoms, as well as dysregulated frontal cortical functioning associated with higher-order cognitive processes (see Table 2 for a summary of findings). Although the lack of selective muscarinic orthosteric agonists and radiotracers make defining the roles of specific receptor subtypes difficult, $M_1$ receptors appear to be critical for cognitive processing in hippocampal and frontal cortical brain regions, whereas $M_4$ and $M_5$ receptors play a dominant role in striatal dopamine circuitry.

## *4.3 Effect of Atypical Antipsychotics on Muscarinic Receptors*

Atypical or second-generation antipsychotics are now widely used for pharmacotherapy of schizophrenia. Several of these drugs including olanzapine, clozapine, and to a lesser extent quetiapine have high affinity for muscarinic receptors with little or no

selectivity for muscarinic receptor subtypes (Bymaster et al. 1996, 2003b). Risperidone, ziprasidone, aripiprazole, iloperidone, and asenapine have low affinity for muscarinic receptor subtypes and likely have no direct interaction with them (Bymaster et al. 2003b; Shapiro et al. 2003; Kalkman et al. 2001; Shahid et al. 2009). Olanzapine and clozapine have been shown to be weak partial agonists at muscarinic $M_4$ receptors in functional assays in clonal cell lines with large receptor reserve (Zeng et al. 1997; Zorn et al. 1994), but partial agonism was not found in rodent tissue or clonal cells with reduced receptor reserve (Zeng et al. 1997; Olianas et al. 1997). In functional assays evaluating effects on second messenger assays in clonal cells with low receptor reserve, olanzapine had no detectable agonist activity at muscarinic $M_1$–$M_5$ receptors, but it blocked agonist-induced functional activity at the five muscarinic receptor subtypes with about 100 times lower potency than the classical muscarinic antagonist atropine (Bymaster et al. 1999a). It can be hypothesized that $M_4$ antagonism by olanzapine and clozapine, may in part, reduce drug-induced expression of extrapyramidal symptoms, since $M_4$ receptor ablation on $D_1$ neurons showed reduced catalepsy production in mice treated with haloperidol (Jeon et al. 2010). Overall, it is unclear how clinically relevant muscarinic receptor interactions are to the pharmacology of olanzapine and clozapine.

An interesting finding on interaction of antipsychotics with muscarinic receptors was the discovery that the N-desmethyl metabolite of clozapine (NDMC) was found to be a potent and efficacious partial agonist at muscarinic $M_1$ receptors (Sur et al. 2003). Furthermore, NDMC in vivo stimulated the phosphorylation of mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAP kinase) in mouse CA1 hippocampal neurons, an effect that was blocked by a muscarinic antagonist, presumably indicating activation of $M_1$ receptors in vivo (Weiner et al. 2004). Preclinical studies with NDMC demonstrated comparable in vivo efficacy to the parent compound, clozapine; for instance, NDMC reversed disruptions of prepulse inhibition induced by methamphetamine, ketamine, and scopolamine (Maehara et al. 2011a). Also, NDMC normalized social interaction deficits induced by MK-801 and improved object recognition performance following a long retention interval (Maehara et al. 2011b). These data led to the hypothesis that the observed high ratio of NDMC/clozapine plasma levels predicted improvement in cognitive functioning and quality of life in schizophrenia patients (Weiner et al. 2004), although this finding is confounded by the potent antagonist activity of clozapine. This work suggested the $M_1$ agonist activity of NDMC might contribute to the superior antipsychotic activity of clozapine and prompted a flurry of work on NDMC. Further studies with NDMC confirmed its partial agonist at muscarinic $M_1$ receptors in $Ca^{++}$ transient studies with recombinant human $M_1$ receptors and in rat native $M_1$ receptors (Thomas et al. 2010). However, in GTPgammaS-binding studies in human cortical tissue, NDMC did not stimulate binding, whereas the muscarinic full agonist oxotremorine-M robustly stimulated binding, putting in question the efficacy of NDMC in human tissue. Further, NDMC antagonized agonist-induced GTPgammaS binding in human cortical tissue. Recent studies have also suggested that NDMC may act allosterically (Gregory et al. 2007). Clinical data on the effects of NDMC in schizophrenia are scant at this time (Mendoza and Lindenmayer 2009).

Overall, we conclude that olanzapine and clozapine have little muscarinic agonist activity in vivo, but the functional antagonism of muscarinic receptors may play a role in their low effects on extrapyramidal symptoms. The role of NDMC in the pharmacotherapy of schizophrenia alone or as a metabolite of clozapine is unclear at this time.

## *4.4 Development of Muscarinic Agents as Antipsychotic Agents*

Pan muscarinic antagonists, such as biperiden and trihexyphenidyl, have been used as an adjunctive treatment with neuroleptic agents to ameliorate extrapyramidal side effects associated with potent $D_2$ antagonists (Tandon and Greden 1989). Besides alleviation of the motor side-effects, antimuscarinic treatments are reported to have slight benefit in treating negative symptoms, but may worsen positive symptoms and an already compromised cognitive system in schizophrenia patients (Johnstone et al. 1983; Singh et al. 1987; Tandon et al. 1991). While selective muscarinic $M_2$ antagonists (e.g., SCH 57790, AF-DX-116, BIBN-99)—by virtue of blocking presynaptic autoreceptor functioning—have been shown to increase acetylcholine release and improve cognition in animal models (Carey et al. 2001; Ragozzino et al. 2009; Rowe et al. 2003), such compounds have not advanced into clinical development likely due to concomitant peripheral side-effects.

Although effective in reducing extrapyramidal side-effects of neuroleptic agents, muscarinic antagonists induce cognitive deficits and a psychotomimetic-like syndrome in healthy subjects and, like ketamine, can exacerbate positive symptoms in schizophrenia patients (Osterholm and Camoriano 1982; Tandon et al. 1991; Yeomans 1995). This deleterious consequence of muscarinic antagonism upon already impaired cognitive domains in schizophrenia, combined with perceived therapeutic benefit of nonselective cholinergic agonism has provided the basis for the pursuit of muscarinic agonists as antipsychotic medications. Moreover, the majority of postmortem and clinical imaging studies to date indicate a muscarinic deficiency in schizophrenia patients (see Table 2).

### 4.4.1 Orthosteric Muscarinic Agonists and Cholinesterase Inhibitors

The therapeutic potential of cholinergic agonists for pharmacotherapy of schizophrenia was postulated decades previously and predates the use of chlorpromazine in schizophrenia patients (Cohen et al. 1944), and nonselective increases in ACh tone with administration of cholinesterase inhibitors have had mixed results in clinical schizophrenia trials (see review by Goff et al. 2011). The main approach used with cholinesterase inhibitors for schizophrenia has been as an adjunctive treatment with antipsychotic agents. Small open label studies with donepezil, rivastigmine, and galantamine have reported some improvement in cognitive performance; however, a larger add-on trial with donepezil failed to demonstrate any

benefit on cognitive symptoms and appeared to worsen negative symptoms (Keefe et al. 2008). Another placebo-controlled add-on study with galantamine reported improvement in specific cognitive domains, but did not improve the overall cognitive composite score relative to placebo (Buchanan et al. 2008). The interpretation of cholinesterase inhibitors and their mixed clinical effectiveness for treating cognitive deficits in schizophrenia is challenging due their nonselective pharmacology across both nicotinic and muscarinic receptor subtypes.

Many clinical trials with purported $M_1$ receptor agonists have been conducted over the years. Agents such as alvameline, milameline, and sabcomeline were introduced with the intent of treating cognitive deficits associated with Alzheimer's disease. Of the many arecoline-based orthosteric muscarinic agonists evaluated over the years, xanomeline has arguably been the most impactful in defining the potential therapeutic scope for muscarinic agonism. Xanomeline was first developed as an Alzheimer's disease treatment and although positive effects were demonstrated on measures of cognition, significant parasympathetic side effects in the elderly patients precluded further development (Bodick et al. 1997; Veroff et al. 1998). Despite the tolerability issues in these geriatric patients, xanomeline reduced symptoms of paranoia, delusions, agitation, and hallucinations (Bodick et al. 1997). Because of this therapeutic profile as well as its preclinical antipsychotic-like effects, xanomeline was evaluated in a small double-blind, placebo-controlled monotherapy schizophrenia study. Unlike the Alzheimer's patients, xanomeline was well-tolerated and exhibited significant improvement on total BPRS (Brief Psychiatric Rating Scale), total PANSS (Positive and Negative Symptom Scale) scores, and improved verbal learning and measures of short-term memory (Shekhar et al. 2008).

The small schizophrenia trial of Shekhar and colleagues provided the first clinical proof-of-concept data that muscarinic agonism could serve as a monotherapy treatment for schizophrenia. However, the nonselectivity across muscarinic receptor subtypes (i.e., $M_2$ and $M_3$ receptors) and poor bioavailability makes the development of a xanomeline-like agent as a first-line treatment unlikely. To date, the close homology of muscarinic receptor subtypes makes drug development of orthosteric agents difficult, particularly when derived from the arecoline-based chemical structures. Future orthosteric approaches for muscarinic agonists will likely need to explore new chemical scaffolds; for instance, a recent publication with compound LY593093, which is based upon a novel chemical series, demonstrated good functional $M_1$ agonist selectivity and positive cognitive effects in preclinical models (Watt et al. 2011). It remains to be seen whether such approaches will yield better clinical success.

### 4.4.2 Muscarinic Allosteric Agents

It has been difficult to find selective agonists and antagonists of the five muscarinic receptor subtypes as exemplified in at least 30 years of intense synthetic approaches without significant success (Felder et al. 2000; Conn et al. 2009). This difficulty is

likely due to the high sequence conservation in the orthosteric binding site of the five receptor subtypes. The lack of selective ligands has greatly slowed the physiological characterization of the individual subtypes and in lieu of selective ligands muscarinic receptor knockout mice have been used for this purpose (Bymaster et al. 2003a; Wess et al. 2007). Furthermore, the development of therapeutic agents that activate or inhibit muscarinic receptors has lagged because the relatively nonselective drugs produce a plethora of troublesome parasympathetic side effects.

However, an exciting alternative approach for finding subtype-selective drugs for muscarinic receptors has been to focus on allosteric binding sites. These sites are less highly conserved among the muscarinic receptor subtypes, are functionally distinct, and are located on the extracellular domains of the receptor rather than in the highly conserved orthosteric binding pocket (Conn et al. 2009). A positive allosteric modulator (PAM) would have no activity alone, but enhance the action of ACh, whereas a negative allosteric modulator would decrease the action of A Ch. PAMs are more physiological in action than an orthosteric agonist since they amplify the action of present ACh and thereby maintain phasic neurotransmission, rather than flood the synapse and constantly interact with the receptor which may cause receptor desensitization (Thomas et al. 2009). Allosteric agonists are distinctly different from PAMs in that they are capable of receptor activation in the *absence* of the orthosteric neurotransmitter, but at a site distinct from the orthosteric site. A study has shown that in vitro an $M_1$ PAM, AC-42, was able to initiate signal transduction like orthosteric agonists, but did not result in receptor internalization and down-regulation as found with the orthosteric agonists (Thomas et al. 2009). Additionally, unlike orthosteric agonists, PAMs have a ceiling effect on the target receptor which may prevent side effects due to receptor over-stimulation. The major disadvantage of use of PAMs is that they require presence of the natural neurotransmitter, and thus the compound would be inactive in diseases that markedly reduce synaptic neurotransmitter levels.

Progress has been made in discovering subtype-selective muscarinic PAMs or allosteric agonists with in vivo activity. Several PAMs or allosteric agonists have been shown to have selectivity for the $M_1$ receptors (Spalding et al. 2002, Marlo et al. 2009; Ma et al. 2009). One highly selective $M_1$ PAM, BQCA, increased c-fos and ERK phosphorylation in vivo in brain of WT, but not $M_1$ KO mice, and reversed scopolamine-induced memory deficits in contextual fear conditioning (Ma et al. 2009). BQCA also was shown to reverse deficits in compound discrimination reversal learning in a transgenic mouse model of Alzheimer's disease (Shirey et al. 2009). An $M_1$ allosteric agonist, AC-260584, activated ERK phosphorylation in the hippocampus and prefrontal cortex, but changes were not produced in $M_1$ KO mice (Bradley et al. 2010). Consistent with ERK phosphoryation's role in synaptic plasticity and memory, AC-260584 improved the cognitive performance of mice in the novel object recognition assay, and the enhanced cognitive performance was blocked by the muscarinic receptor antagonist pirenzepine. The $M_1$-selective allosteric agonist TBPB blocked amphetamine-induced hyperactivity without inducing catalepsy (Jones et al. 2008). The most advanced $M_1$ allosteric agonist to date is likely GSK1034702 which entered Phase I clinical testing in 2008.

Recent efficacy data were presented showing cognitive benefit in a nicotine abstinence paradigm (Nathan et al. 2011). The design was a double-blind, placebo-controlled study in 20 healthy nicotine abstinent smokers. Compared to baseline performance (i.e., on nicotine) across multiple measures of cognition, 12 h nicotine abstinence produced deficits in measures of immediate and delayed recall. Acute treatment of GSK1034702 significantly improved immediate recall performance.

Advancements have also been made in developing selective and CNS penetrant $M_4$ PAMs which could potentially have antipsychotic activity (Shirey et al. 2008; Brady et al. 2008; Chan et al. 2008, reviewed by Bridges et al. 2010a, b). One $M_4$ PAM, VU10010, increased carbachol-induced depression of neurotransmission at excitatory, but not inhibitory synapses, in the hippocampus (Shirey et al. 2008). Two different $M_4$ PAMs, VU0152099 andVU0152100, blocked amphetamine-induced hyperactivity, an animal model of antipsychotic activity in which central-acting dopamine antagonists and muscarinic agonists have activities. LY2033298 is another selective $M_4$ PAM with higher affinity for human than rat $M_4$ receptors and was inactive alone in vivo in rats, however, if co-administered with a subeffective dose of a muscarinic agonist, LY2033298 was active in the antipsychotic-like models of conditioned avoidance responding and apomorphine-induced prepulse inhibition (Leach et al. 2010). Thus, $M_1$ and $M_4$ allosteric agents have been shown to be active in in vivo models pertinent to schizophrenia including positive symptoms (amphetamine-induced hyperactivity) and cognition. Finally, $M_5$ PAMs have recently been disclosed, although little data exists showing the pharmacological attributes of these early research tools (Bridges et al. 2010a, b). To date, the therapeutic promise of muscarinic allosteric modulators remains to be demonstrated; however, the functional selectivity and likely unique pharmacological characteristics of this class of compounds is an exciting field of study.

## 5 Conclusion

As detailed above, there is accumulating evidence for the dysfunction of the cholinergic muscarinic system in patients with schizophrenia, exemplified by postmortem findings of decreased muscarinic receptor density in brain regions associated with schizophrenia such as cortical regions, hippocampus, and the caudate putamen. There is a marked reciprocal interaction between the cholinergic muscarinic receptors and dopamine receptors as shown in the muscarinic receptor ablation studies. This observation lends support to the hypothesis that muscarinic agonists, particularly with $M_1$ and $M_4$ activity, could function similarly to dopamine antagonists and have antipsychotic activity. In this regard, a number of muscarinic agonists in preclinical behavioral, electrophysiological, and neurochemical studies have functional activity similar to dopamine antagonists. Clinically, the muscarinic partial $M_1/M_4$ agonist xanomeline was shown to have antipsychotic activity in a small clinical trial. Currently, researchers are actively attempting to develop subtype-selective muscarinic agonists and PAMs for the

therapeutic treatment of schizophrenia; the existing challenge is to elucidate the efficacy and tolerability profiles of these new compounds.

## References

Abi-Dargham A, Gil R, Krystal J, Baldwin RM, Seibyl JP, Bowers M, van Dyck CH, Charney DS, Innis RB, Laruelle M (1998) Increased striatal dopamine transmission in schizophrenia: confirmation in a second cohort. Am J Psychiatry 155:761–767

Achim AM, Maziade M, Raymond E, Olivier D, Merette C, Roy MA (2011) How prevalent are anxiety disorders in schizophrenia? A meta-analysis and critical review on a significant association. Schizophr Bull 37:811–821

Anagnostaras SG, Murphy GG, Hamilton SE, Mitchell SL, Rahnama NP, Nathanson NM, Silva AJ (2003) Selective cognitive dysfunction in acetylcholine M1 muscarinic receptor mutant mice. Nat Neurosci 6:51–58

Andersen MB, Fink-Jensen A, Peacock L, Gerlach J, Bymaster F, Lundbaek JA, Werge T (2003) The muscarinic M1/M4 receptor agonist xanomeline exhibits antipsychotic-like activity in Cebus apella monkeys. Neuropsychopharmacology 28:1168–1175

Andreasen NC, Carpenter WT Jr (1993) Diagnosis and classification of schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 19(2):199–214

Araya R, Noguchi T, Yuhki M, Kitamura N, Higuchi M, Saido TC, Seki K, Itohara S, Kawano M, Tanemura K, Takashima A, Yamada K, Kondoh Y, Kanno I, Wess J, Yamada M (2006) Loss of M5 muscarinic acetylcholine receptors leads to cerebrovascular and neuronal abnormalities and cognitive deficits in mice. Neurobiol Dis 24:334–344

Auerbach JM, Segal M (1996) Muscarinic receptors mediating depression and long-term potentiation in rat hippocampus. J Physiol 492:479–493

Barak S (2009) Modeling cholinergic aspects of schizophrenia: focus on the antimuscarinic syndrome. Behav Brain Res 204:335–351

Bartko SJ, Romberg C, White B, Wess J, Bussey TJ, Saksida LM (2011) Intact attentional processing but abnormal responding in M1 muscarinic receptor-deficient mice using an automated touchscreen method. Neuropharmacology 61:1366–1378

Basile AS, Fedorova I, Zapata A, Liu X, Shippenberg T, Duttaroy A, Yamada M, Wess J (2002) Deletion of the M5 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor attenuates morphine reinforcement and withdrawal but not morphine analgesia. Proc Natl Acad Sci 99:11452–11457

Bennett JP Jr, Enna SJ, Bylund DB, Gillin JC, Wyatt RJ, Snyder SH (1979) Neurotransmitter receptors in frontal cortex of schizophrenics. Arch Gen Psychiatry 36:927–934

Berkeley JL, Gomeza J, Wess J, Hamilton SE, Nathanson NM, Levey AI (2001) M1 muscarinic acetylcholine receptors activate extracellular signal-regulated kinase in CA1 pyramidal neurons in mouse hippocampal slices. Mol Cell Neurosci 18:512–524

Bodick NC, Offen WW, Levey AI, Cutler NR, Gauthier SG, Satlin A, Shannon HE, Tollefson GD, Rasmussen K, Bymaster FP, Hurley DJ, Potter WZ, Paul SM (1997) Effects of xanomeline, a selective muscarinic receptor agonist, on cognitive function and behavioral symptoms in Alzheimer disease. Arch Neurol 54:465–473

Bolam JP, Francis CM, Henderson Z (1991) Cholinergic input to dopaminergic neurons in the substantia nigra: a double immunocytochemical study. Neuroscience 41:483–494

Bowie CR, Harvey PD (2006) Cognitive deficits and functional outcome in schizophrenia. Neuropsychiatr Dis Treat 2:531–536

Bradley SR, Lameh J, Ohrmund L, Son T, Bajpai A, Nguyen D, Friberg M, Burstein ES, Spalding TA, Ott TR, Schiffer HH, Tabatabaei A, McFarland K, Davis RE, Bonhaus DW (2010) AC-260584, an orally bioavailable M(1) muscarinic receptor allosteric agonist, improves cognitive performance in an animal model. Neuropharmacology 58:365–373

Brady AE, Jones CK, Bridges TM, Kennedy JP, Thompson AD, Heiman JU, Breininger ML, Gentry PR, Yin H, Jadhav SB, Shirey JK, Conn PJ, Lindsley CW (2008) Centrally active allosteric potentiators of the M4 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor reverse amphetamine-induced hyperlocomotor activity in rats. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 327:941–953

Breier A, Su TP, Saunders R, Carson RE, Kolachana BS, de Bartolomeis A, Weinberger DR, Weisenfeld N, Malhotra AK, Eckelman WC, Pickar D (1997) Schizophrenia is associated with elevated amphetamine-induced synaptic dopamine concentrations: evidence from a novel positron emission tomography method. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 94:2569–2574

Bridges TM, LeBois EP, Hopkins CR, Wood MR, Jones CK, Conn PJ, Lindsley CW (2010a) The antipsychotic potential of muscarinic allosteric modulation. Drug News Perspect 23:229–240

Bridges TM, Lewis LM, Weaver CD, Lindsley CW (2010) Discovery of the first mAChR 5 (M5) selective ligand, an M5 positive allosteric modulator (PAM). Probe Reports from the NIH Molecular Libraries Program. National Center for Biotechnology Information. PMID: 21433383

Buchanan RW, Conley RR, Dickinson D, Ball MP, Feldman S, Gold JM, McMahon RP (2008) Galantamine for the treatment of cognitive impairments in people with schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 165:82–89

Burgard EC, Sarvey JM (1990) Muscarinic receptor activation facilitates the induction of long-term potentiation (LTP) in the rat dentate gyrus. Neurosci Lett 116:34–39

Bymaster FP, Calligaro DO, Falcone JF, Marsh RD, Moore NA, Tye NC, Seeman P, Wong DT (1996) Radioreceptor binding profile of the atypical antipsychotic olanzapine. Neuropsychopharmacology 14:87–96

Bymaster FP, Shannon HE, Rasmussen K, Delapp NW, Mitch CH, Ward JS, Calligaro DO, Ludvigsen TS, Sheardown MJ, Olesen PH, Swedberg MD, Sauerberg P, Fink-Jensen A (1998) Unexpected antipsychotic-like activity with the muscarinic receptor ligand (5R,6R)6-(3-propylthio-1,2,5-thiadiazol-4-yl)-1-azabicyclo[3.2.1]octane. Eur J Pharmacol 356:109–119

Bymaster FP, Nelson DL, DeLapp NW, Falcone JF, Eckols K, Truex LL, Foreman MM, Lucaites VL, Calligaro DO (1999a) Antagonism by olanzapine of dopamine D1, serotonin2, muscarinic, histamine H1 and alpha 1-adrenergic receptors in vitro. Schizophr Res 37:107–122

Bymaster FP, Shannon HE, Rasmussen K, DeLapp NW, Ward JS, Calligaro DO, Mitch CH, Whitesitt C, Ludvigsen TS, Sheardown M, Swedberg M, Rasmussen T, Olesen PH, Jeppesen L, Sauerberg P, Fink-Jensen A (1999b) Potential role of muscarinic receptors in schizophrenia. Life Sci 64:527–534

Bymaster FP, Felder C, Ahmed S, McKinzie D (2002) Muscarinic receptors as a target for drugs treating schizophrenia. Curr Drug Targets CNS Neurol Disord 1:163–181

Bymaster FP, Carter PA, Yamada M, Gomeza J, Wess J, Hamilton SE, Nathanson NM, McKinzie DL, Felder CC (2003a) Role of specific muscarinic receptor subtypes in cholinergic parasympathomimetic responses, in vivo phosphoinositide hydrolysis, and pilocarpine-induced seizure activity. Eur J Neurosci 17:1403–1410

Bymaster FP, Felder CC, Tzavara E, Nomikos GG, Calligaro DO, Mckinzie DL (2003b) Muscarinic mechanisms of antipsychotic atypicality. Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry 27:1125–1143

Calabresi P, Centonze D, Gubellini P, Bernardi G (1999) Activation of M1-like muscarinic receptors is required for the induction of corticostriatal LTP. Neuropharmacology 38:323–326

Cardinal RN, Pennicott DR, Sugathapala CL, Robbins TW, Everitt BJ (2001) Impulsive choice induced in rats by lesions of the nucleus accumbens core. Science 292:2499–2501

Carey GJ, Billard W, Binch H 3rd, Cohen-Williams M, Crosby G, Grzelak M, Guzik H, Kozlowski JA, Lowe DB, Pond AJ, Tedesco RP, Watkins RW, Coffin VL (2001) SCH 57790, a selective muscarinic M(2) receptor antagonist, releases acetylcholine and produces cognitive enhancement in laboratory animals. Eur J Pharmacol 431:189–200

Chan WY, McKinzie DL, Bose S, Mitchell SN, Witkin JM, Thompson RC, Christopoulos A, Lazareno S, Birdsall NJ, Bymaster FP, Felder CC (2008) Allosteric modulation of the muscarinic M4 receptor as an approach to treating schizophrenia. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 105:10978–10983

Cohen LH, Thale T, Tissenbaum MJ (1944) Acetylcholine treatment of schizophrenia. Arch Neurol Psychiatry 51:171–175
Conn PJ, Tamminga C, Schoepp DD, Lindsley C (2008) Schizophrenia: moving beyond monoamine antagonists. Mol Interv 8:99–107
Conn PJ, Jones CK, Lindsley CW (2009) Subtype-selective allosteric modulators of muscarinic receptors for the treatment of CNS disorders. Trends Pharmacol Sci 30:148–155
Crook JM, Dean B, Pavey G, Copolov D (1999) The binding of [3 H]AF-DX 384 is reduced in the caudate-putamen of subjects with schizophrenia. Life Sci 64:1761–1771
Crook JM, Tomaskovic-Crook E, Copolov DL, Dean B (2000) Decreased muscarinic receptor binding in subjects with schizophrenia: a study of the human hippocampal formation. Biol Psychiatry 48:381–388
Crook JM, Tomaskovic-Crook E, Copolov DL, Dean B (2001) Low muscarinic receptor binding in prefrontal cortex from subjects with schizophrenia: a study of Brodmann's areas 8, 9, 10, and 46 and the effects of neuroleptic drug treatment. Am J Psychiatry 158:918–925
Dalley JW, Mar AC, Economidou D, Robbins TW (2008) Neurobehavioral mechanisms of impulsivity: fronto-striatal systems and functional neurochemistry. Pharmacol Biochem Behav 90:250–260
Dasari S, Gulledg AT (2011) M1 and M4 receptors modulate hippocampal pyramidal neurons. J Neurophysiol 105:779–792
Davis KL, Kahn RS, Ko G, Davidson M (1991) Dopamine in schizophrenia: a review and reconceptualization. Am J Psychiatry 148:1474–1486
De Klippel N, Sarre S, Ebinger G, Michotte Y (1993) Effect of M1- and M2-muscarinic drugs on striatal dopamine release and metabolism: an in vivo microdialysis study comparing normal and 6-hydroxydopamine-lesioned rats. Brain Res 630:57–64
De Luca V, Wang H, Squassina A, Wong GW, Yeomans J, Kennedy JL (2004) Linkage of M5 muscarinic and alpha7-nicotinic receptor genes on 15q13 to schizophrenia. Neuropsychobiology 50:124–127
Dean B, Crook JM, Opeskin K, Hill C, Keks N, Copolov DL (1996) The density of muscarinic M1 receptors is decreased in the caudate-putamen of subjects with schizophrenia. Mol Psychiatry 1:54–58
Dean B, McLeod M, Keriakous D, McKenzie J, Scarr E (2002) Decreased muscarinic1 receptors in the dorsolateral prefrontal cortex of subjects with schizophrenia. Mol Psychiatry 7:1083–1091
Dean B, Bymaster FP, Scarr E (2003) Muscarinic receptors in schizophrenia. Curr Mol Med 3:419–426. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7768353
Dean B, Gray L, Keriakous D, Scarr E (2004) A comparison of M1 and M4 muscarinic receptors in the thalamus from control subjects and subjects with schizophrenia. Thalamus Relat Syst 2:287–295
Dencker D, Wortwein G, Weikop P, Jeon J, Thomsen M, Sager TN, Mork A, Woldbye DPD, Wess J, Fink-Jensen A (2011) Involvement of a subpopulation of neuronal M4 muscarinic acetylcholine receptors in the antipsychotic-like effects of the M1/M4 preferring muscarinic receptor agonist xanomeline. J Neurosci 31:5905–5908
Deng C, Huang XF (2005) Decreased density of muscarinic receptors in the superior temporal gyrus in schizophrenia. J Neurosci Res 81:883–890
Dernovsek MZ, Sprah L (2009) Comorbid anxiety in patients with psychosis. Psychiatr Danub 21 (suppl 1):43–50
Edelstein P, Schultz JR, Hirschowitz J, Kanter DR, Garver DL (1981) Physostigmine and lithium response in the schizophrenias. Am J Psychiatry 138:1078–1081
Eglen RM (1996) Muscarinic M2 and M3 receptor function in smooth muscle. Proc West Pharmacol Soc 39:57–60
Felder CC (1995) Muscarinic acetylcholine receptors: Signal transduction through multiple effectors. FASEB J 9:619–625

Felder CC, Bymaster FP, Ward J, DeLapp N (2000) Therapeutic opportunities for muscarinic receptors in the central nervous system. J Med Chem 43:4333–4353

Fisher JT, Vincent SG, Gomeza J, Yamada M, Wess J (2004) Loss of vagally mediated bradycardia and bronchoconstriction in mice lacking M2 or M3 muscarinic acetylcholine receptors. FASEB J 18:711–713

Friedman JL (2004) Cholinergic targets for cognitive enhancement in schizophrenia: focus on cholinesterase inhibitors and muscarinic agonists. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 174:45–53

Gautam D, Heard TS, Cui Y, Miller G, Bloodworth L, Wess J (2004) Cholinergic stimulation of salivary secretion studied with M1 and M3 muscarinic receptor single- and double-knockout mice. Mol Pharmacol 66(2):260–7

Gautam D, Duttaroy A, Cui Y, Han SJ, Deng C, Seeger T, Alzheimer C, Wess J (2006) M1-M3 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor-deficient mice: novel phenotypes. J Mol Neurosci 30:157–160

Gautam D, Jeon J, Li JH, Han SJ, Hamdan FF, Cui Y, Lu H, Deng C, Gavrilova O, Wess J (2008) Metabolic roles of the M3 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor studied with M3 receptor mutant mice: a review. J Recept Signal Transduct Res 28:93–108

Gerber DJ, Sotnikova TD, Gainetdinov RR, Huang SY, Caron MG, Tonegawa S (2001) Hyperactivity, elevated dopaminergic transmission, and response to amphetamine in M1 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor-deficient mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci 98:15312–15317

Gessa GL, Devoto P, Diana M, Flore G, Melis M, Pistis M (2000) Dissociation of haloperidol, clozapine, and olanzapine effects on electrical activity of mesocortical dopamine neurons and dopamine release in the prefrontal cortex. Neuropsychopharmacology 22:642–649

Goff DC, Hill M, Barch D (2011) The treatment of cognitive impairment in schizophrenia. Pharmacol Biochem Behav 99:245–253

Gomeza J, Zhang L, Kostenis E, Felder C, Bymaster F, Brodkin J, Shannon H, Xia B, Deng C, Wess J (1999) Enhancement of D1 dopamine receptor-mediated locomotor stimulation in M(4) muscarinic acetylcholine receptor knockout mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 96:10483–10488

Gould E, Woolf NJ, Butcher LL (1989) Cholinergic projections to the substantia nigra from the pedunculopontine and laterodorsal tegmental nuclei. Neuroscience 28:611–623

Gray JA, Roth BL (2007) Molecular targets for treating cognitive dysfunction in schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 33:1100–1119

Green MF (1996) What are the functional consequences of neurocognitive deficits in schizophrenia? Am J Psychiatry 153:321–330

Gregory KJ, Sexton PM, Christopoulos A (2007) Allosteric Modulation of Muscarinic Acetylcholine Receptors. Curr Neuropharmacol 5:157–167

Grilli M, Patti L, Robino F, Zappettini S, Raiteri M, Marchi M (2008) Release-enhancing presynaptic muscarinic and nicotinic receptors co-exist and interact on dopaminergic nerve endings of rat nucleus accumbens. J Neurochem 105:2205–2213

Gronier B, Rasmussen K (1998) Activation of midbrain presumed dopaminergic neurons by muscarinic cholinergic receptors: an in vivo electrophysiological study in the rat. Br J Pharmacol 124:455–464

Hamilton SE, Nathanson NM (2001) The M1 receptor is required for muscarinic activation of mitogen-activated protein (MAP) kinase in murine cerebral cortical neurons. J Biol Chem 276:15850–15853

Heinrich JN, Butera JA, Carrick T, Kramer A, Kowal D, Lock T, Marquis KL, Pausch MH, Popiolek M, Sun SC, Tseng E, Uveges AJ, Mayer SC (2009) Pharmacological comparison of muscarinic ligands: historical versus more recent muscarinic M1-preferring receptor agonists. Eur J Pharmacol 605:53–56

Heinrichs RW (2005) The primacy of cognition in schizophrenia. Am Psychol 60:229–242

Hill SK, Bishop JR, Palumbo D, Sweeney JA (2010) Effect of second-generation antipsychotics on cognition: current issues and future challenges. Expert Rev Neurother 10:43–57

Holtzman RS (1998) The legacy of Atropos, the fate who cut the thread of life. Anesthesiology 89:241–249

Hyde TM, Crook JM (2001) Cholinergic systems and schizophrenia: primary pathology or epiphenomena? J Chem Neuroanat 22:53–63

Janowsky DS, El-Yousef MK, Davis JM, Sekerke HJ (1973) Antagonistic effects of physostigmine and methylphenidate in man. Am J Psychiatry 130:1370–1376

Jeon J, Dencker D, Wortwein G, Woldbye DP, Cui Y, Davis AA, Levey AI, Schutz G, Sager TN, Mork A, Li C, Deng CX, Fink-Jensen A, Wess J (2010) A subpopulation of neuronal M4 muscarinic acetylcholine receptors plays a critical role in modulating dopamine-dependent behaviors. J Neurosci 30:2396–2405

Johnstone EC, Crow TJ, Ferrier IN, Frith CD, Owens DG, Bourne RC, Gamble SJ (1983) Adverse effects of anticholinergic medication on positive schizophrenic symptoms. Psychol Med 13:513–527

Jones CK, Eberle EL, Shaw DB, McKinzie DL, Shannon HE (2005) Pharmacologic interactions between the muscarinic cholinergic and dopaminergic systems in the modulation of prepulse inhibition in rats. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 312:1055–1063

Jones CK, Brady AE, Davis AA, Xiang Z, Bubser M, Tantawy MN, Kane AS, Bridges TM, Kennedy JP, Bradley SR, Peterson TE, Ansari MS, Baldwin RM, Kessler RM, Deutch AY, Lah JJ, Levey AI, Lindsley CW, Conn PJ (2008) Novel selective allosteric activator of the M1 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor regulates amyloid processing and produces antipsychotic-like activity in rats. J Neurosci 28:10422–10433

Kalkman HO, Subramanian N, Hoyer D (2001) Extended radioligand binding profile of iloperidone: a broad spectrum dopamine/serotonin/norepinephrine receptor antagonist for the management of psychotic disorders. Neuropsychopharmacology 25:904–914

Kapur S, Mamo D (2003) Half a century of antipsychotics and still a central role for dopamine D2 receptors. Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry 27:1081–1090

Keefe RS, Malhotra AK, Meltzer HY, Kane JM, Buchanan RW, Murthy A, Sovel M, Li C, Goldman R (2008) Efficacy and safety of donepezil in patients with schizophrenia or schizoaffective disorder: significant placebo/practice effects in a 12-week, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Neuropsychopharmacology 33:1217–1228

Kitazawa T, Hirama R, Masunaga K, Nakamura T, Asakawa K, Cao J, Teraoka H, Unno T, Komori S, Yamada M, Wess J, Taneike T (2008) Muscarinic receptor subtypes involved in carbachol-induced contraction of mouse uterine smooth muscle. Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch Pharmacol 377:503–513

Leach K, Loiacono RE, Felder CC, McKinzie DL, Mogg A, Shaw DB, Sexton PM, Christopoulos A (2010) Molecular mechanisms of action and in vivo validation of an M4 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor allosteric modulator with potential antipsychotic properties. Neuropsychopharmacology 35:855–869

Lehmann J, Langer SZ (1982) Muscarinic receptors on dopamine terminals in the cat caudate nucleus: neuromodulation of [3H]dopamine release in vitro by endogenous acetylcholine. Brain Res 248:61–69

Levey AI (1993) Immunological localization of m1-m5 muscarinic acetylcholine receptors in peripheral tissues and brain. Life Sci 52:441–448

Levey AI, Edmunds SM, Koliatsos V, Wiley RG, Heilman CJ (1995) Expression of m1-m4 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor proteins in rat hippocampus and regulation by cholinergic innervations. J Neurosci 15:4077–4092

Li XM, Perry KW, Wong DT, Bymaster FP (1998) Olanzapine increases in vivo dopamine and norepinephrine release in rat prefrontal cortex, nucleus accumbens, and striatum. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 136:153–161

Li Z, Bonhaus DW, Huang M, Prus AJ, Dai J, Meltzer HY (2007) AC260584 (4-[3-(4-butylpiperidin-1-yl)-propyl]-7-fluoro-4H-benzo[1,4]oxazin-3-one), a selective muscarinic M1 receptor agonist, increases acetylcholine and dopamine release in rat medial prefrontal cortex and hippocampus. Eur J Pharmacol 572:129–137

Li Z, Snigdha S, Roseman AS, Dai J, Meltzer HY (2008) Effect of muscarinic receptor agonists xanomeline and sabcomeline on acetylcholine and dopamine efflux in the rat brain: comparison with effects of (4-[3-(4-butylpiperidin-1-yl)-propyl]-7-fluoro-4H-benzo[1,4]oxazin-3-one (AC260584) and N-desmethylclozapine. Eur J Pharmacol 596:89–97

Liao DL, Hong CJ, Chen HM, Chen YE, Lee SM, Chang CY, Chen H, Tsai SJ (2003) Association of muscarinic m1 receptor genetic polymorphisms with psychiatric symptoms and cognitive function in schizophrenic patients. Neuropsychobiology 48:72–76

Ma L, Seager MA, Wittmann M, Jacobson M, Bickel D, Burno M, Jones K, Graufelds VK, Xu G, Pearson M, McCampbell A, Gaspar R, Shughrue P, Danziger A, Regan C, Flick R, Pascarella D, Garson S, Doran S, Kreatsoulas C, Veng L, Lindsley CW, Shipe W, Kuduk S, Sur C, Kinney G, Seabrook GR, Ray WJ (2009) Selective activation of the M1 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor achieved by allosteric potentiation. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 106:15950–15955

Maehara S, Satow A, Hikichi H, Ohta H (2011a) Antipsychotic effects of N-desmethylclozapine on sensorimotor gating function in rats: possible involvement of activation of M(1) muscarinic receptors. Eur J Pharmacol 667:242–249

Maehara S, Okuda S, Ohta H (2011b) Ameliorative effect of N-desmethylclozapine in animal models of social deficits and cognitive functions. Brain Res Bull 86:146–151

Mancama D, Arranz MJ, Landau S, Kerwin R (2003) Reduced expression of the muscarinic 1 receptor cortical subtype in schizophrenia. Am J Med Genet B Neuropsychiatr Gene 119B:2–6

Marchi M, Raiteri M (1985) On the presence in the cerebral cortex of muscarinic receptor subtypes which differ in neuronal localization, function and pharmacological properties. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 235:230–233

Marino MJ, Rouse ST, Levey AI, Potter LT, Conn PJ (1998) Activation of the genetically defined m1 muscarinic receptor potentiates N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptor currents in hippocampal pyramidal cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci 95:11465–11470

Marlo JE, Niswender CM, Days EL, Bridges TM, Xiang Y, Rodriguez AL, Shirey JK, Brady AE, Nalywajko T, Luo Q, Austin CA, Williams MB, Kim K, Williams R, Orton D, Brown HA, Lindsley CW, Weaver CD, Conn PJ (2009) Discovery and characterization of novel allosteric potentiators of M1 muscarinic receptors reveals multiple modes of activity. Mol Pharmacol 75:577–588

McArthur RA, Gray J, Schreiber R (2010) Cognitive effects of muscarinic M1 functional agonists in non-human primates and clinical trials. Curr Opin Investig Drugs 11:740–760

McCutchen E, Scheiderer CL, Dobrunz LE, McMahon LL (2006) Coexistence of muscarinic long-term depression with electrically induced long-term potentiation and depression at CA3-CA1 synapses. J Neurophysiol 96:3114–3121

Mendoza MC, Lindenmayer JP (2009) N-desmethylclozapine: is there evidence for its antipsychotic potential? Clin Neuropharmacol 32:154–157

Miyakawa T, Yamada M, Duttaroy A, Wess J (2001) Hyperactivity and intact hippocampus-dependent learning in mice lacking the M1 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor. J Neurosci 21:5239–5250

Moghaddam B, Bunney BS (1990) Acute effects of typical and atypical antipsychotic drugs on the release of dopamine from the prefrontal cortex, nucleus accumbens, and striatum of the rat: an in vivo microdialysis study. J Neurochem 54:1755–1760

Moriya H, Takagi Y, Nakanishi T, Hayashi M, Tani T, Hirotsu I (1999) Affinity profiles of various muscarinic antagonists for cloned human muscarinic acetylcholine receptor (mAChR) subtypes and mAChRs in rat heart and submandibular gland. Life Sci 64:2351–2358

Mrzljak L, Levey AI, Goldman-Rakic PS (1993) Association of m1 and m2 muscarinic receptor proteins with asymmetric synapses in the primate cerebral cortex: morphological evidence for cholinergic modulation of excitatory neurotransmission. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 90:5194–5198

Murphy BP, Chung YC, Park TW, McGorry PD (2006) Pharmacological treatment of primary negative symptoms in schizophrenia: a systematic review. Schizophr Res 88:5–25

Nathan J, Watson J, Lund J, Peters GL, Dodds CM, Lawrence P, Bentley GD, O'Neill BV, Robertson J, Maruff P, Laruelle M, Bullmore ET (2011) The potent M1 receptor allosteric agonist GSK1034702 improves episodic memory in the nicotine abstinence model of cognitive dysfunction in humans. Am Coll Neuropsychopharmacol 36:S236–S237

Neubauer H, Adams M, Redfern P (1975) The role of central cholinergic mechanisms in schizophrenia. Med Hypotheses 1:32–34

Newell KA, Zavitsanou K, Jew SK, Huang XF (2007) Alterations of muscarinic and GABA receptor binding in the posterior cingulate cortex in schizophrenia. Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry 31:225–233

Olianas MC, Maullu C, Onali P (1997) Effects of clozapine on rat striatal muscarinic receptors coupled to inhibition of adenylyl cyclase activity and on the human cloned m4 receptor. Br J Pharmacol 122:401–408

Osterholm RK, Camoriano JK (1982) Transdermal scopolamine psychosis. J Am Med Assoc 247:3081

Perry EK, Perry RH (1995) Acetylcholine and hallucinations: disease-related compared to drug-induced alterations in human consciousness. Brain Cogn 28:240–258

Perry KW, Nisenbaum LK, George CA, Shannon HE, Felder CC, Bymaster FP (2001) The muscarinic agonist xanomeline increases monoamine release and immediate early gene expression in the rat prefrontal cortex. Biol Psychiatry 49:716–725

Pfeifer CC, Jenny EH (1957) The inhibition of conditioned response and counteraction of schizophrenia by muscarinic stimulation of the brain. Ann N Y Acad Sci 66:753–764

Poulin B, Butcher A, McWilliams P, Bourgognon JM, Pawlak R, Kong KC, Bottrill A, Mistry S, Wess J, Rosethorne EM, Charlton SJ, Tobin AB (2010) The M3-muscarinic receptor regulates learning and memory in a receptor phosphorylation/arrestin-dependent manner. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 107:9440–9445

Raedler TJ, Knable MB, Jones DW, Urbina RA, Gorey JG, Lee KS, Egan MF, Coppola R, Weinberger DR (2003) In vivo determination of muscarinic acetylcholine receptor availability in schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 160:118–127

Raedler TJ, Bymaster FP, Tandon R, Copolov D, Dean B (2007) Towards a muscarinic hypothesis of schizophrenia. Mol Psychiatry 12:232–246

Ragozzino ME, Mohler EG, Prior M, Palencia CA, Rozman S (2009) Acetylcholine activity in selective striatal regions supports behavioral flexibility. Neurobiol Learn Mem 91:13–22

Reichenberg A, Weiser M, Caspi A, Knobler HY, Lubin G, Harvey PD, Rabinowitz J, Davidson M (2006) Premorbid intellectual functioning and risk of schizophrenia and spectrum disorders. Schizophr Res 85:49–57

Reichenberg A, Harvey PD, Bowie CR, Mojtabai R, Rabinowitz J, Heaton RK, Bromet E (2009) Neuropsychological function and dysfunction in schizophrenia and psychotic affective disorders. Schizophr Bull 35:1022–1029

Rouse ST, Hamilton SE, Potter LT, Nathanson NM, Conn PJ (2000) Muscarinic-induced modulation of potassium conductances is unchanged in mouse hippocampal pyramidal cells that lack functional M1 receptors. Neurosci Lett 278:61–64

Rowe WB, O'Donnell JP, Pearson D, Rose GM, Meaney MJ, Quirion R (2003) Long-term effects of BIBN-99, a selective muscarinic M2 receptor antagonist, on improving spatial memory performance in aged cognitively impaired rats. Behav Brain Res 145:171–178

Salah-Uddin H, Scarr E, Pavey G, Harris K, Hagan JJ, Dean B, Challiss RA, Watson JM (2009) Altered M(1) muscarinic acetylcholine receptor (CHRM1)-Galpha(q/11) coupling in a schizophrenia endophenotype. Neuropsychopharmacology 34:2156–2166

Sanchez G, Alvares Lde O, Oberholzer MV, Genro B, Quillfeldt J, da Costa JC, Cervenansky C, Jerusalinsky D, Kornisiuk E (2009) M4 muscarinic receptors are involved in modulation of neurotransmission at synapses of Schaffer collaterals on CA1 hippocampal neurons in rats. J Neurosci Res 87:691–700

Sarter M, Bruno JP (1996) Cognitive functions of cortical acetylcholine: toward a unifying hypothesis. Brain Res Brain Res Rev 23:28–46

Sauerberg P, Jeppesen L, Olesen PH, Rasmussen T, Swedberg MD, Sheardown MJ, Fink-Jensen A, Thomsen C, Thøgersen H, Rimvall K, Ward JS, Calligaro DO, DeLapp NW, Bymaster FP, Shannon HE (1998) Muscarinic agonists with antipsychotic-like activity: structure-activity relationships of 1,2,5-thiadiazole analogues with functional dopamine antagonist activity. J Med Chem 41:4378–4384

Scarr E, Keriakous D, Crossland N, Dean B (2006) No change in cortical muscarinic M2, M3 receptors or [35 S]-GTPgammaS binding in schizophrenia. Life Sci 78:1231–1237

Scarr E, Sundram S, Keriakous D, Dean B (2007) Altered hippocampal muscarinic M4, but not M1, receptor expression from subjects with schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 61:1161–1170

Scarr E, Cowie TF, Kanellakis S, Sundram S, Pantelis C, Dean B (2009) Decreased cortical muscarinic receptors define a subgroup of subjects with schizophrenia. Mol Psychiatry 14:1017–1023

Schmidt LS, Miller AD, Lester DB, Bay-Richter C, Schulein C, Frikke-Schmidt H, Wess J, Blaha CD, Woldbye DP, Fink-Jensen A, Wortwein G (2010) Increased amphetamine-induced locomotor activity, sensitization, and accumbal dopamine release in M5 muscarinic receptor knockout mice. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 207:547–558

Schmidt LS, Thomsen M, Weikop P, Dencker D, Wess J, Woldbye DP, Wortwein G, Fink-Jensen A (2011) Increased cocaine self-administration in M4 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor knockout mice. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 216:367–378

Seeger T, Fedorova I, Zheng F, Miyakawa T, Koustova E, Gomeza J, Basile AS, Alzheimer C, Wess J (2004) M2 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor knock-out mice show deficits in behavioral flexibility, working memory, and hippocampal plasticity. J Neurosci 24:10117–10127

Shahid M, Walker GB, Zorn SH, Wong EH (2009) Asenapine: a novel psychopharmacologic agent with a unique human receptor signature. J Psychopharmacol 23:65–73

Shannon HE, Rasmussen K, Bymaster FP, Hart JC, Peters SC, Swedberg MD, Jeppesen L, Sheardown MJ, Sauerberg P, Fink-Jensen A (2000) Xanomeline, an M(1)/M(4) preferring muscarinic cholinergic receptor agonist, produces antipsychotic-like activity in rats and mice. Schizophr Res 42:249–259

Shapiro DA, Renock S, Arrington E, Chiodo LA, Liu LX, Sibley DR, Roth BL, Mailman R (2003) Aripiprazole, a novel atypical antipsychotic drug with a unique and robust pharmacology. Neuropsychopharmacology 28:1400–1411

Sheffler DJ, Williams R, Bridges TM, Xiang Z, Kane AS, Byun NE, Jadhav S, Mock MM, Zheng F, Lewis LM, Jones CK, Niswender CM, Weaver CD, Lindsley CW, Conn PJ (2009) A novel selective muscarinic acetylcholine receptor subtype 1 antagonist reduces seizures without impairing hippocampus-dependent learning. Mol Pharmacol 76:356–368

Shekhar A, Potter WZ, Lightfoot J, Lienemann J, Dubé S, Mallinckrodt C, Bymaster FP, McKinzie DL, Felder CC (2008) Selective muscarinic receptor agonist xanomeline as a novel treatment approach for schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 165:1033–1039

Shinoe T, Matsui M, Taketo MM, Manabe T (2005) Modulation of synaptic plasticity by physiological activation of M1 muscarinic acetylcholine receptors in the mouse hippocampus. J Neurosci 25:11194–11200

Shirey JK, Xiang Z, Orton D, Brady AE, Johnson KA, Williams R, Ayala JE, Rodriguez AL, Wess J, Weaver D, Niswender CM, Conn PJ (2008) An allosteric potentiator of M4 mAChR modulates hippocampal synaptic transmission. Nat Chem Biol 4:42–50

Shirey JK, Brady AE, Jones PJ, Davis AA, Bridges TM, Kennedy JP, Jadhav SB, Menon UN, Xiang Z, Watson ML, Christian EP, Doherty JJ, Quirk MC, Snyder DH, Lah JJ, Levey AI, Nicolle MM, Lindsley CW, Conn PJ (2009) A selective allosteric potentiator of the M1 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor increases activity of medial prefrontal cortical neurons and restores impairments in reversal learning. J Neurosci 29:14271–14286

Singh MM, Kay SR, Opler LA (1987) Anticholinergic-neuroleptic antagonism in terms of positive and negative symptoms of schizophrenia: implications for psychobiological subtyping. Psychol Med 17:39–48

Spalding TA, Trotter C, Skjaerbaek N, Messier TL, Currier EA, Burstein ES, Li D, Hacksell U, Brann MR (2002) Discovery of an ectopic activation site on the M(1) muscarinic receptor. Mol Pharmacol 61:1297–1302

Stanhope KJ, Mirza NR, Bickerdike MJ, Bright JL, Harrington NR, Hesselink MB, Kennett GA, Lightowler S, Sheardown MJ, Syed R, Upton RL, Wadsworth G, Weiss SM, Wyatt A (2001) J Pharmacol Exp Ther 299:782–792

Steidl S, Yeomans JS (2009) M5 muscarinic receptor knockout mice show reduced morphine-induced locomotion but increased locomotion after cholinergic antagonism in the ventral tegmental area. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 328:263–275

Stengel PW, Gomeza J, Wess J, Cohen ML (2000) M(2) and M(4) receptor knockout mice: muscarinic receptor function in cardiac and smooth muscle in vitro. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 292:877–885

Stengel PW, Yamada M, Wess J, Cohen ML (2002) M(3)-receptor knockout mice: muscarinic receptor function in atria, stomach fundus, urinary bladder, and trachea. Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol 282:R1443–R1449

Stockton ME, Rasmussen K (1996) Electrophysiological effects of olanzapine, a novel atypical antipsychotic, on A9 and A10 dopamine neurons. Neuropsychopharmacology 14:97–105

Struckmann N, Schwering S, Wiegand S, Gschnell A, Yamada M, Kummer W, Wess J, Haberberger RV (2003) Role of muscarinic receptor subtypes in the constriction of peripheral airways: studies on receptor-deficient mice. Mol Pharmacol 64:1444–1451

Sur C, Mallorga PJ, Wittmann M, Jacobson MA, Pascarella D, Williams JB, Brandish PE, Pettibone DJ, Scolnick EM, Conn PJ (2003) N-desmethylclozapine, an allosteric agonist at muscarinic 1 receptor, potentiates N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor activity. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 100(23):13674–9

Tanahashi Y, Unno T, Matsuyama H, Ishii T, Yamada M, Wess J, Komori S (2009) Multiple muscarinic pathways mediate the suppression of voltage-gated Ca2+ channels in mouse intestinal smooth muscle cells. Br J Pharmacol 158:1874–1883

Tandon R, Greden JF (1989) Cholinergic hyperactivity and negative schizophrenic symptoms. A model of cholinergic/dopaminergic interactions in schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 46:745–753

Tandon R, Shipley JE, Greden JF, Mann NA, Eisner WH, Goodson JA (1991) Muscarinic cholinergic hyperactivity in schizophrenia. Relationship to positive and negative symptoms. Schizophr Res 4:23–30

Taylor P, Brown HB (1989) Acetylcholine. In: Siegel GJ et al (eds) Basic neurochemistry: molecular, cellular, and medical aspects, 4th edn. Raven, New York, pp 203–231

Thomas RL, Langmead CJ, Wood MD, Challiss RA (2009) Contrasting effects of allosteric and orthosteric agonists on m1 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor internalization and down-regulation. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 331:1086–1095

Thomas DR, Dada A, Jones GA, Deisz RA, Gigout S, Langmead CJ, Werry TD, Hendry N, Hagan JJ, Davies CH, Watson JM (2010) N-desmethylclozapine (NDMC) is an antagonist at the human native muscarinic M(1) receptor. Neuropharmacology 58:1206–1214

Thomsen M, Woldbye DP, Wörtwein G, Fink-Jensen A, Wess J, Caine SB (2005) Reduced cocaine self-administration in muscarinic M5 acetylcholine receptor-deficient mice. J Neurosci 25:8141–8149

Thomsen M, Wortwein G, Fink-Jensen A, Woldbye DP, Wess J, Caine SB (2007) Decreased prepulse inhibition and increased sensitivity to muscarinic, but not dopaminergic drugs in M5 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor knockout mice. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 192:97–110

Thomsen M, Wess J, Fulton BS, Fink-Jensen A, Caine SB (2010) Modulation of prepulse inhibition through both M(1) and M(4) muscarinic receptors in mice. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 208:401–416

Tollefson GD, Sanger TM, Lu Y, Thieme ME (1998) Depressive signs and symptoms in schizophrenia: a prospective blinded trial of olanzapine and haloperidol. Arch Gen Psychiatry 55:250–258

Toru M, Watanabe S, Shibuya H, Nishikawa T, Noda K, Mitsushio H, Ichikawa H, Kurumaji A, Takashima M, Matago N et al (1988) Neurotransmitters, receptors and neuropeptides in post-mortem brains of chronic schizophrenic patients. Acta Psychiatr Scand 78:121–137

Tzavara ET, Bymaster FP, Felder CC, Wade M, Gomeza J, Wess J, McKinzie DL, Nomikos GG (2003) Dysregulated hippocampal acetylcholine neurotransmission and impaired cognition in M2, M4 and M2/M4 muscarinic receptor knockout mice. Mol Psychiatry 8:673–679

Tzavara ET, Bymaster FP, Davis RJ, Wade MR, Perry KW, Wess J, McKinzie DL, Felder C, Nomikos GG (2004) M4 muscarinic receptors regulate the dynamics of cholinergic and dopaminergic neurotransmission: relevance to the pathophysiology and treatment of related CNS pathologies. FASEB J 18:1410–1412

Veroff AE, Bodick NC, Offen WW, Sramek JJ, Cutler NR (1998) Efficacy of xanomeline in Alzheimer disease: cognitive improvement measured using the Computerized Neuropsychological Test Battery (CNTB). Alzheimer Dis Assoc Disord 12:304–312

Vilaró MT, Palacios JM, Mengod G (1990) Localization of m5 muscarinic receptor mRNA in rat brain examined by in situ hybridization histochemistry. Neurosci Lett 114:154–159

Vilaró MT, Wiederhold KH, Palacios JM, Mengod G (1991) Muscarinic cholinergic receptors in the rat caudate-putamen and olfactory tubercle belong predominantly to the m4 class: in situ hybridization and receptor autoradiography evidence. Neuroscience 40:159–167

Volz TJ, Farnsworth SJ, Rowley SD, Hanson GR, Fleckenstein AE (2008) Methylphenidate-induced increases in vesicular dopamine sequestration and dopamine release in the striatum: the role of muscarinic and dopamine D2 receptors. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 327:335–340

Wang H, Ng K, Hayes D, Gao X, Forster G, Blaha C, Yeomans J (2004) Decreased amphetamine-induced locomotion and improved latent inhibition in mice mutant for the M5 muscarinic receptor gene found in the human 15q schizophrenia region. Neuropsychopharmacology 29:2126–2139

Watanabe S, Nishikawa T, Takashima M, Toru M (1983) Increased muscarinic cholinergic receptors in prefrontal cortices of medicated schizophrenics. Life Sci 33:2187–2196

Watson J, Brough S, Coldwell MC, Gager T, Ho M, Hunter AJ, Jerman J, Middlemiss DN, Riley GJ, Brown AM (1998) Functional effects of the muscarinic receptor agonist, xanomeline, at 5-HT1 and 5-HT2 receptors. Br J Pharmacol 125:1413–1420

Watt ML, Schober DA, Hitchcock S, Liu B, Chesterfield AK, McKinzie D, Felder CC (2011) Pharmacological characterization of LY593093, an M1 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor-selective partial orthosteric agonist. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 338:622–632

Weiner DM, Levey AI, Brann MR (1990) Expression of muscarinic acetylcholine and dopamine receptor mRNAs in rat basal ganglia. Proc Natl Acad Sci 87:7050–7054

Weiner DM, Meltzer HY, Veinbergs I, Donohue EM, Spalding TA, Smith TT, Mohell N, Harvey SC, Lameh J, Nash N, Vanover KE, Olsson R, Jayathilake K, Lee M, Levey AI, Hacksell U, Burstein ES, Davis RE, Brann MR (2004) The role of M1 muscarinic receptor agonism of N-desmethylclozapine in the unique clinical effects of clozapine. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 177:207–216

Wess J (2012) Novel muscarinic receptor mutant mouse models. Handbook Exp Pharmacol 208:95–117

Wess J, Eglen RM, Gautam D (2007) Muscarinic acetylcholine receptors: mutant mice provide new insights for drug development. Nat Rev Drug Discov 6:721–733

Westermeyer J (2006) Comorbid schizophrenia and substance abuse: a review of epidemiology and course. Am J Addict 15:345–355

Woolf NJ (1991) Cholinergic systems in mammalian brain and spinal cord. Prog Neurobiol 37:475–524

World Health Organization (2004) The global burden of disease. 2004 update. http://www.who.int/healthinfo/global_burden_disease/GBD_report_2004update_full.pdf

Yamada M, Miyakawa T, Duttaroy A, Yamanaka A, Moriguchi T, Makita R, Ogawa M, Chou CJ, Xia B, Crawley JN, Felder CC, Deng CX, Wess J (2001) Mice lacking the M3 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor are hypophagic and lean. Nature 410:207–212

Yamada M, Basile AS, Fedorova I, Zhang W, Duttaroy A, Cui Y, Lamping KG, Faraci FM, Deng CX, Wess J (2003) Novel insights into M5 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor function by the use of gene targeting technology. Life Sci 74:345–353

Yamasaki M, Matsui M, Watanabe M (2010) Preferential localization of muscarinic M1 receptor on dendritic shaft and spine of cortical pyramidal cells and its anatomical evidence for volume transmission. J Neurosci 30:4408–4418

Yasuda RP, Ciesla W, Flores LR, Wall SJ, Li M, Satkus SA, Weisstein JS, Spagnola BV, Wolfe BB (1993) Development of antisera selective for m4 and m5 muscarinic cholinergic receptors: distribution of m4 and m5 receptors in rat brain. Mol Pharmacol 43:149–157

Yeomans JS (1995) Role of tegmental cholinergic neurons in dopaminergic activation, antimuscarinic psychosis and schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 12:3–16

Zavitsanou K, Katsifis A, Mattner F, Huang XF (2004) Investigation of m1/m4 muscarinic receptors in the anterior cingulate cortex in schizophrenia, bipolar disorder, and major depression disorder. Neuropsychopharmacology 29:619–625

Zavitsanou K, Katsifis A, Huang XF (2005) M2/M4 muscarinic receptor binding in the anterior cingulate cortex in schizophrenia and mood disorders. Brain Res Bull 65:397–403

Zeng XP, Le F, Richelson E (1997) Muscarinic m4 receptor activation by some atypical antipsychotic drugs. Eur J Pharmacol 321:349–354

Zhang W, Yamada M, Gomeza J, Basile AS, Wess J (2002) Multiple muscarinic acetylcholine receptor subtypes modulate striatal dopamine release, as studied with M1-M5 muscarinic receptor knock-out mice. J Neurosci 22:6347–6352

Zorn SH, Jones SB, Ward KM, Liston DR (1994) Clozapine is a potent and selective muscarinic M4 receptor agonist. Eur J Pharmacol 269:R1–R2

# Glutamatergic Synaptic Dysregulation in Schizophrenia: Therapeutic Implications

**Joseph T. Coyle, Alo Basu, Michael Benneyworth, Darrick Balu, and Glenn Konopaske**

## Contents



J.T. Coyle (✉) • A. Basu • M. Benneyworth • D. Balu • G. Konopaske
Department of Psychiatry, Harvard Medical School, The Laboratory of Molecular Psychiatry and Neuroscience, McLean Hospital, Belmont, MA 02478, USA
e-mail: joseph_coyle@hms.harvard.edu

M.A. Geyer and G. Gross (eds.), *Novel Antischizophrenia Treatments*,
Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 213,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-25758-2_10, 

**Abstract** Schizophrenia affects approximately 1% of the population and continues to be associated with poor outcome because of the limited efficacy of and noncompliance with existing antipsychotic medications. An alternative hypothesis invoking the excitatory neurotransmitter, glutamate, arose out of clinical observations that NMDA receptor antagonists, the dissociative anesthetics like ketamine, can replicate in normal individuals the full range of symptoms of schizophrenia including psychosis, negative symptoms, and cognitive impairments. Low dose ketamine can also re-create a number of physiologic abnormalities characteristic of schizophrenia. *Postmortem* studies have revealed abnormalities in endogenous modulators of NMDA receptors in schizophrenia as well as components of a postsynaptic density where NMDA receptors are localized. Gene association studies have revealed several genes that affect NMDA receptor function whose allelic variants are associated with increased risk for schizophrenia including genes encoding D-amino acid oxidase, its modulator G72, dysbindin, and neuregulin. The parvalbumin-positive, fast-firing GABAergic interneurons that provide recurrent inhibition to cortical-limbic pyramidal neurons seem to be most sensitive to NMDA receptor hypofunction. As a consequence, disinhibition of glutamatergic efferents disrupts cortical processing, causing cognitive impairments and negative symptoms, and drives subcortical dopamine release, resulting in psychosis. Drugs designed to correct the cortical-limbic dysregulated glutamatergic neurotransmission show promise for reducing negative and cognitive symptoms of schizophrenia as well as its positive symptoms.

**Keywords** Schizophrenia • NMDA receptors • Glutamate • GABA • Ketamine • D-Serine • Dopamine hypothesis • D-Amino acid oxidase • Neuregulin • Dysbindin

## 1 Introduction

Schizophrenia affects approximately 1% of the population and is the seventh most costly medical disorder to Society (Wu et al. 2005). With an age of symptomatic onset in late adolescence–young adulthood, the majority of patients suffer lifelong disabling symptoms that interfere with employment and stable interpersonal relationships. The persistent disability of schizophrenia, despite over 50 years of innovation in antipsychotic drug development, suggests that the hypothesized abnormality in dopaminergic neurotransmission (Seeman 1987) does not account for the primary pathophysiolgy of the disorder. Indeed, three separate large-scale studies indicate that the second-generation or atypical antipsychotics, which act at dopamine receptors, are no more efficacious or tolerable than first-generation typical antipsychotics (Lieberman et al. 2005; Jones et al. 2006; Sikich et al. 2008). And both typical and atypical antipsychotics are associated with limited clinical response and poor compliance.

### *1.1 Dopamine Hypothesis*

The dopamine hypothesis posits excessive activation of dopamine $D_2$ receptors as the primary pathophysiologic feature of schizophrenia (Seeman 1987). The hypothesis is based on two critical observations: (1) the clinical potency of antipsychotics in schizophrenia correlates with their affinity for the dopamine $D_2$ receptor, and (2) high doses of stimulants, which release brain dopamine, cause psychosis (Snyder 1981; Seeman 2002). The major limitation of the hypothesis is that typical and atypical antipsychotics, with the possible exception of clozapine, have negligible effects on cognitive impairments and negative symptoms (Meltzer 1997; Davis et al. 2003). Negative symptoms include emotional blunting, reduced motivation/drive, and asociality. Cognitive symptoms often affect executive function, attention, and working memory. It is the cognitive impairments and negative symptoms that result in persistent disability (Evans et al. 2004). Furthermore, the severity of negative symptoms and cognitive impairments correlates with the degree of cortical atrophy and ventricular enlargement (Kirkpatrick et al. 2001; Ho et al. 2003; Antonova et al. 2005; Mitelman et al. 2007; Hazlett et al. 2008), a pathologic process that proceeds for 5–10 years after onset of psychosis. Interestingly, this progressive loss of cortical volume does not appear to be due to neuronal degeneration but rather to neuronal atrophy (Pierri et al. 2001; Thune et al. 2001). Thus, a plausible theory for the pathophysiology of schizophrenia must take into account cortical atrophy and cognitive symptoms.

## 2 Origins of the Glutamate Hypothesis: Dissociative Anesthetics and Schizophrenia

Since dissociative anesthetics including ketamine and phencyclidine were first introduced 40 years ago, it has been appreciated that they can produce in adults a clinical picture closely resembling, if not indistinguishable, from schizophrenia, especially if they are chronically abused (Luby et al. 1959; Itil et al. 1967). Lodge and colleagues discovered that among their many other neuropharmacologic effects, the dissociative anesthetics are use-dependent, noncompetitive antagonists of the NMDA subtype of the glutamate receptor family (Anis et al. 1983). Ligand binding studies further clarified the NMDA receptor localization of the "PCP receptor" (Fagg 1987). Javitt and Zukin noted that the concentration of phencyclidine associated with psychosis was in the same range that would bind to the NMDA receptor, and proposed that schizophrenia might result from hypofunction of NMDA receptors (Javitt and Zukin 1991). However, there were concerns with this causal interpretation, an alternative explanation being that individuals who abused PCP or ketamine might be at high risk for a schizophrenic-type reaction (Bowers and Swigar 1983).

## 2.1 Ketamine Challenge

In a landmark study, Krystal et al. (1994) directly addressed this concern by demonstrating that infusion of low, sub-hypnotic doses of ketamine into normal volunteers in a laboratory setting produced negative symptoms including blunted affect and withdrawal and rather selective impairments in memory and cognition that are specifically associated with schizophrenia. Acute administration of ketamine in normal subjects did not produce a robust re-creation of positive symptoms such as hallucinations, although paranoia, thought disorder, and loose associations were evident. Nevertheless, patients with schizophrenia who were not receiving antipsychotics exhibited a significant exacerbation of positive symptoms that were unique to the given patient after administration of low dose ketamine (Lahti et al. 2001). The remarkable similarities in the subtle cognitive abnormalities observed in schizophrenia and the effects of low dose ketamine in normal volunteers were elaborated upon by others (Adler et al. 1999; Newcomer et al. 1999).

Subsequent studies using the low dose ketamine paradigm in normal subjects demonstrated that it also produced physiologic abnormalities associated with schizophrenia. These abnormalities, which are not considered in the clinical diagnosis of schizophrenia, are nonetheless reflective of the underlying pathology of the disease, and are therefore called "endophenotypes." Smooth pursuit and anti-saccade eye tracking abnormalities are an endophenotype of schizophrenia (Holzman et al. 1988). Low dose ketamine disrupts eye tracking in normal individuals (Radant et al. 1998). PET imaging studies that monitor the displacement of [$^{11}$C]raclopride by endogenous dopamine demonstrated increased dopamine release in the striatum with an amphetamine challenge in schizophrenia patients as compared to controls (Kegeles et al. 2000). Pretreatment with a low dose ketamine caused healthy control subjects to also exhibit increased dopamine release with amphetamine challenge as compared to placebo-treated controls. Sensory gating abnormalities are common in schizophrenia and reflect abnormal cortical and subcortical information processing.

Such abnormalities can be studied noninvasively in a laboratory setting in humans as well as animals. For example, prepulse inhibition (PPI) of the acoustic startle response is observed when the response to a startling stimulus is reduced when preceded by a few milliseconds by a non-startling tone. Individuals with schizophrenia exhibit impaired PPI (Braff et al. 1978). Treatment of experimental animals such as rodents with ketamine causes disruption in PPI in an analogous fashion to what is observed in schizophrenia (Geyer et al. 2001). Surprisingly, normal human adults exhibit enhanced PPI when given an acute ketamine challenge (Braff et al. 2001). While this discrepancy might suggest that PPI deficits in schizophrenics are not due to NMDA receptor hypofunction, recent research indicates that acute ketamine challenge results in a rebound increase in glutamatergic neurotransmission (Li et al. 2010). Individuals with schizophrenia

exhibit behavioral evidence of temporal information processing deficits and reduced mismatch negativity (MMN) in sensory event-related brain potentials (Javitt et al. 1993), which can be produced in healthy control subjects by low dose ketamine (Umbricht et al. 2000).

## 3 Neurochemistry of the Glutamatergic Synapse in Schizophrenia

Many features of the pathophysiology of schizophrenia implicate neuroanatomic, organizational, and functional features of the corticolimbic glutamatergic system. Glutamatergic pyramidal cells are the projecting neurons that interconnect prefrontal cortex, temporal cortex/hippocampus, and thalamus, regions of the brain which structural and functional brain imaging studies have demonstrated to exhibit abnormalities in schizophrenia (Hulshoff and Kahn 2008). Furthermore, the NMDA subtype of glutamate receptor plays multiple roles in brain functions that have been implicated in the cellular pathology of schizophrenia. These include regulating neuronal migration (Komuro and Rakic 1993), neuronal differentiation (Pearce et al. 1987), response to trophic factors (Black 1999), functional plasticity such as long-term potentiation (LTP) (Harris et al. 1984) of synaptic transmission, and the development of dendritic spines (Yasumatsu et al. 2008). Abnormal migration of cortical GABAergic interneurons (Akbarian et al. 1993), neuronal atrophy (Sweet et al. 2004), and reduced dendritic spines (Sweet et al. 2009) have all been observed in schizophrenia.

### *3.1 NMDA Receptor Modulators*

*Postmortem* studies have provided convincing evidence that disruption in the modulation of NMDA receptors is part of the pathophysiology of schizophrenia. In addition to the glutamate recognition site on NR2 subunit, the NR1 subunit has a binding site for glycine and D-serine (also known as the *glycine B receptor* to distinguish it from the inhibitory glycine receptor) (Kuryatov et al. 1994) that must be occupied in order for glutamate to open the ion channel (Johnson and Ascher 1987; Kleckner and Dingledine 1988). D-Serine is a full agonist at the glycine B receptor on the NMDA receptor (Matsui et al. 1995). Tissue levels of D-serine are determined by the activity of its synthetic enzyme, serine racemase, and the activity of its catabolic enzyme D-amino acid oxidase (Schell et al. 1995; Wolosker et al. 1999a, b). Notably, serine racemase expression is high in the corticolimbic regions of the brain whereas D-amino acid oxidase expression is quite low in these regions (Hashimoto et al. 1993; Schell et al. 1995). *Postmortem* studies have

demonstrated increased D-amino acid oxidase activity and transcript levels in subregions of the cerebral cortex in subjects with a diagnosis of schizophrenia as compared to controls or those with a diagnosis of bipolar disorder (Kapoor et al. 2006; Madeira et al. 2008; Burnet et al. 2008). The increases in D-amino acid oxidase in schizophrenia vary from approximately 30% to twofold and are unrelated to neuroleptic exposure. In contrast, serine racemase activity and mRNA are relatively unaffected in schizophrenia. Measurement of the cerebral spinal fluid (CSF) of living subjects with schizophrenia has revealed reduced levels of D-serine, although *postmortem* brain tissue levels do not appear abnormal (Hashimoto et al. 2005; Bendikov et al. 2006). However, *postmortem* tissue levels of D-serine may imperfectly reflect its functional status since the regulation of its synthesis is dynamic and influenced by presynaptic glutamatergic neuronal activity (Kim et al. 2005).

Glutamate carboxypeptidase II (CGPII) hydrolyzes the neuropeptide *N*-acetylaspartyl glutamate (NAAG) (Robinson et al. 1987), which is co-localized with and released by corticolimbic glutamatergic pyramidal neurons (Passani et al. 1997; Bergeron et al. 2005) as well as components of other neuronal systems (noradrenergic locus coeruleus neurons, cholinergic motor neurons, limbic GABAergic neurons) (Berger et al. 1999). NAAG selectively inhibits NMDA receptor currents in a glycine-reversible fashion (Bergeron et al. 2005). It also is an agonist at mGluR3 receptors that downregulate glutamate release (Bischofberger and Schild 1996; Wroblewska et al. 1997), although recent findings in the mouse perforant pathway contradict these conclusions (Fricker et al. 2009). Five *postmortem* studies carried out with different patient cohorts have demonstrated reduced enzymatic activity, protein levels, and mRNA for GCPII in corticolimbic structures in schizophrenia (Tsai et al. 1995; Hakak et al. 2001; Tkachev et al. 2007; Guilarte et al. 2008; Ghose et al. 2004, 2009).

Kynurenic acid is a metabolite of tryptophan that inhibits NMDA receptors by blocking the glycine B receptor site (Birch et al. 1988; Mayer et al. 1988). It is also an antagonist of the alpha 7-nicotinic receptor (Hilmas et al. 2001), which has also been implicated in schizophrenia (Martin and Freedman 2007). Systemic treatment of rats with kynurenic acid, like dissociative anesthetics, causes dopaminergic neurons in the ventral tegmental area (VTA) to exhibit burst firing, which can be reversed by treatment with the partial glycine B receptor agonist, D-cycloserine (DCS) (Erhardt and Engberg 2002). A *postmortem* study revealed elevated kynurenic acid levels in the prefrontal cortex of schizophrenics as compared to controls (Schwarcz et al. 2001). Several studies of CSF have shown elevated levels of kynurenic acid in schizophrenia (Erhardt et al. 2001, 2003; Nilsson et al. 2005). Kynurenine 3-monooxygenase, an enzyme critical for kynurenic acid disposition, is downregulated in the cortex in schizophrenia, and its gene is associated with increased risk for the disorder (Wonodi et al. 2011). Preclinical studies involving both pharmacologic manipulations as well mouse mutants demonstrate that modest changes in endogenous levels of kynurenic acid unequivocally alter NMDA receptor function (Coyle 2006).

### 3.2 *Postsynaptic Density in Schizophrenia*

NMDA receptors are anchored in the postsynaptic density (PSD), a protein complex with which over a 100 other proteins are associated (Dosemeci et al. 2007). Postmortem studies have measured subunits of the NMDA receptors as well as components of the PSD. Meador-Woodruff and colleagues described reductions in NMDA, AMPA, and kainate receptor subunits in the thalamus (Ibrahim et al. 2000) as well as PSD-95, SAP102, and NF-L; PSD-95 and NF-L were reduced in the anterior cingulate cortex (Kristiansen and Meador-Woodruff 2005; Kristiansen et al. 2006), the latter which is also affected in bipolar disorder. Decreases in NR2B and PSD-95 in the endoplasmic reticulum in the prefrontal cortex in schizophrenic subjects suggest altered processing (Kristiansen et al. 2010). Toyooka et al. similarly found significant reductions in the expression of SAP 97 in prefrontal cortex and SAP102 in hippocampus and in the prefrontal cortex in schizophrenia (Ohnuma et al. 2000; Toyooka et al. 2002). The most consistent changes involved NF-L, SAP102, PSD-95, and PSD-93, which were reported to be reduced in the anterior cingulate cortex and the dorsolateral prefrontal cortex (DLPFC). An increased transcript expression was associated with decreased protein expression of PSD-95. Other synaptic components involved in glutamatergic neurotransmission are also affected in schizophrenia. The excitatory amino acid transporters (EAAT1 and 2) are elevated in the thalamus (Huerta et al. 2006), which should further compromise glutamatergic neurotransmission. Consistent reductions in the kainic acid receptor have been described using ligand binding (Scarr et al. 2005) and in situ hybridization or RT-PCR of mRNA encoding its subunits (Porter et al. 1997; Beneyto et al. 2007) in studies of prefrontal cortex and hippocampus in schizophrenia (Sokolov 1998; Wilson et al. 2006). Furthermore, immunohistochemical studies revealed significant reductions in the density of GluR5, 6, 7immunoreactivity on the pyramidal cell dendrites found in both the *stratum radiatum* as well as the *stratum moleculare* of hippocampal sectors CA1, 2, and 3 in patients with schizophrenia (Benes et al. 2001). In the anterior cingulate cortex, the density of GluR5 expressing interneurons was reduced by ~40% in schizophrenia and in bipolar disorder (Woo et al. 2007). These findings are consistent with the results of case–control and association studies that implicate genes encoding the kainic acid receptor subunits and risk for schizophrenia (Pickard et al. 2006; Begni et al. 2002).

## 4 Are There Sensitive Developmental Periods for NMDAR Hypofunction in Schizophrenia Risk?

The ~50% concordance rate for schizophrenia in monozygotic twins indicates that the disease is both genetic and environmental in etiology (Cardno and Gottesman 2000). It is therefore important to consider environmental factors and their

biological substrates. In contrast to the modest amount of risk conferred by any individual putative schizophrenia gene identified to date, environmental events such as prenatal influenza infection and severe maternal stress increase schizophrenia risk ~3–5-fold (Tandon et al. 2008). These strong epidemiological findings point to a sensitive period in brain development during which the fetus may be more vulnerable to accumulating insults that predispose the individual to schizophrenia in adulthood. Though the specific biological mechanisms of these insults have not yet been elucidated, the multiple roles of NMDAR-mediated neurotransmission in brain development of preclinical species are widely documented (Shatz 1990; Scheetz and Constantine-Paton 1994; Penn 2001).

### *4.1 Perinatal NMDA Receptor Antagonist Models*

Application of NMDAR antagonists during early postnatal development results in many phenomena related to the schizophrenia endophenotype in adulthood. Based on detailed modeling of the timing of key neurodevelopmental events, the first two postnatal weeks in the rat are considered roughly equivalent to human fetal development at the second trimester of pregnancy (Clancy et al. 2001). Perinatal blockade of NMDARs with PCP or MK-801 within this time frame has been shown to cause deficits in PPI of the acoustic startle reflex in adult rats (Harris et al. 2003; Takahashi et al. 2006). Elevated PCP- and amphetamine-induced hyperlocomotion have been observed during adolescence and adulthood in rats treated perinatally with PCP, indicating dysregulation of glutamatergic and dopaminergic neurotransmission, respectively (Wang et al. 2001; Depoortère et al. 2005). Early postnatal MK-801 treatment results in persistent cognitive deficits in set-shifting and working memory (Stefani and Moghaddam 2005). Treatment with PCP during this period has resulted in deficits in spatial reference, reversal, and spatial working memory, during adolescence and adulthood (Sircar 2003; Andersen and Puzet 2004). Encouraging for the prospects of novel therapeutics, some adult deficits have been attenuated by treatment with D-serine or a selective inhibitor of glycine transporter-1, both of which result in increased NMDAR-mediated neurotransmission (Depoortère et al. 2005; Andersen and Puzet 2004).

Early postnatal NMDAR blockade also recapitulates a pathological hallmark of schizophrenia, a decrease in parvalbumin (PV)-positive interneurons in hippocampus and cortex (Beasley et al. 2002; Zhang and Reynolds 2002; Knable et al. 2004; Reynolds et al. 2004). Transient postnatal administration of PCP resulted in a selective decrease in PV-positive neurons in adult primary somatosensory, motor, and retrosplenial cortices (Wang et al. 2008). Prenatal administration of MK-801 resulted in a selective decrease in PV-positive neurons in adult medial prefrontal cortex (Abekawa et al. 2007). Although selective reduction in PV can be achieved by subacute administration of NMDAR blockers in adult rodents (Zhang et al. 2008), the findings that this neuropathology can be induced by perinatal

administration and be evident several weeks later in the mature brain demonstrate that the developing brain is vulnerable to NMDAR hypofunction and that this type of manipulation leaves a lasting lesion.

## *4.2 Adolescence and NMDA Receptors*

If the perinatal period is the first environmental "risk window" for schizophrenia, late adolescence/early adulthood is the next phase of the disease in which neurodevelopmental events are of acute interest, as this is the period during which psychotic symptoms typically emerge. Onset of schizophrenia corresponds to the timing of significant pruning of cortical synapses that are located on dendritic spines (Bourgeois et al. 1994). *Postmortem* studies have shown that the density of these spines on layer III frontal and temporal cortical pyramidal neurons is significantly reduced in schizophrenia (Lewis 1997; Garey et al. 1998; Glantz and Lewis 2000). The pruning process is regulated by neuronal activity (Segal and Andersen 2000), and one can hypothesize multiple ways in which the pathological and genetic findings related to NMDA-mediated neurotransmission might contribute to dysregulation at this stage. For example, the depressed NR1 expression and elevated NR2B expression observed in schizophrenia (Gao et al. 2000) may interfere with the pruning process in a variety of ways, by resulting in hypofunction of NMDAR-mediated neurotransmission, or excitotoxicity or the potentiation of inappropriate synapses due to increased $Ca^{2+}$ influx through NMDARs.

## *4.3 Myelination*

Another major process of brain development peaking during late adolescence/early adulthood is the myelination of the brain, which supports the connectivity between different brain areas implicated in schizophrenia pathology (Benes 1989). Diffusion tensor imaging of white matter has revealed white matter abnormalities in schizophrenia, although it is difficult to distinguish between loss of coherence of white matter tracts, loss of fibers, and loss of myelination using these methods (Kubicki et al. 2005, 2007). Results of functional imaging studies have suggested that there is disruption of the temporal synchrony of functional neural networks in the brain in schizophrenia (Ragland et al. 2007). The oligodendroglial processes that extend to myelinate axons express NMDA receptors during development (Salter and Fern 2005). The recent finding that prenatal PCP exposure retards oligodendrocyte maturation, resulting in fewer myelin-producing cells, provides a direct link between NMDAR-mediated neurotransmission, early development, and myelination (Lindahl et al. 2008).

## 5 Schizophrenia Risk Genes and Glutamatergic Neurotransmission

Currently, there is debate over the reliability of findings for risk genes identified in association studies. Some have argued that genetic evidence, unbiased with respect to candidate-gene-based hypotheses, suggests that copy number variants (CNVs) involving deletions or reduplications of stretches of DNA or new mutations account for up to 10% of genetic risk (International Schizophrenia Consortium 2008). Nevertheless, meta-analyses of the results of whole genome-wide association studies (GWAS) do point to several genes that plausibly confer risk for schizophrenia (Allen et al. 2008; Shi et al. 2008b). The underlying assumption is that schizophrenia is a disorder of complex genetics in which multiple risk alleles of moderate effect interact with environment to produce the phenotype. SZGene (http://www.szgene.org) provides a frequently updated comprehensive, unbiased meta-analytic compendium of the results of association studies in schizophrenia that rates the strength of the association.

### *5.1 D-Amino Acid Oxidase*

One of the first putative risk genes to emerge from an expanded association study involving 191 SNPS over a 5-Mb region of 13q34 was G72 (Chumakov et al. 2002). It encodes for a protein that binds to D-amino acid oxidase (DAAO), the enzyme that catabolizes D-serine and plays an important role in regulating its tissue levels. It is of relatively recent evolutionary appearance, being present only in primates. Originally, it was thought that G72 activated DAAO, thus its designation DAO *activator* (DAOA). However, more recent research has shown that cultured cells, which have been transfected with G72, generate a protein that inhibits DAAO (Sacchi et al. 2008). Thus, mutations in G72 (SZGene rank #12) would likely result in disinhibition of DAAO, thereby reducing the availability of D-serine. Since G72 was first proposed as a risk gene for schizophrenia, over a dozen studies have supported this association (Shi et al. 2008a). The impressively replicable association of G72 with the risk for schizophrenia converges with clinical findings that serum and CSF D-serine levels are reduced in subjects with schizophrenia (Hashimoto et al. 2003, 2005). Furthermore, placebo-controlled clinical trials have demonstrated that D-serine reduces negative symptoms, improves cognition, and reduces positive symptoms in patients with chronic schizophrenia who are receiving concurrent typical antipsychotic medications (Tsai et al. 1998; Heresco-Levy et al. 2005).

Several association studies have shown that the gene encoding DAAO (SZGene #40) itself is also linked to the risk of schizophrenia (Chumakov et al. 2002; Schumacher et al. 2004; Liu et al. 2004). Although the enzymatic consequences of DAAO allelic variation are not known, the fact that *postmortem* studies reveal

elevated activity and expression levels of DAAO in the hippocampus and forebrain of patients with schizophrenia suggests that variants associated with the disorder should alter DAAO in this direction (Kapoor et al. 2006; Madeira et al. 2008). Notably, one study found a robust epistatic interaction between the DAAO gene and the DAOA gene in schizophrenia with an odds ratio of 9.3 (Corvin et al. 2007). A less robust but replicated finding suggests that serine racemase (SZGene rank #45) itself may be a risk gene for schizophrenia (Morita et al. 2007). A single nucleotide polymorphism is the 5′ promoter region of the gene is associated with schizophrenia and results in reduced expression of serine racemase (Goltsov et al. 2006). This would result in reduced D-serine levels and consequent NMDAR hypofunction. PICK 1, a protein that interacts with serine racemase (Fujii et al. 2006), has also been identified as a possible risk gene for schizophrenia in a Han Chinese population (Hong et al. 2004). A recent meta-analytic study has implicated the gene encoding the NMDA receptor subunit NR2B (GRIN2B: SZGene rank #39) in schizophrenia risk (Li and He 2007). This subunit is associated with greater conductance of $Ca^{2+}$ than the other NR2 subunit isoforms, is highly expressed during development, and normally drops off in expression in adulthood (Hall et al. 2007).

## 5.2 *Dysbindin*

Dysbindin (DNTBP1; 6p24; SZGene rank #20) is another promising risk gene for schizophrenia, in that its association with schizophrenia has been replicated in several independent studies and it has strong biological plausibility (for review, see Williams et al. 2005). The dysbindin protein is concentrated in the presynaptic glutamatergic terminals where it interacts with synapsin 1 and SNAP, modulating the vesicular release of glutamate (Numakawa et al. 2004). The expression of dysbindin is reduced in the prefrontal cortex and hippocampus in schizophrenia (Talbot et al. 2004; Weickert et al. 2004). Consistent with the profile of a risk gene, the dysbindin genotype associates inversely with general cognitive ability and poor premorbid function in schizophrenia (Burdick et al. 2006; Gornick et al. 2005).

## 5.3 *Neuregulin*

The association of the gene encoding neuregulin (SZGene rank #26) with the risk for schizophrenia is quite robust (Petryshen et al. 2005). Neuregulin (NRG) is a member of the ErbB signaling pathway that regulates neuronal development, migration, myelination, and synaptic maintenance (for review, see Mei and Xiong 2008). A neuregulin 1 hypomorph mouse displays abnormal behaviors that are reversed by the atypical antipsychotic clozapine and exhibits reduced phosphorylation of the NR2B subunit at Y1472, resulting in NMDA receptor hypofunction

(Bjarnadottir et al. 2007). A hypomorph of the type 3 NRG1 isoform has enlarged lateral ventricles, decreased spine density, hypofunction of the prefrontal cortex and hippocampus, and deficits in prepulse inhibition (Chen et al. 2008). Thus, both mouse models share important endophenotypic features with schizophrenia. Using a postmortem tissue stimulation approach, Hahn et al. (2006) showed a marked increase in NRG1-induced activation of ErbB4 in the prefrontal cortex in schizophrenia, although the absolute levels of NRG1 ErbB4 did not differ significantly between schizophrenia and control groups.

## 6 Corticolimbic GABAergic Deficts in Schizophrenia

Thirty years ago, Spokes et al. (1980) first reported reduced activity of glutamic acid decarboxylase (GAD) in cortex and GABA in the nucleus accumbens and thalamus in a postmortem study in patients with schizophrenia as compared to suitable controls. However, the findings were highly variable, and other studies suggested that the loss of GAD activity may be an artifact of a slow death, to which institutionalized schizophrenic patients were particularly prone (Perry et al. 1982; Spokes 1979). Recent studies from several laboratories utilizing brain bank tissue from diverse sources have described compelling reductions of the presynaptic markers for a subpopulation of GABAergic interneurons in the frontal cortex and in the hippocampal formation (for review, see Akbarian and Huang 2006). Two genetically distinct forms of glutamic acid decarboxylase (GAD) have been identified on the basis of molecular weight (65 and 67 kDa) (Bu et al. 1992). GAD67 is preferentially expressed in perikarya and dendrites, whereas GAD65 is more prominently expressed in axons and terminals (Kaufman et al. 1991). Several studies have described reduced numbers of GAD67 mRNA expressing neurons in the prefrontal cortex and an overall reduced expression of GAD67 as compared to GAD65 (Akbarian et al. 1995; Volk et al. 2000; Heckers et al. 2002; Woo et al. 2004). In a laminar analysis, Volk et al. (2001) reported that the density of neurons with detectable GAD67 mRNA was significantly decreased in the intermediate layers of the prefrontal cortex, but that the level of GAD67 mRNA expression per neuron did not differ from control subjects.

### *6.1 Parvalbumin-Positive GABAergic Neurons*

GABAergic interneurons also express calcium binding proteins including calretinin, calbindin, and parvalbumin (Conde et al. 1994). The levels of expression of these proteins are modulated by afferent synaptic activity (Philpot et al. 1997). Parvalbumin is expressed predominantly in chandelier and basket cells in the cortex, which receive direct input from pyramidal neurons. Their synaptic contacts are concentrated on the proximal axon in structures known as “cartridges” and the

soma of the pyramidal cell, thereby exerting a major influence over pyramidal cell firing. These are fast-firing interneurons that coordinate cortical excitatory output. Calbindin is localized to double bouquet cells; calretinin is found in both double bouquet and bipolar neurons. The expression of parvalbumin, but not calretinin, was reduced in the prefrontal cortex in schizophrenia (Beasley and Reynolds 1997). In contrast to GAD67, which was associated with a significant reduction of positive neurons, the number of neurons with parvalbumin mRNA in the prefrontal cortex was unchanged in patients with schizophrenia, whereas the amount of mRNA per neuron was significantly decreased (Hashimoto et al. 2003). Reduced expression of GAD67 and parvalbumin in the prefrontal cortex has been replicated in studies using DNA chip array (Mirnics et al. 2006). Furthermore, real-time quantitative PCR of the prefrontal cortex, anterior cingulate cortex, the primary motor cortex, and primary visual cortex has shown that there were comparable reductions in the mRNA encoding for somatostatin, PV, GAD67, the GABA membrane transporter, GAT-1, and the alpha1 and delta subunits of the GABA-A receptors (Lewis and Hashimoto 2007). In contrast, the expression of calretinin mRNA did not differ between schizophrenia patients and matched controls (Hashimoto et al. 2008).

GAT1 is another specific presynaptic marker for GABAergic neurons. Initial studies describe significant reductions in GAT1 expression in the prefrontal cortex and hippocampus in schizophrenia as determined by ligand binding methods (Reynolds et al. 1990; Schleimer et al. 2004). Using in situ hybridization, Volk et al. (2001) reported that GAT1 expression was decreased below the level of detectability in a subpopulation of GABAergic interneurons in the intermediate layers of the dorsolateral prefrontal cortex. GAT1 immunochemistry revealed a reduced density of the cartridges of GABAergic terminal boutons innervating the pyramidal cell proximal axons (Woo et al. 1998).

## *6.2 Reduced GABAergic Tone?*

Reduction in GAT1 would lead to enhanced GABAergic neurotransmission, whereas a reduction in GAD67 might be associated with reduced GABAergic neurotransmission. Studies of GABA-A receptors support the latter scenario of persistent decreased GABAergic neurotransmission at these synapses. Early studies using ligand binding techniques revealed a 40% increase $B_{max}$ but no change in the $K_D$ for the specific binding of [$^3$H]GABA (Benes et al. 1996). Later studies demonstrated significant increases in [$^3$H]muscimol binding to $GABA_A$ receptors in subfields of the hippocampal formation, the anterior cingulate cortex, and the prefrontal cortex (Hanada et al. 1987). With high resolution, the increase in $GABA_A$ receptors could be localized to pyramidal neurons in the intermediate layers of the cortex (Benes et al. 1992). Volk et al. (2002) reported a doubling of the $GABA_A$ $\alpha$2-immunoreactive axon initial segments of the pyramidal neurons where the GABAergic chandelier cell cartridges are concentrated. Alpha 1 and $\alpha$5 subunits of the GABA-A receptor were also reportedly increased in the prefrontal cortex by (Impagnatiello et al. 1998).

## 7 Which NMDA Receptors Are Hypofunctional?

NMDA receptors are ubiquitous in the brain and peripheral nervous system. The studies in which low dose ketamine was used to induce symptomatic features of schizophrenia in normal individuals, given their normal performance on the Mini Mental Status Exam, suggest that a very discrete subpopulation of NMDA receptors were being affected under these experimental conditions. The first hint of differential sensitivity of neurons to NMDA receptor antagonists may have been the study by Grunze et al. (1996), which reported that GABAergic interneurons in the CA1 region of the hippocampus were tenfold more sensitive to the canonical NMDA receptor antagonist, amino-phosphono-valeric acid (APV), and to NAAG than those on the pyramidal neurons receiving the same Schaffer collateral input. In rodents, the pyramidal neurons in the limbic cortex, especially the retrosplenial cortex, are vulnerable to the excitotoxic effects of dissociative anesthetics with dramatic overexpression of heat shock proteins (Sharp et al. 1991). These cytopathologic effects were attenuated by muscimol, a GABA-A receptor agonist (Sharp et al. 1994). On examining the electrophysiologic mechanisms responsible for these neuropathologic changes induced by dissociative anesthetics, Li et al. (2002) found that in acute slice preparations from the rat limbic cortex, the NMDA receptors on the GABAergic interneurons were disproportionately more sensitive to the antagonist effects of MK-801 as compared to NMDA receptors on pyramidal neurons. Homayoun and Moghaddam (2007) reported that NMDA receptor inhibition in acute prefrontal slices from rat caused a reduction in GABAergic interneuron firing and a delayed disinhibition of the pyramidal neurons. Research by Jodo et al. (2005) demonstrates that increased firing of prefrontal pyramidal neurons can be produced by local infusion of MK-801 in the ventral hippocampus.

### *7.1 NMDA Receptor Antagonists and Parvalbumin-Positive GABAergic Neurons*

Several studies now demonstrate that subacute or chronic treatment with dissociative anesthetics including PCP, ketamine, and MK-801 produces a downregulation of presynaptic GABAergic markers including GAD67, PV, and GAT1 in the frontal cortex of rats and mice. Pratt and colleagues have also demonstrated reduced expression of Kv3.1, hypofrontality as demonstrated by 2-deoxyglucose autoradiography, and impairments in executive functions (for review, see Pratt et al. 2008). Kinney found that the changes in parvalbumin and GAD67 immunoreactivity were reversible and were fully replicated with an NR2A-selective antagonist but only partially by an NR2B-selective antagonist (Kinney et al. 2006). Behrenset al. (2007) further demonstrated that NMDA receptor blockers produce a burst of superoxide due to activation in neurons of reduced nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADPH) oxidase. Pharmacologic treatments that decrease

superoxide production prevent the effects of ketamine on inhibitory interneurons of the prefrontal cortex. An electrophysiologic analysis of acute frontal cortical slices prepared from mice treated subchronically with ketamine indicated that the frequency and magnitude of inhibitory postsynaptic potentials (IPSPs) were significantly reduced on pyramidal neurons, and the excitability of the pyramidal neurons was significantly increased (Zhang et al. 2008).

## 7.2 A Pathologic Circuit?

Lisman et al. (2008) put forward a hypothesis that the counterintuitive disinhibition of the glutamatergic pyramidal neurons after treatment with an NMDA receptor antagonist reflected the substantial contribution (~30%) of NMDA receptor channels to the excitatory postsynaptic currents (EPSCs) on GABAergic interneurons so that reduced NMDA receptor channel activity would have substantial impact on interneuron excitability. Intracellular $Ca^{2+}$ levels could serve as a proxy for GABAergic neuronal firing. AMPA receptors, unlike NMDA receptors, generally do not conduct $Ca^{2+}$. Thus, in spite of increased glutamatergic input to these fast-firing GABAergic interneurons, they "misperceive" reduced glutamatergic neurotransmission because the decreased NMDA receptor function caused by exogenous dissociative anesthetics or by endogenous inhibitors, such as kynurenic acid and NAAG, restricts $Ca^{2+}$ influx. To correct for this "misperceived" reduced excitatory input, the PV-positive GABAergic interneurons decrease the expression GAD67 and release of GABA as well as the $Ca^{2+}$ buffering protein, parvalbumin (Lisman et al. 2008).

## 7.3 Psychosis as a Downstream Event

While the appearance of psychosis heralds the onset of schizophrenia, psychosis is not unique to schizophrenia and occurs in bipolar disorder, major depressive disorder, and Alzheimer's dementia. The central role of excessive stimulation of dopamine $D_2$ receptors in the pathology of psychosis is well established as essentially all antipsychotic drugs act via blocking dopamine $D_2$ receptors. While dysfunction of the dopamine system must be accounted for in any hypothesis about the etiology of schizophrenia, a primary deficit in dopaminergic neurotransmission does not explain many aspects of the schizophrenia prodrome, endophenotypes, and clinical course under treatment with currently available antipsychotics.

NMDA receptor antagonists have been shown to produce a hyperdopaminergic state in both experimental animals as well as humans (Moghaddam and Adams

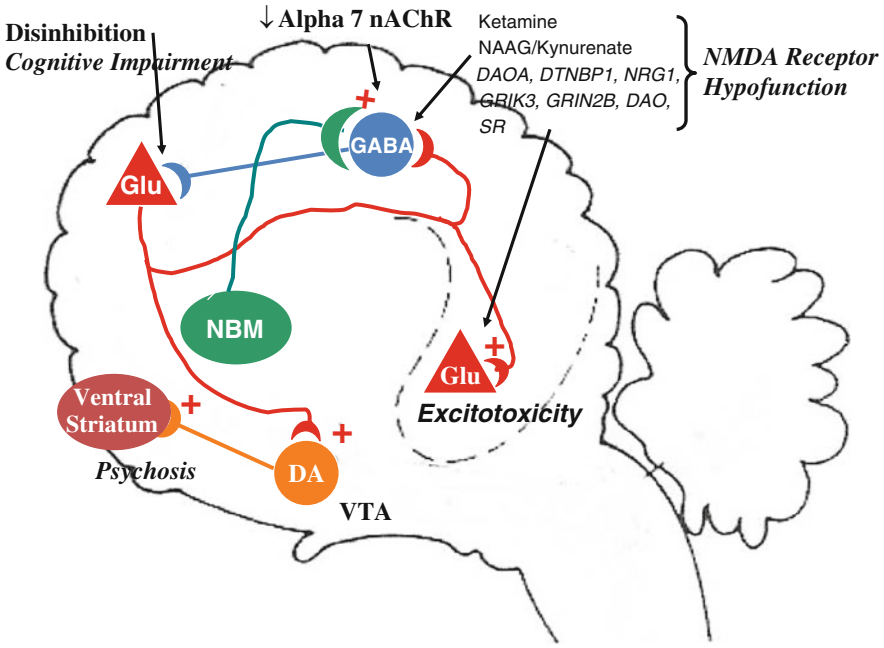



**Fig. 1** Schematic representation of the critical circuitry involved in the pathophysiology of schizophrenia. NMDA receptor (NMDAR) hypofunction can result from multiple causes including exogenous antagonists such as ketamine, endogenous antagonists such as *N*-acetylaspartylglutamate (NAAG) or kynurenic acid or products of risk genes D-amino acid oxidase activator (*DAOA*), dysbindin (*DTNBP1*), neuregulin 1 (*NRG1*), kainite receptor 3 (*GRIK3*), NR2B (*GRIN2B*), D-amino acid oxidase (*DAO*) and serine racemase (*SR*). NMDAR hypofunction on cortico-limbic pyramidal cells cause atrophy with reduced dendritic complexity, reduced spine density and reduced connectivity. NMDAR hypoactivity on the fast-firing, parvalbumin-positive cortical GABAergic neurons results in disinhibition of pyramidal cell efferents, causing cognitive impairments and excessive drive of ventral tegmental area (VTA) dopaminergic neurons resulting in psychosis. (Adapted from Coyle et al. 2010)

1998; Kegeles et al. 2000). While the disinhibition of glutamatergic outputs appears to be widespread in the corticolimbic system, disinhibition of the glutamatergic output from the subiculum to the VTA appears to be critical for producing the hyperdopaminergic state with systemic treatment with dissociative anesthetics (Lisman et al. 2008). Thus, psychosis would be considered a "downstream" event. This interpretation of the pathophysiology of psychosis in schizophrenia has now received compelling support from a recent clinical trial that demonstrated that an mGluR2/3 agonist, which downregulates disinhibited glutamate release, exhibits antipsychotic effects roughly comparable to the atypical antipsychotic, olanzapine (Patil et al. 2007). Preclinical studies demonstrated that activation of the mGluR2/3 receptor downregulated the excessive dopamine release caused by treatment with NMDA receptor antagonists (Fell et al. 2008).

## 8 Conclusion

While the role of dopamine in the pathophysiology of psychosis is secure, the inadequacy of antipsychotic medications to address the cognitive deficits and negative symptoms of schizophrenia suggest that dopamine $D_2$ receptor antagonism is not addressing the core pathophysiology of schizophrenia. Viewed from a circuit perspective, one can now appreciate that each of these neurotransmitters plays a distinct, contributory role to the overall phenotype of schizophrenia (Fig. 1). We propose that the NMDA receptors on the fast-firing, PV-positive cortical GABAergic interneurons are hypofunctional secondary to elevated endogenous inhibitors, deficient co-agonists, NR2B mutations, or negative modulation. This neuron-selective NMDA receptor hypofunction results in reduced inhibitory feedback to pyramidal cells, causing increased excitatory output and disruption of the integrity of cortical columnar processing (Coyle et al. 2010). In addition, hypofunction of NMDA receptors on the pyramidal neurons themselves may account for their smaller size, reduced dendritic complexity, and reduced number of spines (Balu et al. 2012). These primary functional abnormalities in the cortex (disinhibition and atrophy) would account for cognitive impairments and negative symptoms as supported by computational modeling (Grunze et al. 1996; Vierling-Claassen et al. 2008; Lisman et al. 2008). Consistent with this interpretation, default functional brain imaging in schizophrenia reveals hyperactivation and reduced task-related suppression in default regions in schizophrenia (Whitfield-Gabrieli et al. 2009). Disinhibition of the excitatory output of the *subiculum* would drive increased dopaminergic VTA neuronal activity and secondary psychosis.

Thus, the dysregulation of glutamatergic neurotransmission depends upon which neuronal components of the circuit are considered. Evidence supports hypofunction of NMDA receptors on cortical GABAergic and pyramidal neurons but excess glutamate release from the glutamatergic cortical efferents. Understanding of the pathologic circuitry yields a much wider array of drug targets that might effectively address the cognitive impairments and negative symptoms neglected by current dopamine $D_2$ receptor blockers. For example, plausible targets would include agents that enhance NMDA receptor function such as GlyT1 inhibitors (Bergeron et al. 1998), glycine B receptor agonists (Goff et al. 1995; Tsai and Lin 2010), mGluR5 agonists (Conn et al. 2009), drugs that enhance $GABA_A$ receptor function (Lewis et al. 2008), or drugs that attenuate glutamate release such as mGluR2/3 agonists or positive modulators (Patil et al. 2007).

Such novel interventions would presumably have acute/subacute effects on symptoms including cognition, negative symptoms, and conceivably psychosis. However interventions that enhance NMDA receptor function or downstream intracellular mediators of NMDA receptor function could also conceivably foster neural plasticity and even increased neural connectivity, given the evidence that D-cycloserine enhances memory consolidation in both experimental animals and human subjects receiving cognitive behavioral therapy for anxiety disorders (Davis et al. 2006), it will be important to determine whether coupling NMDA receptor

potentiators with cognitive rehabilitation significantly improves outcome. Given the circumstantial evidence that in addition to its many other actions clozapine enhances NMDA receptor function (Coyle et al. 2002), one can draw hope from its effects in treatment-refractory schizophrenia (Kane 1992) that NMDA receptor directed treatments might provide additional benefit. Finally, the variety of targets available in this pathologic circuitry may dovetail with the emergence of personalized medicine as the complex genetics of schizophrenia and related serious psychiatric disorders are illuminated.

**Acknowledgements** Some of the research findings discussed in this article were supported by USPHS grants to Joseph T. Coyle, MD, including R01MH51290 and P50MH06045. JTC holds a patent on the use of D-serine for the treatment of schizophrenia that is owned by Partners Healthcare and has consulted with Abbott, Bristol Meyer Squibb, Cephalon, and Lilly on drug discovery.

## References

Abekawa T, Ito K, Nakagawa S, Koyama T (2007) Prenatal exposure to an NMDA receptor antagonist, MK-801 reduces density of parvalbumin-immunoreactive GABAergic neurons in the medial prefrontal cortex and enhances phencyclidine-induced hyperlocomotion but not behavioral sensitization to methamphetamine in postpubertal rats. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 192(3):303–316

Adler CM, Malhotra AK, Elman I, Goldberg T, Egan M, Pickar D, Breier A (1999) Comparison of ketamine-induced thought disorder in healthy volunteers and thought disorder in schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 156:1646–1649

Akbarian S, Bunney WE Jr, Potkin SG, Wigal SB, Hagman JO, Sandman CA, Jones EG (1993) Altered distribution of nicotinamide-adenine dinucleotide phosphate-diaphorase cells in frontal lobe of schizophrenics implies disturbances of cortical development. Arch Gen Psychiatry 50:169–177

Akbarian S, Kim JJ, Potkin SG, Hagman JO, Tafazzoli A, Bunney WE Jr, Jones EG (1995) Gene expression for glutamic acid decarboxylase is reduced without loss of neurons in prefrontal cortex of schizophrenics. Arch Gen Psychiatry 52:258–266

Akbarian S, Huang HS (2006) Molecular and cellular mechanisms of altered GAD1/GAD67 expression in schizophrenia and related disorders. Brain Res Rev 52:293–304

Allen NC, Bagade S, McQueen MB, Ioannidis JP, Kavvoura FK, Khoury MJ, Tanzi RE, Bertram L (2008) Systematic meta-analyses and field synopsis of genetic association studies in schizophrenia: the SzGene database. Nat Genet 40:827–834

Andersen JD, Puzet B (2004) Spatial memory deficits induced by perinatal treatment of rats with PCP and reversal effect of D-serine. Neuropsychopharmacology 29:1080–1090

Anis NA, Berry SC, Burton NR, Lodge D (1983) The dissociative anaesthetics, ketamine and phencyclidine, selectively reduce excitation of central mammalian neurones by N-methyl-aspartate. Br J Pharmacol 79:565–575

Antonova E, Kumari V, Morris R, Halari R, Anilkumar A, Mehrotra R, Sharma T (2005) The relationship of structural alterations to cognitive deficits in schizophrenia: a voxel-based morphometry study. Biol Psychiatry 58:457–467

Balu DT, Basu AC, Corradi JP, Cacace AM, Coyle JT (2012) The NMDA receptor co-agonists, D-serine and glycine, regulate neuronal dendritic architecture in the somatosensory cortex. Neurobiol Dis 45(2):671–682

Beasley CL, Reynolds GP (1997) Parvalbumin-immunoreactive neurons are reduced in the prefrontal cortex of schizophrenics. Schizophr Res 24:349–355

Beasley CL, Zhang ZJ, Patten I, Reynolds GP (2002) Selective deficits in prefrontal cortical GABAergic neurons in schizophrenia defined by the presence of calcium-binding proteins. Biol Psychiatry 52:708–715

Begni S, Popoli M, Moraschi S, Bignotti S, Tura GB, Gennarelli M (2002) Association between the ionotropic glutamate receptor kainate 3 (GRIK3) ser310ala polymorphism and schizophrenia. Mol Psychiatry 7:416–418

Behrens MM, Ali SS, Dao DN, Lucero J, Shekhtman G, Quick KL, Dugan LL (2007) Ketamine-induced loss of phenotype of fast-spiking interneurons is mediated by NADPH-oxidase. Science 318:1645–1647

Bendikov I, Nadri C, Amar S, Panizzutti R, De Miranda J, Wolosker H et al (2006) A CSF and postmortem brain study of D-serine metabolic parameters in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 90:41–51

Benes FM (1989) Myelination of cortical-hippocampal relays during late adolescence. Schizophr Bull 15:585–593

Benes FM, Todtenkopf MS, Kostoulakos P (2001) GluR5,6,7 subunit immunoreactivity on apical pyramidal cell dendrites in hippocampus of schizophrenics and manic depressives. Hippocampus 11:482–491

Benes FM, Vincent SL, Alsterberg G, Bird ED, SanGiovanni JP (1992) Increased GABAA receptor binding in superficial layers of cingulate cortex in schizophrenics. J Neurosci 12:924–929

Benes FM, Vincent SL, Marie A, Khan Y (1996) Up-regulation of GABAA receptor binding on neurons of the prefrontal cortex in schizophrenic subjects. Neuroscience 75:1021–1031

Berger UV, Luthi-Carter R, Passani LA, Elkabes S, Black I, Konradi C, Coyle JT (1999) Glutamate carboxypeptidase II is expressed by astrocytes in the adult rat nervous system. J Comp Neurol 415:52–64

Bergeron R, Meyer TM, Coyle JT, Greene RW (1998) Modulation of N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor function by glycine transport. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 95:15730–15734

Bergeron R, Coyle JT, Tsai G, Greene RW (2005) NAAG reduces NMDA receptor current in CA1 hippocampal pyramidal neurons of acute slices and dissociated neurons. Neuropsychopharmacology 30:7–16

Beneyto M, Kristiansen LV, Oni-Orisan A, McCullumsmith RE, Meador-Woodruff JH (2007) Abnormal glutamate receptor expression in the medial temporal lobe in schizophrenia and mood disorders. Neuropsychopharmacology 32:1888–1902

Birch PJ, Grossman CJ, Hayes AG (1988) Kynurenic acid antagonises responses to NMDA via an action at the strychnine-insensitive glycine receptor. Eur J Pharmacol 154:85–87

Bischofberger J, Schild D (1996) Glutamate and N-acetylaspartylglutamate block HVA calcium currents in frog olfactory bulb interneurons via an mGluR2/3-like receptor. J Neurophysiol 76:2089–2092

Bjarnadottir M, Misner DL, Haverfield-Gross S, Bruun S, Helgason VG, Stefansson H, Sigmundsson A, Firth DR, Nielsen B, Stefansdottir R, Novak TJ, Stefansson K, Gurney ME, Andresson T (2007) Neuregulin1 (NRG1) signaling through Fyn modulates NMDA receptor phosphorylation: differential synaptic function in NRG1+/- knock-outs compared with wild-type mice. J Neurosci 27:4519–4529

Black IB (1999) Trophic regulation of synaptic plasticity. J Neurobiol 41:108–118

Bourgeois JP, Goldman-Rakic PS, Rakic P (1994) Synaptogenesis in the prefrontal cortex of rhesus monkeys. Cerebral Cortex 4:78–96

Bowers MB Jr, Swigar ME (1983) Vulnerability to psychosis associated with hallucinogen use. Psychiatry Res 9:91–97

Braff D, Stone C, Callaway E, Geyer M, Glick I, Bali L (1978) Prestimulus effects on human startle reflex in normals and schizophrenics. Psychophysiology 15:339–343

Braff DL, Geyer MA, Swerdlow NR (2001) Human studies of prepulse inhibition of startle: normal subjects, patient groups, and pharmacological studies. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 156:234–258

Burdick KE, Lencz T, Funke B, Finn CT, Szeszko PR, Kane JM, Kucherlapati R, Malhotra AK (2006) Genetic variation in DTNBP1 influences general cognitive ability. Hum Mol Genet 15:1563–1568

Burnet PW, Eastwood SL, Bristow GC, Godlewska BR, Sikka P, Walker M, Harrison PJ (2008) D-amino acid oxidase activity and expression are increased in schizophrenia. Mol Psychiatry 13:658–660

Bu DF, Erlander MG, Hitz BC, Tillakaratne NJ, Kaufman DL, Wagner-McPherson CB, Evans GA, Tobin AJ (1992) Two human glutamate decarboxylases, 65-kDa GAD and 67-kDa GAD, are each encoded by a single gene. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 89(6):2115–2119

Cardno AG, Gottesman II (2000) Twin studies of schizophrenia: from bow-and-arrow concordances to star wars Mx and functional genomics. Am J Med Genet 97:12–17

Chen YJ, Johnson MA, Lieberman MD, Goodchild RE, Schobel S, Lewandowski N, Rosoklija G, Liu RC, Gingrich JA, Small S, Moore H, Dwork AJ, Talmage DA, Role LW (2008) Type III neuregulin-1 is required for normal sensorimotor gating, memory-related behaviors, and corticostriatal circuit components. J Neurosci 28(27):6872–6883

Chumakov I, Blumenfeld M, Guerassimenko O, Cavarec L, Palicio M, Abderrahim H, Bougueleret L, Barry C, Tanaka H, La Rosa P, Puech A, Tahri N, Cohen-Akenine A, Delabrosse S, Lissarrague S, Picard FP, Maurice K, Essioux L, Millasseau P, Grel P, Debailleul V, Simon AM, Caterina D, Dufaure I, Malekzadeh K, Belova M, Luan JJ, Bouillot M, Sambucy JL, Primas G, Saumier M, Boubkiri N, Martin-Saumier S, Nasroune M, Peixoto H, Delaye A, Pinchot V, Bastucci M, Guillou S, Chevillon M, Sainz-Fuertes R, Meguenni S, Aurich-Costa J, Cherif D, Gimalac A, Van Duijn C, Gauvreau D, Ouellette G, Fortier I, Raelson J, Sherbatich T, Riazanskaia N, Rogaev E, Raeymaekers P, Aerssens J, Konings F, Luyten W, Macciardi F, Sham PC, Straub RE, Weinberger DR, Cohen N, Cohen D (2002) Genetic and physiological data implicating the new human gene G72 and the gene for D-amino acid oxidase in schizophrenia. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 99:13675–13680

Clancy B, Darlington RB, Finlay BL (2001) Translating developmental time across mammalian species. Neuroscience 105:7–17

Conde F, Lund JS, Jacobowitz DM, Baimbridge KG, Lewis DA (1994) Local circuit neurons immunoreactive for calretinin, calbindin D-28 k or parvalbumin in monkey prefrontal cortex: distribution and morphology. J Comp Neurol 341:95–116

Conn PJ, Lindsley CW, Jones CK (2009) Activation of metabotropic glutamate receptors as a novel approach for the treatment of schizophrenia. Trends Pharmacol Sci 30:25–31

Corvin A, McGhee KA, Murphy K, Donohoe G, Nangle JM, Schwaiger S, Kenny N, Clarke S, Meagher D, Quinn J, Scully P, Baldwin P, Browne D, Walsh C, Waddington JL, Morris DW, Gill M (2007) Evidence for association and epistasis at the DAOA/G30 and D-amino acid oxidase loci in an Irish schizophrenia sample. Am J Med Genet B Neuropsychiatr Genet 144B:949–953

Coyle JT (2006) Glial metabolites of tryptophan and excitotoxicity: coming unglued. Exp Neurol 197:4–7

Coyle JT, Balu D, Benneyworth M, Basu A, Roseman A (2010) Beyond the dopamine receptor: novel therapeutic targets for treating schizophrenia. Dialogues Clin Neurosci 12:359–382

Coyle JT, Tsai G, Goff DC (2002) Ionotropic glutamate receptors as therapeutic targets in schizophrenia. Curr Drug Targets CNS Neurol Disord 1:183–189

Davis JM, Chen N, Glick ID (2003) A meta-analysis of the efficacy of second-generation antipsychotics. Arch Gen Psychiatry 60:553–564

Davis M, Ressler K, Rothbaum BO, Richardson R (2006) Effects of D-cycloserine on extinction: translation from preclinical to clinical work. Biol Psychiatry 60:369–375

Depoortère R, Dargazanli G, Estenne-Bouhtou G, Coste A, Lanneau C, Desvignes C, Poncelet M, Heaulme M, Santucci V, Decobert M, Cudennec A, Voltz C, Boulay D, Terranova JP, Stemmelin J, Roger P, Marabout B, Sevrin M, Vigé X, Biton B, Steinberg R, Françon D, Alonso R, Avenet P, Oury-Donat F, Perrault G, Griebel G, George P, Soubrié P, Scatton B (2005) Neurochemical, electrochemical, electrophysiological and pharmacological profiles of

the selective inhibitor of the glycine transporter-1 SSR504734, a potential new type of antipsychotic. Neuropsychopharmacology 30:1963–1985

Dosemeci A, Makusky AJ, Jankowska-Stephens E, Yang X, Slotta DJ, Markey SP (2007) Composition of the synaptic PSD-95 complex. Mol Cell Proteomics 6:1749–1760

Erhardt S, Engberg G (2002) Increased phasic activity of dopaminergic neurones in the rat ventral tegmental area following pharmacologically elevated levels of endogenous kynurenic acid. Acta Physiol Scand 175:45–53

Erhardt S, Schwieler L, Engberg G (2003) Kynurenic acid and schizophrenia. Adv Exp Med Biol 527:155–165

Erhardt S, Blennow K, Nordin C, Skogh E, Lindström LH, Engberg G (2001) Kynurenic acid levels are elevated in the cerebrospinal fluid of patients with schizophrenia. Neurosci Lett 313:96–98

Evans JD, Bond GR, Meyer PS, Kim HW, Lysaker PH, Gibson PJ, Tunis S (2004) Cognitive and clinical predictors of success in vocational rehabilitation in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 70:331–342

Fagg GE (1987) Phencyclidine and related drugs bind to the activated N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor-channel complex in rat brain membranes. Neurosci Lett 76:221–227

Fell MJ, Svensson KA, Johnson BG, Schoepp DD (2008) Evidence for the role of metabotropic glutamate (mGlu)2 not mGlu3 receptors in the preclinical antipsychotic pharmacology of the mGlu2/3 receptor agonist (-)-(1R,4 S,5 S,6 S)-4-amino-2-sulfonylbicyclo[3.1.0]hexane-4,6-dicarboxylic acid (LY404039). J Pharmacol Exp Ther 326:209–217

Fricker AC, Mok MH, de la Flor R, Shah AJ, Woolley M, Dawson LA, Kew JN (2009) Effects of N-acetylaspartylglutamate (NAAG) at group II mGluRs and NMDAR. Neuropharmacology 56:1060–1067

Fujii K, Maeda K, Hikida T, Mustafa AK, Balkissoon R, Xia J, Yamada T, Ozeki Y, Kawahara R, Okawa M, Huganir RL, Ujike H, Snyder SH, Sawa A (2006) Serine racemase binds to PICK1: potential relevance to schizophrenia. Mol Psychiatry 11:150–157

Gao XM, Sakai K, Roberts RC, Conley RR, Dean B, Tamminga CA (2000) Ionotropic glutamate receptors and expression of N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor subunits in subregions of human hippocampus: effects of schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 157:1141–1149

Garey LJ, Ong WY, Patel TS, Kanani M, Davis A, Mortimer AM, Barnes TR, Hirsch SR (1998) Reduced dendritic spine density on cerebral cortical pyramidal neurons in schizophrenia. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 65:446–453

Geyer MA, Krebs-Thomson K, Braff DL, Swerdlow NR (2001) Pharmacological studies of 707 prepulse inhibition models of sensorimotor gating deficits in schizophrenia: a decade in review. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 156:117–154

Ghose S, Weickert CS, Colvin SM, Coyle JT, Herman MM, Hyde TM, Kleinman JE (2004) Glutamate carboxypeptidase II gene expression in the human frontal and temporal lobe in schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 29:117–125

Ghose S, Chin R, Gallegos A, Roberts R, Coyle J, Tamminga C (2009) Localization of NAAG-related gene expression deficits to the anterior hippocampus in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 111:131–137

Glantz LA, Lewis DA (2000) Decreased dendritic spine density on prefrontal cortical pyramidal neurons in schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 57:65–73

Goff DC, Tsai G, Manoach DS, Coyle JT (1995) Dose-finding trial of D-cycloserine added to neuroleptics for negative symptoms in schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 152(8):1213–1215

Goltsov AY, Loseva JG, Andreeva TV, Grigorenko AP, Abramova LI, Kaleda VG, Orlova VA, Moliaka YK, Rogaev EI (2006) Polymorphism in the 5′-promoter region of serine racemase gene in schizophrenia. Mol Psychiatry 11:325–326

Gornick MC, Addington AM, Sporn A, Gogtay N, Greenstein D, Lenane M, Gochman P, Ordonez A, Balkissoon R, Vakkalanka R, Weinberger DR, Rapoport JL, Straub RE (2005) Dysbindin (DTNBP1, 6p22.3) is associated with childhood-onset psychosis and endophenotypes measured by the Premorbid Adjustment Scale (PAS). J Autism Dev Disord 35:831–838

Grunze HC, Rainnie DG, Hasselmo ME, Barkai E, Hearn EF, McCarley RW et al (1996) NMDA-dependent modulation of CA1 local circuit inhibition. J Neurosci 16:2034–2043

Guilarte TR, Hammoud DA, McGlothan JL, Caffo BS, Foss CA, Kozikowski AP, Pomper MG (2008) Dysregulation of glutamate carboxypeptidase II in psychiatric disease. Schizophr Res 99:324–332

Hahn CG, Wang HY, Cho DS, Talbot K, Gur RE, Berrettini WH, Bakshi K, Kamins J, Borgmann-Winter KE, Siegel SJ, Gallop RJ, Arnold SE (2006) Altered neuregulin 1-erbB4 signaling contributes to NMDA receptor hypofunction in schizophrenia. Nat Med 12:824–828

Hakak Y, Walker JR, Li C, Wong WH, Davis KL, Buxbaum JD et al (2001) Genomewide expression analysis reveals dysregulation of myelination-related genes in chronic schizophrenia. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 98:4746–4751

Hall BJ, Ripley B, Ghosh A (2007) NR2B signaling regulates the development of synaptic AMPA receptor current. J Neurosci 27(49):13446–13456

Hanada S, Mita T, Nishino N, Tanaka C (1987) [3 H]muscimol binding sites increased in autopsied brains of chronic schizophrenics. Life Sci 40:259–266

Harris EW, Ganong AH, Cotman CW (1984) Long-term potentiation in the hippocampus involves activation of N-methyl-D-aspartate receptors. Brain Res 323:132–137

Harris LW, Sharp T, Gartlon J, Jones DN, Harrison PJ (2003) Long-term behavioural, molecular and morphological effects of neonatal NMDA receptor antagonism. Eur J Neurosci 18:1706–1710

Hashimoto K, Engberg G, Shimizu E, Nordin C, Lindström LH, Iyo M (2005) Reduced D-serine to total serine ratio in the cerebrospinal fluid of drug naive schizophrenic patients. Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry 29:767–769

Hashimoto K, Fukushima T, Shimizu E, Komatsu N, Watanabe H, Shinoda N et al (2003) Decreased serum levels of D-serine in patients with schizophrenia: evidence in support of the N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor hypofunction hypothesis of schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 60:572–576

Hashimoto A, Nishikawa T, Oka T, Takahashi K (1993) Endogenous D-serine in rat brain: N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor-related distribution and aging. J Neurochem 60:783–786

Hashimoto T, Bazmi HH, Mirnics K, Wu Q, Sampson AR, Lewis DA (2008) Conserved regional patterns of GABA-related transcript expression in the neocortex of subjects with schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 165:479–489

Hazlett EA, Buchsbaum MS, Haznedar MM, Newmark R, Goldstein KE, Zelmanova Y, Glanton CF, Torosjan Y, New AS, Lo JN, Mitropoulou V, Siever LJ (2008) Cortical gray and white matter volume in unmedicated schizotypal and schizophrenia patients. Schizophr Res 101:111–123

Heckers S, Stone D, Walsh J, Shick J, Koul P, Benes FM (2002) Differential hippocampal expression of glutamic acid decarboxylase 65 and 67 messenger RNA in bipolar disorder and schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 59:521–529

Heresco-Levy U, Javitt DC, Ebstein R, Vass A, Lichtenberg P, Bar G, Catinari S, Ermilov M (2005) D-serine efficacy as add-on pharmacotherapy to risperidone and olanzapine for treatment-refractory schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 57:577–585

Hilmas C, Pereira EF, Alkondon M, Rassoulpour A, Schwarcz R, Albuquerque EX (2001) The brain metabolite kynurenic acid inhibits alpha7 nicotinic receptor activity and increases non-alpha7 nicotinic receptor expression: physiopathological implications. J Neurosci 21:7463–7473

Ho BC, Andreasen NC, Nopoulos P, Arndt S, Magnotta V, Flaum M (2003) Progressive structural brain abnormalities and their relationship to clinical outcome: a longitudinal magnetic resonance imaging study early in schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 60:585–594

Holzman PS, Kringlen E, Matthysse S, Flanagan SD, Lipton RB, Cramer G, Levin S, Lange K, Levy DL (1988) A single dominant gene can account for eye tracking dysfunctions and schizophrenia in offspring of discordant twins. Arch Gen Psychiatry 45:641–647

Homayoun H, Moghaddam B (2007) NMDA receptor hypofunction produces opposite effects on prefrontal cortex interneurons and pyramidal neurons. J Neurosci 27:11496–11500
Hong CJ, Liao DL, Shih HL, Tsai SJ (2004) Association study of PICK1 rs3952 polymorphism and schizophrenia. Neuroreport 15:1965–1967
Huerta I, McCullumsmith RE, Haroutunian V, Giménez-Amaya JM, Meador-Woodruff JH (2006) Expression of excitatory amino acid transporter interacting protein transcripts in the thalamus in schizophrenia. Synapse 59:394–402
Hulshoff PHE, Kahn RS (2008) What happens after the first episode? A review of progressive brain changes in chronically ill patients with schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 34:354–366
Ibrahim HM, Hogg AJ Jr, Healy DJ, Haroutunian V, Davis KL, Meador-Woodruff JH (2000) Ionotropic glutamate receptor binding and subunit mRNA expression in thalamic nuclei in schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 157(11):1811–1823
Impagnatiello F, Guidotti AR, Pesold C, Dwivedi Y, Caruncho H, Pisu MG, Uzunov DP, Smalheiser NR, Davis JM, Pandey GN, Pappas GD, Tueting P, Sharma RP, Costa E (1998) A decrease of reelin expression as a putative vulnerability factor in schizophrenia. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 95:15718–15723
International Schizophrenia Consortium (2008) Rare chromosomal deletions and duplications increase risk of schizophrenia. Nature 455:237–241
Itil T, Keskiner A, Kiremitci N, Holden JM (1967) Effect of phencyclidine in chronic schizophrenics. Can Psychiatr Assoc J 12:209–212
Javitt DC, Doneshka P, Zylberman I, Ritter W, Vaughan HG Jr (1993) Impairment of early cortical processing in schizophrenia: an event-related potential confirmation study. Biol Psychiatry 33:513–519
Johnson JW, Ascher P (1987) Glycine potentiates the NMDA response in cultured mouse brain neurons. Nature 325:529–531
Jodo E, Suzuki Y, Katayama T, Hoshino KY, Takeuchi S, Niwa S, Kayama Y (2005) Activation of medial prefrontal cortex by phencyclidine is mediated via a hippocampo-prefrontal pathway. Cereb Cortex 15:663–669
Javitt DC, Zukin SR (1991) Recent advances in the phencyclidine model of schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 148:1301–1308
Jones PB, Barnes TR, Davies L, Dunn G, Lloyd H, Hayhurst KP, Murray RM, Markwick A, Lewis SW (2006) Randomized controlled trial of the effect on quality of life of second- vs first-generation antipsychotic drugs in schizophrenia: Cost Utility of the Latest Antipsychotic Drugs in Schizophrenia Study (CUtLASS 1). Arch Gen Psychiatry 63:1079–1087
Kane JM (1992) Clinical efficacy of clozapine in treatment-refractory schizophrenia: an overview. Br J Psychiatry Suppl 17:41–45
Kapoor R, Lim KS, Cheng A, Garrick T, Kapoor V (2006) Preliminary evidence for a link between schizophrenia and NMDA-glycine site receptor ligand metabolic enzymes, d-amino acid oxidase (DAAO) and kynurenine aminotransferase-1 (KAT-1). Brain Res 1106:205–210
Kaufman DL, Houser CR, Tobin AJ (1991) Two forms of the gamma-aminobutyric acid synthetic enzyme glutamate decarboxylase have distinct intraneuronal distributions and cofactor interactions. J Neurochem 56:720–723
Kegeles LS, Abi-Dargham A, Zea-Ponce Y, Rodenhiser-Hill J, Mann JJ, Van Heertum RL, Cooper TB, Carlsson A, Laruelle M (2000) Modulation of amphetamine-induced striatal dopamine release by ketamine in humans: implications for schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 48:627–640
Kim PM, Aizawa H, Kim PS, Huang AS, Wickramasinghe SR, Kashani AH, Barrow RK, Huganir RL, Ghosh A, Snyder SH (2005) Serine racemase: activation by glutamate neurotransmission via glutamate receptor interacting protein and mediation of neuronal migration. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 102:2105–2110
Kinney JW, Davis CN, Tabarean I, Conti B, Bartfai T, Behrens MM (2006) A specific role for NR2A-containing NMDA receptors in the maintenance of parvalbumin and GAD67 immunoreactivity in cultured interneurons. J Neurosci 2:1604–1615

Kirkpatrick B, Buchanan RW, Ross DE, Carpenter WT Jr (2001) Asparate disease within the syndrome of schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 58:165–171

Kleckner NW, Dingledine R (1988) Requirement for glycine in activation of NMDA receptors expressed in Xenopus oocytes. Science 241:835–837

Knable MB, Barci BM, Webster MJ, Meador-Woodruff J, Torrey EF, Consortium SN (2004) Molecular abnormalities of the hippocampus in severe psychiatric illness: postmortem findings from the Stanley Neuropathology Consortium. Mol Psychiatry 9(609–20):544

Komuro H, Rakic P (1993) Modulation of neuronal migration by NMDA receptors. Science 260:95–97

Kristiansen LV, Beneyto M, Haroutunian V, Meador-Woodruff JH (2006) Changes in NMDA receptor subunits and interacting PSD proteins in dorsolateral prefrontal and anterior cingulate cortex indicate abnormal regional expression in schizophrenia. Mol Psychiatry 11 (737–47):705

Kristiansen LV, Meador-Woodruff JH (2005) Abnormal striatal expression of transcripts encoding NMDA interacting PSD proteins in schizophrenia, bipolar disorder and major depression. Schizophr Res 78:87–93

Kristiansen LV, Patel SA, Haroutunian V, Meador-Woodruff JH (2010) Expression of the NR2B-NMDA receptor subunit and its Tbr-1/CINAP regulatory proteins in postmortem brain suggest altered receptor processing in schizophrenia. Synapse 64:495–502

Krystal JH, Karper LP, Seibyl JP, Freeman GK, Delaney R, Bremner JD et al (1994) Subanesthetic effects of the noncompetitive NMDA antagonist, ketamine, in humans. psychotomimetic, perceptual, cognitive, and neuroendocrine responses. Arch Gen Psychiatry 51:199–214

Kubicki M, McCarley R, Westin CF, Park HJ, Maier S, Kikinis R, Jolesz FA, Shenton ME (2007) A review of diffusion tensor imaging studies in schizophrenia. J Psychiatr Res 41:15–30

Kubicki M, Park H, Westin CF, Nestor PG, Mulkern RV, Maier SE, Niznikiewicz M, Connor EE, Levitt JJ, Frumin M, Kikinis R, Jolesz FA, McCarley RW, Shenton ME (2005) DTI and MTR abnormalities in schizophrenia: analysis of white matter integrity. Neuroimage 26: 1109–1118

Kuryatov A, Laube B, Betz H, Kuhse J (1994) Mutational analysis of the glycine-binding site of the NMDA receptor: structural similarity with bacterial amino acid-binding proteins. Neuron 12(6):1291–1300

Lahti AC, Weiler MA, TamaraMichaelidis BA, Parwani A, Tamminga CA (2001) Effects of ketamine in normal and schizophrenic volunteers. Neuropsychopharmacology 25:455–467

Lewis DA (1997) Development of the prefrontal cortex during adolescence: Insights into vulnerable neural circuits in schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 16:385–398

Lewis DA, Hashimoto T (2007) Deciphering the disease process of schizophrenia: the contribution of cortical GABA neurons. Int Rev Neurobiol 78:109–131

Lewis DA, Cho RY, Carter CS, Eklund K, Forster S, Kelly MA, Montrose D (2008) Subunit-selective modulation of GABA type A receptor neurotransmission and cognition in schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 165:1585–1593

Li Q, Clark S, Lewis DV, Wilson WA (2002) NMDA receptor antagonists disinhibit rat posterior cingulate and retrosplenial cortices: a potential mechanism of neurotoxicity. J Neurosci 22:3070–3080

Li D, He L (2007) Association study between the NMDA receptor 2B subunit gene (GRIN2B) and schizophrenia: a HuGE review and meta-analysis. Genet Med 9:4–8

Li N, Lee B, Liu RJ, Banasr M, Dwyer JM, Iwata M, Li XY, Aghajanian G, Duman RS (2010) mTOR-dependent synapse formation underlies the rapid antidepressant effects of NMDA antagonists. Science 329:959–964

Lieberman JA, Stroup TS, McEvoy JP, Swartz MS, Rosenheck RA, Perkins DO, Keefe RS, Davis SM, Davis CE, Lebowitz BD, Severe J, Hsiao JK (2005) Effectiveness of antipsychotic drugs in patients with chronic schizophrenia. New Engl J Med 353:1209–1223

Lindahl JS, Kjellsen BR, Tigert J, Miskimins R (2008) In utero PCP exposure alters oligodendrocyte differentiation and myelination in developing rat frontal cortex. Brain Res 1234:137–147

Lisman JE, Coyle JT, Green RW, Javitt DC, Benes FM, Heckers S, Grace AA (2008) Circuit-based framework for understanding neurotransmitter and risk gene interactions in schizophrenia. Trends Neurosci 31:234–242

Liu X, He G, Wang X, Chen Q, Qian X, Lin W, Li D, Gu N, Feng G, He L (2004) Association of DAAO with schizophrenia in the Chinese population. Neurosci Lett 369:228–233

Luby ED, Cohen BD, Rosenbaum G, Gottlieb JS, Kelley R (1959) Study of a new schizophrenomimetic drug; sernyl. AMA Arch Neurol Psychiatry 81:363–369

Madeira C, Freitas ME, Vargas-Lopes C, Wolosker H, Panizzutti R (2008) Increased brain D-amino acid oxidase (DAAO) activity in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 101:76–83

Martin LF, Freedman R (2007) Schizophrenia and the alpha7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptor. Int Rev Neurobiol 78:225–246

Matsui T, Sekiguchi M, Hashimoto A, Tomita U, Nishikawa T, Wada K (1995) Functional comparison of D-serine and glycine in rodents: The effect on cloned NMDA receptors and the extracellular concentration. J Neurochem 65:454–458

Mayer ML, Westbrook GL, Vyklický L Jr (1988) Sites of antagonist action on N-methyl-D-aspartic acid receptors studied using fluctuation analysis and a rapid perfusion technique. J Neurophysiol 60(2):645–663

Mei L, Xiong WC (2008) Neuregulin 1 in neural development, synaptic plasticity and schizophrenia. Nat Rev Neurosci 9(6):437–452

Meltzer HY (1997) Treatment-resistant schizophrenia–the role of clozapine. Curr Med Res Opin 14:1–20

Mirnics K, Levitt P, Lewis DA (2006) Critical appraisal of DNA microarrays in psychiatric genomics. Biol Psychiatry 60:163–176

Mitelman SA, Brickman AM, Shihabuddin L, Newmark RE, Hazlett EA, Haznedar MM, Buchsbaum MS (2007) A comprehensive assessment of gray and white matter volumes and their relationship to outcome and severity in schizophrenia. Neuroimage 37:449–462

Moghaddam B, Adams BW (1998) Reversal of phencyclidine effects by a group II metabotropic glutamate receptor agonist in rats. Science 281:1349–1352

Morita Y, Ujike H, Tanaka Y, Otani K, Kishimoto M, Morio A, Kotaka T, Okahisa Y, Matsushita M, Morikawa A, Hamase K, Zaitsu K, Kuroda S (2007) A genetic variant of the serine racemase gene is associated with schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 61:1200–1203

Newcomer JW, Farber NB, Jevtovic-Todorovic V, Selke G, Melson AK, Hershey T, Craft S, Olney JW (1999) Ketamine-induced NMDA receptor hypofunction as a model of memory impairment and psychosis. Neuropsychopharmacology 20:106–118

Nilsson LK, Linderholm KR, Engberg G, Paulson L, Blennow K, Lindström LH, Nordin C, Karanti A, Persson P, Erhardt S (2005) Elevated levels of kynurenic acid in the cerebrospinal fluid of male patients with schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 80:315–322

Numakawa T, Yagasaki Y, Ishimoto T, Okada T, Suzuki T, Iwata N, Ozaki N, Taguchi T, Tatsumi M, Kamijima K, Straub RE, Weinberger DR, Kunugi H, Hashimoto R (2004) Evidence of novel neuronal functions of dysbindin, a susceptibility gene for schizophrenia. Hum Mol Genet 13:2699–2708

Ohnuma T, Kato H, Arai H, Faull RL, McKenna PJ, Emson PC (2000) Gene expression of PSD95 in prefrontal cortex and hippocampus in schizophrenia. Neuroreport; 11(14):3133–3137

Passani LA, Vonsattel JP, Coyle JT (1997) Distribution of N-acetylaspartylglutamate immunoreactivity in human brain and its alteration in neurodegenerative disease. Brain Res 772:9–22

Patil ST, Zhang L, Martenyi F, Lowe SL, Jackson KA, Andreev BV, Avedisova AS, Bardenstein LM, Gurovich IY, Morozova MA, Mosolov SN, Neznanov NG, Reznik AM, Smulevich AB, Tochilov VA, Johnson BG, Monn JA, Schoepp DD (2007) Activation of mGlu2/3 receptors as a new approach to treat schizophrenia: a randomized Phase 2 clinical trial. Nat Med 13:1102–1107

Pearce IA, Cambray-Deakin MA, Burgoyne RD (1987) Glutamate acting on NMDA receptors stimulates neurite outgrowth from cerebellar granule cells. FEBS Lett 223:143–147

Penn AA (2001) Early brain wiring: activity-dependent processes. Schizophr Bull 27:337–347

Perry EK, Perry RH, Tomlinson BE (1982) The influence of agonal status on some neurochemical activities of postmortem human brain tissue. Neurosci Lett 29:303–307

Petryshen TL, Middleton FA, Kirby A, Aldinger KA, Purcell S, Tahl AR, Morley CP, McGann L, Gentile KL, Rockwell GN, Medeiros HM, Carvalho C, Macedo A, Dourado A, Valente J, Ferreira CP, Patterson NJ, Azevedo MH, Daly MJ, Pato CN, Pato MT, Sklar P (2005) Support for involvement of neuregulin 1 in schizophrenia pathophysiology. Mol Psychiatry 10:366–374

Philpot BD, Lim JH, Brunjes PC (1997) Activity-dependent regulation of calcium-binding proteins in the developing rat olfactory bulb. J Comp Neurol 387:12–26

Pickard BS, Malloy MP, Christoforou A, Thomson PA, Evans KL, Morris SW, Hampson M, Porteous DJ, Blackwood DH, Muir WJ (2006) Cytogenetic and genetic evidence supports a role for the kainate-type glutamate receptor gene, GRIK4, in schizophrenia and bipolar disorder. Mol Psychiatry 11:847–857

Pierri JN, Volk CL, Auh S, Sampson A, Lewis DA (2001) Decreased somal size of deep layer 3 pyramidal neurons in the prefrontal cortex of subjects with schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 58:466–473

Pratt JA, Winchester C, Egerton A, Cochran SM, Morris BJ (2008) Modelling prefrontal cortex deficits in schizophrenia: implications for treatment. Br J Pharmacol 153(Suppl 1):S465–S470

Porter RH, Eastwood SL, Harrison PJ (1997) Distribution of kainate receptor subunit mRNAs in human hippocampus, neocortex and cerebellum, and bilateral reduction of hippocampal GluR6 and KA2 transcripts in schizophrenia. Brain Res 751:217–231

Radant AD, Bowdle TA, Cowley DS, Kharasch ED, Roy-Byrne PP (1998) Does ketamine-mediated N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor antagonism cause schizophrenia-like oculomotor abnormalities? Neuropsychopharmacology 19:434–444

Ragland JD, Yoon J, Minzenberg MJ, Carter CS (2007) Neuroimaging of cognitive disability in schizophrenia: search for a pathophysiological mechanism. Int Rev Psychiatry 19:417–427

Reynolds GP, Czudek C, Andrews HB (1990) Deficit and hemispheric asymmetry of GABA uptake sites in the hippocampus in schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 27:1038–1044

Reynolds GP, Abdul-Monim Z, Neill JC, Zhang ZJ (2004) Calcium binding protein markers of GABA deficits in schizophrenia–postmortem studies and animal models. Neurotox Res 6:57–61

Robinson MB, Blakely RD, Couto R, Coyle JT (1987) Hydrolysis of the brain dipeptide *N*-acetyl-L-aspartyl-L-glutamate. Identification and characterization of a novel N-acetylated a-linked acidic dipeptidase activity from rat brain. J Biol Chem 262:14498–14506

Sacchi S, Bernasconi M, Martineau M, Mothet JP, Ruzzene M, Pilone MS, Pollegioni L, Molla G (2008) pLG72 modulates intracellular D-serine levels through its interaction with D-amino acid oxidase: effect on schizophrenia susceptibility. J Biol Chem 283:22244–22256

Salter MG, Fern R (2005) NMDA receptors are expressed in developing oligodendrocyte processes and mediate injury. Nature 438:1167–1171

Scarr E, Beneyto M, Meador-Woodruff JH, Dean B (2005) Cortical glutamatergic markers in schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 30(8):1521–1531

Scheetz AJ, Constantine-Paton M (1994) Modulation of NMDA receptor function: implications for vertebrate neural development. FASEB J 8:745–752

Schell MJ, Molliver ME, Snyder SH (1995) D-Serine, an endogenous synaptic modulator: localization to astrocytes and glutamatestimulated release. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 92:3948–3952

Schleimer SB, Hinton T, Dixon G, Johnston GA (2004) GABA transporters GAT-1 and GAT-3 in the human dorsolateral prefrontal cortex in schizophrenia. Neuropsychobiology 50:226–230

Schumacher J, Jamra RA, Freudenberg J, Becker T, Ohlraun S, Otte AC, Tullius M, Kovalenko S, Bogaert AV, Maier W, Rietschel M, Propping P, Nöthen MM, Cichon S (2004) Examination of G72 and D-amino-acid oxidase as genetic risk factors for schizophrenia and bipolar affective disorder. Mol Psychiatry 9:203–207

Schwarcz R, Rassoulpour A, Wu HQ, Medoff D, Tamminga CA, Roberts RC (2001) Increased cortical kynurenate content in schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 50:521–530

Seeman P (1987) Dopamine receptors and the dopamine hypothesis of schizophrenia. Synapse 1:133–152

Seeman P (2002) Atypical antipsychotics: Mechanism of action. Can J Psychiatry 47:27–38

Segal M, Andersen P (2000) Dendritic spines shaped by synaptic activity. Curr Opin Neurobiol 10:582–586

Sharp FR, Jasper P, Hall J, Noble L, Sagar SM (1991) MK-801 and ketamine induce heat shock protein HSP72 in injured neurons in posterior cingulate and retrosplenial cortex. Ann Neurol 30:801–809

Sharp FR, Butman M, Koistinaho J, Aardalen K, Nakki R, Massa SM, Swanson RA, Sagar SM (1994) Phencyclidine induction of the hsp 70 stress gene in injured pyramidal neurons is mediated via multiple receptors and voltage gated calcium channels. Neuroscience 62(4): 1079–1092

Shatz CJ (1990) Impulse activity and the patterning of connections during CNS development. Neuron 5:745–756

Shi J, Badner JA, Gershon ES, Liu C (2008a) Allelic association of G72/G30 with schizophrenia and bipolar disorder: a comprehensive meta-analysis. Schizophr Res 98:89–97

Shi J, Gershon ES, Liu C (2008b) Genetic associations with schizophrenia: Meta-analyses of 12 candidate genes. Schizophr Res 104:96–107

Sikich L, Frazier JA, McClellan J, Findling RL, Vitiello B, Ritz L, Ambler D, Puglia M, Maloney AE, Michael E, De Jong S, Slifka K, Noyes N, Hlastala S, Pierson L, McNamara NK, Delporto-Bedoya D, Anderson R, Hamer RM, Lieberman JA (2008) Double-blind comparison of first- and second-generation antipsychotics in early-onset schizophrenia and schizo-affective disorder: findings from the treatment of early-onset schizophrenia spectrum disorders (TEOSS) study. Am J Psychiatry 165:1420–1431

Sircar R (2003) Postnatal phencyclidine-induced deficit in adult water maze performance is associated with N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor upregulation. Int J Dev Neurosci 21:159–167

Snyder SH (1981) Dopamine receptors, neuroleptics, and schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 138:460–464

Sokolov BP (1998) Expression of NMDAR1, GluR1, GluR7, and KA1 glutamate receptor mRNAs is decreased in frontal cortex of "neuroleptic-free" schizophrenics: evidence on reversible up-regulation by typical neuroleptics. J Neurochem 71(6):2454–2464

Spokes EG (1979) An analysis of factors influencing measurements of dopamine, noradrenaline, glutamate decarboxylase and choline acetylase in human post-mortem brain tissue. Brain 02:333–346

Spokes EG, Garrett NJ, Rossor MN, Iversen LL (1980) Distribution of GABA in post-mortem brain tissue from control, psychotic and Huntington's chorea subjects. J Neurol Sci 48(3): 303–313

Stefani MR, Moghaddam B (2005) Transient N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor blockade in early development causes lasting cognitive deficits relevant to schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 57:433–436

Sweet RA, Bergen SE, Sun Z, Sampson AR, Pierri JN, Lewis DA (2004) Pyramidal cell size reduction in schizophrenia: evidence for involvement of auditory feedforward circuits. Biol Psychiatry 55:1128–1137

Sweet RA, Henteleff RA, Zhang W, Sampson AR, Lewis DA (2009) Reduced dendritic spine density in auditory cortex of subjects with schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 34:374–389

Takahashi M, Kakita A, Futamura T, Watanabe Y, Mizuno M, Sakimura K, Castren E, Nabeshima T, Someya T, Nawa H (2006) Sustained brain-derived neurotrophic factor up-regulation and sensorimotor gating abnormality induced by postnatal exposure to phencyclidine: comparison with adult treatment. J Neurochem 99:770–780

Talbot K, Eidem WL, Tinsley CL, Benson MA, Thompson EW, Smith RJ, Hahn CG, Siegel SJ, Trojanowski JQ, Gur RE, Blake DJ, Arnold SE (2004) Dysbindin-1 is reduced in intrinsic,

glutamatergic terminals of the hippocampal formation in schizophrenia. J Clin Invest 113:1353–1363
Tandon R, Keshavan MS, Nasrallah HA (2008) Schizophrenia, "just the facts" what we know in 2008. 2. Epidemiology and etiology. Schizophr Res 102:1–18
Thune JJ, Uylings HB, Pakkenberg B (2001) No deficit in total number of neurons in the prefrontal cortex in schizophrenics. J Psychiatr Res 35:15–21
Tkachev D, Mimmack ML, Huffaker SJ, Ryan M, Bahn S (2007) Further evidence for altered myelin biosynthesis and glutamatergic dysfunction in schizophrenia. Int J Neuropsychopharmacol 10:557–563
Toyooka K, Iritani S, Makifuchi T, Shirakawa O, Kitamura N, Maeda K, Nakamura R, Niizato K, Watanabe M, Kakita A, Takahashi H, Someya T, Nawa H (2002) Selective reduction of a PDZ protein, SAP-97, in the prefrontal cortex of patients with chronic schizophrenia. J Neurochem 83:797–806
Tsai G, Passani LA, Slusher BS, Carter R, Baer L, Kleinman JE, Coyle JT (1995) Abnormal excitatory neurotransmitter metabolism in schizophrenic brains. Arch Gen Psychiatry 52:829–836
Tsai G, Yang P, Chung LC, Lange N, Coyle JT (1998) D-serine added to antipsychotics for the treatment of schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 44:1081–1089
Tsai GE, Lin PY (2010) Strategies to enhance N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor-mediated neurotransmission in schizophrenia, a critical review and meta-analysis. Curr Pharm Des 16:522–537
Umbricht D, Schmid L, Koller R, Vollenweider FX, Hell D, Javitt DC (2000) Ketamine-induced deficits in auditory and visual context-dependent processing in healthy volunteers: implications for models of cognitive deficits in schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 57:1139–1147
Vierling-Claassen D, Siekmeier P, Stufflebeam S, Kopell N (2008) Modeling GABA alterations in schizophrenia: a link between impaired inhibition and altered gamma and beta range auditory entrainment. J Neurophysiol 99:2656–2671
Volk DW, Austin MC, Pierri JN, Sampson AR, Lewis DA (2000) Decreased glutamic acid decarboxylase67 messenger RNA expression in a subset of prefrontal cortical gamma-aminobutyric acid neurons in subjects with schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 57(3):237–245
Volk DW, Pierri JN, Fritschy JM, Auh S, Sampson AR, Lewis DA (2002) Reciprocal alterations in pre- and postsynaptic inhibitory markers at chandelier cell inputs to pyramidal neurons in schizophrenia. Cereb Cortex 12:1063–1070
Volk D, Austin M, Pierri J, Sampson A, Lewis D (2001) GABA transporter-1 mRNA in the prefrontal cortex in schizophrenia: Decreased expression in a subset of neurons. Am J Psychiatry 158:256–265
Wang C, McInnis J, Ross-Sanchez M, Shinnick-Gallagher P, Wiley JL, Johnson KM (2001) Long-term behavioral and neurodegenerative effects of perinatal phencyclidine administration: implications for schizophrenia. Neuroscience 107:535–550
Wang CZ, Yang SF, Xia Y, Johnson KM (2008) Postnatal phencyclidine administration selectively reduces adult cortical parvalbumin-containing interneurons. Neuropsychopharmacology 33(10):2442–2455
Weickert CS, Straub RE, McClintock BW, Matsumoto M, Hashimoto R, Hyde TM, Herman MM, Weinberger DR, Kleinman JE (2004) Human dysbindin (DTNBP1) gene expression in normal brain and in schizophrenic prefrontal cortex and midbrain. Arch Gen Psychiatry 61:544–555
Whitfield-Gabrieli S, Thermenos HW, Milanovic S, Tsuang MT, Faraone SV, McCarley RW, Shenton ME, Green AI, Nieto-Castanon A, LaViolette P, Wojcik J, Gabrieli JD, Seidman LJ (2009) Hyperactivity and hyperconnectivity of the default network in schizophrenia and in first-degree relatives of persons with schizophrenia. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 106:1279–1284
Williams NM, O'Donovan MC, Owen MJ (2005) Is the dysbindin gene (DTNBP1) a susceptibility gene for schizophrenia? Schizophr Bull 31:800–805

Wilson GM, Flibotte S, Chopra V, Melnyk BL, Honer WG, Holt RA (2006) DNA copy-number analysis in bipolar disorder and schizophrenia reveals aberrations in genes involved in glutamate signaling. Hum Mol Genet 15:743–749

Wolosker H, Sheth KN, Takahashi M, Mothet JP, Brady RO Jr, Ferris CD et al (1999a) Purification of serine racemase: biosynthesis of the neuromodulator D-serine. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 96:721–725

Wolosker H, Blackshaw S, Snyder SH (1999b) Serine racemase: a glial enzyme synthesizing D-serine to regulate glutamate-N-methyl-D-aspartate neurotransmission. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 96:13409–13414

Wonodi I, Stine OC, Sathyasaikumar KV, Roberts RC, Mitchell BD, Hong LE, Kajii Y, Thaker GK, Schwarcz R (2011) Downregulated kynurenine 3-monooxygenase gene expression and enzyme activity in schizophrenia and genetic association with schizophrenia endophenotypes. Arch Gen Psychiatry 68:665–674

Woo TU, Walsh JP, Benes FM (2004) Density of glutamic acid decarboxylase 67 messenger RNA-containing neurons that express the N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor subunit NR2A in the anterior cingulate cortex in schizophrenia and bipolar disorder. Arch Gen Psychiatry 61 (7):649–657

Woo TU, Whitehead RE, Melchitzky DS, Lewis DA (1998) A subclass of prefrontal gamma-aminobutyric acid axon terminals are selectively altered in schizophrenia. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 95:5341–5346

Woo TU, Shrestha K, Amstrong C, Minns MM, Walsh JP, Benes FM (2007) Differential alterations of kainate receptor subunits in inhibitory interneurons in the anterior cingulate cortex in schizophrenia and bipolar disorder. Schizophr Res 96:46–61

Wroblewska B, Wroblewski JT, Pshenichkin S, Surin A, Sullivan SE, Neale JH (1997) N-acetylaspartylglutamate selectively activates mGluR3 receptors in transfected cells. J Neurochem 69:174–181

Wu EQ, Birnbaum HG, Shi L, Ball DE, Kessler RC, Moulis M, Aggarwal J (2005) The economic burden of schizophrenia in the United States in 2002. J Clin Psychiatry 66:1122–1129

Yasumatsu N, Matsuzaki M, Miyazaki T, Noguchi J, Kasai H (2008) Principles of long-term dynamics of dendritic spines. J Neurosci 28:13592–13608

Zhang ZJ, Reynolds GP (2002) A selective decrease in the relative density of parvalbumin-immunoreactive neurons in the hippocampus in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 55:1–10

Zhang Y, Behrens MM, Lisman JE (2008) Prolonged exposure to NMDAR antagonist suppresses inhibitory synaptic transmission in prefrontal cortex. J Neurophysiol 100:959–965

# Metabotropic Glutamate Receptors for New Treatments in Schizophrenia

**E.J. Herman*, M. Bubser*, P.J. Conn, and C.K. Jones**

## Contents



**Abstract** Metabotropic glutamate receptors (mGluRs) represent exciting targets for the development of novel therapeutic agents for schizophrenia. Recent studies indicate that selective activation of specific mGluR subtypes may provide potential benefits for not only the positive symptoms, but also the negative symptoms and cognitive impairments observed in individuals with schizophrenia. Although optimization of traditional orthosteric agonists may still offer a feasible approach for the activation of mGluRs, important progress has been made in the discovery of novel subtype-selective allosteric ligands, including positive allosteric modulators (PAMs) of mGluR2 and mGluR5. These allosteric mGluR ligands have improved properties for clinical development and have served as key preclinical tools for a more in-depth understanding of the potential roles of these different mGluR subtypes for the treatment of schizophrenia.

*Beth Herman and Micheal Bubser contributed equally to the authorship of this text.

E.J. Herman • M. Bubser* • P.J. Conn • C.K. Jones (✉)
Vanderbilt Center for Neuroscience Drug Discovery, Vanderbilt University Medical Center, 2220 Pierce Ave, 418 PRB, Nashville, TN 37232, USA

Department of Pharmacology, Vanderbilt University Medical Center, Nashville, TN, USA
e-mail: carrie.jones@vanderbilt.edu

M.A. Geyer and G. Gross (eds.), *Novel Antischizophrenia Treatments*,
Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 213,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-25758-2_11, 

**Keywords** Cognition • Dopamine • GABA • Glutamate • Metabotropic glutamate receptor • Negative allosteric modulator • NMDA receptor • Positive allosteric modulator • Schizophrenia

## Abbreviations

| | |
|---|---|
| 5-CSRTT | 5-Choice serial reaction time task |
| 7TM | 7-Transmembrane domain |
| A-841720 | 9-Dimethylamino-3-(N-hexamethyleneiminyl)-3*H*-5-thia-1,3,6-triazafluoren-4-one |
| AAPA | Active allothetic place avoidance |
| AC | Adenylyl cyclase |
| ACPT-I | (1*S*,3*R*,4*S*)-1-Aminocyclopentane-1,3,4-tricarboxylic acid |
| ADX-47273 | S-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-{3-[3-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-yl]-piperidin-1-yl}-methanone |
| AIDA | (*RS*)-1-Aminoindan-1,5-dicarboxylic acid |
| AMPA | α-Amino-3-hydroxyl-5-methyl-4-isoxazole-propionate |
| AMPAR | α-Amino-3-hydroxyl-5-methyl-4-isoxazole-propionate receptor |
| BAY26-7620<br>BAY 36-7620 | (3a*S*,6a*S*)-Hexahydro-5-methylene-6a-(2-naphthalenylmethyl)-1*H*-cyclopenta[*c*]furan-1-one |
| BINA | 3′-[[(2-Cyclopentyl-2,3-dihydro-6,7-dimethyl-1-oxo-1*H*-inden-5-yl)oxy]methyl]-[1,1′-biphenyl]-4-carboxylic acid |
| cAMP | Cyclic adenosine monophosphate |
| CBiPES | *N*-(4′-Cyano-[1,1′-biphenyl]-3-yl-*N*-(3-pyridinylmethyl))-ethanesulfonamide hydrochloride |
| CDPPB | 3-Cyano-N-(1,3-diphenyl-1*H*-pyrazol-5-yl)benzamide |
| CFMTI | 2-Cyclopropyl-5-(1-(2-fluoro-3-pyridinyl)-5-methyl-1*H*-1,2,3-triazol-4-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-isoindol-1-one |
| CGI-S | Clinical global impression—severity score |
| CPCCOEt | 7-(Hydroxyimino)cyclopropa[*b*]chromen-1a-carboxylate ethyl ester |
| CPPZ | 1-(4-(2-Chloro-4-fluorophenyl)piperazin-1-yl)-2-(pyridin-4-ylmethoxy)ethanone |
| CPT | Continuous Performance Test |
| DAG | Diacyl-glycerol |
| DCG-IV | (2*S*,2′*R*,3′*R*)-2-(2′,3′-Dicarboxycyclopropyl)glycine |
| DFB | Desformylflustrabromine hydrochloride |
| DMTP | Delayed matching-to-position task |
| DOB | 2,5-Dimethoxy-4-bromoamphetamine |
| DOI | (±)1-(2,5-Dimethoxy-4-iodophenyl)-2-aminopropane |
| EAAC1 | Excitatory amino acid carrier 1 |
| EAAT | Excitatory amino acid transporter |

| | |
|---|---|
| EPSP | Excitatory postsynaptic potential |
| ER | Endoplasmic reticulum |
| ERK | Extracellular signal-regulated kinase |
| FTIDC | 4-(1-(2-Fluoropyridin-3-yl)-5-methyl-1*H*-1,2,3,-triazol-4-yl)-N-isopropyl-N-methyl-3,6-dihydropyridine-1(2*H*)-carboxamide |
| GABA | γ-Aminobutyric acid |
| GKAP | Guanylate kinase-associated protein |
| GLAST | Glutamate aspartate transporter |
| GLT-1 | Glial glutamate transporter 1 |
| Glu | Glutamate |
| GPCR | G protein-coupled receptor |
| GTP | Guanosine triphosphate |
| $IP_3$ | Inositol 1,4,5-triphosphate |
| JNJ16567083 | (3-Ethyl-2-(11 C)methyl-quinolin-6-yl)-(cis-4-methoxycyclohexyl)methanone |
| JNJ16259685 | (3,4-Dihydro-2*H*-pyrano[2,3-*b*]quinolin-7-yl)-(*cis*-4-methoxy cyclohexyl)-methanone |
| KO | Knockout |
| LCCG | L-2-(Carboxycyclopropyl)glycine |
| LCCG-I | (2*S*,1′*S*,2′*S*)-2-(Carboxycyclopropyl)glycine |
| LSP1-2111 | (2 S)-2-Amino-4-[hydroxy[hydroxy(4-hydroxy-3-methoxy-5-nitro-phenyl)methyl]phosphoryl]butanoic acid |
| LTD | Long-term depression |
| LTP | Long-term potentiation |
| LY2140023 | (1R,4S,5S,6S)-2-Thiabicyclo[3.1.0]-hexane-4,6-dicarboxylic acid,4-[(2S)-2-amino-4-(methylthio)-1-oxobutyl]amino-, 2,2-dioxide monohydrate |
| LY314582 | (+)-(1S,2S,5R,6S)-2-Aminobicyclo[3.1.0]hexane-2,6-dicarboxylic acid monohydrate |
| LY341495 | (1S,2S)-2-[(1R)-1-Amino-1-carboxy-2-(2,6-dioxo-3*H*-purin-9-yl)ethyl]cyclopropane-1-carboxylic acid |
| LY354740 | (1*S*,2*S*,5*R*,6*S*)-2-Aminobicyclo[3.1.0]hexane-2,6-dicarboxylic acid |
| LY366563 | 2-Aminobicyclo[3.1.0]hexane-2,6-dicarboxylic acid |
| LY367385 | 2-Methyl-4-carboxyphenylglycine; alpha-methyl-4-carboxyphenylglycine |
| LY379268 | (1S,2R,5R,6R)-2-Amino-4-oxabicyclo[3.1.0]hexane-2,6-dicarboxylic acid |
| LY404039 | (−)-(1R,4S,5S,6S)-4-Amino-2-sulfonylbicyclo[3.1.0] hexane-4,6-dicarboxylic acid |
| LY418426 | (1S,2S,5R,6R)-2-Amino-4-oxobicyclo[3.1.0]hexane-2,6-dicarboxylic acid |

| | |
|---|---|
| LY487379 | *N*-(4-(2-Methoxyphenoxy)phenyl)-*N*-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl-sulfonyl)pyrid-3-ylmethylamine |
| LY544344 | (1S,2S,5R,6S)-2-[(2′S)-(2′-Amino)propionyl]aminobicyclo [3.1.0]hexane-2,6-dicarboxylic acid hydrochloride |
| MAPK | Mitogen-activated protein kinase |
| mGluR | Metabotropic glutamate receptor |
| mGluR1a | Splice variant of mGluR1 |
| mGluR5a | Splice variant of mGluR5 |
| mGluR5b | Splice variant of mGluR5 |
| MGS0008 | 5-[2-[4-(6-Fluoro-1*H*-indole-3-yl) piperidin-1-yl]ethyl]-4-(4-fluorophenyl)thiazole-2-carboxylic acid amide |
| MGS0028 | (1R, 2S, 5S, 6S)-2-Amino-6-fluoro-4-oxobicyclo[3.1.0]hexane-2,6-dicarboxylic acid monohydrate |
| MGS0039 | (1R,2R,3R,5R,6R)-2-Amino-3-(3,4-dichlorobenzyloxy)-6-fluorobicyclo[3.1.0]hexane-2,6-dicarboxylic acid |
| MK-801 | (5*S*,10*R*)-(+)-5-Methyl-10,11-dihydro-5*H*-dibenzo[*a*,*d*] cyclo-hepten-5,10-imine maleate |
| MPEP | 6-Methyl-2-(phenylethynyl)-pyridin |
| MTEP | 3-((2-Methyl-4-thiazolyl)ethynyl)pyridine |
| NAM | Negative allosteric modulator |
| NMDA | N-methyl-D-aspartate |
| NMDAR | N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor |
| NR1 | NMDA receptor subunit 1 |
| PCP | Phencyclidine |
| PAM | Positive allosteric modulator |
| PANSS | Positive and negative syndrome scale |
| PDZ | Postsynaptic density 95, discs large, zona occludens 1 domain |
| PI3 kinase | Phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase |
| PIKE-L | PI3 kinase enhancer long form |
| $PIP_2$ | Phosphatidylinositol biphosphate |
| PKA | Protein kinase A |
| PKC | Protein kinase C |
| PP2A | Protein phosphatase 2A |
| PPI | Prepulse inhibition of the acoustic startle response |
| PP2C | Protein phosphatase 2 C |
| PSD-95 | Postsynaptic density |
| (R)-CPP | 3-((*R*)-2-Carboxypiperazin-4-yl)-propyl-1-phosphonic acid |
| R214127 | 1-(3,4-Dihydro-2*H*-pyrano[2,3-b]quinolin-7-yl)-2-phenyl-1- ethanone |
| Ro 01-6128 | Diphenylacetyl-carbamic acid ethyl ester |
| Ro 67-4853 | 9*H*-Xanthen-9-ylcarbonyl-carbamic acid |

| | |
|---|---|
| Ro 67-7476 | (2*S*)-2-(4-Fluorophenyl)-1-[(4-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]-pyrrolidine |
| SKF-82958 | 3-Allyl-6-chloro-1-phenyl-1,2,4,5-tetrahydro-3-benzazepine-7,8-diol |
| TBS | Threshold theta burst stimulation |
| VFD | Venus fly trap domain |
| VU29 | 4-Nitro-N-(1,3-diphenyl-1*H*-pyrazol-5-yl)benzamide |
| VU0092273 | (4-Hydroxypiperidin-1-yl)(4-(phenylethynyl)phenyl) methanone |
| VU0360172 | *N*-Cyclobutyl-6-((3-fluorophenyl)ethynyl)nicotinamide |
| VU0361747 | (6-((3-Fluorophenyl)ethynyl)pyridin-3-yl)(4-hydroxypiperidin-1-yl)methanone |
| VU0364289 | 2-(4-(2-(Benzyloxy)acetyl)piperazin-1-yl)benzonitrile |
| YM298198 | 6-Amino-*N*-cyclohexyl-N,3-dimethylthiazolo[3,2-*a*]benzimidazole-2-carboxamide hydrochloride |

## 1 Introduction

With a prevalence of approximately 1% of the population worldwide, schizophrenia is a debilitating psychiatric illness that is associated with three distinct clusters of symptoms, including positive symptoms, such as delusions and thought disorders; negative symptoms, including social withdrawal and anhedonia; and cognitive impairments in the domains of sensory information processing, attention, working memory, and executive functions (American Psychiatric Association 2000; Nuechterlein et al. 2004). Currently available antipsychotic therapies, which exert their effects primarily through blockade of dopamine $D_2$ receptors, provide some remediation of the positive symptoms, but have little to no effect on the negative symptoms or cognitive deficits observed in schizophrenia patients (Lieberman et al. 2003, 2005). Successful treatment is further limited by partial responsiveness and/or treatment resistance and multiple adverse drug effects, including metabolic syndrome and extrapyramidal motor side effects (Lieberman et al. 2003, 2005; Pramyothin and Khaodhiar 2010). Taken together, these suboptimal treatment options underscore the need for alternative therapeutic strategies for schizophrenia.

There is accumulating evidence that imbalances in glutamatergic neurotransmission mediated through the N-methyl-D-aspartate subtype of glutamate receptor (NMDAR) may contribute to the underlying pathophysiology of schizophrenia (Conn et al. 2009b; Javitt 1987; Tsai and Coyle 2002). Clinical and preclinical studies using NMDAR antagonists, including phencyclidine (PCP), ketamine, and MK-801, have reported robust psychotomimetic-like effects in animals or healthy human subjects and exacerbation of the positive and negative symptoms and cognitive impairments in schizophrenia patients (Adler et al. 1999; Breier et al. 1998; Krystal et al. 1994, 2005a, b; Lahti et al. 1995; Luby et al. 1959; Mansbach

and Geyer 1989; Moghaddam and Jackson 2003; Newcomer et al. 1999; Schmidt 1986; Tiedtke et al. 1990). Neuroimaging studies have demonstrated reductions in NMDAR binding in medication-free schizophrenia patients (Pilowsky et al. 2006) and anatomical studies have confirmed decreased cortical mRNA levels of the NR1 subunit of the NMDAR in the postmortem brain tissue from schizophrenia patients who had not received antipsychotic drug treatment for more than 6 months prior to death (Sokolov 1998). In contrast, such reductions in cortical NR1 mRNA were not observed in schizophrenia patients who received antipsychotic drug treatment up to the time of death (Sokolov 1998). Moreover, administration of compounds that enhance NMDAR function, such as agonists at the glycine binding site on the NMDAR, has produced some symptomatic improvements in individuals with schizophrenia (Heresco-Levy et al. 2004; Heresco-Levy and Javitt 2004). Genetic studies have also identified several genes linked to schizophrenia that directly or indirectly modulate NMDAR function (Harrison and Weinberger 2005; Ross et al. 2006); which have resulted in the development of several genetic mouse models of NMDAR hypofunction, including NR1 knockdown mice that display key phenotypic features of the disorder [see review by (Ramsey 2009)]. Based on these studies, enhancement of glutamatergic neurotransmission via NMDAR signaling represents a potential novel strategy for the treatment of symptoms associated with schizophrenia. However, the development of direct acting NMDAR agonists has been constrained by the potential risk of increased seizures and excitotoxicity associated with excessive receptor stimulation and with receptor desensitization and tolerance after chronic dosing. Such limitations point to the need for different approaches for the modulation of glutamatergic neurotransmission and enhancement of NMDAR function.

For more than a decade, the development of subtype-selective metabotropic glutamate receptor (mGluR) ligands has been proposed as an alternative treatment strategy to direct acting NMDAR agonists for schizophrenia (Krivoy et al. 2008; Moghaddam 2004; Moreno et al. 2009; Niswender and Conn 2010; Pellicciari and Costantino 1999). Unlike ionotropic glutamate receptors, such as NMDARs, that mediate fast synaptic neurotransmission, metabotropic glutamate receptors produce a more prolonged modulation of synaptic transmission and neuronal excitability through activation of different G protein-coupled second messenger systems (Dingledine et al. 1999; Niswender and Conn 2010). Previous studies have revealed that multiple mGluR subtypes are located at key glutamate and γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA)-containing synapses in cortical and limbic circuitry that are altered by reductions in NMDAR signaling (see Fig. 1) and also thought to be disrupted in schizophrenia patients (Liu and Moghaddam 1995; Lorrain et al. 2003; Marino and Conn 2002a; Moghaddam et al. 1997). Selective modulation of these different mGluR subtypes has been speculated to provide several alternative mechanisms for the normalization of neurotransmission imbalances induced by NMDAR hypofunction or antagonism (Marino and Conn 2002a; Moghaddam et al. 1997). For example, stimulation of NMDARs on GABAergic projection neurons in limbic regions normally supplies inhibitory tone to projection neurons in the thalamus; these glutamatergic thalamocortical neurons in turn project to and drive pyramidal

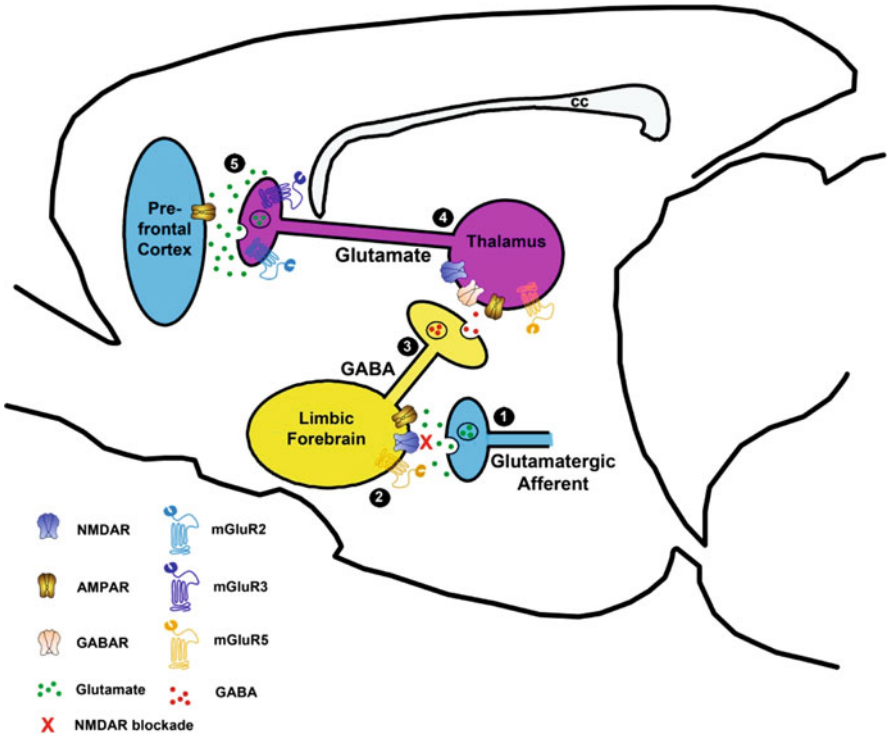



**Fig. 1** *A model of the signaling changes in forebrain and limbic circuitry that are hypothesized to occur in the NMDAR hypofunction model of schizophrenia*. Key components in these circuits are depicted in a parasagittal section through the rat brain. Under basal conditions, glutamatergic afferents activate limbic forebrain γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA) neurons (1). Following treatment with noncompetitive NMDAR antagonists, such as ketamine, phencyclidine, or MK-801, the NMDAR-mediated drive of limbic forebrain γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA) neurons is lost (2). The resulting decrease in GABA release (3) leads to a disinhibition of thalamocortical glutamatergic neurons (4), the subsequent release of glutamate in the cortex, and increased activation of prefrontal cortical AMPARs (5). Based on their presence in key locations of this circuit, mGluR ligands are thought to be important tools to normalize aberrant circuit activity. For example, mGluR5, a close signaling partner of NMDARs, is located on limbic forebrain neurons. Therefore, activators of mGluR5 could restore activity in these limbic neurons to appropriately inhibit thalamocortical neurons. Secondly, stimulation of group II mGluRs (mGluR2 and mGluR3), located presynaptically on terminals of thalamocortical neurons, would suppress increased cortical glutamate levels by inhibiting transmitter release from overactive thalamocortical neurons

cells in the prefrontal cortex (Coyle 2006; Lewis and Moghaddam 2006; Marino and Conn 2002a). However, under conditions of NMDAR antagonism or hypofunction of these NMDARs on limbic inhibitory GABAergic neurons, disinhibition of glutamatergic thalamocortical drive on the firing of prefrontal pyramidal neurons may occur. The resulting downstream effect of this disinhibition would be the enhancement of prefrontal cortical activation through increased stimulation of

the ionotropic α-amino-3-hydroxyl-5-methyl-4-isoxazole-propionate (AMPA) subtype of glutamate receptors (AMPAR) at thalamocortical synapses. Under such conditions, facilitation of NMDAR function through activation of the metabotropic glutamate receptor subtype 5 (mGluR5), a close signaling partner of NMDARs, located on GABAergic neurons could provide increased suppression of excitatory thalamocortical input to the prefrontal cortex. Alternatively, as shown in Fig. 1, reduction in excitatory glutamatergic neurotransmission, at critical synapses like the thalamocortical synapses in the prefrontal cortex, could be achieved through activation of the metabotropic glutamate receptor subtypes 2 and 3 (mGluR2 and mGluR3) located presynaptically on these thalamocortical afferents (Coyle 2006; Lewis and Moghaddam 2006; Marino and Conn 2002a; Moghaddam et al. 1997).

While initial discovery efforts have focused on the development of traditional orthosteric agonists and antagonists for the different mGluR subtypes as possible therapeutic approaches for schizophrenia, it has been difficult to develop highly subtype-selective ligands due to the high conservation of the orthosteric binding site for glutamate across the mGluR subtypes (Conn and Pin 1997; Parmentier et al. 2000). More recently, a novel approach has been undertaken by our group and others to develop selective mGluR ligands that activate or inhibit a particular receptor subtype through actions at sites that are topographically distinct and less highly conserved than the orthosteric binding site of glutamate, termed allosteric sites (Conn et al. 2009b; Galici et al. 2006; Johnson et al. 2003; Niswender and Conn 2010; O'Brien et al. 2003; Pinkerton et al. 2004; Pratt et al. 2011; Vieira et al. 2005). These allosteric activators and inhibitors of mGluRs have high subtype selectivity and can exhibit different modes of action. Allosteric agonists can activate the receptor directly and do not require the presence of glutamate. Positive and negative allosteric modulators (PAMs and NAMs), on the other hand, do not directly activate or inhibit the receptor, but bind to an allosteric site distinct from the glutamate binding site and potentiate or inhibit the effects of endogenous glutamate. One potential advantage for the use of mGluR PAMs may be that these ligands have no intrinsic activity and can only exert their effects in the presence of glutamate at a given synapse, thereby maintaining some level of activity dependence of endogenous receptor activation. Due to this use-dependency, mGluR PAMs may exert little or no activity in normally functioning brain circuitry, but produce robust effects in brain regions with pathologically altered glutamate levels. To date, these discovery efforts have produced numerous subtype-selective mGluR ligands with efficacy in preclinical models predictive of antipsychotic-like activity and/or enhancement of cognition (see Infobox 1 for details of these preclinical models), and in the case of the group II mGluR agonists, clinical efficacy in schizophrenia patients.

In this chapter, we will provide a brief overview of mGluR structure and function followed by the evidence for the roles of the different mGluR receptor subtypes in the pathophysiology of schizophrenia. We will next review the preclinical and clinical breakthroughs in the development of highly subtype-selective orthosteric and allosteric ligands for these different mGluR subtypes, most notably mGluR1, 2, 3, and 5, and their potential advantages and limitations for the treatment of schizophrenia.

## Infobox 1: Preclinical Models for the Development of Novel Treatments for Schizophrenia

The development of novel therapeutic agents for the symptoms associated with schizophrenia relies on the characterization of these novel ligands across a number of preclinical models. As outlined below, here are the key features of the most commonly used preclinical models, which are referenced in this chapter. For more detailed information, the reader is referred to comprehensive reviews (Geyer and Markou 1995; Geyer and Moghaddam 2002; Jones et al. 2008; Porsolt et al. 2010).

### *Screening for Drugs Acting on Positive Symptoms*

In these preclinical models, dopamine overactivity or NMDA hypofunction is modeled by treating animals with psychostimulant challenges. The most commonly used psychostimulants are the dopamine-releasing drugs, amphetamine, methamphetamine, or cocaine, and the noncompetitive NMDAR antagonists, phencyclidine, ketamine, and MK-801. Putative novel antipsychotics are screened for their ability to reverse psychostimulant-induced behavioral changes, such as the following:

*Psychostimulant-induced hyperlocomotion*. This is the most frequently used model for testing novel compounds for the treatment of positive symptoms. Hyperlocomotion induced by low to moderate doses of amphetamine and other dopamine releasers reflects disruption of limbic circuitry as evidenced, for example, by elevated extracellular dopamine levels in the nucleus accumbens (Kelly and Iversen 1976; Kelly et al. 1975; Sharp et al. 1987). NMDAR antagonists are also thought to act in the limbic systems, but they may exert their actions both in dopamine-dependent and -independent fashion (Bubser et al. 1992; Carlsson and Carlsson 1989). Hyperlocomotion is tested in locomotor activity cages equipped with a grid of infrared beams or video tracking. The fact that all clinically used antipsychotic drugs are efficacious in this model gives it high predictive validity (Hoffman 1992; Ljungberg and Ungerstedt 1985).

*Psychostimulant-induced stereotypy*. Psychostimulant-induced stereotypy and its reversal is a less commonly used screening model. Stereotypy, which is induced by doses of stimulants that are higher than the doses required to elicit hyperlocomotion, is mediated by the dorsal striatum and thus reflects drug effects on motor, rather than limbic circuits (Kelly et al. 1975; Ljungberg and Ungerstedt 1985; Schmidt 1986; Sharp et al. 1987; Tiedtke et al. 1990). Rating scales are used to manually score the different aspects of stereotyped behavior (sniffing, licking, gnawing, and repetitive head movements) induced by the psychostimulants (Kelley and Delfs 1994; Kelly et al. 1975). Typical and atypical antipsychotic drugs, as well as compounds acting through novel mechanisms, antagonize stimulant-induced

*(continued)*

stereotypy (Kelley and Delfs 1994; Moghaddam and Adams 1998; Schmidt 1986; Tiedtke et al. 1990).

*Apomorphine-induced climbing*. In this model, the ability of compounds to inhibit climbing behavior induced by the $D_1$- and $D_2$-like dopamine receptor agonist apomorphine is examined. This test is carried out in mice placed into wire mesh cages and climbing behavior is visually scored (Costall et al. 1978; Heffner et al. 1989). Apomorphine-induced climbing is antagonized by low doses of both typical and atypical antipsychotic drugs (Costall et al. 1978).

*Conditioned avoidance responding*. In a conditioned avoidance responding (CAR) paradigm animals are trained to perform a specific action to prevent delivery of an aversive stimulus, such as foot shock, that is preceded by a warning stimulus. CAR can be tested using a shuttle box procedure or an operant chamber, where rats have to press a lever to avoid foot shock (Salmi et al. 1994; Shannon et al. 1999). Conditioned avoidance responding is dependent on an intact dopaminergic (and noradrenergic) system and is suppressed by antipsychotic drugs at doses that correlate with their clinical potency (Salmi et al. 1994; Taboada et al. 1979). Recent studies have confirmed that CAR is also sensitive to non-dopaminergic drugs with antipsychotic-like profiles (Wadenberg and Hicks 1999).

## *Screening for Drugs with Beneficial Effects of Cognition*

Potential beneficial effects of drugs on cognition can be assessed in intact animals—to determine if drugs can enhance normal cognition—or in challenge models. Challenges can be lesions in brain regions relevant for cognition, neurodevelopmental deficits, or they can be of a pharmacological nature. The latter challenges are drugs known to disrupt cognitive processes, such as MK-801 and the nonselective muscarinic cholinergic receptor antagonist scopolamine.

*Prepulse inhibition of the acoustic startle response*. The most commonly used model for examining information processing and its modulation by test compounds is prepulse inhibition of the acoustic startle response (PPI). The term PPI describes the phenomenon that presentation of a short, non-startling stimulus before a loud startling tone attenuates the startle response in mammals ranging from rodents and nonhuman primates to man (Braff and Geyer 1990). In rats and mice, deficits in this measure of sensorimotor gating can be induced by pharmacologically disrupting dopaminergic or glutamatergic activity in limbic regions, but PPI is also impaired by lesions and in neurodevelopmental models of schizophrenia (Ellenbroek et al. 1998; Geyer et al. 1993; Koch and Bubser 1994; Le Pen and Moreau 2002; Moore et al. 2006). Likewise, PPI is reduced in patients with schizophrenia (Braff and Geyer 1990; Swerdlow et al. 1994). The validity of the PPI model is indicated by the finding that the disruption of PPI by psychostimulants and

dopamine receptor agonists is generally responsive to treatment with a wide range of typical and atypical antiopsychotic drugs, but also to putative novel antipsychotic drugs acting through non-dopaminergic mechanisms (Hoffman et al. 1993; Jones et al. 2005b; Mansbach et al. 1988; Schlumberger et al. 2009a; Swerdlow et al. 1988, 1996).

*5-Choice serial reaction time task*. In this operant task, rats are trained to detect and respond to brief light flashes of variable duration that originate in one of five possible locations in order to obtain food reward. This paradigm primarily tests the attentional performance of the animals, but also other aspects of behavior, such as impulsivity (Bari et al. 2008; Cole and Robbins 1992). This task has proven useful to detect the effects of lesions to central cholinergic and noradrenergic systems and may be useful for discovering drugs that target cognitive dysfunction associated with schizophrenia (Inglis et al. 2001; Levin et al. 2011; Muir et al. 1996; Shannon and Eberle 2006).

*Morris water maze*. The Morris water maze is used for testing spatial learning and memory. In this task, rats have to use distal cues in the testing room to navigate from different starting positions to a platform hidden in a circular pool where, over time - both within and between daily sessions - the animals' performance improves. Acquisition and performance of this task is critically dependent on cholinergic and glutamatergic activity and on the integrity of hippocampal function, including long-term potentiation (Davis et al. 1992; McNamara and Skelton 1993; Morris et al. 1990; Schenk and Morris 1985). Both phencyclidine and MK-801 impair water maze performance, and the finding that the phencyclidine effects can be reversed by several atypical, but not typical antipsychotic drugs, gives this model predictive validity for detecting compounds that may alleviate cognitive deficits in schizophrenia (Didriksen et al. 2007).

*Novel object recognition*. To test novel object recognition, first a training session is conducted, during which rats are allowed to explore an arena containing two identical objects. After an intertrial interval, rats are reintroduced to the arena which now contains one familiar object and one unfamiliar object and the time spent exploring the different objects is determined. Normal rats will spend more time exploring the non-familiar object. Disruptions in novel object recognition can be induced by acute or subchronic treatment with NMDAR antagonists, by social isolation rearing, or by prenatal stress, and these deficits can be reversed by atypical antipsychotic drugs and novel compounds with antipsychotic-like profiles (Grayson et al. 2007; Jones et al. 2011; Markham et al. 2010). Additionally, improvements in baseline performance in this model have been reported with novel compounds (Wishka et al. 2006).

*Fear conditioning*. In *context-dependent* fear conditioning, a paradigm that depends on the integrity of the hippocampus (and amygdala), rats are placed into an experimental chamber where after a period of time they receive one or several foot shocks (training session). In a testing session conducted 24 h later, reexposure to the same chamber leads to increased freezing behavior in the absence of the foot shock, the duration of which is

*(continued)*

determined and taken as a measure of memory. Disruption of contextual fear conditioning is seen in isolation-reared mice, a neurodevelopmental model of schizophrenia (Gresack et al. 2010).

In *cue-dependent* fear conditioning, which is dependent of prefrontal cortical (and amygdala) functioning, rats are placed into an experimental chamber where they receive one or several foot shocks preceded by a cue, e.g., a tone (training session). In the test session (24 h later), they are placed into a chamber that is distinct from the one used on the training day (different context) and their freezing response to the cue in the absence of shock is measured. Cue-dependent freezing is impaired in the offspring of chronically stressed pregnant rats, a neurodevelopmental model of schizophrenia (Sadler et al. 2011). In both fear conditioning paradigms compounds can be tested for both facilitation of normal fear memory and reversal of drug-induced disruptions of fear memory.

## 2 Metabotropic Glutamate Receptor Subtypes

### *2.1 Structure and Signaling Mechanisms*

mGluRs are members of the family C GPCR (G protein-coupled receptor) superfamily, including the γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA) B and calcium-sensing receptors, and are characterized by three distinct structural domains: a large extracellular N-terminus where orthosteric ligands such as glutamate bind, termed the venus fly trap domain (VFD), seven transmembrane spanning helices (7TM), and a cysteine rich domain linking the VFD and transmembrane domain with the adjoining intracellular C-terminus (Rondard et al. 2011) (Fig. 2). To date, eight molecularly distinct mammalian subtypes of mGluRs, mGluR1–8, have been cloned and classified into three major groups (I–III) based on sequence homology, ligand selectivity, and G protein coupling (Nicoletti et al. 2011; Niswender and Conn 2010). Group I mGluRs encompass mGluR1 and mGluR5 that couple primarily to $G_q/G_{11}$ and stimulate phospholipase $C_\beta$ activity, leading to hydrolysis of phosphoinositides, generation of inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate ($IP_3$) and diacyl-glycerol (DAG), and subsequent calcium mobilization and activation of protein kinase C (PKC) (Nicoletti et al. 2011; Niswender and Conn 2010). In addition, these receptors can also regulate other signaling pathways downstream of $G_q$, $G_{i/o}$, and $G_s$, and G protein-independent signaling molecules depending on the neuronal population or cell type (Hermans and Challiss 2001). In comparison, group II (mGluR2 and mGluR3) and III (mGluR4, mGluR6, mGluR7, and mGluR8) mGluRs are coupled predominantly to $G_{i/o}$ proteins, which mediate the downstream inhibition of adenylyl cyclase activity, modulation of voltage-dependent ion channels (inhibition of calcium and activation of potassium channels), and the regulation of other downstream signaling partners via released $G_{\beta\gamma}$ subunits. Recent

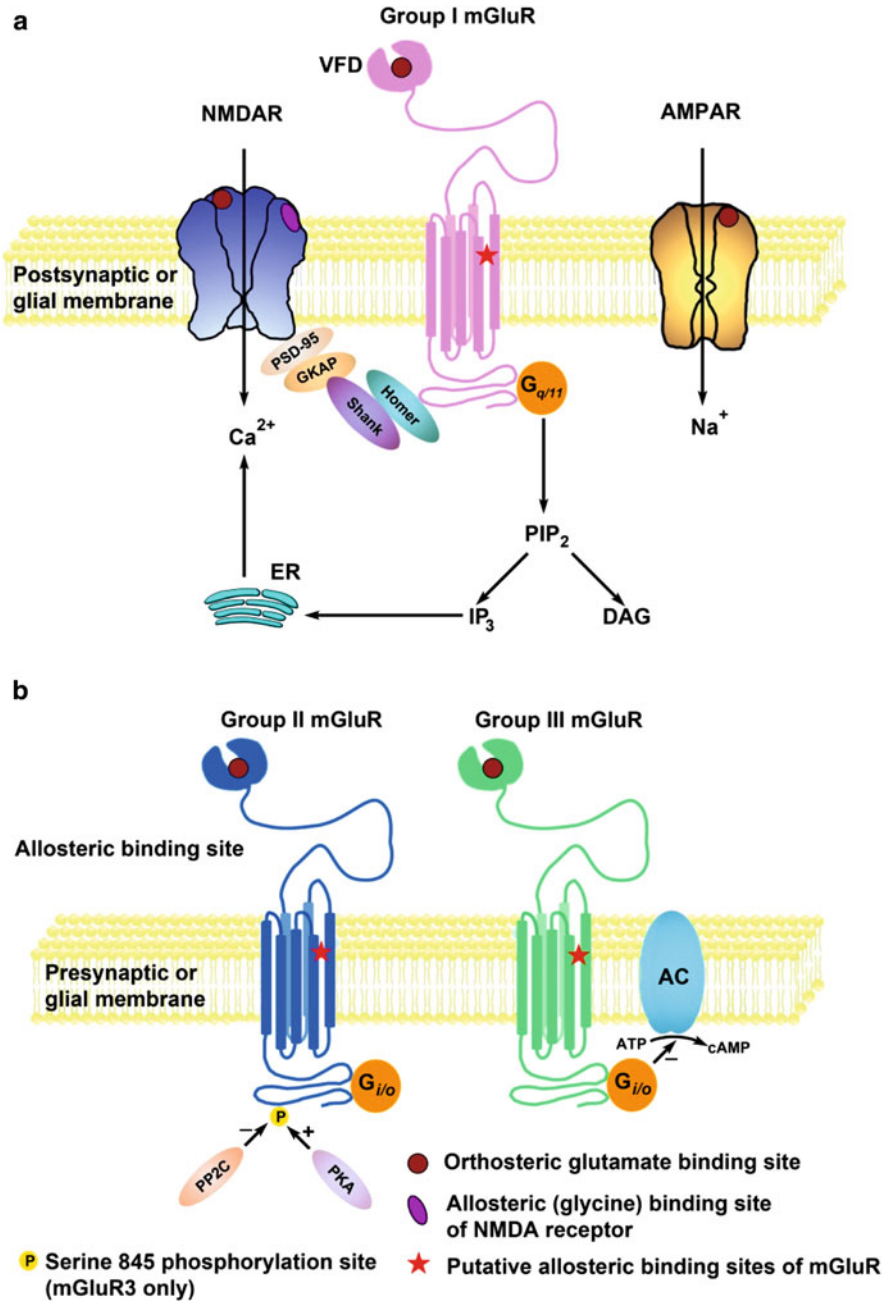



**Fig. 2** *Schematic representation of group I, group II, and group III metabotropic glutamate receptors (mGluRs) illustrating orthosteric and putative allosteric binding sites and major mGluR-associated signal transduction mechanisms*. Glutamate binds to the N-terminal venus fly trap domain (VFD) which via the 7-transmembrane region is linked to the carboxy-terminal tail that interacts with G proteins. Group I mGluRs signal through $G_{q/11}$ to activate phospholipase $C_{\beta}$, resulting in

studies have shown that group II and group III mGluR subtypes can also modulate additional signaling pathways, such as activation of phosphatidylinositol 3 (PI3) kinase and mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) pathways (Iacovelli et al. 2002; Nicoletti et al. 2011; Niswender and Conn 2010).

Numerous proteins have been found to interact directly with the C-terminal tails of each of the mGluR subtypes and play important roles in regulating mGluR signaling. The most well characterized are the Homer proteins, which contain the PDZ 1 (postsynaptic density 95, discs large, zona occludens 1) domains that interact with the last several amino acids of the GluR1a, mGluR5a, and mGluR5b splice variants of mGluR1 and mGluR5 (Beneken et al. 2000; Ehrengruber et al. 2004; Joly et al. 1995; Prézeau et al. 1996; Tu et al. 1999). Distinct Homer splice variants can differentially regulate localization of mGluR1 and mGluR5 receptors in transfected cells and neurons (Ehrengruber et al. 2004; Shiraishi-Yamaguchi and Furuichi 2007). Homer proteins also participate in the assembly of protein complexes at the C-terminal tails of mGluRs that are critical for receptor activity or that mediate functional responses downstream of the receptor. For example, the long isoform of the protein PI3 kinase enhancer (PIKE-L) associates with mGluR5 via Homer interactions, allowing agonist activity at mGluR5 to prevent apoptosis when certain Homer isoforms are present (Mao et al. 2005). Although protein–protein interactions between group II receptors and other proteins have not been characterized as extensively as those occurring with group I mGluRs, calmodulin and protein phosphatase 2C (PP2C) have been shown recently to interact with the C-terminus of mGluR3 (Flajolet et al. 2003). Interestingly, binding of PP2C to mGluR3 is inhibited by phosphorylation of serine 845 by protein kinase A (PKA), and PP2C can dephosphorylate this site (Flajolet et al. 2003). This finding suggests that there is a dynamic regulation of phosphorylation/dephosphorylation of mGluR3 that is regulated by binding of PKA/PP2C.

## 2.2 *Distribution and Function of Metabotropic Glutamate Receptor Ligands*

In general, mGluRs offer an important mechanism by which glutamate may fine-tune activity at the same synapses at which it stimulates fast synaptic responses via ionotropic glutamate receptors. Neuroanatomical studies have revealed distinct

**Fig. 2** (continued) phosphatidylinositol biphosphate ($PIP_2$) hydrolysis, formation of inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate ($IP_3$) and diacyl-glycerol (DAG), and subsequently the mobilization of intracellular calcium from the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) and protein kinase C (PKC) activation (not shown). Through the signaling molecules Homer, Shank, GKAP (guanylate kinase-associated protein), and PSD-95 (postsynaptic density 95), group I mGluRs facilitate N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor (NMDAR) activity. Group II and group III mGluRs signal through $G_{i/o}$ to inhibit adenylyl cyclase (AC) and cyclic AMP formation. mGluR3, but not mGluR2 function, is modulated by protein phosphatase 2C (PP2C) and protein kinase A (PKA) acting at the serine 845 phosphorylation site

patterns of expression for the different mGluR subtypes throughout the CNS in both neuronal and glial cell populations as discussed below (see Fig. 3). There is also accumulating evidence that mGluRs are expressed in the cerebral vasculature and in the meninges (Gillard et al. 2003), and have widespread expression in peripheral tissues, including the heart, liver, adrenal glands, and immune cells (see review, Julio-Pieper et al. 2011). The development and characterization of knockout (KO) mice for each of the mGluR subtypes have also contributed to a greater understanding of physiological roles for each subtype and their potential impact on schizophrenia (Niswender and Conn 2010).

### 2.2.1 Group I Metabotropic Glutamate Receptors

Group I mGluRs are expressed in cortical and limbic circuitry that is critical for normal learning, memory, and affective functions and is disrupted in schizophrenia patients, including regions of the cortex, thalamus, hippocampus, basal ganglia, and amygdala (Berger et al. 2001, 2005; Boer et al. 2010; Hanson and Smith 1999; Hubert et al. 2001; Kiss et al. 1996; Lewis et al. 2005; Martin et al. 1992; Vidnyanszky et al. 1996). Both mGluR1 and mGluR5 are highly expressed in cortical and hippocampal pyramidal neurons where they reside predominantly on dendrites and spines and are colocalized with ionotropic glutamate receptors (Fotuhi et al. 1994; Luján et al. 1997; Muly et al. 2003; Ong et al. 1998). Group I mGluRs regulate neuronal excitation through potentiation of NMDAR and/or AMPAR currents (Fig. 2). As such, these mGluRs play important roles in the induction of long-lasting forms of synaptic plasticity, including long-term depression (LTD) and long-term potentiation (LTP) of neurotransmission at multiple glutamatergic synapses (Awad et al. 2000; Gubellini et al. 2001; Huang and van den Pol 2007; Mannaioni et al. 2001; Mao and Wang 2002a, b; Pisani et al. 2001). Interestingly, co-expression of mGluR1 and mGluR5 with NMDA receptor subunits has also been detected in several subpopulations of interneurons containing parvalbumin, somatostatin-, or vasoactive intestinal peptide-expressing interneurons (Cauli et al. 2000), which makes them suitable substrates for indirectly regulating neuronal excitability. In particular, mGluR5 and, to a lesser extent, mGluR1 are expressed in a parvalbumin-containing subpopulation of inhibitory GABAergic interneurons of the dorsolateral prefrontal cortex, which are thought to be compromised in individuals with schizophrenia (Cauli et al. 2000; Hanson and Smith 1999; Lewis et al. 2005).

Group I mGluRs are also involved in modulating neurotransmitter release (Canales et al. 2003; Levenes et al. 2001; Moroni et al. 1998; Shimazoe et al. 2002). In some brain regions, modulation of neurotransmitter release is mediated by postsynaptic group I mGluRs through the release of retrograde messengers, such as endocannabinoids; while in others, the release is mediated via presynaptically expressed group I mGluRs (Anwyl 1999; Bellone et al. 2008; Pinheiro and Mulle 2008). It is worth mentioning that different group I mGluR subtypes can have markedly different physiological roles in a single neuronal population. For example, in CA1 pyramidal cells, activation of mGluR5 potentiates NMDA receptor currents and inhibits slow after-hyperpolarization potential potassium currents, while mGluR1

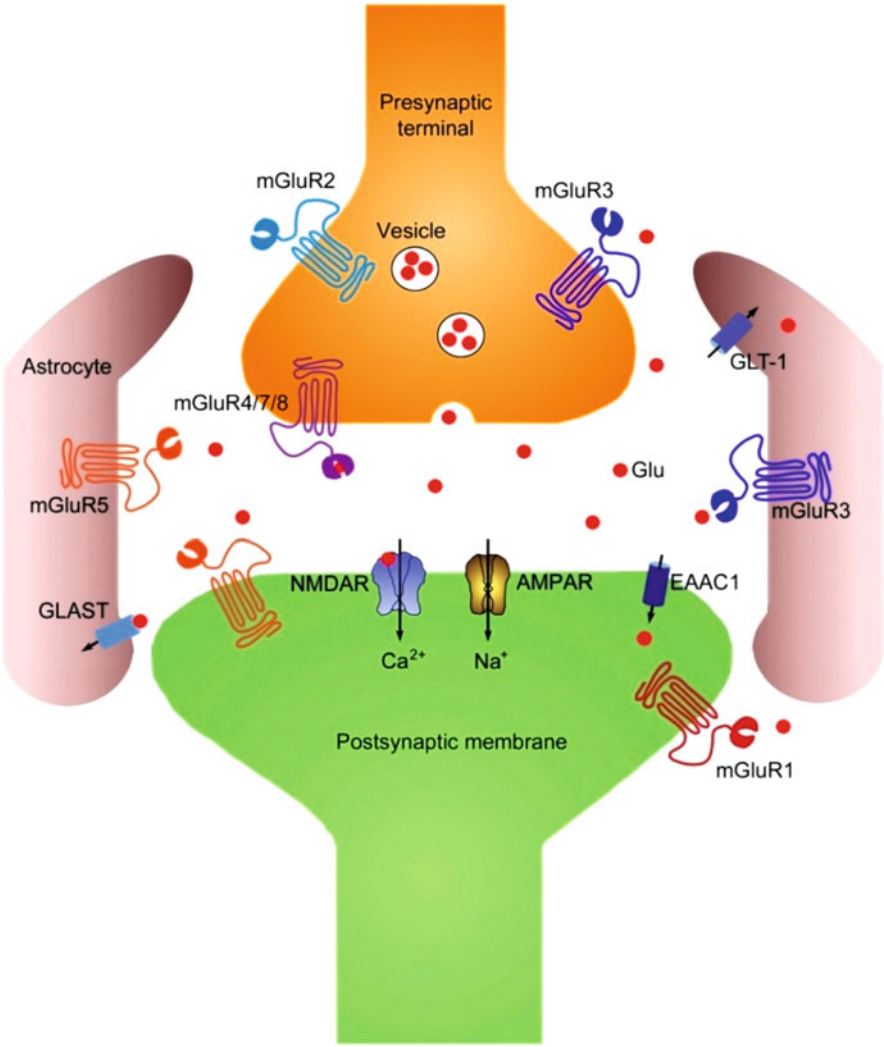



**Fig. 3** *Schematic representation of a glutamatergic synapse illustrating the localization and function of ionotropic and metabotropic glutamate receptors (mGluRs) and glutamate transporters in the central nervous system*. Activation of a glutamatergic presynaptic terminal elicits glutamate release from presynaptic vesicles into the synaptic cleft. Glutamate (Glu) binds to postsynaptic ionotropic glutamate receptors, as well as to mGluRs that are located on the postsynaptic membrane (group I mGluRs [mGluR1 and mGluR5]), on presynaptic terminals (group II mGluRs [mGluR2 and mGluR3] and group III mGluRs [mGluR4, mGluR7 and mGluR8]), and on astrocytes (mGluR3 and mGluR5) surrounding the synaptic complex. For clarity's sake, mGluR6 (only expressed in the retina) and the ionotropic kainate receptor are not shown. Activation of ionotropic glutamate receptors leads to sodium and calcium influx through AMPA and NMDA receptor channels, respectively, whereas stimulation of mGluRs activates different types of G proteins and their associated signaling cascades (see Fig. 2). Extracellular glutamate levels are regulated by glutamate transporters that in contrast to other neurotransmitter transporters are not present on presynaptic

activation results in somatic calcium transients and subsequent neuronal depolarization (Mannaioni et al. 2001). While mGluR1 and mGluR5 expression is overlapping in most cortical and limbic structures, there are marked differences in the distribution of these two mGluR subtypes in the cerebellum. For example, there is extensive expression of mGluR1 in cerebellar Purkinje cells and in the mitral/tufted cells of the olfactory bulb, while mGluR5 is only expressed in about 10 % of Golgi cells with no expression in Purkinje cells or granule cells (Martin et al. 1992; Négyessy et al. 1997; Neki et al. 1996a; Shigemoto et al. 1992). Moreover, mGluR5, but not mGluR1, is also expressed on astrocytes and microglia (Biber et al. 1999; Ciccarelli et al. 1997). Besides their direct role in glutamatergic neurotransmission, recent studies have shown other mechanisms by which group I mGluRs may impact brain physiology and function. For example, a recent report by Ross and coworkers showed that group I mGluR activation increases expression of the neuronal glutamate transporter and may thus indirectly regulate extracellular glutamate levels (Ross et al. 2011). Moreover, the expression and function of mGluR5 receptors on astrocytes can change significantly in response to cell stimulation or under pathological conditions (Aronica et al. 2000, 2003a, b; Balázs et al. 1997; Geurts et al. 2003; Miller et al. 1996).

Consistent with a role for group I mGluRs in cognitive and affective functions, mGluR1 and mGluR5 KO mice display impairments in prepulse inhibition (PPI) of the acoustic startle response (Brody et al. 2003, 2004a), which is a measure of sensory information processing that is disrupted in individuals with schizophrenia and can be reversed by antipsychotic medications (Geyer et al. 2001, 2002; Swerdlow et al. 1994). In addition, as shown in Tables 1 and 2, mGluR1 KO mice show altered locomotor and stereotyped behavior responses to amphetamine challenge and a blunted dynorphin response following dopamine agonist treatment (Mao et al. 2001, 2002). These mice also exhibit impairments in hippocampal-dependent spatial learning in a Morris water maze and context-dependent fear conditioning, as well as in classical eye blink conditioning (Aiba et al. 1994a; Brody et al. 2003; Conquet et al. 1994; Gil-Sanz et al. 2008; Mao et al. 2001). Electrophysiological studies in slices from mice with genetic deletion of mGluR1 or mGluR5 reveal pronounced deficits in hippocampal and striatal LTP and LTD (see Table 3). For example, mGluR1 KO mice display abnormalities in the induction of LTP that correlate with deficits in context-specific associative learning tasks (Aiba et al. 1994b; Gil-Sanz et al. 2008). Moreover, mGluR1 KO mice show impairments in both cerebellar-associated LTD and gait-related behaviors, including impaired balance and ataxia (Aiba et al. 1994b; Conquet et al. 1994; Lu et al. 1997). In the case of mGluR5, these KO mice have severe deficits in NMDAR-mediated hippocampal LTP and in NMDA-dependent spatial learning and memory

**Fig. 3** (continued) terminals. In the rat, the neuronal glutamate transporter, EAAC1 (excitatory amino acid carrier 1), is located on the postsynaptic membrane, while GLAST (glutamate aspartate transporter) and GLT-1 (glial glutamate transporter 1) are found on astrocytes surrounding the glutamatergic synapse. In humans, the role of glutamate transporters is subserved by different excitatory amino acid transporters (EAATs) located on neurons (EAAT3) and glia (EAAT1 and EAAT2)

**Table 1** Behavioral effects of genetic ablation of mGluRs

| Phenotype | Model | Effect | References |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Group I mGluRs** | | | |
| *Locomotor activity/exploration* | | | |
| mGluR1 (-/-) | Amphetamine-induced hyperlocomotion | Enhanced | Mao et al. (2001) |
| mGluR5 (-/-) | Locomotor activity | Decreased habituation | Halberstadt et al. (2011) |
| mGluR5 (-/-) | Cocaine-induced hyperlocomotion | Abolished | Chiamulera et al. (2001) |
| mGluR5 (-/-) | MK-801-induced hyperlocomotion | Enhanced | Gray et al. (2009) |
| *Cognition* | | | |
| mGluR1 (-/-) | Context-dependent fear conditioning | Impaired | Aiba et al. (1994a) |
| mGluR1 (-/-) | Auditory cue-dependent fear conditioning | Intact | Aiba et al. (1994a) |
| mGluR1 (-/-) | Prepulse inhibition of the acoustic startle response | Disrupted | Brody et al. (2003) |
| mGluR1 (-/-) | Prepulse inhibition of the acoustic startle response | PPI Disruption not reversed by raclopride | Brody et al. (2003) |
| mGluR1 (-/-) | Prepulse inhibition of the acoustic startle response | PPI Disruption not exacerbated by phencyclidine | Brody et al. (2003) |
| mGluR1 (+/-) | Classical eyeblink conditioning | Impaired conditioning | Gil-Sanz et al. (2008) |
| mGluR1 (-/-) | Classical eyeblink conditioning | Abolished conditioning | Gil-Sanz et al. (2008) |
| mGluR5 (-/-) | Prepulse inhibition of acoustic startle response | Reduced prepulse inhibition | Brody et al. (2004a, b), Brody and Geyer (2004), Chen et al. (2010), Kinney et al. (2003), Lipina et al. (2007) |
| mGluR5 (-/-) | Latent inhibition | Impaired | Lipina et al. (2007) |
| mGluR5 (-/-) | Morris water maze | Impaired reversal learning | Xu et al. (2009) |
| mGluR5 (-/-) | Contextual fear conditioning | Impaired | Xu et al. (2009) |
| mGluR5 (-/-) | Extinction of contextual fear conditioning | Abolished | Xu et al. (2009) |
| mGluR5 (-/-) | Cue fear conditioning | Impaired | Xu et al. (2009) |
| mGluR5 (-/-) | Extinction of cue fear conditioning | Abolished | Xu et al. (2009) |
| mGluR5 (-/-) | Morris water maze | Impaired reversal learning | Xu et al. (2009) |

(continued)

**Table 1** (continued)

| Phenotype | Model | Effect | References |
|---|---|---|---|
| mGluR5 (-/-) | Y-maze short-term memory task | Impaired | Gray et al. (2009) |
| **Group II mGluRs** | | | |
| *Locomotor activity/exploration* | | | |
| mGluR2 (-/-) | Exposure to novel environment | Increased locomotion/ decreased habituation | Morishima et al. (2005) |
| mGluR2/3 (-/-) | Spontaneous locomotor activity | Reduced | Lyon et al. (2011b) |
| mGluR2/3 (-/-) | Amphetamine-induced hyperlocomotion | Reduced | Lyon et al. (2011b) |
| Cognition models | | | |
| mGluR2/3 (-/-) | Appetitively motivated spatial learning | Impaired | Lyon et al. (2011b) |
| mGluR2/3 (-/-) | Aversively motivated spatial learning | Intact | Lyon et al. (2011b) |
| **Group III mGluRs** | | | |
| *Locomotor activity/exploration* | | | |
| mGluR8 (-/-) | Exploration of novel environment | Reduced | Duvoisin et al. (2005) |
| Cognition | | | |
| mGluR4 (-/-) | Morris water maze | Impaired spatial accuracy | Gerlai et al. (1998) |
| mGluR4 (-/-) | Morris water maze | Improved reversal learning | Gerlai et al. (1998) |
| mGluR7 (-/-) | Context-dependent fear conditioning | Impaired | Goddyn et al. (2008), Masugi et al. (1999) |
| mGluR7 (-/-) | Conditioned taste aversion | Impaired | Masugi et al. (1999) |
| mGluR7 (-/-) | 4-arm or 8-arm radial maze | Impaired short-term working memory | (Callaerts-Vegh et al. (2006), Hölscher et al. (2004, 2005) |
| mGluR7 (-/-) | 8-arm radial maze | Increased theta rhythm during task performance | Hölscher et al. (2005) |
| mGluR7 (-/-) | Morris water maze | Slowed acquisition of spatial information | Callaerts-Vegh et al. (2006) |
| mGluR8 (-/-) | Context-dependent fear conditioning | Impaired | Fendt et al. (2010), Gerlai et al. (2002) |
| mGluR8 (-/-) | Novel object recognition | Impaired | Fendt et al. (2010) |

**Table 2** Neurochemical effects of genetic ablation of mGluRs

| Phenotype | Model | Effect | References |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Group I mGluRs* | | | |
| mGluR1 (-/-) | Amphetamine-induced gene expression | Reduced increase in dynorphin mRNA levels | Mao et al. (2001) |
| mGluR1 (-/-) | SKF-82958-induced gene expression | Reduced increase in dynorphin mRNA levels | Mao et al. (2002) |
| mGluR5 (-/-) | Cocaine-induced dopamine release | Not affected | Chiamulera et al. (2001) |
| *Group II mGluRs* | | | |
| mGluR2 (-/-) | Cocaine-induced dopamine release | Enhanced | Morishima et al. (2005) |
| mGluR2 (-/-) | $D_2$ dopamine receptor binding | Increased proportion of high-affinity $D_2$ receptors | Seeman et al. (2009) |
| mGluR2 (-/-) | GTP-γ-S binding | Increased $D_2$ receptor sensitivity | Seeman et al. (2009) |
| mGluR2 (-/-) | Expression of NMDAR subunits | Increased NR2A expression in hippocampus | Lyon et al. (2008) |
| mGluR2 (-/-) | Expression of glutamate transporters | Reduced EAAT3 expression in hippocampus | Lyon et al. (2008) |
| mGluR3 (-/-) | Basal *c-fos* expression | Increased in hippocampus | Linden et al. (2006), Wang et al. (2005a) |
| mGluR3 (-/-) | Expression of NMDAR subunits | Increased NT2A expression in hippocampus | Lyon et al. (2008) |
| mGluR3 (-/-) | Expression of glutamate transporters | Reduced GLAST and GLT1 expression in hippocampus | Lyon et al. (2008) |
| *Group III mGluRs* | | | |
| mGluR4 (-/-) | In vivo microdialysis | Altered glutamate/GABA release in thalamus and cortex | Wang et al. (2005b) |

SKF-82958, *D1*-like dopamine receptor agonist; *GTP* guanosine triphosphate

tasks (Jia et al. 1998; Lu et al. 1997). mGluR5 KO mice also have altered mesolimbic dopaminergic circuitry and lowered sensitivity to drugs of abuse as evidenced by the failure to self-administer cocaine or exhibit cocaine-induced enhancement of locomotor activity (Chiamulera et al. 2001). Finally, mGluR5 knockout mice have altered body weight regulation; specifically, these mice weigh and eat significantly less than wild-type controls in different feeding schedules, and are resistant to high-fat diet-induced increases in plasma insulin and leptin levels or weight gain (Bradbury et al. 2005).

### 2.2.2 Group II Metabotropic Glutamate Receptors

Both mGluR2 and mGluR3 subtypes have overlapping patterns of mRNA and protein expression in the CNS and are ideally positioned to provide key regulation of multiple

**Table 3** Effects of genetic ablation of mGluRs on electrophysiological correlates of synaptic plasticity

| Phenotype | Stimulation paradigm | Recording region | Model | Effect | References |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Group I mGluRs* | | | | | |
| mGluR1 (-/-) | 5 × 100 Hz Schaffer collateral stimulation | Hippocampus CA1 | LTP | Decreased field EPSP | Aiba et al. (1994a) |
| mGluR1 (-/-) | Theta burst stimulation | Hippocampus CA1 | LTP | Abolished | Lapointe et al. (2004) |
| mGluR1 (-/-) | High-frequency stimulation of Schaffer collateral | Hippocampus CA1 | LTP | Decreased | Gil-Sanz et al. (2008) |
| mGluR1 (+/-) | High-frequency stimulation of Schaffer collateral | Hippocampus CA1 | LTP | Decreased | Gil-Sanz et al. (2008) |
| mGluR1 (-/-) | Single pulse at Schaffer collateral | Hippocampus CA1 | | Decreased field EPSP slope during conditioning | Gil-Sanz et al. (2008) |
| mGluR1 (+/-) | single pulse at Schaffer collateral | Hippocampus CA1 | | Decreased field EPSP slope during conditioning | Gil-Sanz et al. (2008) |
| mGluR1 (-/-) | DHPG (100 μM) bath application | Hippocampus CA1 | LTD | Decreased field potential slope | Volk et al. (2006) |
| mGluR1 (-/-) | 3 × 100 Hz corticostriatal stimulation | Striatum | LTD | Reduced EPSP amplitude | Gubellini et al. (2001) |
| mGluR1 (-/-) | High-frequency corticostriatal stimulation | Striatum | LTD | Reduced EPSP amplitude | Gubellini et al. (2003) |
| mGluR5 (-/-) | Tetanic (2 × 100 Hz) stimulation | Hippocampus CA1 | LTP | Loss of NMDAR-mediated LTP component | Jia et al. (1998) |
| mGluR5 (-/-) | DHPG + low-frequency stimulation | Hippocampus CA1 | LTD | Abolished | Huber et al. (2001) |
| mGluR5 (+/-) | DHPG + low-frequency stimulation | Hippocampus CA1 | LTD | Decreased field potential slope | Huber et al. (2001) |
| mGluR5 (-/-) | Tetanic (2 × 100 Hz) stimulation | Hippocampus CA1 | LTP | Loss of NMDAR-mediated LTP component | Jia et al. (1998) |
| mGluR5 (-/-) | Burst-induced delayed after-depolarization | Prefrontal cortex | | Abolished | Sidiropoulou et al. (2009) |
| mGluR5 (-/-) | Induction of persistent bursting | Hippocampus CA3 | | Abolished | Stoop et al. (2003) |
| mGluR5 (-/-) | 3 × 100 Hz corticostriatal stimulation | Striatum | LTD | Reduced EPSP amplitude | Gubellini et al. (2001) |

(continued)

**Table 3** (continued)

| Phenotype | Stimulation paradigm | Recording region | Model | Effect | References |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| mGluR5 (-/-) | High-frequency corticostriatal stimulation | Striatum | LTP | Reduced EPSP amplitude | Gubellini et al. (2003) |
| mGluR5 (-/-) | Cocaine treatment (24 h before test) | Ventral tegmental area | LTP | Abolished | Bird et al. (2010) |
| *Group II mGluRs* | | | | | |
| mGluR2 (-/-) | Low-frequency mossy fiber stimulation | Hippocampus CA3 | LTD | Abolished | Yokoi et al. (1996) |
| mGluR2 (-/-) | Excitatory afferent stimulation | SN pars reticulata | LTD | Abolished | Johnson et al. (2011) |
| *Group III mGluRs* | | | | | |
| mGluR7 (-/-) | 1 × 100 Hz Schaffer collateral stimulation | Hippocampus CA1 | STP | Reduced EPSP slope | Bushell et al. (2002) |

*EPSP* excitatory postsynaptic potential, *LTD* long-term depression, *LTP* long-term potentiation, *STP* short-term potentiation

limbic and cortical regions that are impaired in schizophrenia patients, including the neocortex, thalamus, hippocampus, amygdala, dorsal striatum, and nucleus accumbens (Blümcke et al. 1996; Muly et al. 2007; Ohishi et al. 1993a, b, 1998; Petralia et al. 1996; Phillips et al. 2000; Shigemoto et al. 1997). Studies using antibodies that recognize both mGluR2 and mGluR3 revealed that group II mGluRs are expressed both neuronally and on glia surrounding around presumptive excitatory synapses (Blümcke et al. 1996; Muly et al. 2007; Petralia et al. 1996). The presynaptic group II mGluRs are not found at the active zone—at the site of transmitter release—but are located predominantly on the peri- or even extra-synaptic membranes (Tamaru et al. 2001). In contrast, about 20 % of group II mGluRs are located in postsynaptic specializations of asymmetric, presumptively excitatory synapses (Tamaru et al. 2001). Evidence for differential localization of the two group II mGluR subtypes has been established in studies employing mGluR2- and mGluR3-selective antibodies. In particular, mGluR3 protein was detected presynaptically, postsynaptically, and on glia, matching the distribution revealed with nonspecific mGluR2/mGluR3 antibodies (Tamaru et al. 2001). Based on electron microscopy studies, mGluR2 is mainly expressed on axons, outside the presynaptic terminals, but not on glia (Ohishi et al. 1998; Shigemoto et al. 1997). It is unclear whether mGluR2 protein detected in neuronal somata (Gu et al. 2008; Neki et al. 1996b) represents newly synthesized receptor protein only or if this receptor is functionally inserted into the plasma membrane. Group II mGluRs are activated by two main sources of glutamate: from excess neuronal synaptic release and from cystine–glutamate membrane antiporters expressed on astrocytes (Kalivas 2009). One of the major functions of group II mGluRs is to provide feedback inhibition of glutamate release from presynaptic terminals (Conn and Pin 1997; Muly et al. 2007; Schoepp 2001).

In knockout mice lacking mGluR2 or mGluR3, marked alterations in dopamine- and glutamate-mediated behavior and in associated neurochemical changes have been reported (see Tables 1 and 2). For example, KO mice lacking mGluR2 display a habituation deficit, increased $D_2$-like dopamine receptor sensitivity, and enhanced dopamine release in response to the psychostimulant cocaine (Morishima et al. 2005; Seeman et al. 2009). Interestingly, double knockout mice lacking both mGluR2 and mGluR3 are *hypo*active and show a *decreased* locomotor response to amphetamine as opposed to mGluR2 knockout mice that exhibit *increased* responsiveness to cocaine (Lyon et al. 2011a; Morishima et al. 2005). Compared to wild-type mice, both mGluR2 and mGluR3 KO mice have higher expression of the NR2A subunit of NMDARs and lower expression of the neuronal glutamate transporter EAAT3/EAAC1 (Linden et al. 2006; Lyon et al. 2008). Relevant to schizophrenia, group II mGluR agonists have been shown to block excessive glutamate release and behavioral changes induced by NMDAR antagonists through action on presynaptic sites and these effects are absent in mGluR2 KO mice (Fell et al. 2008; Moghaddam and Adams 1998; Spooren et al. 2000; Woolley et al. 2008). Group II mGluRs can modulate synaptic release of dopamine and, similar to the group III receptor subtypes, these receptors suppress neuronal GABA release and decrease the amplitude of GABA-mediated inhibitory postsynaptic potentials in cortical and hippocampal regions (Anwyl 1999; Cartmell et al. 2000b; Cartmell and Schoepp 2000; Chaki et al. 2006; Hu et al. 1999; Pehrson and Moghaddam 2010).

Group II mGluRs also play an important role in hippocampal synaptic plasticity and cognition, including induction of LTD of excitatory synaptic signaling (Altinbilek and Manahan-Vaughan 2009; Grueter and Winder 2005; Kahn et al. 2001; Kilbride et al. 2001; Manahan-Vaughan 1998; Nicholls et al. 2006; Renger et al. 2002; Robbe et al. 2002; Yokoi et al. 1996). Accordingly, mGluR2 knockout mice display severe deficits in LTD induced by low-frequency synaptic stimulation in hippocampal mossy fiber-CA3 synapses, but relatively normal LTP, paired-pulse facilitation, and modulation of basal synaptic signaling in this region (Yokoi et al. 1996). Additionally, LTD in the pars reticulata of the substantia nigra induced by low-frequency stimulation of excitatory nigral afferents is abolished in mGluR2 knockout mice (Johnson et al. 2011). Overall, the regulation of hippocampal cognitive functions by group II mGluRs appears to be complex. For example, recent studies using double mGluR2/mGluR3 KO mice have revealed disruptions in the performance of appetitively motivated spatial working memory and novelty preference tasks that depend on the test subject motivational drive, but not on aversively motivated spatial memory tests (Lyon et al. 2011a). This lack of impairment in aversive tasks has been attributed to increased arousal states in the mGluR2/mGluR3 KO mice that may rescue spatial learning functions. Consistent with this hypothesis, injection stress aggravated deficits in appetitively motivated spatial working memory in wild-type mice, but enhanced performance in the double mGluR2/3 KO mice (Lyon et al. 2011a).

### 2.2.3 Group III Metabotropic Glutamate Receptors

The group III mGluRs that are expressed in the brain, i.e., mGluR4, mGluR7, and mGluR8, are widely distributed throughout the cortex, thalamus, hippocampus,

basal ganglia, and cerebellum (Bradley et al. 1998, 1999; Kinoshita et al. 1998; Kinzie et al. 1995; Kosinski et al. 1999; Saugstad et al. 1997; Shigemoto et al. 1997), while the remaining subtype, mGluR6, is expressed exclusively on the dendrites of retinal ON-bipolar cells that respond to glutamate released from rod and cone photoreceptor cells in the dark (Nomura et al. 1994; Vardi et al. 2000). Immunohistochemical studies indicate that mGluR4 is expressed presynaptically at both asymmetrical (excitatory) and symmetrical (inhibitory) synapses and postsynaptically on asymmetrical synapses only (Bradley et al. 1996, 1998, 1999; Corti et al. 2002). Similarly, mGluR8 is localized predominantly presynaptically, but has also been identified in some postsynaptic locations (Ferraguti et al. 2005), whereas mGluR7 is observed almost exclusively in the presynaptic active zone in axon terminals (Bradley et al. 1996, 1998; Kinoshita et al. 1998; Shigemoto et al. 1996, 1997; Somogyi et al. 2003). This receptor distribution is in agreement with a role of group III mGluRs in the presynaptic regulation of transmitter release and the modulation of neuronal excitability and plasticity, including induction of LTD (Bellone 2008; Conn and Pin 1997; Pinheiro and Mulle 2008; Semyanov and Kullmann 2000). Interestingly, glutamate binds with relatively high affinity to mGluR4 and mGluR8 subtypes, but displays lower affinity for mGluR7 reviewed by Schoepp et al. (1999), suggesting that the latter is primarily activated when extracellular glutamate levels are elevated by high synaptic activity or under pathological conditions.

Relatively few studies have addressed the consequences of deleting group III mGluRs (see Tables 1–3). In mGluR4 KO mice, alterations in thalamic and cortical release of glutamate and GABA have also been reported (Wang et al. 2005b). Deletion of mGluR4 has also been reported to modulate GABA(A) receptor function, such as seizure activity and ethanol-induced hyperlocomotion (Blednov et al. 2004; Snead et al. 2000). The performance in mGluR4 KO mice in the rotarod test, a measurement of motor learning, is impaired and presynaptic inhibition at Purkinje cell synapses in the cerebellum is diminished (Pekhletski et al. 1996), suggesting an important role for mGluR4 in controlling synaptic signaling during repetitive motor functions. In addition, mGluR4 KO mice display enhanced acquisition of a spatial memory task, the Morris water maze, but impaired retrieval of previously learned spatial memories (Gerlai et al. 1998).

In comparison, mGluR7 KO mice exhibit impairments across a number of learning and memory tasks (see Tables 1–3). mGluR7 KO mice exhibit spatial learning deficits in radial maze tasks and in the Morris water maze (Callaerts-Vegh et al. 2006; Hölscher et al. 2004, 2005). Deletion of mGluR7 causes deficits in contextual fear conditioning and conditioned taste aversion, suggesting a role of this subtype in amygdala-dependent learning and fear response conditioning (Goddyn et al. 2008; Masugi et al. 1999). In a hippocampal slice preparation, mGluR7 KO mice show impairments in short-term potentiation (STP), but not LTP (Bushell et al. 2002). Finally, mGluR7 KO mice display imbalances in the hypothalamic–pituitary–adrenal axis and increased hippocampal brain-derived neurotrophic factor expression, which has implications for stress-related psychiatric disorders (Mitsukawa et al. 2006), and they exhibit increased susceptibility to epileptic seizures (Sansig et al. 2001).

Finally, mGluR8 KO mice show no deficits in preclinical models predictive of antipsychotic-like activity or sensory information processing like PPI, but these animals do exhibit increased weight gain and anxiety-related behaviors (Duvoisin et al. 2005; Linden et al. 2002; Robbins et al. 2007). However, deletion of mGluR8 markedly impairs context-dependent fear conditioning and novel object recognition (Fendt et al. 2010; Gerlai et al. 2002).

In comparison with the other mGluR subtypes, relatively little is known about the potential involvement of group III mGluRs in the pathophysiology of schizophrenia due in part to the lack of available subtype-selective ligands with suitable physicochemical properties for in vivo characterization in preclinical animal models. In preliminary studies using nonselective group III mGluR orthosteric agonists, including ACPT-I and LSP1-2111, efficacy has been reported in preclinical models predictive of antipsychotic-like activity, including reversal of MK-801- and amphetamine-induced hyperlocomotion and suppression of cortical spontaneous excitatory postsynaptic potentials (EPSPs) and head twitch behaviors induced by 1-(2,5-dimethoxy-4-iodophenyl-2-aminopropane), a phenethylamine hallucinogen (Pałucha-Poniewiera et al. 2008; Wierońska et al. 2011). However, future studies are needed to establish which group III mGluR subtype(s) contribute to the antipsychotic-like activity of these compounds in vivo.

# 3 Metabotropic Glutamate Receptor Ligands for Schizophrenia

## *3.1 Group I Metabotropic Glutamate Receptor Ligands*

### 3.1.1 Preclinical Studies with mGluR1 Positive Allosteric Modulators

Multiple lines of evidence suggest that alteration in mGluR1 signaling may underlie some of the symptoms observed in individuals with schizophrenia [see review by (Lesage and Steckler 2010)]. For example, *postmortem* studies have demonstrated that mGluR1 expression is increased only in the prefrontal cortex of schizophrenia patients with no changes observed in other limbic structures, including the nucleus accumbens and dorsal striatum (Gupta et al. 2005; Richardson-Burns et al. 1999). Such region-specific changes in mGluR1 expression have been postulated to represent a potential compensatory adjustment for cortical NMDAR hypofunction (Gupta et al. 2005). Moreover, electrophysiology studies have confirmed that stimulation of mGluR1 facilitates NMDAR currents in the CA3 region of the hippocampus and in cortical neurons, as well as increases GABA-mediated spontaneous inhibitory postsynaptic currents in cortical layer II/III pyramidal neurons (Benquet et al. 2002; Chu and Hablitz 1998; Heidinger et al. 2002). Studies using mGluR1 KO mice have shown altered sensitivity to psychostimulant challenges, impairments in sensory information processing, and the acquisition and recall of hippocampal-dependent memory tasks (Aiba et al. 1994a; Brody et al. 2003; Gil-Sanz et al. 2008; Mao et al. 2001). Collectively, these findings provide a basis

for the development of selective mGluR1 agonists and/or positive allosteric modulators (PAMs) for the treatment of schizophrenia.

While no selective mGluR1 agonists have been reported to date, two chemically distinct classes of mGluR1 PAMs have been identified and extensively characterized in vitro, including Ro 01-6128, Ro 67-4853, and Ro 67-7476 (Hemstapat et al. 2006; Knoflach et al. 2001; Sheffler and Conn 2008; Vieira et al. 2005; 2009). These mGluR1 PAMs are highly selective for mGluR1 relative to other mGluR subtypes and act at a site on mGluR1 that is distinct from reported negative allosteric modulators (NAMs) of mGluR1 (Hemstapat et al. 2006). Site-directed mutagenesis studies have shown that the valine at position 757 in transmembrane V of mGluR1a is essential for the activity of these allosteric mGluR1 potentiators (Hemstapat et al. 2006). In addition, these mGluR1 PAMs exhibit qualitatively different effects on mGluR1-mediated signal transduction cascades, including mGluR1-induced calcium mobilization and extracellular signal-regulated kinase 1/2 (ERK1/2) phosphorylation in vitro (Sheffler and Conn 2008). For example, all three ligands exhibited comparable effects on glutamate-induced calcium mobilization, inducing parallel leftward shifts of the agonist concentration–response relationships with no effect on basal calcium mobilization (Knoflach et al. 2001; Sheffler and Conn 2008). However, these ligands also were able to activate ERK1/2 phosphorylation in the absence of exogenously added agonist, an effect that was fully blocked by R214127, an allosteric mGluR1 antagonist (Sheffler and Conn 2008). Interestingly, these findings provide evidence that allosteric mGluR ligands can differentially modulate the coupling of a single receptor to independent signaling pathways or act in a system-dependent manner. While the in vitro properties of these mGluR1 PAMs are promising, future studies are needed to evaluate their in vivo activity in preclinical models of psychosis and cognitive enhancement to help validate the potential for mGluR1 activators in the modulation of circuitry relevant to schizophrenia.

### 3.1.2 Preclinical Studies with mGluR1 Antagonists

Over the last decade, important progress has been made in the development of multiple chemical series of selective mGluR1 antagonists (see Table 4). Despite the compelling basis for mGluR1 activators for the treatment of schizophrenia, recent findings indicate that mGluR1 antagonists may also have some modest efficacy in animal models of antipsychotic-like activity and/or enhancement of cognition. These ligands include both the competitive mGluR1 antagonists (*RS*)-1-aminoindan-1,5-dicarboxylic acid (AIDA), JNJ16567083, CFMTI, and FTIDC, which inhibit mGluR1 activation at the orthosteric binding site for glutamate (Huang et al. 2005; Lavreysen et al. 2003; Mabire et al. 2005; Moroni et al. 1997), and the NAMs BAY 36-7620 [(3a*S*,6a*S*)-6a-naphtalen-2-ylmethyl-5-methyliden-hexahydrocyclo penta[c]furan-1-on], CFMTI, FTIDC, A-84172, YM298198, and JNJ16259685, which block activation of mGluR1 through action at allosteric sites (Carroll et al. 2001; El-Kouhen et al. 2006; Fukuda et al. 2009;

**Table 4** Behavioral effects of mGluR1 negative allosteric modulators (NAMs) and antagonists

| Compound | Mode of action | Model | Effect | References |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Models predictive of drug efficacy on positive symptoms* | | | | |
| BAY36-7620 | mGluR1 NAM | Amphetamine-induced stereotypy | No effect | De Vry et al. (2001) |
| | | Apomorphine-induced stereotypy | No effect | De Vry et al. (2001) |
| | | MK-801-induced stereotypy | Partial reversal | De Vry et al. (2001) |
| CFMTI | mGluR1 NAM | Methamphetamine-induced hyperlocomotion | Reversal | Satow et al. (2009) |
| | | Ketamine-induced hyperlocomotion | Reversal | Satow et al. (2009) |
| FTIDC | mGluR1 NAM | Methamphetamine-induced hyperlocomotion | Reversal | Satow et al. (2008) |
| JNJ16567083[a] | mGluR 1 Antagonist | MK-801-induced hyperlocomotion | No effect | Pietraszek et al. (2005) |
| *Negative symptom models* | | | | |
| CFMTI | mGluR1 NAM | MK-801-induced disruption of Social interaction | Reversal | Satow et al. (2009) |
| *Cognition models* | | | | |
| A-841720 | mGluR1 NAM | Morris water maze | Slowed learning | El-Kouhen et al. (2006) |
| | | Spontaneous alternation | Decrease in % alternation | El-Kouhen et al. (2006), Morè et al. (2007) |
| | | Contextual fear conditioning | Impairment of acquisition | Morè et al. (2007) |
| BAY36-7620 | mGluR1 NAM | Cued fear conditioning (eye blink) | Disruption of acquisition | Gil-Sanz et al. (2008) |
| | | Morris water maze | Impairment | Schröder et al. (2008) |
| | | Apomorphine-induced disruption of prepulse inhibition (PPI) | No effect | De Vry et al. (2001) |
| | | Phencyclidine-induced disruption of PPI | No effect | De Vry et al. (2001) |
| | | MK-801-induced disruption of PPI | No effect | De Vry et al. (2001) |
| CFMTI | mGluR1 NAM | Methamphetamine-induced disruption of PPI | Reversal | Satow et al. (2009) |
| | | Ketamine-induced disruption of PPI | Reversal | Satow et al. (2009) |
| | | PPI deficits in DBA/J2 mice | Improvement | Hikichi et al. (2010) |
| CPCCOEt | mGluR1 NAM | Contextual fear conditioning | No change in acquisition | Kim et al. (2007) |
| | | | Impairment of extinction | Kim et al. (2007) |

(continued)

**Table 4** (continued)

| Compound | Mode of action | Model | Effect | References |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| FTIDC | mGluR1 NAM | Methamphetamine-induced disruption of PPI | Partial reversal | Satow et al. (2009) |
| JNJ16259685 | mGluR1 NAM | Morris water maze | Impairment | Steckler et al. (2005) |
| | | PPI deficits in DBA/J2 mice | Improvement | Hikichi et al. (2010) |
| YM298198 | mGluR1 NAM | PPI deficits in DBA/J2 mice | Improvement | Hikichi et al. (2010) |
| AIDA | mGluR1 antagonist | Contextual fear conditioning | Enhancement | Maciejak et al. (2003) |
| JNJ16567083[a] | mGluR1 antagonist | Acquisition of contextual fear conditioning<br>Retrieval of contextual fear conditioning | Disruption | Gravius et al. (2006) |
| | | Cue fear conditioning | No effect | Gravius et al. (2006) |
| | | Delayed non-matching to position | Improved performance | Sukhotina et al. (2008) |
| | | MK-801-induced disruption of PPI | No effect | Pietraszek et al. (2005) |
| LY367385 | mGluR1 antagonist | Radial arm maze | Disruption of reference memory | Naie and Manahan-Vaughan (2005) |
| | | Radial arm maze | No effect on working memory | Naie and Manahan-Vaughan (2005) |

*NAM* negative allosteric modulator, *PPI* prepulse inhibition of the acoustic startle reflex
[a]EMQMCM

Kohara et al. 2005; Lavreysen et al. 2004; Satow et al. 2009; Suzuki et al. 2007). While the initially characterized mGluR1 ligands, including BAY 36-7620 and AIDA, suffered from low potency and poor central penetrance, more recently disclosed ligands, such as FTIDC, CFMTI, and JNJ1629685, have displayed low nanomolar potencies and excellent pharmacokinetic properties for in vivo studies. However, when evaluated in traditional models of antipsychotic-like activity, these mGluR1 antagonists and NAMs produced rather inconsistent effects with reversal of ketamine- and methamphetamine-induced hyperlocomotion observed using CFMTI and FTIDC, but no efficacy reported with other mGluR1 antagonists or NAMs (De Vry et al. 2001; Pietraszek et al. 2005; Satow et al. 2008, 2009). Surprisingly, CFMTI was also shown to reverse MK-801-induced disruptions in social interaction, a preclinical model of negative symptoms observed in schizophrenia patients (Satow et al. 2009). A number of these novel mGluR1 antagonists have also been evaluated in animal models of the different cognitive domains of sensory information processing and memory (Table 4). Consistent with the cognitive deficits reported in mGluR1 KO mice, the majority of mGluR1 antagonists and NAMs tested alone had no effect or actually impaired performance in several preclinical models of working, reference, and long-term memory functions, including the Morris water maze, spontaneous alternation, cue and contextual fear conditioning, and radial arm maze (De Vry et al. 2001; El-Kouhen et al. 2006; Gil-Sanz et al. 2008; Gravius et al. 2006; Kim et al. 2007; Morè et al. 2007; Naie and Manahan-Vaughan 2005; Schröder et al. 2008; Steckler et al. 2005). There were, however, some exceptions to these findings. First, several mGluR1 antagonists, such as JNJ16259685 and CFMTI, produced modest reversals of mouse strain-specific (DBA/J2) PPI deficits or psychostimulant-induced disruption of PPI; these latter effects were in contrast to the PPI deficits observed with mGluR1 KO mice (De Vry et al. 2001; Hikichi et al. 2010; Pietraszek et al. 2005; Satow et al. 2009). Moreover, the mGluR1 antagonists AIDA and JNJ16567083 were shown to produce performance enhancements in two preclinical models of learning and memory, specifically contextual fear conditioning and delayed non-matching to position (Maciejak et al. 2003; Sukhotina et al. 2008). Overall, the interpretation of effects of mGluR1 antagonists and NAMs in preclinical models of antipsychotic-like activity and cognitive enhancement is far from straightforward. In fact, the idea of inhibiting mGluR1 function to alleviate symptoms in schizophrenia seems counterintuitive at first. However, as mentioned in the introduction, increased glutamatergic activity at thalamocortical synapses is thought to represent a key dysfunction in this illness. If so, then antagonism of mGluR1 expressed postsynaptically on pyramidal neurons in the prefrontal cortex may represent a practical way to ameliorate these prefrontal cortex dysfunctions. In future studies it will be critical to compare the effects of selective mGluR1 PAMs with those of antagonists and NAMs to further define the role of mGluR1 modulation in the treatment of schizophrenia.

### 3.1.3 Preclinical Studies of mGluR5 Positive Allosteric Modulators

As previously discussed, novel pharmacologic approaches that selectively potentiate NMDAR signaling may alleviate many of the symptoms observed in individuals with schizophrenia. Anatomical and physiological studies have established that the mGluR5 subtype is a close signaling partner with NMDARs and activation of this subtype potentiates NMDAR currents in cortical and limbic brain regions (Attucci et al. 2001; Awad et al. 2000; Mannaioni et al. 2001; Marino and Conn 2002a; Pisani et al. 2001). The mGluR5 subtype is also physically linked to NMDARs through scaffolding proteins like Homer and can interact through a reciprocal positive-feedback system: mGluR5 can facilitate NMDAR signaling, while NMDARs can control responses to mGluR5 activation through protein kinase- or protein phosphatase 2B/calcineurin-mediated mechanisms (Alagarsamy et al. 1999, 2005; Ehlers 1999). In studies using mGluR5 KO mice, the NMDAR component of excitatory postsynaptic potentials (EPSPs) and NMDAR-mediated synaptic plasticity are significantly diminished (Jia et al. 1998; Lu et al. 1997). mGluR5 KO mice also display impairments in several measures of cognitive function, including sensory information processing paradigms, such as PPI and latent inhibition (Brody et al. 2004a; Brody et al. 2004b; Jia et al. 1998; Lu et al. 1997; McGeehan et al. 2004), and models of learning and memory, such as the Morris water maze, Y-maze, and contextual fear conditioning (Gray et al. 2009; Lu et al. 1997; Xu et al. 2009). These findings are consistent with the ability of selective mGluR5 NAMs, including 2-methyl-6-(phenylethyl)-pyridine (MPEP), to exacerbate NMDAR antagonist-induced psychotomimetic-like activity and impairment of cognition (Campbell et al. 2004; Kinney et al. 2003) Collectively, this functional coupling between NMDARs and mGluR5 suggests that the development of selective mGluR5 agonists may serve as an important strategy for the enhancement of NMDAR signaling for the treatment of schizophrenia.

Unfortunately, the identification of selective orthosteric mGluR5 agonists for development as drug candidates has been limited by the high conservation of the glutamate binding site across the eight mGluR subtypes and unfavorable physiochemical properties, including poor central penetrance (Conn and Pin 1997; Niswender and Conn 2010). Following an alternative strategy, major progress has been made in the discovery of multiple structural classes of selective mGluR5 PAMs (Kinney et al. 2005; Lindsley et al. 2004; O'Brien et al. 2003, 2004). The first generation of mGluR5 PAMs, represented by 3,3′-difluorobenzaldazine (DFB), provided a critical validation of allosteric potentiation in recombinant systems and native tissue assays, but suffered from low potency and unsuitable physicochemical properties for extensive use in animal studies (O'Brien et al. 2003, 2004). A second important series of mGluR5 PAMs, represented by *N*-[5-chloro-2-[(1,3-dioxoisoindolin-2-yl)methyl]phenyl]-2-hydroxybenzamide (CPPHA), was identified and shown to selectively potentiate glutamate-induced activation of mGluR5 ($EC_{50}$ = 150–280 nM range) and produce a five- to tenfold leftward shift in the mGluR5-mediated glutamate concentration–response curve (O'Brien et al. 2004). More importantly, CPPHA demonstrated increased potentiation of mGluR5-mediated

NMDAR currents in the hippocampus (O'Brien et al. 2004). Another interesting finding with this series of ligands involved the potential for different chemical classes of mGluR5 PAMs to differentially regulate distinct signaling pathways coupled to mGluR5. For example, in cortical astrocytes, CPPHA inhibits maximal mGluR5-mediated enhancements of ERK1/2 phosphorylation, but still produces leftward parallel shifts in the glutamate concentration–response curves for the induction of calcium transients (Zhang et al. 2005). Despite improvements in in vitro potency, CPPHA, like DFB, did not exhibit suitable physiochemical or pharmacokinetic properties for evaluation in vivo.

A major advance in the optimization of mGluR5 PAMs with in vivo activity was accomplished with the discovery of a third chemical series of mGluR5 PAMs, represented by 3-cyano-*N*-(1,3-diphenyl-1*H*-pyrazol-5-yl)benzamide (CDPPB) (Chen et al. 2007, 2008; de Paulis et al. 2006; Kinney et al. 2005; Lindsley et al. 2004; Rodriguez et al. 2005). In recombinant systems, CDPPB was characterized as a highly potent ($EC_{50}$ = 27 nM) and selective mGluR5 PAM with no off-target submicromolar activity across 175 receptors, ion channels, enzymes, and transporters (Kinney et al. 2005). In addition, at a concentration of 1 μM, CDPPB produced a ninefold leftward shift in the glutamate concentration–response curve for the activation of mGluR5 (Kinney et al. 2005). Interestingly, site-directed mutagenesis studies revealed that both CDPPB and DFB share a common binding site on the same 7TM domain of mGluR5 as the well-documented mGluR5-negative allosteric modulators MPEP and MTEP, while CPPHA appears to interact with a uniquely different site in the 7TM domain of mGluR5 (Chen et al. 2007, 2008; O'Brien et al. 2003). More importantly, CDPPB also produced robust activity in animal models predictive of antipsychotic-like activity, including reversal of the amphetamine- and MK-801-induced increases in locomotor activity and stereotypy in rodents (Kinney et al. 2005). As shown in Table 5, there are now several structurally diverse classes of mGluR5 PAMs optimized for in vivo activity that show effects comparable to CDPPB in rodent models of antipsychotic-like activity (Chan et al. 2008; Fowler et al. 2011; Homayoun and Moghaddam 2008; Kinney et al. 2005; Noetzel et al. 2011; Parmentier-Batteur et al. 2010; Rodriguez et al. 2010; Schlumberger et al. 2009a, 2010b; Sharma et al. 2009; Spear et al. 2011; Vales et al. 2010; Williams et al. 2011; Zhou et al. 2010). A recent study also suggests that selective potentiation of mGluR5 may have effects in animal models that are relevant to the negative symptoms in schizophrenia; specifically, CDPPB attenuated MK-801-induced deficits in a rodent sucrose preference task, a putative preclinical model of disrupted hedonic experiences (Vardigan et al. 2010). Taken together, these studies indicate that selective mGluR5 PAMs may serve as an important alternative mechanism for the treatment of positive and potentially negative symptoms in schizophrenia.

There is now substantial evidence supporting a role for selective mGluR5 PAMs in the enhancement of synaptic plasticity and reversal of cognitive impairments associated with schizophrenia. As previously discussed, mGluR5 is involved in the modulation of different forms of synaptic plasticity, including hippocampal LTP and LTD (Francesconi et al. 2004; Gasparini et al. 1999; Hubert et al. 2001; Manahan-Vaughan and Braunewell 2005; Shalin et al. 2006). In electrophysiology

studies 4-nitro-N-(1,3-diphenyl-1*H*-pyrazol-5-yl)benzamide (VU29), an analogue of CDPPB, robustly potentiated threshold theta burst stimulation (TBS)-induced LTP, DHPG-induced LTD, and LTD induced by delivery of paired-pulse low-frequency stimulation in the hippocampus (Ayala et al. 2009). In contrast, VU29 had no effect on LTP induced by suprathreshold TBS or saturated LTP (Ayala et al. 2009). These exciting findings indicated that mGluR5 PAM activity enhanced both LTP and LTD, but did not change the pattern or balance of activity that induced these forms of hippocampal synaptic plasticity (Ayala et al. 2009). Since previous studies with mGluR5 agonists have reported potential cognitive impairing activity through selective induction of LTD and seizure activity in hippocampal slices and in animal models (Merlin et al. 1999; Merlin and Wong 1997; Wong et al. 1999), these results with VU29 support a potential advantage of PAMs to maintain activity-dependent mGluR5 signaling relative to traditional orthosteric agonists. Consistent with these physiology studies, two structurally distinct mGluR5 PAMs, CDPPB and (*S*)-(4-fluorophenyl)(3-(3-(4-fluorophenyl)-1,2,4-oxadiazol-5-yl)piperidin-1-yl) methanone (ADX-47273), enhanced performance in the Morris water maze, a hippocampal-dependent spatial learning task (Ayala et al. 2009).

Recent studies have also reported that mGluR5 PAMs produce modest increases in bursting activity and firing rates of medial prefrontal cortex neurons (Lecourtier et al. 2007) and improvements on other cognitive functions, including novel object recognition and 5-choice serial reaction time tasks after systemic administration alone (Liu et al. 2008). In addition, selective activation of mGluR5 by CDPPB and ADX-47273 can reverse psychostimulant-induced disruptions in cognitive functions, including PPI, novel object recognition, and attentional set-shifting tasks (Kinney et al. 2005; Lindsley et al. 2004; Reichel et al. 2011; Stefani and Moghaddam 2010; Uslaner et al. 2009a). Moreover, physiology studies have demonstrated that CDPPB can block the excessive excitation of pyramidal neurons in the prefrontal cortex induced by NMDAR antagonists and return levels of neuronal firing to baseline (Homayoun and Moghaddam 2008; Lecourtier et al. 2007; Moghaddam et al. 1997).

Finally, although progress in the discovery of novel mGluR5-selective mGluR5-selective PAMs has provided tool compounds with in vivo activity like CDPPB and ADX-47273, these ligands still have relatively low potencies at mGluR5 and limited solubility in aqueous vehicles (de Paulis et al. 2006; Engers et al. 2009; Liu et al. 2008). Such limitations have prevented sufficient dosing required for more extensive acute and chronic behavioral studies to more fully delineate the functional effects of these ligands in preclinical models related to symptoms of schizophrenia. To address these issues, a number of novel chemical series of mGluR5 PAMs have recently been identified by high-throughput screening assays conducted at the Vanderbilt Center for Neuroscience Drug Discovery as well as by other research groups (see review by Stauffer (2011)). Two of the most promising novel mGluR5 PAM series include the *N*-aryl piperazines VU0364289 and CPPZ and the nicotinamide acetylenes, represented by VU0360172 (Rodriguez et al. 2010; Spear et al. 2011; Xiong et al. 2010; Zhou et al. 2010). Chemical optimization of these two mGluR5 PAM series has resulted in three novel tool compounds with significantly improved physiochemical properties, including improved solubility in aqueous vehicles, rapid absorption, high brain tissue distribution with excellent fraction

**Table 5** Behavioral effects of mGluR 5 agonists and positive allosteric modulators (PAMs)

| Compound | Mode of action | Model | Effect | References |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Models predictive of drug efficacy on positive symptoms* | | | | |
| ADX-47273 | mGluR5 PAM | Conditioned Avoidance Responding | Inhibition | Schlumberger et al. (2010b) |
| | | Apomorphine-induced climbing | Decreased | Liu et al. (2008) |
| | | Amphetamine-induced hyperlocomotion (mice) | Reversal | Schlumberger et al. (2010a) |
| | | Apomorphine-induced hyperlocomotion (mice) | Partial reversal | Liu et al. (2008) |
| | | Phencyclidine-induced hyperlocomotion (mice) | Reversal | Liu et al. (2008) |
| | | Phencyclidine-induced hyperlocomotion (rats) | No effect | Schlumberger et al. (2010b) |
| CDPPB | mGluR5 PAM | Amphetamine-induced hyperlocomotion | Reversal | Kinney et al. (2005), Parmentier-Batteur et al. (2010) |
| | | MK-801-induced hyperlocomotion | Reversal | Fowler et al. (2011) |
| | | MK-801-induced stereotypy | Reversal | Homayoun and Moghaddam (2008) |
| CPPZ | mGluR5 PAM | Conditioned Avoidance Responding | Inhibition | Spear et al. (2011) |
| | | MK-801-induced hyperlocomotion | Reversal | Spear et al. (2011) |
| VU0092273 | mGluR5 PAM | Amphetamine-induced hyperlocomotion | Reversal | Noetzel et al. (2011) |
| VU0360172 | mGluR5 PAM | Amphetamine-induced hyperlocomotion | Reversal | Rodriguez et al. (2010), Noetzel et al. (2011) |
| VU0361747 | mGluR5 PAM | Amphetamine-induced hyperlocomotion | Reversal | Noetzel et al. (2011) |
| VU0364289 | mGluR5 PAM | Amphetamine-induced hyperlocomotion | Reversal | Zhou et al. (2010) |
| *Negative symptom models* | | | | |
| CDPPB | mGluR5 PAM | MK-801-induced deficit in sucrose preference | Attenuation | Vardigan et al. (2010) |
| *Cognition models* | | | | |
| ADX-47273 | mGluR5 PAM | Water maze learning | Improved | Ayala et al. (2009) |
| | | Novel object recognition | Improved | Liu et al. (2008) |
| | | 5-Choice serial reaction time task | Reduced impulsivity | Liu et al. (2008) |
| CDPPB | mGluR5 PAM | MK-801-induced disruption of active allothetic place avoidance | Reversal | Vales et al. (2010) |
| | | Water maze learning | Improvement | Ayala et al. (2009) |

(continued)

**Table 5** (continued)

| Compound | Mode of action | Model | Effect | References |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| CDPPB | | Amphetamine-induced disruption of PPI | Reversal | Lindsley et al. (2004), Kinney et al. (2005) |
| | | Methamphetamine (chronic)-induced disruption of novel object recognition | Reversal | Reichel et al. (2011) |
| | | MK-801-induced disruption of novel object recognition | Improvement | Uslaner et al. (2009a) |
| | | MK-801-induced disruption of inhibitory avoidance | Reversal | Fowler et al. (2011) |

*PAM* positive allosteric modulator, *PPI* prepulse inhibition of the acoustic startle reflex

unbound (i.e., >5% for the piperazines; oral bioavailability for VU0360172), enhanced in vitro potency and efficacy (i.e., VU0360172; $EC_{50} = 16 \pm 6$ nM and glutamate maximum = 87%), and robust preliminary efficacy in reversing amphetamine-induced hyperlocomotion (Rodriguez et al. 2010; Spear et al. 2011; Xiong et al. 2010; Zhou et al. 2010). These data provide further support for the hypothesis that multiple structurally distinct mGluR5 PAMs have efficacy in preclinical models predictive of antipsychotic-like activity. Furthermore, these novel series of mGluR5 PAMs have suitable properties for optimization as clinical candidates and will be useful tool compounds for a more in-depth understanding of selective activation of mGluR5 for the treatment of schizophrenia.

## *3.2 Group II Metabotropic Glutamate Receptor Ligands*

### 3.2.1 Preclinical Studies with Group II mGluR Agonists and Antagonists

Numerous clinical and preclinical findings suggest that group II mGluR agonists may provide a novel therapeutic approach for normalizing the imbalances in glutamatergic signaling associated with schizophrenia (Marino and Conn 2002a; Moghaddam et al. 1997; Schoepp et al. 1999). As mentioned earlier, one of the major downstream effects of systemic treatment with NMDAR antagonists involves increased glutamatergic signaling in the prefrontal cortex and subsequent behavioral abnormalities, including impairments in cognition and affect that are reminiscent of the symptoms associated with schizophrenia (Lewis and Moghaddam 2006; Lorrain et al. 2003; Marino and Conn 2002a; Moghaddam et al. 1997). Inhibition of enhanced forebrain glutamatergic signaling is speculated to represent a viable strategy for targeting neuronal circuitry that impacts cognitive and affective functions. One of the most successful examples of this pharmacologic approach that has been evaluated in both animals and clinical populations involves the use of selective group II mGluR agonists (Marino and Conn 2002a, b; Schoepp et al. 1999). Anatomical and physiologic studies have shown that group II mGluRs (mGluR2 and mGluR3) are located presynaptically on excitatory glutamatergic terminals (i.e., at

thalamocortical synapses) in the prefrontal cortex and activation of these mGluR subtypes reduces glutamate release in this region of the brain (Conn and Pin 1997; Glaum and Miller 1993). More importantly, previous studies have demonstrated that selective group II mGluR agonists can reverse the effects of NMDAR antagonists on glutamatergic signaling in the PFC and associated behavioral changes (Lorrain et al. 2003; Moghaddam and Adams 1998; Schoepp et al. 1997).

Major progress has been accomplished in the development of a series of highly selective orthosteric agonists for group II mGluRs, represented by the conformationally constrained glutamic acid analogues, MGS0008 (5-[2-[4-(6-fluoro-1*H*-indole-3-yl) piperidin-1-yl]ethyl]-4-(4-fluorophenyl)thiazole-2-carboxylic acid amide), LY354740 ((1*S*,2*S*,5*R*,6*S*)-2-aminobicyclo[3.1.0]hexane-2,6-dicarboxylic acid), and LY404039 ((-)-(1*R*,4*S*,5*S*,6*S*)-4-amino-2-sulfonylbicyclo[3.1.0]hexane-4,6-dicarboxylic acid) (Monn et al. 1997; Schoepp et al. 1997). In recombinant systems, LY354740 and analogues selectively activate mGlu2 and mGlu3 at low nM concentrations and have no affinity for other mGluR subtypes, ionotropic glutamate receptors, or transporters (Rorick-Kehn et al. 2007a). As shown in Table 6, multiple studies have reported that LY354740 and analogues produce dose-dependent reversals of NMDAR antagonist-induced behavioral disturbances, including hyperlocomotion, stereotypy, and spatial working memory deficits (Cartmell et al. 1999; Moghaddam and Adams 1998). Moreover, the inhibitory effects of group II mGluR agonists, such as LY379268 ((1*S*,2*R*,5*R*,6*R*)-2-amino-4-oxabicyclo[3.1.0]hexane-2,6-dicarboxylic acid), on PCP-induced hyperactivity and stereotypy were blocked by the selective group II mGluR antagonist LY341495 ((1*S*,2*S*)-2-[(1R)-1-amino-1-carboxy-2-(2,6-dioxo-3H-purin-9-yl)ethyl]cyclo propane-1-carboxylic acid) (Cartmell et al. 1999), supporting the interpretation that the observed effects were mediated through selective activation of group II mGluRs. LY379268 also dose-dependently decreased the frequency of headshakes induced by activation of 5-$HT_{2A/2C}$ receptors using the hallucinogen 1-(2,5-dimethoxy-4-iodophenyl-2-aminopropane (DOI)) (Aghajanian and Marek 1999; Gewirtz and Marek 2000). Finally, group II mGluR agonists have also been shown to reverse amphetamine-induced locomotor hyperactivity and conditioned avoidance responding (Cartmell et al. 1999; Fell et al. 2009; Pehrson and Moghaddam 2010; Rorick-Kehn et al. 2007b; Takamori et al. 2003; Woolley et al. 2008). With regard to the relative contribution(s) of the mGlu2R and mGlu3R subtypes to the reported antipsychotic-like profile of group II mGluR agonists, preliminary studies indicate that the antipsychotic-like activity of group II mGluR agonists like LY404039 is absent in mGluR2, but not mGluR3 KO mice mGluR2 KO, mice (Fell et al. 2008; Spooren et al. 2000). These findings are further supported by the observed efficacy of selective mGluR2 PAMs to be reviewed in the next sections. Overall, the profile of antipsychotic-like activity of group II mGluR agonists supports the development of these ligands as novel therapeutic agents for schizophrenia and provides further impetus for the evaluation of these compounds in clinical studies.

However, in contrast to the robust effects of group II mGluR agonists in preclinical models of antipsychotic-like activity, these ligands with a few exceptions have no effect or actually produce impairments across several animal models of cognition (Table 6). It is important to note that the extent of effects

observed with group II mGluR agonists on cognition appears to be dependent on whether efficacy was assessed under basal or disrupted conditions, as well as the type of cognitive task used (Amitai and Markou 2010a, b; Aultman and Moghaddam 2001; Greco et al. 2005; Higgins et al. 2004; Krystal et al. 2005a; Schlumberger et al. 2009b; Spinelli et al. 2005). For example, group II mGluR agonists reversed PCP-induced deficits in spatial working memory (Moghaddam and Adams 1998). Currently, the mechanism(s) by which group II mGluR agonists affect cognition are not well understood. Previous studies have shown that many aspects of cognition are critically dependent on the tight regulation of dopaminergic and glutamatergic activity in the prefrontal cortex (Bubser and Schmidt 1990; Goldman-Rakic et al. 2004; Horiguchi et al. 2011a, b; Murphy et al. 1996; Vijayraghavan et al. 2007). Recent evidence suggests that modulation of prefrontal cortical dopamine and glutamate release by group II mGluR agonists may influence their effects on cognitive functions. For example, in vivo microdialysis studies have demonstrated that group II mGluR agonists when administered alone increase dopamine release in the prefrontal cortex, which may in turn contribute to the observed impairments in cognitive processes (Aultman and Moghaddam 2001; Cartmell et al. 2001; Higgins et al. 2004; Kawashima et al. 2005; Rorick-Kehn et al. 2007b; Spinelli et al. 2005). Conversely, the reversal of cognitive deficits observed in studies using amphetamine or NMDAR antagonist challenge models (Dedeurwaerdere et al. 2011; Galici et al. 2006; Harich et al. 2007; Moghaddam and Adams 1998; Pozzi et al. 2011) could be attributed to the ability of group II mGluR agonists to normalize stress- and psychostimulant induced increases in prefrontal dopamine and glutamate levels (Lorrain et al. 2003; Pozzi et al. 2011; Swanson and Schoepp 2002).

By comparison relatively few studies (summarized in Table 7) have examined the effects of group II mGluR antagonists in preclinical models relevant to schizophrenia. In contrast to the effects of group II mGluR agonists, the group II mGluR antagonist ((1S,2S)-2-[(1R)-1-amino-1-carboxy-2-(2,6-dioxo-3*H*-purin-9-yl)ethyl] cyclopropane-1-carboxylic acid) (LY341495) failed to reverse either amphetamine- or PCP-induced hyperlocomotion (Cartmell et al. 1999, 2000a) (Table 7). More complex and variable effects were seen with group II mGluR antagonists in preclinical models for potential cognitive enhancements (see Table 7). For example, when administered acutely LY341495 and MGS0039 ((1*R*, 2*S*, 5*S*, 6*S*)-2-amino-6-fluoro-4-oxobicyclo[3.1.0]hexane-2,6-dicarboxylic acid monohydrate) improved spatial reference memory in the Morris water maze and social recognition tasks (Shimazaki et al. 2007; Higgins et al. 2004), but were without effect on performance in the 5-choice serial reaction time task (5-CSRTT) and on novel object recognition (Sato et al. 2003, 2004). Acute administration of group II mGluR antagonists was also efficacious in challenge models: group II mGluR antagonists reversed performance deficits in animals acutely treated with LY354740, a group II mGluR agonist or scopolamine, a muscarinic cholinergic receptor antagonist, and they attenuated impairments elicited by chronic treatment with the non-competitive NMDAR antagonist PCP (Higgins et al. 2004; Woltering et al. 2010). Based on these preliminary findings, group II mGluR agonists appear to be more disrupting to normal cognitive functions under basal conditions, but may be suitable for reversing

**Table 6** Behavioral effects of group II mGluR agonists and positive allosteric modulators (PAMs)

| Compound | Mode of action | Model | Effect | References |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Models predictive of drug efficacy on positive symptoms* | | | | |
| DCG-IV | Group II mGluR agonist | Phencyclidine-induced hyperlocomotion | Reversal | Tomita et al. (2000) |
| LCCG-1 | Group II mGluR agonist | Phencyclidine-induced hyperlocomotion | Reversal | Tomita et al. (2000) |
| LY314582 | Group II mGluR agonist | Phencyclidine-induced hyperlocomotion (wild-type mice) | Reversal | Spooren et al. (2000) |
| | | Phencyclidine-induced hyperlocomotion (mGluR 2 KO) | No effect | Spooren et al. (2000) |
| | | Phencyclidine-induced hyperlocomotion (rat) | No effect | Henry et al. (2002) |
| LY354740 | Group II mGluR agonist | Conditioned avoidance | No effect | Takamori et al. (2003) |
| | | Amphetamine-induced hyperlocomotion | No effect | Cartmell et al. (1999), Schlumberger et al. (2009a) |
| | | Amphetamine-induced hyperlocomotion | Reversal | Pehrson and Moghaddam (2010) |
| | | Phencyclidine-induced hyperlocomotion | Reversal | Cartmell et al. (1999), Moghaddam and Adams (1998) |
| | | Phencyclidine-induced stereotypy | Reversal | Moghaddam and Adams (1998) |
| | | MK-801-induced stereotypy | Reversal | Homayoun and Moghaddam (2008) |
| | | Hallucinogen (DOI)-induced head twitches | Reversal | Kłodzinska et al. (2002) |
| | | Phencyclidine-induced increases in relative cerebral blood volume in cortex and limbic regions | Reversal | Gozzi et al. (2008) |

(continued)

**Table 6** (continued)

| Compound | Mode of action | Model | Effect | References |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| LY379268 | Group II mGluR agonist | Isolation rearing-induced hyperlocomotion | Reversal | Jones et al. (2011) |
| | | Prenatal stress-induced hyperlocomotion | Reversal | Matrisciano et al. (2011) |
| | | Amphetamine-induced hyperlocomotion | (Partial) reversal | Cartmell et al. (1999), Cartmell et al. (2000a), Fell et al. (2009) |
| | | Amphetamine-induced hyperlocomotion (mGluR 2 KO) | No effect | Woolley et al. (2008) |
| | | Amphetamine-induced hyperlocomotion (mGluR 3 KO) | Reversal | Woolley et al. (2008) |
| | | Phencyclidine (acute)-induced hyperlocomotion | Reversal | Cartmell et al. (1999), Swanson and Schoepp (2002), Woolley et al. (2008), Fell et al. (2009) |
| | | Phencyclidine-induced hyperlocomotion (mGluR 2 KO) | No effect | Woolley et al. (2008) |
| | | Phencyclidine-induced hyperlocomotion (mGluR 3 KO) | Reversal | Woolley et al. (2008) |
| | | Phencyclidine (chronic)-induced hyperlocomotion | Reversal | Clark et al. (2002) |
| | | Ketamine-induced hyperlocomotion | Reversal | Imre et al. (2006), Brnardic et al. (2010) |
| | | MK-801-induced hyperlocomotion | Reversal | Uslaner et al. (2009b) |
| | | Hallucinogen (DOI)-induced head twitches | Reversal | Kłodzinska et al. (2002) |
| LY404039 | Group II mGluR agonist | Conditioned avoidance responding | Inhibition | Rorick-Kehn et al. (2007b) |
| | | Amphetamine-induced hyperlocomotion | Reversal | Rorick-Kehn et al. (2007b) |
| | | Amphetamine-induced hyperlocomotion (mGluR 2 KO) | No effect | Fell et al. (2008) |
| | | Amphetamine-induced hyperlocomotion (mGluR 3 KO) | Reversal | Fell et al. (2008) |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| LY404039 | | Phencyclidine-induced hyperlocomotion | Reversal | Patil et al. (2007b), Rorick-Kehn et al. (2007b) |
| | | Phencyclidine-induced hyperlocomotion (mGluR 2 KO) | No effect | Fell et al. (2008) |
| | | Phencyclidine-induced hyperlocomotion (mGluR 3 KO) | Reversal | Fell et al. (2008) |
| LY418426 | Group II mGluR agonist | Conditioned avoidance | Inhibition | Takamori et al. (2003) |
| LY544344 | Group II mGluR agonist | Phencyclidine-induced hyperlocomotion | Reversal | Rorick-Kehn et al. (2006) |
| MGS0008 | Group II mGluR agonist | Phencyclidine-induced hyperlocomotion | Reversal | Nakazato et al. (2000) |
| | | Conditioned avoidance | Inhibition | Takamori et al. (2003) |
| MGS0028 | Group II mGluR agonist | Phencyclidine-induced hyperlocomotion | Reversal | Nakazato et al. (2000) |
| | | Conditioned avoidance | Inhibition | Takamori et al. (2003) |
| BINA | mGluR2 PAM | Amphetamine-induced hyperlocomotion | No effect | Galici et al. (2006) |
| | | Phencyclidine-induced hyperlocomotion | Reversal | Galici et al. (2006), Hackler et al. (2010) |
| | | Hallucinogen (DOB)-induced head twitches | Reversal | Benneyworth et al. (2007) |
| CBiPES | mGluR2 PAM | Phencyclidine-induced hyperlocomotion | Reversal | Johnson et al. (2005) |
| *Cognition models* | | | | |
| L-CCG | Group II mGluR agonist | Contextual fear conditioning | Enhancement | Szapiro et al. (2001) |
| LY314582 | Group II mGluR agonist | Phencyclidine-induced disruption of prepulse inhibition (PPI) | No effect | Henry et al. (2002) |
| LY354740 | Group II mGluR agonist | Morris water maze | Impairment | Higgins et al. (2004) |
| | | Deficits of mGlu2 KO mice in Morris water maze | Improvement | Higgins et al. (2004) |
| | | 5-choice serial reaction time task (5-CSRTT) [marmoset] | Reduced accuracy | Spinelli et al. (2005) |

(continued)

**Table 6** (continued)

| Compound | Mode of action | Model | Effect | References |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Concurrent delayed matching to position (marmoset) | Reduced accuracy | Spinelli et al. (2005) |
| | | Delayed alternation performance | Impairment | Aultman and Moghaddam (2001) |
| | | Delayed matching to position | Impairment | Higgins et al. (2004), Woltering et al. (2010) |
| | | Delayed matching to sample | Impairment | Higgins et al. (2004) |
| | | Spontaneous alternation | Disruption | Schlumberger et al. (2009b) |
| | | Amphetamine-induced disruption of PPI (DBA/2 mice) | Reversal | Profaci et al. (2011) |
| | | Apomorphine-induced disruption of PPI (rats) | No effect | Ossowska et al. (2000), Schlumberger et al. (2009a) |
| | | Phencyclidine-induced disruption of PPI (DBA/2 mice) | Reversal | Profaci et al. (2011) |
| | | Phencyclidine-induced disruption of PPI (rat) | No effect | Ossowska et al. (2000), Schreiber et al. (2000) |
| | | Phencyclidine-induced disruption of delayed alternation | Reversal | Moghaddam and Adams (1998) |
| | | Phencyclidine-induced disruption of spontaneous alternation | No effect | Schlumberger et al. (2009b) |
| | | MK-801-induced deficits in delayed alternation | No effect | Ossowska et al. (2000) |
| | | social novelty discrimination deficits induced by repeated neonatal phencyclidine | Reversal | Harich et al. (2007) |
| LY366563 | Group II mGluR agonist | Delayed matching to position | No effect | Higgins et al. (2004) |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| LY379268 | Group II mGluR agonist | Prenatal stress-induced disruption of PPI | Reversal | Matrisciano et al. (2011) |
| | | Isolation rearing-induced deficits in novel object recognition | Reversal | Jones et al. (2011) |
| | | Disruption of reversal learning in rats with neonatal ventral hippocampal lesion | Improvement | Gruber et al. (2010) |
| | | 5-CSRTT | No effect | Amitai and Markou (2010b) |
| | | Phencyclidine-induced disruption of 5-CSRTT | No effect | Greco et al. (2005) |
| | | Phencyclidine-induced disruption of 5-CSRTT | Exacerbation | Amitai and Markou (2010b) |
| | | (R)-CPP-induced disruption of 5-CSRTT | Improved accuracy | Pozzi et al. (2011) |
| | | Ketamine-induced disruption of PPI | No effect | Imre et al. (2006) |
| | | GLT1 upregulation-induced disruption of PPI | Reversal | Bellesi and Conti (2010) |
| LY404039 | Group II mGluR agonist | Ketamine-induced brain activation | Reversal | Dedeurwaerdere et al. (2011) |
| | | Memantive-induced brain activation | Reversal | Dedeurwaerdere et al. (2011) |
| BINA | mGluR2 PAM | Phencyclidine-induced disruption of PPI | Reversal | Galici et al. (2006) |
| LY487379 | mGluR2 PAM | MK-801-induced disruption of active allothetic place avoidance | No effect | Vales et al. (2010) |
| | | Attentional set-shifting | Improvement | Nikiforuk et al. (2011) |
| | | Deficits in social novelty discrimination induced by neonatal phencyclidine | Reversal | Harich et al. (2007) |

*5-CSRTT* 5-choice serial reaction time task, *DOB* 2,5-Dimethoxy-4-bromoamphetamine, *DOI* (±)1-(2,5-dimethoxy-4-iodophenyl)-2-aminopropane, *GLT-1* high-affinity glutamate transporter 1, *PAM* positive allosteric modulator, *PPI* prepulse inhibition of the acoustic startle reflex, *(R)-CPP* 3-((*R*)-2-Carboxypiperazin-4-yl)-propyl-1-phosphonic acid

cognitive disruptions due to imbalances in glutamatergic and/or dopaminergic signaling, as modeled by NMDAR antagonist (PCP) or amphetamine-induced deficits. In contrast, group II mGluR antagonists appear to provide modest facilitation of some aspects of cognitive functioning. Future studies are needed to further understand the impact of these potential cognitive impairing effects on clinical populations, including schizophrenia patients.

### 3.2.2 Clinical Studies of Group II mGluR Agonists

Based on the favorable preclinical findings of antipsychotic-like activity and safety for group II mGluR agonists, these ligands were advanced into clinical trials for the treatment of schizophrenia, as well as other clinical indications, including anxiety (Schoepp et al. 2003). To date, there have been only three clinical studies reported in the literature using group II mGluR agonists (see Table 8). In an initial phase-I, double-blind, placebo-matched study (19 healthy volunteers), LY354740 (100 or 400 mg) was administered prior to a single-blind intravenous administration of saline or ketamine bolus (0.26 mg/kg in 1 min) for 3 days (Krystal et al. 2005a). As shown previously (Krystal et al. 2005b), ketamine treatment alone produced robust positive and negative symptoms as well as deficits in attention, working memory, and delayed recall functions. Pretreatment with LY354740 produced significant dose-related improvements in ketamine-induced working memory impairments, including enhanced performance in the Continuous Performance task, and a trend towards efficacy on psychotic symptoms in these individuals (Krystal et al. 2005a). As previously discussed in the preclinical studies section, subsequent clinical trials in schizophrenia patients were conducted using the group II mGluR agonist, LY2140023, an oral prodrug of LY404039, in response to potential oral bioavailability concerns with LY354740.

In a first double-blind, placebo-controlled, 4-week study, 196 schizophrenia patients were randomized to LY2140023 monohydrate (40 mg t.i.d.), placebo, or atypical antipsychotic olanzapine (15 mg/day) treatment groups (Patil et al. 2007b). In this study, LY2140023 produced significant improvements in positive and negative symptoms relative to placebo and comparable to the efficacy observed with olanzapine, as measured using the Positive and Negative Syndrome Scale (PANSS) and the Clinical Global Impression (CGI-S) scale (Patil et al. 2007b). In addition, the LY2140023 treatment group showed no exacerbation of extrapyramidal symptoms or elevation in blood triglyceride levels. There was also no major weight gain with LY2140023 as observed in the olanzapine treatment group (Patil et al. 2007b). In order to further validate the efficacy and safety of group II mGluR agonists as a potential monotherapy for schizophrenia, a second multicenter, inpatient Phase II, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial was conducted with LY2140023 in schizophrenia patients (Kinon et al. 2011b). In this clinical study, 669 patients were randomized to treatment groups of 5, 20, 40, or 80 mg LY2140023 monohydrate (t.i.d), placebo (t.i.d.), or daily placebo and olanzapine (15 mg). Unfortunately, the results of this second study were inconclusive due to a placebo effect that was not

significantly different from either LY2140023 or olanzapine treatment groups. Another confound of this study was that the comparator olanzapine also did not separate from the placebo group due to a higher than expected placebo effect (Kinon et al. 2011b). There were also adverse events reported in this second clinical study, specifically the development of convulsions in four patients of the LY2140023 treatment group. These adverse findings have raised apprehensions regarding the safety of long-term treatment with group II mGluR agonists. However, follow-up clinical trials with LY2140023 are ongoing that will potentially provide further clarification of the efficacy and adverse effect profile of group II mGluR agonists for the treatment of schizophrenia. It is important to note that if group II mGluR agonists are further validated in the clinic, these drugs will represent the first non-dopamine $D_2$ receptor antagonist antipsychotic therapy and the first novel mechanism based on a hypothesis-driven approach to resolve the unmet medical needs associated with schizophrenia. Taken together, the results of these initial clinical studies support the idea that normalizing aberrant glutamatergic function by activating group II mGluRs may be a valid strategy for treating schizophrenia symptoms.

### 3.2.3 Preclinical Studies with mGluR2 Positive Allosteric Modulators

While orthosteric group II mGluR agonists hold promise as an alternative therapeutic option for the treatment of symptoms associated with schizophrenia, it is unclear whether these orthosteric agonists will achieve a launch into the market for broader clinical use. With the exception of LY354740 and related compounds, the design of highly selective agonists, as well as antagonists, that act at the glutamate binding site of the group II mGluRs has been constrained by the high conservation of the orthosteric glutamate binding site of the mGluR subtypes and by the inability to modify glutamate-related ligands to achieve suitable drug-like properties, while maintaining or improving affinity at the receptor. Beyond the challenges of designing selective ligands to the orthosteric binding site of the group II mGluRs, there are also other potential constraints associated with the use of direct-acting orthosteric ligands as therapeutic agents, including receptor desensitization and the development of tolerance after chronic administration. For example, Jones and colleagues reported the development of tolerance to the analgesic effects of the group II mGluR agonist LY379268 after 4 days of repeated daily administration in several rodent models of persistent pain (Jones et al. 2005a). Moreover, tolerance has been reported after chronic dosing in one rodent model used to assess antipsychotic efficacy (Galici et al. 2005; Woolley et al. 2008). While the extent of tolerance development in clinical populations after chronic treatment with group II mGluR agonists remains unknown, results from animal studies suggest that alternative approaches for the modulation of mGluR function are needed. Thus, it is possible that the design of positive allosteric modulators of mGluR2 and/or mGluR3 might provide an alternative strategy that provides several advantages over some of these potential shortcomings.

**Table 7** Behavioral effects of group II mGluR antagonists

| Compound | Model | Effect | References |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Models predictive of drug efficacy on positive symptoms* | | | |
| LY341495 | Amphetamine-induced hyperlocomotion | No effect | Cartmell et al. (2000a) |
| | Phencyclidine-induced hyperlocomotion | No effect | Cartmell et al. (1999) |
| | Locomotor activity | Habituation deficits | Bespalov et al. (2007) |
| | Locomotor activity in habituated animals | Increase | Bespalov et al. (2007) |
| *Cognition models* | | | |
| MGS0039 | Social recognition | Enhancement | Shimazaki et al. (2007) |
| LY341495 | LY354740-induced deficits in DMTP | Reversal | Higgins et al. (2004) |
| | Morris water maze | Improved acquisition | Higgins et al. (2004) |
| | Novel object recognition | No effect | Barker et al. (2006) |
| | 5-choice serial reaction time task (5-CSRTT) baseline | No effect | Semenova and Markou (2007) |
| | 5-CSRTT | Impairment (with chronic treatment) | Amitai and Markou (2010b) |
| | Disruption of 5-CSRTT performance by repeated phencyclidine | No effect (with acute treatment) | Amitai and Markou (2010b) |
| | Disruption of 5-CSRTT performance by repeated phencyclidine | Improvement (with chronic treatment) | Amitai and Markou (2010b) |

*5-CSRTT* 5-choice serial reaction time task, *DMTP* delayed matching-to-position task

To date, there have been several novel positive allosteric modulators of mGluR2 reported with the majority of them based on two major structural classes, termed LY487379 ([*N*-(4-(2-methoxyphenoxy)phenyl)-*N*-(2,2,2-trifluoroethylsulfonyl) pyrid-3ylmethylamine]) (Galici et al. 2005; Johnson et al. 2003) and (3-[(2-cyclopentyl-6,7-dimethyl-1-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-inden-5yl)oxy]methyl]biphenyl-4-carboxylic acid) (BINA) (Bonnefous et al. 2005; Cube et al. 2005; Galici et al. 2006; Pinkerton et al. 2005; Schaffhauser et al. 2003). Both BINA and LY487379 are highly selective for mGluR2 relative to other mGluR subtypes and induce a leftward shift of the concentration–response curve for glutamate with no intrinsic agonist activity at mGluR2 (Bonnefous et al. 2005; Cube et al. 2005; Galici et al. 2006; Pinkerton et al. 2005; Schaffhauser et al. 2003). Mutation analysis has identified three amino acids in the 7TM domain that are critical for actions of mGluR2 PAMs (Rowe et al. 2008; Schaffhauser et al. 2003). Site-directed mutagenesis studies with LY487379 and BINA have detected a binding site in regions IV and V of the 7TM domains of mGluR2, which is critical for conferring selectivity for mGluR2 over other mGluR subtypes (Rowe et al. 2008; Schaffhauser et al. 2003). Interestingly, these mGluR2 PAMs have displayed robust effects in

**Table 8** Behavioral effects of mGluR 2/3 agonists in healthy humans and schizophrenia patients

| Compound | Model | Effect | References |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Positive and negative symptoms in schizophrenic patients* | | | |
| LY2140023[a] | PANSS | Improvement | Patil et al. (2007a) |
| | PANSS | No effect | Kinon et al. (2011a) |
| | CGI-S | Improvement | Patil et al. (2007a) |
| *Positive and negative symptoms in ketamine-treated healthy controls* | | | |
| LY354740 | PANSS | No effect | Krystal et al. (2005a) |
| *Ketamine-induced cognitive impairments in healthy controls* | | | |
| LY354740 | CPT | Improvement | Krystal et al. (2005a) |
| | Nonverbal working memory task | Improvement | Krystal et al. (2005a) |
| | Hopkins verbal memory task | No effect | Krystal et al. (2005a) |

*CGI-S* Clinical global impression, Severity score; *CPT* Continuous performance test; *PANSS* positive and negative syndrome scale
[a]LY2140023 is an orally bioavailable prodrug of LY354740

potentiating responses to group II mGluR agonists at several identified glutamatergic synapses, including excitatory synaptic responses in the PFC that are thought to be relevant to actions of psychotomimetic agents (Benneyworth et al. 2007; Galici et al. 2006; Johnson et al. 2003; Poisik et al. 2005; Schaffhauser et al. 2003). Furthermore, as shown in Table 6, multiple structurally distinct mGluR2-selective PAMs have efficacy in preclinical models that predict antipsychotic-like activity that is comparable to the effects observed with both group II mGluR orthosteric agonists and currently available antipsychotic medications (Benneyworth et al. 2007; Duplantier et al. 2009; Galici et al. 2005, 2006; Govek et al. 2005; Johnson et al. 2003; Pinkerton et al. 2005). Recent imaging studies have shown that the mGluR2 PAM BINA, at doses that reverse PCP-induced hyperlocomotion, suppresses PCP-induced regional brain activation observed in the prefrontal cortex, caudate-putamen, nucleus accumbens, and mediodorsal thalamus, indicating that these key regions are likely to be involved in pharmacological effects produced by this selective mGluR2 PAM (Hackler et al. 2010) (see Table 6). Taken together, these preliminary findings are promising and support the further optimization of selective mGluR2 PAMs as a potential therapeutic approach for schizophrenia and possibly other psychiatric disorders (Conn et al. 2009a, b; Fraley 2009).

## 4 Summary and Future Studies

In conclusion, the development of novel treatments for schizophrenia based on normalizing imbalances in limbic and cortical glutamatergic circuitry through modulation of different mGluR subtypes has shown tremendous promise in preclinical models and initial clinical trials. In particular, accumulating evidence indicates that selective activation of group II mGluRs and mGluR5 may offer a novel non-dopamine-based strategy for the treatment of schizophrenia. While these

preclinical and early clinical studies are promising, future clinical studies in schizophrenia patients are warranted to further validate the degree of efficacy that can be achieved across this highly heterogeneous patient population with mGluR ligands. Exciting progress has also been achieved in the discovery and optimization of subtype-selective PAMs for these receptors. Currently, these allosteric ligands are serving as important tools to further understand the relative roles of the different receptor subtypes underlying the different symptom clusters observed in individuals with schizophrenia.

**Acknowledgments** Beth Herman and Michael Bubser contributed equally to the authorship of this text.

## References

Adler CM, Malhotra AK, Elman I, Goldberg T, Egan M, Pickar D, Breier A (1999) Comparison of ketamine-induced thought disorder in healthy volunteers and thought disorder in schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 156:1646–1649

Aghajanian GK, Marek GJ (1999) Serotonin, via 5-HT2A receptors, increases EPSCs in layer V pyramidal cells of prefrontal cortex by an asynchronous mode of glutamate release. Brain Res 825:161–171

Aiba A, Chen C, Herrup K, Rosenmund C, Stevens CF, Tonegawa S (1994a) Reduced hippocampal long-term potentiation and context-specific deficit in associative learning in mGluR1 mutant mice. Cell 79:365–375

Aiba A, Kano M, Chen C, Stanton ME, Fox GD, Herrup K, Zwingman TA, Tonegawa S (1994b) Deficient cerebellar long-term depression and impaired motor learning in mGluR1 mutant mice. Cell 79:377–388

Alagarsamy S, Marino MJ, Rouse ST, Gereau RW, Heinemann SF, Conn PJ (1999) Activation of NMDA receptors reverses desensitization of mGluR5 in native and recombinant systems. Nat Neurosci 2:234–240

Alagarsamy S, Saugstad J, Warren L, Mansuy IM, Gereau RW 4th, Conn PJ (2005) NMDA-induced potentiation of mGluR5 is mediated by activation of protein phosphatase 2B/calcineurin. Neuropharmacology 49(Suppl 1):135–145

Altinbilek B, Manahan-Vaughan D (2009) A specific role for group II metabotropic glutamate receptors in hippocampal long-term depression and spatial memory. Neuroscience 158:149–158

American_Psychiatric_Association (2000) Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders, 4th edn. American Psychiatric Publishing, Washington, DC

Amitai N, Markou A (2010a) Disruption of performance in the five-choice serial reaction time task induced by administration of N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor antagonists: relevance to cognitive dysfunction in schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 68:5–16

Amitai N, Markou A (2010b) Effects of metabotropic glutamate receptor 2/3 agonism and antagonism on schizophrenia-like cognitive deficits induced by phencyclidine in rats. Eur J Pharmacol 639:67–80

Anwyl R (1999) Metabotropic glutamate receptors: electrophysiological properties and role in plasticity. Brain Res Rev 29:83–120

Aronica E, van Vliet EA, Mayboroda OA, Troost D, da Silva FH, Gorter JA (2000) Upregulation of metabotropic glutamate receptor subtype mGluR3 and mGluR5 in reactive astrocytes in a rat model of mesial temporal lobe epilepsy. Eur J Neurosci 12(7):2333–44

Aronica E, Gorter JA, Ijlst-Keizers H, Rozemuller AJ, Yankaya B, Leenstra S, Troost D (2003a) Expression and functional role of mGluR3 and mGluR5 in human astrocytes and glioma cells: opposite regulation of glutamate transporter proteins. Eur J Neurosci 17:2106–2118

Aronica E, Gorter JA, Jansen GH, van Veelen CW, van Rijen PC, Ramkema M, Troost D (2003b) Expression and cell distribution of group I and group II metabotropic glutamate receptor subtypes in taylor-type focal cortical dysplasia. Epilepsia 44:785–795

Attucci S, Carlà V, Mannaioni G, Moroni F (2001) Activation of type 5 metabotropic glutamate receptors enhances NMDA responses in mice cortical wedges. Br J Pharmacol 132:799–806

Aultman JM, Moghaddam B (2001) Distinct contributions of glutamate and dopamine receptors to temporal aspects of rodent working memory using a clinically relevant task. Psychopharmacology 153:353–364

Awad H, Hubert GW, Smith Y, Levey AI, Conn PJ (2000) Activation of metabotropic glutamate receptor 5 has direct excitatory effects and potentiates NMDA receptor currents in neurons of the subthalamic nucleus. J Neurosci 20:7871–7879

Ayala JE, Chen Y, Banko JL, Sheffler DJ, Williams R, Telk AN, Watson NL, Xiang Z, Zhang Y, Jones PJ, Lindsley CW, Olive MF, Conn PJ (2009) mGluR5 Positive allosteric modulators facilitate both hippocampal LTP and LTD and enhance spatial learning. Neuropsychopharmacology 34:2057–2071

Balázs R, Miller S, Romano C, de Vries A, Chun Y, Cotman CW (1997) Metabotropic glutamate receptor mGluR5 in astrocytes: pharmacological properties and agonist regulation. J Neurochem 69:151–163

Bari A, Dalley JW, Robbins TW (2008) The application of the 5-choice serial reaction time task for the assessment of visual attentional processes and impulse control in rats. Nat Protoc 3:759–767

Barker GR, Bashir ZI, Brown MW, Warburton EC (2006) A temporally distinct role for group I and group II metabotropic glutamate receptors in object recognition memory. Learn Mem 13:178–186

Bellesi M, Conti F (2010) The mGluR2/3 agonist LY379268 blocks the effects of GLT-1 upregulation on prepulse inhibition of the startle reflex in adult rats. Neuropsychopharmacology 35:1253–1260

Bellone C, Lüscher C, Mameli M (2008) Mechanisms of synaptic depression triggered by metabotropic glutamate receptors. Cell Mol Life Sci 65:2913–2923

Beneken J, Tu JC, Xiao B, Nuriya M, Yuan JP, Worley PF, Leahy DJ (2000) Structure of the Homer EVH1 domain-peptide complex reveals a new twist in polyproline recognition. Neuron 26:143–154

Benneyworth MA, Xiang Z, Smith RL, Garcia EE, Conn PJ, Sanders-Bush E (2007) A selective positive allosteric modulator of metabotropic glutamate receptor subtype 2 blocks a hallucinogenic drug model of psychosis. Mol Pharmacol 72:477–484

Benquet P, Gee CE, Gerber U (2002) Two distinct signaling pathways upregulate NMDA receptor responses via two distinct metabotropic glutamate receptor subtypes. J Neurosci 22:9679–9686

Berger MA, Defagot MC, Villar MJ, Antonelli MC (2001) D4 dopamine and metabotropic glutamate receptors in cerebral cortex and striatum in rat brain. Neurochem Res 26:345–352

Berger UV, DeSilva TM, Chen W, Rosenberg PA (2005) Cellular and subcellular mRNA localization of glutamate transporter isoforms GLT1a and GLT1b in rat brain by in situ hybridization. J Comp Neurol 492:78–89

Bespalov A, Jongen-Relo AL, van Gaalen M, Harich S, Schoemaker H, Gross G (2007) Habituation deficits induced by metabotropic glutamate receptors 2/3 receptor blockade in mice: reversal by antipsychotic drugs. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 320:944–950

Biber K, Laurie DJ, Berthele A, Sommer B, Tölle TR, Gebicke-Härter PJ, van Calker D, Boddeke HW (1999) Expression and signaling of group I metabotropic glutamate receptors in astrocytes and microglia. J Neurochem 72:1671–1680

Bird MK, Reid CA, Chen F, Tan HO, Petrou S, Lawrence AJ (2010) Cocaine-mediated synaptic potentiation is absent in VTA neurons from mGlu5-deficient mice. Int J Neuropsychopharmacol 13:133–141

Blednov YA, Walker D, Osterndorf-Kahanek E, Harris RA (2004) Mice lacking metabotropic glutamate receptor 4 do not show the motor stimulatory effect of ethanol. Alcohol 34:251–259

Blümcke I, Behle K, Malitschek B, Kuhn R, Knöpfel T, Wolf HK, Wiestler OD (1996) Immunohistochemical distribution of metabotropic glutamate receptor subtypes mGluR1b, mGluR2/3, mGluR4a and mGluR5 in human hippocampus. Brain Res 736:217–226

Boer K, Encha-Razavi F, Sinico M, Aronica E (2010) Differential distribution of group I metabotropic glutamate receptors in developing human cortex. Brain Res 1324:24–33

Bonnefous C, Vernier JM, Hutchinson JH, Gardner MF, Cramer M, James JK, Rowe BA, Daggett LP, Schaffhauser H, Kamenecka TM (2005) Biphenyl-indanones: allosteric potentiators of the metabotropic glutamate subtype 2 receptor. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 15:4354–4358

Bradbury MJ, Campbell U, Giracello D, Chapman D, King C, Tehrani L, Cosford ND, Anderson J, Varney MA, Strack AM (2005) Metabotropic glutamate receptor mGlu5 is a mediator of appetite and energy balance in rats and mice. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 313:395–402

Bradley SR, Levey AI, Hersch SM, Conn PJ (1996) Immunocytochemical localization of group III metabotropic glutamate receptors in the hippocampus with subtype-specific antibodies. J Neurosci 16:2044–2056

Bradley SR, Rees HD, Yi H, Levey AI, Conn PJ (1998) Distribution and developmental regulation of metabotropic glutamate receptor 7a in rat brain. J Neurochem 71:636–645

Bradley SR, Standaert DG, Rhodes KJ, Rees HD, Testa CM, Levey AI, Conn PJ (1999) Immunohistochemical localization of subtype 4a metabotropic glutamate receptors in the rat and mouse basal ganglia. J Comp Neurol 407:33–46

Braff DL, Geyer MA (1990) Sensorimotor gating and schizophrenia. Human and animal model studies. Arch Gen Psychiatry 47:181–188

Breier A, Adler CM, Weisenfeld N, Su T-P, Elman I, Picken L, Malhotra AK, Pickar D (1998) Effects of NMDA antagonism on striatal dopamine release in healthy subjects: Application of a novel PET approach. Synapse 29:142–147

Brnardic EJ, Fraley ME, Garbaccio RM, Layton ME, Sanders JM, Culberson C, Jacobson MA, Magliaro BC, Hutson PH, O'Brien JA, Huszar SL, Uslaner JM, Fillgrove KL, Tang C, Kuo Y, Sur SM, Hartman GD (2010) 3-Aryl-5-phenoxymethyl-1,3-oxazolidin-2-ones as positive allosteric modulators of mGluR2 for the treatment of schizophrenia: Hit-to-lead efforts. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 20:3129–3133

Brody SA, Geyer MA (2004) Interactions of the mGluR5 gene with breeding and maternal factors on startle and prepulse inhibition in mice. Neurotox Res 6:79–90

Brody SA, Conquet F, Geyer MA (2003) Disruption of prepulse inhibition in mice lacking mGluR1. Eur J Neurosci 18:3361–3366

Brody SA, Conquet F, Geyer MA (2004a) Effect of antipsychotic treatment on the prepulse inhibition deficit of mGluR5 knockout mice. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 172:187–195

Brody SA, Dulawa SC, Conquet F, Geyer MA (2004b) Assessment of a prepulse inhibition deficit in a mutant mouse lacking mGlu5 receptors. Mol Psychiatry 9:35–41

Bubser M, Schmidt WJ (1990) 6-Hydroxydopamine lesion of the rat prefrontal cortex increases locomotor activity, impairs acquisition of delayed alternation tasks, but does not affect uninterrupted tasks in the radial maze. Behav Brain Res 37:157–168

Bubser M, Keseberg U, Notz PK, Schmidt WJ (1992) Differential behavioural and neurochemical effects of competitive and non-competitive NMDA receptor antagonists in rats. Eur J Pharmacol 229:75–82

Bushell TJ, Sansig G, Collett VJ, van der Putten H, Collingridge GL (2002) Altered short-term synaptic plasticity in mice lacking the metabotropic glutamate receptor mGlu7. Sci World J 2:730–737

Callaerts-Vegh Z, Beckers T, Ball SM, Baeyens F, Callaerts PF, Cryan JF, Molnar E, D'Hooge R (2006) Concomitant deficits in working memory and fear extinction are functionally

dissociated from reduced anxiety in metabotropic glutamate receptor 7-deficient mice. J Neurosci 26:6573–6582
Campbell UC, Lalwani K, Hernandez L, Kinney GG, Conn PJ, Bristow LJ (2004) The mGluR5 antagonist 2-methyl-6-(phenylethynyl)-pyridine (MPEP) potentiates PCP-induced cognitive deficits in rats. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 175:310–318
Canales JJ, Elayadi A, Errami M, Llansola M, Cauli O, Felipo V (2003) Chronic hyperammonemia alters motor and neurochemical responses to activation of group I metabotropic glutamate receptors in the nucleus accumbens in rats in vivo. Neurobiol Dis 14:380–390
Carlsson M, Carlsson A (1989) The NMDA antagonist MK-801 causes marked locomotor stimulation in monoamine-depleted mice. J Neural Transm 75:221–226
Carroll FY, Stolle A, Beart PM, Voerste A, Brabet I, Mauler F, Joly C, Antonicek H, Bockaert J, Müller T, Pin JP, Prézeau L (2001) BAY36-7620: a potent non-competitive mGlu1 receptor antagonist with inverse agonist activity. Mol Pharmacol 59:965–973
Cartmell J, Schoepp DD (2000) Regulation of neurotransmitter release by metabotropic glutamate receptors. J Neurochem 75:889–907
Cartmell J, Monn JA, Schoepp DD (1999) The metabotropic glutamate 2/3 receptor agonists LY354740 and LY379268 selectively attenuate phencyclidine versus d-amphetamine motor behaviors in rats. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 291:161–170
Cartmell J, Monn JA, Schoepp DD (2000a) The mGlu(2/3) receptor agonist LY379268 selectively blocks amphetamine ambulations and rearing. Eur J Pharmacol 400:221–224
Cartmell J, Perry KW, Salhoff CR, Monn JA, Schoepp DD (2000b) The potent, selective mGlu2/3 receptor agonist LY379268 increases extracellular levels of dopamine, 3,4-dihydroxyphenylacetic acid, homovanillic acid, and 5-hydroxyindole-3-acetic acid in the medial prefrontal cortex of the freely moving rat. J Neurochem 75:1147–1154
Cartmell J, Perry KW, Salhoff CR, Monn JA, Schoepp DD (2001) Acute increases in monoamine release in the rat prefrontal cortex by the mGlu2/3 agonist LY379268 are similar in profile to risperidone, not locally mediated, and can be elicited in the presence of uptake blockade. Neuropharmacology 40:847–855
Cauli B, Porter JT, Tsuzuki K, Lambolez B, Rossier J, Quenet B, Audinat E (2000) Classification of fusiform neocortical interneurons based on unsupervised clustering. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 97:6144–6149
Chaki S, Yoshikawa R, Okuyama S (2006) Group II metabotropic glutamate receptor-mediated regulation of dopamine release from slices of rat nucleus accumbens. Neurosci Lett 404:182–186
Chan MH, Chiu PH, Sou JH, Chen HH (2008) Attenuation of ketamine-evoked behavioral responses by mGluR5 positive modulators in mice. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 198:141–148
Chen Y, Nong Y, Goudet C, Hemstapat K, de Paulis T, Pin JP, Conn PJ (2007) Interaction of novel positive allosteric modulators of metabotropic glutamate receptor 5 with the negative allosteric antagonist site is required for potentiation of receptor responses. Mol Pharmacol 71:1389–1398
Chen Y, Goudet C, Pin JP, Conn PJ (2008) N-{4-Chloro-2-[(1,3-dioxo-1,3-dihydro-2H-isoindol-2-yl)methyl]phenyl}-2-hydroxybenzamide (CPPHA) acts through a novel site as a positive allosteric modulator of group 1 metabotropic glutamate receptors. Mol Pharmacol 73:909–918
Chen HH, Stoker A, Markou A (2010) The glutamatergic compounds sarcosine and N-acetylcysteine ameliorate prepulse inhibition deficits in metabotropic glutamate 5 receptor knockout mice. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 209:343–350
Chiamulera C, Epping-Jordan MP, Zocchi A, Marcon C, Cottiny C, Tacconi S, Corsi M, Orzi F, Conquet F (2001) Reinforcing and locomotor stimulant effects of cocaine are absent in mGluR5 null mutant mice. Nat Neurosci 4:873–874
Chu Z, Hablitz JJ (1998) Activation of group I mGluRs increases spontaneous IPSC frequency in rat frontal cortex. J Neurophysiol 80:621–627
Ciccarelli R, Sureda FX, Casabona G, Di Iorio P, Caruso A, Spinella F, Condorelli DF, Nicoletti F, Caciagli F (1997) Opposite influence of the metabotropic glutamate receptor subtypes mGlu3 and -5 on astrocyte proliferation in culture. Glia 21:390–398

Clark M, Johnson BG, Wright RA, Monn JA, Schoepp DD (2002) Effects of the mGlu2/3 receptor agonist LY379268 on motor activity in phencyclidine-sensitized rats. Pharmacol Biochem Behav 73:339–346

Cole BJ, Robbins TW (1992) Forebrain norepinephrine: role in controlled information processing in the rat. Neuropsychopharmacology 7:129–142

Conn PJ, Pin JP (1997) Pharmacology and functions of metabotropic glutamate receptors. Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol 37:205–237

Conn PJ, Christopoulos A, Lindsley CW (2009a) Allosteric modulators of GPCRs: a novel approach for the treatment of CNS disorders. Nat Rev Drug Discov 8:41–54

Conn PJ, Lindsley CW, Jones CK (2009b) Activation of metabotropic glutamate receptors as a novel approach for the treatment of schizophrenia. Trends Pharmacol Sci 30:25–31

Conquet F, Bashir ZI, Davies CH, Daniel H, Ferraguti F, Bordi F, Franz-Bacon K, Reggiani A, Matarese V, Condé F, Collingridge GL, Crépel F (1994) Motor deficit and impairment of synaptic plasticity in mice lacking mGluR1. Nature 372:237–243

Corti C, Aldegheri L, Somogyi P, Ferraguti F (2002) Distribution and synaptic localisation of the metabotropic glutamate receptor 4 (mGluR4) in the rodent CNS. Neuroscience 111:403–420

Costall B, Naylor RJ, Nohria V (1978) Climbing behaviour induced by apomorphine in mice: a potential model for the detection of neuroleptic activity. Eur J Pharmacol 50:39–81

Coyle JT (2006) Glutamate and schizophrenia: beyond the dopamine hypothesis. Cell Mol Neurobiol 26:365–384

Cube RV, Vernier JM, Hutchinson JH, Gardner MF, James JK, Rowe BA, Schaffhauser H, Daggett L, Pinkerton AB (2005) 3-(2-Ethoxy-4-{4-[3-hydroxy-2-methyl-4-(3-methylbutanoyl)phenoxy] butoxy}ph enyl)propanoic acid: a brain penetrant allosteric potentiator at the metabotropic glutamate receptor 2 (mGluR2). Bioorg Med Chem Lett 15:2389–2393

Davis S, Butcher SP, Morris RG (1992) The NMDA receptor antagonist D-2-amino-5-phosphono-pentanoate (D-AP5) impairs spatial learning and LTP in vivo at intracerebral concentrations comparable to those that block LTP in vitro. J Neurosci 12:21–34

de Paulis T, Hemstapat K, Chen Y, Zhang Y, Saleh S, Alagille D, Baldwin RM, Tamagnan GD, Conn PJ (2006) Substituent effects of N-(1,3-diphenyl-1H-pyrazol-5-yl)benzamides on positive allosteric modulation of the metabotropic glutamate-5 receptor in rat cortical astrocytes. J Med Chem 49:3332–3344

De Vry J, Horvath E, Schreiber R (2001) Neuroprotective and behavioral effects of the selective metabotropic glutamate mGlu(1) receptor antagonist BAY 36-7620. Eur J Pharmacol 428:203–214

Dedeurwaerdere S, Wintmolders C, Straetemans R, Pemberton D, Langlois X (2011) Memantine-induced brain activation as a model for the rapid screening of potential novel antipsychotic compounds: exemplified by activity of an mGlu2/3 receptor agonist. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 214:505–514

Didriksen M, Skarsfeldt T, Arnt J (2007) Reversal of PCP-induced learning and memory deficits in the Morris' water maze by sertindole and other antipsychotics. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 193:225–233

Dingledine R, Borges K, Bowie D, Traynelis SF (1999) The glutamate receptor ion channels. Pharmacol Rev 51:7–61

Duplantier AJ, Efremov I, Candler J, Doran AC, Ganong AH, Haas JA, Hanks AN, Kraus KG, Lazzaro JT Jr, Lu J, Maklad N, McCarthy SA, O'Sullivan TJ, Rogers BN, Siuciak JA, Spracklin DK, Zhang L (2009) 3-Benzyl-1,3-oxazolidin-2-ones as mGluR2 positive allosteric modulators: Hit-to lead and lead optimization. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 19:2524–2429

Duvoisin RM, Zhang C, Pfankuch TF, O'Connor H, Gayet-Primo J, Quraishi S, Raber J (2005) Increased measures of anxiety and weight gain in mice lacking the group III metabotropic glutamate receptor mGluR8. Eur J Neurosci 22:425–436

Ehlers MD (1999) Synapse structure: glutamate receptors connected by the shanks. Curr Biol 9:R848–R850

Ehrengruber MU, Kato A, Inokuchi K, Hennou S (2004) Homer/Vesl proteins and their roles in CNS neurons. Mol Neurobiol 29:213–227

El-Kouhen O, Lehto SG, Pan JB, Chang R, Baker SJ, Zhong C, Hollingsworth PR, Mikusa JP, Cronin EA, Chu KL, McGaraughty SP, Uchic ME, Miller LN, Rodell NM, Patel M, Bhatia P, Mezler M, Kolasa T, Zheng GZ, Fox GB, Stewart AO, Decker MW, Moreland RB, Brioni JD, Honore P (2006) Blockade of mGluR1 receptor results in analgesia and disruption of motor and cognitive performances: effects of A-841720, a novel non-competitive mGluR1 receptor antagonist. Br J Pharmacol 149:761–774

Ellenbroek BA, van den Kroonenberg PT, Cools AR (1998) The effects of an early stressful life event on sensorimotor gating in adult rats. Schizophr Res 30:251–260

Engers DW, Rodriguez AL, Williams R, Hammond AS, Venable D, Oluwatola O, Sulikowski GA, Conn PJ, Lindsley CW (2009) Synthesis, SAR and unanticipated pharmacological profiles of analogues of the mGluR5 ago-potentiator ADX-47273. ChemMedChem 4:505–511

Fell MJ, Svensson KA, Johnson BG, Schoepp DD (2008) Evidence for the role of metabotropic glutamate (mGlu)2 not mGlu3 receptors in the preclinical antipsychotic pharmacology of the mGlu2/3 receptor agonist (-)-(1R,4S,5S,6S)-4-amino-2-sulfonylbicyclo[3.1.0]hexane-4,6-dicarboxylic acid (LY404039). J Pharmacol Exp Ther 326:209–217

Fell MJ, Perry KW, Falcone JF, Johnson BG, Barth VN, Rash KS, Lucaites VL, Threlkeld PG, Monn JA, McKinzie DL, Marek GJ, Svensson KA, Nelson DL (2009) In vitro and in vivo evidence for a lack of interaction with dopamine D2 receptors by the metabotropic glutamate 2/3 receptor agonists 1S,2S,5R,6S-2-aminobicyclo[3.1.0]hexane-2,6-bicaroxylate monohydrate (LY354740) and (−)-2-oxa-4-aminobicyclo[3.1.0] hexane-4,6-dicarboxylic acid (LY379268). J Pharmacol Exp Ther 331:1126–1136

Fendt M, Bürki H, Imobersteg S, van der Putten H, McAllister K, Leslie JC, Shaw D, Hölscher C (2010) The effect of mGlu8 deficiency in animal models of psychiatric diseases. Genes Brain Behav 9:33–44

Ferraguti F, Klausberger T, Cobden P, Baude A, Roberts JD, Szucs P, Kinoshita A, Shigemoto R, Somogyi P, Dalezios Y (2005) Metabotropic glutamate receptor 8-expressing nerve terminals target subsets of GABAergic neurons in the hippocampus. J Neurosci 25:10520–10536

Flajolet M, Rakhilin S, Wang H, Starkova N, Nuangchamnong N, Nairn AC, Greengard P (2003) Protein phosphatase 2C binds selectively to and dephosphorylates metabotropic glutamate receptor 3. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 100:16006–16011

Fotuhi M, Standaert DG, Testa CM, Penney JB Jr, Young AB (1994) Differential expression of metabotropic glutamate receptors in the hippocampus and entorhinal cortex of the rat. Mol Brain Res 21:283–292

Fowler SW, Ramsey AK, Walker JM, Serfozo P, Olive MF, Schachtman TR, Simonyi A (2011) Functional interaction of mGlu5 and NMDA receptors in aversive learning in rats. Neurobiol Learn Mem 95:73–79

Fraley ME (2009) Positive allosteric modulators of the metabotropic glutamate receptor 2 for the treatment of schizophrenia. Exp Opin Therap Patent 19:1259–1275

Francesconi W, Cammalleri M, Sanna PP (2004) The metabotropic glutamate receptor 5 is necessary for late-phase long-term potentiation in the hippocampal CA1 region. Brain Res 1022:12–18

Fukuda J, Suzuki G, Kimura T, Nagatomi Y, Ito S, Kawamoto H, Ozaki S, Ohta H (2009) Identification of a novel transmembrane domain involved in the negative modulation of mGluR1 using a newly discovered allosteric mGluR1 antagonist, 3-cyclohexyl-5-fluoro-6-methyl-7-(2-morpholin-4-ylethoxy)-4H-chromen-4-one. Neuropharmacology 57:438–445

Galici R, Echemendia NG, Rodriguez AL, Conn PJ (2005) A selective allosteric potentiator of metabotropic glutamate (mGlu) 2 receptors has effects similar to an orthosteric mGlu2/3 receptor agonist in mouse models predictive of antipsychotic activity. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 315:1181–1187

Galici R, Jones CK, Hemstapat K, Nong Y, Echemendia NG, Williams LC, de Paulis T, Conn PJ (2006) Biphenyl-indanone A, a positive allosteric modulator of the metabotropic glutamate

receptor subtype 2, has antipsychotic- and anxiolytic-like effects in mice. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 318:173–185

Gasparini F, Lingenhöhl K, Stoehr N, Flor PJ, Heinrich M, Vranesic I, Biollaz M, Allgeier H, Heckendorn R, Urwyler S, Varney MA, Johnson EC, Hess SD, Rao SP, Sacaan AI, Santori EM, Veliçelebi G, Kuhn R (1999) 2-Methyl-6-(phenylethynyl)-pyridine (MPEP), a potent, selective and systemically active mGlu5 receptor antagonis. Neuropharmacology 38:1493–1503

Gerlai R, Roder JC, Hampson DR (1998) Altered spatial learning and memory in mice lacking the mGluR4 subtype of metabotropic glutamate receptor. Behav Neurosci 112:525–532

Gerlai R, Adams B, Fitch T, Chaney S, Baez M (2002) Performance deficits of mGluR8 knockout mice in learning tasks: the effects of null mutation and the background genotype. Neuropharmacology 43:235–249

Geurts JJ, Wolswijk G, Bö L, van der Valk P, Polman CH, Troost D, Aronica E (2003) Altered expression patterns of group I and II metabotropic glutamate receptors in multiple sclerosis. Brain 126:1755–1766

Gewirtz JC, Marek GJ (2000) Behavioral evidence for interactions between a hallucinogenic drug and group II metabotropic glutamate receptors. Neuropsychopharmacology 23:569–576

Geyer MA, Markou A (1995) Animal models of psychiatric disorders. In: Bloom FE, Kupfer DJ (eds) Psychopharmacology: the fourth generation of progress. Raven, New York

Geyer MA, Moghaddam B (2002) Animal models relevant to schizophrenia. In: Davis KL, Charney D, Coyle JT (eds) Neuropsychopharmacology: the fifth generation of progress. American College of Neuropsychopharmacology, Nashville, TN, pp 689–701

Geyer MA, Wilkinson LS, Humby T, Robbins TW (1993) Isolation rearing of rats produces a deficit in prepulse inhibition of acoustic startle similar to that in schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 34:361–372

Geyer MA, Krebs-Thomson K, Braff DL, Swerdlow NR (2001) Pharmacological studies of prepulse inhibition models of sensorimotor gating deficits in schizophrenia: a decade in review. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 156:117–154

Geyer MA, McIlwain KL, Paylor R (2002) Mouse genetic models for prepulse inhibition: an early review. Mol Psychiatry 7:1039–1053

Gillard SE, Tzaferis J, Tsui HC, Kingston AE (2003) Expression of metabotropic glutamate receptors in rat meningeal and brain microvasculature and choroid plexus. J Comp Neurol 461:317–332

Gil-Sanz C, Delgado-García JM, Fairén A, Gruart A (2008) Involvement of the mGluR1 receptor in hippocampal synaptic plasticity and associative learning in behaving mice. Cereb Cortex 18:1653–1663

Glaum SR, Miller RJ (1993) Metabotropic glutamate receptors depress afferent excitatory transmission in the rat nucleus tractus solitarii. J Neurophysiol 70:2669–2672

Goddyn H, Callaerts-Vegh Z, Stroobants S, Dirikx T, Vansteenwegen D, Hermans D, van der Putten H, D'Hooge R (2008) Deficits in acquisition and extinction of conditioned responses in mGluR7 knockout mice. Neurobiol Learn Mem 90:103–111

Goldman-Rakic PS, Castner SA, Svensson TH, Siever LJ, Williams GV (2004) Targeting the dopamine D1 receptor in schizophrenia: insights for cognitive dysfunction. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 174:3–16

Govek SP, Bonnefous C, Hutchinson JH, Kamenecka T, McQuiston J, Pracitto R, Zhao LX, Gardner MF, James JK, Daggett LP, Rowe BA, Schaffhauser H, Bristow LJ, Campbell UC, Rodriguez DE, Vernier JM (2005) Benzazoles as allosteric potentiators of metabotropic glutamate receptor 2 (mGluR2): Efficacy in an animal model for schizophrenia. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 15:4068–4072

Gozzi A, Large CH, Schwarz A, Bertani S, Crestan V, Bifone A (2008) Differential effects of antipsychotic and glutamatergic agents on the phMRI response to phencyclidine. Neuropsychopharmacology 33:1690–1703

Gravius A, Barberi C, Schäfer D, Schmidt WJ, Danysz W (2006) The role of group I metabotropic glutamate receptors in acquisition and expression of contextual and auditory fear conditioning in rats - a comparison. Neuropharmacology 51:1146–1155

Gray L, van den Buuse M, Scarr E, Dean B, Hannan AJ (2009) Clozapine reverses schizophrenia-related behaviours in the metabotropic glutamate receptor 5 knockout mouse: association with N-methyl-D-aspartic acid receptor up-regulation. Int J Neuropsychopharmacol 12:45–60

Grayson B, Idris NF, Neill JC (2007) Atypical antipsychotics attenuate a sub-chronic PCP-induced cognitive deficit in the novel object recognition task in the rat. Behav Brain Res 184:31–38

Greco B, Invernizzi RW, Carli M (2005) Phencyclidine-induced impairment in attention and response control depends on the background genotype of mice: reversal by the mGLU(2/3) receptor agonist LY379268. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 179:68–76

Gresack JE, Risbrough VB, Scott CN, Coste S, Stenzel-Poore M, Geyer MA, Powell SB (2010) Isolation rearing-induced deficits in contextual fear learning do not require CRF(2) receptors. Behav Brain Res 209:80–84

Gruber AJ, Calhoon GG, Shusterman I, Schoenbaum G, Roesch MR, O'Donnell P (2010) More is less: a disinhibited prefrontal cortex impairs cognitive flexibility. J Neurosci 30:17102–17110

Grueter BA, Winder DG (2005) Group II and III metabotropic glutamate receptors suppress excitatory synaptic transmission in the dorsolateral bed nucleus of the stria terminalis. Neuropsychopharmacology 30:1302–1311

Gu G, Lorrain DS, Wei H, Cole RL, Zhang X, Daggett LP, Schaffhauser HJ, Bristow LJ, Lechner SM (2008) Distribution of metabotropic glutamate 2 and 3 receptors in the rat forebrain: Implication in emotional responses and central disinhibition. Brain Res 1197:47–62

Gubellini P, Saulle E, Centonze D, Bonsi P, Pisani A, Bernardi G, Conquet F, Calabresi P (2001) Selective involvement of mGlu1 receptors in corticostriatal LTD. Neuropharmacology 40:839–846

Gubellini P, Saulle E, Centonze D, Costa C, Tropepi D, Bernardi G, Conquet F, Calabresi P (2003) Corticostriatal LTP requires combined mGluR1 and mGluR5 activation. Neuropharmacology 44:8–16

Gupta DS, McCullumsmith RE, Beneyto M, Haroutunian V, Davis KL, Meador-Woodruff JH (2005) Metabotropic glutamate receptor protein expression in the prefrontal cortex and striatum in schizophrenia. Synapse 57:123–131

Hackler EA, Byun NE, Jones CK, Williams JM, Baheza R, Sengupta S, Grier MD, Avison M, Conn PJ, Gore JC (2010) Selective potentiation of the metabotropic glutamate receptor subtype 2 blocks phencyclidine-induced hyperlocomotion and brain activation. Neuroscience 168:209–218

Halberstadt A, Lehmann-Masten V, Geyer M, Powell S (2011) Interactive effects of mGlu5 and 5-HT2A receptors on locomotor activity in mice. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 215:81–92

Hanson JE, Smith Y (1999) Group I metabotropic glutamate receptors at GABAergic synapses in monkeys. J Neurosci 19:6488–6496

Harich S, Gross G, Bespalov A (2007) Stimulation of the metabotropic glutamate 2/3 receptor attenuates social novelty discrimination deficits induced by neonatal phencyclidine treatment. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 192:511–519

Harrison PJ, Weinberger DR (2005) Schizophrenia genes, gene expression, and neuropathology: on the matter of their convergence. Mol Psychiatry 10:40–68

Heffner TG, Downs DA, Meltzer LT, Wiley JN, Williams AE (1989) CI-943, a potential antipsychotic agent. I. Preclinical behavioral effects. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 251:105–112

Heidinger V, Manzerra P, Wang XQ, Strasser U, Yu SP, Choi DW, Behrens MM (2002) Metabotropic glutamate receptor 1-induced upregulation of NMDA receptor current: mediation through the Pyk2/Src-family kinase pathway in cortical neurons. J Neurosci 22:5452–5461

Hemstapat K, de Paulis T, Chen Y, Brady AE, Grover VK, Alagille D, Tamagnan GD, Conn PJ (2006) A novel class of positive allosteric modulators of metabotropic glutamate receptor subtype 1 interact with a site distinct from that of negative allosteric modulators. Mol Pharmacol 70:616–626

Henry SA, Lehmann-Masten V, Gasparini F, Geyer MA, Markou A (2002) The mGluR5 antagonist MPEP, but not the mGluR2/3 agonist LY314582, augments PCP effects on prepulse inhibition and locomotor activity. Neuropharmacology 43:1199–1209

Heresco-Levy U, Javitt DC (2004) Comparative effects of glycine and D-cycloserine on persistent negative symptoms in schizophrenia: a retrospective analysis. Schizophr Res 66:89–96

Heresco-Levy U, Ermilov M, Lichtenberg P, Bar G, Javitt DC (2004) High-dose glycine added to olanzapine and risperidone for the treatment of schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 55:165–171

Hermans E, Challiss RA (2001) Structural, signalling and regulatory properties of the group I metabotropic glutamate receptors: prototypic family C G-protein-coupled receptors. Biochem J 359:465–484

Higgins GA, Ballard TM, Kew JNC, Grayson Richards J, Kemp JA, Adam G, Woltering T, Nakanishi S, Mutel V (2004) Pharmacological manipulation of mGlu2 receptors influences cognitive performance in the rodent. Neuropharmacology 46:907–917

Hikichi H, Nishino M, Fukushima M, Satow A, Maehara S, Kawamoto H, Ohta H (2010) Pharmacological effects of metabotropic glutamate receptor ligands on prepulse inhibition in DBA/2J mice. Eur J Pharmacol 639:99–105

Hoffman DC (1992) Typical and atypical neuroleptics antagonize MK-801-induced locomotion and stereotypy in rats. J Neural Transm Gen Sect 89:1–10

Hoffman DC, Donovan H, Cassella JV (1993) The effects of haloperidol and clozapine on the disruption of sensorimotor gating induced by the noncompetitive glutamate antagonist MK-801. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 111:339–344

Hölscher C, Schmid S, Pilz PK, Sansig G, van der Putten H, Plappert CF (2004) Lack of the metabotropic glutamate receptor subtype 7 selectively impairs short-term working memory but not long-term memory. Behav Brain Res 154:473–481

Hölscher C, Schmid S, Pilz PK, Sansig G, van der Putten H, Plappert CF (2005) Lack of the metabotropic glutamate receptor subtype 7 selectively modulates Theta rhythm and working memory. Learn Mem 12:450–455

Homayoun H, Moghaddam B (2008) Orbitofrontal cortex neurons as a common target for classic and glutamatergic antipsychotic drugs. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 105:18041–18046

Horiguchi M, Huang M, Meltzer HY (2011a) Interaction of mGlu2/3 agonism with clozapine and lurasidone to restore novel object recognition in subchronic phencyclidine-treated rats. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 217:13–24

Horiguchi M, Huang M, Meltzer HY (2011b) The role of 5-hydroxytryptamine 7 receptors in the phencyclidine-induced novel object recognition deficit in rats. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 338:605–614

Hu G, Duffy P, Swanson C, Ghasemzadeh MB, Kalivas PW (1999) The regulation of dopamine transmission by metabotropic glutamate receptors. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 289:412–416

Huang H, van den Pol AN (2007) Rapid direct excitation and long-lasting enhancement of NMDA response by group I metabotropic glutamate receptor activation of hypothalamic melanin-concentrating hormone neurons. J Neurosci 27:11560–11572

Huang Y, Narendran R, Bischoff F, Guo N, Zhu Z, Bae SA, Lesage AS, Laruelle M (2005) A positron emission tomography radioligand for the in vivo labeling of metabotropic glutamate 1 receptor: (3-ethyl-2-[11C]methyl-6-quinolinyl)(cis- 4-methoxycyclohexyl)methanone. J Med Chem 48:5096–5099

Huber KM, Roder JC, Bear MF (2001) Chemical induction of mGluR5- and protein synthesis–dependentlong-term depression in hippocampal area CA1. J Neurophysiol 86:321–325

Hubert GW, Paquet M, Smith Y (2001) Differential subcellular localization of mGluR1a and mGluR5 in the rat and monkey Substantia nigra. J Neurosci 21:1838–1847

Iacovelli L, Bruno V, Salvatore L, Melchiorri D, Gradini R, Caricasole A, Barletta E, De Blasi A, Nicoletti F (2002) Native group-III metabotropic glutamate receptors are coupled to the mitogen-activated protein kinase/phosphatidylinositol-3-kinase pathways. J Neurochem 82:216–223

Imre G, Salomons A, Jongsma M, Fokkema DS, Den Boer JA, Ter Horst GJ (2006) Effects of the mGluR2/3 agonist LY379268 on ketamine-evoked behaviours and neurochemical changes in the dentate gyrus of the rat. Pharmacol Biochem Behav 84:392–399

Inglis WL, Olmstead MC, Robbins TW (2001) Selective deficits in attentional performance on the 5-choice serial reaction time task following pedunculopontine tegmental nucleus lesions. Behav Brain Res 123:117–131

Javitt DC (1987) Negative schizophrenic symptomatology and the PCP (phencyclidine) model of schizophrenia. Hillside J Clin Psychiatry 9:12–35

Jia Z, Lu Y, Henderson J, Taverna F, Romano C, Abramow-Newerly W, Wojtowicz JM, Roder J (1998) Selective abolition of the NMDA component of long-term potentiation in mice lacking mGluR5. Learn Mem 5:331–343

Johnson MP, Baez M, Jagdmann GE Jr, Britton TC, Large TH, Callagaro DO, Tizzano JP, Monn JA, Schoepp DD (2003) Discovery of allosteric potentiators for the metabotropic glutamate 2 receptor: synthesis and subtype selectivity of N-(4-(2-methoxyphenoxy)phenyl)-N-(2,2,2- trifluoroethylsulfonyl)pyrid-3-ylmethylamine. J Med Chem 46:3189–3192

Johnson MP, Barda D, Britton TC, Emkey R, Hornback WJ, Jagdmann GE, McKinzie DL, Nisenbaum ES, Tizzano JP, Schoepp DD (2005) Metabotropic glutamate 2 receptor potentiators: receptor modulation, frequency-dependent synaptic activity, and efficacy in preclinical anxiety and psychosis model(s). Psychopharmacology (Berl) 179:271–283

Johnson KA, Niswender CM, Conn PJ, Xiang Z (2011) Activation of group II metabotropic glutamate receptors induces long-term depression of excitatory synaptic transmission in the substantia nigra pars reticulata. Neurosci Lett 504:102–106

Joly C, Gomeza J, Brabet I, Curry K, Bockaert J, Pin JP (1995) Molecular, functional, and pharmacological characterization of the metabotropic glutamate receptor type 5 splice variants: comparison with mGluR1. J Neurosci 15:3970–3981

Jones CK, Eberle EL, Peters SC, Monn JA, Shannon HE (2005a) Analgesic effects of the selective group II (mGlu2/3) metabotropic glutamate receptor agonists LY379268 and LY389795 in persistent and inflammatory pain models after acute and repeated dosing. Neuropharmacology 49(1):206–18

Jones CK, Eberle EL, Shaw DB, McKinzie DL, Shannon HE (2005b) Pharmacologic interactions between the muscarinic cholinergic and dopaminergic systems in the modulation of prepulse inhibition in rats. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 312:1055–1063

Jones DNC, Garlton JE, Minassian A, Perry W, Geyer MA (2008) Developing new drugs for schizophrenia: From animals to the clinic. In: McArthur RA, Borsini F (eds) Animal and translational models for CNS drug discovery: psychiatric disorders. Academic, Burlington, MA, pp 199–262

Jones CA, Brown AM, Auer DP, Fone KC (2011) The mGluR2/3 agonist LY379268 reverses post-weaning social isolation-induced recognition memory deficits in the rat. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 214:269–283

Julio-Pieper M, Flor PJ, Dinan TG, Cryan JF (2011) Exciting times beyond the brain: metabotropic glutamate receptors in peripheral and non-neural tissues. Pharmacol Rev 63:35–58

Kahn L, Alonso G, Robbe D, Bockaert J, Manzoni OJ (2001) Group 2 metabotropic glutamate receptors induced long term depression in mouse striatal slices. Neurosci Lett 316:178–182

Kalivas PW (2009) The glutamate homeostasis hypothesis of addiction. Nat Rev Neurosci 10:561–572

Kawashima N, Karasawa J, Shimazaki T, Chaki S, Okuyama S, Yasuhara A, Nakazato A (2005) Neuropharmacological profiles of antagonists of group II metabotropic glutamate receptors. Neurosci Lett 378:131–134

Kelley AE, Delfs JM (1994) Excitatory amino acid receptors mediate the orofacial stereotypy elicited by dopaminergic stimulation of the ventrolateral striatum. Neuroscience 60:85–95

Kelly PH, Iversen SD (1976) Selective 6OHDA-induced destruction of mesolimbic dopamine neurons: abolition of psychostimulant-induced locomotor activity in rats. Eur J Pharmacol 40:45–56

Kelly PH, Seviour PW, Iversen SD (1975) Amphetamine and apomorphine responses in the rat following 6-OHDA lesions of the nucleus accumbens septi and corpus striatum. Brain Res 94:507–522

Kilbride J, Rush AM, Rowan MJ, Anwyl R (2001) Presynaptic group II mGluR inhibition of short-term depression in the medial perforant path of the dentate gyrus in vitro. J Neurophysiol 85:2509–2515

Kim J, Lee S, Park H, Song B, Hong I, Geum D, Shin K, Choi S (2007) Blockade of amygdala metabotropic glutamate receptor subtype 1 impairs fear extinction. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 355:188–193

Kinney GG, Burno M, Campbell UC, Hernandez LM, Rodriguez D, Bristow LJ, Conn PJ (2003) Metabotropic glutamate subtype 5 receptors modulate locomotor activity and sensorimotor gating in rodents. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 306:116–123

Kinney GG, O'Brien JA, Lemaire W, Burno M, Bickel DJ, Clements MK, Chen TB, Wisnoski DD, Lindsley CW, Tiller PR, Smith S, Jacobson MA, Sur C, Duggan ME, Pettibone DJ, Conn PJ, Williams DLJ (2005) A novel selective positive allosteric modulator of metabotropic glutamate receptor subtype 5 has in vivo activity and antipsychotic-like effects in rat behavioral models. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 313:199–206

Kinon BJ, Zhang L, Millen BA, Osuntokun OO, Williams JE, Kollack-Walker S, Jackson K, Kryzhanovskaya L, Jarkova N (2011a) A multicenter, inpatient, phase 2, double-blind, placebo-controlled dose-ranging study of LY2140023 monohydrate in patients with DSM-IV Schizophrenia. J Clin Psychopharmacol 31:349–55

Kinon BJ, Zhang L, Millen BA, Osuntokun OO, Williams JE, Kollack-Walker S, Jackson K, Kryzhanovskaya L, Jarkova N, Group at HS (2011b) A multicenter, inpatient, phase 2, double-blind, placebo-controlled dose-ranging study of LY2140023 monohydrate in patients with DSM-IV schizophrenia. J Clin Psychopharmacol 31:349–355

Kinoshita A, Shigemoto R, Ohishi H, van der Putten H, Mizuno N (1998) Immunohistochemical localization of metabotropic glutamate receptors, mGluR7a and mGluR7b, in the central nervous system of the adult rat and mouse: a light and electron microscopic study. J Comp Neurol 393:332–352

Kinzie JM, Saugstad JA, Westbrook GL, Segerson TP (1995) Distribution of metabotropic glutamate receptor 7 messenger RNA in the developing and adult rat brain. Neuroscience 69:167–176

Kiss J, Görcs TJ, Kuhn R, Knöpfel T, Csáky A, Halász B (1996) Distribution of metabotropic glutamate receptor 1a in the rat hypothalamus: an immunocytochemical study using monoclonal and polyclonal antibody. Acta Biol Hung 47:221–237

Kłodzinska A, Bijak M, Tokarski K, Pilc A (2002) Group II mGlu receptor agonists inhibit behavioural and electrophysiological effects of DOI in mice. Pharmacol Biochem Behav 73:327–332

Knoflach F, Mutel V, Jolidon S, Kew JN, Malherbe P, Vieira E, Wichmann J, Kemp JA (2001) Positive allosteric modulators of metabotropic glutamate 1 receptor: characterization, mechanism of action, and binding site. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 98:13402–13407

Koch M, Bubser M (1994) Deficient sensorimotor gating after 6-hydroxydopamine lesion of the rat medial prefrontal cortex is reversed by haloperidol. Eur J Neurosci 6:1837–1845

Kohara A, Toya T, Tamura S, Watabiki T, Nagakura Y, Shitaka Y, Hayashibe S, Kawabata S, Okada M (2005) Radioligand binding properties and pharmacological characterization of 6-amino-N-cyclohexyl-N,3-dimethylthiazolo[3,2-a]benzimidazole-2-carboxamide (YM-298198), a high-affinity, selective, and noncompetitive antagonist of metabotropic glutamate receptor type 1. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 315:163–169

Kosinski CM, Risso Bradley S, Conn PJ, Levey AI, Landwehrmeyer GB, Penney JB Jr, Young AB, Standaert DG (1999) Localization of metabotropic glutamate receptor 7 mRNA and mGluR7a protein in the rat basal ganglia. J Comp Neurol 415:266–284

Krivoy A, Fischel T, Weizman A (2008) The possible involvement of metabotropic glutamate receptors in schizophrenia. Eur Neuropsychopharmacol 18:395–405

Krystal JH, Karper LP, Seibyl JP, Freeman GK, Delaney R, Bremner JD, Heninger GR, Bowers MBJ, Charney DS (1994) Subanesthetic effects of the noncompetitive NMDA antagonist, ketamine, in humans. Psychotomimetic, perceptual, cognitive, and neuroendocrine responses. Arch Gen Psychiatry 51:199–214

Krystal JH, Abi-Saab W, Perry E, D'Souza DC, Liu N, Gueorguieva R, McDougall L, Hunsberger T, Belger A, Levine L, Breier A (2005a) Preliminary evidence of attenuation of the disruptive effects of the NMDA glutamate receptor antagonist, ketamine, on working memory by pretreatment with the group II metabotropic glutamate receptor agonist, LY354740, in healthy human subjects. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 179:303–309

Krystal JH, Perry EB Jr, Gueorguieva R, Belger A, Madonick SH, Abi-Dargham A, Cooper TB, Macdougall L, Abi-Saab W, D'Souza DC (2005b) Comparative and interactive human psychopharmacologic effects of ketamine and amphetamine: implications for glutamatergic and dopaminergic model psychoses and cognitive function. Arch Gen Psychiatry 62:985–994

Lahti AC, Koffel B, LaPorte D, Tamminga CA (1995) Subanesthetic doses of ketamine stimulate psychosis in schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 13:9–19

Lapointe V, Morin F, Ratte S, Croce A, Conquet F, Lacaille JC (2004) Synapse-specific mGluR1-dependent long-term potentiation in interneurones regulates mouse hippocampal inhibition. J Physiol 555:125–135

Lavreysen H, Janssen C, Bischoff F, Langlois X, Leysen JE, Lesage AS (2003) [3H]R214127: a novel high-affinity radioligand for the mGlu1 receptor reveals a common binding site shared by multiple allosteric antagonists. Mol Pharmacol 63:1082–1093

Lavreysen H, Wouters R, Bischoff F, Nóbrega Pereira S, Langlois X, Blokland S, Somers M, Dillen L, Lesage AS (2004) JNJ16259685, a highly potent, selective and systemically active mGlu1 receptor antagonist. Neuropharmacology 47:961–972

Le Pen G, Moreau JL (2002) Disruption of prepulse inhibition of startle reflex in a neurodevelopmental model of schizophrenia: reversal by clozapine, olanzapine and risperidone but not by haloperidol. Neuropsychopharmacology 27:1–11

Lecourtier L, Homayoun H, Tamagnan G, Moghaddam B (2007) Positive allosteric modulation of metabotropic glutamate 5 (mGlu5) receptors reverses N-methyl-D- aspartate antagonist-induced alteration of neuronal firing in prefrontal cortex. Biol Psychiatry 62:739–746

Lesage A, Steckler T (2010) Metabotropic glutamate mGlu1 receptor stimulation and blockade: Therapeutic opportunities in psychiatric illness. Eur J Pharmacol 639:2–16

Levenes C, Daniel H, Crepel F (2001) Retrograde modulation of transmitter release by postsynaptic subtype 1 metabotropic glutamate receptors in the rat cerebellum. J Physiol 537:125–140

Levin ED, Bushnell PJ, Rezvani AH (2011) Attention-modulating effects of cognitive enhancers. Pharmacol Biochem Behav 99:146–154

Lewis DA, Moghaddam B (2006) Cognitive dysfunction in schizophrenia: convergence of gamma-aminobutyric acid and glutamate alterations. Arch Neurol 63:1372–1376

Lewis DA, Hashimoto T, Volk DW (2005) Cortical inhibitory neurons and schizophrenia. Nat Rev Neurosci 6:312–324

Lieberman JA, Tollefson G, Tohen M, Green AI, Gur RE, Kahn R, McEvoy J, Perkins D, Sharma T, Zipursky R, Wei H, Hamer RM, HGDH_Study_Group (2003) Comparative efficacy and safety of atypical and conventional antipsychotic drugs in first-episode psychosis: a randomized, double-blind trial of olanzapine vs haloperidol. Am J Psychiatry 160:1396–1404

Lieberman JA, Stroup TS, McEvoy JP, Swartz MS, Rosenheck RA, Perkins DO, Keefe RS, Davis SM, Davis CE, Lebowitz BD, Severe J, Hsiao JK, Clinical_Antipsychotic_Trials_of_Intervention_Effectiveness_(CATIE)_Investigators (2005) Effectiveness of antipsychotic drugs in patients with chronic schizophrenia. New Eng J Med 353:1209–1223.

Linden AM, Johnson BG, Peters SC, Shannon HE, Tian M, Wang Y, Yu JL, Köster A, Baez M, Schoepp DD (2002) Increased anxiety-related behavior in mice deficient for metabotropic glutamate 8 (mGlu8) receptor. Neuropharmacology 43:251–259

Linden AM, Baez M, Bergeron M, Schoepp DD (2006) Effects of mGlu2 or mGlu3 receptor deletions on mGlu2/3 receptor agonist (LY354740)-induced brain c-Fos expression: specific

roles for mGlu2 in the amygdala and subcortical nuclei, and mGlu3 in the hippocampus. Neuropharmacology 51:213–228

Lindsley CW, Wisnoski DD, Leister WH, O'brien JA, Lemaire W, Williams DL Jr, Burno M, Sur C, Kinney GG, Pettibone DJ, Tiller PR, Smith S, Duggan ME, Hartman GD, Conn PJ, Huff JR (2004) Discovery of positive allosteric modulators for the metabotropic glutamate receptor subtype 5 from a series of N-(1,3-diphenyl-1H- pyrazol-5-yl)benzamides that potentiate receptor function in vivo. J Med Chem 47:5825–5828

Lipina T, Weiss K, Roder J (2007) The ampakine CX546 restores the prepulse inhibition and latent inhibition deficits in mGluR5-deficient mice. Neuropsychopharmacology 32:745–756

Liu J, Moghaddam B (1995) Regulation of glutamate efflux by excitatory amino acid receptors: evidence for tonic inhibitory and phasic excitatory regulation. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 274:1209–1215

Liu F, Grauer S, Kelley C, Navarra R, Graf R, Zhang G, Atkinson PJ, Popiolek M, Wantuch C, Khawaja X, Smith D, Olsen M, Kouranova E, Lai M, Pruthi F, Pulicicchio C, Day M, Gilbert A, Pausch MH, Brandon NJ, Beyer CE, Comery TA, Logue S, Rosenzweig-Lipson S, Marquis KL (2008) ADX47273 [S-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-{3-[3-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-[1,2,4]-oxadiazol-5-yl]-piperidin-1-yl}-methanone]: a novel metabotropic glutamate receptor 5-selective positive allosteric modulator with preclinical antipsychotic-like and procognitive activities. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 327:827–839

Ljungberg T, Ungerstedt U (1985) A rapid and simple behavioural screening method for simultaneous assessment of limbic and striatal blocking effects of neuroleptic drugs. Pharmacol Biochem Behav 23:479–485

Lorrain DS, Baccei CS, Bristow LJ, Anderson JJ, Varney MA (2003) Effects of ketamine and N-methyl-D-aspartate on glutamate and dopamine release in the rat prefrontal cortex: modulation by a group II selective metabotropic glutamate receptor agonist LY379268. Neuroscience 117:697–706

Lu YM, Jia Z, Janus C, Henderson JT, Gerlai R, Wojtowicz JM, Roder JC (1997) Mice lacking metabotropic glutamate receptor 5 show impaired learning and reduced CA1 long-term potentiation (LTP) but normal CA3 LTP. J Neurosci 17:5196–5205

Luby ED, Cohen BD, Rosenbaum G, Gottlieb JS, Keller R (1959) Study of a new schizophrenomimetic drug; sernyl. AMA Arch Neurol Psychiatry 81:363–369

Luján R, Roberts JD, Shigemoto R, Ohishi H, Somogyi P (1997) Differential plasma membrane distribution of metabotropic glutamate receptors mGluR1 alpha, mGluR2 and mGluR5, relative to neurotransmitter release sites. J Chem Neuroanat 13:219–241

Lyon L, Kew JN, Corti C, Harrison PJ, Burnet PW (2008) Altered hippocampal expression of glutamate receptors and transporters in GRM2 and GRM3 knockout mice. Synapse 62:842–845

Lyon L, Borel M, Carrión M, Kew JN, Corti C, Harrison PJ, Burnet PW, Paulsen O, Rodríguez-Moreno A (2011a) Hippocampal mossy fiber long-term depression in Grm2/3 double knockout mice. Synapse 65:945–954

Lyon L, Burnet PW, Kew JN, Corti C, Rawlins JN, Lane T, De Filippis B, Harrison PJ, Bannerman DM (2011b) Fractionation of spatial memory in GRM2/3 (mGlu2/mGlu3) double knockout mice reveals a role for group II metabotropic glutamate receptors at the interface between arousal and cognition. Neuropsychopharmacology 36:2616–2628

Mabire D, Coupa S, Adelinet C, Poncelet A, Simonnet Y, Venet M, Wouters R, Lesage AS, Van Beijsterveldt L, Bischoff F (2005) Synthesis, structure-activity relationship, and receptor pharmacology of a new series of quinoline derivatives acting as selective, noncompetitive mGlu1 antagonists. J Med Chem 48:2134–2153

Maciejak P, Taracha E, Lehner M, Szyndler J, Bidziński A, Skórzewska A, Wisłowska A, Zienowicz M, Płaźnik A (2003) Hippocampal mGluR1 and consolidation of contextual fear conditioning. Brain Res Bull 62:39–45

Manahan-Vaughan D (1998) Priming of group 2 metabotropic glutamate receptors facilitates induction of long-term depression in the dentate gyrus of freely moving rats. Neuropharmacology 37:1459–1464

Manahan-Vaughan D, Braunewell KH (2005) The metabotropic glutamate receptor, mGluR5, is a key determinant of good and bad spatial learning performance and hippocampal synaptic plasticity. Cereb Cortex 15(11):1703–13

Mannaioni G, Marino MJ, Valenti O, Traynelis SF, Conn PJ (2001) Metabotropic glutamate receptors 1 and 5 differentially regulate CA1 pyramidal cell function. J Neurosci 21:5925–5934

Mansbach RM, Geyer MA (1989) Effects of phencyclidine and phencyclidine biologs on sensorimotor gating in the rat. Neuropsychopharmacology 2:299–308

Mansbach RS, Geyer MA, Braff DL (1988) Dopaminergic stimulation disrupts sensorimotor gating in the rat. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 94:507–514

Mao L, Wang JQ (2002a) Glutamate cascade to cAMP response element-binding protein phosphorylation in cultured striatal neurons through calcium-coupled group I metabotropic glutamate receptors. Mol Pharmacol 62:473–484

Mao L, Wang JQ (2002b) Interactions between ionotropic and metabotropic glutamate receptors regulate cAMP response element-binding protein phosphorylation in cultured striatal neurons. Neuroscience 115:395–402

Mao L, Conquet F, Wang JQ (2001) Augmented motor activity and reduced striatal preprodynorphin mRNA induction in response to acute amphetamine administration in metabotropic glutamate receptor 1 knockout mice. Neuroscience 106:303–312

Mao L, Conquet F, Wang JQ (2002) Impaired preprodynorphin, but not preproenkephalin, mRNA induction in the striatum of mGluR1 mutant mice in response to acute administration of the full dopamine D(1) agonist SKF-82958. Synapse 44:86–93

Mao L, Yang L, Tang Q, Samdani S, Zhang G, Wang JQ (2005) The scaffold protein Homer1b/c links metabotropic glutamate receptor 5 to extracellular signal-regulated protein kinase cascades in neurons. J Neurosci 25:2741–2752

Marino MJ, Conn PJ (2002a) Direct and indirect modulation of the N-methyl D-aspartate receptor. Curr Drug Targets CNS Neurol Disord 1:1–16

Marino MJ, Conn PJ (2002b) Modulation of the basal ganglia by metabotropic glutamate receptors: potential for novel therapeutics. Curr Drug Targets CNS Neurol Disord 1:239–250

Markham JA, Taylor AR, Taylor SB, Bell DB, Koenig JI (2010) Characterization of the cognitive impairments induced by prenatal exposure to stress in the rat. Front Behav Neurosci 4:173

Martin LJ, Blackstone CD, Huganir RL, Price DL (1992) Cellular localization of a metabotropic glutamate receptor in rat brain. Neuron 9:259–270

Masugi M, Yokoi M, Shigemoto R, Muguruma K, Watanabe Y, Sansig G, van der Putten H, Nakanishi S (1999) Metabotropic glutamate receptor subtype 7 ablation causes deficit in fear response and conditioned taste aversion. J Neurosci 19:955–963

Matrisciano F, Tueting P, Maccari S, Nicoletti F, Guidotti A (2011) Pharmacological activation of group-II metabotropic glutamate receptors corrects a schizophrenia-like phenotype induced by prenatal stress in mice. Neuropsychopharmacology 37(4):929–38

McGeehan AJ, Janak PH, Olive MF (2004) Effect of the mGluR5 antagonist 6-methyl-2-(phenylethynyl)pyridine (MPEP) on the acute locomotor stimulant properties of cocaine, D-amphetamine, and the dopamine reuptake inhibitor GBR12909 in mice. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 174:266–273

McNamara RK, Skelton RW (1993) The neuropharmacological and neurochemical basis of place learning in the Morris water maze. Brain Res Rev 18:33–49

Merlin LR, Wong RK (1997) Role of group I metabotropic glutamate receptors in the patterning of epileptiform activities in vitro. J Neurophysiol 78:539–544

Merlin LR, Bergold PJ, Wong RK (1999) Requirement of protein synthesis for group I mGluR-mediated induction of epileptiform discharges. J Neurophysiol 80:989–993

Miller S, Sehati N, Romano C, Cotman CW (1996) Exposure of astrocytes to thrombin reduces levels of the metabotropic glutamate receptor mGluR5. J Neurochem 67:1435–1447

Mitsukawa K, Mombereau C, Lötscher E, Uzunov DP, van der Putten H, Flor PJ, Cryan JF (2006) Metabotropic glutamate receptor subtype 7 ablation causes dysregulation of the HPA axis and increases hippocampal BDNF protein levels: implications for stress-related psychiatric disorders. Neuropsychopharmacology 31:1112–1122

Moghaddam B (2004) Targeting metabotropic glutamate receptors for treatment of the cognitive symptoms of schizophrenia. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 174:39–44

Moghaddam B, Adams BW (1998) Reversal of phencyclidine effects by a group II metabotropic glutamate receptor agonist in rats. Science 281:1349–1352

Moghaddam B, Jackson ME (2003) Glutamatergic animal models of schizophrenia. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1003:131–137

Moghaddam B, Adams B, Verma A, Daly D (1997) Activation of glutamatergic neurotransmission by ketamine: a novel step in the pathway from NMDA receptor blockade to dopaminergic and cognitive disruptions associated with the prefrontal cortex. J Neurosci 17:2921–2927

Monn JA, Valli MJ, Massey SM, Wright RA, Salhoff CR, Johnson BG, Howe T, Alt CA, Rhodes GA, Robey RL, Griffey KR, Tizzano JP, Kallman MJ, Helton DR, Schoepp DD (1997) Design, synthesis, and pharmacological characterization of (+)-2-aminobicyclo[3.1.0] hexane-2,6-dicarboxylic acid (LY354740): a potent, selective, and orally active group 2 metabotropic glutamate receptor agonist possessing anticonvulsant and anxiolytic properties. J Med Chem 40:528–537

Moore H, Jentsch JD, Ghajarnia M, Geyer MA, Grace AA (2006) A neurobehavioral systems analysis of adult rats exposed to methylazoxymethanol acetate on E17: implications for the neuropathology of schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 60:253–264

Morè L, Gravius A, Pietraszek M, Belozertseva I, Malyshkin A, Shekunova E, Barberi C, Schaefer D, Schmidt WJ, Danysz W (2007) Comparison of the mGluR1 antagonist A-841720 in rat models of pain and cognition. Behav Pharmacol 18:273–281

Moreno JL, Sealfon SC, González-Maeso J (2009) Group II metabotropic glutamate receptors and schizophrenia. Cell Mol Life Sci 66:3777–3785

Morishima Y, Miyakawa T, Furuyashiki T, Tanaka Y, Mizuma H, Nakanishi S (2005) Enhanced cocaine responsiveness and impaired motor coordination in metabotropic glutamate receptor subtype 2 knockout mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 102:4170–7175

Moroni F, Lombardi G, Thomsen C, Leonardi P, Attucci S, Peruginelli F, Torregrossa SA, Pellegrini-Giampietro DE, Luneia R, Pellicciari R (1997) Pharmacological characterization of 1-aminoindan-1,5-dicarboxylic acid, a potent mGluR1 antagonist. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 281:721–729

Moroni F, Cozzi A, Lombardi G, Sourtcheva S, Leonardi P, Carfì M, Pellicciari R (1998) Presynaptic mGlu1 type receptors potentiate transmitter output in the rat cortex. Eur J Pharmacol 347:189–195

Morris RG, Schenk F, Tweedie F, Jarrard LE (1990) Ibotenate lesions of hippocampus and/or subiculum: dissociating components of allocentric spatial learning. Eur J Neurosci 2:1016–1028

Muir JL, Bussey TJ, Everitt BJ, Robbins TW (1996) Dissociable effects of AMPA-induced lesions of the vertical limb diagonal band of Broca on performance of the 5-choice serial reaction time task and on acquisition of a conditional visual discrimination. Behav Brain Res 82:31–44

Muly EC, Maddox M, Smith Y (2003) Distribution of mGluR1alpha and mGluR5 immunolabeling in primate prefrontal cortex. J Comp Neurol 467:521–535

Muly EC, Mania I, Guo JD, Rainnie DG (2007) Group II metabotropic glutamate receptors in anxiety circuitry: correspondence of physiological response and subcellular distribution. J Comp Neurol 505:682–700

Murphy BL, Arnsten AF, Goldman-Rakic PS, Roth RH (1996) Increased dopamine turnover in the prefrontal cortex impairs spatial working memory performance in rats and monkeys. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 93:1325–1329

Naie K, Manahan-Vaughan D (2005) Pharmacological antagonism of metabotropic glutamate receptor 1 regulates long-term potentiation and spatial reference memory in the dentate gyrus

of freely moving rats via N-methyl-D-aspartate and metabotropic glutamate receptor-dependent mechanisms. Eur J Neurosci 21:411–421

Nakazato A, Kumagai T, Sakagami K, Yoshikawa R, Suzuki Y, Chaki S, Ito H, Taguchi T, Nakanishi S, Okuyama S (2000) Synthesis, SARs, and pharmacological characterization of 2-amino-3 or 6-fluorobicyclo[3.1.0]hexane-2,6-dicarboxylic acid derivatives as potent, selective, and orally active group II metabotropic glutamate receptor agonists. J Med Chem 43:4893–4909

Négyessy L, Vidnyánszky Z, Kuhn R, Knöpfel T, Görcs TJ, Hámori J (1997) Light and electron microscopic demonstration of mGluR5 metabotropic glutamate receptor immunoreactive neuronal elements in the rat cerebellar cortex. J Comp Neurol 385:641–650

Neki A, Ohishi H, Kaneko T, Shigemoto R, Nakanishi S, Mizuno N (1996a) Metabotropic glutamate receptors mGluR2 and mGluR5 are expressed in two non-overlapping populations of Golgi cells in the rat cerebellum. Neuroscience 75:815–826

Neki A, Ohishi H, Kaneko T, Shigemoto R, Nakanishi S, Mizuno N (1996b) Pre- and postsynaptic localization of a metabotropic glutamate receptor, mGluR2, in the rat brain: an immunohistochemical study with a monoclonal antibody. Neurosci Lett 202:197–200

Newcomer JW, Farber NB, Jevtovic-Todorovic V, Selke G, Melson AK, Hershey T, Craft S, Olney JW (1999) Ketamine-induced NMDA receptor hypofunction as a model of memory impairment and psychosis. Neuropsychopharmacology 20:106–118

Nicholls RE, Zhang XL, Bailey CP, Conklin BR, Kandel ER, Stanton PK (2006) mGluR2 acts through inhibitory Galpha subunits to regulate transmission and long-term plasticity at hippocampal mossy fiber-CA3 synapses. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 103:6380–6385

Nicoletti F, Bockaert J, Collingridge GL, Conn PJ, Ferraguti F, Schoepp DD, Wroblewski JT, Pin JP (2011) Metabotropic glutamate receptors: From the workbench to the bedside. Neuropharmacology 60:1017–1041

Nikiforuk A, Popik P, Drescher KU, van Gaalen M, Relo AL, Mezler M, Marek G, Schoemaker H, Gross G, Bespalov A (2011) Effects of a positive allosteric modulator of group II metabotropic glutamate receptors, LY487379, on cognitive flexibility and impulsive-like responding in rats. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 335:665–673

Niswender CM, Conn PJ (2010) Metabotropic glutamate receptors: physiology, pharmacology, and disease. Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol 50:295–322

Noetzel MJ, Rook JM, Vinson PN, Cho H, Days E, Zhou Y, Rodriguez AL, Lavreysen H, Stauffer SR, Niswender CM, Xiang Z, Daniels JS, Jones CK, Lindsley CW, Weaver CD, Conn PJ (2011) Functional impact of allosteric agonist activity of selective positive allosteric modulators of mGlu5 in regulating CNS function. Mol Pharmacol 81(2):120–33

Nomura A, Shigemoto R, Nakamura Y, Okamoto N, Mizuno N, Nakanishi S (1994) Developmentally regulated postsynaptic localization of a metabotropic glutamate receptor in rat rod bipolar cells. Cell 77:361–369

Nuechterlein KH, Barch DM, Gold JM, Goldberg TE, Green MF, Heaton RK (2004) Identification of separable cognitive factors in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 72:29–39

O'Brien JA, Lemaire W, Chen TB, Chang RS, Jacobson MA, Ha SN, Lindsley CW, Schaffhauser HJ, Sur C, Pettibone DJ, Conn PJ, Williams DL Jr (2003) A family of highly selective allosteric modulators of the metabotropic glutamate receptor subtype 5. Mol Pharmacol 64:731–740

O'Brien JA, Lemaire W, Wittmann M, Jacobson MA, Ha SN, Wisnoski DD, Lindsley CW, Schaffhauser HJ, Rowe B, Sur C, Duggan ME, Pettibone DJ, Conn PJ, Williams DL Jr (2004) A novel selective allosteric modulator potentiates the activity of native metabotropic glutamate receptor subtype 5 in rat forebrain. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 309:568–577

Ohishi H, Shigemoto R, Nakanishi S, Mizuno N (1993a) Distribution of the messenger RNA for a metabotropic glutamate receptor, mGluR2, in the central nervous system of the rat. Neuroscience 53:1009–1018

Ohishi H, Shigemoto R, Nakanishi S, Mizuno N (1993b) Distribution of the mRNA for a metabotropic glutamate receptor (mGluR3) in the rat brain: an in situ hybridization study. J Comp Neurol 335:252–266

Ohishi H, Neki A, Mizuno N (1998) Distribution of a metabotropic glutamate receptor, mGluR2, in the central nervous system of the rat and mouse: an immunohistochemical study with a monoclonal antibody. Neurosci Res 30:65–82

Ong WY, He Y, Tan KK, Garey LJ (1998) Differential localisation of the metabotropic glutamate receptor mGluR1a and the ionotropic glutamate receptor GluR2/3 in neurons of the human cerebral cortex. Exp Brain Res 119:367–374

Ossowska K, Pietraszek M, Wardas J, Nowak G, Zajaczkowski W, Wolfarth S, Pilc A (2000) The role of glutamate receptors in antipsychotic drug action. Amino Acids 19:87–94

Pałucha-Poniewiera A, Kłodzińska A, Stachowicz K, Tokarski K, Hess G, Schann S, Frauli M, Neuville P, Pilc A (2008) Peripheral administration of group III mGlu receptor agonist ACPT-I exerts potential antipsychotic effects in rodents. Neuropharmacology 55:517–524

Parmentier ML, Galvez T, Acher F, Peyre B, Pellicciari R, Grau Y, Bockaert J, Pin JP (2000) Conservation of the ligand recognition site of metabotropic glutamate receptors during evolution. Neuropharmacology 39:1119–1131

Parmentier-Batteur S, Obrien JA, Doran S, Nguyen SJ, Flick RB, Uslaner JM, Chen H, Finger EN, Williams TM, Jacobson MA, Hutson PH (2010) Differential effects of the mGluR5 positive allosteric modulator CDPPB in the cortex and striatum following repeated administration. Neuropharmacology 62:1453–1460

Patil ST, Zhang L, Martenyi F, Lowe SL, Jackson KA, Andreev BV, Avedisova AS, Bardenstein LM, Gurovich IY, Morozova MA, Mosolov SN, Neznanov NG, Reznik AM, Smulevich AB, Tochilov VA, Johnson BG, Monn JA, Schoepp DD (2007a) Activation of mGlu2/3 receptors as a new approach to treat schizophrenia: a randomized Phase 2 clinical trial. Nat Med 13:1102–1107

Patil ST, Zhang L, Martenyi F, Lowe SL, Jackson KA, Andreev BV, Avedisova AS, Bardenstein LM, Gurovich IY, Morozova MA, Mosolov SN, Neznanov NG, Reznik AM, Smulevich AB, Tochilov VA, Johnson BG, Monn JA, Schoepp DD (2007b) Activation of mGlu2/3 receptors as a new approach to treat schizophrenia: a randomized Phase 2 clinical trial. Nat Med 13:1102–1107

Pehrson AL, Moghaddam B (2010) Impact of metabotropic glutamate 2/3 receptor stimulation on activated dopamine release and locomotion. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 211:443–455

Pekhletski R, Gerlai R, Overstreet LS, Huang XP, Agopyan N, Slater NT, Abramow-Newerly W, Roder JC, Hampson DR (1996) Impaired cerebellar synaptic plasticity and motor performance in mice lacking the mGluR4 subtype of metabotropic glutamate receptor. J Neurosci 16:6364–6373

Pellicciari R, Costantino G (1999) Metabotropic G-protein-coupled glutamate receptors as therapeutic targets. Curr Opin Chem Biol 3:433–440

Petralia RS, Wang YX, Niedzielski AS, Wenthold RJ (1996) The metabotropic glutamate receptors, mGluR2 and mGluR3, show unique postsynaptic, presynaptic and glial localizations. Neuroscience 71:949–976

Phillips T, Rees S, Augood S, Waldvogel H, Faull R, Svendsen C, Emson P (2000) Localization of metabotropic glutamate receptor type 2 in the human brain. Neuroscience 95:1139–1156

Pietraszek M, Gravius A, Schafer D, Weil T, Trifanova D, Danysz W (2005) mGluR5, but not mGluR1, antagonist modifies MK-801-induced locomotor activity and deficit of prepulse inhibition. Neuropharmacology 49:73–85

Pilowsky LS, Bressan RA, Stone JM, Erlandsson K, Mulligan RS, Krystal JH, Ell PJ (2006) First in vivo evidence of an NMDA receptor deficit in medication-free schizophrenic patients. Mol Psychiatry 11:118–119

Pinheiro PS, Mulle C (2008) Presynaptic glutamate receptors: physiological functions and mechanisms of action. Nat Rev Neurosci 9:423–436

Pinkerton AB, Vernier JM, Schaffhauser H, Rowe BA, Campbell UC, Rodriguez DE, Lorrain DS, Baccei CS, Daggett LP, Bristow LJ (2004) Phenyl-tetrazolyl acetophenones: discovery of positive allosteric potentiatiors for the metabotropic glutamate 2 receptor. J Med Chem 47:4595–4599

Pinkerton AB, Cube RV, Hutchinson JH, James JK, Gardner MF, Rowe BA, Schaffhauser H, Rodriguez DE, Campbell UC, Daggett LP, Vernier JM (2005) Allosteric potentiators of the metabotropic glutamate receptor 2 (mGlu2). Part 3: Identification and biological activity of indanone containing mGlu2 receptor potentiators. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 15:1565–1571

Pisani A, Gubellini P, Bonsi P, Conquet F, Picconi B, Centonze D, Bernardi G, Calabresi P (2001) Metabotropic glutamate receptor 5 mediates the potentiation of N-methyl-D-aspartate responses in medium spiny striatal neurons. Neuroscience 106:579–587

Poisik O, Raju DV, Verreault M, Rodriguez A, Abeniyi OA, Conn PJ, Smith Y (2005) Metabotropic glutamate receptor 2 modulates excitatory synaptic transmission in the rat globus pallidus. Neuropharmacology 2005:135–145

Porsolt RD, Moser PC, Castagné V (2010) Behavioral indices in antipsychotic drug discovery. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 333:632–638

Pozzi L, Baviera M, Sacchetti G, Calcagno E, Balducci C, Invernizzi RW, Carli M (2011) Attention deficit induced by blockade of N-methyl d-aspartate receptors in the prefrontal cortex is associated with enhanced glutamate release and cAMP response element binding protein phosphorylation: role of metabotropic glutamate receptors 2/3. Neuroscience 176:336–348

Pramyothin P, Khaodhiar L (2010) Metabolic syndrome with the atypical antipsychotics. Curr Opin Endocrinol Diabetes Obes 17:460–466

Pratt SD, Mezler M, Geneste H, Bakker MH, Hajduk PJ, Gopalakrishnan SM (2011) Identification and characterization of mGlu3 ligands using a high throughput FLIPR assay for detection of agonists, antagonists, and allosteric modulators. Comb Chem High Throughput Screen 14:631–641

Prézeau L, Gomeza J, Ahern S, Mary S, Galvez T, Bockaert J, Pin JP (1996) Changes in the carboxyl-terminal domain of metabotropic glutamate receptor 1 by alternative splicing generate receptors with differing agonist-independent activity‘. Mol Pharmacol 49:422–429

Profaci CP, Krolikowski KA, Olszewski RT, Neale JH (2011) Group II mGluR agonist LY354740 and NAAG peptidase inhibitor effects on prepulse inhibition in PCP D-amphetamine models of schizophrenia. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 216:235–243

Ramsey AJ (2009) NR1 knockdown mice as a representative model of the glutamate hypothesis of schizophrenia. Prog Brain Res 179:51–58

Reichel CM, Schwendt M, McGinty JF, Olive MF, See RE (2011) Loss of object recognition memory produced by extended access to methamphetamine self-administration is reversed by positive allosteric modulation of metabotropic glutamate receptor 5. Neuropsychopharmacology 36:782–792

Renger JJ, Hartman KN, Tsuchimoto Y, Yokoi M, Nakanishi S, Hensch TK (2002) Experience-dependent plasticity without long-term depression by type 2 metabotropic glutamate receptors in developing visual cortex. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 99:1041–1046

Richardson-Burns SM, Haroutunian V, Davis KL, Watson SJ, Meador-Woodruff JH (1999) Metabotropic glutamate receptors mRNA expression in the schizophrenic thalamus. Biol Psychiatry 47:22–28

Robbe D, Alonso G, Chaumont S, Bockaert J, Manzoni OJ (2002) Role of p/q-Ca2+ channels in metabotropic glutamate receptor 2/3-dependent presynaptic long-term depression at nucleus accumbens synapses. J Neurosci 22:4346–4356

Robbins MJ, Starr KR, Honey A, Soffin EM, Rourke C, Jones GA, Kelly FM, Strum J, Melarange RA, Harris AJ, Rocheville M, Rupniak T, Murdock PR, Jones DN, Kew JN, Maycox PR (2007) Evaluation of the mGlu8 receptor as a putative therapeutic target in schizophrenia. Brain Res 1152:215–227

Rodriguez AL, Nong Y, Sekaran NK, Alagille D, Tamagnan GD, Conn PJ (2005) A close structural analog of 2-methyl-6-(phenylethynyl)-pyridine acts as a neutral allosteric site ligand on metabotropic glutamate receptor subtype 5 and blocks the effects of multiple allosteric modulators. Mol Pharmacol 68:1793–1802

Rodriguez AL, Grier MD, Jones CK, Herman EJ, Kane AS, Smith RL, Williams R, Zhou Y, Marlo JE, Days EL, Blatt TN, Jadhav S, Menon UN, Vinson PN, Rook JM, Stauffer SR, Niswender CM, Lindsley CW, Weaver CD, Conn PJ (2010) Discovery of novel allosteric modulators of metabotropic glutamate receptor subtype 5 reveals chemical and functional diversity and in vivo activity in rat behavioral models of anxiolytic and antipsychotic activity. Mol Pharmacol 78:1105–1123

Rondard P, Goudet C, Kniazeff J, Pin JP, Prezeau L (2011) The complexity of their activation mechanism opens new possibilities for the modulation of mGlu and GABAB class C G protein-coupled receptors. Neuropharmacology 60:82–92

Rorick-Kehn LM, Perkins EJ, Knitowski KM, Hart JC, Johnson BG, Schoepp DD, McKinzie DL (2006) Improved bioavailability of the mGlu2/3 receptor agonist LY354740 using a prodrug strategy: in vivo pharmacology of LY544344. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 316:905–913

Rorick-Kehn LM, Johnson BG, Burkey JL, Wright RA, Calligaro DO, Marek GJ, Nisenbaum ES, Catlow JT, Kingston AE, Giera DD, Herin MF, Monn JA, McKinzie DL, Schoepp DD (2007a) Pharmacological and pharmacokinetic properties of a structurally novel, potent, and selective metabotropic glutamate 2/3 receptor agonist: in vitro characterization of agonist (-)-(1R,4S,5S,6S)-4-amino-2-sulfonylbicyclo[3.1.0]-hexane-4,6-dicarboxylic acid (LY404039). J Pharmacol Exp Ther 321:308–317

Rorick-Kehn LM, Johnson BG, Knitowski KM, Salhoff CR, Witkin JM, Perry KW, Griffey KI, Tizzano JP, Monn JA, McKinzie DL, Schoepp DD (2007b) In vivo pharmacological characterization of the structurally novel, potent, selective mGlu2/3 receptor agonist LY404039 in animal models of psychiatric disorders. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 193:121–136

Ross CA, Margolis RL, Reading SA, Pletnikov M, Coyle JT (2006) Neurobiology of schizophrenia. Neuron 52:139–153

Ross JR, Porter BE, Buckley PT, Eberwine JH, Robinson MB (2011) mRNA for the EAAC1 subtype of glutamate transporter is present in neuronal dendrites in vitro and dramatically increases in vivo after a seizure. Neurochem Int 58:366–375

Rowe BA, Schaffhauser H, Morales S, Lubbers LS, Bonnefous C, Kamenecka TM, McQuiston J, Daggett LP (2008) Transposition of three amino acids transforms the human metabotropic glutamate receptor (mGluR)-3 positive allosteric modulation site to mGluR2, and additional characterization of the mGluR2 positive allosteric modulation site. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 326:240–251

Sadler TR, Nguyen PT, Yang J, Givrad TK, Mayer EA, Maarek JM, Hinton DR, Holschneider DP (2011) Antenatal maternal stress alters functional brain responses in adult offspring during conditioned fear. Brain Res 1385:163–174

Salmi P, Samuelsson J, Ahlenius S (1994) A new computer-assisted two-way avoidance conditioning equipment for rats: behavioral and pharmacological validation. J Pharmacol Toxicol Methods 32:155–159

Sansig G, Bushell TJ, Clarke VR, Rozov A, Burnashev N, Portet C, Gasparini F, Schmutz M, Klebs K, Shigemoto R, Flor PJ, Kuhn R, Knoepfel T, Schroeder M, Hampson DR, Collett VJ, Zhang C, Duvoisin RM, Collingridge GL, van Der Putten H (2001) Increased seizure susceptibility in mice lacking metabotropic glutamate receptor 7. J Neurosci 21:8734–8745

Sato T, Tanaka K, Ohnishi Y, Irifune M, Nishikawa T (2003) Effect of donepezil on group II mGlu receptor agonist- or antagonist-induced amnesia on passive avoidance in mice. Neural Plast 10:319–325

Sato T, Tanaka K, Ohnishi Y, Teramoto T, Irifune M, Nishikawa T (2004) Inhibitory effects of group II mGluR-related drugs on memory performance in mice. Physiol Behav 80:747–758

Satow A, Maehara S, Ise S, Hikichi H, Fukushima M, Suzuki G, Kimura T, Tanak T, Ito S, Kawamoto H, Ohta H (2008) Pharmacological effects of the metabotropic glutamate receptor 1 antagonist compared with those of the metabotropic glutamate receptor 5 antagonist and metabotropic glutamate receptor 2/3 agonist in rodents: detailed investigations with a selective allosteric metabotropic glutamate receptor 1 antagonist, FTIDC [4-[1-(2-fluoropyridine-

3-yl)-5-methyl-1H-1,2,3-triazol-4-yl]-N-isopropyl-N-methyl-3,6-dihydropyridine-1(2H)-carboxamide]. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 326:577–586

Satow A, Suzuki G, Maehara S, Hikichi H, Murai T, Kawagoe-Takaki H, Hata M, Ito S, Ozaki S, Kawamoto H, Ohta H (2009) Unique Antipsychotic Activities of the Selective Metabotropic Glutamate Receptor 1 Allosteric Antagonist 2-Cyclopropyl-5-[1-(2-fluoro-3-pyridinyl)-5-methyl-1H-1,2,3-triazol-4-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-isoindol-1-one. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 330:179–190

Saugstad JA, Kinzie JM, Shinohara MM, Segerson TP, Westbrook GL (1997) Cloning and expression of rat metabotropic glutamate receptor 8 reveals a distinct pharmacological profile. Mol Pharmacol 51:119–125

Schaffhauser H, Rowe BA, Morales S, Chavez-Noriega LE, Yin R, Jachec C, Rao SP, Bain G, Pinkerton AB, Vernier JM, Bristow LJ, Varney MA, Daggett LP (2003) Pharmacological characterization and identification of amino acids involved in the positive modulation of metabotropic glutamate receptor subtype 2. Mol Pharmacol 64:798–810

Schenk F, Morris RG (1985) Dissociation between components of spatial memory in rats after recovery from the effects of retrohippocampal lesions. Exp Brain Res 58:11–28

Schlumberger C, Pietraszek M, Gravius A, Klein K-U, Greco S, Morè L, Danysz W (2009a) Comparison of the mGlu5 receptor positive allosteric modulator ADX47273 and the mGlu2/3 receptor agonist LY354740 in tests for antipsychotic-like activity. Eur J Pharmacol 623:73–83

Schlumberger C, Schäfer D, Barberi C, Morè L, Nagel J, Pietraszek M, Schmidt WJ, Danysz W (2009b) Effects of a metabotropic glutamate receptor group II agonist LY354740 in animal models of positive schizophrenia symptoms and cognition. Behav Pharmacol 20:56–66

Schlumberger C, Pietraszek M, Gravius A, Danysz W (2010a) Effects of a positive allosteric modulator of mGluR5 ADX47273 on conditioned avoidance response and PCP-induced hyperlocomotion in the rat as models for schizophrenia. Pharmacol Biochem Behav 95:23–30

Schlumberger C, Pietraszek M, Gravius A, Danysz W (2010b) Effects of a positive allosteric modulator of mGluR5 ADX47273 on conditioned avoidance response and PCP-induced hyperlocomotion in the rat as models for schizophrenia. Pharmacol Biochem Behav 95:23–30

Schmidt WJ (1986) Intrastriatal injection of DL-2-amino-5-phosphonovaleric acid (AP-5) induces sniffing stereotypy that is antagonized by haloperidol and clozapine. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 90:123–130

Schoepp DD (2001) Unveiling the functions of presynaptic metabotropic glutamate receptors in the central nervous system. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 299:12–20

Schoepp DD, Johnson BG, Wright RA, Salhoff CR, Mayne NG, Wu S, Cockerman SL, Burnett JP, Belegaje R, Bleakman D, Monn JA (1997) LY354740 is a potent and highly selective group II metabotropic glutamate receptor agonist in cells expressing human glutamate receptors. Neuropharmacology 36:1–11

Schoepp DD, Jane DE, Monn JA (1999) Pharmacological agents acting at subtypes of metabotropic glutamate receptors. Neuropharmacology 38:1431–1476

Schoepp DD, Wright RA, Levine LR, Gaydos B, Potter WZ (2003) LY354740, an mGlu2/3 receptor agonist as a novel approach to treat anxiety/stress. Stress 6:189–197

Schreiber R, Lowe D, Voerste A, De Vry J (2000) LY354740 affects startle responding but not sensorimotor gating or discriminative effects of phencyclidine. Eur J Pharmacol 388:R3–R4

Schröder UH, Muller T, Schreiber R, Stolle A, Zuschratter W, Balschun D, Jork R, Reymann KG (2008) The potent non-competitive mGlu1 receptor antagonist BAY 36-7620 differentially affects synaptic plasticity in area cornu ammonis 1 of rat hippocampal slices and impairs acquisition in the water maze task in mice. Neuroscience 157:385–395

Seeman P, Battaglia G, Corti C, Corsi M, Bruno V (2009) Glutamate receptor mGlu2 and mGlu3 knockout striata are dopamine supersensitive, with elevated D2High receptors and marked supersensitivity to the dopamine agonist (+)PHNO. Synapse 63:247–251

Semenova S, Markou A (2007) The effects of the mGluR5 antagonist MPEP and the mGluR2/3 antagonist LY341495 on rats' performance in the 5-choice serial reaction time task. Neuropharmacology 52:863–872

Semyanov A, Kullmann DM (2000) Modulation of GABAergic signaling among interneurons by metabotropic glutamate receptors. Neuron 25:663–672

Shalin SC, Egli R, Birnbaum SG, Roth TL, Levenson JM, Sweatt JD (2006) Signal transduction mechanisms in memory disorders. Prog Brain Res 157:25–41

Shannon HE, Eberle EL (2006) Effects of biasing the location of stimulus presentation, and the muscarinic cholinergic receptor antagonist scopolamine, on performance of a 5-choice serial reaction time attention task in rats. Behav Pharmacol 17:71–85

Shannon HE, Hart JC, Bymaster FP, Calligaro DO, DeLapp NW, Mitch CH, Ward JS, Fink-Jensen A, Sauerberg P, Jeppesen L, Sheardown MJ, Swedberg MD (1999) Muscarinic receptor agonists, like dopamine receptor antagonist antipsychotics, inhibit conditioned avoidance response in rats. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 290:901–907

Sharma S, Kedrowski J, Rook JM, Smith RL, Jones CK, Rodriguez AL, Conn PJ, Lindsley CW (2009) Discovery of molecular switches that modulate modes of metabotropic glutamate receptor subtype 5 (mGlu5) pharmacology in vitro and in vivo within a series of functionalized, regioisomeric 2- and 5-(phenylethynyl)pyrimidines. J Med Chem 52:4103–4106

Sharp T, Zetterström T, Ljungberg T, Ungerstedt U (1987) A direct comparison of amphetamine-induced behaviours and regional brain dopamine release in the rat using intracerebral dialysis. Brain Res 401:322–330

Sheffler DJ, Conn PJ (2008) Allosteric potentiators of metabotropic glutamate receptor subtype 1a differentially modulate independent signaling pathways in Baby Hamster kidney cells. Neuropharmacology 55:419–427

Shigemoto R, Nakanishi S, Mizuno N (1992) Distribution of the mRNA for a metabotropic glutamate receptor (mGluR1) in the central nervous system: an in situ hybridization study in adult and developing rat. J Comp Neurol 322:121–135

Shigemoto R, Kulik A, Roberts JD, Ohishi H, Nusser Z, Kaneko T, Somogyi P (1996) Target-cell-specific concentration of a metabotropic glutamate receptor in the presynaptic active zone. Nature 381:523–525

Shigemoto R, Kinoshita A, Wada E, Nomura S, Ohishi H, Takada M, Flor PJ, Neki A, Abe T, Nakanishi S, Mizuno N (1997) Differential presynaptic localization of metabotropic glutamate receptor subtypes in the rat hippocampus. J Neurosci 17:7503–7522

Shimazaki T, Kaku A, Chaki S (2007) Blockade of the metabotropic glutamate 2/3 receptors enhances social memory via the AMPA receptor in rats. Eur J Pharmacol 575:94–97

Shimazoe T, Doi Y, Arai I, Yoshimatsu A, Fukumoto T, Watanabe S (2002) Both metabotropic glutamate I and II receptors mediate augmentation of dopamine release from the striatum in methamphetamine-sensitized rats. Jpn J Pharmacol 89:85–88

Shiraishi-Yamaguchi Y, Furuichi T (2007) The Homer family proteins. Genome Biol 8:206

Sidiropoulou K, Lu FM, Fowler MA, Xiao R, Phillips C, Ozkan ED, Zhu MX, White FJ, Cooper DC (2009) Dopamine modulates an mGluR5-mediated depolarization underlying prefrontal persistent activity. Nat Neurosci 12:190–199

Snead OC 3rd, Banerjee PK, Burnham M, Hampson D (2000) Modulation of absence seizures by the GABA(A) receptor: a critical rolefor metabotropic glutamate receptor 4 (mGluR4). J Neurosci 20:6218–6224

Sokolov BP (1998) Expression of NMDAR1, GluR1, GluR7, and KA1 glutamate receptor mRNAs is decreased in frontal cortex of "neuroleptic-free" schizophrenics: evidence on reversible up-regulation by typical neuroleptics. J Neurochem 71:2454–2464

Somogyi P, Dalezios Y, Luján R, Roberts JD, Watanabe M, Shigemoto R (2003) High level of mGluR7 in the presynaptic active zones of select populations of GABAergic terminals innervating interneurons in the rat hippocampus. Eur J Neurosci 17:2503–2520

Spear N, Gadient RA, Wilkins DE, Do M, Smith JS, Zeller KL, Schroeder P, Zhang M, Arora J, Chhajlani V (2011) Preclinical profile of a novel metabotropic glutamate receptor 5 positive allosteric modulator. Eur J Pharmacol 659:146–154

Spinelli S, Ballard T, Gatti-McArthur S, Richards GJ, Kapps M, Woltering T, Wichmann J, Stadler H, Feldon J, Pryce CR (2005) Effects of the mGluR2/3 agonist LY354740 on

computerized tasks of attention and working memory in marmoset monkeys. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 179:292–302

Spooren WP, Gasparini F, van der Putten H, Koller M, Nakanishi S, Kuhn R (2000) Lack of effect of LY314582 (a group 2 metabotropic glutamate receptor agonist) on phencyclidine-induced locomotor activity in metabotropic glutamate receptor 2 knockout mice. Eur J Pharmacol 397: R1–R2

Stauffer SR (2011) Progress toward positive allosteric modulators of the metabotropic glutamate receptor subtype 5 (mGlu5). ACS Chem Neurosci 2:450–470

Steckler T, Oliveira AF, Van Dyck C, Van Craenendonck H, Mateus AM, Langlois X, Lesage AS, Prickaerts J (2005) Metabotropic glutamate receptor 1 blockade impairs acquisition and retention in a spatial Water maze task. Behav Brain Res 164:52–60

Stefani MR, Moghaddam B (2010) Activation of type 5 metabotropic glutamate receptors attenuates deficits in cognitive flexibility induced by NMDA receptor blockade. Eur J Pharmacol 639:26–32

Stoop R, Conquet F, Zuber B, Voronin LL, Pralong E (2003) Activation of metabotropic glutamate 5 and NMDA receptors underlies the induction of persistent bursting and associated long-lasting changes in CA3 recurrent connections. J Neurosci 23:5634–5644

Sukhotina IA, Dravolina OA, Novitskaya Y, Zvartau EE, Danysz W, Bespalov AY (2008) Effects of mGlu1 receptor blockade on working memory, time estimation, and impulsivity in rats. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 196:211–220

Suzuki G, Kimura T, Satow A, Kaneko N, Fukuda J, Hikichi H, Sakai N, Maehara S, Kawagoe-Takaki H, Hata M, Azuma T, Ito S, Kawamoto H, Ohta H (2007) Pharmacological characterization of a new, orally active and potent allosteric metabotropic glutamate receptor 1 antagonist, 4-[1-(2-fluoropyridin-3-yl)-5-methyl-1H-1,2,3-triazol-4-yl]-N-isopropyl-N-methyl-3,6-dihydropyridine-1(2H)-carboxamide (FTIDC). J Pharmacol Exp Ther 321:1144–1153

Swanson CJ, Schoepp DD (2002) The group II metabotropic glutamate receptor agonist (-)-2-oxa-4-aminobicyclo[3.1.0.]hexane-4,6-dicarboxylate (LY379268) and clozapine reverse phencyclidine-induced behaviors in monoamine-depleted rats. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 303:919–927

Swerdlow NR, Keith VA, Braff DL, Geyer MA (1988) Effects of spiperone, raclopride, SCH 23390 and clozapine on apomorphine inhibition of sensorimotor gating of the startle response in the rat. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 256:530–536

Swerdlow NR, Braff DL, Taaid N, Geyer MA (1994) Assessing the validity of an animal model of deficient sensorimotor gating in schizophrenic patients. Arch Gen Psychiatry 51:139–154

Swerdlow NR, Bakshi V, Geyer MA (1996) Seroquel restores sensorimotor gating in phencyclidine-treated rats. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 279:1290–1299

Szapiro G, Barros DM, Ardenghi P, Vianna MR, Choi H, Silva T, Medina JH, Izquierdo I (2001) Facilitation and inhibition of retrieval in two aversive tasks in rats by intrahippocampal infusion of agonists of specific glutamate metabotropic receptor subtypes. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 156:397–401

Taboada ME, Souto M, Hawkins H, Monti JM (1979) The actions of dopaminergic and noradrenergic antagonists on conditioned avoidance responses in intact and 6-hydroxydopamine-treated rats. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 62:83–88

Takamori K, Hirota S, Chaki S, Tanaka M (2003) Antipsychotic action of selective group II metabotropic glutamate receptor agonist MGS0008 and MGS0028 on conditioned avoidance responses in the rat. Life Sci 73:1721–1728

Tamaru Y, Nomura S, Mizuno N, Shigemoto R (2001) Distribution of metabotropic glutamate receptor mGluR3 in the mouse CNS: differential location relative to pre- and postsynaptic sites. Neuroscience 106:481–503

Tiedtke PI, Bischoff C, Schmidt WJ (1990) MK-801-induced stereotypy and its antagonism by neuroleptic drugs. J Neural Transm Gen Sect 81:173–182

Tomita N, Murata M, Watanabe H, Ichikawa T, Washiyama K, Kumanishi T, Takahashi Y (2000) The effects of DCG-IV and L-CCG-1 upon phencyclidine (PCP)-induced locomotion and behavioral changes in mice. Ann N Y Acad Sci 914:284–291

Tsai G, Coyle JT (2002) Glutamatergic mechanisms in schizophrenia. Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol 42:165–179

Tu JC, Xiao B, Naisbitt S, Yuan JP, Petralia RS, Brakeman P, Doan A, Aakalu VK, Lanahan AA, Sheng M, Worley PF (1999) Coupling of mGluR/Homer and PSD-95 complexes by the Shank family of postsynaptic density proteins. Neuron 23:583–592

Uslaner JM, Parmentier-Batteur S, Flick RB, Surles NO, Lam JSH, McNaughton CH, Jacobson MA, Hutson PH (2009a) Dose-dependent effect of CDPPB, the mGluR5 positive allosteric modulator, on recognition memory is associated with GluR1 and CREB phosphorylation in the prefrontal cortex and hippocampus. Neuropharmacology 57:531–538

Uslaner JM, Smith SM, Huszar SL, Pachmerhiwala R, Hinchliffe RM, Vardigan JD, Hutson PH (2009b) Combined administration of an mGlu2/3 receptor agonist and a 5-HT 2A receptor antagonist markedly attenuate the psychomotor-activating and neurochemical effects of psychostimulants. Psychopharmacology 206:641–651

Vales K, Svoboda J, Benkovicova K, Bubenikova-Valesova V, Stuchlik A (2010) The difference in effect of mGlu2/3 and mGlu5 receptor agonists on cognitive impairment induced by MK-801. Eur J Pharmacol 639:91–98

Vardi N, Duvoisin R, Wu G, Sterling P (2000) Localization of mGluR6 to dendrites of ON bipolar cells in primate retina. J Comp Neurol 423:402–412

Vardigan JD, Huszar SL, McNaughton CH, Hutson PH, Uslaner JM (2010) MK-801 produces a deficit in sucrose preference that is reversed by clozapine, D-serine, and the metabotropic glutamate 5 receptor positive allosteric modulator CDPPB: relevance to negative symptoms associated with schizophrenia? Pharmacol Biochem Behav 95:223–229

Vidnyanszky Z, Gorcs TJ, Negyessy L, Borostyankio Z, Knopfel T, Hamori J (1996) Immunocytochemical visualization of the mGluR1a metabotropic glutamate receptor at synapses of corticothalamic terminals originating from area 17 of the rat. Eur J Neurosci 8:1061–1071

Vieira E, Huwyler J, Jolidon S, Knoflach F, Mutel V, Wichmann J (2005) 9H-Xanthene-9-carboxylic acid [1,2,4]oxadiazol-3-yl- and (2H-tetrazol-5-yl)-amides as potent, orally available mGlu1 receptor enhancers. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 15:4628–4631

Vieira E, Huwyler J, Jolidon S, Knoflach F, Mutel V, Wichmann J (2009) Fluorinated 9 H-xanthene-9-carboxylic acid oxazol-2-yl-amides as potent, orally available mGlu1 receptor enhancers. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 19:1666–1669

Vijayraghavan S, Wang M, Birnbaum SG, Williams GV, Arnsten AF (2007) Inverted-U dopamine D1 receptor actions on prefrontal neurons engaged in working memory. Nat Neurosci 10:376–384

Volk LJ, Daly CA, Huber KM (2006) Differential roles for group 1 mGluR subtypes in induction and expression of chemically induced hippocampal long-term depression. J Neurophysiol 95:2427–2438

Wadenberg ML, Hicks PB (1999) The conditioned avoidance response test re-evaluated: is it a sensitive test for the detection of potentially atypical antipsychotics? Neurosci Biobehav Rev 23:851–862

Wang X, Ai J, Hampson DR, Snead OC 3rd (2005a) Altered glutamate and GABA release within thalamocortical circuitry in metabotropic glutamate receptor 4 knockout mice. Neuroscience 134:1195–1203

Wang X, Ai J, Hampson DR, Snead OCr (2005b) Altered glutamate and GABA release within thalamocortical circuitry in metabotropic glutamate receptor 4 knockout mice. Neuroscience 134:1195–1203

Wierońska JM, Stachowicz K, Acher F, Lech T, Pilc A (2011) Opposing efficacy of group III mGlu receptor activators, LSP1-2111 and AMN082, in animal models of positive symptoms of schizophrenia. Psychopharmacology 220(2):481–94

Williams R, Manka JT, Rodriguez AL, Vinson PN, Niswender CM, Weaver CD, Jones CK, Conn PJ, Lindsley CW, Stauffer SR (2011) Synthesis and SAR of centrally active mGlu5 positive allosteric modulators based on an aryl acetylenic bicyclic lactam scaffold. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 21:1350–1353

Wishka DG, Walker DP, Yates KM, Reitz SC, Jia S, Myers JK, Olson KL, Jacobsen EJ, Wolfe ML, Groppi VE, Hanchar AJ, Thornburgh BA, Cortes-Burgos LA, Wong EH, Staton BA, Raub TJ, Higdon NR, Wall TM, Hurst RS, Walters RR, Hoffmann WE, Hajos M, Franklin S, Carey G, Gold LH, Cook KK, Sands SB, Zhao SX, Soglia JR, Kalgutkar AS, Arneric SP, Rogers BN (2006) Discovery of N-[(3R)-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]oct-3-yl]furo[2,3-c]pyridine-5-carboxamide, an agonist of the alpha7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptor, for the potential treatment of cognitive deficits in schizophrenia: synthesis and structure–activity relationship. J Med Chem 49:4425–4436

Woltering TJ, Wichmann J, Goetschi E, Knoflach F, Ballard TM, Huwyler J, Gatti S (2010) Synthesis and characterization of 1,3-dihydro-benzo[b][1,4]diazepin-2-one derivatives: Part 4. In vivo active potent and selective non-competitive metabotropic glutamate receptor 2/3 antagonists. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 20:6969–6974

Wong RK, Bianchi R, Taylor GW, Merlin LR (1999) Role of metabotropic glutamate receptors in epilepsy. Adv Neurol 79:685–698

Woolley ML, Pemberton DJ, Bate S, Corti C, Jones DN (2008) The mGlu2 but not the mGlu3 receptor mediates the actions of the mGluR2/3 agonist, LY379268, in mouse models predictive of antipsychotic activity. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 196:431–440

Xiong H, Brugel TA, Balestra M, Brown DG, Brush KA, Hightower C, Hinkley L, Hoesch V, Kang J, Koether GM, McCauley JP Jr, McLaren FM, Panko LM, Simpson TR, Smith RW, Woods JM, Brockel B, Chhajlani V, Gadient RA, Spear N, Sygowski LA, Zhang M, Arora J, Breysse N, Wilson JM, Isaac M, Slassi A, King MM (2010) 4-Aryl piperazine and piperidine amides as novel mGluR5 positive allosteric modulators. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 20:7381–7384

Xu J, Zhu Y, Contractor A, Heinemann SF (2009) mGluR5 has a critical role in inhibitory learning. J Neurosci 29:3676–3684

Yokoi M, Kobayashi K, Manabe T, Takahashi T, Sakaguchi I, Katsuura G, Shigemoto R, Ohishi H, Nomura S, Nakamura K, Nakao K, Katsuki M, Nakanishi S (1996) Impairment of hippocampal mossy fiber LTD in mice lacking mGluR2. Science 273:645–647

Zhang Y, Rodriguez AL, Conn PJ (2005) Allosteric potentiators of metabotropic glutamate receptor subtype 5 have differential effects on different signaling pathways in cortical astrocytes. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 315:1212–1219

Zhou Y, Manka JT, Rodriguez AL, Weaver CD, Days EL, Vinson PN, Jadhav S, Hermann EJ, Jones CK, Conn PJ, Lindsley CW, Stauffer SR (2010) Discovery of N-aryl piperazines as selective mGluR5 potentiators with improved in vivo utility. ACS Med Chem Lett 1:433–438

# Glycine Transport Inhibitors in the Treatment of Schizophrenia

**Daniel C. Javitt**

## Contents



**Abstract** Schizophrenia is a severe neuropsychiatric disorder without adequate current treatment. Recent theories of schizophrenia focus on disturbances of glutamatergic neurotransmission particularly at *N*-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA)-type glutamate receptors. NMDA receptors are regulated in vivo by the amino acids glycine and D-serine. Glycine levels, in turn, are regulated by glycine type I (GlyT1) transporters, which serve to maintain low subsaturating glycine levels in the vicinity of the NMDA receptor. A proposed approach to treatment of schizophrenia, therefore, is inhibition of GlyT1-mediated transport. Over the past decade, several well tolerated, high affinity GlyT1 inhibitors have been developed and shown to potentiate NMDA receptor-mediated neurotransmission in animal models relevant to schizophrenia. In addition, clinical trials have been conducted with sarcosine (*N*-methylglycine), a naturally occurring GlyT1 inhibitor, and with

D.C. Javitt (✉)
Schizophrenia Research, Nathan S Kline Institute for Psychiatric Research, Columbia University, 140 Old Orangeburg Rd, Orangeburg, NY 10962, USA
e-mail: javitt@nki.rfmh.org

M.A. Geyer and G. Gross (eds.), *Novel Antischizophrenia Treatments*, Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 213,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-25758-2_12, 

the high affinity compound RG1678. Although definitive trials remain ongoing, encouraging results to date have been reported.

**Keywords** Schizophrenia • *N*-methyl-D-aspartate • Glutamate • Glycine transporter • Negative symptoms • Cognitive dysfunction

## 1 Introduction

The antipsychotic effect of chlorpromazine and related compounds were discovered fortuitously in the late 1950s, and were subsequently shown to reflect their antagonist potency at $D_2$-type dopamine receptors (Seeman and Lee 1975). This seminal observation formed the basis for the dopamine theory of schizophrenia—i.e., that symptoms of schizophrenia result primarily from hyperactivity of brain dopaminergic systems. Sixty years later, $D_2$ antagonists remain the sole approved class of compound for treatment of schizophrenia.

However, the 1950s also provided a second fortuitous discovery, the observation of the psychotomimetic effect of the drug phencyclidine (PCP) (Luby et al. 1959). PCP psychosis, in turn, forms the basis for an alternative theory of schizophrenia that is only now leading to novel therapeutic approaches. PCP induces its unique psychotomimetic effects by binding to an endogenous brain binding site (PCP receptor) that represent a site located within the ion channel formed by the *N*-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA)-type glutamate receptor (Fig. 1). The ability of NMDA receptor antagonists to induce schizophrenia-like symptoms in normal volunteers leads to the suggestion that endogenous dysfunction or dysregulation of NMDA receptors may be etiological in schizophrenia, and that compounds which stimulate NMDA receptors may therefore be therapeutically beneficial (Javitt and Zukin 1991).

NMDA receptors are modulated by the endogenous amino acids glycine and D-serine, which bind to an allosteric modulatory site of the NMDA receptor (Javitt and Zukin 1989; Johnson and Ascher 1987; McBain et al. 1989) and by glutathione, which binds to a redox site (Sucher and Lipton 1991). Additional modulators include $Zn^{2+}$ and polyamines. These sites provide potential targets for therapeutic development, and encouraging clinical results have been obtained in glycine, D-serine, and glutathione supplementation studies. Nevertheless, the modulatory sites associated with the NMDA receptor to date have proven to be "undruggable" due to their small molecular target, so alternative approaches to modulation of NMDA receptor function have to be developed.

One of the most advanced approaches, at present, is targeting of brain glycine type I (GlyT1) transporters, which are known to regulate brain glycine levels. Since this approach was first proposed in the mid-1990s, numerous high affinity glycine transport inhibitors have been developed by the pharmaceutical industry, and have been shown to induce significant pro-therapeutic effects across a variety of preclinical proof-of-concept assay systems. Most recently, these compounds have

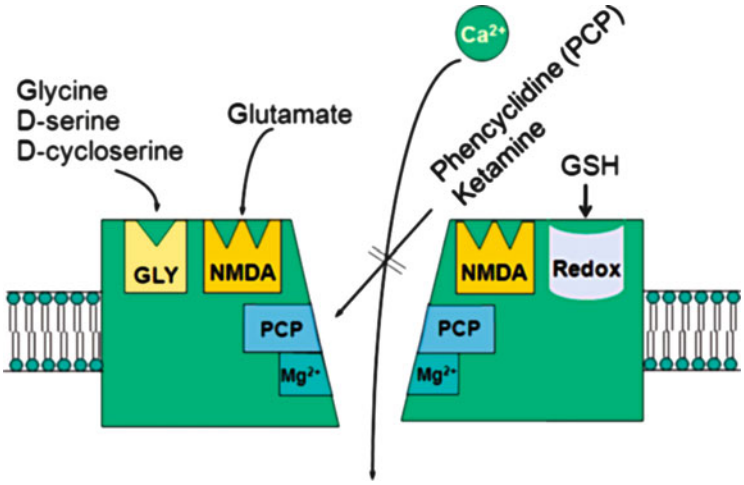



**Fig. 1** Schematic model of the *N*-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptor complex, showing NMDA recognition site and binding sites for glycine (Gly), glutathione (GSH), and phencyclidine (PCP)

completed phase II clinical studies and been entered into definitive phase III clinical trials. Primary targets of studies to date have been persistent negative symptoms, although alternate targets such as prevention, cognitive enhancement, and monotherapy stabilization need to be explored.

## *1.1 Molecular Structure of NMDA Receptors and Mechanisms of Glycine/D-Serine Modulation*

One of the limiting aspects of targeting NMDA receptors is the complexity of NMDA receptor structure. NMDA receptors consist of multiple subunits including at least one NR1 subunit and one or more modulatory subunits from the NR2 (NR2A–NR2D) and/or NR3 (NR3A, NR3B) families. Further eight splice variants have been identified for the NR1 subunits. Each functional NMDA receptor is a heteromultimer, consisting of combinations of NR1, NR2, and/or NR3 subunits.

The different subunits and splice variants significantly alter the functional properties of native NMDA receptors, including their voltage sensitivity, peak conductance, and the degree to which they are influenced by the endogenous modulators such as glycine and D-serine. The glutamate-binding site is located primarily on the NR2 subunits so that NMDA receptors vary in affinity for glutamate based upon subunit composition. In contrast, glycine binds primarily to NR1, although NR2 subunits may nonetheless modulate glycine affinity. Subunit composition also affects sensitivity to other agents. For example, NR2B-containing receptors are sensitive to the polyamine-site ligand ifenprodil (Lynch and Guttmann 2001),

while NR2A containing receptors are highly susceptible to inhibition by $Zn^{2+}$ (Lynch and Guttmann 2001; Paoletti et al. 2009).

NMDA receptor subunit composition varies over space and time in the CNS. During development, NR2B subunits predominate in forebrain, while both NR2A and NR2B are expressed in mature brain. In sensory systems, the switch from NR2B to NR2A is related to sensory experience and coincides with the timing of the critical period for sensory plasticity (Yashiro and Philpot 2008). Conversely, light deprivation increases the ratio of NR2A to NR2B, which lowers the threshold for long-term depression (LTD) and potentiation (LTP) in cortex, increasing metaplasticity of the system (Philpot et al. 2007).

NR2C is found predominantly in developing forebrain (Pollard et al. 1993) and in adult cerebellum, and may be responsible for differential properties of cerebellar versus cortical NMDA receptors (Farrant et al. 1994). NR2D levels are typically low in adults, although upregulation has been reported in prefrontal cortex in schizophrenia (Akbarian et al. 1996). In contrast, a more recent study found selective downregulation of NR1, NR2A, and NR2C subunits in frontal cortex, and no change in NR2B or NR2D (Beneyto and Meador-Woodruff 2008), indicating the need for further investigation.

NMDA receptors are activated by glutamate which is phasically released and reabsorbed, followed by presynaptic activation, and modulated by (1) the amino acids glycine and D-serine, which are tonically modulated by glial interactions and (2) glutathione, which binds to a redox sensitive site. Because of the information contained within temporal coding of glutamatergic pulses, attempts to tonically activate the site with glutamatergic compounds reduces signal-to-noise. Interestingly, while glycine and D-serine have similar, excitatory effects on NMDA receptors containing NR2 subunits, they have opposite effects on receptors containing NR3 subunits, with glycine serving to activate NR3-containing receptors, and D-serine to inhibit them (Chatterton et al. 2002; Madry et al. 2008). Given the complexity of native NMDA receptor structure in brain, relatively little is known about the degree to which they are engaged by specific therapeutic interventions.

## *1.2 NMDA Receptor Antagonists as Psychopharmacological Models of Schizophrenia*

Development of NMDA receptor agents as pharmacological treatments for schizophrenia is based on PCP/NMDA models of the disorder. PCP was first developed in the late 1950s as a potential anesthetic agent, along with the closely related compound ketamine (CI-581) (Chen and Weston 1960; Domino et al. 1965). In preclinical testing, these compounds were found to produce a unique behavioral state in which animals were awake but seemingly "dissociated" from the environment. At higher doses, symptoms such as catatonia were observed in primates that

were highly reminiscent of schizophrenia symptoms (Chen and Weston 1960; Domino and Luby 1981; Javitt and Zukin 1991).

In initial human testing, PCP and ketamine induced an abnormal mental state associated with psychosis. To investigators at the time, this state closely resembled the mental state associated with schizophrenia leading to a series of controlled investigations to examine the similarity and differences between PCP-induced psychosis and schizophrenia, using low, subanesthetic doses of PCP (review in Domino and Luby 1981). These effects were subsequently investigated further using challenge studies with subanesthetic doses of ketamine, in a range of models considered relevant to schizophrenia.

For example, during ketamine administration healthy volunteers show schizophrenia-like deficits in initiation (learning) but not retention of long-term memory similar to those observed in schizophrenia (Hartvig et al. 1995; Krystal et al. 2005; Miyamoto 2006; Morgan et al. 2003; Newcomer et al. 1999; Parwani et al. 2005; Radant et al. 1998; Rowland et al. 2005). Similarly, ketamine induces schizophrenia-like deficits in executive functioning (Krystal et al. 1994, 1998, 1999, 2000), attention/vigilance (Krystal et al. 2005; Malhotra et al. 1996; Oranje et al. 2000; Passie et al. 2005), verbal fluency (Adler et al. 1998; Krystal et al. 1994; Radant et al. 1998), and visual and verbal working memory (Adler et al. 1998; Ahn et al. 2003; Anand et al. 2000; Hetem et al. 2000; Honey et al. 2003; Krystal et al. 1998, 1999, 2005; Malhotra et al. 1996; Morgan et al. 2003; Newcomer et al. 1999). Moreover, in monkeys treated with ketamine (Stoet and Snyder 2006), characteristic schizophrenia-like deficits are reproduced in a task-switching paradigm (Kieffaber et al. 2006; Wylie et al. 2010).

Ketamine infusion also reproduces both the severity and type of thought disorder seen in schizophrenia with both, for example, being associated with high levels of poverty of speech, circumstantiality and loss of goal, and relatively low levels of distractive or stilted speech or paraphasias (Adler et al. 1999). As opposed to ketamine, amphetamine does not induce neurocognitive deficits of schizophrenia during acute challenge (Krystal et al. 2005).

*Sensory dysfunction*. Cognitive dysfunction in schizophrenia has, over recent years, shown to extend to sensory-level dysfunction as well. In the auditory system, patients with schizophrenia show deficits in generation of mismatch negativity (MMN), an event-related potential that reflects dysfunction at the level of primary auditory cortex (Javitt et al. 1995; Shelley et al. 1991; Umbricht and Krljes 2005). Similar deficits are observed following intracortical administration of NMDA receptor antagonists in monkeys (Javitt et al. 1996; Javitt 2000), in rodents models (Ehrlichman et al. 2008; Tikhonravov et al. 2008), and during systemic ketamine administration in normal volunteers (Gunduz-Bruce et al. 2012; Heekeren et al. 2008; Kreitschmann-Andermahr et al. 2001; Schmidt et al. 2011; Umbricht et al. 2000) and rodents. Similarly, ketamine induces impairments in proprioception and weight discrimination (Morgenstern et al. 1962; Oye et al. 1992; Rosenbaum et al. 1959) similar to those observed in schizophrenia (Javitt et al. 1999b; Ritzler 1977).

In the visual system, patients show a characteristic pattern of neurophysiological impairment characterized by decreased gain of visual responses within the

magnocellular visual system (Butler et al. 2005). A similar pattern of result is seen following microinfusion of an NMDA receptor antagonist into cat lateral geniculate nucleus (Fox et al. 1990; Kwon et al. 1991). Similarly, patients show deficits in motion detection that reflect impaired motion processing within the magnocellular visual system (Chen et al. 1999; Kim et al. 2005). NMDA receptors play a critical role in the neurophysiological processes underlying motion detection at the neuronal level (Heggelund and Hartveit 1990; Rivadulla et al. 2001) Ketamine challenge studies also show disrupted visual activation during facial gender (Abel et al. 2003b) and emotion recognition tasks (Abel et al. 2003a), suggesting contributions of low level visual deficits to higher cognitive function.

NMDA receptor antagonists reliably induce deficits in sensory gating measures, such as prepulse inhibition (PPI) that closely model the deficits seen in schizophrenia in both rodent (de Bruin et al. 1999; Geyer et al. 2001) and primate (Linn et al. 2003) models. In contrast, ketamine appears to have little effect on either PPI or P50 gating in normal human volunteers (Abel et al. 2003a). The basis for the dissociation between animal and human studies is unknown. However, these findings suggest that gating deficits in schizophrenia may reflect primarily non-glutamatergic pathology.

Although de novo auditory hallucinations are not seen acutely in normal individuals during ketamine intoxication, exacerbation of symptoms is seen in schizophrenia patients during ketamine challenge studies and symptoms observed during the challenge study resemble the patients' acute presenting symptoms (Lahti et al. 2001; Malhotra et al. 1997). In primates, apparent hallucinatory behavior (i.e., threatening nonexistent objects) is not observed during acute PCP treatment, but does emerge during chronic administration (Linn et al. 1999). In a study that applied both amphetamine and ketamine challenge, additive effects were seen only in the case of hallucinations, suggesting that the circuitry underlying hallucinations may have unique sensitivity to both glutamatergic and dopaminergic dysfunction (Krystal et al. 2005).

## *1.3 Glycine Site Agonists in Treatment of Schizophrenia*

Given the ability of NMDA receptor antagonists to induce schizophrenia-like symptoms and cognitive deficits by blocking NMDA receptors, one of the most straightforward predictions of the NMDA theory of schizophrenia is that agents that stimulate NMDA receptor function should be therapeutically beneficial. Furthermore, the glycine/D-serine modulatory site of the NMDA receptor represents an attractive site for intervention since (as opposed to the glutamate site) it is tonically occupied under physiological conditions, and so can be modified using tonic modulation approaches.

Conceptually, for many patients, GlyT1 inhibition will increase glycine/D-serine site occupancy to supranormal levels in order to compensate for overall deficits in NMDA receptor function. However, for some subjects levels of glycine and

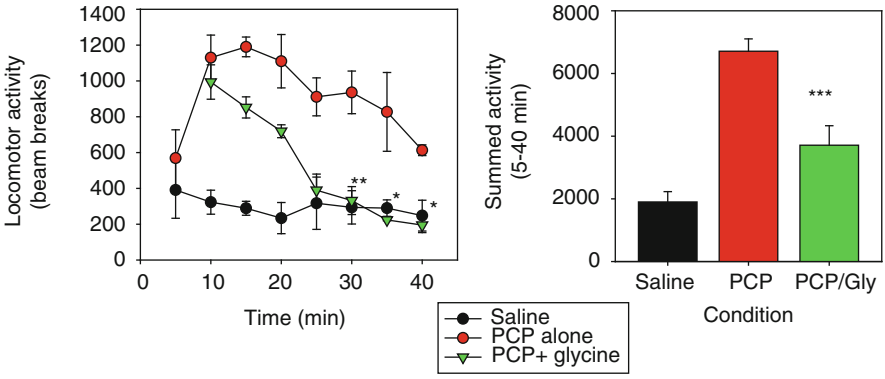



**Fig. 2** Earliest findings showing effects of glycine on phencyclidine (PCP)-induced hyperactivity in rodents. *$p < 0.05$; **$p < 0.01$; ***$p < 0.001$ [from (Toth and Lajtha 1986)]

D-serine have been shown to be reduced in both plasma and CSF (Bendikov et al. 2007; Hashimoto et al. 2003; Neeman et al. 2005; Sumiyoshi et al. 2004), and reduced plasma levels in schizophrenia correlate with severity of negative symptoms (Neeman et al. 2005; Sumiyoshi et al. 2004). Reduced activity of serine racemase (Bendikov et al. 2007), the key synthetic enzyme for D-serine, and increased activity of D-amino acid oxidase (Madeira et al. 2008), the key degratory enzyme, have also been reported. Genetic studies have shown polymorphisms of both serine racemase (Labrie et al. 2009b; Morita et al. 2007) and D-amino acid oxidase/G72 (Corvin et al. 2007; Goldberg et al. 2006; Li and He 2007; Shinkai et al. 2007), suggesting a genetic contribution to disturbances in glycine and/or D-serine synthesis. For subjects with endogenous disturbances in glycine/D-serine metabolism, interventions aimed at increasing brain glycine/D-serine levels may therefore be seen as reversing endogenous dysfunction.

*Preclinical studies*. The first experimental use of glycine in preclinical models of schizophrenia was performed even before the role of NMDA receptors in mediating effects of PCP and glycine were first demonstrated. In the early-mid 1980s Toth and Lajtha (1981) demonstrated first that large doses of nonessential amino acids do cross the blood–brain barrier when given at large doses, and second that, of a series of amino acids, only glycine reversed behavioral effects of PCP (Toth and Lajtha 1986) (Fig. 2). Similar preclinical effects to those observed with glycine were also observed with D-serine (Contreras 1990).

Subsequently, effects of glycine and D-serine have been confirmed in multiple additional preclinical models relevant to schizophrenia including amphetamine-induced dopamine release (Javitt et al. 2004), latent inhibition (Lipina et al. 2005), and object recognition (Karasawa et al. 2008). These compounds also reverse other cognitive deficits induced by PCP (Hashimoto et al. 2008), reverse effects of perinatal PCP treatment on spatial working memory (Andersen and Pouzet 2004), and enhance social behaviors (Shimazaki et al. 2010). In preclinical models,

relatively high doses of D-serine are required (>600 mg/kg), suggesting the presence of active degratory and sequestration systems that limit D-serine effects.

*Clinical studies with glycine*. As with preclinical studies, the first clinical study performed with glycine (Waziri 1988)—an open-label study of 25 individuals—was performed before the role of glycine in NMDA receptors was known. Nevertheless, both early experiments provided retrospective support for NMDA receptor-based treatment and prompted subsequent controlled investigation.

The first randomized, double-blind clinical study to show unequivocal significant results was published in 1994 (Javitt et al. 1994b) and showed significant, 17 % reduction in negative symptoms in response to 30 g/day glycine. Subsequent trials of higher dose, 60 g/day glycine also demonstrated significant improvements. In some studies, the degree of negative symptom improvement has correlated significantly with baseline glycine levels, suggesting that patients with lowest pretreatment levels respond best to NMDA receptor agonist treatment (Heresco-Levy et al. 1999).

With glycine, the critical plasma level for therapeutic response was in the range of 600–1,000 μM versus a basal level of approximately 200 μM. Similar levels were also observed in rodent studies, validating the preclinical assay systems (Javitt et al. 2004). To date, only a single multicenter study with glycine has been conducted (Buchanan et al. 2007b). In that study, no significant beneficial effects were found. However, the study was limited by failure to achieve target levels, as well as high placebo response levels. Nevertheless, the large doses of glycine required for clinical treatment make it impractical for widespread therapeutic use, necessitating alternative approaches.

*D-serine*. Based on positive clinical results with glycine, a series of studies were initiated with the alternative glycine-site agonist, D-serine. The initial clinical trial involved 29 subjects treated for 6 weeks with either D-serine (30 mg/kg/day) or placebo (Tsai et al. 1998). A highly significant ($p = 0.0004$ vs. placebo), mean 20.6 % reduction in negative symptoms was observed among D-serine patients. Significant improvement was noted in neuropsychological function as well, as reflected in WCST categories completed, and CGI.

These results were subsequently replicated in a double-blind, placebo-controlled crossover study (Heresco-Levy et al. 2005) in which D-serine or placebo was added to atypical antipsychotics (risperidone or olanzapine). Highly significant, large effect size (1.3 sd units) improvements were observed in SANS total score and in the negative factor score of the PANSS. Highly significant effects were observed for the PANSS cognitive and depression factors, and total BPRS score as well.

Similar results were also obtained in a study using D-alanine, a lower affinity agonist at the glycine site, at a dose of 0.1 mg/kg (Lane et al. 2005). In contrast to its effects in chronic schizophrenia, D-serine was found to be relatively ineffective in augmentation of effects of risperidone in acute schizophrenia (Lane et al. 2005). Most recently, a multicenter D-serine trial conducted in Israel showed significant reduction in symptoms at 4 weeks, but not subsequently, although results were limited by the high rate of placebo response (Weiser et al. in press).

At present, ideal doses of D-serine for clinical use are unknown and doses are limited by peripheral side effects (nephrotoxicity) rather than efficacy. A preliminary report from an open-label dose escalation PK/PD study found significantly greater improvement in cognition with higher D-serine doses (60–120 mg/kg) than with 30 mg/kg. At high doses, large (>1.0 sd) pre versus post treatment improvements were observed in MATRICS cognition measures along with significant pre–post improvement in PANSS ratings (Kantrowitz et al. 2008), suggesting the need for further, double-blind study of higher D-serine doses.

## *1.4 Glycine Transport Inhibitors: The Concept*

Given the positive clinical experience with glycine/D-serine on the one hand, but the high doses needed to increase brain glycine levels on the other, second-generation approaches to modulate brain glycine levels are clearly required. One of the most advanced approaches, at present, is targeting the brain mechanisms that normally regulate brain glycine levels. Extracellular glycine levels in brain are in the low micromolar range, whereas the affinity of glycine for the NMDA receptor-associated glycine modulatory site is approximately 100 nM. This finding initially led to the concern that glycine levels in brain would be saturated under physiological conditions (Wood 1995). This apparent contradiction was resolved by the observation that NMDA receptors can be "protected" from extracellular levels of glycine by GlyT1 transporters that may be locally co-expressed (Supplisson and Bergman 1997).

GlyT1 transporters are linked to transport of $2Na^+$ ions, and so may maintain gradients of 10,000:1 (Fig. 3a). Given tissue glycine levels in the low mM range, GlyT1 transporters can maintain local concentrations in the synapse of approximately 100 nM, which is close to the EC50 for the glycine site. Glycine affinity may also vary by receptor composition, with NR2A containing receptors, in general, showing lower affinity than NR2B- or D-containing receptors. Thus, modulating glycine levels may disproportionately affect recruitment of NR2A-containing receptors versus those containing other sites (Fig. 3b). In addition, extrasynaptic NMDA receptors are likely saturated by high extracellular glycine levels, and thus are unlikely to be affected by GlyT1 inhibitors.

As opposed to NMDA receptor-associated glycine receptors, inhibitory strychnine-sensitive glycine receptors have much lower affinity for glycine, so even following GlyT1 transporter inhibition these receptors do not become saturated. Furthermore, they appear to be "protected" by both GlyT2 and GlyT1 transporters, which rapidly reabsorb presynaptically released glycine at inhibitory synapses. GlyT2 transporters are linked to $3Na^+$ ions, rather than 2, and thus can maintain much higher glycine gradients.

In brain, GlyT1 transporters are highly co-localized with NMDA receptors and may be co-precipitated with them, suggesting that they may play a physiological role in NMDA receptor function (Zafra and Gimenez 2008). Compounds that inhibit glycine transport would therefore be expected to augment brain glycine

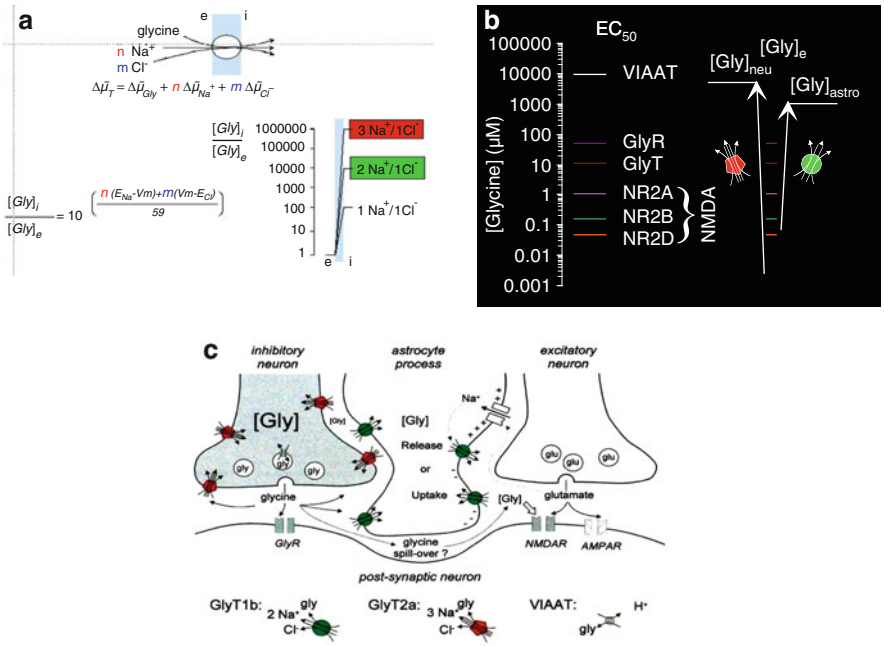



**Fig. 3** Schematic illustration of glycine transporter function. (**a**) Glycine type I transporters are coupled to exchange of $2Na^+$ ions, allowing them to maintain an approximately 10,000:1 gradient between intracellular and extracellular space. In contrast, glycine type II transporters, which are linked to $3Na^+$ ions maintain approximately 1,000,000:1 gradients. (**b**) Based on this gradient, the external levels of glycine that can be maintained in the synaptic cleft by GlyT1 transporters on astrocytes is between 0.1 and 1 μM, which is below the level for saturation of NR2B- and NR2A-subunit-containing NMDA receptors. GlyT2 transporters in neurons play a critical role in reabsorbing glycine at synapses containing inhibitory, strychnine-sensitive (GlyR) glycine receptors, and in uptake of glycine into synaptic vesicles in presynaptic terminals in concert with vesicular inhibitory amino acid transporter (VIAAT). (**c**) In the synapse, GlyT1 transporters are co-localized with NMDA receptors, and so maintain subsaturating glycine levels in the synaptic cleft [from (Supplisson and Bergman 1997)]

levels, analogously to the use of selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) for augmentation of brain serotonin levels. Brain amino acid transporters, in general, are highly selective with well-defined substrate specificity and thus tend to be highly druggable. GlyT1 transporters are encoded by the SLCA9 gene located on chromosome 1p33. Several splice variants are described (Sur and Kinney 2007), but to date have not been shown to have relevance to drug discovery.

Because homozygous GlyT1$^{-/-}$ knockouts are neonatally lethal (Tsai et al. 2004), study of GlyT1 downregulation depends upon either heterozygotes or conditional knockouts. Selective forebrain neuron knockouts show reductions in frontal glycine transport and potentiation of hippocampal NMDA responses as well as pro-cognitive ability on several learning/memory paradigms (Yee et al. 2006). Heterozygous GlyT1$^{+/-}$ knockout mice also show a change in NMDA receptor

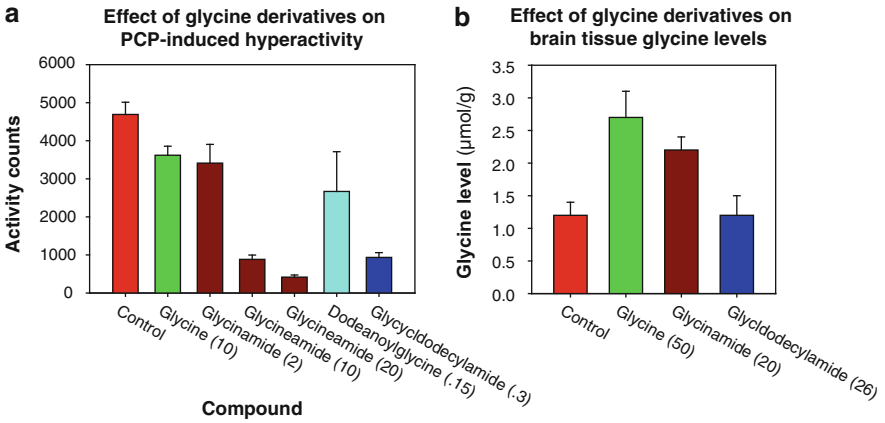



**Fig. 4** Initial studies showing effectiveness of glycycldodecylamide (GDA) in animal models of schizophrenia. (**a**) Among glycine derivatives, both glycineamide and GDA were active in reversing PCP-induced hyperactivity. (**b**) As opposed to both gycine and glycineamide, GDA did not increase tissue glycine levels in brain, suggesting that it did not serve as a glycine precursor, raising the possibility of an alternative mechanism of action [from (Toth et al. 1986)]

kinetics, potentially reflecting a net shift from NR2B to NR2A predominance within synaptic versus extrasynaptic NMDA receptors (Imamura et al. 2008).

To date, no evidence of association has been found between GlyT1 polymorphisms and schizophrenia (Deng et al. 2008). Furthermore, GlyT1 expression levels appear unaffected (Burnet et al. 2008), suggesting that GlyT1 inhibitors function by producing compensatory increases in glycine levels to compensate for deficits within other brain systems. Nevertheless, an association has been reported between GlyT1 polymorphisms and methamphetamine-abuse disorder (Morita et al. 2008), and between the gene encoding the GlyT2 transporter (SLCA5) and schizophrenia (Deng et al. 2008), suggesting that GlyT1 inhibitors may ultimately prove useful even in disorders other than schizophrenia.

### 1.4.1 Glycine Transport Inhibitors: The Early Years

As with glycine, the first studies showing effectiveness of glycine transport inhibitors were performed before their role in modulation of NMDA receptors was known. In the early 1980s, following their studies with glycine, Toth et al. investigated effects of a series of glycine derivatives, including glycineamide, dodecylglycine, and glycyldodecylamide (GDA). Like glycine, several of these derivatives showed significant potency in reversing PCP-induced hyperactivity (Fig. 4a). For most compounds, however, the increases were associated with increases in brain tissue glycine levels (Fig. 4b), suggesting that they served primarily as glycine precursors.

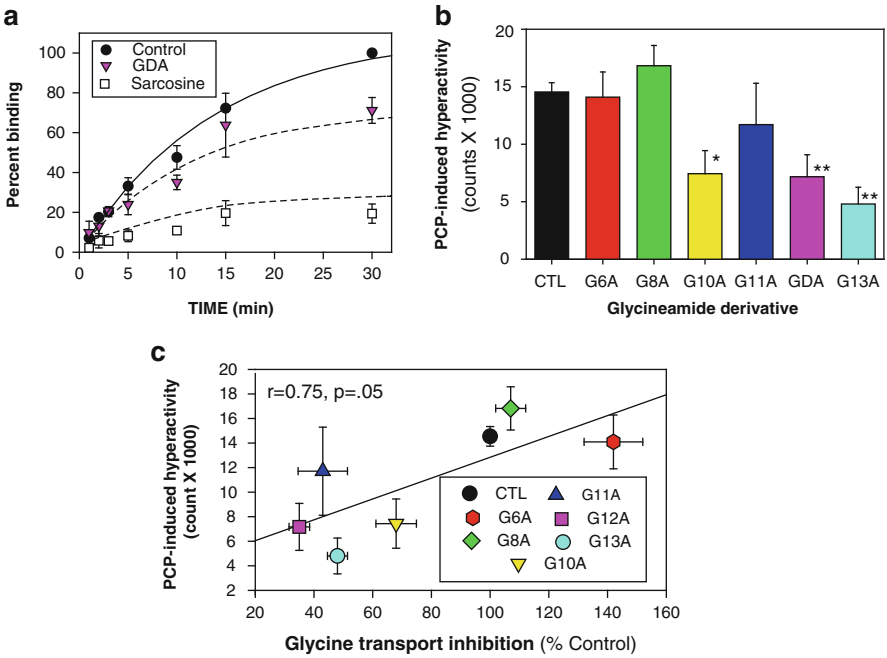



**Fig. 5** Initial studies showing effectiveness of GDA and other glycine derivatives in inhibition of glycine transport. (**a**) GDA effects on transport of [$^3$H]glycine in cortical synaptosomal preparation. From (Javitt and Frusciante 1997). (**b**) Relative potency of a range of glycylamide derivatives in reversing PCP-induced hyperactivity in rodents. (**c**) Correlation between efficacy in transport inhibition and efficacy in in vivo efficacy for illustrated glycine transport inhibitors [from (Javitt et al. 1999a)]

GDA, by contrast, had a distinctive effect in which it reversed PCP-induced hyperactivity without raising tissue glycine levels (Toth et al. 1986), raising the possibility that it may be acting by redistributing glycine within brain from the intracellular to the synaptic space, as would be expected from a glycine transport inhibitor. This theory was first tested in the mid-1990s, when it was demonstrated that GDA did, indeed, inhibit glycine transport in cortical synaptosomes (Fig. 5a) (Javitt et al. 1997). Although less potent than the "classic" glycine transport antagonist sarcosine, GDA was nevertheless significantly more potent than other glycine derivatives, suggesting a unique mechanism of action (Fig. 5b). Furthermore, across a range of glycine derivatives, the degree of behavioral inhibition of PCP-induced hyperactivity correlated closely with their potency in inhibiting synaptosomal glycine uptake (Fig. 5c), effects of GDA on synaptosomal glycine uptake, and PCP-induced hyperactivity were subsequently confirmed (Harsing et al. 2001) providing preclinical proof-of-concept for the glycine transport inhibitor approach.

The first high affinity transport inhibitor, N[3-(4′-fluorophenyl)-3-(4′-phenylphenoxy)propyl]sarcosine (NFPS, ALX-5407) (Fig. 6b) was synthesized

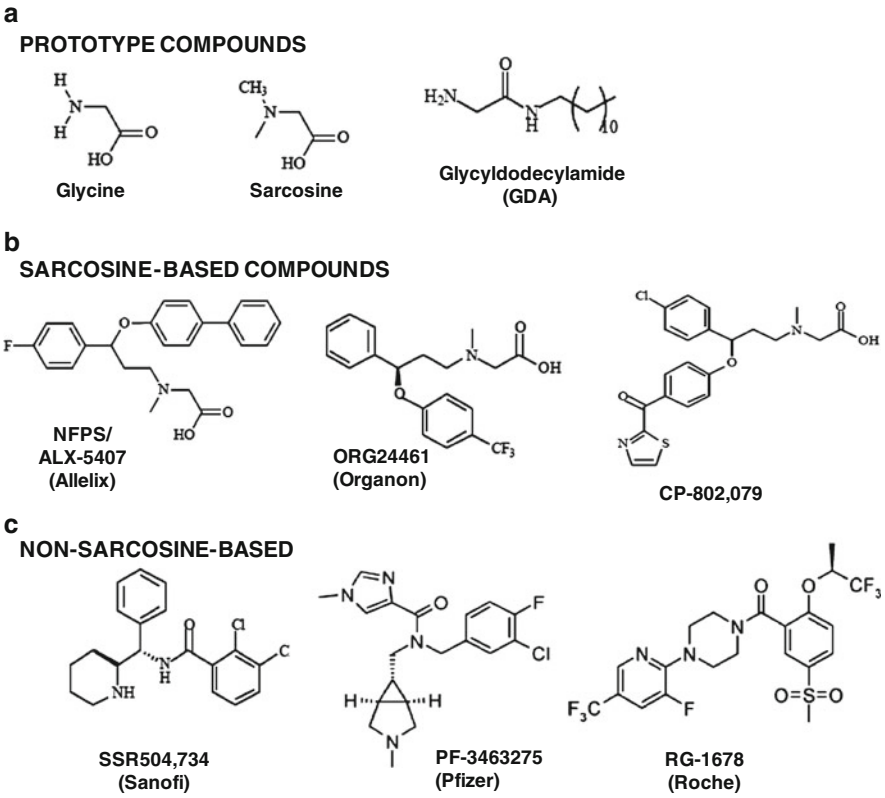



**Fig. 6** Structures for prototype compounds (**a**) and representative sarcosine (**b**)- and non-sarcosine (**c**)-based prototype glycine transport inhibitors. For final two compounds, structures have been disclosed but no functional data are available

shortly after completion of the studies with GDA. This compound was derived from the sarcosine backbone with added lipophilic side chains, allowing it to bind but preventing its transport by the GlyT1 transporter (Atkinson et al. 2000, 2001). NFPS, unfortunately, was poorly tolerated in vivo, in part because it produced irreversible GlyT1 inhibition following administration (Aubrey and Vandenberg 2001). Some aspects of toxicity appeared to result from overstimulation of inhibitory glycine receptors in brainstem and cerebellum (Perry et al. 2008b). Nevertheless, NFPS was active and became an early tool compound with studies for investigating consequences of GlyT1 blockade.

Overall, NFPS produced the anticipated effects across a variety of in vitro and in vivo assay systems. Thus, NFPS potentiated NMDA receptor-mediated responses and LTP both in vitro (Bergeron et al. 1998; Chen et al. 2003) and in vivo (Chen et al. 2003; Manahan-Vaughan et al. 2008). In addition, in several assay systems including latent inhibition (Lipina et al. 2005), novel object recognition (Karasawa et al. 2008), social memory (Shimazaki et al. 2010), and other

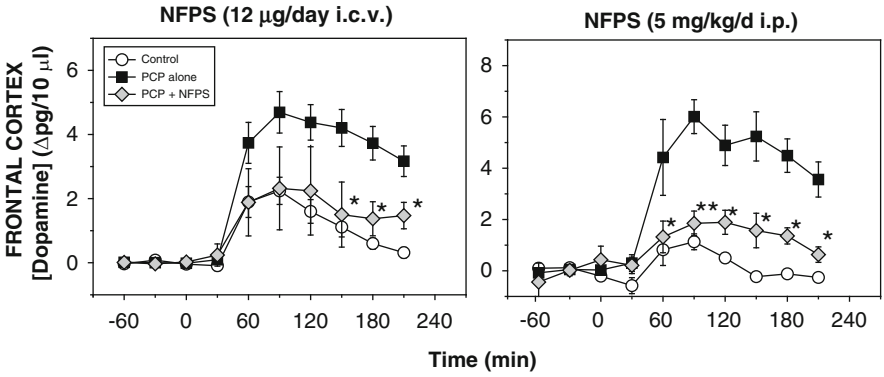



**Fig. 7** Effect of a prototype glycine transport inhibitor, NFPS (ALX-5407), on amphetamine-induced dopamine release in frontal cortex, delivered either i.c.v for 14 days (*left*) or i.v. for 3 days (*right*). NFPS significantly inhibited amphetamine-induced dopamine release without altering basal dopamine levels, suggesting potential efficacy against positive, as well as negative, symptoms. $*p < 0.05$, $**p < 0.01$ versus PCP alone [from (Javitt et al. 2005b)]

cognitive models (Hashimoto et al. 2008), NFPS produced effects closely resembling those of D-serine but at substantially lower dose (0.3–1 mg/kg), suggesting that high affinity GlyT1 inhibitors may be clinically viable compounds.

Finally, these compounds significantly reversed PCP-induced alterations in striatal dopamine release both in vivo (Javitt et al. 2004) (Fig. 7) and in vitro (Bennett and Gronier 2005; Javitt et al. 2005b), suggesting that these compounds may be effective against persistent positive, as well as negative symptoms of schizophrenia. Moreover, GlyT1 inhibitors prevent the increase in striatal dopamine release seen following chronic $D_2$ blockade, suggesting that co-administration of an antipsychotic with a GlyT1 inhibitor may normalize hypofunctional NMDA receptor-mediated glutamatergic neurotransmission with reduced dopaminergic side effects characteristic for antipsychotic medication (Nagy et al. 2010).

In addition to dopamine, GlyT1 inhibitors reverse the inhibitory effect of NMDA/glycine site inhibitors on firing of neurons in dorsal raphe nucleus, suggesting an additional role of NMDA receptors in serotonergic modulation (Papp et al. 2008). As opposed to $D_2$ blockers, GlyT1 inhibitors do not produce catalepsy in animal models (Harsing et al. 2003), and thus are expected to be free of the type of motor side effects seen with current antipsychotic agents.

## *1.5 High Affinity GlyT1 Antagonists*

Following the success of NFPS in animal models, several, if not most, major pharmaceutical companies initiated screening programs for compounds that would show high affinity and selectivity for the GlyT1 transporter but yet be free of the in vivo toxicity of NFPS. Although some, like NFPS, were derived from a sarcosine background, such as Org 24461 (Brown et al. 2001), CP-802,079

(Martina 2004), Org 24598 (Le Pen 2003), SSR103,800 (Boulay et al. 2008), others were derived from alternative backgrounds derived from high throughput screening (Fig. 6b).

Extensive structure–activity relationships have been published to date by most major pharmaceutical companies including Sanofi (SSR504,734) (Depoortere et al. 2005), Merck (Wolkenberg and Sur 2010), Pfizer (Lowe et al. 2010), Astra-Zeneca (Varnes et al. 2010),Taisho (Terui et al. 2008), and Roche (Pinard et al. 2010b). Structures of these compounds have been extensively reviewed in recent literature (Hashimoto 2011; Wolkenberg et al. 2009; Wolkenberg and Sur 2010). Whether or not GlyT1 inhibitors prove effective in treatment of schizophrenia (or other disorders), the site appears to be highly druggable and argues for the utility of amino acid transporters, in general, as effective targets for drug development.

As opposed to NFPS, most, if not all, of the newer compounds are competitive GlyT1 antagonists with reversible binding kinetics, and thus are better tolerated than earlier noncompetitive agents (Mezler et al. 2008). Structure optimization remains ongoing (Bridges et al. 2008), with focus on improved bioavailability and pharmacokinetics (Wolkenberg et al. 2009). High affinity GlyT1 inhibitors reliably produce increases in CSF and brain dialysate glycine levels (Boulay et al. 2008; Perry et al. 2008a; Yang and Svensson 2008), providing continuing proof-of-mechanism for the GlyT1 approach.

As with glycine and GDA, high affinity GlyT1 inhibitors significantly potentiate hippocampal LTP in vitro (Martina et al. 2004) and inhibit rodent hyperactivity induced by NMDA receptor antagonists such as PCP or MK-801 (Boulay et al. 2008; Singer et al. 2009b; Sur and Kinney 2007; Yang and Svensson 2008), making these among the most reliable high-throughput behavioral screening assays for GlyT1 inhibitor effects. Similarly, newer glycine transport inhibitors, as with GDA and NFPS, also reverse NMDA receptor antagonist induced abnormalities in persistence of latent inhibition (Black et al. 2009), reverse PPI deficits in DBA mice (Boulay et al. 2008; Sur and Kinney 2007), and attenuate acquisition and retention of contextual fear conditioning (Nishikawa et al. 2010). In monkeys, the novel GlyT1 inhibitor PF-3463275 (Fig. 6c) reversed ketamine-induced spatial memory deficits, providing further proof-of concept across species (Roberts et al. 2010).

Although the majority of preclinical studies have investigated reversal of cognition-disrupting effects of noncompetitive NMDA receptor antagonists, it has recently been suggested that glycine site antagonists such as L-687,414 may induce rodent hyperactivity that is highly sensitive to effects of GlyT1 inhibitors (Alberati et al. 2010). This model therefore may be more particularly sensitive as a screening tool for agents acting at the glycine-binding site of the NMDA receptor.

*Extracellular glycine*. Extracellular glycine levels observed following GlyT1 inhibitor treatment are dramatically lower than those observed during treatment with behaviorally effective doses of glycine. These findings are consistent with a model in which GlyT1 inhibitors primarily affect glycine concentrations within

the synaptic cleft, which represents a separate brain compartment from the overall extracellular space. Whereas CNS levels in glycine-treated animals reflect those necessary to insure glycine diffusion into the synaptic space from the extracellular space, extracellular levels in GlyT1 inhibitor-treated animals most likely reflect back-diffusion from the synaptic to the extracellular compartment. Thus, effective stimulation of synaptic NMDA receptors occurs at doses that do not necessarily increase overall extracellular glycine levels and relatively modest increases in extracellular glycine may reflect substantial increases in the much-smaller synaptic space.

In order to support clinical development programs, most companies, at present, require PET ligands or other proof-of-mechanism biomarkers. Several compounds have been identified to date that may serve as clinically effective PET ligands to guide future drug development (Hamill et al. 2011; Herdon et al. 2010; Zeng et al. 2008). At high doses, stimulatory effects of glycine and GlyT1 inhibitors (sarcosine, CP-802,079) may be lost due to presumed NMDA receptor internalization (Martina 2004), raising concern about potential inverted U-shaped dose response curves in clinical studies. Thus, optimal doses of GlyT1 inhibitors may be below those necessary to significantly elevate CSF or microdialysate glycine levels, or to fully occupy the GlyT1 transporter site. Potential for internalization also argues for consideration of intermittent, rather than persistent, dosing strategies. Even at high doses, GlyT1 inhibitors seem to have limited toxicity. Thus, it is possible that negative clinical data will be obtained based upon clinical doses that are too high, as well as too low, in total occupancy of the GlyT1 site.

### 1.5.1 Clinical Studies with Glycine Transport Inhibitors

Clinical support for the GlyT1 approach comes both from studies of sarcosine (*N*-methylglycine) conducted in Taiwan, and from initial results of a phase II study conducted using the high affinity GlyT1 inhibitor [4-(3-fluoro-5-trifluoromethylpyridin-2-yl)piperazin-1-yl][5-methanesulfonyl-2-((*S*)-2,2,2-trifluoro-1-methylethoxy)phenyl]methanone (RG1678, Roche) (Pinard et al. 2010a).

*Sarcosine*. Sarcosine is a naturally occurring metabolic intermediate of glycine metabolism that cross-reacts with GlyT1 transporters with low (~13 μM) affinity (Yang and Svensson 2008). Safety of sarcosine treatment is supported by clinical experience with sarcosinemia, an inborn error of metabolism in which extremely high peripheral sarcosine levels are observed without apparent toxic effect. Nevertheless, high sarcosine levels were linked to increased invasiveness of prostate cancer in one study (Sreekumar et al. 2009), although this finding has not been confirmed (Struys et al. 2010). In addition, sarcosine, at present, is not available in an FDA-approved formulation. Thus, clinical studies with sarcosine remain limited.

Initial studies with sarcosine showed efficacy similar to that of direct glycine-site agonists (i.e., glycine, D-serine, and D-alanine) when added on to either typical or non-clozapine atypicals in chronic stabilized inpatients (Lane et al. 2005). Sarcosine was also found to be relatively ineffective in combination with clozapine, consistent with prior studies that used direct glycine-site agonists (Lane et al. 2006).

In all these studies, medications were used at single, non-optimized doses, raising the possibility that greater efficacy and different comparative effects might be observed at higher doses.

Most recently, sarcosine was also associated with significant reduction in symptoms in a small monotherapy trial in acutely decompensated subjects, although the absence of a placebo arm complicates interpretation of the study (Lane et al. 2008). Despite the small sample size and limited design, the monotherapy study represents a critical evolution of the NMDA receptor-based therapeutic approach, and argues for monotherapy, as well as adjunctive treatment, trials for high affinity GlyT1 inhibitors.

*RG1678.* To date, several high-affinity GyT1 inhibitors have been entered into clinical studies, suggesting successful preclinical development and relatively absence of toxicity in phase I clinical trials. In addition, several small scale studies with high affinity GlyT1 antagonists are listed as ongoing or complete (http://www.clinicaltrials.gov), although results from most of these remain lacking. The only study to have reported out findings to date was a phase II study with the novel compound RG1678. Thus far, results have been made available only in abstract form based upon meeting presentation (Umbricht et al. 2010), and thus are not yet peer reviewed. Nevertheless, reported clinical results are encouraging and have led to initiation of a phase III clinical development program for this compound.

## 2 Unresolved Issues in NMDA Receptor-Based Treatment Development

The recent reported positive phase II results with RG1678, coupled with earlier reports of successful clinical trials with sarcosine, suggest that the GlyT1 approach may lead to significant modulation of NMDA receptor-mediated neurotransmission in vivo. As with all novel classes of compound, however, ideal uses of these compounds will require clinical experimentation and clinical effectiveness may not be predictable based upon preclinical models. In schizophrenia, critical issues such as optimal patient populations and ideal biomarkers for evaluation of treatment response still need to be determined, as well as potential side effects that might be observed during chronic treatment. Potential synergistic effects among different mechanisms should also be considered. Given the general involvement of NMDA receptors in learning, memory, and cortical plasticity, the possibility that NMDA receptor manipulation might be effective in other conditions should also be evaluated.

*Optimal patient population.* At present, ideal patient populations and target symptoms for NMDA receptor-based treatment remain unknown. Although NMDA theories are most associated with negative and cognitive symptoms, in fact, increases in positive symptoms are observed as well following PCP/ketamine challenge, and improvement in total symptoms are typically as large or larger than improvements in negative symptoms in most NMDA receptor-based treatment

studies (Javitt 2006). Evidence for effects of NMDA receptor-based treatments on cognition have been limited thus far, but this may be a function of the limited range of dosing that is possible with available agents.

Based upon NMDA theories, GlyT1 inhibitors would be expected to be most effective in individuals showing symptoms corresponding most closely to the expected NMDA phenotype. In general, such individuals might best be characterized by the following features: poor premorbid function, slow and incomplete response to antipsychotic agents, and relatively generalized nature of neurocognitive dysfunction. In such individuals, total symptoms would probably improve most in response to NMDA receptor-based treatments. Although NMDA receptor-based treatments should also produce beneficial effects on cognition, treatments may need to be paired with ongoing neurocognitive remediation in order to produce robust behavioral improvement.

In studies performed to date, the best response to NMDA receptor modulators has been observed in individuals receiving lowest doses of antipsychotic medication (Javitt 2006). Because clozapine at high dose may interfere with amino acid transport via the System A transport system (Javitt et al. 2005a), inclusion of clozapine-treated individuals should probably be avoided.

Encouraging preliminary results have been obtained over recent years in the treatment of individuals showing prodromal symptoms of schizophrenia (Woods et al. 2004). To the extent that NMDA receptor-based treatments can restore normal brain plasticity, ideal use of these compounds may be in prodromal stages of the disorder with the goal of preventing progression to psychosis and thus modifying the course of the illness rather than simply controlling ongoing symptoms.

*Peripheral toxicity*. In brain, GlyT1 transporters appear linked primarily to NMDA receptors, so limited off-site toxicity is observed. However, GlyT1 transporters are also present in immature erythrocytes (Weigensberg and Blostein 1985) and in retina, producing potential for side effect. The role played by GlyT1 in erythrocyte maturation and heme synthesis is not well established, but could potentially lead to hematological side-effects such as anemia during clinical treatment. Conversely, GlyT1 mediated transport functions appear to be lost during erythrocyte maturation so hematological effects may be limited (Felipe et al. 1990).

In retina GlyT1-mediated transport appears to be the primary source of glycine rather than de novo synthesis. For example, treatment with sarcosine was found in one study to deplete glycine levels (Pow 1998). Furthermore, exposure to serine did not rescue cells from consequences of glycine transport inhibition, suggesting relatively limited de novo synthesis (Pow 1998). In addition, GlyT1 may play a key role in regulation of NMDA in retina (Marc 1999), as in brain, but may be more susceptible to blockade because of retina's location outside of the blood–brain barrier. NMDA receptors in retina are reported to participate to a greater degree in ON- versus OFF-pathway responses (Kalbaugh et al. 2009). In contrast, visual deficits in schizophrenia are observed in OFF- as well as ON-pathways, suggesting that these are more likely to result from NMDA receptor dysfunction at post-retinal stages of visual processing (Butler et al. 2008).

*Combination with glycine*. The large majority of preclinical studies with prototype compounds have been conducted using monotherapy. However, the combination of glycine and GlyT1 inhibitors has been observed to produce multiplicative effects on extracellular brain glycine levels (Yang and Svensson 2008). Whether this interaction will enhance behavioral activity of GlyT1 inhibitors or will simply increase side effects and/or prompt internalization of NMDA receptors remains unknown, but should be explored at least in preclinical models.

An additional potential use of combined glycine and GlyT1 inhibitor treatment is the management of peripheral side-effects. Glycine treatment in schizophrenia is limited by poor CNS penetration. Nevertheless, high peripheral glycine concentrations can easily be achieved through dietary supplementation. Peripheral side effects with GlyT1 inhibitors will be most severe with compounds that have poor CNS penetrance. However, for competitive compounds, peripheral side effects can easily be overcome by glycine supplementation.

Finally, a concern with use of GlyT1 inhibitors is that, over time, they may lead to depletion in whole brain glycine concentration, due to outward diffusion of glycine from the extracellular compartment. Since brain glycine is synthesized de novo from serine rather than being derived from the periphery, glycine metabolism would have to increase to compensate for the increased efflux. Whether or not this occurs has not been determined. As with peripheral side effects, such depletion could likely be overcome even by modest supplementation with dietary glycine.

*Combination treatments*. Because both glycine and D-serine modulate NMDA receptors in parallel, little is known about what, if any, compensations may result from sustained GlyT1 inhibitor-induced elevations in synaptic glycine levels. Combined GlyT1 inhibitor and D-serine treatment is feasible but effects of combined treatment have not been evaluated even in animal models. Because the two sets of compounds converge on NMDA receptors but otherwise engage nonoverlapping metabolic pathways and outside targets (Fig. 8), combined treatment may provide greater efficacy and larger safety margins than treatment with either set of compounds alone.

Similarly, NMDA receptors are modulated by glutathione, as well as by glycine/D-serine. As with glycine and D-serine, reductions in glutathione levels have been reported in schizophrenia (Altschule et al. 1959; Do et al. 2000; Yao et al. 2006), related to underlying genetic disturbances (Gravina et al. 2011). Furthermore, treatment with *N*-acetylcysteine (NAC), a glutathione precursor, has been reported to reverse neurophysiological deficits in schizophrenia (Lavoie et al. 2008) and to ameliorate persistent negative symptoms (Berk et al. 2008; Dean et al. 2011).

At present, little is known about the degree to which parallel manipulation of the glycine/D-serine and glutathione sites of the NMDA receptor may lead to supra-additive effects, although older literature suggests potential synergies with decreased risk of desensitization (Benveniste and Mayer 1993; Javitt et al. 1994a). Other potential targets, including α7 nicotinic receptors and mGluR2-type glutamate receptors that regulate presynaptic glutamate release (Buchanan et al. 2007a; Mexal et al. 2005; Moghaddam and Javitt 2012; Toth et al. 1992) and mGluR5-type glutamate receptors that modulate postsynaptic NMDA receptor activation (Javitt et al. 2011; Lindsley et al. 2006) also show promising results in

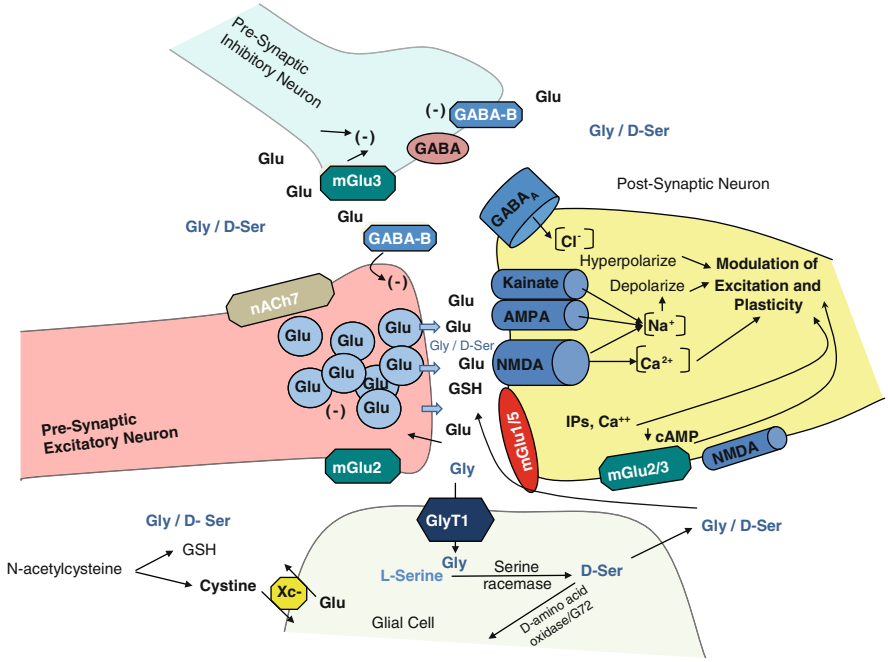



**Fig. 8** Schematic diagram showing potential interaction between GlyT1 and other relevant drug development targets including α7 nicotinic (nACh7), GABA-A and B receptors, metabotropic type 2 (mGluR2). 3 (mGluR3) and 5 (mGluR5) receptors, and cystine/glutamate antiporters (xC)

isolation, but may show synergistic effects when combined with a glycine site agonists. As combined treatment studies are difficult to perform in clinic, preclinical studies are needed to identify potentially synergistic pharmacological combinations.

## *2.1 Other Indications*

NMDA receptor-based treatments have been most extensively studies, to date, for management of schizophrenia. However, given the widespread role of NMDA receptors in brain functioning, use of these compounds in a range of other disorders may also be envisioned.

*Substance abuse*. In the clinical situation, comorbidity of schizophrenia and substance abuse disorders including alcohol abuse is high, suggesting the possibility of shared glutamatergic pathology (Coyle 2006). In rodents, the GlyT1 inhibitor Org 35935 has been found to decrease ethanol intake along with alcohol induced increases in striatal dopamine levels (Lido et al. 2009; Molander et al.

2007). Recently, alcohol-abusing subjects have been observed to have relative insensitivity to cognition-impairing effects of high dose D-cycloserine, and relative insensitivity to glycine/D-cycloserine pharmacodynamic interactions (Krystal et al. 2011). Overall, while supporting theories of glutamatergic disturbance in alcoholism, these findings leave unresolved the degree to which up- or downregulation of glutamatergic function is desired.

*Obsessive compulsive disorder*. Another potential target for glycine-based treatments is obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD). OCD may be conceptualized as a failure of "reversal learning" in which pathological associations cannot be unlearned and therefore dominate behavior. Thus, compounds that stimulate NMDA receptor function may assist in unlearning these pathologically learned associations.

An initial study with glycine showed significant benefit (Greenberg et al. 2009). More recently, similar effects have been observed with sarcosine (Wu et al. 2011). Although high affinity GlyT1 inhibitors have not yet been tested in OCD models, it has been demonstrated that deletion of GlyT1 transporters in forebrain significantly potentiates reversal learning (Singer et al. 2009a), suggesting a potential pro-therapeutic effect. Similar effects have been demonstrated following administration of D-serine (Duffy et al. 2008) or upregulation of cortical D-serine levels in cortex by deletion of its degratory enzyme (D-amino acid oxidase) in forebrain (Labrie et al. 2009a), supporting a role for NMDA enhancers in treatment of OCD as well as schizophrenia.

*Movement disorders*. NMDA receptors are highly expressed in basal ganglia as well as in cortex, and are known to play a prominent role in regulation of subcortical dopamine release (Javitt and Zukin 1991; Javitt et al. 2005b). The prevailing view in most movement disorders research is that excessive NMDA receptor activation may lead to excitotoxicity, and therefore that NMDA receptor antagonists should be therapeutically beneficial (Bagetta et al. 2010; Bonuccelli and Del Dotto 2006). However, clinical trials conducted with NMDA receptor antagonists in Parkinsons disease have not, to date, been successful.

An alternative viewpoint is provided by the observation that in several trials conducted in schizophrenia, significant improvement was observed in antipsychotic-induced Parkinsonian symptoms and tardive dyskinesia during treatment with either glycine (Heresco-Levy et al. 1999; Heresco-Levy and Javitt 2004) or D-serine (Heresco-Levy et al. 2005; Kantrowitz et al. 2010). This finding has subsequently been confirmed in a small-scale clinical study conducted in Parkinson's disease (Gelfin et al. 2012). To the extent that beneficial effects of D-serine can be confirmed in larger studies, future trials with high affinity GlyT1 inhibitors are warranted.

## 3 Concluding Remarks

The pace of new drug development in neuropsychiatric disorders such as schizophrenia is frustratingly slow. Most medications used presently differ little from those used half a century ago. The theoretical underpinnings for use of GlyT1 inhibitors date back to the original development of PCP models of schizophrenia in the 1960s, and linkage of these models to dysfunction of NMDA receptors in the 1990s. At present, GlyT1 inhibitors are just one of many approaches that are seeking to modulate glutamatergic neurotransmission in general and NMDA receptors in particular for treatment of schizophrenia. Thus far, both preclinical findings and early clinical results with the high affinity compound RG1678 have been encouraging, but failure rates of novel mechanisms, even in phase III clinical trials, remain high.

Over the last 20 years, there has been an explosion of information regarding mechanisms of glutamatergic transmission in brain, but this increased knowledge has not yet led to new approved treatments for neuropsychiatric illness. At present, many glutamatergic compounds are "in play," including mGluR2/3 and mGluR5 agonists for schizophrenia, mGluR5 antagonists for autism, glutamate/cystine antiporter antagonists for substance abuse, and NMDA receptor antagonists for depression (Javitt et al. 2011). Success of any of these mechanisms will help validate the glutamatergic system as an appropriate target for therapeutic intervention, not only for schizophrenia in specific, but also for neuropsychiatric disorders in general, and thus may pave the wave for a new "golden age" of psychopharmacology.

**Disclosures** Dr. Javitt holds intellectual property rights for use of NMDA receptor agonists, including glycine, D-serine, and glycine transport inhibitors in treatment of schizophrenia. Dr. Javitt is a major shareholder in Glytech, Inc. and Amino Acids Solutions, Inc. Within the past year, Dr. Javitt has served as a paid consultant to Sunovion, Lilly, BMS, and Takeda.

**Acknowledgments** Support: This work was supported in part by NIH grants R37 MH049334, P50 MH086385, R01 DA03383 and U01 MH074356.

## References

Abel KM, Allin MP, Hemsley DR, Geyer MA (2003a) Low dose ketamine increases prepulse inhibition in healthy men. Neuropharmacology 44:729–737

Abel KM, Allin MP, Kucharska-Pietura K, Andrew C, Williams S, David AS, Phillips ML (2003b) Ketamine and fMRI BOLD signal: distinguishing between effects mediated by change in blood flow versus change in cognitive state. Hum Brain Mapp 18:135–145

Adler CM, Goldberg TE, Malhotra AK, Pickar D, Breier A (1998) Effects of ketamine on thought disorder, working memory, and semantic memory in healthy volunteers. Biol Psychiatry 43:811–816

Adler CM, Malhotra AK, Elman I, Goldberg T, Egan M, Pickar D, Breier A (1999) Comparison of ketamine-induced thought disorder in healthy volunteers and thought disorder in schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 156:1646–1649

Ahn KH, Youn T, Cho SS, Ha TH, Ha KS, Kim MS, Kwon JS (2003) N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor in working memory impairments in schizophrenia: event-related potential study of late stage of working memory process. Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry 27:993–999

Akbarian S, Kim JJ, Potkin SG, Hetrick WP, Bunney W Jr, Jones EG (1996) Maldistribution of interstitial neurons in prefrontal white matter of the brains of schizophrenic patients. Arch Gen Psychiatry 53:425–436

Alberati D, Moreau JL, Mory R, Pinard E, Wettstein JG (2010) Pharmacological evaluation of a novel assay for detecting glycine transporter 1 inhibitors and their antipsychotic potential. Pharmacol Biochem Behav 97:185–191

Altschule MD, Eldred SH, Sherman LJ, Giancola JN (1959) Blood glutathione and eosinophil levels and hospital adjustment scale in chronic schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 1:358–365

Anand A, Charney DS, Oren DA, Berman RM, Hu XS, Cappiello A, Krystal JH (2000) Attenuation of the neuropsychiatric effects of ketamine with lamotrigine: support for hyperglutamatergic effects of N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor antagonists. Arch Gen Psychiatry 57:270–276

Andersen JD, Pouzet B (2004) Spatial memory deficits induced by perinatal treatment of rats with PCP and reversal effect of D-serine. Neuropsychopharmacology 29:1080–1090

Atkinson BN, DeVivo M, Lechner SM, Kowalski L, Zheng Y, Klitenick MA (2000) Characterization of ALX-5407, a GLYT1-selective reuptake inhibitor. Soc Neurosci Abs 26:1653

Atkinson BN, Bell SC, De Vivo M, Kowalski LR, Lechner SM, Ognyanov VI, Tham CS, Tsai C, Jia J, Ashton D, Klitenick MA (2001) ALX 5407: a potent, selective inhibitor of the hGlyT1 glycine transporter. Mol Pharmacol 60:1414–1420

Aubrey KR, Vandenberg RJ (2001) N[3-(4′-fluorophenyl)-3-(4′-phenylphenoxy)propyl]sarcosine (NFPS) is a selective persistent inhibitor of glycine transport. Br J Pharmacol 134:1429–1436

Bagetta V, Ghiglieri V, Sgobio C, Calabresi P, Picconi B (2010) Synaptic dysfunction in Parkinson's disease. Biochem Soc Trans 38:493–497

Bendikov I, Nadri C, Amar S, Panizzutti R, De Miranda J, Wolosker H, Agam G (2007) A CSF and postmortem brain study of D-serine metabolic parameters in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 90:41–51

Beneyto M, Meador-Woodruff JH (2008) Lamina-specific abnormalities of NMDA receptor-associated postsynaptic protein transcripts in the prefrontal cortex in schizophrenia and bipolar disorder. Neuropsychopharmacology 33:2175–2186

Bennett S, Gronier B (2005) Modulation of striatal dopamine release in vitro by agonists of the glycineB site of NMDA receptors; interaction with antipsychotics. Eur J Pharmacol 527:52–59

Benveniste M, Mayer ML (1993) Multiple effects of spermine on N-methyl-D-aspartic acid receptor responses of rat cultured hippocampal neurones. J Physiol 464:131–163

Bergeron R, Meyer TM, Coyle JT, Greene RW (1998) Modulation of N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor function by glycine transport. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 95:15730–15734

Berk M, Copolov D, Dean O, Lu K, Jeavons S, Schapkaitz I, Anderson-Hunt M, Judd F, Katz F, Katz P, Ording-Jespersen S, Little J, Conus P, Cuenod M, Do KQ, Bush AI (2008) N-acetyl cysteine as a glutathione precursor for schizophrenia–a double-blind, randomized, placebo-controlled trial. Biol Psychiatry 64:361–368

Black MD, Varty GB, Arad M, Barak S, De Levie A, Boulay D, Pichat P, Griebel G, Weiner I (2009) Procognitive and antipsychotic efficacy of glycine transport 1 inhibitors (GlyT1) in acute and neurodevelopmental models of schizophrenia: latent inhibition studies in the rat. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 202:385–396

Bonuccelli U, Del Dotto P (2006) New pharmacologic horizons in the treatment of Parkinson disease. Neurology 67:S30–S38

Boulay D, Pichat P, Dargazanli G, Estennebouhtou G, Terranova J, Rogacki N, Stemmelin J, Coste A, Lanneau C, Desvignes C (2008) Characterization of SSR103800, a selective inhibitor of the glycine transporter-1 in models predictive of therapeutic activity in schizophrenia. Pharmacol Biochem Behav 91:47–58

Bridges TM, Williams R, Lindsley CW (2008) Design of potent GlyT1 inhibitors: in vitro and in vivo profiles. Curr Opin Mol Ther 10:591–601

Brown A, Carlyle I, Clark J, Hamilton W, Gibson S, McGarry G, McEachen S, Rae D, Thorn S, Walker G (2001) Discovery and SAR of org 24598-a selective glycine uptake inhibitor. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 11:2007–2009

Buchanan RW, Freedman R, Javitt DC, Abi-Dargham A, Lieberman JA (2007a) Recent advances in the development of novel pharmacological agents for the treatment of cognitive impairments in schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 33:1120–1130

Buchanan RW, Javitt DC, Marder SR, Schooler NR, Gold JM, McMahon RP, Heresco-Levy U, Carpenter WT (2007b) The Cognitive and Negative Symptoms in Schizophrenia Trial (CONSIST): the efficacy of glutamatergic agents for negative symptoms and cognitive impairments. Am J Psychiatry 164:1593–1602

Burnet P, Hutchinson L, Vonhesling M, Gilbert E, Brandon N, Rutter A, Hutson P, Harrison P (2008) Expression of D-serine and glycine transporters in the prefrontal cortex and cerebellum in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 102:283–294

Butler PD, Zemon V, Schechter I, Saperstein AM, Hoptman MJ, Lim KO, Revheim N, Silipo G, Javitt DC (2005) Early-stage visual processing and cortical amplification deficits in schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 62:495–504

Butler PD, Silverstein SM, Dakin SC (2008) Visual perception and its impairment in schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 64:40–47

Chatterton JE, Awobuluyi M, Premkumar LS, Takahashi H, Talantova M, Shin Y, Cui J, Tu S, Sevarino KA, Nakanishi N, Tong G, Lipton SA, Zhang D (2002) Excitatory glycine receptors containing the NR3 family of NMDA receptor subunits. Nature 415:793–798

Chen GM, Weston JK (1960) The analgesic and anesthetic effects of 1-(1-phenylcyclohexyl)-piperidine HCl in the monkey. Anesth Analg 39:132–137

Chen L, Muhlhauser M, Yang CR (2003) Glycine tranporter-1 blockade potentiates NMDA-mediated responses in rat prefrontal cortical neurons in vitro and in vivo. J Neurophysiol 89:691–703

Chen Y, Palafox GP, Nakayama K, Levy DL, Matthysse S, Holzman PS (1999) Motion perception in schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 56:149–154

Contreras PC (1990) D-serine antagonized phencyclidine- and MK-801-induced stereotyped behavior and ataxia. Neuropharmacology 29:291–293

Corvin A, McGhee KA, Murphy K, Donohoe G, Nangle JM, Schwaiger S, Kenny N, Clarke S, Meagher D, Quinn J, Scully P, Baldwin P, Browne D, Walsh C, Waddington JL, Morris DW, Gill M (2007) Evidence for association and epistasis at the DAOA/G30 and D-amino acid oxidase loci in an Irish schizophrenia sample. Am J Med Genet B Neuropsychiatr Genet 144B:949–953

Coyle JT (2006) Substance use disorders and Schizophrenia: a question of shared glutamatergic mechanisms. Neurotox Res 10:221–233

de Bruin NM, Ellenbroek BA, Cools AR, Coenen AM, van Luijtelaar EL (1999) Differential effects of ketamine on gating of auditory evoked potentials and prepulse inhibition in rats. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 142:9–17

Dean O, Giorlando F, Berk M (2011) N-acetylcysteine in psychiatry: current therapeutic evidence and potential mechanisms of action. J Psychiatry Neurosci 36:78–86

Deng X, Sagata N, Takeuchi N, Tanaka M, Ninomiya H, Iwata N, Ozaki N, Shibata H, Fukumaki Y (2008) Association study of polymorphisms in the neutral amino acid transporter genes SLC1A4, SLC1A5 and the glycine transporter genes SLC6A5, SLC6A9 with schizophrenia. BMC Psychiatry 8:58

Depoortere R, Dargazanli G, Estenne-Bouhtou G, Coste A, Lanneau C, Desvignes C, Poncelet M, Heaulme M, Santucci V, Decobert M, Cudennec A, Voltz C, Boulay D, Terranova JP, Stemmelin J, Roger P, Marabout B, Sevrin M, Vige X, Biton B, Steinberg R, Francon D, Alonso R, Avenet P, Oury-Donat F, Perrault G, Griebel G, George P, Soubrie P, Scatton B (2005) Neurochemical, electrophysiological and pharmacological profiles of the selective inhibitor of the glycine transporter-1 SSR504734, a potential new type of antipsychotic. Neuropsychopharmacology 30:1963–1985

Do KQ, Trabesinger AH, Kirsten-Kruger M, Lauer CJ, Dydak U, Hell D, Holsboer F, Boesiger P, Cuenod M (2000) Schizophrenia: glutathione deficit in cerebrospinal fluid and prefrontal cortex in vivo. Eur J Neurosci 12:3721–3728

Domino EF, Chodoff P, Corssen G (1965) Pharmacological effects of CI-581, a new dissociative anesthetic, in man. Clin Pharmacol Ther 6:279–291

Domino EF, Luby E (1981) Abnormal mental states induced by phencyclidine as a model of schizophrenia. In: Domino EF (ed) PCP (phencyclidine): historical and current perspectives. NPP Books, Ann Arbor, MI, pp 401–418

Duffy S, Labrie V, Roder JC (2008) D-serine augments NMDA-NR2B receptor-dependent hippocampal long-term depression and spatial reversal learning. Neuropsychopharmacology 33:1004–1018

Ehrlichman RS, Maxwell CR, Majumdar S, Siegel SJ (2008) Deviance-elicited changes in event-related potentials are attenuated by ketamine in mice. J Cogn Neurosci 20:1403–1414

Farrant M, Feldmeyer D, Takahashi T, Cull-Candy SG (1994) NMDA-receptor channel diversity in the developing cerebellum. Nature 368:335–339

Felipe A, Vinas O, Remesar X (1990) Changes in glycine and leucine transport during red cell maturation in the rat. Biosci Rep 10:209–216

Fox K, Sato H, Daw N (1990) The effect of varying stimulus intensity on NMDA-receptor activity in cat visual cortex. J Neurophysiol 64:1413–1428

Gelfin E, Kaufman Y, Korn-Lubetzki I, Bloch B, Kremer I, Javitt DC, Heresco-Levy U (2012) D-serine adjuvant treatment alleviates behavioural and motor symptoms in Parkinson's disease. Int J Neuropsychopharmacol 15(4):543–549

Geyer MA, Krebs-Thomson K, Braff DL, Swerdlow NR (2001) Pharmacological studies of prepulse inhibition models of sensorimotor gating deficits in schizophrenia: a decade in review. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 156:117–154

Goldberg TE, Straub RE, Callicott JH, Hariri A, Mattay VS, Bigelow L, Coppola R, Egan MF, Weinberger DR (2006) The G72/G30 gene complex and cognitive abnormalities in schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 31:2022–2032

Gravina P, Spoletini I, Masini S, Valentini A, Vanni D, Paladini E, Bossu P, Caltagirone C, Federici G, Spalletta G, Bernardibni S (2011) Gebnetic polymorphisms of glutathione S-transferases GSTM1, GSTT1, GSTP1 and GSTA1 as risk factors for schizophrenia. Psychiatry Res 187(3):454–456

Greenberg WM, Benedict MM, Doerfer J, Perrin M, Panek L, Cleveland WL, Javitt DC (2009) Adjunctive glycine in the treatment of obsessive-compulsive disorder in adults. J Psychiatr Res 43:664–670

Gunduz-Bruce H, Reinhart RM, Roach BJ, Gueorguieva R, Oliver S, D'Souza DC, Ford JM, Krystal JH, Mathalon DH (2012) Glutamatergic modulation of auditory information processing in the human brain. Biol Psychiatry 71(11):969–977

Hamill TG, Eng W, Jennings A, Lewis R, Thomas S, Wood S, Street L, Wisnoski D, Wolkenberg S, Lindsley C, Sanabria-Bohorquez SM, Patel S, Riffel K, Ryan C, Cook J, Sur C, Burns HD, Hargreaves R (2011) The synthesis and preclinical evaluation in rhesus monkey of [(1)F]MK-6577 and [(1)(1)C]CMPyPB glycine transporter 1 positron emission tomography radiotracers. Synapse 65:261–270

Harsing LG Jr, Solyom S, Salamon C (2001) The role of glycineB binding site and glycine transporter (GlyT1) in the regulation of [3H]GABA and [3H]glycine release in the rat brain. Neurochem Res 26:915–923

Harsing LG Jr, Gacsalyi I, Szabo G, Schmidt E, Sziray N, Sebban C, Tesolin-Decros B, Matyus P, Egyed A, Spedding M, Levay G (2003) The glycine transporter-1 inhibitors NFPS and Org 24461: a pharmacological study. Pharmacol Biochem Behav 74:811–825

Hartvig P, Valtysson J, Lindner KJ, Kristensen J, Karlsten R, Gustafsson LL, Persson J, Svensson JO, Oye I, Antoni G et al (1995) Central nervous system effects of subdissociative doses of (S)-ketamine are related to plasma and brain concentrations measured with positron emission tomography in healthy volunteers. Clin Pharmacol Ther 58:165–173

Hashimoto K, Fukushima T, Shimizu E, Komatsu N, Watanabe H, Shinoda N, Nakazato M, Kumakiri C, Okada S, Hasegawa H, Imai K, Iyo M (2003) Decreased serum levels of D-serine in patients with schizophrenia: evidence in support of the N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor hypofunction hypothesis of schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 60:572–576

Hashimoto K, Fujita Y, Ishima T, Chaki S, Iyo M (2008) Phencyclidine-induced cognitive deficits in mice are improved by subsequent subchronic administration of the glycine transporter-1 inhibitor NFPS and D-serine. Eur Neuropsychopharmacol 18:414–421

Hashimoto K (2011) Glycine transporter-1: a new potential therapeutic target for schizophrenia. Curr Pharm Des 17:112–120

Heekeren K, Daumann J, Neukirch A, Stock C, Kawohl W, Norra C, Waberski TD, Gouzoulis-Mayfrank E (2008) Mismatch negativity generation in the human 5HT2A agonist and NMDA antagonist model of psychosis. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 199:77–88

Heggelund P, Hartveit E (1990) Neurotransmitter receptors mediating excitatory input to cells in the cat lateral geniculate nucleus. I. Lagged cells. J Neurophysiol 63:1347–1360

Herdon HJ, Roberts JC, Coulton S, Porter RA (2010) Pharmacological characterisation of the GlyT-1 glycine transporter using two novel radioligands. Neuropharmacology 59:558–565

Heresco-Levy U, Javitt DC, Ermilov M, Mordel C, Silipo G, Lichtenstein M (1999) Efficacy of high-dose glycine in the treatment of enduring negative symptoms of schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 56:29–36

Heresco-Levy U, Javitt DC (2004) Comparative effects of glycine and D-cycloserine on persistent negative symptoms in schizophrenia: a retrospective analysis. Schizophr Res 66:89–96

Heresco-Levy U, Javitt DC, Ebstein R, Vass A, Lichtenberg P, Bar G, Catinari S, Ermilov M (2005) D-serine efficacy as add-on pharmacotherapy to risperidone and olanzapine for treatment-refractory schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 57:577–585

Hetem LA, Danion JM, Diemunsch P, Brandt C (2000) Effect of a subanesthetic dose of ketamine on memory and conscious awareness in healthy volunteers. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 152:283–288

Honey RA, Turner DC, Honey GD, Sharar SR, Kumaran D, Pomarol-Clotet E, McKenna P, Sahakian BJ, Robbins TW, Fletcher PC (2003) Subdissociative dose ketamine produces a deficit in manipulation but not maintenance of the contents of working memory. Neuropsychopharmacology 28:2037–2044

Imamura Y, Ma CL, Pabba M, Bergeron R (2008) Sustained saturating level of glycine induces changes in NR2B-containing-NMDA receptor localization in the CA1 region of the hippocampus. J Neurochem 105:2454–2465

Javitt DC, Zukin SR (1989) Biexponential kinetics of [3H]MK-801 binding: evidence for access to closed and open N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor channels. Mol Pharmacol 35:387–393

Javitt DC, Zukin SR (1991) Recent advances in the phencyclidine model of schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 148:1301–1308

Javitt DC, Frusciante MJ, Zukin SR (1994a) Activation-related and activation-independent effects of polyamines on phencyclidine receptor binding within the N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor complex. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 270:604–613

Javitt DC, Zylberman I, Zukin SR, Heresco-Levy U, Lindenmayer JP (1994b) Amelioration of negative symptoms in schizophrenia by glycine. Am J Psychiatry 151:1234–1236

Javitt DC, Doneshka P, Grochowski S, Ritter W (1995) Impaired mismatch negativity generation reflects widespread dysfunction of working memory in schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 52:550–558

Javitt DC, Steinschneider M, Schroeder CE, Arezzo JC (1996) Role of cortical N-methyl-D-aspartate receptors in auditory sensory memory and mismatch negativity generation: implications for schizophrenia. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 93:11962–11967

Javitt DC, Frusciante M (1997) Glycyldodecylamide, a phencyclidine behavioral antagonist, blocks cortical glycine uptake: implications for schizophrenia and substance abuse. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 129:96–98

Javitt DC, Sershen H, Hashim A, Lajtha A (1997) Reversal of phencyclidine-induced hyperactivity by glycine and the glycine uptake inhibitor glycyldodecylamide. Neuropsychopharmacology 17:202–204

Javitt DC, Balla A, Sershen H, Lajtha A (1999a) A.E. Bennett Research Award. Reversal of phencyclidine-induced effects by glycine and glycine transport inhibitors. Biol Psychiatry 45:668–679

Javitt DC, Rabinowicz E, Silipo G, Shelley AM (1999b) Electrophysiological dissection of working memory dysfunction in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 36:254–255

Javitt DC (2000) Intracortical mechanisms of mismatch negativity dysfunction in schizophrenia. Audiol Neurootol 5:207–215

Javitt DC, Balla A, Burch S, Suckow R, Xie S, Sershen H (2004) Reversal of phencyclidine-induced dopaminergic dysregulation by N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor/glycine-site agonists. Neuropsychopharmacology 29:300–307

Javitt DC, Duncan L, Balla A, Sershen H (2005a) Inhibition of system A-mediated glycine transport in cortical synaptosomes by therapeutic concentrations of clozapine: implications for mechanisms of action. Mol Psychiatry 10:275–287

Javitt DC, Hashim A, Sershen H (2005b) Modulation of striatal dopamine release by glycine transport inhibitors. Neuropsychopharmacology 30:649–656

Javitt DC (2006) Is the glycine site half saturated or half unsaturated? Effects of glutamatergic drugs in schizophrenia patients. Curr Opin Psychiatry 19:151–157

Javitt DC, Schoepp D, Kalivas PW, Volkow ND, Zarate C, Merchant K, Bear MF, Umbricht D, Hajos M, Potter WZ, Lee CM (2011) Translating glutamate: from pathophysiology to treatment. Sci Transl Med 3:102mr2

Johnson JW, Ascher P (1987) Glycine potentiates the NMDA response in cultured mouse brain neurons. Nature 325:529–531

Kalbaugh TL, Zhang J, Diamond JS (2009) Coagonist release modulates NMDA receptor subtype contributions at synaptic inputs to retinal ganglion cells. J Neurosci 29:1469–1479

Kantrowitz JT, Ziwich RT, Cornblatt BA, Malhotra AK, Silipo G, Woods SW, Javitt DC (2008) The safety and effectiveness of high dose D-serine in the treatment of schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 63:286S

Kantrowitz JT, Malhotra AK, Cornblatt B, Silipo G, Balla A, Suckow RF, D'Souza C, Saksa J, Woods SW, Javitt DC (2010) High dose D-serine in the treatment of schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 121:125–130

Karasawa J, Hashimoto K, Chaki S (2008) D-Serine and a glycine transporter inhibitor improve MK-801-induced cognitive deficits in a novel object recognition test in rats. Behav Brain Res 186:78–83

Kieffaber PD, Kappenman ES, Bodkins M, Shekhar A, O'Donnell BF, Hetrick WP (2006) Switch and maintenance of task set in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 84:345–358

Kim J, Doop ML, Blake R, Park S (2005) Impaired visual recognition of biological motion in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 77:299–307

Kreitschmann-Andermahr I, Rosburg T, Demme U, Gaser E, Nowak H, Sauer H (2001) Effect of ketamine on the neuromagnetic mismatch field in healthy humans. Brain Res Cogn Brain Res 12:109–116

Krystal JH, Karper LP, Seibyl JP, Freeman GK, Delaney R, Bremner JD, Heninger GR, Bowers MB Jr, Charney DS (1994) Subanesthetic effects of the noncompetitive NMDA antagonist, ketamine, in humans. Psychotomimetic, perceptual, cognitive, and neuroendocrine responses. Arch Gen Psychiatry 51:199–214

Krystal JH, Karper LP, Bennett A, D'Souza DC, Abi-Dargham A, Morrissey K, Abi-Saab D, Bremner JD, Bowers MB Jr, Suckow RF, Stetson P, Heninger GR, Charney DS (1998) Interactive effects of subanesthetic ketamine and subhypnotic lorazepam in humans. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 135:213–229

Krystal JH, D'Souza DC, Karper LP, Bennett A, Abi-Dargham A, Abi-Saab D, Cassello K, Bowers MB Jr, Vegso S, Heninger GR, Charney DS (1999) Interactive effects of subanesthetic ketamine and haloperidol in healthy humans. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 145:193–204

Krystal JH, Bennett A, Abi-Saab D, Belger A, Karper LP, D'Souza DC, Lipschitz D, Abi-Dargham A, Charney DS (2000) Dissociation of ketamine effects on rule acquisition and rule implementation: possible relevance to NMDA receptor contributions to executive cognitive functions. Biol Psychiatry 47:137–143

Krystal JH, Perry EB Jr, Gueorguieva R, Belger A, Madonick SH, Abi-Dargham A, Cooper TB, Macdougall L, Abi-Saab W, D'Souza DC (2005) Comparative and interactive human psychopharmacologic effects of ketamine and amphetamine: implications for glutamatergic and dopaminergic model psychoses and cognitive function. Arch Gen Psychiatry 62:985–994

Krystal JH, Petrakis IL, Limoncelli D, Nappi SK, Trevisan L, Pittman B, D'Souza DC, Suckow RF (2011) Characterization of the interactive effects of glycine and D-cycloserine in men: further evidence for enhanced NMDA receptor function associated with human alcohol dependence. Neuropsychopharmacology 36:701–710

Kwon YH, Esguerra M, Sur M (1991) NMDA and non-NMDA receptors mediate visual responses of neurons in the cat's lateral geniculate nucleus. J Neurophysiol 66:414–428

Labrie V, Duffy S, Wang W, Barger SW, Baker GB, Roder JC (2009a) Genetic inactivation of D-amino acid oxidase enhances extinction and reversal learning in mice. Learn Mem 16:28–37

Labrie V, Fukumura R, Rastogi A, Fick LJ, Wang W, Boutros PC, Kennedy JL, Semeralul MO, Lee FH, Baker GB, Belsham DD, Barger SW, Gondo Y, Wong AH, Roder JC (2009b) Serine racemase is associated with schizophrenia susceptibility in humans and in a mouse model. Hum Mol Genet 18:3227–3243

Lahti AC, Weiler MA, Tamara Michaelidis BA, Parwani A, Tamminga CA (2001) Effects of ketamine in normal and schizophrenic volunteers. Neuropsychopharmacology 25:455–467

Lane HY, Chang YC, Liu YC, Chiu CC, Tsai GE (2005) Sarcosine or D-serine add-on treatment for acute exacerbation of schizophrenia: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study. Arch Gen Psychiatry 62:1196–1204

Lane HY, Huang CL, Wu PL, Liu YC, Chang YC, Lin PY, Chen PW, Tsai G (2006) Glycine transporter I inhibitor, N-methylglycine (sarcosine), added to clozapine for the treatment of schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 60:645–649

Lane HY, Liu YC, Huang CL, Chang YC, Liau CH, Perng CH, Tsai GE (2008) Sarcosine (N-methylglycine) treatment for acute schizophrenia: a randomized, double-blind study. Biol Psychiatry 63:9–12

Lavoie S, Murray MM, Deppen P, Knyazeva MG, Berk M, Boulat O, Bovet P, Bush AI, Conus P, Copolov D, Fornari E, Meuli R, Solida A, Vianin P, Cuenod M, Buclin T, Do KQ (2008) Glutathione precursor, N-acetyl-cysteine, improves mismatch negativity in schizophrenia patients. Neuropsychopharmacology 33:2187–2199

Le Pen G (2003) Prepulse inhibition deficits of the startle reflex in neonatal ventral hippocampal–lesioned rats: reversal by glycine and a glycine transporter inhibitor. Biol Psychiatry 54:1162–1170

Li D, He L (2007) G72/G30 genes and schizophrenia: a systematic meta-analysis of association studies. Genetics 175:917–922

Lido HH, Stomberg R, Fagerberg A, Ericson M, Soderpalm B (2009) The glycine reuptake inhibitor org 25935 interacts with basal and ethanol-induced dopamine release in rat nucleus accumbens. Alcohol Clin Exp Res 33:1151–1157

Lindsley CW, Shipe WD, Wolkenberg SE, Theberge CR, Williams DL Jr, Sur C, Kinney GG (2006) Progress towards validating the NMDA receptor hypofunction hypothesis of schizophrenia. Curr Top Med Chem 6:771–785

Linn GS, O'Keeffe RT, Schroeder CE, Lifshitz K, Javitt DC (1999) Behavioral effects of chronic phencyclidine in monkeys. Neuroreport 10:2789–2793

Linn GS, Negi SS, Gerum SV, Javitt DC (2003) Reversal of phencyclidine-induced prepulse inhibition deficits by clozapine in monkeys. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 169:234–239

Lipina T, Labrie V, Weiner I, Roder J (2005) Modulators of the glycine site on NMDA receptors, D-serine and ALX 5407, display similar beneficial effects to clozapine in mouse models of schizophrenia. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 179:54–67

Lowe JA 3rd, Deninno SL, Drozda SE, Schmidt CJ, Ward KM, David Tingley F 3rd, Sanner M, Tunucci D, Valentine J (2010) An octahydro-cyclopenta[c]pyrrole series of inhibitors of the type 1 glycine transporter. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 20:907–911

Luby ED, Cohen BD, Rosenbaum F, Gottlieb J, Kelley R (1959) Study of a new schizophrenomimetic drug, sernyl. AMA Arch Neurol Psychiatry 81:363–369

Lynch DR, Guttmann RP (2001) NMDA receptor pharmacology: perspectives from molecular biology. Curr Drug Targets 2:215–231

Madeira C, Freitas ME, Vargas-Lopes C, Wolosker H, Panizzutti R (2008) Increased brain D-amino acid oxidase (DAAO) activity in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 101:76–83

Madry C, Betz H, Geiger JR, Laube B (2008) Supralinear potentiation of NR1/NR3A excitatory glycine receptors by Zn2+ and NR1 antagonist. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 105:12563–12568

Malhotra AK, Pinals DA, Weingartner H, Sirocco K, Missar CD, Pickar D, Breier A (1996) NMDA receptor function and human cognition: the effects of ketamine in healthy volunteers. Neuropsychopharmacology 14:301–307

Malhotra AK, Pinals DA, Adler CM, Elman I, Clifton A, Pickar D, Breier A (1997) Ketamine-induced exacerbation of psychotic symptoms and cognitive impairment in neuroleptic-free schizophrenics. Neuropsychopharmacology 17:141–150

Manahan-Vaughan D, Wildforster V, Thomsen C (2008) Rescue of hippocampal LTP and learning deficits in a rat model of psychosis by inhibition of glycine transporter-1 (GlyT1). Eur J Neurosci 28:1342–1350

Marc RE (1999) Mapping glutamatergic drive in the vertebrate retina with a channel- permeant organic cation. J Comp Neurol 407:47–64

Martina M (2004) Glycine transporter type 1 blockade changes NMDA receptor-mediated responses and LTP in hippocampal CA1 pyramidal cells by altering extracellular glycine levels. J Physiol 557:489–500

Martina M, Gorfinkel Y, Halman S, Lowe JA, Periyalwar P, Schmidt CJ, Bergeron R (2004) Glycine transporter type 1 blockade changes NMDA receptor-mediated responses and LTP in hippocampal CA1 pyramidal cells by altering extracellular glycine levels. J Physiol 557:489–500

McBain CJ, Kleckner NW, Wyrick S, Dingledine R (1989) Structural requirements for activation of the glycine coagonist site of N-methyl-D-aspartate receptors expressed in *Xenopus oocytes*. Mol Pharmacol 36:556–565

Mexal S, Frank M, Berger R, Adams CE, Ross RG, Freedman R, Leonard S (2005) Differential modulation of gene expression in the NMDA postsynaptic density of schizophrenic and control smokers. Brain Res Mol Brain Res 139:317–332

Mezler M, Hornberger W, Mueller R, Schmidt M, Amberg W, Braje W, Ochse M, Schoemaker H, Behl B (2008) Inhibitors of GlyT1 affect glycine transport via discrete binding sites. Mol Pharmacol 74:1705–1715

Miyamoto E (2006) Molecular mechanism of neuronal plasticity: induction and maintenance of long-term potentiation in the hippocampus. J Pharmacol Sci 100:433–442

Moghaddam B, Javitt D (2012) From revolution to evolution: the glutamate hypothesis of schizophrenia and its implication for treatment. Neuropsychopharmacology 37(1):4–15

Molander A, Lido HH, Lof E, Ericson M, Soderpalm B (2007) The glycine reuptake inhibitor Org 25935 decreases ethanol intake and preference in male wistar rats. Alcohol Alcohol 42:11–18

Morgan CJA, Mofeez A, Brandner B, Bromley L, Curran HV (2003) Acute effects of ketamine on memory systems and psychotic symptoms in healthy volunteers. Neuropsychopharmacology 29:208–218

Morgenstern FS, Beech HR, Davies RM (1962) An investigation of drug-induced sensory disturbances. Psychopharmacologia 3:193–201

Morita Y, Ujike H, Tanaka Y, Otani K, Kishimoto M, Morio A, Kotaka T, Okahisa Y, Matsushita M, Morikawa A, Hamase K, Zaitsu K, Kuroda S (2007) A genetic variant of the serine racemase gene is associated with schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 61:1200–1203

Morita Y, Ujike H, Tanaka Y, Kishimoto M, Okahisa Y, Kotaka T, Harano M, Inada T, Komiyama T, Hori T, Yamada M, Sekine Y, Iwata N, Iyo M, Sora I, Ozaki N, Kuroda S (2008) The glycine transporter 1 gene (GLYT1) is associated with methamphetamine-use disorder. Am J Med Genet B Neuropsychiatr Genet 147B:54–58

Nagy K, Marko B, Zsilla G, Matyus P, Pallagi K, Szabo G, Juranyi Z, Barkoczy J, Levay G, Harsing LG Jr (2010) Alterations in brain extracellular dopamine and glycine levels following combined administration of the glycine transporter type-1 inhibitor Org-24461 and risperidone. Neurochem Res 35:2096–2106

Neeman G, Blanaru M, Bloch B, Kremer I, Ermilov M, Javitt DC, Heresco-Levy U (2005) Relation of plasma glycine, serine, and homocysteine levels to schizophrenia symptoms and medication type. Am J Psychiatry 162:1738–1740

Newcomer JW, Farber NB, Jevtovic-Todorovic V, Selke G, Melson AK, Hershey T, Craft S, Olney JW (1999) Ketamine-induced NMDA receptor hypofunction as a model of memory impairment and psychosis. Neuropsychopharmacology 20:106–118

Nishikawa H, Inoue T, Izumi T, Nakagawa S, Koyama T (2010) SSR504734, a glycine transporter-1 inhibitor, attenuates acquisition and expression of contextual conditioned fear in rats. Behav Pharmacol 21:576–579

Oranje B, van Berckel BN, Kemner C, van Ree JM, Kahn RS, Verbaten MN (2000) The effects of a sub-anaesthetic dose of ketamine on human selective attention. Neuropsychopharmacology 22:293–302

Oye I, Paulsen O, Maurset A (1992) Effects of ketamine on sensory perception: evidence for a role of N-methyl-D-aspartate receptors. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 260:1209–1213

Paoletti P, Vergnano AM, Barbour B, Casado M (2009) Zinc at glutamatergic synapses. Neuroscience 158(1):126–136

Papp A, Juranyi Z, Nagymajtenyi L, Matyus P, Harsing LG Jr (2008) The synaptic and nonsynaptic glycine transporter type-1 inhibitors Org-24461 and NFPS alter single neuron firing rate in the rat dorsal raphe nucleus. Further evidence for a glutamatergic-serotonergic interaction and its role in antipsychotic action. Neurochem Int 52:130–134

Parwani A, Weiler MA, Blaxton TA, Warfel D, Hardin M, Frey K, Lahti AC (2005) The effects of a subanesthetic dose of ketamine on verbal memory in normal volunteers. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 183:265–274

Passie T, Karst M, Wiese B, Emrich HM, Schneider U (2005) Effects of different subanesthetic doses of (S)-ketamine on neuropsychology, psychopathology, and state of consciousness in man. Neuropsychobiology 51:226–233

Perry K, Falcone J, Fell M, Ryder J, Yu H, Love P, Katner J, Gordon K, Wade M, Man T (2008a) Neurochemical and behavioral profiling of the selective GlyT1 inhibitors ALX5407 and LY2365109 indicate a preferential action in caudal vs. cortical brain areas. Neuropharmacology 55:743–754

Perry KW, Falcone JF, Fell MJ, Ryder JW, Yu H, Love PL, Katner J, Gordon KD, Wade MR, Man T, Nomikos GG, Phebus LA, Cauvin AJ, Johnson KW, Jones CK, Hoffmann BJ, Sandusky GE, Walter MW, Porter WJ, Yang L, Merchant KM, Shannon HE, Svensson KA (2008b) Neurochemical and behavioral profiling of the selective GlyT1 inhibitors ALX5407 and LY2365109 indicate a preferential action in caudal vs. cortical brain areas. Neuropharmacology 55:743–754

Philpot BD, Cho KK, Bear MF (2007) Obligatory role of NR2A for metaplasticity in visual cortex. Neuron 53:495–502

Pinard E, Alanine A, Alberati D, Bender M, Borroni E, Bourdeaux P, Brom V, Burner S, Fischer H, Hainzl D, Halm R, Hauser N, Jolidon S, Lengyel J, Marty HP, Meyer T, Moreau JL, Mory R, Narquizian R, Nettekoven M, Norcross RD, Puellmann B, Schmid P, Schmitt S, Stalder H, Wermuth R, Wettstein JG, Zimmerli D (2010a) Selective GlyT1 inhibitors: discovery of [4-(3-fluoro-5-trifluoromethylpyridin-2-yl)piperazin-1-yl][5-methanesulfon yl-2-((S)-2,2,2-trifluoro-1-methylethoxy)phenyl]methanone (RG1678), a promising novel medicine to treat schizophrenia. J Med Chem 53:4603–4614

Pinard E, Alberati D, Bender M, Borroni E, Brom V, Burner S, Fischer H, Hainzl D, Halm R, Hauser N, Jolidon S, Lengyel J, Marty HP, Meyer T, Moreau JL, Mory R, Narquizian R, Norcross RD, Schmid P, Wermuth R, Zimmerli D (2010b) Discovery of benzoylisoindolines as a novel class of potent, selective and orally active GlyT1 inhibitors. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 20:6960–6965

Pollard H, Khrestchatisky M, Moreau J, Ben Ari Y (1993) Transient expression of the NR2C subunit of the NMDA receptor in developing rat brain. Neuroreport 4:411–414

Pow DV (1998) Transport is the primary determinant of glycine content in retinal neurons. J Neurochem 70:2628–2636

Radant AD, Bowdle TA, Cowley DS, Kharasch ED, Roy-Byrne PP (1998) Does ketamine-mediated N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor antagonism cause schizophrenia-like oculomotor abnormalities? Neuropsychopharmacology 19:434–444

Ritzler BA (1977) Proprioception and schizophrenia: a replication study with nonschizophrenic patient controls. J Abnorm Psychol 86:501–509

Rivadulla C, Sharma J, Sur M (2001) Specific roles of NMDA and AMPA receptors in direction-selective and spatial phase-selective responses in visual cortex. J Neurosci 21:1710–1719

Roberts BM, Shaffer CL, Seymour PA, Schmidt CJ, Williams GV, Castner SA (2010) Glycine transporter inhibition reverses ketamine-induced working memory deficits. Neuroreport 21:390–394

Rosenbaum G, Cohen BD, Luby ED, Gottlieb JS, Yelen D (1959) Comparison of sernyl with other drugs. Arch Gen Psychiatry 1:651–656

Rowland LM, Astur RS, Jung RE, Bustillo JR, Lauriello J, Yeo RA (2005) Selective cognitive impairments associated with NMDA receptor blockade in humans. Neuropsychopharmacology 30:633–639

Schmidt A, Bachmann R, Kometer M, Csomor PA, Stephan KE, Seifritz E, Vollenweider FX (2011) Mismatch negativity encoding of prediction errors predicts S-ketamine-induced cognitive impairments. Neuropsychopharmacology 37:865–875. doi:10.1038/npp. 2011.261

Seeman P, Lee T (1975) Antipsychotic drugs: direct correlation between clinical potency and presynaptic action on dopamine neurons. Science 188:1217–1219

Shelley AM, Ward PB, Catts SV, Michie PT, Andrews S, McConaghy N (1991) Mismatch negativity: an index of a preattentive processing deficit in schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 30:1059–1062

Shimazaki T, Kaku A, Chaki S (2010) D-Serine and a glycine transporter-1 inhibitor enhance social memory in rats. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 209:263–270

Shinkai T, De Luca V, Hwang R, Muller DJ, Lanktree M, Zai G, Shaikh S, Wong G, Sicard T, Potapova N, Trakalo J, King N, Matsumoto C, Hori H, Wong AH, Ohmori O, Macciardi F, Nakamura J, Kennedy JL (2007) Association analyses of the DAOA/G30 and D-amino-acid oxidase genes in schizophrenia: further evidence for a role in schizophrenia. Neuromolecular Med 9:169–177

Singer P, Boison D, Mohler H, Feldon J, Yee BK (2009a) Deletion of glycine transporter 1 (GlyT1) in forebrain neurons facilitates reversal learning: enhanced cognitive adaptability? Behav Neurosci 123:1012–1027

Singer P, Feldon J, Yee BK (2009b) The glycine transporter 1 inhibitor SSR504734 enhances working memory performance in a continuous delayed alternation task in C57BL/6 mice. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 202:371–384

Sreekumar A, Poisson LM, Rajendiran TM, Khan AP, Cao Q, Yu J, Laxman B, Mehra R, Lonigro RJ, Li Y, Nyati MK, Ahsan A, Kalyana-Sundaram S, Han B, Cao X, Byun J, Omenn GS, Ghosh D, Pennathur S, Alexander DC, Berger A, Shuster JR, Wei JT, Varambally S, Beecher C, Chinnaiyan AM (2009) Metabolomic profiles delineate potential role for sarcosine in prostate cancer progression. Nature 457:910–914

Stoet G, Snyder LH (2006) Effects of the NMDA antagonist ketamine on task-switching performance: evidence for specific impairments of executive control. Neuropsychopharmacology 31:1675–1681

Struys EA, Heijboer AC, van Moorselaar J, Jakobs C, Blankenstein MA (2010) Serum sarcosine is not a marker for prostate cancer. Ann Clin Biochem 47:282–282

Sucher NJ, Lipton SA (1991) Redox modulatory site of the NMDA receptor-channel complex: regulation by oxidized glutathione. J Neurosci Res 30:582–591

Sumiyoshi T, Anil AE, Jin D, Jayathilake K, Lee M, Meltzer HY (2004) Plasma glycine and serine levels in schizophrenia compared to normal controls and major depression: relation to negative symptoms. Int J Neuropsychopharmacol 7:1–8

Supplisson S, Bergman C (1997) Control of NMDA receptor activation by a glycine transporter co- expressed in *Xenopus oocytes*. J Neurosci 17:4580–4590

Sur C, Kinney GG (2007) Glycine transporter 1 inhibitors and modulation of NMDA receptor-mediated excitatory neurotransmission. Curr Drug Targets 8:643–649

Terui Y, Chu YW, Li JY, Ando T, Fukunaga T, Aoki T, Toda Y (2008) New cyclic tetrapeptides from Nonomuraea sp. TA-0426 that inhibit glycine transporter type 1 (GlyT1). Bioorg Med Chem Lett 18:6321–6323

Tikhonravov D, Neuvonen T, Pertovaara A, Savioja K, Ruusuvirta T, Naatanen R, Carlson S (2008) Effects of an NMDA-receptor antagonist MK-801 on an MMN-like response recorded in anesthetized rats. Brain Res 1203:97–102

Toth E, Lajtha A (1981) Elevation of cerebral levels of nonessential amino acids in vivo by administration of large doses. Neurochem Res 6:1309–1317

Toth E, Lajtha A (1986) Antagonism of phencyclidine-induced hyperactivity by glycine in mice. Neurochem Res 11:393–400

Toth E, Weiss B, Banay-Schwartz M, Lajtha A (1986) Effect of glycine derivatives on behavioral changes induced by 3-mercaptopropionic acid or phencyclidine in mice. Res Comm Psychol Psychiat Behav 11:1–9

Toth E, Sershen H, Hashim A, Vizi ES, Lajtha A (1992) Effect of nicotine on extracellular levels of neurotransmitters assessed by microdialysis in various brain regions: role of glutamic acid. Neurochem Res 17:265–271

Tsai G, Yang P, Chung LC, Lange N, Coyle JT (1998) D-serine added to antipsychotics for the treatment of schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 44:1081–1089

Tsai G, Ralph-Williams RJ, Martina M, Bergeron R, Berger-Sweeney J, Dunham KS, Jiang Z, Caine SB, Coyle JT (2004) Gene knockout of glycine transporter 1: characterization of the behavioral phenotype. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 101:8485–8490

Umbricht D, Schmid L, Koller R, Vollenweider FX, Hell D, Javitt DC (2000) Ketamine-induced deficits in auditory and visual context-dependent processing in healthy volunteers: implications for models of cognitive deficits in schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 57:1139–1147

Umbricht D, Krljes S (2005) Mismatch negativity in schizophrenia: a meta-analysis. Schizophr Res 76:1–23

Umbricht D, Yoo K, Youssef E, Dorflinger E, Martin-Facklam M, Bausch A, Arrowsmith R, Alberati D, Marder SR, Santarelli L (2010) Glycine transporter type 1 (GLYT1) inhibitor RG1678: positive results of the proof-of-concept study for the treatment of negative symptoms in schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 35:s320–s321

Varnes JG, Forst JM, Hoerter TN, Holmquist CR, Wilkins DE, Tian G, Jonak G, Wang X, Potts WM, Wood MW, Alhambra C, Brugel TA, Albert JS (2010) Identification of N-(2-

(azepan-1-yl)-2-phenylethyl)-benzenesulfonamides as novel inhibitors of GlyT1. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 20:4878–4881

Waziri R (1988) Glycine therapy of schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 23:210–211

Weigensberg AM, Blostein R (1985) Na+-coupled glycine transport in reticulocyte vesicles of distinct sidedness: stoichiometry and symmetry. J Membr Biol 86:37–44

Weiser M, Heresco-Levy U, Davidson M, Javitt DC, Werbeloff N, Gershon AA, Abramovich Y, Amital D, Doron A, Konas S, Levkovitz Y, Liba D, Teitelbaum A and Y Zimmerman. A multicenter, add-on RCT of D-serine for negative and cognitive symptoms of schizophrenia. J Clin Psychopharmacol (in press)

Wolkenberg SE, Zhao Z, Wisnoski DD, Leister WH, O'Brien J, Lemaire W, Williams DL Jr, Jacobson MA, Sur C, Kinney GG, Pettibone DJ, Tiller PR, Smith S, Gibson C, Ma BK, Polsky-Fisher SL, Lindsley CW, Hartman GD (2009) Discovery of GlyT1 inhibitors with improved pharmacokinetic properties. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 19:1492–1495

Wolkenberg SE, Sur C (2010) Recent progress in the discovery of non-sarcosine based GlyT1 inhibitors. Curr Top Med Chem 10:170–186

Wood PL (1995) The co-agonist concept: is the NMDA-associated glycine receptor saturated in vivo? Life Sci 57:301–310

Woods SW, Thomas L, Tully E, Hawkins KA, Miller TJ, Rosen JL, Pearlson G, McGlashan TH (2004) Effects of oral glycine in the schizophrenia prodrome. Schiz Res 70:79

Wu PL, Tang HS, Lane HY, Tsai CA, Tsai GE (2011) Sarcosine therapy for obsessive compulsive disorder: a prospective, open-label study. J Clin Psychopharmacol 31:369–374

Wylie GR, Clark EA, Butler PD, Javitt DC (2010) Schizophrenia patients show task switching deficits consistent with N-methyl-d-aspartate system dysfunction but not global executive deficits: implications for pathophysiology of executive dysfunction in schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 36:585–594

Yang C, Svensson K (2008) Allosteric modulation of NMDA receptor via elevation of brain glycine and d-serine: the therapeutic potentials for schizophrenia. Pharmacol Ther 120:317–332

Yao JK, Leonard S, Reddy R (2006) Altered glutathione redox state in schizophrenia. Dis Markers 22:83–93

Yashiro K, Philpot BD (2008) Regulation of NMDA receptor subunit expression and its implications for LTD, LTP, and metaplasticity. Neuropharmacology 55:1081–1094

Yee BK, Balic E, Singer P, Schwerdel C, Grampp T, Gabernet L, Knuesel I, Benke D, Feldon J, Mohler H, Boison D (2006) Disruption of glycine transporter 1 restricted to forebrain neurons is associated with a procognitive and antipsychotic phenotypic profile. J Neurosci 26:3169–3181

Zafra F, Gimenez C (2008) Glycine transporters and synaptic function. IUBMB Life 60:810–817

Zeng Z, Obrien J, Lemaire W, Omalley S, Miller P, Zhao Z, Wallace M, Raab C, Lindsley C, Sur C (2008) A novel radioligand for glycine transporter 1: characterization and use in autoradiographic and in vivo brain occupancy studies. Nucl Med Biol 35:315–325

# Nicotinic Receptors and Functional Regulation of GABA Cell Microcircuitry in Bipolar Disorder and Schizophrenia

**Francine M. Benes**

## Contents



**Abstract** Studies of the hippocampus in postmortem brains from patients with schizophrenia and bipolar disorder have provided evidence for a defect of GABAergic interneurons. Significant decreases in the expression of GAD67, a marker for GABA cell function, have been found repeatedly in several different brain regions that include the hippocampus. In this region, nicotinic receptors are thought to play an important role in modulating the activity of GABAergic interneurons by influences of excitatory cholinergic afferents on their activity. In bipolar disorder, this influence appears to be particularly prominent in the stratum oriens of sectors CA3/2 and CA1, two sites where these cells constitute the exclusive neuronal cell type. In sector CA3/2, this layer receives a robust excitatory projection from the basolateral amygdala (BLA) and this is thought to play a central role in regulating GABA cells at this locus. Using laser microdissection, recent studies have

F.M. Benes (✉)
Program in Structural and Molecular Neuroscience, McLean Hospital, 115 Mill Street, Belmont, MA 02478, USA

Program in Neuroscience and Department of Psychiatry, Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA, USA
e-mail: fbenes@mclean.harvard.edu

M.A. Geyer and G. Gross (eds.), *Novel Antischizophrenia Treatments*,
Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 213,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-25758-2_13, 

focused selectively on these two layers and their associated GABA cells using microarray technology. The results have provided support for the idea that nicotinic cholinergic receptors play a particularly important role in regulating the activity of GABA neurons at these loci by regulating the progression of cell cycle and the repair of damaged DNA. In bipolar disorder, there is a prominent reduction in the expression of mRNAs for several different nicotinic subunit isoforms. These decreases could reflect a diminished influence of this receptor system on these GABA cells, particularly in sector CA3/2 where a preponderance of abnormalities have been observed in postmortem studies. In patients with bipolar disorder, excitatory nicotinic cholinergic fibers from the medial septum may converge with glutamatergic fibers from the BLA on GABAergic interneurons in the stratum oriens of CA3/2 and result in disturbances of their genomic and functional integrity, ones that may induce disruptions of the integration of microcircuitry within this region.

**Keywords** Cholinergic • CA3/2 • CA1 • Cell fate • DNA repair • G1 arrest • G2 checkpoint • Transcriptional complex • MBD4

## 1 Introduction

GABAergic interneurons are the principal source of inhibitory modulation in the brain. Twenty years ago, postmortem studies of schizophrenia had provided convergent evidence from cell counting (Benes et al. 1991) and high resolution analyses of GABA-A receptor binding activity (Benes et al. 1992), suggesting that GABA neurons are probably not providing sufficient inhibitory modulation to pyramidal neurons in corticolimbic regions of the brain in subjects with schizophrenia. Subsequent reports suggested that similar abnormalities may be present in the dorsolateral prefrontal cortex (Benes et al. 1996a) and hippocampus (Benes et al. 1996b, 1998; Heckers and Konradi 2010; Konradi et al. 2011a, b) not only of patients with schizophrenia, but also bipolar disorder. Using calcium binding peptides as markers for different subtypes of interneurons, decreased numbers of immunoreactive cells have been observed in both CA3/2 and CA1 of schizophrenia and bipolar patients, although the patterns observed are quite different in the two disorders (Konradi et al. 2011a, b).

## 2 GAD67 Regulation

Among the GABAergic abnormalities detected in these two disorders, a decrease in the expression of transcripts for GAD67 has been observed in the prefrontal cortex (Akbarian et al. 1995; Guidotti et al. 2000; Volk et al. 2000), anterior cingulate region (Woo et al. 2004, 2007), and hippocampus (Benes et al. 2007). This abnormality is one of the most replicated findings in postmortem studies of the

psychotic disorders. The decreased expression of GAD67 transcripts within these key corticolimbic brain regions raises important questions regarding the potential effects that diminished GABAergic activity may have on the functional integrity of inhibitory and possibly also disinhibitory GABA cells, not only in psychotic disorders, but perhaps also in healthy individuals during normal postnatal development.

Recent studies have attempted to "deconstruct" the human hippocampus into components of the trisynaptic pathway by using laser microdissection. In our recent microarray studies, these sites included, but were not limited to, the stratum radiatum, stratum pyramidale, and stratum oriens (SO) of sectors CA3/2 and CA1 (Fig. 2). The latter two sectors were chosen because our earlier postmortem studies of the hippocampus in schizophrenia and bipolar disorder had demonstrated that there was a preponderance of abnormalities in sectors CA3/2 (Fig. 2) in subjects with both disorders. As discussed below, our parallel studies in rats have suggested that this pattern was related, at least in part, to a selective projection of excitatory glutamatergic fibers from the basolateral amygdala (BLA) to GABA cells in the SO of this sector (Fig. 2) (for a review, see Benes 2010). Although the neurons present are exclusively GABAergic in nature, they are comprised of several different subtypes defined by their morphological appearance, calcium binding peptide content, and electrical membrane properties (Benes and Berretta 2001).

Using microarrays technology, our gene expression analyses have demonstrated that the decrease of GAD67 expression is not diffusely present throughout all sectors and layers of the hippocampus (Benes et al. 2007). The most robust changes are primarily found in sector CA3/2, a key locus along the trisynaptic pathway. The SO within this sector showed the most robust changes in both schizophrenia and bipolar patients (Benes et al. 2007). Interneurons are the exclusive neuronal cell type in the SO and the data suggest that within this locus, there may be a complex network consisting of genes associated with TGFβ and Wnt signaling, epigenetic factors, transcription factors and, rather surprisingly, cyclin D2, a key component of cell cycle regulation (Fig. 1, green). Taken together, these findings have suggested that GAD67 regulation may contribute to changes in cell cycle and the repair of damaged DNA repair. If so, the regulation of GABA cells at this locus along the trisynaptic pathway may play a central role in the regulation of the genomic and functional integrity of GABAergic interneurons (Benes 2010).

## 3 Regulation of Molecular Endophenotypes by Afferent Fiber Systems

GABA neurons in the SO of CA3/2 are regulated by excitatory afferent inputs from many different sources and these not only include recurrent collaterals from pyramidal neurons but also kainate receptor-mediated inputs from the BLA; both are glutamatergic in nature. Additionally, cholinergic inputs from the medial septal nuclei

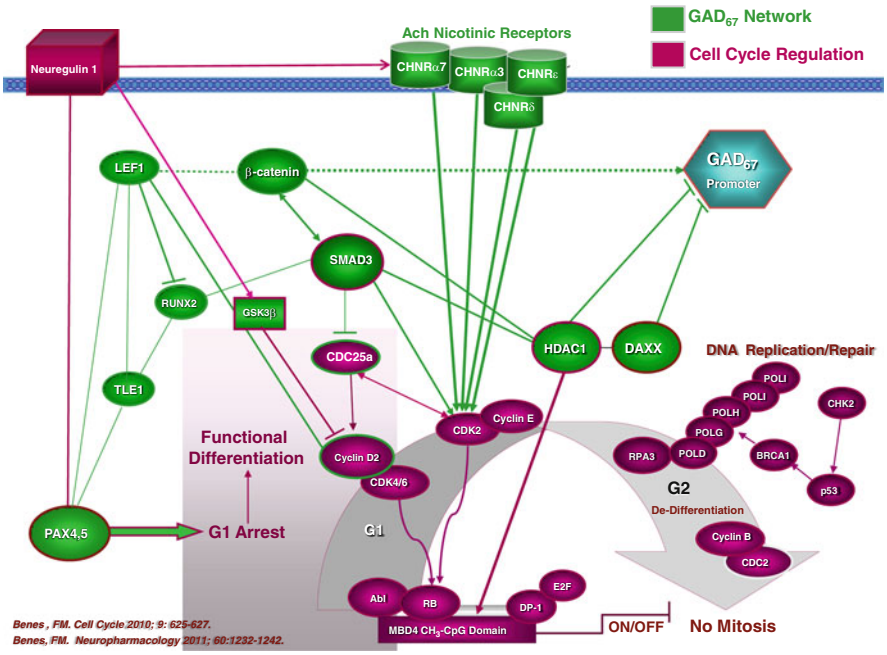



**Fig. 1** A schematic diagram depicting the interaction among genes associated with the regulation of GAD67 (*green*), cell cycle and DNA repair (*maroon*) in post-mitotic GABA neurons in the stratum oriens (SO) of sectors CA3/2 of adult hippocampus. GAD67 expression in SO of CA3/2 involves nicotinic cholinergic receptors and involves a complex interplay with gene clusters associated with growth factors, particularly neuregulin I, TGF and Wnt signaling, transcription factors, epigenetic factors, and the regulation of G1 arrest, and progression toward the G2 checkpoint. The cholinergic nicotinic receptors may directly influence the progression of the G1 checkpoint toward G2 via cyclin E and its complex with CDK2. SMAD3 and CDC25a may also influence this regulatory path via indirect interactions with CDK2

(Freund and Antal 1988) mediated by either nicotinic (Freedman et al. 1993) or muscarinic (Golebiewski et al. 2002) receptors project to the SO in both CA3/2 and CA1. As shown in Fig. 2, a major difference in the circuitry of the SO of CA3/2 and CA1 is the convergence of excitatory projections that originate in the BLA with those originating in the medial septal cholinergic fibers in the SO where the latter are believed to influence the activity of GABAergic interneurons (Freund and Antal 1988; Freund and Gulyas 1997). An important question that must be asked is whether a convergence of the medial septal inputs with those from the BLA (Freund and Gulyas 1997; Benes and Berretta 2000; Berretta et al. 2001, 2004; Gisabella et al. 2005, 2009) influences GABA cells in the SO of CA3/2. Is it possible that cholinergic fibers from the septal nuclei and glutamatergic fibers from the BLA may terminate on precisely the same GABA cells at this locus or do they perhaps converge on different subtypes of interneuron? Subpopulations of GABA cells can be defined using different criteria, such as their electrical properties, resting membrane potential, input resistance, afterhyperpolarization amplitude or action potential amplitude, and duration or

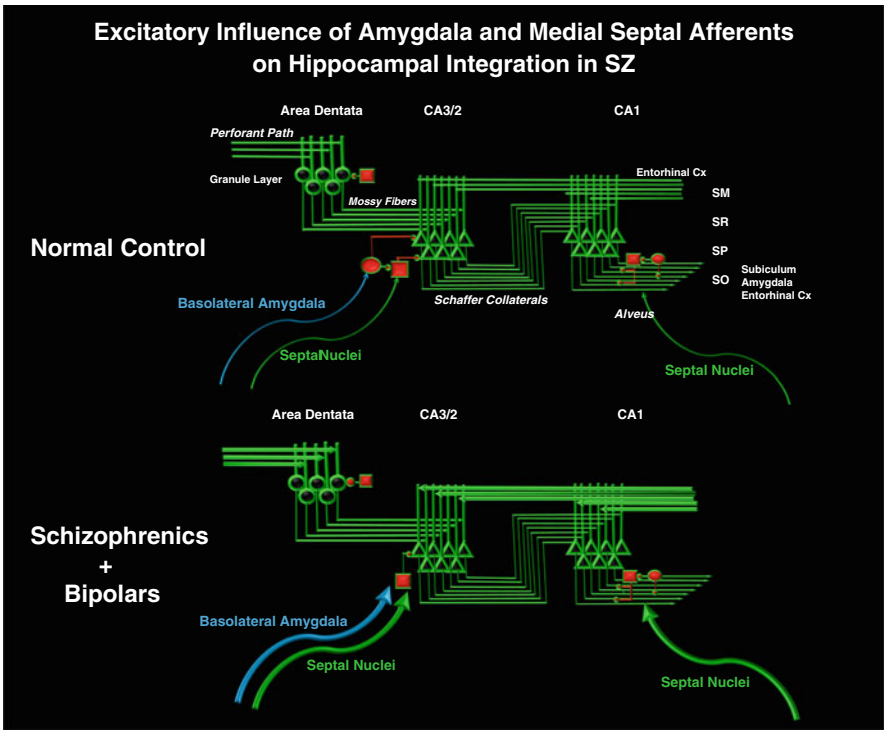



**Fig. 2** A schematic diagram showing the trisynaptic pathway consisting of projection neurons (*green*) in the area dentata and sectors CA3,2 and 1. In normal controls (*upper*) each sector, GABAergic interneurons (*red*) are present and provide inputs from inhibitory (*square*) and disinhibitory (*round*) interneurons. In schizophrenia patients (*lower*) there is a selective loss of interneurons in the SO of sector CA3/2. Fibers from the septal nuclei (*green*) and basolateral amygdala (*blue*) provide excitatory inputs to both inhibitory and disinhibitory GABA cells

firing rate (Gisabella et al. 2009). Some cholinergic projections from the medial septal area are GABAergic in nature and may provide GABA-to-GABA inhibitory inputs to interneurons intrinsic to the SO of CA3/2 (Freund and Antal 1988; Freund and Gulyas 1997). Indeed, synaptically and electrically coupled networks of parvalbumin-containing basket cells precisely coordinate mechanisms involved in the generation of gamma and theta oscillations, and are indispensable for basic cortical processing (Freund 2003). Some interneurons establish a highly plastic network of interneurons that carry information from subcortical pathways, like the septal area and amygdala, and may influence emotional and motivational states by fine-tuning network cooperativity within these circuits. Nicotinic cholinergic fibers from the medial septum could play an important role in these mechanisms.

As inferred from the circuitry diagram in Fig. 1, cholinergic nicotinic receptors can potentially be implicated in the regulation of GAD67 expression in GABA cells in the SO of CA3/2 of the human hippocampus (Benes et al. 2008). While the data

**Table 1** Expression of nicotine cholinergic receptor subunits in stratum oriens of sectors CA3/2 and CA1

| | | Schizophrenia | | Bipolar disorder | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | FC | *P*-value | | FC | *P*-value |
| CA3/2 | Nicotinic 5 | 1.30 | 0.022 | Nicotinic α3 | −1.34 | 0.025 |
| | | | | Nicotinic α7 | −1.58 | 0.037 |
| | | | | Nicotinic δ | −1.23 | 0.038 |
| | | | | Nicotinic ε | −1.50 | 0.026 |
| CA1 | Nicotinic α2 | −1.32 | 0.047 | Nicotinic α1 | −1.70 | 0.019 |
| | Nicotinic δ | −1.51 | 0.041 | Nicotinic α2 | −1.27 | 0.008 |
| | | | | Nicotinic α4 | −1.29 | 0.030 |
| | | | | Nicotinic β3 | −1.26 | 0.027 |
| | | | | Nicotinic γ | −1.93 | 0.022 |

Data shown represent the fold change (FC) and *P*-value for each gene represented. These data were first reported by Benes et al. (2008) in PNAS

shown in Table 1 suggest that changes in nicotinic receptors are most robustly present in patients with bipolar disorder, decreases in nicotinic receptor activity have been previously reported in patients with SZ (Freedman et al. 1995). Genes that encode nicotinic receptor subunits may potentially interact with other genes associated with the GAD67 regulatory network that we identified in our microarray studies. As shown in Fig. 2, both schizophrenia and bipolar patients show changes in the expression of genes associated with cell cycle and DNA repair and these changes may influence whether a GABA cell at this locus is capable of successfully repairing damaged DNA (Benes et al. 2009). The target genes showing significant changes in expression and the direction of those changes vary considerably in schizophrenia and bipolar disorder (Fig. 3), suggesting that a common cell phenotype (i.e., decreased GAD67 expression) may arise from molecular mechanisms found in fundamentally different molecular endophenotypes embodied within certain cell populations. Although decreased GAD67 expression has been found in the SO of CA3/2 of both disorders, it seems likely that the underlying mechanism(s) are indeed fundamentally different. For example, the GRIK1 kainate receptor subunit was significantly down-regulated, but there were no other changes in AMPA or NMDA receptors. In contrast, the nicotinic cholinergic receptor polypeptides, alpha 3, alpha 7, delta, and epsilon were all down-regulated in SO of CA2/3 of bipolar patients (Table 1). In this same layer in CA1, the bipolar patients also showed significant decreases in the expression of nicotinic receptor subunits; however, as shown in Table 1, these represented a different subset of subunit isoforms that included alpha 1, 2, beta 3 and gamma; the alpha 4 subunit was significantly upregulated. In schizophrenia patients, on the other hand, only the nicotinic 5 subunit showed a significant increase in expression in the SO of CA3/2, but in CA1, the alpha 2 and delta, subunits were significantly down-regulated.

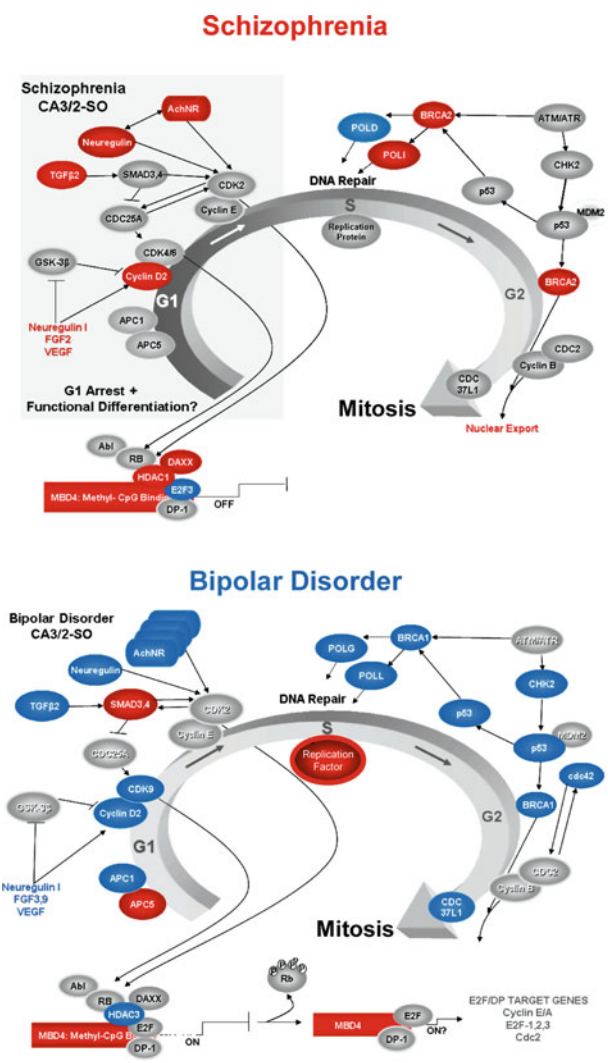



**Fig. 3** Many genes involved in the regulation of the G1 and G2 check points in GABA cells show abnormal expression in the stratum oriens (SO) of CA3/2 of schizophrenia patients (SZs; upper panel) and bipolar patients (BDs; lower panel). In schizophrenia, in each of the diagrams, the G1 and G2 phases of cell cycle and their associated genes. Genes showing increased, decreased, or no change in expression are indicated in *red*, *blue*, or *gray*, respectively. Many different DNA polymerases show significant changes in expression of both schizophrenia and bipolar patients, suggesting that the cell cycle apparatus in these GABAergic interneurons may play a crucial role in the appearance of duplications and deletions of target genes associated with the regulation of GAD67 in postmitotic hippocampal GABA cells in schizophrenia and bipolar disorder, respectively (Benes et al. 2009)

## 4 A Role for Nicotinic Receptors in GABA Cell Regulation?

In the hippocampus, exposure to acetylcholine is associated with a complete blockade of evoked GABA release, an effect that appears to be modulated by alpha 7 as well as alpha 4 beta 2 nicotinic cholinergic receptors (Albuquerque et al. 1998). In the neocortex, however, the response of interneurons to cholinergic stimulation may preferentially involve alpha 4, alpha 5, and beta 2 nicotinic receptor subunits, but not the alpha 7 subunit (Porter et al. 1999). This observation suggests that there may be considerable subregional variation in the integration of cholinergic projections with GABA cells and perhaps other afferent projection systems found in various corticolimbic termination sites.

The genes associated with cell cycle regulation and its interface with the DNA repair response are believed to play a role in the regulation of GAD67 regulation in interneurons of the SO of CA3/2 (Fig. 1). Some of the genes that may play an important role in "triggering" responses within these complex networks are a variety of trophins, signaling pathways and growth factors. Although the diagram in Fig. 1 implies that the nicotinic receptor subunits may interact broadly with the network of genes depicted, closer examination of the diagram demonstrates that these genes seem to engage in a rather focused interaction with CDK2, a cyclin-dependent kinase, that plays a critical role in the regulation of cell cycle progression. This interaction could contribute to the regulation of genes associated with the maintenance of the G1 and G2 checkpoint mechanisms and the DNA repair response (Benes et al. 2009). As shown in Table 1, the subunits involved and the nature of the changes they show in their expression seem to vary considerably in schizophrenia versus bipolar disorder (Benes 2011). Changes in the expression of these genes are most striking in bipolar disorder, where widespread decreases in the expression of neuregulin I (NRG 1), FGF3, FGF 9, neurotrophin 3 and VEGF have been observed (Benes et al. 2009). Other genes that may play a particularly important role include components of the TGF signaling path (i.e., TGFβ2, its receptor TGFβ2 and SMAD3), as well as cyclin D2 (CCD2), CDK9, BRCA1, CDC42, CDC371, HDAC3, p53, CHK2, and the DNA polymerases POLG and POLL [for a more detailed discussion of cell cycle genes in schizophrenia and bipolar disorder, refer Benes (2011). In schizophrenia, neuregulin 1, FGF2 and VEGF, as well as TGFβ2, cyclin D2, HDAC1, its co-repressor DAXX, BRCA1, and two DNA polymerases POLD and POLI also showed significant changes in expression; however, the transcripts for almost all of these genes were significantly increased (Benes et al. 2009). In both disorders, however, MBD4 was significantly increased, potentially suggesting that this gene may play a pivotal role in the repair response, albeit one that varies according to other genetic changes associated with endophenotypes present in specific disorders.

To understand the implications of these findings in schizophrenia and bipolar disorder, it is appropriate to consider the potential ways in which nicotinic receptors may influence the functional and genomic integrity of hippocampal GABA cells. The nicotinic receptor system has been associated with both the occurrence of cytotoxic

changes in undifferentiated cells and in the survival of differentiated neurons (Berger et al. 1998). As shown in Fig. 1, the alpha, beta, gamma, delta, or epsilon subunits of nicotinic receptors may influence the regulation of cell fate (Si et al. 1998). Interestingly, NRG 1 may also contribute to the activity of nicotinic receptors in hippocampal GABA cells at the SO-CA3/2 locus, as it does in skeletal muscle and cardiac myocytes (Si et al. 1998). In the peripheral nervous system, NRG 1 is necessary for the ability of parasympathetic fibers to inhibit peripheral end organs (Okoshi et al. 2004). The differentiation of post-mitotic cells may require CDK2 as an intermediate molecule that integrates NRG 1-activated signals from both the MAPK and PI3K signaling pathways with the expression of the epsilon subunit of the ACh receptor (Lu et al. 2005). CDK2 forms a complex with cyclin E, a key element for the progression of cell cycle from G1 toward the G2 checkpoint where a variety of outcomes for a cell may be determined. Two critical elements in this progression are the retinoblastoma family of proteins (Rb) that are not actually required for the maintenance of post-mitotic neurons, but are essential for differentiated neurons to exit the cell cycle and survive (Slack et al. 1998). As shown in Fig. 1, the tyrosine kinase, ABL, forms a complex with Rb (Chen et al. 1996); together they can suppress the entire transcriptional complex (Riley et al. 1994). This process also involves E2F forming a protranscriptional complex with DP-1 (Ishida et al. 2005). When Rb is phosphorylated by a CDK (Lim and Qi 2003), the transcriptional complex can be switched to the "ON" state where cell cycle progression and DNA repair may be triggered. Theoretically, this mechanism could also lead to apoptotic changes via a p53 pathway; however, microarray evidence has not demonstrated changes in this pathway in the SO of CA3/2 or CA1 in either schizophrenia or bipolar patients.

The transcriptional complex has the ability to promote the expression of E2F and cyclin E, key elements in the progression of cell cycle. Recent evidence is suggesting, however, that the interactions of E2Fs with Rb appears to involve increasingly diverse, context-dependent functions related to cellular differentiation (McClellan and Slack 2007). How this may relate to post-mitotic differentiated neurons in the adult hippocampus is not yet understood. Suppression of the transcriptional complex requires the activation of methyl-CpG binding protein 4 (MBD4) and histone deacetylase (HDAC) upon which it depends (Kondo et al. 2005).

Nicotine exposure is capable of inducing proliferative activity in cells through mechanisms that involve increased binding of Raf-1 kinase to the Rb protein, activation of cyclins D and E and the induction of proliferative promoters (Dasgupta and Chellappan 2006). In some forms of cancer, the alpha7 subunit of the nicotinic receptor (AChNR) is thought to play an important role in cell growth and tumor progression, as well as cell death, (Paleari et al. 2008). Consistent with this role, nicotine treatment is associated with a failure of G1 arrest, and a dysregulation of Rb, and E2F activity (Chu et al. 2005). Over-expression of the alpha 7 nicotinic subunit has been found to prevent G1 arrest (Utsugisawa et al. 2002) and implies that progression toward the G2 checkpoint could occur in this setting. If so, such a mechanism could be associated with tumor formation, apoptotic cell death, or DNA repair. In bipolar disorder, where pronounced reductions in

the expression of four different AChNR subunits have been observed (refer to Table 1), normal expression of CDK2, cyclin E, Rb and Abl would be consistent with GABA cells at this locus showing at least baseline activation of the transcriptional complex, with progression from the G1 checkpoint to the G2 checkpoint being possible under normal conditions. If GABA cells at the SO-CA3/2 locus are normally in the "ON" state, activation of the MBD4 protein could provide a permissive environment enabling the repair of damaged DNA.

In bipolar disorder, the down-regulation of other genes, such as BRCA1, CHK3, p53, POLG, and POLL, that are potentially associated with the repair response for a cell subjected to oxidative stress, could indicate that repair of genomic DNA may not be successful. Consistent with an earlier report in the cingulate cortex, a recent study of copy number variants (CNVs) at the SO-CA3/2 locus of bipolar patients demonstrated that several of the genes associated with the regulation of GAD67 have a significant decrease in CNVs (Sheng et al. 2012). For genes in the GAD67 regulatory network, the changes in CNVs (i.e., deletions) correlate significantly with the decreased expression of mRNA for these genes at precisely the same locus. On the other hand, genes principally involved in the regulation of cell cycle and DNA repair, though showing significant changes in CNVs, do not show significant correlations of the latter with the expression of their respective mRNAs (refer to Fig. 3). Taken together, these findings suggest that there are complex interactions among the genes shown in Fig. 1 that may result in adaptive or nonadaptive alterations of the genomic and functional integrity of GABA cells at the SO-CA3/2 locus. Nicotinic receptors may contribute to the modulation of these genes by directly interacting with components of the cell cycle pathway.

## 5 Nicotinic Receptors and Abnormal Regulation of Hippocampal GABA Cells

To understand how the genomic integrity and gene expression in GABA cells of the SO of CA3/2 may be regulated in bipolar disorder and schizophrenia, it is important to consider how two specific fiber systems may contribute to GAD67 regulation (Fig. 2). As discussed above, nicotinic receptors mediate the medial septal inputs to GABAergic interneurons at this locus, while kainate receptors influence, at least in part, excitatory BLA fibers (Fig. 4). On the one hand, nicotinic cholinergic receptors may influence the functional integrity of GABA cells through influences exerted on cell cycle and DNA repair, while BLA fibers may influence GABA cells via a complex network that regulates GAD67 expression (Benes 2011). The two molecular mechanisms are interconnected via key genes that include CDK2 and Cyclin E versus HDAC1 and DAXX, respectively. The nicotinic receptors may also influence the regulation of GAD67 expression in GABA cells, but indirectly through molecular mechanisms that are fundamentally different. As shown in Fig. 1, kainate receptors may influence GAD67 expression through changes in the

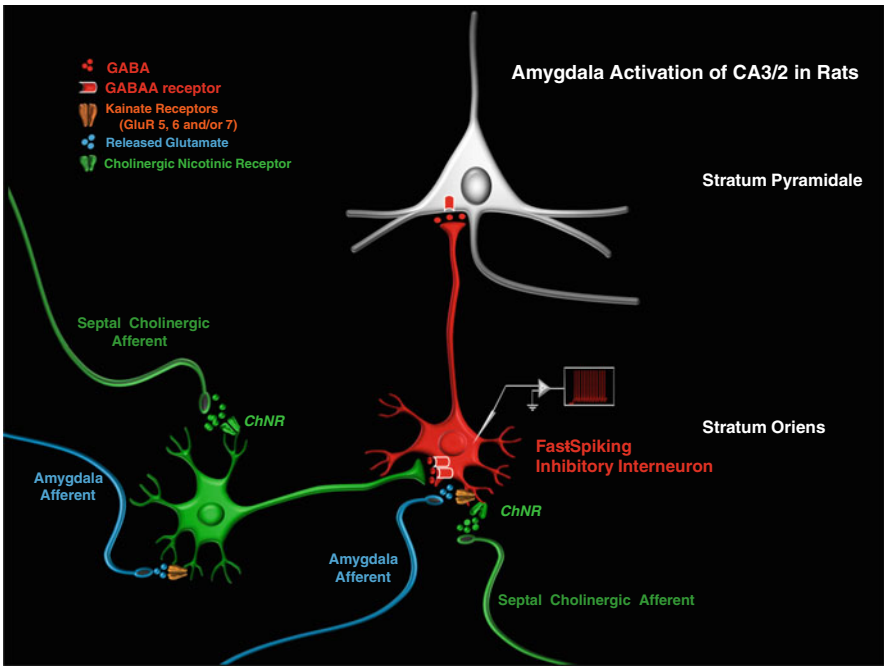



**Fig. 4** A schematic diagram depicting fibers from the medial septal nuclei (*green*) projecting to inhibitory fast-spiking (FS) and disinhibitory non-FS GABA cells in the stratum oriens (SO) of CA3/2. The excitatory effect of these fibers is mediated by cholinergic nicotinic receptors that are probably located on the dendritic tree of the GABA cells. Additionally, fibers from the basolateral amygdala (*blue*; BLA) also project to the SO of CA3/2 and activate GABA cells via kainate receptors containing GluR5, 6, and 7 subunits. It is not known, however, whether both medial septal and BLA fiber types converge on the same GABA subtypes or whether inhibitory and disinhibitory GABA neurons express nicotinic receptors, kainate receptors, or possibly both types

expression of modulation of β-catenin acting indirectly via HDAC1 and DAXX or by influencing the activity of SMAD3 and the transcription factors Runx2, TLE1, and PAX5. Taken together, these genes may contribute to G1 arrest, cell cycle regulation, and progression toward the DNA repair mechanisms (Benes 2011). For the nicotinic receptors, however, direct regulation of GAD67 expression could also occur through an NRG1-mediated effect on GSK3β, a component of Wnt signaling, that is a key component of this network.

It does seem plausible that a decrease of cholinergic activity from medial septal afferents impinging on hippocampal interneurons could contribute to GABAergic dysfunction (Sotty et al. 2003). These projections are thought to play a role in regulating hippocampal rhythmicity and could contribute to abnormal oscillatory activity originating in the SO of CA3/2. An interplay between septal neurons via GABA-A receptors is critical in the tuning of septal output signals that insure the generation of natural theta rhythm as well as adequate functioning of the hippocampus (Butuzova and Kitchigina 2008). Agonists of the alpha 7 nicotinic receptor

influence GABAergic transmission, not only by controlling the activity of cholinergic projections, but also by adjusting the rate of sodium channel inactivation associated with it (Alkondon et al. 1996). It should be noted that the cholinergic modulation of excitatory transmission in sector CA3 also involves muscarinic receptors, but it is not clear whether there is an interaction between these two receptor subtypes (Vogt and Regehr 2001). Muscarinic receptors did not show changes in expression in the SO of CA3/2 in either schizophrenia or bipolar disorder.

The alpha 7 nicotinic receptor blocker, methyllycaconitine, is capable of blocking somato-pyramidal, dendritic-pyramidal, and interneuronal inhibitory responses, suggesting that activation of this receptor results in significant inhibition of both hippocampal pyramidal neurons and interneurons (Buhler and Dunwiddie 2002). As depicted in Fig. 4, the latter observation is particularly relevant to postmortem studies in schizophrenia where a selective upregulation of GABA-A receptor binding activity has been detected on interneurons, but not pyramidal cells in sector CA3 (Benes et al. 1996b, 1997). This observation suggests that there might be a preferential loss of disinhibitory, rather than inhibitory GABA cells in sector CA3 of schizophrenia patients. Further support for this view comes from a study in rats which demonstrated that alpha 7 nicotinic receptor agonists depress GABA- or muscimol-evoked currents in interneurons, suggesting that a postsynaptic modulation of GABA-A receptors may be a major effect of this system (Wanaverbecq et al. 2007). Additionally, this study demonstrated that release of acetylcholine (ACh) from cholinergic axons evokes an alpha 7 receptor dependent heterosynaptic depression of GABAergic IPSCs in interneurons. This effect is enhanced by inhibiting cholinesterase activity and is consistent with the view that a disinhibitory GABAergic mechanism may be positively modulated by cholinergic fibers originating in the medial septal nuclei.

There are many different subtypes of GABAergic interneuron in the hippocampus. They may be defined by their size, shape, connectivity, synaptic interactions, and neuropeptide content (Freund and Buzsaki 1996), making it challenging to discover specific mechanisms that might be involved in mediating the effects of nicotinic cholinergic receptors. This situation is made much more complex by the fact that various receptors show many different permutations of subunit isoform composition, depending upon cell type and cellular compartment in which they are found. For the nicotinic receptors expressed by GABA cells, the majority are homomeric for the alpha 7 subunit; however, others include alpha2beta2, alpha4beta2, or alpha5beta2 heteromeric combinations (Son and Winzer-Serhan 2008).

This regulation of nicotinic receptors may also include growth factors (not discussed), such as neuregulin-I, presynaptic type III neuregulin-1 is required for sustained enhancement of hippocampal transmission by nicotine and for axonal targeting of alpha7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptors (Zhong et al. 2008). NRG1 has also been implicated as a risk gene for both schizophrenia (Harrison and Law 2006) and bipolar disorder (Georgieva et al. 2008). Indeed, there may be a specific molecular mechanism that may account for the association of neuregulin 1 risk alleles with the down-regulation of nAChR alpha7 expression seen in schizophrenia (Mathew et al. 2007).

## 6 Pharmacologic Strategies Using Nicotinic Receptors

There is a wide variety of drugs that act at nicotinic receptors. Among the agents is the drug bupropion, an antidepressant that specifically antagonizes α3β2 and α4β2 nicotinic receptors; unfortunately, this agent exerts only a weak effect at the α7 nicotinic subunit (Slemmer et al. 2000). Bupropion, which is used to assist patients who are withdrawing from nicotine, is associated with the occurrence of paradoxical depressive states. Other pharmacological agents active at nicotinic receptors that may have potential in clinical treatment of psychotic disorders include varenicline, a partial agonist at α4β2 and α3β4 nicotinic receptors; this drug is notably a full agonist at α7 subunits (Mihalak et al. 2006). Sudden withdrawal of varenicline has been associated with severe psychiatric symptoms that can include psychosis in some patients (McEvoy and Allen 2002). Some case reports have noted the occurrence of manic episodes in patients treated with varenicline for tobacco dependence (Alhatem and Black 2009; Francois et al. 2011; Knibbs and Tsoi 2011). Only one of these cases had no prior history of bipolar disorder (Hussain et al. 2011). Taken together, these studies suggest that pharmacological agents that manipulate nicotinic receptors may have potential for the treatment of bipolar disorder. In the context of the microarray results shown in Table 1, the fact that the expression of the alpha 7 subunit, as well as the alpha 3, delta, and epsilon subunits, are all significantly decreased at the SO-CA3/2 locus may suggest that the development of drugs with a more specific agonist profile for specific nicotinic receptor subunit permutations may help identify ones that target subpopulations of GABA cells in which these receptors are significantly down-regulated. A strategy of this type could theoretically help to stabilize mood states in patients with bipolar disorder, whether or not they are undergoing nicotine abstinence.

## 7 Conclusions

Based on the above discussion, cholinergic projection of medial septal afferents, together with glutamatergic afferents from the BLA, could potentially play a role in modulating the cellular and molecular mechanisms within GABA cells of the SO in CA3/2. In so doing, nicotinic receptors that mediate the action of acetylcholine at septo-dendritic synapses on interneurons at this locus may help to preserve the genomic and functional integrity of these post-mitotic neurons in the adult hippocampus through an appropriate modulation of cell cycle progression (Herrup and Yang 2007) and DNA repair (Helton and Chen 2007). In this context, the ability of hippocampal GABA cells to synthesize GAD67 and other proteins associated with their functional integrity may help to maintain inhibitory modulation on pyramidal neurons and perhaps even other GABA cells in dysfunctional circuitry. Novel treatment of bipolar disorder with agonists of the α7 and other subunit isoforms of nicotinic receptors does not necessarily imply that they play a causative or even

central role in the pathophysiology of this disorder. The highly significant downregulation of nicotinic subunits noted in the SO of CA3/2 may not be a primary feature of the illness, but possibly arise secondarily in response to changes in other genetic networks. If so, these changes may still offer a unique opportunity for adjusting the genomic and functional integrity of GABA cells and other extrinsic neural elements with which they interact.

**Acknowledgment** This work has been supported by grants from the National Institutes of Health (MH42261, MH77175, MH/NS31862 and the William P. and Henry B. Test Endowment).

## References

Akbarian S, Kim JJ, Potkin SG, Hagman JO, Tafazzoli A, Bunney WE Jr, Jones EG (1995) Gene expression for glutamic acid decarboxylase is reduced without loss of neurons in prefrontal cortex of schizophrenics. Arch Gen Psychiatry 52:258–266

Albuquerque EX, Pereira EF, Braga MF, Alkondon M (1998) Contribution of nicotinic receptors to the function of synapses in the central nervous system: the action of choline as a selective agonist of alpha 7 receptors. J Physiol Paris 92:309–316

Alhatem F, Black JE (2009) Varenicline-induced mania in a bipolar patient. Clin Neuropharmacol 32:117–118

Alkondon M, Pereira EF, Albuquerque EX (1996) Mapping the location of functional nicotinic and gamma-aminobutyric acidA receptors on hippocampal neurons. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 279:1491–1506

Benes FM, Berretta S (2000) Amygdalo-entorhinal inputs to the hippocampal formation in relation to schizophrenia. In: Scharfman HE, Witter MP, Schwarcz R (eds) Annals of the New York academy of sciences. New York Academy of Sciences, New York, NY, pp 293–304

Benes FM (2010) Relationship of GAD(67) regulation to cell cycle and DNA repair in GABA neurons in the adult hippocampus: bipolar disorder versus schizophrenia. Cell Cycle 9:625–627

Benes FM (2011) Regulation of cell cycle and DNA repair in post-mitotic GABA neurons in psychotic disorders. Neuropharmacology 60:1232–1242

Benes FM, Berretta S (2001) GABAergic interneurons: implications for understanding schizophrenia and bipolar disorder. Neuropsychopharmacology 25:1–27

Benes FM, Lim B, Subburaju S (2009) Site-specific regulation of cell cycle and DNA repair in post-mitotic GABA cells in schizophrenic versus bipolars. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 106:11731–11736

Benes FM, Vincent SL, Marie A, Khan Y (1996a) Up-regulation of GABAA receptor binding on neurons of the prefrontal cortex in schizophrenic subjects. Neuroscience 75:1021–1031

Benes FM, Khan Y, Vincent SL, Wickramasinghe R (1996b) Differences in the subregional and cellular distribution of GABAA receptor binding in the hippocampal formation of schizophrenic brain. Synapse 22:338–349

Benes FM, Kwok EW, Vincent SL, Todtenkopf MS (1998) A reduction of nonpyramidal cells in sector CA2 of schizophrenics and manic depressives. Biol Psychiatry 44:88–97

Benes FM, McSparren J, Bird ED, SanGiovanni JP, Vincent SL (1991) Deficits in small interneurons in prefrontal and cingulate cortices of schizophrenic and schizoaffective patients. Arch Gen Psychiatry 48:996–1001

Benes FM, Vincent SL, Alsterberg G, Bird ED, SanGiovanni JP (1992) Increased GABAA receptor binding in superficial layers of cingulate cortex in schizophrenics. J Neurosci 12:924–929

Benes FM, Wickramasinghe R, Vincent SL, Khan Y, Todtenkopf M (1997) Uncoupling of GABA (A) and benzodiazepine receptor binding activity in the hippocampal formation of schizophrenic brain. Brain Res 755:121–129

Benes FM, Lim B, Matzilevich D, Subburaju S, Walsh JP (2008) Circuitry-based gene expression profiles in GABA cells of the trisynaptic pathway in schizophrenics versus bipolars. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 105:20935–20940

Benes FM, Lim B, Matzilevich D, Walsh JP, Subburaju S, Minns M (2007) Regulation of the GABA cell phenotype in hippocampus of schizophrenics and bipolars. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 104:10164–10169

Berger F, Gage FH, Vijayaraghavan S (1998) Nicotinic receptor-induced apoptotic cell death of hippocampal progenitor cells. J Neurosci 18:6871–6881

Berretta S, Munno DW, Benes FM (2001) Amygdalar activation alters the hippocampal GABA system: "partial" modelling for postmortem changes in schizophrenia. J Comp Neurol 431:129–138

Berretta S, Lange N, Bhattacharyya S, Sebro R, Garces J, Benes FM (2004) Long-term effects of amygdala GABA receptor blockade on specific subpopulations of hippocampal interneurons. Hippocampus 14:876–894

Buhler AV, Dunwiddie TV (2002) Alpha 7-nicotinic acetylcholine receptors on GABAergic interneurons evoke dendritic and somatic inhibition of hippocampal neurons. J Neurophysiol 87:548–557

Butuzova MV, Kitchigina VF (2008) Repeated blockade of GABAA receptors in the medial septal region induces epileptiform activity in the hippocampus. Neurosci Lett 434:133–138

Chen Y, Knudsen ES, Wang JY (1996) Cells arrested in G1 by the v-Abl tyrosine kinase do not express cyclin A despite the hyperphosphorylation of RB. J Biol Chem 271:19637–19640

Chu M, Guo J, Chen CY (2005) Long-term exposure to nicotine, via ras pathway, induces cyclin D1 to stimulate G1 cell cycle transition. J Biol Chem 280:6369–6379

Dasgupta P, Chellappan SP (2006) Nicotine-mediated cell proliferation and angiogenesis: new twists to an old story. Cell Cycle 5:2324–2328

Francois D, Odom A, Kotbi N (2011) A case of late-life onset mania during Varenicline assisted smoking cessation. Int J Geriatr Psychiatry 26:658–659

Freedman R, Hall M, Adler LE, Leonard S (1995) Evidence in postmortem brain tissue for decreased numbers of hippocampal nicotinic receptors in schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 38:22–33

Freedman R, Wetmore C, Stromberg I, Leonard S, Olson L (1993) Alpha-bungarotoxin binding to hippocampal interneurons: immunocytochemical characterization and effects on growth factor expression. J Neurosci 13:1965–1975

Freund TF (2003) Interneuron diversity series: rhythm and mood in perisomatic inhibition. Trends Neurosci 26:489–495

Freund TF, Antal M (1988) GABA-containing neurons in the septum control inhibitory interneurons in the hippocampus. Nature 336:170–173

Freund TF, Buzsaki G (1996) Interneurons of the hippocampus. Hippocampus 6:347–470

Freund TF, Gulyas AI (1997) Inhibitory control of GABAergic interneurons in the hippocampus. Can J Physiol Pharmacol 75:479–487

Georgieva L, Dimitrova A, Ivanov D, Nikolov I, Williams NM, Grozeva D, Zaharieva I, Toncheva D, Owen MJ, Kirov G, O'Donovan MC (2008) Support for neuregulin 1 as a susceptibility gene for bipolar disorder and schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 64(5):419–427

Gisabella B, Bolshakov VY, Benes FM (2005) Regulation of synaptic plasticity in a schizophrenia model. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 102:13301–13306

Gisabella B, Cunningham MG, Bolshakov VY, Benes FM (2009) Amygdala-dependent regulation of electrical properties of hippocampal interneurons in a model of schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 65:464–472

Golebiewski H, Eckersdorf B, Konopacki J (2002) Septal cholinergic mediation of hippocampal theta in the cat. Brain Res Bull 58:323–335

Guidotti A, Auta J, Davis JM, Gerevini VD, Dwivedi Y, Grayson DR, Impagnatiello F, Pandey G, Pesold C, Sharma R, Uzunov D, Costa E (2000) Decrease in reelin and glutamic acid decarboxylase67 (GAD67) expression in schizophrenia and bipolar disorder: a postmortem brain study. Arch Gen Psychiatry 57:1061–1069

Harrison PJ, Law AJ (2006) Neuregulin 1 and schizophrenia: genetics, gene expression, and neurobiology. Biol Psychiatry 60:132–140

Heckers S, Konradi C (2010) Hippocampal pathology in schizophrenia. Curr Top Behav Neurosci 4:529–553

Helton ES, Chen X (2007) p53 modulation of the DNA damage response. J Cell Biochem 100:883–896

Herrup K, Yang Y (2007) Cell cycle regulation in the postmitotic neuron: oxymoron or new biology? Nat Rev Neurosci 8:368–378

Hussain S, Kayne E, Guwanardane N, Petrides G (2011) Varenicline induced mania in a 51 year old patient without history of bipolar illness. Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry 35:1162–1163

Ishida H, Masuhiro Y, Fukushima A, Argueta JG, Yamaguchi N, Shiota S, Hanazawa S (2005) Identification and characterization of novel isoforms of human DP-1: DP-1{alpha} regulates the transcriptional activity of E2F1 as well as cell cycle progression in a dominant-negative manner. J Biol Chem 280:24642–24648

Knibbs N, Tsoi DT (2011) Varenicline induces manic relapse in bipolar disorder. Gen Hosp Psychiatry 33(641):e641–e642

Kondo E, Gu Z, Horii A, Fukushige S (2005) The thymine DNA glycosylase MBD4 represses transcription and is associated with methylated p16(INK4a) and hMLH1 genes. Mol Cell Biol 25:4388–4396

Konradi C, Zimmerman E, Yang K, Lohmann K, Gresch P, Pantazopoulos H, Berretta S, Heckers S (2011a) Hippocampal interneurons in bipolar disorder. Arch Gen Psychiatry 68:340–350

Konradi C, Yang CK, Zimmerman EI, Lohmann KM, Gresch P, Pantazopoulos H, Berretta S, Heckers S (2011b) Hippocampal interneurons are abnormal in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 131(1–3):165–173

Lim AC, Qi RZ (2003) Cyclin-dependent kinases in neural development and degeneration. J Alzheimers Dis 5:329–335

Lu G, Seta KA, Millhorn DE (2005) Novel role for cyclin-dependent kinase 2 in neuregulin-induced acetylcholine receptor epsilon subunit expression in differentiated myotubes. J Biol Chem 280:21731–21738

Mathew SV, Law AJ, Lipska BK, Davila-Garcia MI, Zamora ED, Mitkus SN, Vakkalanka R, Straub RE, Weinberger DR, Kleinman JE, Hyde TM (2007) Alpha7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptor mRNA expression and binding in postmortem human brain are associated with genetic variation in neuregulin 1. Hum Mol Genet 16:2921–2932

McClellan KA, Slack RS (2007) Specific in vivo roles for E2Fs in differentiation and development. Cell Cycle 6:2917–2927

McEvoy JP, Allen TB (2002) The importance of nicotinic acetylcholine receptors in schizophrenia, bipolar disorder and Tourette's syndrome. Curr Drug Targets CNS Neurol Disord 1:433–442

Mihalak K, Carroll FI, Luetje CW (2006) Varenicline is a partial agonist at alpha4beta2 and a full agonist at alpha7 neuronal nicotinic receptors. Mol Pharmacol 70:801–805

Okoshi K, Nakayama M, Yan X, Okoshi MP, Schuldt AJ, Marchionni MA, Lorell BH (2004) Neuregulins regulate cardiac parasympathetic activity: muscarinic modulation of beta-adrenergic activity in myocytes from mice with neuregulin-1 gene deletion. Circulation 110:713–717

Paleari L, Catassi A, Ciarlo M, Cavalieri Z, Bruzzo C, Servent D, Cesario A, Chessa L, Cilli M, Piccardi F, Granone P, Russo P (2008) Role of alpha7-nicotinic acetylcholine receptor in human non-small cell lung cancer proliferation. Cell Prolif 41:936–959

Porter JT, Cauli B, Tsuzuki K, Lambolez B, Rossier J, Audinat E (1999) Selective excitation of subtypes of neocortical interneurons by nicotinic receptors. J Neurosci 19:5228–5235

Riley DJ, Lee EY, Lee WH (1994) The retinoblastoma protein: more than a tumor suppressor. Annu Rev Cell Biol 10:1–29

Sheng G, Demers M, Subburaju S, Benes FM (2012) Circuitry-based association of copy number variants and gene expression differs in the hippocampus of schizophrenics and bipolars. Arch Gen Psychiatry. Epub date 2012/02/09, ISSN 1538-5636, Accession Number 22309971

Si J, Tanowitz M, Won S, Mei L (1998) Regulation by ARIA/neuregulin of acetylcholine receptor gene transcription at the neuromuscular junction. Life Sci 62:1497–1502

Slack RS, El-Bizri H, Wong J, Belliveau DJ, Miller FD (1998) A critical temporal requirement for the retinoblastoma protein family during neuronal determination. J Cell Biol 140:1497–1509

Slemmer JE, Martin BR, Damaj I (2000) Bupropion is a nicotinic antagonist. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 295:321–327

Son JH, Winzer-Serhan UH (2008) Expression of neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor subunit mRNAs in rat hippocampal GABAergic interneurons. J Comp Neurol 511:286–299

Sotty F, Danik M, Manseau F, Laplante F, Quirion R, Williams S (2003) Distinct electrophysiological properties of glutamatergic, cholinergic and GABAergic rat septohippocampal neurons: novel implications for hippocampal rhythmicity. J Physiol 551:927–943

Utsugisawa K, Nagane Y, Obara D, Tohgi H (2002) Overexpression of alpha7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptor prevents G1-arrest and DNA fragmentation in PC12 cells after hypoxia. J Neurochem 81:497–505

Vogt KE, Regehr WG (2001) Cholinergic modulation of excitatory synaptic transmission in the CA3 area of the hippocampus. J Neurosci 21:75–83

Volk DW, Austin MC, Pierri JN, Sampson AR, Lewis DA (2000) Decreased glutamic acid decarboxylase67 messenger RNA expression in a subset of prefrontal cortical gamma-aminobutyric acid neurons in subjects with schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 57:237–245

Wanaverbecq N, Semyanov A, Pavlov I, Walker MC, Kullmann DM (2007) Cholinergic axons modulate GABAergic signaling among hippocampal interneurons via postsynaptic alpha 7 nicotinic receptors. J Neurosci 27:5683–5693

Woo TU, Walsh JP, Benes FM (2004) Density of glutamic acid decarboxylase 67 messenger RNA-containing neurons that express the N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor subunit NR2A in the anterior cingulate cortex in schizophrenia and bipolar disorder. Arch Gen Psychiatry 61:649–657

Woo TU, Shrestha K, Amstrong C, Minns MM, Walsh JP, Benes FM (2007) Differential alterations of kainate receptor subunits in inhibitory interneurons in the anterior cingulate cortex in schizophrenia and bipolar disorder. Schizophr Res 96:46–61

Zhong C, Du C, Hancock M, Mertz M, Talmage DA, Role LW (2008) Presynaptic type III neuregulin 1 is required for sustained enhancement of hippocampal transmission by nicotine and for axonal targeting of alpha7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptors. J Neurosci 28:9111–9116

# Development of Disease-Modifying Treatment of Schizophrenia

**Anton Bespalov, Corinna Klein, Berthold Behl, Gerhard Gross, and Hans Schoemaker**

## Contents



A. Bespalov (✉) • C. Klein • B. Behl • H. Schoemaker
Neuroscience Research, GPRD, Abbott, P.O. Box 67008, Ludwigshafen, Germany
e-mail: anton.bespalov@abbott.com

G. Gross
Abbott, Neuroscience Research, GPRD, 67061 Ludwigshafen, Germany

Institut für Pharmakologie, Universität Duisburg-Essen, Universitätsklinikum Essen, Hufelandstr. 55, 45122 Essen, Germany
e-mail: gerhard.j.gross@gmx.de

M.A. Geyer and G. Gross (eds.), *Novel Antischizophrenia Treatments*,
Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 213,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-25758-2_14, 

**Abstract** Development of disease-modifying therapies requires an innovative approach to drug development where novel drugs are designed to target mechanisms of interest rather than to produce preclinical effects similar to those of currently used antipsychotics. Application of such novel strategy will undoubtedly require a very deep understanding of the disease biology that is just starting to emerge. Alternatively, one may let environmental experiences of the diseased individual guide the repair process and use drugs only to facilitate the effects of experience. Such an approach would bring together functional experience that is age-, environment- and disease-dependent with the plasticity resources that may otherwise not be available. There are currently no preclinical drug–environment interaction models that can be claimed to have significant degrees of validity. Therefore, from a drug development perspective, principles that combine acute symptomatic and disease-modifying properties are clearly preferred. The question arises then how such treatments can be differentiated from those that have only symptomatic effects (i.e., most currently used antipsychotic medications). One expectation is that the former will show superior and broader efficacy (especially with longer treatment duration). Another possibility is that disease-modifying drugs will be particularly useful at the very earliest stages of the disease. Society and medical communities may not be ready yet to initiate the treatment as early as during the prodromal phase, but the situation may change by the time the science advances enough to bring a convincing case of a drug with disease-modification potential.

**Keywords** Drug–environment interaction • Neurodegeneration • Neuroinflammation • Demyelination • Plasticity • Epigenetics • Extracellular matrix • Neurogenesis • Cognitive behavioral therapy

## 1 Introduction

Since the 1950s, pharmacological treatment of schizophrenia patients is dominated by antipsychotic drugs that have dopamine $D_2$ receptor antagonist properties in common. Significant efforts have been invested into identifying novel treatments that would be of non-dopaminergic nature, and would maintain or exceed efficacy of dopamine $D_2$ antagonists while displaying reduced propensity to induce side effects commonly associated with the existing therapy. Despite a significant number of failures, recent studies on agonists acting at group II metabotropic glutamate receptors (mGluR2/3) keep the hope alive. Preclinically, mGluR2/3 agonists show robust efficacy in conventional antipsychotic tests such as conditioned avoidance response at the doses that produce no adverse effects of typical antipsychotics. Clinical studies confirm efficacy against positive and negative symptoms similar to that of current standards of care in the absence of significant side effects (Patil et al. 2007).

Introduction of novel principles such as mGluR2/3 agonists is very important for both clinical practice and preclinical science as it expands our knowledge about

fundamental mechanisms of the disease. The question though is whether these new treatments will provide symptomatic relief like the current drugs do or will go beyond that to induce true recovery processes.

In a recent perspective analysis of schizophrenia research, Thomas Insel of the U.S. National Institute of Mental Health discussed four key areas where significant changes are to be anticipated. Of direct relevance to the subject of this chapter, it was ventured that "refocusing our approach to schizophrenia on early detection and early intervention could yield substantial improvements in outcomes over the next decade or two" (Insel 2010). This emerging paradigm shift will revolutionize both preclinical and clinical science of schizophrenia and will directly address the other three topics that were high on Insel's list (reducing the cognitive deficits, integration of care, and destigmatization of schizophrenia).

## 2 Disease Modification in Schizophrenia?

Generally speaking, the main goal of a disease-modifying treatment is to alter the course of illness relative to no treatment or symptomatic therapy alone. For example, according to the 2008 EMA Guideline on Medicinal Products for the Treatment of Alzheimer's Disease and other Dementias, a disease-modifying claim can be considered if it can be shown that treatment delays the underlying disease processes and improves clinical signs and symptoms. The case of schizophrenia is similar albeit certainly more complicated.

Schizophrenia is seen as a neurodevelopmental disease meaning that various genetic and environmental factors affect prenatal and early postnatal brain development in a manner that, according to the two-hit hypothesis, makes it more sensitive to later influences that facilitate emergence of the clinical picture of schizophrenia (Bayer et al. 2011). So, technically speaking, disease-modification treatment could be directed at preventing or coping with the consequences of the early insult during the latent period through much of neural development until late adolescence/early adulthood when psychosis emerges. Over the last several years, various national as well as international initiatives focused on novel diagnostic tools that allow early identification of those who are at risk of developing psychosis (prodromal risk). Although there is certainly more work to be invested, such diagnostic tools can be sensitive and specific enough (in a prospective sense) to enable prevention studies in the prodromal risk populations (Woods et al. 2009).

Prodromal risk research is rapidly expanding and prodromal risk syndrome is even under evaluation for inclusion in the fifth edition of Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of mental disorders. It is obvious that, before prodromal risk syndrome becomes a target for therapeutic intervention, several major issues need to be solved (including removal of the stigma associated with schizophrenia).

Therefore, for the near-term future, disease-modifying treatment will not be applied before the first episode and in this sense schizophrenia becomes no different from diseases such as Alzheimer's where treatment is applied at relatively

late stages of the disease. Analogy with Alzheimer's disease also suggests that disease-modifying treatment of schizophrenia will differ from symptomatic treatment primarily by poor efficacy in conventional preclinical models of acute efficacy and longer clinical trials, both of which make disease-modification approaches highly prone to risk-aversive evaluation. Thus, for this field to move forward, one needs to develop novel preclinical models that would support efficacy claims as well as biomarkers for translational purposes.

## 3 Approaches to Disease Modification in Schizophrenia

As mentioned above, even if the treatment starts early during the prodromal phase, this is quite late as the disease process has been going already on for years. We still know fairly little about basic characteristics of this ongoing process. For example, there are studies pointing at neurodegeneration and neuroinflammation that may contribute to the disease state maintenance and progression (see below). Are these processes critical enough to be targeted therapeutically? There is no definitive answer but one may have arguments against the validity of these approaches.

### *3.1 Neurodegeneration: Chronic Process Difficult to Capture*

One of the best documented neurophysiological features of schizophrenia is misbalance between inhibitory GABAergic and excitatory glutamatergic neurotransmission (Lewis and Moghaddam 2006). Loss of GABAergic interneurons is observed together with a hyperactivity of the resting state network that is likely to be driven by a higher glutamatergic tone. Preclinically, NMDA hypofunction, one of the dominating theories in schizophrenia, is modeled by acute and repeated application of antagonists acting at the NMDA subtype of glutamate receptors such as the channel blockers phencyclidine (PCP), ketamine and MK-801. Blockade of NMDA receptors is thought to remove excitatory drive necessary to maintain activity of GABAergic interneuron networks that leads to disinhibition of glutamatergic transmission. This increased glutamatergic tone was confirmed by both neurochemical and electrophysiological studies. Neuroanatomically, treatment with NMDA receptor channel blockers is known for a number of years to induce neurodegenerative changes (Olney et al. 1991). However, so far it is not proven, whether neurodegeneration induced by NMDA receptor blockade reflects a mechanism involved in neurodegeneration in schizophrenia. If so, the theory of NMDA hypofunction is not in conflict with the hyperglutamatergic state that may arise as the result of this hypofunction and that may lead to neurodegenerative changes. The question is whether neuroprotective treatments would be of any therapeutic value. As this neurodegeneration is rather a secondary phenomenon that is taking its toll potentially after fairly long time, dedicated efforts to develop

and validate clinical efficacy of neuroprotective treatments may be hard to justify. However, there are several principles that may combine both symptomatic and disease-modifying qualities. Having such drugs developed for conventional efficacy will enable later longitudinal studies to address disease-modification claims. One example of such an approach is blockade of the AMPA subtype of glutamate receptors. AMPA receptor antagonists show efficacy in several traditional tests predictive of antipsychotic activity (e.g., conditioned avoidance response) and are known for their neuroprotective properties. While postsynaptically acting AMPA receptor antagonists are far from being ready for clinical testing in schizophrenia patients, presynaptic inhibition of glutamate release by mGluR2/3 agonists is thought to underlie clinical efficacy seen in the studies conducted thus far and may later shed some light on the long-term benefits of halting glutamatergic hyperactivity and associated neurodegeneration.

Reversal of the "primary" NMDA hypofunction underlying the hyperglutamatergic state is another approach to counteract neurodegeneration. D-serine as well as glycine transporter GlyT1 inhibition completely prevent regional neuronal activation induced by PCP in phMRI studies (Gozzi et al. 2008), likely reflecting reversal of disinhibited glutamatergic activity. The recent Phase 2 proof of concept study with the GlyT1 inhibitor RG1678 provided an initial signal that GlyT1 inhibition may improve negative symptoms. Further studies will confirm these effects and evaluate whether, in addition to relatively rapid symptomatic benefits, GlyT1 inhibition has a disease-modifying potential.

Instead of being a consequence of glutamatergic hyperactivity, chronic neurodegeneration may be due to a failure of persistent generation of dendrites and spines leading to the reduced cortical neuropil and enhanced cell density observed in postmortem studies. Neuregulin and Disrupted-In-Schizophrenia 1 (DISC1) transgenic mice as well as serine racemase knockout mice, which show an NMDA hypofunctional state, all exhibit impairments in the morphology of dendrites and/or dendritic spines (Balu et al. 2012; Chen et al. 2010; Jaaro-Peled 2009). Among conceivable approaches, those aiming at enhancement of NMDA receptor function likely represent the first mechanism which can be tested for counteracting the changes in brain morphology, including reversal of chronic degeneration of dendrites and spines.

## *3.2 Neuroinflammation: Pathological By-Product or Primary Offense Mechanism?*

Besides glutamate, there are a number of other factors that are involved in the neurodegenerative processes. Microglia, a major source of various inflammatory cytokines and free radicals such as superoxide and nitric oxide in the CNS, are thought to play a crucial role in a variety of neurodegenerative diseases. Activated microglia cells, characteristic for neuroinflammation, are involved in the removal of the infectious agents and irreversibly damaged brain tissue. Postmortem and

PET studies have indicated that activated microglia may be present in schizophrenic patients. Is microglia activation secondary to neurodegenerative processes in schizophrenia? There is again no definitive answer. Interestingly enough, recent in vitro studies have suggested that antipsychotic drugs may also have anti-inflammatory effects of their own (Kato et al. 2011). Drugs like risperidone and haloperidol were found to inhibit the production of nitric oxide, the expression of inducible nitric oxide synthase, and the production of proinflammatory cytokines by microglia cells. Similarly, olanzapine is also suggested to have anti-inflammatory properties, as it was shown that this drug reduces production of nitric oxide by lipopolysaccharide-stimulated microglia cells. Apparently, these anti-inflammatory effects of clinically used antipsychotics are fairly modest as results of several clinical trials that efficacy of add-on anti-inflammatory treatment in schizophrenia. For example, both patients with an acute exacerbation of schizophrenia and patients with chronic schizophrenia who were treated with the cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitor celecoxib in addition to risperidone had a significantly greater improvement on the PANSS than the patients who were treated with risperidone alone (Akhondzadeh et al. 2007; Müller et al. 2002). Furthermore, addition of aspirin to regular antipsychotic treatment was also found to substantially reduce negative symptoms of schizophrenia, compared with the treatment of patients with antipsychotics only (Laan et al. 2010). Yet, as a word of caution, these add-on studies revealed relatively modest effects and need to be repeated to reproduce the reported effects. Novel targets with higher specificity with regard to neuroinflammation and schizophrenia may have a better efficacy, especially if anti-inflammatory effects are coupled with another therapeutic mode of action (Meyer et al. 2011). Kynurenine aminotransferase II (KATII) inhibition is perhaps one example of such a novel principle.

One consequence of enhanced production of cytokines is increased expression of indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase that is responsible for production of kynurenines from L-tryptophan. One of the kynurenine metabolites found at enhanced levels in brains of schizophrenia patients is kynurenic acid, an endogenous ligand blocking both $\alpha_7$ nicotinic receptors and the glycine co-agonist site on the NMDA receptor complex (Wonodi and Schwarcz 2010). Both $\alpha_7$ and glycine/NMDA receptors represent advanced targets with a significant degree of clinical validation. Thus, by reducing synthesis of kynurenic acid, KATII inhibition may be able to block some of the consequences of inflammatory processes while achieving symptomatic relief through established receptor mechanisms. Enhancing NMDA receptor activity (e.g., by relieving NMDA receptors from being blocked by kynurenic acid) may in turn reverse pro-inflammatory effects and oxidative dysregulation associated with NMDA hypofunction. Repetitive dosing of NMDA receptor antagonists have been reported to increase the production of pro-inflammatory interleukin-6, which enhances superoxide production by NADPH oxidase leading to changes of the phenotype of parvalbumin interneurons, reminiscent for schizophrenia (Behrens and Sejnowski 2009). Although the effects of NMDA antagonists are reversible in the adult brain (as opposed to irreversible changes in the developing brain), they may link chronic NMDA hypofunction to impaired inhibitory functions of parvalbumin interneurons.

The example of KATII inhibition allows to illustrate one more important point, critical for discussion about approaching disease modification in schizophrenia. Kynurenic acid indeed blocks $\alpha_7$ and glycine/NMDA receptors. On the other hand, it has neuroprotective properties and its elevation in schizophrenia may actually be a part of an endogenous defense mechanism. When selecting a target based on the neurochemical changes observed in the disease state, there is often a risk of not recognizing these changes as adaptive and beneficial. For disease modification where lengthy clinical trials leave no right for mistake, this issue is especially relevant.

### *3.3 Myelin Deficiency: Friend or Foe?*

There are multiple sets of data indicating that changes in the oligodendrocyte (or their precursor) function underlie myelin impairment in schizophrenia. Myelin deficiency is confirmed at different levels ranging from diffusion tensor imaging to aberrant expression of myelin genes. In line with the dopamine theory of schizophrenia, excessive dopamine has a negative impact on mature and myelinating oligodendrocytes. Oligodendrocyte/myelin dysfunction leads to changes in the dopaminergic signaling while some antipsychotics were reported to enhance myelination and to reverse demyelination in experimental deficiency states [e.g., induced by long-term cuprizone treatment; (Takahashi et al. 2011; Xu et al. 2011)]. As CNS myelin is important for brain plasticity and its function is critical for maintaining proper brain circuitry, there is an obvious interest in treatments that reverse myelination deficits in schizophrenia beyond what can be achieved with currently used antipsychotics or act downstream to counteract consequences of reduced myelin function.

In the adult mammalian central nervous system the capability of repair after injury is limited. This limitation is partly due to inhibitory properties of CNS myelin, which directly blocks the outgrowth of neuronal processes. The Nogo-66 receptor (NgR) that binds several myelin inhibitory proteins such as myelin-associated glycoprotein and oligodendrocyte–myelin glycoprotein is frequently discussed in the context of myelination changes in schizophrenia because of the localization of NgR gene within the schizophrenia susceptibility locus 22Q11.2. Involvement of the NgR in plasticity mechanisms is supported by several sets of experimental evidence: e.g., NgR1 is enriched synaptically, its loss affects spine morphology, enhances LTP, and reduces LTD (Lee et al. 2008); Nogo-A destabilizes inhibitory GABAergic synapses (Aloy et al. 2006); antibody against Nogo-A reverses decrease in dendritic arborization and spine density after occlusion of the middle cerebral artery in rats (Papadopoulos et al. 2006), etc.

However, there seems to be a conceptual issue with approaching the NgR as a therapeutic target in schizophrenia. Genetic study of the Nogo receptor gene in three ethnically divergent samples revealed schizophrenia-associated Nogo receptor variants that act as dominant-negatives to disrupt endogenous receptor function (Budel et al. 2008). Since disrupted myelination in schizophrenia is of

no doubt, these results were taken to suggest that insufficient myelin-mediated inhibition of neuritic sprouting may underlie failure to restrict anatomical plasticity, thus increasing the risk for schizophrenia. Complex change of myelin function in schizophrenia is further emphasized by a recent study that confirmed abnormal infrastructure of long-distance neural communication in schizophrenia attributable to myelin deficiencies (Whitford et al. 2010). However, in this study the most severely psychotic patients were the least abnormal in terms of fiber fractional anisotropy and radial diffusivity of their frontal corpus callosum indicating that most simple-minded strategies aiming at enhancing myelination in schizophrenia may not necessarily lead to measurable therapeutic benefit.

Above examples of kynurenic acid and myelin deficiency illustrate that in order to discuss approaches to facilitate repair processes one needs to understand what exactly has to be corrected. One important lesson to be learned from the Nogo example is that plasticity in schizophrenia is not simply deficient but is rather aberrant.

## *3.4 Miswired Brain: Broad Concept Reflecting Core of the Disease*

There is nothing new or unexpected in saying that the brains of schizophrenia patients are not simply deficient of some specific factor or mechanism but are rather miswired and characterized by aberrant information processing. Further, it has been repeatedly demonstrated that relationships between stimuli inducing brain activity and functional outcome are rarely monophasic and are typically characterized by inverted U-shaped curves [e.g., $D_1$ receptor activation; fMRI activation in response to working memory load; (Arnsten 1998; Callicott et al. 2003)]. Taken together with the neurodevelopmental origin of schizophrenia, these notions illustrate the complexity of the disease process and provide perhaps the strongest arguments for pursuing disease-modification. Indeed, as one is not able to single out the most important mechanism(s) to be targeted for rapid therapeutic benefit and since we may have concerns about the direction in which certain functions have to be modulated in schizophrenia, why don't we let the brain guide the reparative processes? In other words, one may want to stimulate unused plasticity mechanisms while creating conditions for the brain to use these newly available resources to self-repair.

## *3.5 Does the Brain Need Additional Plasticity Resources?*

One hypothesis is that the disease would not be expressed or would develop to a lesser degree if necessary plasticity mechanisms were available at the time when the brain is exposed to guiding experience(s). Indeed, plasticity resources are at their highest expression in early age and significantly decrease by the time when

relevant social, cognitive, and noncognitive experience is obtained. It is at the latter time points that patients at-risk, being exposed to precipitating factors, progress to full-blown psychosis.

This proposal does not mean to indicate that, at early stages of the disease process, brain is not using available plasticity mechanisms. Instead, it is using the resources that are recruited by age-relevant experiences and needs, but these resources are not appropriately used or are not sufficient to deal with the consequences of earlier developmental insult(s).

## 4 Restoring Missing Plasticity Potential

From a functional perspective, neuronal networks in schizophrenia are characterized by impaired inhibition (e.g., in cortical areas). Several sets of both clinical data as well as results from preclinical models indicate a loss of GABAergic inhibitory interneurons that is responsible for disinhibition of glutamatergic pyramidal neurons, network desynchronization, and impaired cortical output (most significantly, inadequate cortical control over striatal function).

The most direct approach to compensate for the existing GABAergic deficits is via direct or indirect activation of GABAergic transmission using agonists or positive allosteric modulators of GABA receptors. There is a quite extensive experience with benzodiazepines, the most common clinically used GABAergic drugs. Preclinically, benzodiazepines often produce effects that suggest antipsychotic-like potential [e.g., reversal of phencyclidine-induced deficits of social interaction (Becker and Grecksch 2004)]. While benzodiazepines are also effective against psychotomimetic effects of the PCP-like anesthetic ketamine in humans (Haas and Harper 1992), overall clinical experience with benzodiazepines is rather controversial and the most recent Cochrane database review on augmentation of antipsychotics with benzodiazepines is inconclusive (Volz et al. 2007). It appears that this lack of consistent experience with benzodiazepines is attributable at least in part to differing and difficult to assess receptor subtype selectivity profiles of currently used benzodiazepines. Indeed, there are several benzodiazepine drugs (e.g., alprazolam, bretazenil), for which claims were made with regard to existence of specific antipsychotic activity, separable from sedative effects (Delini-Stula and Berdah-Tordjman 1996; Pato et al. 1989; Seeley et al. 2002). Reasons for such differences between drugs are not clear due to the overall poor subunit selectivity and issues associated with translating subtype selectivity observed preclinically using mostly functional assays with recombinant receptor systems.

Neuroanatomical findings from postmortem studies of brains of schizophrenia patients point at $\alpha_2$ subunit-containing $GABA_A$ receptors as one potential target that could make a benzodiazepine particularly suitable for the use in schizophrenia (Lewis et al. 2004). Reduced expression of $GAD_{67}$, GAT-1, and parvalbumin could be among the primary defects that lead to postsynaptic alternations such as enhanced expression of $\alpha_2$-containing $GABA_A$ receptors. Because $GABA_A$

receptors containing the $\alpha_2$ subunit are selectively localized to the axon initial segment of pyramidal cells, these receptors are involved in the feed-forward disynaptic inhibition, a process critically involved in network synchronization.

In line with this important function, stimulation of $\alpha_2$-containing $GABA_A$ receptors is expected to enhance working memory in schizophrenia, reverse deficits in subjects treated with NMDA receptor blockers such as ketamine (Castner et al. 2010), and facilitate EEG gamma-band power (Lewis et al. 2008). Unfortunately, these expectations were not upheld in a recent study that found no effects of the $\alpha_{2/3}$-selective compound TPA-023 (MK-0777) that did not affect BPRS and MCCB scores (Buchanan et al. 2011).

There are several potential explanations for this failure (e.g., short half-life, lack of functional selectivity versus other subtypes of $GABA_A$ receptors, development of tolerance, etc.). And yet, it is worth noting one further factor. Side effects of TPA-023 limited the study duration to 4 weeks. If restoration of network activity does not translate immediately into measurable functional benefits, such a short trial did not have a chance to reveal disease-modifying potential of this therapeutic approach.

## *4.1 Neurogenesis*

Reduced hippocampal volume is one of the most consistent neuropathological findings in the brains of schizophrenia patients. This abnormality may causally be related to reduced neurogenesis. Human studies support this link between schizophrenia and decreased hippocampal neurogenesis, as tissue from human schizophrenia patients has fewer proliferating Ki67-positive cells than tissue from control subjects (Reif et al. 2006). Several preclinical models of schizophrenia reproduce these changes in neurogenesis (e.g., a model mimicking maternal viral infection based on prenatal administration of double-stranded RNA, polyriboinosinicpolyribocytidylic acid—Poly I:C). Such reduction is in line with the current pathophysiological theories of schizophrenia. For example, excess dopamine is found to reduce neurogenesis via mechanisms involving stimulation of $D_2$ receptors (Kippin et al. 2005). The pathophysiology of schizophrenia may be linked not only to reduced overall rates of neurogenesis but also to aberrant positioning and impaired survival of newborn cells. Indeed, NMDA receptor blockade is known to cause aberrant positioning of newborn neurons, resulting in the overextension of their migration in the dentate gyrus (Namba et al. 2011). Interestingly, expression of one of the critical regulators of neuronal migration in hippocampus, DISC1, is negatively affected by blockade of NMDA receptors, providing yet another illustration of synergies between different mechanisms implicated in the schizophrenia pathophysiology. Would the strategy of increasing neurogenesis in schizophrenia bring any therapeutic benefit? There are three important qualifications to this question to be mentioned.

First, it needs to be established which cell type(s) can be newly generated and whether they can migrate to and assume the position that is required by the failing function. As cortical inhibition is often cited as being malfunctioning in schizophrenia, it is a logical desire to have pro-neurogenic therapy focused on inhibitory interneurons in the cortex. However, the cortex is certainly not well established as neurogenic area and evidence on cortical neurogenesis is controversial (Cameron and Dayer 2008).

Second, increased proliferation does not necessarily translate into increased survival of newborn cells. Survival can be significantly facilitated by appropriate behavioral training such as in rats undergoing eye blink conditioning or olfactory discrimination training (Mouret et al. 2008; Waddell and Shors 2008).

Third, experience with nonselective GABAergic drugs indicates that facilitation of GABAergic neurotransmission has to be rather selective. This means that the proneurogenic efforts need to result in a somewhat selective effect so that the new-born cells acquire the very specific missing function. There are multiple cell types with fine functional (sub)specialization in all areas implicated in the mechanisms of schizophrenia. As our understanding of this complex organization is rather poor, recovery processes need to be guided by functional activity. Just as the overall survival of newborn cells is known to depend on appropriate behavioral training, subtype selection and proper functional assignment of the newborn cells may also be guided by external experience(s).

## *4.2 Epigenetic Restraints on Plasticity*

There are a variety of genetic and environmental factors that all converge to produce down-regulation of $GAD_{67}$, reelin, and other genes expressed in GABAergic neurons. After the original insult (first hit), functional GABAergic downregulation may be maintained via epigenetic mechanisms. Epigenetic regulators of gene expression including DNA cytosine methylation and posttranslational histone modifications could play a role for some of the molecular alterations associated with schizophrenia. For example, in prefrontal cortex of subjects with schizophrenia, abnormal DNA or histone methylation at sites of specific genes and promoters is associated with changes in RNA expression. These findings are of interest from a neurodevelopmental perspective because there is increasing evidence that epigenetic markings for a substantial portion of genes and loci are highly regulated during the first years of life.

More specifically, the hypothesis that an epigenetic pathology of GABAergic promoters is operative in the transcriptional downregulation of several GABAergic genes in schizophrenia patients is supported by evidence that DNA methyl transferase 1 (DNMT1) is increased in striatal GABAergic medium spiny neurons and in GABAergic interneurons of the prefrontal cortex (Guidotti et al. 2009). This DNMT1 upregulation colocalizes with the decrease of reelin and $GAD_{67}$

expression. Hence, it was hypothesized that reversal of the hypermethylated state of GABAergic promoters will have a therapeutic effect (Guidotti et al. 2009).

One suggested way to approach that is via stimulation of nicotinic receptors. It was reported that nicotine as well as synthetic $\alpha_4\beta_2$ nicotinic receptor agonists such as varenicline and A-85380 produced a 30–40 % decrease of cortical DNMT1 mRNA and increased expression of $GAD_{67}$ mRNA and protein (Maloku et al. 2011). It is unclear whether these results can be taken to suggest the use of $\alpha_4\beta_2$ nicotinic receptor agonists in schizophrenia. Beneficial effects of nicotine (e.g., on $GAD_{67}$ expression) are achieved at the plasma concentrations comparable to those reported in cigarette smokers. Therefore, the question is whether $\alpha_4\beta_2$ nicotinic receptor agonists could add any value to schizophrenia patients, the vast majority of whom are smokers.

Another possibility to promote DNA demethylation is via inhibition of the histone deacetylase (HDAC). Both non-selective (such as valproate) and class I-selective HDAC inhibitors were reported to facilitate DNA demethylation of reelin and $GAD_{67}$ promoters (Dong et al. 2007). While these data still await confirmation and deeper analysis, there is a growing body of evidence on procognitive effects of HDAC inhibitors (Fischer et al. 2010). These acute procognitive effects (especially in hippocampus-dependent tasks in normal animals) may have mechanisms different from facilitation of GABAergic neurotransmission. Therefore, procognitive effects of HDAC inhibitors at present do not allow any conclusion of the potential of this principle to modify the disease beyond merely treating symptoms. In this context, it is worth mentioning that adding the non-selective HDAC inhibitor valproate to antipsychotic drug treatment regimen had hardly any meaningful effects on schizophrenia symptoms or global functional outcomes (Glick et al. 2009; Kelly et al. 2006). Interestingly, one of the studies noted some benefits of short-term valproate administration (1-month time point) that disappeared with prolonged treatment (6 months). Taken together with the lack of clear consensus regarding disease-associated epigenetic changes (Akbarian 2010), clinical experience with valproate may be taken to argue against the disease-modifying potential of HDAC inhibition in schizophrenia.

One reason for failing to see clinical efficacy with the valproate treatment is perhaps its lack of selectivity for HDAC subtypes. Indeed, significant evidence points at some subtypes such as HDAC2 as being more relevant for treatment of cognitive disorders. For schizophrenia though, stimulation of long-term memory alone may not be sufficient to yield significant functional improvements. For example, this exciting field has yet to demonstrate whether negative impact on maturation of newborn cells in the adult brain will not restrict the use of HDAC2 inhibitors (Jawerka et al. 2010).

It is often argued that removing epigenetic restraints is important for initiating "re-wiring" of the neuronal networks (e.g., in schizophrenia). This "re-wiring" is likely to require more than just increased acetylation or reduced methylation of DNA and it may require treatments with more complex and multi-faceted actions to achieve the desired result. As already argued above, pharmacological treatment may need to be combined with environmental stimulation. Concerning HDAC

inhibition, there is some evidence that it may be achieved not only with the pharmacological interventions but also via environmental enrichment. Indeed, effects of environmental enrichment seem to correlate with chromatin modifications (increased histone acetylation) that may be responsible for the observed induction of sprouting of dendrites, increased number of synapses, improved learning behavior, and better access to long-term memories (Fischer et al. 2007).

### *4.3 Extracellular Matrix and Critical Periods of Plasticity*

Another restraining factor is the perineuronal nets (PNNs), a highly organized form of extracellular matrix (ECM) containing chondroitin sulfate proteoglycans (CSPG). The ECM of the embryonic and juvenile brain is permissive and supportive for neurogenesis and gliogenesis, cell migration, axonal outgrowth, and synaptogenesis while the adult ECM is nonpermissive and inhibits regeneration and major reorganization processes in the CNS (Gundelfinger et al. 2010). ECM plays' a major role in mediating developmental changes in information storage in neuronal circuits, a role that may have different expressions. For example, in the basolateral amygdala, formation of PNNs marked the end of a developmental period during which fear memories could be erased by extinction (Gogolla et al. 2009). After a certain age, degradation of PNNs by chondroitinase-ABC was required to render fear memories susceptible to erasure via extinction. Given that cognitive inflexibility, aberrant salience attribution, and impaired extinction are features of schizophrenia, removing the protecting influence of ECM could enable network reorganization.

The critical period during which neuronal connections are susceptible to experience-dependent modifications, differs from brain area to brain area and from species to species, and can last for months to years in primates including humans (Hensch 2005). In cortical areas, the assembly of PNNs around parvalbumin-positive GABAergic interneurons contributes to the closure of critical period of plasticity and degradation of PNNs in adults re-enables the induction of ocular dominance plasticity (Pizzorusso et al. 2002). Thus, adult brain ECM is indeed inhibitory for experience-dependent plasticity, and degradation of PNNs may reactivate cortical plasticity.

There is certainly a growing body of evidence on ECM abnormalities in schizophrenia. For example, marked increases of CSPG-positive glial cells together with the reduction of CSPG-positive PNNs were detected in the medial temporal lobe of subjects with schizophrenia (Pantazopoulos et al. 2010). Together with the evidence on other ECM components (e.g., reelin, neuregulin 1, neural cell adhesion molecules, etc.), CSPG data indicate impaired ECM function. During development, ECM abnormalities will result in failures to stabilize successful sets of neural connections, complete maturation of selective neuronal populations, and transition to an adult form of plasticity (Berretta 2012). In the adult brain, impairing the ECM function may indeed facilitate certain aspects of plasticity. In the schizophrenia patient's brain,

though, where ECM function is already impaired, consequences of further interference with the ECM are not necessarily advantageous. Let us consider again results of the above-mentioned clinical genetic study on the Nogo receptor gene in schizophrenia (Budel et al. 2008). Results of these studies can be taken as an evidence for unrestrained anatomical plasticity in the schizophrenia brain. Such interpretation fits well with both ECM abnormalities in schizophrenia and the data suggesting that experience-dependent plasticity in the cortex is limited by the Nogo receptor (McGee et al. 2005).

One should also note that, in the adult CNS, ECM plays a number of roles beyond structural plasticity (Gundelfinger et al. 2010). For instance, ECM contributes to regulation of neurotransmitter diffusion and volume transmission: Being a negatively charged structure, CSPG-based ECM can affect diffusion of charged neurotransmitters such as glutamate out of the cleft. ECM has numerous components and many of them make their own individual contributions to efficiency of synaptic activity and the balance between excitatory and inhibitory neurotransmission. For example, mice over-expressing heparin-binding growth-associated molecule (pleiotrophin), a highly conserved ECM-associated protein, have accentuated hippocampal $GABA_A$ receptor-mediated inhibition (Pavlov et al. 2006). Thus, impaired ECM function may be associated with spillover glutamate and impaired GABAergic inhibition both of which will contribute to disorganization of network activity.

In sum, interfering with the ECM function may have varying outcomes and an approach based on something that is not very selective with regard to the specific functional mechanism affected in schizophrenia (e.g., proteolysis by tissue-type plasminogen activator) may actually be counterproductive.

## *4.4 Synaptic Connectivity*

The synaptic hypothesis of schizophrenia has arisen predominantly from the dopaminergic and glutamatergic hypotheses as well as genetic studies which have implicated genes which influence synaptic transmission (DISC1, neuregulin/ErbB4, dysbindin, Akt1, BDNF). For example, it is known that dopamine depletion (resulting from lesions in the midbrain dopaminergic areas) in the prefrontal cortex reduces dendritic spine density (Wang and Deutch 2008), an effect that is also observed in preclinical studies after long-term haloperidol treatment as well as in laboratory subjects exposed to sensitizing treatment with amphetamine-like drugs (Benes et al. 1985; Selemon et al. 2006). These changes are in line with the reports on reduced spine density in the postmortem analysis of cortical areas of schizophrenia patients brains (Kolluri et al. 2005). Interestingly, there are also studies that reported an opposite effect (especially in the striatum)—e.g., increase in the dendritic spine density after amphetamine sensitization (Li et al. 2003). There are of course various technological factors that cause discrepancies in the analysis of spine density and dynamics (Fu and Zuo 2011). However, patterns of synaptic changes in different brain areas may also reflect various aspects of disease

pathology (e.g., deficit symptoms associated with reduced synaptic connectivity in prefrontal cortex; productive symptoms associated with increased spine density in striatum). If this is indeed the case, therapeutic measures to modify synaptic connectivity in schizophrenia should also be rather discriminative. Environmental experience may not only bring such discriminative selectivity into the drug action but will also serve to stabilize plasticity changes (Holtmaat et al. 2006).

Besides structural "brakes" on adult brain plasticity, such as PNNs or myelin, there are also functional restraints, acting directly upon the excitatory–inhibitory balance within local circuits (Hensch 2005). Here again plasticity can be induced via different approaches. For instance, in mice lacking a synaptic isoform of glutamic acid decarboxylase ($GAD_{65}$) ocular dominance plasticity is not expressed unless an appropriate level of GABAergic transmission is restored by direct infusion of benzodiazepines into the brain (Iwai et al. 2003).

Reducing the GABAergic neurotransmission could also have more direct effects with seemingly opposite outcomes. Both pyramidal neurons and fast-spiking interneurons in the dorsolateral prefrontal cortex demonstrate a remarkable degree of spatial tuning (i.e., respond preferentially to visual stimuli of certain spatial localization). Blockade of $GABA_A$ receptors resulted in the loss of spatial tuning (Rao et al. 2000). Similar phenomena illustrating inhibitory GABAergic sharpening of cortical receptive fields is seen with higher-order visual processing areas (Wang et al. 2000) as well as with the stimuli of other sensory modalities (Foeller et al. 2005). Such "un-tuning" can perhaps be useful when "un-tuned" neurons have to take over the function of other neurons (corresponding to the damaged or deprived reception fields). However, "un-tuning" may also be responsible for formation of aberrant perception patterns (and impaired pattern separation). Thus, enhancing GABAergic inhibition in the cortex may sharpen cortical receptive fields by silencing some potential connections and will limit the probability of maladaptive plasticity.

## 5 Guiding Recovery

Several examples given above aimed to illustrate the key challenge for disease modification in schizophrenia. While there are multiple opportunities to facilitate plasticity processes in the healthy and diseased brain, complexity of the underlying network biology requires a very gentle and delicate approach. To solve the problem, one needs to invest significant amount of time and efforts to deepen the understanding of the core biological processes with the hope to be able one day to identify the right point or mechanism of intervention. Or, alternatively, plasticity processes can be guided by environmental experience tailored to engage underdeveloped or missing functions.

## 5.1 Cognitive Behavioral Therapy in Schizophrenia

Cognitive remediation therapies developed for schizophrenia produce moderate improvements in cognitive performance and, when combined with psychiatric rehabilitation, also improve functional outcomes (McGurk et al. 2007). Although effects of cognitive remediation are currently quite modest, there is a growing excitement about possibilities offered by such training. Most importantly, it is emphasized that cognitive benefit of novel pharmacologic interventions is minimized when patients are studied in the context of the low level of cognitive, behavioral, and environmental stimulation that is typical in patients with schizophrenia (Keefe et al. 2011).

Cognitive remediation programs may be computer based, may rely on interactions with trained instructors, and/or be classroom based. These programs typically involve drill and practice, as well as strategy coaching for various cognitive domains. Besides higher order cognition, training may be based on more fundamental, sensory functions to achieve "bottom-up" remediation (Adcock et al. 2009). This latter approach is especially interesting from a drug development perspective because it offers possibilities to build preclinical-to-clinical translational programs. Having said this, it is important to note that probability of seeing beneficial therapeutic effects is certainly likely to increase with extended amount and spectrum of training (Fisher et al. 2010).

## 5.2 Preclinical Animal Models

There are no preclinical models that could be used to argue convincingly in support of disease-modifying potential of a novel drug. Thus, new models have to be built and validated much as it has been done for symptomatic treatment. Given the neurodevelopmental nature of the disease, a good starting point is offered by a genetic model (e.g., DISC1) or models that are based on prenatal or postnatal administration of NMDA receptor blockers, MAM, or viral agents (Powell et al. 2003).

However, even if the model successfully reproduces several key behavioral, neuroanatomical and neurochemical features of the disease, it is most likely not the disease model in a sense that it only partially reproduces pathology. Therefore, mechanistic models should not be neglected to enable hypothesis-driven drug development and efficient preclinical-to-clinical translation. For example, if cortical GABAergic deficits are believed to underlie significant aspects of pathology, enhancing cortical inhibition is a mechanism worth testing. There is vast experimental evidence on experience-induced facilitation of inhibitory processes in the cortex. In one of such studies, a 24-hour period of single whisker stimulation in freely moving adult mice increased density of GABAergic synapses in the corresponding cortical barrel, an effect that remained stable for several days

(Knott et al. 2002). Observing such plasticity changes and enhancing it further with a drug may not be sufficient for expecting therapeutic efficacy. Just as the drug-induced cognitive enhancement in schizophrenia becomes meaningful only when concomitant functional changes are confirmed, preclinical evidence on drug-facilitated plasticity needs to be supplemented by functional changes. Assessment of functional outcome should go beyond general activity markers (Croquelois et al. 2005) and would normally require demonstration of changes at behavioral level (Loukavenko et al. 2007).

## *5.3 Translating Preclinical Findings into Clinical Efficacy*

Cognitive behavioral training is expected, by definition, to translate into measurable cognitive effects. Such cognitive effects are biomarkers by themselves that can be used to assess efficacy of the training programs with or without a concomitant drug treatment. Provided that cognition is studied using validated and qualified test batteries, cognitive biomarkers can be used to support disease-modification claims (together with delay in the natural course of progression based on clinical signs and symptoms).

For preclinical-to-clinical translation, plasticity-guiding experience does not have to involve complex cognitive functions. For example, training focused specifically on working memory was shown to impact structural connectivity (Takeuchi et al. 2010). Another example comes from the studies that demonstrated positive effects of auditory training on verbal memory (Adcock et al. 2009; Fisher et al. 2010). One characteristic exercise in these studies required patients to make gradually more difficult distinctions between frequency modulation "sweeps" of auditory stimuli increasing or decreasing in frequency (Fisher et al. 2009). Sensory discrimination deserves a further note. First, there are numerous reports on both visual and auditory discrimination impairments in schizophrenia. Second, this function is readily measurable in both humans and laboratory animals with clear operational and psychophysiological definitions. Third, sensory discrimination function is mechanistically linked to efficiency of cortical inhibition that can be measured using electrophysiological methods.

## *5.4 What Can We Learn from Existing Drugs?*

Clinically successful antipsychotic drugs are commonly used to validate newly developed preclinical models creating a vicious circle that at least to some extent hinders development of truly novel treatments. For example, both acute and chronic administration of olanzapine reverse the decrease in the number of asymmetric (excitatory) spine synapses in layer II/III of prefrontal cortex that was induced by a prior treatment with PCP (Elsworth et al. 2011). Or, as mentioned above,

currently-used antipsychotic drugs are found in some studies to reduce neuroinflammation or to stimulate neurogenesis (Kato et al. 2011; Newton and Duman 2007). Does efficacy seen with these drugs devalidate the models?

A somewhat easier dilemma is presented by another group of studies showing differential efficacy of existing therapies. For example, reelin- and $GAD_{67}$-promoter hypermethylation in the frontal cortex and striatum of mice treated for 7 days with methionine could be reversed by clozapine and sulpiride but not by haloperidol and olanzapine (Guidotti et al. 2009). Such cases may indeed be very useful since they call for identification of properties of a drug that make it unique.

Nonantipsychotic drugs may also be found to have unique properties of use for developing disease-modifying therapy of schizophrenia. For example, fluoxetine was reported to reduce the risk for adolescents in the prodromal phase to convert to psychosis (Cornblatt et al. 2007). Although these data are still considered to be preliminary, they do invite further exploration of fluoxetine pharmacology. One interesting direction is based on the speculation that therapeutic efficacy of SSRIs may be associated with their ability to alter activity of the 3α-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase enzyme responsible for conversion of 5α-dihydroprogesterone to allopregnanolone (Pinna et al. 2009). Allopregnanolone, in its turn, is often discussed as one of the metabolites of pregnenalone, an endogenous neurosteroid found to be effective in several pilot schizophrenia trials (Marx et al. 2011).

## 6 Concluding Remarks

Although genetic contributions to pathophysiology of schizophrenia are beyond doubt, there is no single gene that seems to play a primary role. Also, there are multiple environmental pre- and post-natal factors such as maternal infections and malnutrition that are believed to increase the risks of schizophrenia. In other words, there are multiple mechanisms that are likely to converge on several common pathways that eventually result in findings in adult patients. These pathways and alterations may not be unique to schizophrenia and, therefore, selecting a single pathway or pathophysiological mechanism for preclinical model development and therapeutic targeting may not be very efficient. Disease-modification approaches require different drug development paths where novel drugs are designed to target mechanisms of interest and it is this mechanistic efficacy (as opposed to therapeutic efficacy) that becomes a focus of the development process. Once this mechanistic efficacy is successfully translated from preclinical species to humans, clinical testing will be done in disease states sharing common pathophysiological mechanisms.

Application of such novel strategy may require a very deep understanding of the disease biology. There are multiple opportunities to enhance plasticity and/or remove structural and functional constraints. These mechanisms seem to be tightly inter-related. For example, in patients with schizophrenia, expression of reelin is found to be markedly downregulated. This downregulation may be the result of epigenetic changes and/or may reflect higher-order abnormalities in the

GABAergic interneurons that secrete reelin into the ECM at lower rates. Being one feature of abnormal ECM, downregulated reelin fails to fulfill its physiological functions: regulation of dendritic spine formation, as well as regulation of glutamate receptor structure and function (Campo et al. 2009).

Alternatively, one may let experience guide the repair process and the drugs will only be needed to facilitate the effects of experience. This approach will bring together functional experience which is age-, environment- and disease-appropriate together with the plasticity resources that may otherwise not be available.

There are currently no preclinical models that can be claimed to have significant levels of validity. Therefore, from a drug development perspective, principles that combine acute symptomatic and disease-modifying properties are clearly preferred. Among several emerging treatment mechanisms, one may want to highlight two: inhibitors of glycine transporter 1 (GlyT1) and agonists acting at $\alpha_7$ subunit-containing nicotinic receptors. GlyT1 inhibitors show efficacy against negative symptoms when given in combination with the second-generation antipsychotics and, because of their intrinsic ability to facilitate NMDA receptor-dependent processes, are expected to induce various forms of plasticity. For example, at certain dose levels, these drugs may selectively target synaptic phenomena such as long-term potentiation that can be studied in vivo both preclinically and clinically and that may facilitate reversal of cognitive deficits associated with schizophrenia. $\alpha_7$ nicotinic agonists demonstrate procognitive efficacy in conventional preclinical models and in clinical studies showed normalization of brain network activity under rest conditions (Tregellas et al. 2011). There are no direct functional correlates of such baseline hyperactivity and its reversal may take time to translate into therapeutic benefits.

The question arises then how such treatments can be differentiated from those that have only symptomatic effects (i.e., most currently used antipsychotic medications). One expectation is that drugs with disease-modifying potential will show superior and broader efficacy (especially with longer treatment duration). Another possibility is that disease-modifying drugs will be particularly useful at very early stages at the disease. Society and medical communities may not be ready yet to initiate the treatment as early as during the prodromal phase, but the situation may change by the time the science advances enough to bring a convincing case of a drug with disease-modification potential.

**Acknowledgments** The author would like to thank Drs. Thomas Appl, Ana-Lucia Rêlo, Marcel van Gaalen, Karsten Wicke, Karla Drescher and Bernhard Müller for numerous discussions of the topic of this chapter.

## References

Adcock RA, Dale C, Fisher M, Aldebot S, Genevsky A, Simpson GV, Nagarajan S, Vinogradov S (2009) When top-down meets bottom-up: auditory training enhances verbal memory in schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 35:1132–1141

Akbarian S (2010) Epigenetics of schizophrenia. Curr Top Behav Neurosci 4:611–628

Akhondzadeh S, Tabatabaee M, Amini H, Ahmadi Abhari SA, Abbasi SH, Behnam B (2007) Celecoxib as adjunctive therapy in schizophrenia: a double-blind, randomized and placebo-controlled trial. Schizophr Res 90:179–185

Aloy E, Weinmann O, Pot C, Kasper H, Dodd D, Rülicke T, Rossi F, Schwab M (2006) Synaptic destabilization by neuronal Nogo-A. Brain Cell Biol 35:137–157

Arnsten AFT (1998) Catecholamine modulation of prefrontal cortical cognitive function. Trends Cogn Sci 2:436–447

Balu DT, Basu AC, Corradi JP, Cacace AM, Coyle JT (2012) The NMDA receptor co-agonists, d-serine and glycine, regulate neuronal dendritic architecture in the somatosensory cortex. Neurobiol Dis 45(2):671–682

Bayer TA, Falkai P, Maier W (2011) Genetic and non-genetic vulnerability factors in schizophrenia: the basis of the "two hit hypothesis". J Psychiatr Res 33:543–548

Becker A, Grecksch G (2004) Ketamine-induced changes in rat behaviour: a possible animal model of schizophrenia. Test of predictive validity. Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry 28:1267–1277

Behrens MM, Sejnowski TJ (2009) Does schizophrenia arise from oxidative dysregulation of parvalbumin-interneurons in the developing cortex? Neuropharmacology 57:193–200

Benes FM, Paskevich PA, Davidson J, Domesick VB (1985) Synaptic rearrangements in medial prefrontal cortex of haloperidol-treated rats. Brain Res 348:15–20

Berretta S (2012) Extracellular matrix abnormalities in schizophrenia. Neuropharmacology 62:1584–1597. doi:10.1016/j.neuropharm.2011.08.010:

Buchanan RW, Keefe RSE, Lieberman JA, Barch DM, Csernansky JG, Goff DC, Gold JM, Green MF, Jarskog LF, Javitt DC, Kimhy D, Kraus MS, McEvoy JP, Mesholam-Gately RI, Seidman LJ, Ball MP, McMahon RP, Kern RS, Robinson J, Marder SR (2011) A randomized clinical trial of MK-0777 for the treatment of cognitive impairments in people with schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 69:442–449

Budel S, Padukkavidana T, Liu BP, Feng Z, Hu F, Johnson S, Lauren J, Park JH, McGee AW, Liao J, Stillman A, Kim JE, Yang BZ, Sodi S, Gelernter J, Zhao H, Hisama F, Arnsten AFT, Strittmatter SM (2008) Genetic variants of Nogo-66 receptor with possible association to schizophrenia block myelin inhibition of axon growth. J Neurosci 28:13161–13172

Callicott JH, Mattay VS, Verchinski BA, Marenco S, Egan MF, Weinberger DR (2003) Complexity of prefrontal cortical dysfunction in schizophrenia: more than up or down. Am J Psychiatry 160:2209–2215

Cameron HA, Dayer AG (2008) New interneurons in the adult neocortex: small, sparse, but significant? Biol Psychiatry 63:650–655

Campo CG, Sinagra M, Dl V, Manzoni OJ, Chavis P (2009) Reelin secreted by GABAergic neurons regulates glutamate receptor homeostasis. PLoS One 4:e5505

Castner SA, Arriza JL, Roberts JC, Mrzljak L, Christian EP, Williams GV (2010) Reversal of ketamine-induced working memory impairments by the GABAA[alpha]2/3 agonist TPA023. Biol Psychiatry 67:998–1001

Chen Y, Hancock ML, Role LW, Talmage DA (2010) Intramembranous valine linked to schizophrenia is required for neuregulin 1 regulation of the morphological development of cortical neurons. J Neurosci 30:9199–9208

Cornblatt BA, Lencz T, Smith CW, Olsen R, Auther AM, Nakayama E, Lesser ML, Tai JY, Shah MR, Foley CA, Kane JM, Correll CU (2007) Can antidepressants be used to treat the schizophrenia prodrome? Results of a prospective, naturalistic treatment study of adolescents. J Clin Psychiatry 68:546–557

Croquelois A, Bronchti G, Welker E (2005) Cortical origin of functional recovery in the somatosensory cortex of the adult mouse after thalamic lesion. Eur J Neurosci 21:1798–1806

Delini-Stula A, Berdah-Tordjman D (1996) Antipsychotic effects of bretazenil, a partial benzodiazepine agonist in acute schizophrenia—a study group report. J Psychiatr Res 30:239–250

Dong E, Guidotti A, Grayson DR, Costa E (2007) Histone hyperacetylation induces demethylation of reelin and 67-kDa glutamic acid decarboxylase promoters. Proc Natl Acad Sci 104:4676–4681

Elsworth JD, Morrow BA, Hajszan T, Leranth C, Roth RH (2011) Phencyclidine-induced loss of asymmetric spine synapses in rodent prefrontal cortex is reversed by acute and chronic treatment with olanzapine. Neuropsychopharmacology 36:2054–2061
Fischer A, Sananbenesi F, Mungenast A, Tsai LH (2010) Targeting the correct HDAC(s) to treat cognitive disorders. Trends Pharmacol Sci 31:605–617
Fischer A, Sananbenesi F, Wang X, Dobbin M, Tsai LH (2007) Recovery of learning and memory is associated with chromatin remodelling. Nature 447:178–182
Fisher M, Holland C, Merzenich MM, Vinogradov S (2009) Using neuroplasticity-based auditory training to improve verbal memory in schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 166:805–811
Fisher M, Holland C, Subramaniam K, Vinogradov S (2010) Neuroplasticity-based cognitive training in schizophrenia: an interim report on the effects 6 months later. Schizophr Bull 36:869–879
Foeller E, Celikel T, Feldman DE (2005) Inhibitory sharpening of receptive fields contributes to whisker map plasticity in rat somatosensory cortex. J Neurophysiol 94:4387–4400
Fu M, Zuo Y (2011) Experience-dependent structural plasticity in the cortex. Trends Neurosci 34:177–187
Glick ID, Bosch J, Casey DE (2009) A double-blind randomized trial of mood stabilizer augmentation using lamotrigine and valproate for patients with schizophrenia who are stabilized and partially responsive. J Clin Psychopharmacol 29:267–271
Gogolla N, Caroni P, Luthi A, Herry C (2009) Perineuronal nets orotect fear memories from erasure. Science 325:1258–1261
Gozzi A, Herdon H, Schwarz A, Bertani S, Crestan V, Turrini G, Bifone A (2008) Pharmacological stimulation of NMDA receptors via co-agonist site suppresses fMRI response to phencyclidine in the rat. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 201:273–284
Guidotti A, Dong E, Kundakovic M, Satta R, Grayson DR, Costa E (2009) Characterization of the action of antipsychotic subtypes on valproate-induced chromatin remodeling. Trends Pharmacol Sci 30:55–60
Gundelfinger ED, Frischknecht R, Choquet D, Heine M (2010) Converting juvenile into adult plasticity: a role for the brain's extracellular matrix. Eur J Neurosci 31:2156–2165
Haas DA, Harper DG (1992) Ketamine: a review of its pharmacologic properties and use in ambulatory anesthesia. Anesth Prog 39:61–68
Hensch TK (2005) Critical period plasticity in local cortical circuits. Nat Rev Neurosci 6:877–888
Holtmaat A, Wilbrecht L, Knott GW, Welker E, Svoboda K (2006) Experience-dependent and cell-type-specific spine growth in the neocortex. Nature 441:979–983
Insel TR (2010) Rethinking schizophrenia. Nature 468:187–193
Iwai Y, Fagiolini M, Obata K, Hensch TK (2003) Rapid critical period induction by tonic inhibition in visual cortex. J Neurosci 23:6695–6702
Jaaro-Peled H (2009) Gene models of schizophrenia: DISC1 mouse models. In: Sawa A, Sawa A (eds) Progress in brain research genetic models of schizophrenia. Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp 75–86
Jawerka M, Colak D, Dimou L, Spiller C, Lagger S, Montgomery RL, Olson EN, Wurst W, Gottlicher M, Gotz M (2010) The specific role of histone deacetylase 2 in adult neurogenesis. Neuron Glia Biol 6:93–107
Kato TA, Monji A, Mizoguchi Y, Hashioka S, Horikawa H, Seki Y, Kasai M, Utsumi H, Kanba S (2011) Anti-inflammatory properties of antipsychotics via microglia modulations; are antipsychotics a 'fire extinguisher' in the brain of schizophrenia? Mini Rev Med Chem 11(7):565–574
Keefe RSE, Vinogradov S, Medalia A, Silverstein SM, Bell MD, Dickinson D, Ventura J, Marder SR, Stroup TS (2011) Report from the working group conference on multisite trial design for cognitive remediation in schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 37:1057–1065
Kelly DL, Conley RR, Feldman S, Yu Y, McMahon RP, Richardson CM (2006) Adjunct divalproex or lithium to clozapine in treatment-resistant schizophrenia. Psychiatr Q 77:81–95

Kippin TE, Kapur S, van der Kooy D (2005) Dopamine specifically inhibits forebrain neural stem cell proliferation, suggesting a novel effect of antipsychotic drugs. J Neurosci 25:5815–5823

Knott GW, Quairiaux C, Genoud C, Welker E (2002) Formation of dendritic spines with GABAergic synapses induced by whisker stimulation in adult mice. Neuron 34:265–273

Kolluri N, Sun Z, Sampson AR, Lewis DA (2005) Lamina-specific reductions in dendritic spine density in the prefrontal cortex of subjects with schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 162:1200–1202

Laan W, Grobbee DE, Selten JP, Heijnen CJ, Kahn RS, Burger H (2010) Adjuvant aspirin therapy reduces symptoms of schizophrenia spectrum disorders: results from a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. J Clin Psychiatry 71:520–527

Lee H, Raiker SJ, Venkatesh K, Geary R, Robak LA, Zhang Y, Yeh HH, Shrager P, Giger RJ (2008) Synaptic function for the Nogo-66 receptor NgR1: regulation of dendritic spine morphology and activity-dependent synaptic strength. J Neurosci 28:2753–2765

Lewis DA, Volk DW, Hashimoto T (2004) Selective alterations in prefrontal cortical GABA neurotransmission in schizophrenia: a novel target for the treatment of working memory dysfunction. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 174:143–150

Lewis DA, Cho RY, Carter CS, Eklund K, Forster S, Kelly MA, Montrose D (2008) Subunit-selective modulation of GABA type A receptor neurotransmission and cognition in schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 165:1585–1593

Lewis DA, Moghaddam B (2006) Cognitive dysfunction in schizophrenia: convergence of {gamma}-aminobutyric acid and glutamate alterations. Arch Neurol 63:1372–1376

Li Y, Kolb B, Robinson TE (2003) The location of persistent amphetamine-induced changes in the density of dendritic spines on medium spiny neurons in the nucleus accumbens and caudate-putamen. Neuropsychopharmacology 28:1082–1085

Loukavenko EA, Ottley MC, Moran JP, Wolff M, Dalrymple-Alford JC (2007) Towards therapy to relieve memory impairment after anterior thalamic lesions: improved spatial working memory after immediate and delayed postoperative enrichment. Eur J Neurosci 26:3267–3276

Maloku E, Kadriu B, Zhubi A, Dong E, Pibiri F, Satta R, Guidotti A (2011) Selective [alpha]4 [beta]2 nicotinic acetylcholine receptor agonists target epigenetic mechanisms in cortical GABAergic neurons. Neuropsychopharmacology 36:1366–1374

Marx CE, Bradford DW, Hamer RM, Naylor JC, Allen TB, Lieberman JA, Strauss JL, Kilts JD (2011) Pregnenolone as a novel therapeutic candidate in schizophrenia: emerging preclinical and clinical evidence. Neuroscience 191:78–90

McGee AW, Yang Y, Fischer QS, Daw NW, Strittmatter SM (2005) Experience-driven plasticity of visual cortex limited by myelin and Nogo receptor. Science 309:2222–2226

McGurk SR, Twamley EW, Sitzer DI, McHugo GJ, Mueser KT (2007) A meta-analysis of cognitive remediation in schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 164:1791–1802

Meyer U, Schwarz MJ, Müller N (2011) Inflammatory processes in schizophrenia: a promising neuroimmunological target for the treatment of negative/cognitive symptoms and beyond. Pharmacol Ther 132:96–110

Mouret A, Gheusi G, Gabellec MM, de Chaumont F, Olivo-Marin JC, Lledo PM (2008) Learning and survival of newly generated neurons: when time matters. J Neurosci 28:11511–11516

Müller N, Riedel M, Scheppach C, Brandstatter B, Sokullu S, Krampe K, Ulmschneider M, Engel RR, Möller HJ, Schwarz MJ (2002) Beneficial antipsychotic effects of celecoxib add-on therapy compared to risperidone alone in schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 159:1029–1034

Namba T, Gl M, Song H, Waga C, Enomoto A, Kaibuchi K, Kohsaka S, Uchino S (2011) NMDA receptor regulates migration of newly generated neurons in the adult hippocampus via Disrupted-In-Schizophrenia 1 (DISC1). J Neurochem 118:34–44

Newton SS, Duman RS (2007) Neurogenic actions of atypical antipsychotic drugs and therapeutic implications. CNS Drugs 21:715–725

Olney JW, Labruyere J, Wang G, Wozniak DF, Price MT, Sesma MA (1991) NMDA antagonist neurotoxicity: mechanism and prevention. Science 254:1515–1518

Pantazopoulos H, Woo TU, Lim MP, Lange N, Berretta S (2010) Extracellular matrix-glial abnormalities in the amygdala and entorhinal cortex of subjects diagnosed with schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 67:155–166

Papadopoulos CM, Tsai SY, Cheatwood JL, Bollnow MR, Kolb BE, Schwab ME, Kartje GL (2006) Dendritic plasticity in the adult rat following middle cerebral artery occlusion and Nogo-a neutralization. Cereb Cortex 16:529–536

Patil ST, Zhang L, Martenyi F, Lowe SL, Jackson KA, Andreev BV, Avedisova AS, Bardenstein LM, Gurovich IY, Morozova MA, Mosolov SN, Neznanov NG, Reznik AM, Smulevich AB, Tochilov VA, Johnson BG, Monn JA, Schoepp DD (2007) Activation of mGlu2/3 receptors as a new approach to treat schizophrenia: a randomized Phase 2 clinical trial. Nat Med 13:1102–1107

Pato CN, Wolkowitz OM, Rapaport M, Schulz SC, Pickar D (1989) Benzodiazepine augmentation of neuroleptic treatment in patients with schizophrenia. Psychopharmacol Bull 25:263–266

Pavlov I, Rauvala H, Taira T (2006) Enhanced hippocampal GABAergic inhibition in mice overexpressing heparin-binding growth-associated molecule. Neuroscience 139:505–511

Pinna G, Costa E, Guidotti A (2009) SSRIs act as selective brain steroidogenic stimulants (SBSSs) at low doses that are inactive on 5-HT reuptake. Curr Opin Pharmacol 9:24–30

Pizzorusso T, Medini P, Berardi N, Chierzi S, Fawcett JW, Maffei L (2002) Reactivation of ocular dominance plasticity in the adult visual cortex. Science 298:1248–1251

Powell SB, Risbrough VB, Geyer MA (2003) Potential use of animal models to examine antipsychotic prophylaxis for schizophrenia. Clin Neurosci Res 3:289–296

Rao SG, Williams GV, Goldman-Rakic PS (2000) Destruction and creation of spatial tuning by disinhibition: GABA(A) blockade of prefrontal cortical neurons engaged by working memory. J Neurosci 20:485–494

Reif A, Fritzen S, Finger M, Strobel A, Lauer M, Schmitt A, Lesch KP (2006) Neural stem cell proliferation is decreased in schizophrenia, but not in depression. Mol Psychiatry 11:514–522

Seeley WW, Turetsky N, Reus VI, Wolkowitz OM (2002) Benzodiazepines in schizophrenia: prefrontal cortex atrophy predicts clinical response to alprazolam augmentation. World J Biol Psychiatry 3:221–224

Selemon LD, Begovic A, Goldman-Rakic PS, Castner SA (2006) Amphetamine sensitization alters dendritic morphology in prefrontal cortical pyramidal neurons in the non-human primate. Neuropsychopharmacology 32:919–931

Takahashi N, Sakurai T, Davis KL, Buxbaum JD (2011) Linking oligodendrocyte and myelin dysfunction to neurocircuitry abnormalities in schizophrenia. Prog Neurobiol 93:13–24

Takeuchi H, Sekiguchi A, Taki Y, Yokoyama S, Yomogida Y, Komuro N, Yamanouchi T, Suzuki S, Kawashima R (2010) Training of working memory impacts structural connectivity. J Neurosci 30:3297–3303

Tregellas JR, Tanabe J, Rojas DC, Shatti S, Olincy A, Johnson L, Martin LF, Soti F, Kem WR, Leonard S, Freedman R (2011) Effects of an alpha 7-nicotinic agonist on default network activity in schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 69:7–11

Volz A, Khorsand V, Gillies D, Leucht S (2007) Benzodiazepines for schizophrenia. Cochrane Database Syst Rev Issue 1. Art. No.: CD006391

Waddell J, Shors TJ (2008) Neurogenesis, learning and associative strength. Eur J Neurosci 27:3020–3028

Wang HD, Deutch AY (2008) Dopamine depletion of the prefrontal cortex induces dendritic spine loss: reversal by atypical antipsychotic drug treatment. Neuropsychopharmacology 33:1276–1286

Wang Y, Fujita I, Murayama Y (2000) Neuronal mechanisms of selectivity for object features revealed by blocking inhibition in inferotemporal cortex. Nat Neurosci 3:807–813

Whitford TJ, Kubicki M, Schneiderman JS, O'Donnell LJ, King R, Alvarado JL, Khan U, Markant D, Nestor PG, Niznikiewicz M, McCarley RW, Westin CF, Shenton ME (2010) Corpus callosum abnormalities and their association with psychotic symptoms in patients with schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 68:70–77

Wonodi I, Schwarcz R (2010) Cortical kynurenine pathway metabolism: a novel target for cognitive enhancement in schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 36:211–218

Woods SW, Addington J, Cadenhead KS, Cannon TD, Cornblatt BA, Heinssen R, Perkins DO, Seidman LJ, Tsuang MT, Walker EF, McGlashan TH (2009) Validity of the prodromal risk syndrome for first psychosis: findings from the North American Prodrome Longitudinal Study. Schizophr Bull 35:894–908

Xu H, Yang HJ, Rose GM, Li XM (2011) Recovery of behavioral changes and compromised white matter in C57BL/6 mice exposed to cuprizone: effects of antipsychotic drugs. Front Behav Neurosci 5:31

# Index



M.A. Geyer and G. Gross (eds.), *Novel Antischizophrenia Treatments*,
Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 213,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-25758-2, © Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2012